LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
00002520138

THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS




The Wanderings of Æneas

Publius Vergilius Maro

THE HEATH LATIN SERIES
WILBERT LESTER CARR, GENERAL EDITOR

# VERGIL'S AENEID

## *BOOKS I-VI*

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY, AND GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY
CLYDE PHARR, PH.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK
VANDERBILT UNIVERSITY




D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS
LONDON

P. A.

PA6802
.A1P5

Copyright, 1930
By Clyde Pharr

Patent Pending

---

*All rights reserved*

3DO

JUN -9 1930

PRINTED IN U. S. A.

©Cl A 24457

1930 4 April 1970
Virgil ides de Marchus V.B.C.

DIS MANIBUS
VATIS VERGILI
HUNC LIBELLUM
DEDICAT AUCTOR
LUBENS MERITO

# PREFACE

This book is intended to introduce high school and college students to the *Aeneid* and to enable them to read this great masterpiece with interest and appreciation.

The present edition is based on the cumulative results of the past centuries of Vergilian scholarship and pedagogical method, and the author is indebted to his many predecessors, ancient and modern, American and foreign, who have worked in this field. The author would make grateful acknowledgment to all those who have contributed in any way to a better understanding of the *Aeneid*, but it is manifestly impossible to enumerate the countless sources from which the present work has been drawn.

In preparing the present text an attempt has been made to profit by the contributions furnished by the printer's art in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal **i** (**i, j**) as well as in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal **u** (**u, v**). For what seems to be adequate pedagogical reasons such forms as **dējiciō, subjiciō,** and **conjiciō** are given in the printed text instead of the **dēiciō, subiciō,** and **coniciō** of the inscriptions and manuscripts. For the use of **j** and **v** the author feels that no more apology is needed than for the use of lower case letters in general instead of the square capitals of the inscriptions and early manuscripts. The employment of such forms as **dējiciō, subjiciō,** and **conjiciō** is abundantly justified by their simplicity as well as by the ease with which they are understood in connection with the rest of their conjugational systems.

The text is that of Hirtzel, Oxford University Press, 1900, and the author here gratefully acknowledges the kind permission granted by the Syndics of this Press to reproduce their text. Only a few changes have been made from the Oxford text, such as the use of capitals in this book at the beginning of each new sentence instead of merely at the beginning of each new paragraph, the use of **j** in this text to represent consonantal **i,** and the spellings **relligio, relligiosus, relliquiae,** to represent more accurately the pronunciation of these words in Vergil's day.

In the definitions of the Latin words given in the page vocabularies the author has not sought to secure a mechanical uniformity, but has attempted merely to preserve such a general consistency that the student may from the definitions recognize any later occurrence of a

word and associate it with its earlier appearances. In the number of meanings given for each Latin word, the author has tried to preserve some mean between a poverty which is barren and a wealth which is confusing to the student who is trying at the same time both to read Vergil and to learn Latin.

The chief distinction of this book is its visible vocabulary system. The acquisition of a vocabulary is generally recognized as one of the most important as well as one of the most troublesome problems in learning either to read or speak a foreign language. No important advance has been made in this field for thousands of years, and the present antiquated methods are wasteful of much valuable time and effort, especially in the case of the more difficult languages, such as Latin and Greek.

This book attempts to attack the problem from another angle and prints adjacent to any given passage the whole of its vocabulary, making it unnecessary ever to turn a page for the purpose of learning the meaning of any word.

The use of the special word list, printed on the extensible sheet at the back of the book, adds certain features of considerable value educationally. This list contains the most common words in the work being studied. Each word which occurs in this list is indicated in the text by being printed in italics. This use of italics serves several distinct purposes. First, it indicates to the student where he must look for the meaning of these words, whether in the special list or in one of the vocabularies at the foot of the page. In the second place, the difference in type assists in impressing these more important words on the memory without as much conscious effort as has ordinarily been needed and hence, perhaps, removes an element of discouragement from the task. The word list also furnishes convenient material for the use of teachers who still prefer to require their students to memorize the most important words in their text. In addition to this word list, a second list of rather less common words is indicated in the special vocabularies by means of asterisks, thus calling the attention of the student to their importance. The first occurrence of a word in the text being studied is indicated in the vocabularies by a dagger (†). This serves a valuable purpose in sight reading, since it continually distinguishes for the student the words he has already met from those he has not yet seen in that particular text, and helps to impress them on his memory.

The author is convinced that this new method is an advance over the old both pedagogically and psychologically. The old system involves not merely a great waste of time, but it necessitates continual interruption in the continuity of attention of the student, hindering or even preventing concentration upon the work at hand and thus making for bad mental habits.

This plan has been tried in a number of secondary schools and in every case it has met with a most enthusiastic response on the part of both teachers and students. After an extensive series of experiments, it is agreed that the following are some of the manifest advantages of this method:

1. Students are able to read intelligently a great deal more in a given period of time than has heretofore been possible.

2. Reading of the great classical authors can be begun at a much earlier stage than was formerly practicable. With a modicum of grammar one can begin reading the great classics and can read them rapidly enough to enjoy them as literature.

3. Since the vocabulary for any given passage is comparatively small, the possibility of error is much less and the student seldom selects the wrong word or the wrong meaning from the vocabulary.

4. With the elimination or great lessening of vocabulary difficulties, the student has a much better opportunity of gaining a thorough foundation in the essentials of grammar, reinforced continually by more copious reading than has hitherto been possible.

5. The student learns his vocabulary without much conscious effort at memorizing, in the easiest and most natural way possible, by meeting the words constantly in his reading, with their meanings always before him. Similarly he learns the forms of his words, by constantly seeing the indications of their structure, as denoted in the vocabulary by the principal parts of the verbs, the nominative and genitive singular of the nouns, together with an indication of their gender, and other information presented in the vocabularies.

6. Printing this vocabulary in sight of the passage not only conserves the time of the student commonly spent in mechanically looking up words, but allows him to concentrate his attention on the problems involved in translation, in the development of thought, in the literary, historical, and other problems of his author, and in various other features of the text.

There is no pedagogical value attached to the mechanical labor involved in looking up words according to the old system which, moreover, entails an enormous waste of time. According to the arrangement employed in this book, the student has constantly before him the same information which he formerly was compelled to seek elsewhere at the cost of so much labor.

This visible vocabulary system is far better than a parallel translation, since this method does not solve the problems for the student, but merely places in his hands, in the most readily accessible form, all the requisite data for making his own solutions. By thus ridding him of drudgery and by making this feature of his work lighter and more interesting, this vocabulary system helps to eliminate the improper use of translations by the student, for he now finds that he

can prepare his lesson quite as quickly and much more intelligently without a translation than he formerly could with its help.

The vocabularies of the ordinary school editions, arranged according to the old system, must give the general meaning of each word and then exhaust all the special meanings found in the whole text, and this to most students is a source of considerable confusion and loss of time. In this text the student will always have the general meaning of each word as well as the special meaning necessary for each passage. This enables him to fix the general meaning and to build up his knowledge of the special meanings as he meets them in his reading.

A number of circumstances have combined to delay the appearance of this book. By a happy coincidence it is now issued on the two thousandth anniversary of Vergil's birth, and the author is much pleased to offer this little volume in homage to the spirit of the bard of Mantua at a time when all the world is uniting to pay him tribute.

The author wishes to express his special gratitude to the late Dr. Dix Harwood, Assistant Editor of D. C. Heath and Company, for selecting the illustrations in this book, and to Professor W. L. Carr, of the University of Michigan, whose advice and assistance have been invaluable.

CLYDE PHARR

*Vanderbilt University*
*March 4, 1930*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS


PAGE

PREFACE . . . . . v

INTRODUCTION

Life of Vergil . . . . . 1
The *Aeneid* . . . . . 2
Vergil's Later Fame . . . . . 4
The Trojan War . . . . . 4
The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings . . . . . 6
The Purpose of the *Aeneid* . . . . . 6
The Roman Religion . . . . . 6
Chronological Table of Vergil's Life . . . . . 8
Bibliography of Vergil . . . . . 10

GENERAL DIRECTIONS . . . . . 11

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS . . . . . 14

THE AENEID

Book I . . . . . 15
Book II . . . . . 80
Book III . . . . . 142
Book IV . . . . . 197
Book V . . . . . 247
Book VI . . . . . 305

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX . . . . . 1–79
Index to Grammatical Appendix . . . . . 81

GENERAL WORD LIST . . . . . *Inside Back Cover*

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS


FACING PAGE

PARIS BEGUILED . . . . . 4

THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN . . . . . 5

THE PARCAE . . . . . 18

JUNO . . . . . 19

JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS . . . . . 28

NEPTUNE . . . . . 29

JUPITER . . . . . 40

MARS . . . . . 41

AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE . . . . . 60

DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE . . . . . 61

THE TROJAN HORSE . . . . . 96

LAOCOÖN AND HIS SONS. . . . . 97

CASSANDRA ON THE WALLS OF TROY . . . . . 100

MINERVA . . . . . 101

THE FALL OF TROY . . . . . 134

ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS . . . 135

THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY. . . . . 198

AENEAS AT DIDO'S COURT. . . . . 199

A ROMAN PERISTYLE . . . . . 244

THE DEATH OF DIDO . . . . . 245

THE VENUS OF MELOS . . . . . 276

APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE . . . . . 277

THE CUMAEAN SIBYL . . . . . 304

CENTAURS AND DRYAD . . . . . 305

# VERGIL'S AENEID
# BOOKS I–VI

# INTRODUCTION

## Life of Vergil

**1.** Publius Vergilius Maro, one of the most celebrated poets of all time, was born in the little country village of Andes, near Mantua, in northern Italy, October 15, 70 B.C. His father was a small farmer; and, although a man of moderate means, he managed to give his son the equivalent of a college education. The poetically inclined youth studied at Mantua and Cremona, then at the larger city of Milan (**Mediōlānum**), whence he passed to Rome and finally to Naples, where he went to complete his college course. He early developed a taste for literature and especially for philosophy, and all his life he remained a student. Very modest and retiring, even to the point of shyness, he was not fitted to take an active part in the stirring political and military events of his day.

**2.** After the battle of Philippi in 42 B.C., Octavian confiscated Vergil's farm and assigned it to one of his veterans. Vergil had already begun to write poetry, and his work had attracted the favorable attention of Maecenas, a close personal friend, and political adviser of the emperor. Through Maecenas Vergil met Octavian, who at once took him under his protection, compensated him for the loss of his farm, and made it possible for him to devote the rest of his life to poetry.

**3.** The most important of his works are known as the *Bucolics* (or *Eclogues*), the *Georgics*, and the *Aeneid*. The *Bucolics* are short poems on pastoral themes, formed on Greek models and idealizing the life of the shepherds and herdsmen of northern Italy; the *Georgics*, also formed on Greek models, deal with the pleasures of farm life; while the *Aeneid*, a great literary epic, deals with the wanderings and adventures of Aeneas after the destruction of Troy, from which, according to tradition, he had come with a small band of followers and laid the foundations of the power which later became Rome.

**4.** For the last ten years of his life Vergil was occupied in writing the *Aeneid*. In the year 19 B.C. he went to Greece with the intention of spending the next three years in the East for the purpose of getting a more intimate acquaintance with the scenes depicted in his poem and of acquiring local color for his work, upon which he was putting the final touches. While in Athens he met the emperor Augustus,

who was returning to Rome from a visit in the East and who induced Vergil to accompany him. Vergil was already ill before he set sail and steadily grew worse during the voyage. Shortly after landing at Brundisium in southern Italy he died, September 21, 19 B.C., a little before his fifty-second birthday. Vergil was buried at Naples, which he had especially loved, and his tomb bore the inscription:

**5. Mantua mē genuit; Calabrī rapuēre; tenet nunc**
**Parthenopē; cecinī pascua, rūra, ducēs,**

*I was born at Mantua; died in Calabria; my bones lie in Naples; pastures, fields, and heroes were the theme of my song.*

His untimely death left his great poem incomplete, and there are many indications of this fact in the *Aeneid*, the most marked being the unfinished verses, of which there are more than fifty.

## The *Aeneid*

**6.** The *Aeneid* is a literary epic, modeled upon the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, from which it has drawn a great deal of its material and inspiration. The poem was undertaken at the request of Augustus. The theme, which is also said to have been suggested by Augustus, is the settlement of Aeneas in Italy, which finally led to the founding of Rome. This legend was already well established in Italy, where many of the great families took especial pride in tracing their ancestry back to Aeneas and his band of Trojan heroes. The Julian *gens*, of which Julius and Augustus Caesar were members, especially gloried in its tradition of a direct descent from Aeneas himself through Ascanius, or Iulus, as he was sometimes called. Besides this, the Romans were gradually coming to claim a Trojan origin for many of the customs, ceremonies, and institutions of their fathers. Vergil and Augustus were both interested in thus giving divine sanction and the weight of hoary antiquity to the measures which Augustus had undertaken for establishing the empire. Thus Augustus appears as the restorer of the good old days and the good old ways of the fathers. He is the promised ruler of divine descent who is to bring peace and a return of the Golden Age to the whole world. Throughout the entire poem the person and the work of Augustus are magnified, but these are made to appear as secondary and as but instruments in the hands of the gods for working out the high destiny of the Roman people. By thus stirring the feeling of Roman patriotism and pride of race as well as by constantly appealing to the sanctity and the authority of the good old days, the *Aeneid* met with an instant and a direct response from the Roman people, who were taking an ever-growing pride in the great achieve-

ments of their fathers. The success of the poem was thus assured from the first, and it has continued to exert an enormous influence upon later Roman and European literature.

**7.** As a piece of literature, the *Aeneid* has both the strength and weaknesses of its author and subject matter. Vergil was a weakling, usually in poor health, shy to the point of painfulness, a sentimental idealist, and little acquainted with the hard and practical ways of the stern old Roman world. He was never married and seems to have cared little or nothing for feminine society. His one great ideal of life can be summed up in the word **pietās,** *devotion, loyalty*, and he equips his hero Aeneas (**pius Aenēās**) with a full and overflowing measure of this quality, which finds its best expression in an unquestioned obedience to the will of the gods and to their more or less contradictory commands, no matter how much human suffering may be entailed nor how much apparent wrong may result. Vergil was born in Cisalpine Gaul, probably ineligible for Roman citizenship in his early years and possibly a member of a conquered tribe which had felt the pitiless heel of the conqueror. In any case he seems to have early developed a deep sympathy for the oppressed and for the losers in life's battle, and also a profound conviction of the sadness and sorrow of human existence and the futility of human effort in its attempts to adjust its feeble struggles to a world that is too much for it. The craving for satisfaction of a thwarted nature found its chief expression in its reliance upon the gods and their inscrutable ways as they worked out their plans for the world. In addition, he found refuge in a deep reverence for the past with its great heroes who had been so submissive to the will of the gods that they had become but puppets in carrying out the divine commands.

**8.** Vergil's chief claim to fame as a poet rests upon his incomparable literary style. Nettleship[1] says: "Unquestionably it was Vergil's style which more than anything else gave him his preeminence among Roman poets. The great power of his style lies in the haunting music of his verse, in the rhythm and fall of his language." As a close student of Greek, he had absorbed much of the best in that literature. "Not only is he fond of filling his verses with Greek forms and Greek cadences, but his lines are rich and harmonious with a new music manifold in its capacity; it is as if the sound of the Greek language had awakened a sympathetic strain in Italian. . . . Vergil not only translates but works his Greek materials into new forms." As a great artist he thoroughly loses himself in his work, but his impersonality "is not the impersonality of Homer or of Shakespere, who simply show us the world as it stands; Vergil yearns over the spectacle which he spreads before us."

[1] *Vergil*, pp. 90–92.

## Vergil's Later Fame

**9.** Vergil was ardently admired even in his own day, and his fame continued to increase with the passing centuries. Under the later Roman Empire the reverence for his works reached the point where the **Sortēs Vergiliānae** came into vogue; that is, the *Aeneid* was opened at random, and the first line on which the eyes fell was taken as an omen of good or evil. In the mediæval period a great circle of legends and stories of miracles gathered around his name, and the Vergil of history was transformed into the Vergil of magic. He was looked upon not only as a great magician but as an inspired pagan prophet who had foretold the birth of Christ. It was at this period that the spelling *Virgil* came into vogue, thus associating the great poet with the magic or prophetic wand, **virga.** "The mediæval world looked upon him as a poet of prophetic insight, who contained within himself all the potentialities of wisdom. He was called the *Poet*, as if no other existed; the *Roman*, as if the ideal of the commonwealth were embodied in him; the *Perfect in Style*, with whom no other writer could be compared; the *Philosopher*, who grasped the ideas of all things; the *Wise One*, whose comprehension seemed to other mortals unlimited. His writings became the Bible of the race. The mysteries of Roman priestcraft, the processes of divination, the science of the stars, were all found in his works." [1] The great mediæval poets, such as Dante and Chaucer, learned much from the immortal Roman; since that time few great poets have escaped his influence, and one cannot properly estimate the course of European thought and poetic art without some knowledge of Vergil and his dominating power.

## The Trojan War

**10.** To understand the *Aeneid*, it is necessary to be familiar with the story of the Trojan War and of the events leading up to it. According to the story, Jupiter, father and king of gods and men, once fell in love with Thetis, a beautiful sea goddess, and wished to marry her, but an oracle had foretold that the son of Thetis was to be mightier than his father. Hence Jupiter decreed that Thetis was to marry a mortal, and Peleus, a Greek king, was chosen as her husband. The wedding was a magnificent occasion, and all the gods and goddesses were invited except Eris, goddess of strife. Incensed at being thus slighted, she appeared in the midst of the festivities and spitefully threw among the assembled guests a golden apple (the famous Apple of Discord) with the inscription "To the fairest." Each of the ladies present wished to claim this prize for herself; but

[1] Tunison, *Master Vergil*, p. 156.



*Alinari, Rome* *Vatican Museum*

PARIS BEGUILED

In his right hand he holds the Apple of Discord,
for which the three goddesses quarreled.



*Gramstorff Bros.* *Rudolf von Deutsch*

THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN

the contest finally narrowed down to Juno, queen of the gods; Minerva, goddess of wisdom; and Venus, goddess of love and beauty. The rivalry became very bitter, and the angry goddesses called upon Jupiter to decide; but he discreetly refused to act as judge.

So the case was finally referred to Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy or Ilium. Each of the goddesses then tried to bribe Paris. Juno offered him great wealth and unlimited power, Minerva the gift of great wisdom, while Venus promised him the most beautiful woman in the world for his wife. Paris thereupon awarded the prize to Venus and thus incurred the vindictive and unforgiving hatred of Juno and Minerva. His decision, henceforth known as the "Judgment of Paris," was the beginning of unending trouble for Paris and the Trojan people.

**11.** The most beautiful woman in the world at that time was Helen, daughter of Leda, and wife of Menelaüs, king of Sparta. With the help of Venus, Paris succeeded in winning Helen and eloping with her to Troy. All Greece at once arose in arms to avenge the insult of having one of their women carried off by a foreigner, and a great expedition was fitted out under Agamemnon, brother of Menelaüs, as commander-in-chief. The forces assembled at the port of Aulis in eastern Greece, but day after day the winds were unfavorable, and it was not possible for them to set sail. The Greeks consulted Calchas, the soothsayer of the expedition; and he replied that no favorable wind could be expected until they had sacrificed Iphigeneia, daughter of Agamemnon, to appease the gods. The princess was duly sacrificed, thus appeasing the gods and securing a favorable voyage for the expedition.

**12.** Many great Greek heroes embarked on this undertaking with Agamemnon and Menelaüs. Among the most famous were the sententious Nestor, who was older, knew more, and could talk more than any other man of his time; the wily Ulysses, whose cunning was invincible; the swift-footed Achilles, the dashing young hero ever eager to do and to dare for the pure thrill of the excitement and the love of adventure; the mighty Ajax, whose enormous strength was accompanied by a correspondingly dull wit; another Ajax, son of Oïleus, who was ever eager to grab his part of the spoils; the mighty Diomedes, who dared to fight against the very gods on the field of battle. There were also many other Greek heroes who were eager to distinguish themselves in such a noble undertaking and to get their share of the booty, when they should succeed in capturing the rich city of Troy. Among the Trojan warriors who opposed the Greeks were the dauntless Hector, eldest son of Priam and the noblest of all the warriors before Troy; the jaunty Paris who was fighting mightily to keep Helen; and the faithful Aeneas, the son of Venus and Anchises.

## The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings

**13.** For ten long years the siege lasted with varying fortunes, although the Greeks had a slight advantage, owing to the fact that more of the gods were fighting on their side than on that of the Trojans. Juno and Minerva were especially helpful to the Greeks, since they had both developed an undying hatred against all the Trojans, because of the evident unfairness of Trojan Paris in awarding the beauty prize to their hated rival, Venus.

**14.** Through the stratagem of the wooden horse, fully described in the second book of the *Aeneid*, Troy was finally captured and destroyed. Most of the inhabitants were either killed or dragged away into slavery; but a remnant, under the leadership of Aeneas, succeeded in escaping. After long wanderings and much hardship they finally reached Italy, where they settled and established their rule over the uncivilized natives. This settlement finally resulted in the founding of Rome, which gradually extended its sway and established the Roman Empire, with Augustus at its head in the days of Vergil.

## The Purpose of the *Aeneid*

**15.** One of the results which both Augustus and Vergil hoped to see effected with the help of the *Aeneid* was a revival of faith in the old-time religion. The educated Romans of the day were becoming quite blasé and sophisticated and were gradually losing the faith of their fathers with its simple, unquestioning reliance on the infallible wisdom of the gods and their helpful interference in human affairs.

## The Roman Religion

**16.** The machinery of this religion was quite elaborate. Before their acquaintance with Greek culture the Romans had developed a religion of their own, with a number of departmental divinities, each having charge of some general field in human experience, the boundaries of which were never very clearly defined. Hence there was a considerable overlapping of authority, with a consequent confusion in the divine government. With the coming of Greek culture, no radical change was effected in the general conceptions, but the Romans took over a vast mass of Greek stories about the gods and the deeds of divine and semidivine characters. In most cases the Roman names of the various divinities were retained, and they were simply identified with the corresponding Greek deities with their elaborate system of mythology. Thus the Greek father of gods and men, Zeus, was identified with the Roman Jupiter, Hera with Juno,

Athena with Minerva, Aphrodite with Venus, Hermes with Mercury, Poseidon with Neptune, Hephaestus with Vulcan, etc. In addition to these common features, the Roman religion had certain characteristic divinities and conceptions of its own before the coming of Greek culture, and these were retained.

**17.** In speaking then of the religious ideas embodied in the *Aeneid*, we are dealing primarily with the Greco-Roman religion, to which are added certain Roman features not belonging to the Greek system.

**18.** At the head of the Roman system of religion stood Jupiter, father and king of gods and men. He was the god of heaven who gathered the storm clouds and hurled the lightning. His sign was the thunderbolt, and the eagle was his messenger. Apollo was the great god of light and the foe of all darkness and evil. He was the ideal of manly beauty and the patron of music, prophecy, poetry, and medicine. Mars was the brutal and bloody god of war and of battles. Vulcan, god of fire, supervised the working of metals and all useful and mechanical arts. Mercury with his winged sandals and his magic wand was the messenger and the herald of the gods. He was also god of inventions, trade, and commerce. Bacchus was the god of wine and master of revelry. Neptune, brother of Jupiter, was god of all the seas and waters of the earth. Juno, wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods, presided over the life of women and especially over the rites of marriage. Minerva was goddess of wisdom and of the arts and handicrafts, especially of female handicrafts. Diana, sister of Apollo, was the divinity of the moonlight, goddess of the woods, and mistress of the chase. Venus, born of the sea foam near Cythera, was goddess of love and beauty. Ceres, goddess of grain, presided over seedtime and harvest. Vesta, the goddess of the household fire, presided over hearth and home and the sanctities of family life. Pluto or Dis, with his queen Proserpina, ruled over the lower world and the souls of the dead.

**19.** In addition to these greater divinities, there were many minor deities, such as the beautiful feminine nymphs who haunted every fountain, stream, mountain, or sea, and their masculine counterparts, the homely satyrs, who frequented the forests, fields, and mountains. The Fates presided over human destinies, while the Furies avenged such crimes as murder and sacrilege. Among the great number of lesser deities and spirits were such personified qualities as Fortune, Concord, and Peace.

**20.** In addition to these gods and goddesses may be mentioned Janus, the two-faced god of beginnings and of gateways, and the household deities, the lares and penates, who along with Vesta, goddess of the hearth, formed the center of the family worship. These household deities were worshiped each day at the family

meal. When the household sat down to dinner, a little of the food was thrown into the flames of the fire on the hearth, and a little wine was poured out as an offering to the household gods. The images of the lares and penates would also be brought from their shrine and placed on the table to insure their presence at the meal.

**21.** Special veneration was also shown to the spirits of the dead. These were called *manes*, meaning "the pure ones," and they were always looked upon as guardian deities of the family. These manes, or souls of the departed, were supposed to live a shadowy sort of existence in the lower world, sometimes returning to haunt the grave where they had been buried: for, unless the body were properly interred, the soul could not at once enter the realm of the lower world and find a permanent resting place, but must wander unhappily around for a hundred years, as a source of torment and of terror to the living. Hence the great importance of the proper burial rites and the great care bestowed upon these ceremonials by the Romans.

**22.** It was believed that the gods indicated their purposes to men by means of signs and omens, such as dreams, thunder and lightning, an eclipse of the sun, a blazing comet, the flight of birds, or the peculiar appearance of the entrails of animals offered for sacrifice. The gods were also thought to deliver special communications at sacred places known as "oracles." The most famous of these was that of Apollo at Delphi. Here stood a temple of Apollo over a cleft in the rock, and over this cleft, in the dark inner recesses of the temple, was placed a tripod containing a seat for the priestess or Pythia, who delivered the oracles. Other famous oracles were those at Delos, at Cumae, and in the Libyan desert.

**23.** The old Roman religion was of an intensely practical nature and busied itself with the everyday life of the people. As each household was bound together by the tie of a common worship, so all the citizens were held together by a common reverence for the divinities and powers who protected and guided the state. The Roman religion thus formed an indispensable bond of union for the family as well as the nation.

## 24. Chronological Table of Vergil's Life

B.C.

70 Birth of Vergil. First consulship of Pompey and Crassus.
Trial of Verres.
Birth of Gallus.

65 Birth of Horace.

63 Birth of Octavius (afterward called Octavian, and still later called Augustus Caesar). Consulship of Cicero. Catiline's conspiracy. Annexation of Syria.

60 First Triumvirate of Pompey, Caesar, and Crassus.

59 Consulship of Caesar.

58 Cicero exiled. Caesar begins conquest of Gaul. Vergil is sent to school at Cremona.
57 Cicero recalled.
56 Conference of Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey at Luca, and renewal of the First Triumvirate.
55 Vergil assumes the **toga virīlis**. Death of Lucretius.
Second consulship of Pompey and Crassus. Caesar invades Britain.
54 Vergil attends college at Milan. Death of Catullus.
53 Vergil attends the university at Rome, taking special courses in philosophy and literature. The Parthians defeat and kill Crassus at Carrhae, capturing the Roman standards.
52 Revolt of Vercingetorix.
Pompey sole consul. Cicero's speech *Pro Milone*.
51 Cicero proconsul of Cilicia.
49 Caesar confers Roman citizenship on the inhabitants of Gallia Trānspadāna.
49–46 Civil war between Caesar and the senatorial faction led by Pompey.
48 Battle of Pharsalia: Caesar defeats Pompey and the senatorial faction.
48–47 The Alexandrine war.
47 War with Pharnaces.
46 Battle of Thapsus.
45 Battle of Munda, marking the final overthrow of the senatorial faction.
44 Assassination of Julius Caesar.
44–43 War at Mutina. Cicero's *Philippics*.
43 Octavian consul. Second Triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus. Assassination of Cicero. Birth of Ovid. Vergil begins the composition of the *Eclogues*.
42 Battle of Philippi. Overthrow of Brutus and Cassius.
41 War at Perusia. Confiscations of the Triumvirs. Vergil's farm lost; his friendship with Maecenas.
40 Consulship of Asinius Pollio. Treaty of Brundisium. Octavian compensates Vergil for the loss of his farm.
39 Treaty of Misenum. Vergil introduces Horace to Maecenas.
38 Vergil and Horace accompany Maecenas to Brundisium.
37 Vergil publishes his *Eclogues* (*Bucolics*), and begins work on his *Georgics*. Treaty of Tarentum. Second Triumvirate renewed. Phraates becomes king of Parthia.
36 Defeat of Sextus Pompey. Lepidus deposed as Triumvir. Parthian War.
33 Phraates attacks Media and Armenia.
31 Battle of Actium: Octavian completely overthrows Antony and Cleopatra. Octavian visits the East.
30 Death of Antony and Cleopatra. Annexation of Egypt. Settlement of the East by Octavian.
29 The *Georgics* published. The *Aeneid* begun. Octavian returns from the East and celebrates a triple triumph. The temple of Janus closed.
27 The titles of *Princeps* and *Augustus* conferred by the senate upon Octavian, who is henceforth known as Augustus Caesar. Death of Gallus.
26 Augustus in Spain. He corresponds with Vergil.
25 Annexation of Galatia. Propertius' *Cynthia*.
23 Death of Marcellus. Vergil recites portions of the *Aeneid* before Augustus and Octavia. Horace publishes the first three books of his *Odes*.
20 Expedition of Augustus to the East. The Parthians restore to the Romans the standards captured from Crassus at Carrhae in 53.
19 Vergil goes to Greece, returns with Augustus, and dies at Brundisium. Death of Tibullus. Horace publishes the first book of his *Epistles*.

## 25. Bibliography of Vergil

The following books will be found helpful and desirable in the library of any high school where Vergil is being studied:

Harper's *Classical Dictionary*. American Book.
Harper's *Latin Dictionary*. American Book.
Glover's *Virgil*. Macmillan.
Wetmore's *Index Vergilianus*. Yale University Press.
Prescott's *Development of Vergil's Art*. University of Chicago Press.
Gayley's *Classic Myths*. Ginn.
Sellar's *Roman Poets of the Augustan Age; Virgil*. Oxford University Press.
The article on Virgil in the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, or in any other good encyclopedia.
Conington's *Works of Virgil*, with commentary, in three volumes. George Bell & Sons, London.
Tyrrell's *Latin Poetry*. Ginn.
Some one or more good histories of Rome, such as that of Boak (Macmillan) or that of Frank (Holt).
Comparetti's *Vergil in the Middle Ages*. Macmillan.
Mackail's *Vergil and his Meaning for the World of Today*. Longmans, Green.

The following verse translations may be recommended: Dryden, Conington, William Morris, Rhoades, Billson, E. Fairfax Taylor, T. C. Williams, Ballard.

The following books are very desirable for those who read German:

Norden, *Das sechste Buch der Aeneis*.
Heinze, *Virgils epische Technik*.

The edition of Servius's *Latin Commentary on Vergil* (edited by Thilo and Hagen) is indispensable for any thorough understanding of Vergil's poems and should be in the hands of every one who wishes to do any scholarly work in this field.

# GENERAL DIRECTIONS

This book, with its visible vocabulary system, is so arranged that the complete vocabulary of any given passage is constantly before the reader.

In beginning the work of a given lesson, the student should open the book at the passage to be studied, and unfold the extensible sheet at the back of the book.

The reader will find two varieties of type employed in the Latin text, roman (ordinary light-faced) and italics. Words printed in roman type in the text are to be found in the vocabulary at the foot of a given page. Those printed in italics in the text will be found on the extensible sheet at the back of the book. The list of the italicized words of the text, which represent the most common words in the author, should be mastered as early as possible.

A dagger (†) after a word in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of this word in the work of the author being studied; an asterisk (*) after a word in the vocabulary indicates that it appears ten times or more in the work which is being read. Teachers who wish to give special vocabulary drills will find in the list at the back of the book and in the words followed by an asterisk perhaps the most valuable and the least wasteful of any material which may be available for their purpose.

This book may be employed with good results in a variety of ways, a few of which are here suggested as possibilities:

(1) It may be used as any other Latin text is commonly studied; that is, the teacher may assign a definite amount of work at each recitation, and the students may prepare this assignment and recite on it at the next meeting of the class. This is probably the least desirable method of studying any language.

(2) A much better method is to spend at least half of the recitation period in sight reading. The students should begin by quickly looking over the words followed by a dagger (†) in the vocabulary at the bottom of each page, and then be prepared to read. The teacher should never translate for them, but should give them an occasional hint or a question with respect to a form or a construction, and should make very brief comments on points that may appear obscure. In this way the students should usually cover the advanced lesson in class, so that their additional preparation would

primarily consist in a review or elaboration of the work already done in class under the direction of the teacher.

(3) A still more satisfactory method is, however, to arrange for twice as much time for class meeting as has been customary. The whole of this time should be spent working on the text under the direct supervision of the teacher, and should be devoted primarily to sight reading. The work of the students outside the class meeting should consist in a limited amount of supplementary reading and in a continual review of the grammar, both forms and syntax, as found in the grammatical appendix of this book. Since little or no outside preparation would be required, such a course should have no more credit than the ordinary type which meets the customary number of hours a week. Schools which can arrange their schedule on this basis will find their students making much more satisfactory progress and developing much more enthusiasm for their work.

NOTE TO THE STUDENT: For the meaning of the signs and abbreviations see page 14. The Latin dedication on page iii may be translated: *With pleasure the author dedicates this little book to the divine spirit of the prophet-poet Vergil in appreciation of his worth.*

# SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

*abl.* = ablative
*abs.* = absolute
*acc.* = accusative
*act.* = active
*adj.* = adjective
*adv.* = adverb, adverbial
*advers.* = adversative
*App.* = the Grammatical Appendix in this book
*appos.* = apposition, appositive
*asynd.* = asyndeton
*cf.* = Latin **cōnfer**, i.e. *compare*
*char.* = characteristic
*coll.* = collective
*compar.* = comparative
*condit.* = condition, conditional
*conj.* = conjunction
*constr.* = construction
*dat.* = dative
*dem.* = demonstrative
*dep.* = deponent
*dim.* = diminutive
*e.g.* = Latin **exemplī grātiā**, i.e. *for example*
*esp.* = especial, especially
*f.*, *fem.* = feminine
*fig.* = figurative, figuratively
*freq.* = frequentative
*fut.* = future
*gen.* = genitive
*hist.* = historical
*i.e.* = Latin **id est**, *that is*
*imp.* = imperative
*imperf.* = imperfect
*impers.* = impersonal, impersonally
*indecl.* = indeclinable
*indef.* = indefinite
*indic.* = indicative
*indir.* = indirect
*inf.* = infinitive
*instr.* = instrumental
*interj.* = interjection
*interrog.* = interrogative
*intr.* = intransitive
*Introd.* = the Introduction of this book
*l.* = line; *ll.* = lines
*lit.* = literal, literally
*loc.* = locative
*m.*, *masc.* = masculine
*n.*, *neut.* = neuter
*neg.* = negative
*nom.* = nominative
*num.* = numeral
*obj.* = object, objective
*opt.* = optative
*part.* = participle, partitive
*pass.* = passive
*perf.* = perfect
*pers.* = personal
*pl.* = plural
*pluperf.* = pluperfect
*poss.* = possessive
*pred.* = predicate
*prep.* = preposition
*pres.* = present
*pron.* = pronoun
*ref.* = reference
*reflex.* = reflexive
*rel.* = relative
*sc.* = Latin **scīlicet**, i.e. *supply, understand*
*sing.* = singular
*spec.* = specification
*subj.* = subject, subjective, subjunctive
*subst.* = substantive
*sup.* = superlative
*temp.* = temporal
*tr.* = transitive, transitively
*voc.* = vocative
*vol.* = volitive

* the asterisk in the vocabulary shows that the Latin word appears ten or more times in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

† the dagger in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of the Latin word in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

(1), this numeral after a Latin word in the vocabulary indicates that the word is a verb of the first conjugation and is to be inflected as **amō, āre, āvī, ātus**, *love, cherish*.

All Latin words in the notes and vocabularies are in bold face type. All definitions in the vocabularies are in roman (light face). All translations in the notes are in italics. All explanatory matter in the vocabularies is in italics.

# THE AENEID

## BOOK I

*ARMA virumque* canō, *Trojae quī prīmus ab ōrīs*
*Ītaliam fātō* profugus Lāvīna*que vēnit*
*lītora — multum ille et terrīs* jactātus *et* altō
*vī superum,* saevae memorem *Jūnōnis* ob *īram,*

---

**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea)†
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, proelaim†*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet†*
**Lāvīn(ī)us, a, um** Lavinian, of Lavinium†
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering, unforgetting†*
**ob** on account of (*acc.*)†
**profugus, a, um** exiled, fugitive†
**saevus, a, um** cruel, stern, fierce†*

---

**1–7. The theme of the poem, namely, the wanderings and wars of Aeneas, who after many struggles laid the foundation for the greatness of future Rome, in accordance with the decrees of fate.**

From the more extended introduction to the poem (lines 1–33) we learn: (1) the plan of the poet to describe the adventures of his hero, as is done in the *Odyssey*, and to depict wars and battles, as does the *Iliad;* (2) the deep religious conviction of the author, for whom the gods rule over all mortal affairs; (3) the national pride of the poet, found in his choice of material, and which later comes to its clearest expression in l. 33.

**1. Arma virumque:** the theme of the *Aeneid;* **arma** stands by metonymy for *deeds of arms, wars*, referring to the wars in which Aeneas engaged, both in Troy and in Italy; **virum** refers to Aeneas, so well known that he is not mentioned by name until l. 92. **Trojae:** with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.* **quī prīmus ab ōrīs Trojae (ad) Ītaliam vēnit.** This refers to Aeneas as the *first* of the Trojans to come to Italy after their native city Troy had been captured, sacked, and destroyed by the Greeks in the Trojan war. Strictly speaking, the Trojan Antenor had preceded him, but Antenor's arrival was of no great consequence and did not have the far-reaching results that the coming of Aeneas had. Compare the discovery of America by Leif Ericson with that by Columbus.

**2–3. (ad, in) Ītaliam, (ad, in) lītora:** acc. of place to which; App. 315. **fātō:** abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332; "such was the will of heaven." **Lāvīn(ī)a:** *of Lavinium*, an ancient city on the western coast of Italy, near the spot where Rome was later founded. Lavinium was reputed to have been the first Trojan settlement in Italy and to have been named for Lavinia, an Italian princess whom Aeneas married. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus, king of the Latins.

**3. multum:** with adverbial force, modifying **jactātus. ille:** Aeneas, the **virum** of l. 1. **(in) terrīs, et (in) altō:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **jactātus (est).**

**4. vī:** abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. **superum = superōrum,** gen. pl., *of the gods above.* **memorem:** a transferred epithet, logically belonging to **Jūnōnis,** but poetically applied to **īram. saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob īram:** an example of what is known as "interlocked order," **saevae** modifying **Jūnōnis,** and **memorem** modifying **īram.** This order is often found in Latin poetry. **Jūnōnis ob īram:** the reasons for Juno's hatred of Aeneas and the Trojans are given by Vergil in ll. 12–28.

*multa* quoque *et bellō* passus, *dum* conderet *urbem*
īnferret*que deōs* Latiō — *genus* unde Latīnum
Albānī*que patrēs atque altae moenia* Rōmae.
Mūsa, *mihī* causās memorā, *quō nūmine* laesō
*quidve* dolēns *rēgīna deum* tot *volvere cāsūs*
īnsignem pietāte *virum*, tot adīre *labōrēs*
impulerit. *Tantaene animīs* caelestibus *īrae?*
*Urbs antīqua fuit* (*Tyriī tenuēre* colōnī)

---

**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach, encounter†
**Albānus, a, um** Alban, of Alba Longa in central Italy, mother city of Rome†
**caelestis, e** divine, heavenly†
**causa, ae** *f.* reason, cause†*
**colōnus, ī** *m.* colonist, settler†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found, establish†*
**doleō, ēre, uī, itus** suffer, grieve (at), be angry (at, with), resent†
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** strike (against), drive, force†
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring (into)†
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked, splendid†*
**laedō, ere, sī, sus** strike, hurt, offend, thwart†
**Latīnus, a, um** Latin, of Latium†
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district of central Italy around Rome†*
**memorō** (1) (re)call, recount, relate†*
**Mūsa, ae** *f.* Muse, goddess of the liberal arts†
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure†*
**pietās, ātis** *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty†*
**quoque** also†*
**Rōma, ae** *f.* Rome, a city and empire†
**tot** so many†*
**unde** whence, from which source†*

---

**5-6. conderet, īnferret:** purpose; App. 374.

**5. urbem:** Lavinium. **passus (est Aenēās). (in) bellō:** abl. of place; App. 319; referring to the enemies whom he had to conquer after landing in Italy. **multa:** cognate accusative with **passus**; App. 307, 313.

**6. īnferret deōs:** App. 374; in antiquity migrating peoples regularly carried with them their gods, either as images or other sacred symbols; see ll. 68 and 378. **Latiō:** dat. of direction = **ad (in) Latium**; App. 306. **unde genus Latīnum (est):** Roman legends traced the origin of the Latin race, of the kingdom of Alba Longa (forerunner of Rome), and of the founding of Rome, back to the coming of the Trojans under Aeneas to Italy.

**7. (unde) Albānī patrēs (sunt):** in Roman times many of the noble senatorial families took much pride in tracing their ancestry back to Troy, through the great families of Alba Longa. **patrēs:** with the first syllable short; App. 17. **altae:** may refer either to position, *situated on the (seven) high hills*, or to the power and prestige of *lofty (mighty) Rome*.

**8–11. Invocation of the Muse.**

**8. Mūsa:** it is the custom of epic poets to invoke the muse for inspiration and to assign to some such divine source the gift of being able to compose their poems. **mihī:** this word in poetry may have the final **i** either long or short. The same is true of **tibi, sibi, ubi,** and **ibi. quō nūmine (Jūnōnis) laesō:** abl. abs. or abl. of cause; App. 332, 343.

**9. quidve dolēns:** *or vexed at what.* **rēgīna de(ōr)um:** Juno as Jupiter's wife was queen of the gods. **cāsūs:** object of **volvere.**

**10. virum = Aenēān,** subject of **volvere,** which depends upon **impulerit. pietāte:** dependent on **īnsignem;** the most prominent characteristic of Aeneas was his **pietās,** *loyalty* or *devotion to duty*.

**11. impulerit:** subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349, 350. **Tantaene = suntne tantae īrae caelestibus animīs? animīs:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **īrae:** poetic plural, often employed in Latin where English would ordinarily use the singular.

**12–33. Reasons for the wrath of Juno against Aeneas and the Trojans.**

**12. Urbs antīqua fuit:** according to the tradition which Vergil here follows. Carthage was in fact founded some four hundred years later than the traditional date of the fall of Troy, 1184 B.C. **Tyriī:** *from Tyre*, a city of Phoenicia,

Karthāgō, *Ītaliam* contrā Tiberīna*que* longē
ōstia, dīves opum studiīs*que* asperrima *bellī;*
*quam Jūnō fertur terrīs* magis *omnibus ūnam*
posthabitā coluisse Samō: *hīc illius arma,*
*hīc* currus *fuit; hoc rēgnum dea gentibus esse,*
*sī* quā *fāta* sinant, *jam tum tenditque* fovet*que.*
Prōgeniem *sed* enim Trojānō *ā sanguine dūcī*
*audierat Tyriās* ōlim *quae* verteret *arcēs;*

**asper, era, erum** harsh, rough, fierce†*
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, dwell (in), honor, cherish†*
**contrā** opposite, facing (*acc.*)†*
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car†*
**dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis** rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†
**enim** for, indeed, in truth†*
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** cherish, fondle†
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* Carthage, great commercial city in North Africa, rival of Rome†
**longē** far (off), at a distance†*
**magis** more, rather†*
**ōlim** (at) some time, once†*
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, power, wealth†*
**ōstium,** (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance†
**posthabeō, ēre, uī, itus** place after, esteem less†
**prōgeniēs, ēī** *f.* offspring, race†
**quā** in any (some) way, where†
**Samos, ī** *f.* island of the Aegean, center of the worship of Juno†
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** permit, allow†*
**studium,** (i)ī *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit†
**Tiberīnus, a, um** of the Tiber, an Italian river on which Rome is situated†
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy†*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, change†*

whence Carthage was said to have been settled. The Phoenicians were the great traders of their time, and Carthage on the northern shore of Africa midway on the Mediterranean occupied a strategic position for controlling the commerce of these regions. **tenuēre:** shorter form for **tenuērunt**; App. 204, 4.

**13. longē:** modifying **contrā**, which governs both **Ītaliam** and **Tiberīna ōstia.**

**14. ōstia:** see note on **īrae**, l. 11. The general expression, **Ītaliam,** is followed by the more specific **Tiberīna ōstia** for the sake of greater clearness and vividness. **opum:** gen. with the adjective **dīves,** *rich in resources;* App. 287. **studiīs:** abl. of respect, depends on **asperrima**; App. 325. This phrase would remind the Romans of their bitter struggles with Carthage in the three Punic Wars.

**15. quam:** refers to **urbs,** l. 12, and is object of **coluisse. fertur:** *is said,* a common meaning. **terrīs omnibus** = **terrīs aliīs; terrīs** is abl. with comparative **magis**; App. 327. **ūnam** = **sōlam,** as often.

**16. posthabitā Samō:** abl. abs.; App. 343. Juno greatly loved Samos, an island off the western coast of Asia Minor. According to the myth, the goddess had been reared in Samos, had married Jupiter there, and one of her temples, one of the most famous in the world, was situated there. **Samō:** the final vowel is not elided, although the following word begins with an **h.** This failure to elide is called *hiatus;* App. 399. **illius (Jūnōnis):** the i of the genitive ending of the nine pronouns and adjectives ending in **ius** is usually long, but often short in poetry as here. **arma (fuērunt):** doubtless refers to ancient arms, chariot, and other relics preserved in Juno's temple at Samos.

**16–17. hīc, hīc, hoc:** repeated for emphasis; this repetition is called *anaphora;* App. 413. **hoc:** refers to **urbs** l. 12, but is attracted to the case of the predicate noun **rēgnum,** *the ruling power.* **Jūnō dea jam tum tenditque fovetque hanc urbem (Karthāginem) esse rēgnum omnibus gentibus, sed fāta voluērunt Rōmam esse hoc rēgnum. gentibus:** dat. of reference; App. 301.

**18. quā (viā):** abl. of manner; **quā** is an indef. pron. **fāta:** the power of the fates was greater even than that of the gods.

**19. Prōgeniem:** the Romans. **dūcī:** *was being derived,* indir. disc.; App. 390; depends on **audi(v)erat** (l. 20), of which Juno is the subject understood.

**20. Tyriās arcēs** = **Karthāginem. verteret:** subj. of characteristic; App. 389, or rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

*hinc* populum lātē *rēgem bellōque* superbum
*ventūrum* excidiō Libyae: *sīc volvere* Parcās.
*Id* metuēns veteris*que* memor Sāturnia *bellī*,
*prīma quod ad Trojam* prō cārīs gesserat Argīs
(necdum etiam causae *īrārum* saevī*que* dolōrēs
exciderant *animō; manet altā mente* repostum
jūdicium Paridis sprētae*que* injūria formae
*et genus* invīsum *et* raptī Ganymēdis *honōrēs*) —

**Argī, ōrum** *m.* Argos, a city in Greece, center of the worship of Juno; Greece†
**cārus, a, um** dear, fond, beloved†*
**causa, ae** *f.* reason, cause*
**dolor, ōris** *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion†*
**etiam** besides, also, even†*
**excidium, (i)ī** *n.* destruction, overthrow†
**excidō, ere, ī** fall from, perish†
**forma, ae** *f.* beauty, shape, form†*
**Ganymēdēs, is** *m.* son of Laömedon, king of Troy; carried off by Jupiter's eagle and made cupbearer to the gods†
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on), wage†*
**injūria, ae** *f.* wrong, insult, injustice†
**invīsus, a, um** hated, hateful, odious†
**jūdicium, (i)ī** *n.* decision, judgment†
**lātē** widely, far and wide†
**Libya, ae** *f.* region of North Africa†*
**memor, oris** remembering, mindful, unforgetting (*gen.*)*
**metuō, ere, uī** fear, dread†
**necdum** not yet, nor yet†
**Parcae, ārum** *f.* the Fates†
**Paris, idis** *m.* Trojan prince, son of Priam, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan War†
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation†*
**prō** before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)†*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), plunder†*
**repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** put (back, away), store up†*
**saevus, a, um** cruel, stern, fierce*
**Sāturnia, ae** *f.* Juno, daughter of Saturn, father of the gods†
**spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētus** despise, reject†
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty†*
**vetus, eris** old, former, ancient†*

**21. hinc: ā Trojānō sanguine,** or **ab hāc prōgeniē. populum:** subj. of **ventūrum (esse)** (l. 22), an inf. in indir. disc., depending on **audierat;** App. 390. **rēgem:** used like a participle (**rēgnantem**) here, and modified by **lātē. bellō:** abl. of respect, depending on **superbum;** App. 325.

**22. excidiō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303; *for the destruction.* **Libyae:** for **Āfricae,** meaning especially **Karthāginī. Parcās = fāta:** subject of **volvere.** The Parcae were represented as three sisters, Clotho (*Spinner*), who spun the thread of life for each mortal; Lachesis (*Measurer*), who measured the thread; and Atropos (*Inevitable*), who cut the thread when any one had reached his allotted days.

"Somewhere on an unknown shore,
Where the rivers of life their waters pour,
Sit three sisters forevermore,
Spinning a silver thread."

**sīc (Jūnō audīverat) Parcās volvere.**

**23. Id:** the destined supremacy of Rome and overthrow of Carthage (ll. 19–22). **metuēns:** modifies **Sāturnia (Jūnō)** and has **Id** as object. **Sāturnia:** *Saturn's daughter,* subject of **arcēbat. veteris bellī:** the Trojan War.

**24. prīma:** (*as*) *chief, leader, foremost,* modifies **ea** (understood), which refers to Juno. The goddess had taken a leading part in assisting the Greeks against the Trojans. The reasons for her hatred of the Trojans are given in ll. 27–28. See also Introd. 10. **cārīs Argīs:** Argos, a noted center of the worship of Juno, stands here for all Greece and the Greeks.

**25. īrārum:** poetic plural; see note on **īrae** (l. 11).

**26. (ex) animō:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **(in) altā mente:** abl. of place where, *in her deep mind,* i.e., *deep in her mind;* App. 319. **repos(i)tum:** the longer form, with its three successive short syllables (⏑ ⏑ ⏑), could not be used in hexameter verse.

**27. jūdicium Paridis:** refers to the famous Judgment of Paris. Read Tennyson's *Oenone* and see Introd. 10 for the story. **sprētae formae:** appositional gen. with **injūria;** App. 281; *the insult to her slighted beauty,* shown by the adverse decision of Paris.

**28. genus invīsum:** Juno hated the



*Alinari, Rome* *Michelangelo*

THE PARCAE



*Alinari, Rome* *Vatican Museum*

JUNO

*hīs* accēnsa *super* jactātōs *aequore tōtō*
Trōas, relliquiās *Danaum atque* immītis Achillī, 30
arcēbat longē Latiō, *multōsque per* annōs
*errābant āctī fātīs maria omnia circum.*
*Tantae* mōlis *erat* Rōmānam condere *gentem.*
*Vix ē* cōnspectū Siculae *tellūris in* altum
*vēla dabant laetī et* spūmās salis aere *ruēbant,* 35

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, enrage†
**Achillēs, is** (ī) *m.* Greek leader before Troy†*
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze†*
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea)
**annus, ī** *m.* year†*
**arceō, ēre, uī** keep off, defend, restrain†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found, establish*
**cōnspectus, ūs** *m.* sight, view†
**immītis, e** fierce, cruel†
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet*
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district of central Italy around Rome*
**longē** far (off), afar*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* mass, burden, difficulty†*
**re(l)liquiae, ārum** *f.* rest, remnant(s), leaving(s)†
**Rōmānus, a, um** of Rome, Roman†*
**sal, salis** *n.* (*m.*) salt (water), sea†
**Siculus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily, a large island south of Italy†
**spūma, ae** *f.* foam, froth, spray†
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan†*

whole Trojan race, partly because of Paris, but also because Dardanus, the founder of the Trojans, was the son of Electra, her hated rival. **Ganymēdis:** a royal Trojan youth, brother of Priam, snatched up (**raptī**) by an eagle into heaven, where he was beloved by Jupiter, who made him his cupbearer, instead of Juno's own daughter, Hebe.

**29. hīs:** abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332; dependent on **accēnsa,** and referring to the three chief causes of Juno's hatred which have just been mentioned in ll. 26–28. **accēnsa (Jūnō). super:** adverb, *too, also,* i.e., in addition to her fears for Carthage. **(in) aequore tōtō:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

**30. Trōăs:** a Greek form; acc. pl. of **Trōs. re(l)liquiās:** sometimes spelled with **ll,** as here, making the first syllable long so that the word may be used in hexameter verse. **Dana(ōr)um, Achillī:** subjective genitives, *the leavings* (*remnants*) *of the Greeks and of Achilles,* i.e., those Trojans whom the Greeks and Achilles had allowed to escape.

**31. arcēbat:** the imperfect of continued action; App. 351, 2. **(ā) Latiō:** separation; App. 340. **longē Latiō:** note the repetition of the letter **l;** such a repetition is called *alliteration;* App. 411. Alliteration, or the recurrence of the same sounds in successive syllables or words, is found in all languages, especially in early verse. It is a special characteristic of early Germanic poetry, nearly all Old English verse being alliterative.

**32. (Trōes) errābant. fātīs:** abl. of means. **āctī:** participle of **agō,** modifies **Trōes** understood. **maria omnia circum:** in poetry the preposition is often placed after its noun, as here. This is called *anastrophe;* App. 414.

**33. Tantae mōlis:** gen. of quality in the predicate; App. 285, *a.*; *of so great effort was it.* This line, summarizing the preceding lines, forms a powerful and effective close to this first section of the *Aeneid* and serves as a general introduction to the whole poem.

**34–49. Aeneas and the Trojans set sail from Sicily for Italy, as they hope, happy at the prospect of the end of their wanderings. Bitter soliloquy of Juno, who chafes at the apparent failure of her plans to keep Aeneas and the Trojans from reaching Italy.**

**34.** The reader is now plunged in **mediās rēs:** "into the midst of the action," and we are abruptly introduced to Aeneas and his followers sailing away from the coast of Sicily. They have now been wandering for seven years since the destruction of Troy, their native city. These earlier events (the fall of Troy and their seven years of wandering) are later on narrated by Aeneas to Dido (Books II and III).

**35. laetī (Trōes):** subject of **dabant. spūmās salis aere ruēbant:** note the alliteration; App. 411. **aere:** the prows of the ships were sheathed with bronze.

*cum Jūnō* aeternum *servāns sub pectore* vulnus
*haec sēcum: "Mēne* inceptō dēsistere *victam*
*nec posse Ītaliā Teucrōrum* āvertere *rēgem?*
Quippe vetor *fātīs.* Pallas*ne* exūrere *classem*
Argīvum *atque ipsōs potuit* summergere pontō
*ūnius* ob noxam *et* furiās Ajācis Oīleī?
*Ipsa Jovis* rapidum jaculāta *ē* nūbibus *ignem*
disjēcit*que* ratēs ēvertit*que aequora ventīs,*
*illum* exspīrantem trānsfīxō *pectore flammās*

---

**aeternus, a, um** eternal, everlasting†*
**Ajāx, ācis** *m.* Greek leader, who in the sack of Troy had torn Priam's daughter, Cassandra, from the sanctuary of Minerva†*
**Argīvus, a, um** Argive, Greek†
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** keep off, turn aside†*
**dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** cease (from), desist†
**disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** scatter, disperse†
**ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn†
**exspīrō** (1) breathe out, exhale†
**exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn (up)†
**furiae, ārum** *f.* madness, rage†
**inceptum, ī** *n.* beginning, undertaking, purpose†
**jaculor, ārī, ātus** hurl, throw†
**noxa, ae** *f.* crime, fault, hurt, harm†
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, mist, fog†*
**ob** on account of (*acc.*)
**Oīleus, eī** *m.* Greek king, father of Ajax†
**Pallas, adis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea†*
**quippe** truly, indeed, surely, forsooth†
**rapidus, a, um** swift, whirling, consuming†*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship†*
**summergō** (**subm–**), **ere, rsī, rsus** sink, drown†
**trānsfīgō, ere, xī, xus** pierce, transfix†
**vetō, āre, uī, itus** forbid, prevent†
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, blow†*

---

**36–37. Jūnō . . . haec(dīxit).**

**36. aeternum vulnus:** the causes of this anger have been given above: her fear for Carthage, the Judgment of Paris, etc. **sub pectore:** *deep in her heart.*

**37. sēcum = cum sē;** App. 321, *a.* **mē:** subj. of **dēsistere. Mēne:** **–ne** is the interrogative particle appended to the pronoun, **mē.**

**37–38: dēsistere . . . nec posse:** infinitives, in an exclamatory question; *I beaten desist from my undertaking and not be able,* etc.; App. 262. **(ab) inceptō:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **victam:** from **vincō;** it modifies **mē.**

**38. (ab) Ītaliā:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **Teucrōrum:** the Trojans are often referred to as **Teucrī,** a name derived from Teucer, one of the founders of the Trojan race.

**39. Quippe vetor:** ironical. **fātīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **–ne = nōnne. Pallas (Athēna):** Minerva.

**40. Argīvum: Argīvōrum;** App. 37, *d.* **ipsōs:** (*the masters*) *themselves,* i.e., the Argives, as contrasted with **classem. Ipse** often means *the master,* the one of most importance in a situation, as contrasted with persons or things of less importance. **pontō:** abl. of place where; App. 319, or means; App. 331.

**41. ūnius Ajācis Oīleī:** a whole fleet was destroyed on account of one man. For the short **i** in **ūnius** see the note on **illius** (l. 16). **ob noxam et furiās:** Ajax, son of Oïleus, had desecrated the temple of Minerva during the sack of Troy, when before the very altar of the sanctuary he had seized Cassandra, daughter of Priam and priestess of Minerva. Enraged at such rash irreverence, Minerva later sank the ship of Ajax and destroyed him with lightning. **Ajācis Oīleī:** *of Ajax (son) of Oïleus.* Observe that the **A** forms a long syllable by position; App. 6, *b.*, and that **–eī** of **Oīleī** is here read as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. This Ajax was less renowned than the other Ajax, son of Telamon.

**42. Ipsa:** (*the goddess, Minerva*) *in person.* She was the only divinity, except Jupiter, who might hurl the lightning. **Jovis ignem:** *lightning.*

**43. -que . . . -que:** *both . . . and;* polysyndeton; App. 439.

**44. illum (Ajācem):** with emphatic first position, which contrasts it with the ships and the sea previously mentioned.

turbine corripuit scopulō*que* īnfīxit acūtō;
*ast ego, quae dīvum* incēdō *rēgīna Jovisque*
*et* soror *et conjūnx, ūnā cum gente* tot annōs
*bella* gerō. *Et* quisquam *nūmen Jūnōnis* adōrat
praetereā *aut* supplex *ārīs* impōnet *honōrem?*"
*Tālia* flammātō *sēcum dea* corde volūtāns
nimbōrum *in* patriam, *loca* fēta *furentibus* Austrīs,
Aeoliam *venit. Hīc vastō rēx* Aeolus antrō
luctantīs *ventōs* tempestātēs*que* sonōrās
*imperiō* premit *ac* vinclīs *et* carcere frēnat.

**acūtus, a, um** sharp, pointed†
**adōrō** (1) worship, adore, honor†
**Aeolia, ae** *f.* one of the Liparian Islands near Sicily†
**Aeolus, ī** *m.* god of the winds†
**annus, ī** *m.* year*
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern†*
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind†*
**carcer, eris** *m.* prison, inclosure†
**cor, cordis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings†*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)†*
**fētus, a, um** teeming, pregnant†
**flammō** (1) inflame, kindle†
**frēnō** (1) curb, check, restrain†
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on), wage*
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place on (*dat.*)†*
**incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** walk (proudly), stride†
**īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus** fasten on, impale†
**luctor, ārī, ātus** wrestle, struggle†
**nimbus, ī** *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm†*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country†*
**praetereā** besides, hereafter
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, control†*
**quisquam, quaequam, quicquam** any(one), any(thing)†
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag†*
**sonōrus, a, um** roaring, howling†
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister†*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble†*
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* tempest, storm†*
**tot** so many*
**turbō, inis** *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm†
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, chain†*
**volūtō** (1) roll, revolve, ponder†

**(ex) pectore:** abl. of separation; App. 340.

**45. turbine:** abl. of means; App. 331. **(Pallas) corripuit. scopulō:** dat. with compound **īnfīxit;** or abl. of place where, as **īnfīgō** may take either construction; App. 298, 319.

**46. ego:** with proud self-consciousness and in contrast with Minerva; **ego** is never expressed unless emphatic. **dīv(ōr)um:** App. 37, *d.*

**47. tot annōs:** acc. of extent (duration) of time; App. 314; ten years around Troy, and now seven more years while the Trojans wander. **ūnā cum gente = cum Teucrīs.**

**48. gerō:** of past action continued into the present; App. 351, 1, *b.* **Et quisquam:** "can any one longer respect me, if I show myself such a weakling?" This figure is called a *rhetorical question.* **Jūnōnis = meum:** Juno is speaking, but the use of her own name is more picturesque and effective than the use of the possessive adjective.

**49. supplex:** (*as a*) *suppliant.* **ārīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **honōrem:** *honor*, i.e., an *offering* which would honor Juno.

**50–80. Juno persuades Aeolus, god of the winds, to send forth a storm to prevent Aeneas and the Trojans from reaching Italy.**

**50. Tālia:** used substantively, as object of **volūtāns;** *such things*, i.e., *such thoughts.* **(in) flammātō corde:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **sēcum = cum sē,** as in l. 37; App. 321, *a.*

**51. patriam:** with the first syllable short; App. 17. **Austrīs:** abl. with **fēta,** literally, *south winds*, but often meaning *winds* in general; App. 433. **fēta furentibus:** note the alliteration; App. 411.

**51–52. loca . . . Aeoliam:** apposition with **patriam. Hīc:** adverb, *here.* **(in) vastō antrō:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

**53. luctantīs:** acc. pl. of an *i*-stem.

**54. vinclīs:** the longer form **vinculīs** (– ◡ –) could not be used in hexameter. **imperiō, vinc(u)līs, carcere:** ablatives of means; App. 331. **frēnat:** a picture

*Illī* indignantēs *magnō cum* murmure *montis*
*circum* claustra fremunt; celsā sedet Aeolus *arce*
scēptra *tenēns* mollit*que animōs et* temperat *īrās;*
nī *faciat, maria ac terrās caelumque* profundum
quippe *ferant* rapidī *sēcum* verrant*que per aurās.*
*Sed pater* omnipotēns spēluncīs abdidit *ātrīs*
*hoc* metuēns mōlem*que et montīs* īnsuper *altōs*
imposuit, *rēgemque dedit quī* foedere certō
*et* premere *et* laxās scīret *dare jussus* habēnās.
*Ad quem tum Jūnō* supplex *hīs vōcibus* ūsa *est:*
"Aeole, *namque tibī dīvum pater atque* hominum *rēx*
*et* mulcēre *dedit flūctūs et tollere ventō,*
*gēns* inimīca *mihī* Tyrrhēnum nāvigat *aequor*

---

**abdō, ere, didī, ditus** put away, hide†
**Aeolus, ī** *m.* god of the winds
**celsus, a, um** lofty, high, towering†*
**certus, a, um** fixed, sure†*
**claustrum, ī** *n.* bar(rier), bolt†
**foedus, eris** *n.* agreement, condition, treaty†
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** murmur, roar†*
**habēna, ae** *f.* rein†
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human†*
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** plaee upon*
**indignor, ārī, ātus** be angry, ehafe†
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly†
**īnsuper** above, besides†
**laxus, a, um** loose, free, lax†
**metuō, ere, uī** fear, dread
**mōlēs, is** *f.* mass, burden, strueture*
**molliō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** soothe, tame†
**mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus** ealm, soothe†
**murmur, uris** *n.* murmur, roar, rumble†
**nāvigō** (1) sail, navigate†
**nī, nisi** if not, unless†*
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, all-powerful†
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, eontrol*
**profundus, a, um** deep, high, vast†
**quippe** indeed, surely, forsooth
**rapidus, a, um** swift, whirling, eonsuming*
**scēptrum, ī** *n.* staff, seepter, power†
**sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** know (how), understand†
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit†*
**spēlunca, ae** *f.* cave, eavern†
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**temperō** (1) control, calm, refrain†
**Tyrrhēnus, a, um** Tyrrhenian, of Etruria, a district of northwestern Italy†
**ūtor, ī, ūsus** use, employ (*abl.*)†
**verrō, ere, ī, versus** sweep†

---

drawn from managing spirited horses, as in l. 63, **premere et dare laxās habēnās.**

**55. magnō cum murmure montis:** alliteration (**m**) and onomatopœia; App. 411, 434; **murmure** is abl. of manner; App. 328.

**56.** (**in**) **celsā arce:** abl. of plaee, apparently a lofty seat within the eave or just outside on a mountain top.

**57. scēptra:** for the use of the poetic plural see the note on **īrae** (l. 11). **animōs** (**ventōrum**) **et īrās** (**ventōrum**).

**58. nī** (**Aeolus id**) **faciat = nī molliat animōs** (**ventōrum**) **et temperet īrās** (**eōrum**); **faciat** is subj. in a pres. condit. eontrary to fact; App. 382.

**59.** (**ventī**) **rapidī:** *the winds in their madness.* **sēcum = cum sē**; App. 321, *a.* **ferant, verrant** (**maria ac terrās caelumque profundum**).

**60. pater omnipotēns: Juppiter.** (**in**) **spēluncīs ātrīs = antrō** (l. 52), abl. of place where; App. 319. **abdidit** (**illōs ventōs**).

**61. hoc:** obj. of **metuēns. mōlem et montīs:** alliteration; App. 411. **montīs:** acc. pl., an *i*-stem.

**62. rēgem** (**Aeolum**) **imposuit** (**ventīs**). **foedere certō:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**63. premere:** object of **scīret,** *would know* (*how*) *to grasp tightly,* so as to draw in the reins. For the figure of horsemanship see the note on **frēnat** (l. 54). **scīret:** rel. elause of purpose or eharacteristie; App. 388, 389. **dare:** also obj. of **scīret. jussus** (**ā Jove**): (*when*) *ordered* (*by Jupiter*).

**64. hīs vōcibus:** abl. with **ūtor**; App. 342.

**65. Aeole:** voe. **dīv**(**ōr**)**um pater atque hominum rēx: Juppiter. tibī:** for the length of the final **i,** see the note on **mihi** (l. 8).

**66. mulcēre, tollere** (**flūctūs**): objeets of **dedit,** *has granted.* **ventō:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**67. gēns inimīca mihī: Teucrī. Tyr-**

Īlium *in Ītaliam* portāns *victōsque* penātīs:
incute *vim ventīs* summersās*que* obrue *puppīs*,
*aut age* dīversōs *et* disjice *corpora* pontō.
*Sunt mihi* bis septem praestantī *corpore* nymphae,
*quārum quae* formā pulcherrima, Dēiopēa,
cōnūbiō jungam stabilī propriam*que* dicābō,
*omnīs ut tēcum* meritīs prō *tālibus* annōs
exigat *et* pulchrā *faciat tē* prōle *parentem*."

**annus, ī** *m.* year*
**bis** twice†*
**cōnūbium,** (i)ī *n.* marriage, wedlock†
**Dēiopēa, ae** *f.* a nymph†
**dicō** (1) consecrate, dedicate†
**disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** scatter, disperse
**dīversus, a, um** scattered, diverse†*
**exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** complete, pass†
**forma, ae** *f.* beauty, shape, form*
**Īlium,** (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy, a city of Asia Minor†
**incutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** strike (into) (*dat.*)†
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke, unite†*
**meritum, ī** *n.* desert, merit†
**nympha, ae** *f.* nymph, one of the minor divinities of nature represented as beautiful maidens dwelling in the forests, streams, meadows, mountains, etc.†
**obruō, ere, uī, utus** overwhelm, crush†
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods †*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea*
**portō** (1) carry, bear, bring†*
**praestāns, antis** surpassing, excellent
**prō** before, for (*abl.*)*
**prōlēs, is** *f.* offspring, progeny†*
**proprius, a, um** one's own, permanent†
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, illustrious†*
**septem** seven†
**stabilis, e** firm, lasting, stable†
**summergō** (**subm–**), **ere, rsī, rsus** sink

**rhēnum aequor:** that part of the Mediterranean west of Italy, east of Corsica and Sardinia, and north of Sicily.

**68. Īlium . . . portāns victōsque penātīs:** see note on **īnferret deōs** (l. 6.). They were *bearing Ilium* in their plan to found a new city which should continue the race and the customs of the **Īlium** (Troy) which had been destroyed. The origin of the worship of the penates, household gods at Rome, was lost in antiquity; and the Romans explained this and other old customs by referring their beginnings to Troy. **victōs:** *defeated* by the Greeks in the Trojan War.

**69. incute:** imp. **vim ventīs:** alliteration; App. 411. **ventīs:** dat. with a compound; App. 298. **summersās obrue puppīs:** *overwhelm the sunken ships*, i.e., *sink and overwhelm the ships*, a good example of the figure known as *prolepsis*, or *anticipation;* App. 440.

**70. age:** imp. **dīversōs (Teucrōs):** i.e., drive the Trojans in different directions and scatter their corpses over the sea; another example of prolepsis; App. 440. **pontō:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

**71. mihi:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **bis septem:** *twice seven;* more poetic than to say simply *fourteen.* **praestantī corpore:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

**72. formā:** abl. of respect; App. 325; dependent on **pulcherrima. Dēiopēa:** nom. by attraction into the case of the relative pronoun, **quae;** the accusative would be expected, as object of **jungam;** App. 242, *a.* **quārum:** use the English demonstrative in translation, and read as though you had: **Dēiopēam, quae (est) eārum (nymphārum) pulcherrima formā, jungam (tibi) stabilī cōnūbiō et (eam) dicābō (tuam) propriam.**

**73. cōnūbiō:** *in wedlock*, abl. of place where or means; App. 319, 331. **cōnūbiō** is trisyllabic by synizesis, and pronounced as though written **cōnūbjō;** App. 401. **jungam (tibi). dicābō (eam) propriam:** *I shall dedicate her (Deiopea) to you (as) your very own.* Juno was goddess of marriage. **propriam:** with the first syllable short; App. 17.

**74. tēcum = cum tē;** App. 321, *a.*

**75. prōle:** abl. of quality; App. 330, or means; App. 331. **pulchrā prōle parentem:** alliteration; App. 411. **exigat, faciat:** result or purpose; App. 364, 388. **parentem = patrem**

Aeolus *haec* contrā: "*Tuus, Ō rēgīna, quid* optēs
explōrāre *labor; mihi* jussa capessere fās *est.*
*Tū mihi* quodcumque *hoc rēgnī, tū* scēptra *Jovemque*
conciliās, *tū dās* epulīs accumbere *dīvum*
nimbōrum*que facis* tempestātum*que* potentem."
*Haec ubi dicta,* cavum conversā cuspide *montem*
impulit *in* latus: *ac ventī* velut *agmine factō,*
quā *data* porta, *ruunt et terrās* turbine perflant.
Incubuēre *marī tōtumque ā sēdibus īmīs*
ūnā Eurus*que* Notus*que ruunt* crēber*que* procellīs

---

**accumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** recline (at) (*dat.*)†
**Aeolus, ī** *m.* god of the winds
**capessō, ere, īvī, ītus** (under)take, perform†
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted†*
**conciliō** (1) win over, unite†
**contrā** opposite, against, in reply (*acc.*)*
**convertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn (around), reverse†
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, crowded†*
**cuspis, idis** *f.* point, spear†
**epulae, ārum** *f.* banquet, feast†
**Eurus, ī** *m.* (east) wind†
**explōrō** (1) examine, search out†
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, divine law, duty†*
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive, strike (against)
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** lie upon, brood over (*dat.*)†
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank†*
**nimbus, ī** *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind†
**optō** (1) desire, choose, hope (for)†*
**perflō** (1) blow (over, through)†
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, door, opening†*
**potēns, entis** powerful, ruling (*gen.*)†*
**procella, ae** *f.* blast, gust†
**quā** where, in any way
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whatever†*
**scēptrum, ī** *n.* staff, scepter, power
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* tempest, storm; time*
**turbō, inis** *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
**ūnā** together, at the same time†
**velut(ī)** (even) as, just as†*

---

**76. haec (dīxit). optēs:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **Tuus (est) labor:** *thine (is) the task.* Aeolus thus absolves himself from responsibility, if his obedience to Juno gets him into trouble.

**77. mihi:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **jussa (tua).**

**78. quodcumque hoc (est) rēgnī:** *whatever this is (in the way) of a kingdom,* an expression of modesty. **rēgnī:** part. gen. with **quodcumque;** App. 286. **scēptra:** for the plural see the note on **īrae** (l. 11). **Tū:** always emphatic, and here strengthened by repetition (anaphora); App. 413.

**79. epulīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298. The ancient Romans regularly reclined at meals. **dīv(ōr)um:** App. 37, *d.* **accumbere:** object of **dās,** *you grant (me) the privilege of reclining.* As one of the lesser gods, Aeolus was dependent upon the favor of the more powerful divinities.

**80. facis (mē) potentem nimbōrum tempestātumque.**

**81–123. Description of the storm which wrecks part of the Trojan ships and scatters the rest.**

**81. ubi haec dicta (sunt ab Aeolō).** Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

**82. impulit:** Aeolus thus opens the barriers and lets out the winds. **agmine factō:** abl. abs.; App. 343; a figure of speech drawn from military life.

**83.** Observe the alliteration, every word but one in this line containing a t; App. 411. **data (est). turbine:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**84. Incubuēre = incubuērunt,** from **incumbō.** The perfect, after a series of presents, denotes rapid or instantaneous action; *they have fallen upon the sea.* **marī:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **tōtum (mare):** obj. of **ruunt,** l. 85.

**85. ruunt:** *overturn.* **Eurus, Notus, Āfricus:** all the winds blow at once, and in their struggles produce a mighty storm. **procellīs:** abl. of respect or means with

Āfricus *et vastōs volvunt ad lītora flūctūs:*
īnsequitur *clāmorque virum* strīdor*que* rudentum.
*Ēripiunt* subitō nūbēs *caelumque diemque*
*Teucrōrum ex oculīs;* pontō *nox* incubat *ātra.*
Intonuēre polī *et* crēbrīs micat *ignibus* aethēr
praesentem*que virīs* intentant *omnia mortem.*
Extemplō *Aenēae* solvuntur frīgore membra;
ingemit *et* duplicīs *tendēns ad sīdera* palmās
*tālia vōce refert:* "*Ō* ter*que* quater*que* beātī,
*quīs ante ōra patrum Trojae sub moenibus altīs*
contigit oppetere! *Ō Danaum* fortissime *gentis*
Tȳdīdē! *mēne* Īliacīs occumbere *campīs*

---

**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether†*
**Āfricus, ī** *m.* (southwest) wind†
**beātus, a, um** happy, blessed†
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** toueh, befall†*
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, erowded*
**duplex, icis** double, both†
**extemplō** immediately, forthwith†
**fortis, e** strong, brave, valiant†*
**frīgus, oris** *n.* eold, ehill†
**Īliacus, a, um** of Ilium, Trojan†*
**incubō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus)** lie upon, brood over (*dat.*)†
**ingemō, ere, uī** groan†
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, pursue†*
**intentō** (1) threaten, aim†
**intonō, āre, uī** thunder, roar†
**membrum, ī** *n.* limb, member, part†*
**micō, āre, uī** quiver, flash†
**nūbēs, is** *f.* eloud, fog, mist*
**occumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** fall (in death)†
**oppetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** eneounter, meet (death)†
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand†*
**polus, ī** *m.* pole, sky, heaven†
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea*
**praesēns, entis** present, instant†
**quater** four times†
**rudēns, entis** *m.* rope, eable†
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** relax, loose(n)†*
**strīdor, ōris** *m.* ereaking, grating, whirring†
**subitō** suddenly†*
**ter** thrice, three times†*
**Tȳdīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, who fought against Aeneas in single eombat before Troy and would have killed him had not Venus spirited her son away†

---

**crēber**; App. 325, 331. **-que, -que, -que**: polysyndeton; App. 439.

**86. vastōs volvunt**: alliteration, employed very effeetively here, as often in the *Aeneid.*

**87. vir(ōr)um**: Aeneas and the other Trojans. **-que, -que**: polysyndeton; App. 439.

**88. diem = lūcem diēī. -que, -que**: polysyndeton; App. 439.

**89. pontō**: dat. with eompound; App. 298.

**90. Intonuēre = intonuērunt**; App. 204, 4. **ignibus (Jovis)**: *lightning*, abl. of means or manner; App. 328, 331.

**91. virīs = Teucrīs**; dat. of referenee; App. 301. **omnia**: used substantively, *all things*, as subj. of **intentant.**

**92. frīgore**: *chilly fear;* the aneient heroes were not ashamed to display their emotions, and often gave way to terror or grief. They weep eopiously on oeeasion, and are no more dainty about the shedding of tears than the shedding of blood.

**93. duplicīs**: acc. pl. of an *i*-stem; the first syllable is short; App. 17. In prayer the aneient Greeks and Romans extended their hands with the palms upward, ready to aeeept the blessing.

**94. tālia (dicta). beātī (vōs)**: vocative.

**95. quīs ante ōra patrum (vestrum) sub moenia Trojae contigit oppetere (mortem). quīs = quibus**; App. 109, *c*; observe the quantity of the i; dat. with **contigit**; App. 298. **ante ōra**: where their kinsmen and friends might witness their glorious deeds and death and might bury their bodies, thus giving rest to their souls; for the souls of the unburied must wander restlessly after death.

**96. oppetere (mortem)**: subjeet of **contigit. Dana(ōr)um**: App. 37, *d.*

**97. mē**: subj. of **potuisse. mēne**

*nōn potuisse tuāque animam hanc* effundere *dextrā,*
saevus *ubi* Aeacidae *tēlō* jacet Hector, *ubi ingēns*
Sarpēdōn, *ubi* tot Simoīs correpta *sub undīs*
scūta *virum* galeāsque *et* fortia *corpora volvit!*"
*Tālia* jactantī strīdēns Aquilōne procella
*vēlum* adversa ferit, *flūctūsque ad sīdera tollit.*
Franguntur *rēmī, tum* prōra āvertit *et undīs*
*dat* latus, īnsequitur cumulō praeruptus aquae *mōns.*
*Hī summō in flūctū* pendent; *hīs unda* dehīscēns
*terram inter flūctūs* aperit, *furit* aestus harēnīs.
Trīs Notus abreptās *in saxa* latentia torquet

---

**abripiō, ere, uī, reptus** carry off, snatch away†
**adversus, a, um** opposite, in front†*
**Aeacidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Aeacus, Achilles, Greek chieftain†
**aestus, ūs** *m.* boiling (surge), tide†
**aperiō, īre, uī, ertus** open, disclose†*
**aqua, ae** *f.* water†*
**Aquilō, ōnis** *m.* (north) wind†
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**cumulus, ī** *m.* heap, mass†
**dehīscō, ere, hīvī** gape, split, open†
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out†*
**feriō, īre** strike, beat†
**fortis, e** strong, brave, valiant*
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter†*
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet†
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach†*
**Hector, oris** *m.* leader of the Trojans†*
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, pursue*
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)†*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, utter*
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk†*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang†*
**praeruptus, a, um** steep, towering†
**procella, ae** *f.* blast, gale
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow†*
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**Sarpēdōn, onis** *m.* king of Lycia, ally of the Trojans†
**scūtum, ī** *n.* shield†
**Simoīs, entis** *m.* river near Troy†
**strīd(e)ō, ēre, dī** creak, rustle, roar†
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn, twist, whirl†*
**tot** so many
**trēs, tria** three†*

---

**potuisse:** *could I not*, etc., inf. in an exclamatory question; App. 262. **Tȳdīdē:** vocative. Aeneas engaged in a disastrous duel at Troy with Diomedes and barely escaped with his life, being rescued by his mother, the goddess Venus. **(in) campīs:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **occumbere (mortī):** complementary infin. with **potuisse**, as is also **effundere** in l. 98.

**98. hanc = meam. (tuā) dextrā (manū):** abl. of means; App. 331.

**99. tēlō (ictus):** (*slain*) *by the spear.* Observe the emphasis obtained by anaphora of **ubi**; App. 413.

**100. Sarpēdōn (jacet):** an ally of the Trojans. **Simoīs . . . volvit.**

**101. vir(ōr)um. correpta sub undīs:** goes with **scūta** and **galeās** as well as with **corpora** and refers to the corpses and armor of slain warriors swept along by (under) the water.

**102. (Aenēae) jactantī:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **Tālia (dicta):** obj. of **jactantī. Aquilōne:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**103. ferit:** from **feriō**; not to be confused with the verb **ferō. adversa (procella). ad sīdera:** such exaggerated language is called *hyperbole;* App. 428.

**104. rēmī:** the ancient ship used both oars and sails. **prōra (sē) āvertit et undīs dat latus (nāvis).**

**105. cumulō:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **mōns:** more hyperbole; App. 428; note the smashing effect of the monosyllable at the end of the line.

**106. Hī (virī). hīs (virīs):** dative of reference; App. 301. **hī . . . hīs:** *these . . . for those; some . . . for others,* referring to the crews of different ships; anaphora; App. 413.

**107. terram:** *the bottom* (of the sea); the hyperbole is continued; App. 428. **harēnīs:** *with the sands*, abl. of means; App. 331.

**108–109. Trīs (nāvīs):** acc. pl. of an *i-*

(*saxa vocant* Italī *mediīs quae in flūctibus* Ārās,
dorsum *immāne marī summō*), trīs Eurus *ab* altō
*in* brevia *et* syrtīs urget, miserābile *vīsū*,
inlīdit*que* vadīs *atque* aggere cingit harēnae.
*Ūnam, quae* Lyciōs fīdum*que* vehēbat Orontēn,
*ipsius ante oculōs ingēns ā* vertice pontus
*in puppim* ferit: excutitur prōnus*que* magister
*volvitur in caput; ast illam* ter *flūctus* ibīdem
torquet *agēns circum et* rapidus vorat *aequore* vertex.
Appārent rārī nantēs *in* gurgite *vastō*,
*arma virum* tabulae*que et* Trōia gaza *per undās*.

**agger, eris** *m.* mound, wall, bank†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea)
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear†
**Ārae, ārum** *f.* the Altars, a ledge of rocks between Sicily and Africa†
**brevis, e** short, shallow†
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird(le), encircle†*
**dorsum, ī** *n.* back, ridge, reef†
**Eurus, ī** *m.* (east) wind
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** cast out, shake off†*
**feriō, īre** strike, beat
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trustworthy†*
**gaza, ae** *f.* treasure, wealth†
**gurges, itis** *m.* abyss, gulf, whirlpool†*
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**ibīdem** in the same place†
**inlīdō, ere, sī, sus** dash against (into) (*dat.*)†
**Italus, a, um** Italian†
**Lycius, a, um** Lycian, of Lycia, a country of Asia Minor†
**magister, trī** *m.* master, pilot†
**miserābilis, e** pitiable, wretched†
**nō** (1) swim, float†
**Orontēs, is** (ī) *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea*
**prōnus, a, um** leaning forward, headlong†
**rapidus, a, um** swift, whirling, consuming*
**rārus, a, um** scattered, far apart†
**syrtis, is** *f.* sand bar, reef†
**tabula, ae** *f.* plank, board†
**ter** three times, thrice*
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn, twist, whirl*
**trēs, tria** three*
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy†*
**urgeō, ēre, ursī** drive, force, press†
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)†
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry, convey†*
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, summit; whirlpool†*
**vorō** (1) swallow (up)†

stem, object of **torquet**. **saxa . . . saxa**: anaphora; App. 413. **mediīs in flūctibus**: *in the middle* (*of the*) *waves;* App. 246. **quae saxa Italī vocant Ārās**: **quae** is a relative adjective agreeing with **saxa**; **saxa** is object of **vocant**, and **Ārās** is predicate accusative. **Ārās**: *the Altars*, the Roman name for a ledge of rocks off the African coast, just outside the harbor of ancient Carthage.

**110.** (**in**) **marī summō**: *at the surface of the sea;* abl. of place where; App. 319, 246. **dorsum**: apposition with **saxa**. **trīs** (**nāvīs**): object of **urget**.

**111. miserābile vīsū**: *piteous to behold;* **miserābile** is a neuter adjective modifying the idea expressed in the preceding sentence, while **vīsū** is the supine of **videō** and an abl. of respect; App. 325.

**112. vadīs** = **in vada**, dat. of direction, sometimes used instead of the acc. of place to which; App. 306.

**113. Ūnam** (**nāvem**). **Orontēn**: acc., a Greek form.

**114. ipsius** (**Aenēae**): *of the master*, a common use of **ipse**. Compare **ipsa** (l. 42) and **ipsōs** (l. 40). For the length of the second vowel, see the note on **illius** (l. 16). **ā vertice**: *from high above.* **ferit**: from **feriō**.

**115. in**: *upon*. **excutitur** (**ē nāvī**).

**116. in caput**: *headlong*. **illam** (**nāvem**): contrasted with the helmsman (**magister**).

**117.** (**in**) **aequore**: abl. of place where; App. 319.

**118. nantēs**: prcs. part. of **nō**, modifying **rārī** (**virī**), **arma**, **tabulae**, and **gaza**, but agreeing with the nearest word, **rārī** (**virī**), *men here and there*; App. 238.

**119. vir**(**ōr**)**um**. **arma**: such as wooden shields and leather helmets made of light and buoyant material. **gaza**: the first syllable is long by position; App. 15.

*Jam* validam Īlioneī *nāvem, jam* fortis Achātae,
*et quā* vectus Abās, *et quā* grandaevus Alētēs,
*vīcit* hiems; laxīs laterum compāgibus *omnēs*
*accipiunt* inimīcum imbrem rīmīs*que* fatīscunt.
Intereā *magnō* miscērī murmure pontum
ēmissam*que* hiemem sēnsit Neptūnus *et īmīs*
stāgna refūsa vadīs, graviter commōtus; *et* altō
prōspiciēns *summā* placidum *caput* extulit *undā*.
Disjectam *Aenēae tōtō videt aequore classem,*
*flūctibus* oppressōs Trōas *caelīque* ruīnā.
*Nec* latuēre dolī frātrem *Jūnōnis et īrae.*

---

**Abās, antis** *m.* Trojan leader†
**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas†*
**Alētēs, ae** *m.* Trojan leader†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea)
**commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move, disturb†
**compāgēs, is** *f.* joint, seam, fastening†
**disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** scatter, disperse
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud†*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** raise, lift (up)†*
**ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send forth†
**fatīscō, ere** split, open, gape†
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant*
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother†*
**grandaevus, a, um** aged, old†
**graviter** heavily, violently, greatly†
**hiems, emis** *f.* winter, storm†*
**Īlioneus, eī** *m.* Trojan leader†
**imber, bris** *m.* rain, flood, water†
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly
**intereā** meanwhile, meantime†*
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, escape the notice (of)*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**laxus, a, um** loose, open, lax
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, confuse, stir†*
**murmur, uris** *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea†*
**opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus** overwhelm, crush†
**placidus, a, um** calm, quiet, peaceful†*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea*
**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look out (on), see†
**refundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour back†
**rīma, ae** *f.* crack, fissure†
**ruīna, ae** *f.* downfall, ruin†
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** feel, perceive†
**stāgnum, ī** *n.* still waters, depth†
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)
**validus, a, um** strong, stout, mighty†
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry, convey*

---

**120. Īlioneī**: gen., with the final eī pronounced as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. **(nāvem) fortis Achātae. Jam . . . jam**: anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413.

**121. et (nāvem) quā vectus (est) Abās, et (nāvem) quā (vectus est) Alētēs. et quā . . . et quā**: anaphora; App. 413.

**122. laxīs compāgibus**: abl. of means or instrument, or abl. abs. **omnēs (nāvēs)**.

**123. rīmīs**: abl. of means or manner; App. 328, 331. Cf. ll. 83, 105. **imbrem = aquam maris.**

**124–156. Neptune, god of the sea, intervenes; he rebukes the winds and calms the sea.**

**124. magnō miscērī murmure**: alliteration (m) and onomatopœia; App. 411, 434. **murmure**: abl. of attendant circumstance or manner; App. 329, 328.

**125. ēmissam (esse).**

**126. refūsa (esse). (ex) vadīs**: abl. of separation; App. 340. **(in) altō**: *over the sea;* abl. of place where; App. 319. **commōtus (animō)**: although disturbed in spirit, as a god he maintains an outward calm (**placidum caput** of l. 127).

**127. (ex) undā**: abl. of separation; App. 340; *from the crest of the wave;* App. 246.

**128. (in) tōtō aequore**: abl. of place where; App. 319.

**129. Trōăs**: acc. pl., a Greek form. **(et videt) Trōas oppressōs (esse). caelī ruīnā**: hyperbole; App. 428.

**130. latuēre = latuērunt**; App. 204, 4. **frātrem**: Neptune was Juno's brother, and he knew her tricky nature (**dolī**) and her ugly temper (**īrae**).



*Alinari, Rome* *Lucio Massani*

JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS AGAINST THE SHIP OF AENEAS



*Alinari, Rome* *Lateran Museum*

NEPTUNE

In his left hand the god holds a trident; in the right, a seashell. His right foot rests on the rostrum of a ship, and behind him is a dolphin, one of the creatures of his domain.

Eurum *ad sē* Zephyrum*que vocat*, dehinc *tālia fātur:*
"*Tantane vōs generis tenuit* fīdūcia vestrī?
*Jam caelum terramque meō* sine *nūmine, ventī,*
miscēre *et tantās* audētis *tollere* mōlēs?
*Quōs ego — ! sed mōtōs* praestat compōnere *flūctūs.*
Post *mihi nōn* similī *poenā* commissa luētis.
Mātūrāte *fugam rēgīque haec dīcite* vestrō:
*nōn illī imperium pelagī* saevum*que* tridentem,
*sed mihi* sorte *datum. Tenet ille immānia saxa,*
vestrās, Eure, *domōs; illā sē* jactet *in* aulā
Aeolus *et* clausō *ventōrum* carcere rēgnet."
*Sīc ait et dictō* citius tumida *aequora* plācat

---

**Aeolus, ī** *m.* god of the winds
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture†*
**aula, ae** *f.* court, hall†
**carcer, eris** *m.* prison, inclosure
**citō** quickly, soon†
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close, hem in†*
**commissum, ī** *n.* fault, crime
**compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** compose, construct, calm, quiet†
**dehinc** then, thereupon†
**Eurus, ī** *m.* (east) wind
**fīdūcia, ae** *f.* confidence, trust†
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, vaunt*
**luō, ere, ī** atone for†
**mātūrō** (1) hasten, speed; ripen†
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, confuse, stir (up)*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* mass, burden, heap*
**plācō** (1) calm, quiet†
**post** after (*acc.*); afterwards†*
**praestō, āre, stitī, stitus** surpass, be better†
**rēgnō** (1) rule, reign†
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**similis, e** like, similar†*
**sine** without (*abl.*)†*
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, fate, destiny†*
**tridēns, entis** *m.* trident, symbol of Neptune as god of the sea†
**tumidus, a, um** swelling, swollen†
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own†*
**Zephyrus, ī** *m.* (west) wind†

---

**131. dehinc:** one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. **tālia (dicta).**

**132. generis fīdūcia vestrī:** this verse is sarcastic; the winds were of divine origin, being descended from Aurora, goddess of the dawn, and from Astraeus, a Titan rival of the gods. **caelum terramque:** hyperbole; App. 428.

**134. miscēre, tollere:** depend on **audētis,** as complementary infinitives; App. 259.

**135. Quōs = Vōs. Quōs ego —:** a good example of *aposiopesis;* App. 416; i.e., instead of completing his sentence, the speaker breaks off abruptly and leaves to the imagination, as being beyond the power of adequate expression in words, just what sort of dire punishment he may inflict upon the guilty winds; **Quōs** is thus the object and **ego** the subject of the unexpressed verb.

**136. nōn similī poenā:** abl. of means; App. 331; *by no similar punishment,* i.e., by a much greater one; this figure of speech is called *litotes;* App. 431.

**137. rēgī vestrō = Aeolō.**

**138. illī:** dat. of indir. obj. in emphatic position contrasted with **mihi** in the same position in the following line. **tridentem:** the well-known symbol of Neptune as god of the sea. **imperium, tridentem:** subjects of **datum (esse),** an inf. in indir. disc., dependent on **dīcite,** in l. 137.

**139. sorte:** when Saturn was overthrown, the three gods, Jupiter, Neptune, and Pluto, divided his dominion among them by lot, Jupiter receiving the dominion of heaven, Neptune of the sea, and Pluto of the realm of the dead in the lower world.

**140. vestrās:** referring to all the winds, although Neptune is directly addressing Eurus only.

**140–141. illā, clausō:** emphatic by position. **jactet, rēgnet:** volitive subjunctives; App. 254. **(in) clausō carcere:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

**142. ait:** third sing. of **ajō. dictō:** abl. with compar.; App. 327.

collēctāsque fugat nūbēs sōlemque redūcit.
Cȳmothoē simul et Trītōn adnixus acūtō
dētrūdunt nāvīs scopulō; levat ipse tridentī
et vastās aperit syrtīs et temperat aequor
atque rotīs summās levibus perlābitur undās.
Ac velutī magnō in populō cum saepe coörta est
sēditiō saevitque animīs ignōbile vulgus;
jamque facēs et saxa volant, furor arma ministrat;
tum, pietāte gravem ac meritīs sī forte virum quem
cōnspexēre, silent arrēctīsque auribus astant;
ille regit dictīs animōs et pectora mulcet:
sīc cūnctus pelagī cecidit fragor, aequora postquam
prōspiciēns genitor caelōque invectus apertō

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, keen
adnītor, ī, sus (nixus) strive, lean against†
aperiō, īre, uī, ertus open, disclose*
apertus, a, um open, clear†
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, prick up†
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (near, by)†*
auris, is *f.* ear†*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, subside†*
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather†
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold†
coörior, īrī, ortus (a)rise†
Cȳmothoē, ēs *f.* a sea nymph†
dētrūdō, ere, sī, sus push off, dislodge†
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch†*
fragor, ōris *m.* crash, uproar†
fugō (1) put to flight, rout†
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, rage†*
gravis, e heavy, weighty; venerable†*
ignōbilis, e inglorious, common†
invehō, ere, ēxī, ectus carry in, convey†
levis, e light, swift†
levō (1) lift, raise†
meritum, ī *n.* desert, service, merit
ministrō (1) tend, serve, supply†
mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus soothe, calm
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
perlābor, ī, lāpsus glide over†
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, devotion, duty*
populus, ī *m.* people, nation, crowd*
postquam after (that), when†*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look out on
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, bring back†
regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control†*
rota, ae *f.* wheel; chariot†
saepe often†*
saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus rage, be fierce†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēditiō, ōnis *f.* riot, strife†
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still†
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun, day†*
syrtis, is *f.* sand bar, reef
temperō (1) calm, control
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of Neptune
Trītōn, onis *m.* a minor sea-god†
velut(ī) as, just as*
volō (1) fly, speed†*
vulgus, ī *n.* (*m.*) crowd, throng, herd†

**144. Cȳmothoē:** nom.; a Greek form.

**145. ipse:** *the master* (Neptune). See note on **ipsōs** (l. 40). **(dē) scopulō:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **levat:** with the trident as a lever. **tridentī:** abl. of an *i*-stem.

**147. rotīs levibus:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**148. velutī saepe cum:** *just as often* (*happens*) *when;* this passage (ll. 148–156) is one of Vergil's most famous similes; App. 441.

**149. animīs:** abl. of place where or manner; App. 319, 328.

**150. facēs:** very dangerous in a city with so many wooden buildings as there were in ancient Rome. **furor arma ministrat:** *in their fury any object serves as a missile.*

**151. quem:** *some,* the indefinite pronoun. **pietāte, meritīs:** abl. of cause or respect with **gravem**; App. 325; 332.

**152. arrēctīs auribus:** abl. abs. of manner; App. 343, 328. **arrēctīs auribus astant:** alliteration; App. 411. **cōnspexēre = cōnspexērunt**; App. 204, 4. **silent, astant:** plurals, because of the collective idea in **vulgus** and **populō**; App. 236, *a.*

**154–155. sīc:** correlative with **velutī** in l. 148. **postquam genitor . . . flectit et . . . dat. aequora:** obj. of **prōspiciēns.**

**155. (in) caelō apertō:** abl. of place

flectit *equōs* currū*que* volāns *dat* lōra secundō.
Dēfessī Aeneadae *quae* proxima *lītora cursū*
contendunt *petere, et* Libyae vertuntur *ad ōrās.*
*Est in* sēcessū *longō locus:* īnsula *portum*
efficit objectū laterum, *quibus omnis ab* altō
frangitur *inque* sinūs scindit *sēsē unda* reductōs.
*Hinc atque hinc vastae* rūpēs *geminīque* minantur
*in caelum* scopulī, *quōrum sub* vertice lātē
*aequora* tūta silent; *tum silvīs* scaena coruscīs
dēsuper, horrentī*que ātrum* nemus imminet *umbrā;*
fronte *sub* adversā scopulīs pendentibus antrum,

---

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**Aeneadae, (ār)um** *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern*
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** strive; hasten†
**coruscus, a, um** waving, quivering, flashing†
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**dēfessus, a, um** weary, tired, worn†
**dēsuper** from above†
**efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** make, form†
**flectō, ere, exī, exus** bend, turn, guide†
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter*
**frōns, ontis** *f.* front, face, brow†*
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder, tremble†*
**immineō, ēre** overhang, threaten†
**īnsula, ae** *f.* island†
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**Libya, ae** *f.* region of North Africa*
**lōrum, ī** *n.* rein, thong†
**minor, ārī, ātus** threaten, tower†
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest†*
**objectus, ūs** *m.* projection, barrier†
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang*
**proximus, a, um** nearest†
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** bring back, lead back
**rūpēs, is** *f.* crag, cliff†*
**scaena, ae** *f.* background, stage†
**scindō, ere, scidī, scissus** split, divide†
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff*
**sēcessus, ūs** *m.* inlet, recess†
**secundus, a, um** following, favorable, obedient†*
**sileō, ēre, uī** be silent, be still
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, gulf, bay†*
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure†*
**vertex, icis** *m.* summit, top*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, (ex)change*
**volō** (1) fly, speed*

---

where; App. 319. **genitor:** Neptune. **invectus (currū):** *riding in his car.*

**156. flectit . . . dat:** historical presents; App. 351, 1, *a*. **currū:** dat. of indir. obj.; App. 295.

**157–207. Aeneas, with seven out of twenty ships, lands on the coast of North Africa near Carthage. He kills seven fine stags, which he divides among his comrades, whom he tries to console and encourage.**

**157–158. Aeneadae lītora, quae (sunt) proxima, cursū petere contendunt.**

**159–160. īnsula efficit (hunc locum) portum. portum:** predicate acc. **in sēcessū longō:** the inlet extends deep into the land.

**160. quibus:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**160–161. omnis unda (veniēns) ab altō frangitur et sē in sinūs reductōs scindit. sēsē = sē.** Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

**162. Hinc atque hinc:** *on (from) this side and that*, i.e., on both sides. **rūpēs (sunt).**

**164. scaena:** the place resembles a stage with its scenery. **silvīs coruscīs:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

**165. horrentī umbrā:** abl. of cause if taken with **ātrum**, or of manner if taken with **imminet**; App. 332, 328. **horrentī:** abl. of an *i*-stem; this word is probably used here to suggest the shade of bristling evergreens, such as cedars, firs, or pines.

**166. scopulīs pendentibus:** abl. of quality or material; App. 330, 324.

intus aquae dulcēs vīvō*que* sedīlia *saxō,*
nymphārum *domus. Hīc fessās nōn* vincula *nāvīs*
*ūlla tenent,* uncō *nōn* alligat ancora morsū.
*Hūc* septem *Aenēās* collēctīs *nāvibus omnī*
*ex* numerō *subit; ac magnō tellūris amōre*
ēgressī optātā potiuntur Trōes harēnā
*et* sale tābentīs artūs *in lītore pōnunt.*
*Ac prīmum* silicī scintillam excūdit Achātēs
suscēpit*que ignem* foliīs *atque* ārida *circum*
nūtrīmenta *dedit* rapuit*que in* fōmite *flammam.*
*Tum* Cererem corruptam *undīs* Cereāli*aque arma*
expediunt *fessī rērum,* frūgēs*que* receptās

---

**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**alligō** (1) bind, hold (to)†
**ancora, ae** *f.* anchor†
**aqua, ae** *f.* water*
**āridus, a, um** dry†
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb†*
**Cereālis, e** of Ceres, (goddess of) grain†
**Cerēs, eris** *f.* (goddess of) grain†
**colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** collect, gather
**corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** spoil, ruin†
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fresh†*
**ēgredior, ī, gressus** go out, disembark†
**excūdō, ere, dī, sus** strike out†
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** bring out, prepare†
**folium, (i)ī** *n.* leaf†
**fōmes, itis** *m.* tinder, fuel, shaving†
**frūx, frūgis** *f.* fruit, grain†
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**intus** within†
**morsus, ūs** *m.* bite, fluke, bit†
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude†*
**nūtrīmentum, ī** *n.* food, fuel, nourishment†
**nympha, ae** *f.* nymph, a minor divinity of nature, represented as a beautiful maiden
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
**potior, īrī, ītus** gain, win (*abl.*)†
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), whirl*
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** take back, recover†*
**sal, salis** *n.* (*m.*) salt (water), sea
**scintilla, ae** *f.* spark†
**sedīle, is** *n.* seat, bench†
**septem** seven
**silex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) flint†
**suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** catch (up), receive†
**tābeō, ēre** drip, soak, melt, waste†
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**uncus, a, um** curved, bent, hooked†
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* chain, bond, cable*
**vīvus, a, um** living, natural, alive†

---

**167. vīvō saxō:** denotes natural, not artificial, seats.

**168. domus:** in apposition with **antrum**, the cave just described; nymphs were supposed to frequent remote spots with beautiful natural scenery. **Hīc:** adverb, *here;* observe that the i is long in the adverb but short in the pronoun. **fessās nāvīs:** personification; App. 437; or possibly a transferred epithet; the Trojans were tired; App. 446.

**169. ancora:** an anachronism as anchors were not used in Aeneas's time. **alligat (nāvīs). uncō morsū:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**170. collēctīs nāvibus:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **omnī ex numerō:** we see from l. 393 that Aeneas had set out with twenty ships.

**171. magnō amōre:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**172. Trōēs:** nom. pl., a Greek form. **optātā harēnā:** abl. with **potior;** App. 342.

**173. sale:** abl. of means with **tābentīs.**

**174. silicī:** dat. of separation; App. 305.

**175. foliīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **circum:** adv. modifying **dedit:** *he places fuel around;* or else understand **circum** (**ignem**).

**177. Cererem:** *the goddess of grain,* by metonymy for *grain;* App. 433. **Cereālia arma:** *the utensils of Ceres,* i.e., utensils for grinding and for cooking grain.

**178. expediunt (ex nāvibus). rērum:**

*et* torrēre *parant flammīs et* frangere *saxō.*
*Aenēās* scopulum intereā cōnscendit, *et omnem*
prōspectum lātē *pelagō petit,* Anthea *sī quem*
jactātum *ventō videat* Phrygiās*que* birēmīs
*aut* Capyn *aut* celsīs *in puppibus arma* Caīcī.
*Nāvem in* cōnspectū *nūllam,* trīs *lītore* cervōs
prōspicit *errantīs; hōs tōta* armenta *sequuntur*
*ā* tergō *et longum per* vallīs pascitur *agmen.*
Cōnstitit *hīc* arcum*que manū* celerīs*que* sagittās
corripuit, fīdus *quae tēla* gerēbat Achātēs,
ductōrēs*que ipsōs prīmum capita alta ferentīs*
cornibus arboreīs sternit, *tum* vulgus *et omnem*

---

**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**Antheus, eī,** *acc.* **ea,** *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
**arboreus, a, um** branching, tree-like†
**arcus, ūs** *m.* bow†*
**armentum, ī** *n.* herd, drove†
**birēmis, is** *f.* bireme, galley (with two banks of oars)†
**Caīcus, ī** *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
**Capys, yos,** *acc.* **yn,** *m.* comrade of Aeneas†
**celer, eris, ere** swift†*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**cervus, ī** *m.* stag, deer†
**cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** climb, mount†
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stop, settle†*
**cōnspectus, ūs** *m.* sight, view
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn†
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader†
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trusty*
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, crush*
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on)*
**intereā** meanwhile, meantime*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet*
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**pascor, ī, pāstus** feed, graze†
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan†*
**prōspectus, ūs** *m.* view†
**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look out on, see
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow†
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, spread, strew†*
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide, rear†*
**torreō, ēre, uī, tostus** parch, roast†
**trēs, tria** three*
**vallis, is** *f.* valley†
**vulgus, ī** *n.* (*m.*) crowd, throng, herd

---

gen. with the adj. **fessī**; App. 287, *weary of their misfortunes.* **receptās (ex marī).**

**179. torrēre:** to make it easier to grind. **frangere:** to make coarse meal. **flammīs, saxō:** ablatives of means; App. 331.

**181. pelagō:** dat. of direction = **in pelagus**; App. 306, or else = **in pelagō**, abl. of place where; App. 319. **quem:** indef. *any*, modifying **Anthea**, an acc., Greek form, *if he can see any Antheus;* in English we should say *if he can see anything of Antheus.*

**182. videat:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349.

**183. Capyn:** acc., a Greek form. **puppibus:** poetic plural. **arma:** especially shields fastened on the ship and conspicuous at a great distance.

**184. Nāvem (prōspicit). (in) lītore:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **Nāvem nūllam, trīs cervōs:** chiasmus and asyndeton; App. 420, 418.

**185. hōs (cervōs):** the three stags are at the head of the feeding herd.

**186. vallīs:** plural, but probably referring to a single valley; see the note on **īrae** (l. 11).

**187. Cōnstitit (Aenēās). hīc:** adverb, *here;* distinguish from the pronoun which has a short i.

**188. tēla:** attracted into the rel. clause refers back to **arcum** and **sagittās**, objects of **corripuit.**

**189–191. ductōrēs:** the three stags (l. 184). **tum vulgus (sternit) et omnem turbam miscet, agēns (eōs = cervōs) tēlīs inter frondea nemora.**

**190. cornibus arboreīs:** abl. of quality; App. 330. **tum vulgus (sternit). vulgus:** acc., *the herd*, as opposed to the leaders, **ductōrēs.**

miscet *agēns tēlīs* nemora *inter* frondea turbam;
*nec* prius absistit quam septem *ingentia victor*
*corpora fundat* humī *et* numerum *cum nāvibus* aequet.
*Hinc portum petit et sociōs* partītur *in omnīs.*
Vīna bonus *quae* deinde cadīs onerārat *Acestēs*
*lītore* Trīnacriō *dederatque* abeuntibus hērōs
dīvidit, *et dictīs* maerentia *pectora* mulcet:
"*Ō sociī* (*neque* enim ignārī *sumus ante* malōrum),
*Ō* passī graviōra, *dabit deus hīs* quoque *fīnem.*
*Vōs et* Scyllaeam rabiem penitus*que* sonantīs
accestis scopulōs, *vōs et* Cyclōpia *saxa*

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart†*
**absistō, ere, stitī** cease, stop†
**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach†
**aequō** (1) (make) equal†*
**bonus, a, um** good, kind(ly), useful†*
**cadus, ī** *m.* jar, urn†
**Cyclōpius, a, um** Cyclopean, of the Cyclopes, huge one-eyed giants of Sicily†
**deinde** then, thereupon, next†*
**dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus** divide, distribute†
**enim** for, indeed, surely*
**frondeus, a, um** leafy†
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior†*
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, soil, earth†*
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, inexperienced†*
**maereō, ēre** mourn, grieve (for)†
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble†*
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** confuse, mix, mingle*
**mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus** soothe, calm
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude*
**onerō** (1) load, burden†
**partior, īrī, ītus** distribute, divide†
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure*
**penitus** within, deep(ly), wholly†*
**prius** first, sooner†
**quam** how, than, as†*
**quoque** also*
**rabiēs, ēī** *f.* rage, madness, fury†
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**Scyllaeus, a, um** of Scylla, a ravenous sea-monster, part woman and part fish, girdled with fierce dogs and destructive to mariners who attempted to sail past her cave situated on a narrow strait opposite the great whirlpool Charybdis†
**septem** seven
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar†*
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Trinacrian, Sicilian†
**turba, ae** *f.* mob, crowd†
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine†*

**191. nemora:** poetic plural. **turbam:** the vulgus has now become a panic-stricken and tumultuous **turba,** *a mob.*

**192. victor:** (*as*) *victor;* apposition with **Aenēās** the subject understood.

**193. humī:** loc.; App. 37, *c.* **numerum** (**cervōrum**). **cum nāvibus** = **cum numerō nāvium. aequet:** i.e., one deer for each ship. **fundat, aequet:** temporal or anticipatory with **priusquam;** App. 376, *a.*

**194. et partītur** (**cervōs**) **in** (*among*) **omnīs sociōs** (**suōs**).

**195–197. Deinde vīna, quae bonus Acestēs onerā(ve)rat** (**in**) **cadīs** (**in**) **Trīnacriō lītore et quae** (**ille**) **hērōs dederat** (**illīs** = **Teucrīs**) **abeuntibus, dīvidit** (**Aenēās**). **deinde:** two syllables by synizesis; App. 403. **onerā(ve)rat:** App. 204. **cadīs:** dat. of direction; App. 306; or else = **in cadīs,** abl. of place where; App. 319. **Vīna . . . dīvidit** (**Aenēās**).

**196. hērōs** (**Acestēs**): nom. sing., Greek forms. Acestes had entertained Aeneas and his comrades during the preceding winter and had furnished them with supplies for the rest of their journey. **abeuntibus** (**Teucrīs**): indir. obj. of **dederat.**

**197. pectora** (**suōrum sociōrum**).

**199. Ō** (**vōs**) **passī graviōra** (**mala**). **hīs** (**malīs**): indir. obj. of **dabit;** App. 295.

**201. acces(is)tis:** App. 204. **vōs et:** correlative with **vōs et** in l. 200; anaphora; App. 413. **Cyclōpia:** *of the Cyclopes,* huge one-eyed giants, one of whom, Polyphemus, had killed and eaten several of the comrades of Ulysses while they were shut up in his cave. Ulysses and his men finally succeeded in blinding Polyphemus and escaping. For the story, see *Aeneid,* III, ll. 613–638, and the ninth book of Homer's *Odyssey.*

expertī: revocāte *animōs* maestum*que* timōrem
*mittite;* forsan *et haec* ōlim meminisse juvābit.
*Per* variōs *cāsūs, per* tot discrīmina *rērum*
*tendimus in* Latium, *sēdēs ubi fāta* quiētās
ostendunt; illīc fās *rēgna* resurgere *Trojae.*
Dūrāte, *et vōsmet rēbus servāte* secundīs."
*Tālia vōce refert cūrīsque ingentibus* aeger
spem vultū simulat, premit *altum* corde dolōrem.
*Illī sē* praedae accingunt dapibus*que futūrīs:*
tergora dīripiunt costīs *et* vīscera nūdant;
*pars in* frusta secant veribus*que* trementia fīgunt,

**accingō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** gird†
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary†*
**cor, cordis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
**costa, ae** *f.* rib, side†
**daps, dapis** *f.* feast, banquet†*
**dīripiō, ere, uī, reptus** tear from†
**discrīmen, inis** *n.* crisis, danger†
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, suffering*
**dūrō** (1) harden, endure†
**experior, īrī, pertus** try, experience†
**fās** *n. indecl.* divine will, right, duty*
**fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus** pierce, fasten†*
**fors(it)an** perhaps, perchance, possibly†
**frustum, ī** *n.* piece, part†
**illīc** there†
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please†*
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district of central Italy around Rome*
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy†*
**meminī, isse** remember, recall†
**nūdō** (1) (lay) bare, strip†
**ōlim** once, at some time*
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, promise†*
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, prey†
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, control*
**quiētus, a, um** calm, peaceful†
**resurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise again†
**revocō** (1) recall, restore†
**secō, āre, uī, sectus** cut, divide†*
**seçundus, a, um** following, favorable*
**simulō** (1) imitate, pretend, feign†
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation†*
**tergus, oris,** *n.* back, hide†
**timor, ōris** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety†
**tot** so many*
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver†*
**varius, a, um** varied, different†*
**verū, ūs** *n.* broach, spit, spike†
**vīscus, eris** *n.* vitals, flesh†
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face†*

**202. expertī** (estis).

**203. mittite:** *dismiss.* **et** = **etiam,** *even.* **haec:** obj. of **meminisse. forsan et haec,** etc.: *perhaps at some time we shall be glad to remember even these things.* A famous verse, and one often quoted. **juvābit** (**nōs**): *it will please* (*us*), with **meminisse** as subject.

**205. tendimus** (**cursum**) **in Latium:** the poet "nods" for a moment, as Aeneas is not yet supposed to know anything about Latium.

**206. fās** (**est**), etc.: *it is the divine will for the Trojan realm there to rise again.* **rēgna:** poetic plural.

**207. vōsmet:** an emphatic form of **vōs.**

**208–222. The Trojans first feast and then lament their lost comrades.**

**208. Tālia** (**dicta**). **vōce:** contrasted with **corde** of l. 209. **refert** (**Aenēās**). **cūrīs ingentibus:** abl. of cause with **aeger;** App. 332. **aeger:** (*although*) *sick at heart.*

**209.** (**in**) **vultū:** abl. of place where or means, sharply contrasted with **corde. corde:** abl. of place where or means. **spem:** contrasted with **dolōrem. altum corde:** *deep in his heart.* **spem simulat, premit dolōrem:** this figure is known as *chiasmus.* The contrast is here emphasized by placing the two pairs of words in inverse (reverse) order; that is, **spem** begins the first clause and is contrasted with **dolōrem,** which ends the second, while **simulat** ends the first clause and is thus contrasted with **premit,** which begins the second; App. 420; see the note on l. 184.

**210. Illī: Teucrī. praedae, dapibus:** datives of purpose; App. 303; i.e., they prepare themselves for the venison and the banquet. **dapibus:** poetic plural.

**211. costīs:** abl. of separation; App. 320, 340.

**212. pars** (**sociōrum**) **secant** (**vīscera**) **in frusta:** the use of the plural verb with

*lītore* aēna locant *aliī flammāsque* ministrant.
*Tum* victū revocant *vīrīs, fūsīque per* herbam
implentur veteris Bacchī pinguis*que* ferīnae.
Postquam exēmpta famēs epulīs mēnsae*que* remōtae,
āmissōs *longō sociōs* sermōne requīrunt,
spem*que* metum*que inter* dubiī, seu vīvere crēdant
sīve extrēma patī *nec jam* exaudīre *vocātōs.*
Praecipuē *pius Aenēās nunc* ācris Orontī,
*nunc* Amycī *cāsum* gemit *et* crūdēlia *sēcum*
*fāta* Lycī fortem*que* Gyān fortem*que* Cloanthum.

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited†*
**aēnum, ī** *n.* bronze (vessel, kettle)†
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** lose, let go†*
**Amycus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†
**Bacchus, ī** *m.* (god of) wine†
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust†*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bitter, bloody†*
**dubius, a, um** doubtful, wavering†
**epulae, ārum** *f.* banquet, feast
**exaudiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** hear, hearken†
**eximō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** take away, remove†
**extrēma, ōrum** *n.* final fate, death†
**famēs, is** *f.* hunger†
**ferīna, ae** *f.* game, venison†
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant*
**gemō, ere, uī, itus** groan (for), lament†
**Gyās, ae,** *acc.* **ān,** *m.* a Trojan†
**herba, ae** *f.* grass, herb(age)†*
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill (with) (*gen.*)†*
**locō** (1) place, locate, establish†*
**Lycus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table†*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety†*
**ministrō** (1) tend, serve, supply
**Orontēs, is (ī, ae)** *m.* Trojan leader
**patior, ī, passus** endure, suffer*
**pinguis, e** fat, rich, fertile†
**postquam** after (that), when*
**praecipuē** especially†
**removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** remove†
**requīrō, ere, quīsīvī (siī), quīsītus** seek again, deplore†
**revocō** (1) recall, restore
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, speech†
**seu, sīve** whether, or (if)†*
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation
**vetus, eris** old, former, ancient*
**victus, ūs** *m.* living, food, victuals†
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, victus** live†

---

a singular (collective) subject is common in many languages, including English; App. 236, *a*. **trementia (frusta)**: the flesh of the recently slain animals is still quivering. **veribus**: abl. of means; App. 331.

**213.** (in) **lītore**: abl. of place where; App. 319.

**214. vīrīs**: acc. pl. of **vīs**, an *i*-stem; observe the quantity, distinguishing it from **virīs**, dat. or abl. of **vir**, *man*.

**215. implentur**: a middle voice or reflexive use; *they fill themselves;* App. 115, 2, *a*; 309. **Bacchī, ferīnae**: gen. with special verb, **impleō**; App. 287. **Bacchus**: *god of wine*, by metonymy for *wine*.

**216. exēmpta (est). mēnsae remōtae (sunt)**: in Vergil's day the tables were removed at the end of the banquet; so this phrase came to mean simply the end of the feasting. Vergil uses it here in that general sense, as Aeneas and his companions presumably had no tables.

**218. inter spemque metumque dubiī**: anastrophe; App. 414. **seu (sociōs suōs) vīvere crēdant**: deliberative indir. quest.; App. 348, 349; the clause is dependent on **dubiī**, which modifies **Teucrī** understood as subject of **requīrunt.**

**219. extrēma = mortem**: euphemism; App. 423. **vocātōs (sociōs)**: refers to the Roman custom (**conclāmātiō**) of loudly calling the name of the dead three times, as a part of the funeral ceremony.

**220. Praecipuē**: modifying **gemit,** not **pius. pius**: not *pious*, but *devoted, loyal, noble;* see note on **pietāte** (l. 10). **Aenēās ācris Orontī (cāsum gemit).**

**221. sēcum = cum sē**; i.e., silently; for the thought compare ll. 208–209.

**222. fāta, Gyān, Cloanthum (gemit Aenēās). fortem, fortem**: pathetic repetition. **Gyān**: acc., a Greek form.

*Et jam fīnis erat, cum Juppiter* aethere *summō*
dispiciēns *mare* vēlivolum *terrāsque* jacentīs
*lītoraque et* lātōs populōs, *sīc* vertice *caelī*
cōnstitit *et* Libyae dēfīxit *lūmina rēgnīs.*
*Atque illum tālīs* jactantem *pectore cūrās*
*trīstior et lacrimīs oculōs* suffūsa nitentīs
adloquitur Venus: "*Ō quī rēs* hominum*que deumque*
aeternīs regis *imperiīs et* fulmine terrēs,
*quid meus Aenēās in tē* committere *tantum,*
*quid* Trōes *potuēre, quibus* tot fūnera passīs
*cūnctus* ob *Ītaliam terrārum* clauditur orbis?
Certē *hinc* Rōmānōs ōlim *volventibus* annīs,

**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost†
**aeternus, a, um** eternal, everlasting*
**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**annus, ī** *m.* year*
**certē** certainly, surely†
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** close, shut*
**committō, ere, mīsī, missus** commit†
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast), rest*
**dēfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus** fix, fasten†
**dispiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, discern, descry†
**fulmen, inis** *n.* thunderbolt, lightning†*
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster†*
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (outspread, low)*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, ponder*
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious†*
**Libya, ae** *f.* district of North Africa*
**nitēns, entis** bright, shining†
**ob** on account of (*acc.*)
**ōlim** once, at some time*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb, earth†*
**patior, ī, passus** endure, suffer*
**populus, ī** *m.* people, race, nation*
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct*
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman*
**suffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** fill, suffuse†
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, terrify†
**tot** so many*
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**vēlivolus, a, um** winged with sails†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty†*
**vertex, icis** *m.* summit, head, top*

**223–296. Venus complains to Jupiter of the hard lot of the Trojans and of her son Aeneas. Jupiter consoles her with the promise of universal empire for the Trojans through their descendants, the Roman people.**

**223.** fīnis (epulārum et dictōrum). There is a change of scene from earth to heaven. (dē) aethere summō: abl. of separation with dispiciēns; App. 340.

**224.** vēlivolum: a transferred epithet, as it refers to the ships on the sea, instead of the sea itself; App. 446.

**225.** (in) vertice: abl. of place where.

**226.** lūmina = oculōs. rēgnīs: dat. of direction or abl. of place where; App. 306, 319.

**227–229.** tālīs cūrās: *such cares* as were natural for the father of gods and king of men, with the government of the universe resting on his shoulders. (in) pectore: abl. of place where; App. 319. illum adloquitur Venus. trīstior (quam solita): *sadder* (*than was her wont*); Venus as goddess of love and beauty, was proverbially laughter-loving. lacrimīs: abl. of means; App. 331. nitentīs oculōs: acc. of respect with suffūsa, or else object of suffūsa used as a reflexive verb; App. 115, 2, *a*; 309.

**229–230.** Ō (tū) quī rēs regis et terrēs. regis: from regō not from rēx. -que . . . -que: *both . . . and.* de(ōr)um.

**231.** quid meus Aenēās tantum committere (potuit)? = *What* (*so*) *great offense, etc.* quid . . . quid: anaphora; App. 413.

**232.** potuēre = potuērunt (committere). quibus: dat. of reference or of interest; App. 301. fūnera: obj. of passīs which modifies quibus; the Trojans had suffered many disasters (fūnera) in the destruction of their city and during the seven years thereafter, while they wandered as homeless exiles.

**233.** cūnctus orbis terrārum: *the whole world*, an emotional exaggeration or hyperbole. ob Ītaliam: *on account of Italy*, which was destined to be the seat of a great new world-power hostile to Juno's cherished plans.

**234–237.** Certē pollicitus (es) hinc

*hinc fore* ductōrēs, revocātō *ā sanguine* Teucrī,
*quī mare, quī terrās omnīs* diciōne *tenērent*,
pollicitus. *Quae tē, genitor*, sententia vertit?
*Hōc* equidem occāsum *Trojae trīstīsque* ruīnās
sōlābar *fātīs* contrāria *fāta* rependēns;
*nunc eadem fortūna virōs* tot *cāsibus āctōs*
īnsequitur. *Quem dās fīnem, rēx magne, labōrum?*
Antēnor *potuit mediīs* ēlāpsus Achīvīs
Illyricōs penetrāre sinūs *atque* intima tūtus
*rēgna* Liburnōrum *et* fontem superāre Timāvī,
unde *per ōra* novem *vastō cum* murmure *montis*
*it mare* prōruptum *et pelagō* premit *arva* sonantī.

---

**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek†
**Antēnor, ōris** *m.* Trojan leader, fled after the fall of Troy and settled in northern Italy at Patavium, modern Padua†
**contrārius, a, um** opposite, opposing†
**diciō, ōnis** *f.* power, rule, sway†
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader, chief
**ēlābor, ī, lāpsus** slip out, escape†
**equidem** indeed, surely†*
**fōns, fontis** *m.* fountain, source†
**Illyricus, a, um** Illyrian, Dalmatian, of Illyria, a region east of the Adriatic†
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, pursue*
**intimus, a, um** inmost†
**Liburnus, a, um** Liburnian, Illyrian†
**murmur, uris** *n.* murmur, rumble, roar
**novem** nine†
**occāsus, ūs** *m.* fall, destruction†
**penetrō** (1) enter, penetrate†
**polliceor, ērī, itus** promise, offer†
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, overwhelm*
**prōruptus, a, um** dashing, furious†
**rependō, ere, ī, ēnsus** balance, compensate†
**revocō** (1) recall, restore
**ruīna, ae** *f.* downfall, ruin
**sententia, ae** *f.* opinion, purpose†
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, gulf, bay*
**sōlor, ārī, ātus** console, find consolation for†
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**superō** (1) surpass, pass beyond†*
**Teucer (crus), crī** *m.* early king of Troy†
**Timāvus, ī** *m.* river of northern Italy, runs underground about twenty-five miles and emerges near the upper end of the Adriatic Sea into which it flows with a strong current†
**tot** so many*
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**unde** whence, from which (whom)*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change, rout*

---

**Rōmānōs (futūrōs esse), hinc ductōrēs fore ( = futūrōs esse) ā revocātō sanguine Teucrī. hinc = ex Aenēā et aliīs Teucrīs. volventibus annīs:** *as the years roll (by)*; abl. abs.; App. 343. **hinc . . . hinc:** anaphora; App. 413. **quī . . . quī:** anaphora; App. 413.

**235. fore = futūrōs esse,** inf. in indir. disc., dependent on **pollicitus (es)** in l. 237; App. 263, 390. **ā revocātō sanguine:** explaining **hinc.**

**236. quī . . . tenērent:** rel. clause of purpose or characteristic; App. 388, 389.

**237. Quae tē sententia vertit:** *what idea turns you (from your earlier plan)?* An opinion may change a person as well as a person may change an opinion.

**238. Hōc:** neut., abl. of cause or means, *with this (hope).* **occāsum sōlābar:** *I tried to console myself for the fall;* a conative imperfect, denoting attempted action; App. 351, 2, *a.*

**239. fātīs:** abl. of means or dat.; App. 331, 304.

**240.** Observe the asyndeton; App. 418. **cāsibus:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**242. mediīs Achīvīs:** *from the midst of the Greeks (fighting around Troy).*

**243. Illyricōs sinūs:** the Adriatic was proverbial for its dangers to navigation. **Liburnōrum:** a wild and savage people, warlike and hostile to strangers. **tūtus:** in emphatic position, contrasting his present safety with the dangers previously indicated.

**245. unde = ex quō fonte (Timāvī).** Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

**246. (Timāvus) it mare prōruptum:** *(the Timavus) goes (as) a dashing sea,* to indicate the great volume, roar, and

*Hīc* tamen *ille urbem* Patavī *sēdēsque* locāvit
*Teucrōrum et gentī nōmen dedit armaque* fīxit
Trōia, *nunc* placidā compostus pāce quiēscit:
*nōs, tua* prōgeniēs, *caelī quibus* adnuis *arcem,*
*nāvibus* (īnfandum!) āmissīs *ūnīus* ob *īram*
prōdimur *atque* Italīs longē disjungimur *ōrīs.*
*Hic* pietātis *honōs? Sīc nōs in* scēptra repōnis?"
*Ollī* subrīdēns hominum sator *atque deōrum*
vultū, *quō caelum* tempestātēs*que* serēnat,
ōscula lībāvit nātae, dehinc *tālia fātur:*
"Parce metū, Cytherēa, *manent* immōta *tuōrum*

---

**adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus** nod assent, promise†
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** lose, let go*
**compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** compose, construct, settle
**Cytherēa, ae** *f.* Venus, goddess of Cythera, a Greek island where Venus was born from the foam of the sea†
**dehinc** thence, thereafter
**disjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** separate, disconnect†
**fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus** fasten, fix*
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, unshaken†
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, accursed†
**Italus, a, um** Italian
**lībō** (1) taste, touch; pour†
**locō** (1) place, locate, establish*
**longē** far (from), afar*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**nāta, ae** *f.* daughter†
**ob** on account of (*acc.*)
**ōsculum, ī** *n.* dainty lip, kiss†
**parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus** spare (*dat.*)†
**Patavium, (i)ī** *n.* city of northern Italy, the modern Padua, about twenty miles west of Venice†
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, quiet, rest†
**pietās, ātis** *f.* devotion, loyalty, duty*
**placidus, a, um** peaceful, calm, quiet*
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditus** hand over, betray†
**prōgeniēs, ēī** *f.* offspring, progeny
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** rest, repose†*
**repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** replace, restore
**sator, ōris** *m.* sower; begetter, father†
**scēptrum, ī** *n.* staff, scepter, power
**serēnō** (1) calm, clear†
**subrīdeō, ēre, rīsī** smile (at)†
**tamen** nevertheless, however†*
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* tempest, storm*
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face*

---

strong current of the river. **pelagō**: *with its flood* (*sea*). Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

**247. Hīc**: adverb, *here;* observe the quantity. **Patavī**: appositional gen.; App. 281.

**248. arma fīxit**: dedicated his arms to some divinity, by hanging them up in the temple as a sign that he was at peace with the world and would need them no more.

**249. nunc**: asyndeton; App. 418. **compos(i)tus**: shortened for metrical reasons. Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

**250. nōs**: ego (Venus) et Aenēās et aliī Teucrī. Observe the effect obtained by asyndeton; App. 418. **tua prōgeniēs**: apposition with **nōs**. Venus was daughter of Jupiter; Aeneas was her son. **caelī arcem**: means that Aeneas shall become a god; for only gods lived in heaven, while ordinary mortals went to Hades after death. **adnuis**: referring to the solemn nod of assent with which Jupiter ratified his promises.

**251. nāvibus āmissīs**: abl. abs.; App. 343. **ūnīus** = **Jūnōnis.**

**253.** (estne) **hic**: for **hoc**; attracted to the masculine gender of the predicate noun **honōs.**

**254. Ollī** = **illī**: dat. with compound; App. 298.

**256. tālia** (**dicta**). **nātae**: added to indicate that the kiss is due to the tender affection of a father for his daughter. **dehinc**: one syllable by synizesis; App. 403.

**257. metū** = **metuī**: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

*fāta tibī; cernēs urbem et* prōmissa Lavīnī
*moenia* sublīmem*que ferēs ad sīdera caelī*
magnanimum *Aenēān; neque mē* sententia vertit.
*Hic tibi* (*fābor* enim, quandō *haec tē cūra* remordet,
longius, *et volvēns fātōrum* arcāna *movēbō*)
*bellum ingēns* geret *Ītaliā* populōs*que* ferōcīs
contundet mōrēs*que virīs et moenia pōnet,*
tertia *dum* Latiō rēgnantem *vīderit* aestās,
terna*que* trānsierint Rutulīs hīberna subāctīs.
*At puer* Ascanius, *cui nunc* cognōmen Iūlō
additur (Īlus *erat, dum rēs stetit* Īlia *rēgnō*),
trīgintā *magnōs volvendīs* mēnsibus orbīs

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add†*
**aestās, ātis** *f.* summer†
**arcānum, ī** *n.* secret, mystery†
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas†*
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, cognomen†
**contundō, ere, tudī, tū(n)sus** bruise, crush†
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**ferōx, ōcis** fierce, savage, wild†
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on), wage*
**hīberna, ōrum** *n.* winter (quarters)†
**Īlius, a, um** Ilian, Trojan†
**Īlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas†*
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas†*
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district of central Italy*
**Lavīnium, (i)ī** *n.* city in central Italy†
**longē** far (from), afar*
**magnanimus, a, um** great-souled†
**mēnsis, is** *m.* month†
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, manner, law†*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb, revolution*
**populus, ī** *m.* people, race, nation*
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**quandō** when, since†
**rēgnō** (1) rule, reign
**remordeō, ēre, dī, rsus** gnaw, trouble†
**Rutulus, a, um** Rutulian, of the Rutulians, a tribe of central Italy†
**sententia, ae** *f.* opinion, purpose
**subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** subdue†
**sublīmis, e** on high, aloft, uplifted†
**ternī, ae, a** three (each), by threes†
**tertius, a, um** third†*
**trānseō, īre, iī, (īvī), itus** pass (by)†
**trīgintā** thirty†
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change, rout*

---

**258. tibī:** dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

**259. sublīmem:** Aeneas shall become a god in heaven; an answer to Venus's complaint in l. 250.

**260. neque mē sententia vertit:** an answer to the reproachful question of Venus in l. 237. **Aenēān:** acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

**261. Hic (Aenēās):** subject of **geret**, l. 263. **tibi:** dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

**262. longius . . . volvens:** *unrolling (the scroll) of the fates farther.* In classical times books were written in the form of scrolls.

**263. (Aenēās) bellum ingēns geret:** referring to the war with Turnus in Italy, described in the last six books of the *Aeneid.* **(in) Ītaliā:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

**264. mōrēs, moenia;** alliteration; App. 411. **virīs (suīs).**

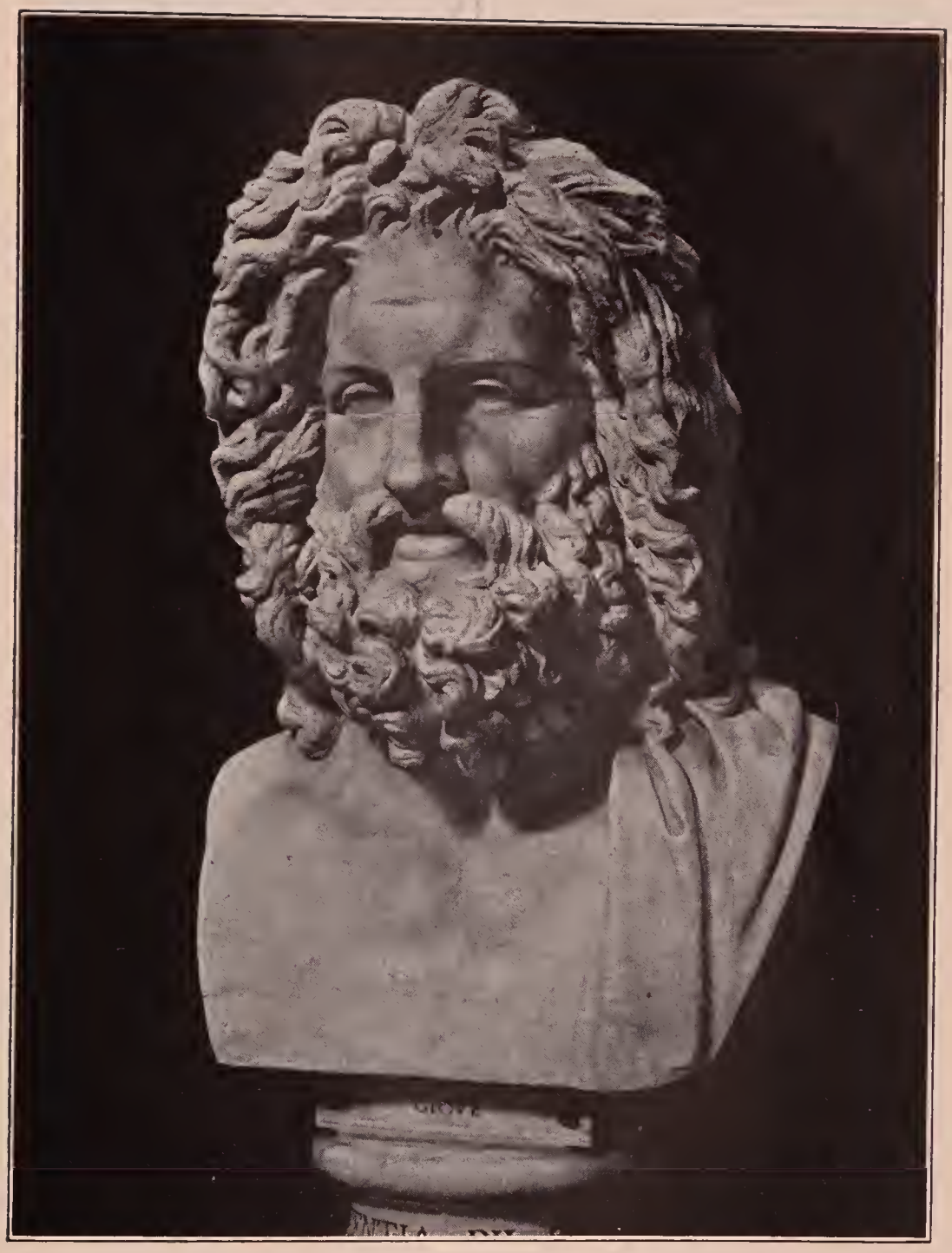
**265. dum vīderit, trānsierint:** future perf. with **dum**; App. 373. **(Aenēān) rēgnantem.**

**266. Rutulīs subāctīs:** abl. abs. or dat. of reference; App. 343, 301. The Rutuli were a native Italian tribe hostile to Aeneas but whom he finally subdued. **terna:** *three;* the distributive is often employed instead of the cardinal with words used only in the plural. **hīberna,** *winter quarters,* hence *winters, years.*

**267. Iūlō:** dat. attracted to the case of **cui**; App. 242, *b.* A reminder that the family of Julius Caesar, including Augustus, was descended from Aeneas, through Ascanius (Iulus). **Īlus erat (cognōmen). rēs Īlia:** *the Ilian (Trojan) state.*

**268: rēgnō:** abl. of respect; App. 325. **dum stetit:** App. 371.

**269. orbīs (annōrum):** *circles of years,* poetic for *years.* **volvendīs mēnsibus:** *with their swift passing months;* abl. of quality or means, App. 330, 331.



*Alinari, Rome* *Vatican Museum*

JUPITER



*Alinari, Rome* *National Museum*

MARS

In spite of his being god of War, Mars is frequently represented as a young and handsome boy.

*imperiō* explēbit, *rēgnumque ab sēde* Lavīnī
trānsferet, *et* Longam *multā vī* mūniet Albam.
*Hīc jam* ter centum *tōtōs* rēgnābitur annōs
*gente sub* Hectoreā, dōnec *rēgīna* sacerdōs
Mārte gravis *geminam* partū *dabit* Īlia prōlem.
Inde lupae fulvō nūtrīcis tegmine *laetus*
Rōmulus excipiet *gentem et* Māvortia condet
*moenia* Rōmānōs*que suō dē nōmine dīcet.*
*Hīs ego nec* mētās *rērum nec tempora pōnō:*

**Alba, ae** *f.* Alba Longa, city of central Italy†
**annus, ī** *m.* year*
**centum** hundred†*
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found, establish*
**dōnec** until, while, as long as†
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** take (up), inherit†
**expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill (out), fulfil†
**fulvus, a, um** tawny, yellow†
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, pregnant*
**Hectoreus, a, um** Hectorean, of Hector, leader of the Trojans†
**Īlius, a, um** Ilian, Trojan†
**inde** thence, afterward†*
**Lavīnium, (i)ī** *n.* city of central Italy
**Longa, ae** *f.* Alba Longa, a city in central Italy, mother city of Rome
**lupa, ae** *f.* she-wolf†
**Mārs, Mārtis** *m.* god of war†
**Māvortius, a, um** Martian, of Mars, god of war†
**mēta, ae** *f.* goal, limit, bound†
**mūniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** fortify†
**nūtrīx, īcis** *f.* nurse†
**partus, ūs** *m.* birth, offspring†
**prōlēs, is** *f.* offspring, progeny*
**rēgnō** (1) rule, reign
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman*
**Rōmulus, ī** *m.* legendary founder of Rome, son of Mars and Rhea Silvia, a Vestal virgin†
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)†*
**teg(i)men, inis** *n.* covering, skin†
**ter** thrice, three times*
**trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** transfer†

**270. Lavīnī**: appositional gen.; App. 281. Aeneas founded Lavinium, Ascanius founded Alba Longa.

**271. Longam Albam** = *Alba Longa;* according to tradition, Rome was founded from Alba Longa, a city situated on a long (**Longa**) white (**Alba**) ridge. **multā vī mūniet**: alliteration; App. 411.

**272. Hīc**: in Alba Longa. **rēgnābitur**: impersonal, *royal power shall be exercised.* **annōs**: acc. of duration of time; App. 314.

**273–274. Hectoreā** = **Trojānā**, since Hector was the crown prince and the greatest of the Trojans. **rēgīna sacerdōs**: *a princess priestess* (*of Vesta*); she was the daughter of King Numitor, and her name was Rhea Silvia. **dōnec Īlia rēgīna sacerdōs gravis Mārte dabit prōlem geminam partū. Īlia (sacerdōs)**: another name for Rhea Silvia to indicate her connection with *Īlus* (l. 268) and with *Īlium* (*Troy*). **Mārte gravis**: *pregnant by Mars*, the god of war. **geminam prōlem**: Romulus and Remus. **partū dabit**: *shall give by birth, shall bear.*

**275. Inde**: temporal, *then.* **lupae fulvō nūtrīcis tegmine**: interlocked order; App. 442. **lupae nūtrīcis**: refers to the well known story that Romulus and Remus were suckled by a she-wolf. **fulvō tegmine**: abl. of cause with the adj. **laetus**; App. 332. As a mark of honor to his foster mother Romulus wore a wolfskin.

**276. Māvortia**: Romulus, the founder of Rome, was the son of Mars (**Māvors**), the patron deity of Rome.

**277. dīcet** ( = **vocābit**) **(gentem) Rōmānōs**: the name Romans being thus fancifully derived from Romulus, in accordance with the well-established legend.

**278. Hīs (Rōmānīs)**: dat. of reference; App. 301. **tempora** = **mētās temporum. imperium sine fīne (Rōmānīs) dedī**: a magnificent climax; Aeneas is to rule *three* years after his victory over the Italian tribes (ll. 265–266), Ascanius for *thirty* years (l. 272), while Rome is to have dominion world without end. To preserve the symmetry, Vergil represents Alba Longa as ruling *three hundred* instead of four hundred years, according to the more generally accepted account.

*imperium* sine *fīne dedī*. Quīn aspera *Jūnō*,
*quae mare nunc terrāsque* metū *caelumque* fatīgat,
cōnsilia *in* melius *referet, mēcumque* fovēbit
Rōmānōs, *rērum* dominōs *gentemque* togātam.
*Sīc* placitum. *Veniet* lūstrīs *lābentibus* aetās
*cum domus* Assaracī Phthīam clārās*que* Mycēnās
servitiō premet *ac victīs* dominābitur Argīs.
Nāscētur pulchrā Trojānus orīgine Caesar,
*imperium* Ōceanō, *fāmam quī* terminet astrīs,
Jūlius, *ā magnō* dēmissum *nōmen* Iūlō.

---

**aetās, ātis** *f.* age, time†
**Argī, ōrum** *m.* Argos, city of southern Greece, home of Diomedes, a Greek chieftain against Troy
**asper, era, erum** harsh, rough, fieree*
**Assaracus, ī** *m.* early king of Troy†
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, eonstellation†*
**Caesar, aris** *m.* (1) Julius Caesar; (2) Augustus Caesar†
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious†*
**cōnsilium, (i)ī** *n.* plan, advice†
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down, drop, lower, derive†*
**dominor, ārī, ātus** rule (over) (*dat.*)†
**dominus, ī** *m.* lord, master†
**fatīgō** (1) weary, tire (out)†
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** cherish, fondle
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**Jūlius, (i)ī** *m.* (1) Julius Caesar; (2) Augustus Caesar†
**lūstrum, ī** *n.* spaee of five years, sacred season†
**melior, ius** better, superior†
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* city of central Greeee, home of Agamemnon, leader of the Greek expedition against Troy†
**nāscor, ī, nātus** be born, arise*
**Ōceanus, ī** *m.* ocean†
**orīgō, inis** *f.* origin, beginning, source†
**Phthīa, ae** *f.* city and district of northern Greeee, home of Aehilles, a Greek chieftain against Troy†
**placeō, ēre, uī, itus** please (*dat.*)†
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, subjeet*
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, illustrious*
**quīn** nay (even), (but) that†*
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman*
**servitium, (i)ī** *n.* slavery, bondage†
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**terminō** (1) bound, limit†
**togātus, a, um** toga-clad†
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan*

---

**279. Quīn:** *yes, even;* introducing an almost unbelievable statement.

**280. metū:** abl. of means; App. 331; because of her fear for Carthage, as represented in ll. 19 ff.; ef. **id metuēns** in l. 23.

**281. in melius:** *for the better.*

**282. rērum:** *of the world.* **-que:** explicative, adding an explanatory statement. **togātam:** the toga was the characteristic Roman dress.

**283. Sīc placitum (est):** "It is thus deereed." **lūstrīs lābentibus:** abl. abs.; *as the years go gliding by;* note the alliteration; App. 411.

**284. domus Assaracī:** *the house of Assaracus*, a Trojan prince; i.e., the Romans, descendants of the Trojans, shall some day conquer and rule Greece. Greece was redueed to a Roman province in 146 B.C.

**285. victīs Argīs:** dat. with speeial verb or abl. of place where; App. 297, 319.

**286. pulchrā Trojānus orīgine Caesar:** interlocked order; App. 442. **pulchrā orīgine:** abl. of quality; App. 330. **Trojānus Caesar:** Augustus, who traced his ancestry back to Aeneas.

**287. (quī) imperium Ōceanō (terminet). quī terminet:** rel. clause of purpose; App. 388. **Ōceanō:** abl. of means. The ancients thought that Oceanus was a great river which flowed around the earth. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 12, 369–371:

"He shall ascend
The throne hereditary, and bound his reign
With earth's wide bounds, his glory with the heavens."

**288. Jūlius:** in apposition with **Caesar** (in l. 286), and referring to Augustus

*Hunc tū* ōlim *caelō* spoliīs Orientis onustum
*accipiēs* sēcūra; *vocābitur hic* quoque vōtīs.
Aspera *tum positīs* mītēscent saecula *bellīs;*
cāna Fidēs *et* Vesta, Remō *cum* frātre Quirīnus
jūra *dabunt;* dīrae *ferrō et* compāgibus artīs
claudentur *Bellī* portae; Furor impius intus
saeva sedēns *super arma et* centum vīnctus aēnīs

**aēnus, a, um** (of) bronze, brazen†
**artus, a, um** close (fitting)†*
**asper, era, erum** harsh, rough, fierce*
**cānus, a, um** white, gray, hoary†
**centum** hundred*
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close, fasten*
**compāgēs, is** *f.* joint, seam, fastening
**dīrus, a, um** dire, awful†*
**Fidēs, eī** *f.* Faith, Honor†
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**Furor, ōris** *m.* Madness, Rage, Frenzy
**impius, a, um** unholy, impious, disloyal†
**intus** within
**jūs, jūris** *n.* justice, law, right†
**mītēscō, ere** become mild†
**ōlim** once, at some time*
**onustus, a, um** laden, burdened†
**Oriēns, entis** *m.* Orient, the East†
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, opening*
**Quirīnus, ī** *m.* Romulus, legendary founder of Rome†
**quoque** also*
**Remus, ī** *m.* twin brother of Romulus†*
**saeculum, ī** *n.* age, generation†
**saevus, a, um** cruel, fierce, stern*
**sēcūrus, a, um** free from care, untroubled†
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit*
**spolium,** (i)ī *n.* spoils, booty, plunder†
**Vesta, ae** *f.* goddess of the hearth†
**vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, tie†
**vōtum, ī** *n.* prayer, vow†*

Caesar who as the adopted son of Julius Caesar took this name. The name Julius was fancifully derived from Iulus, and the latter from Ilus, thus connecting the word with Ilus, one of the early kings of Ilium (Troy). Cf. note on l. 267.

**289: (in) caelō:** refers to the deification of Augustus, who was worshipped as a god and as the son of a god, Julius Caesar, even during his lifetime. **Hunc spoliīs Orientis onustum:** refers to Augustus Caesar's conquests in the Orient, especially to his recovery from the Parthians of the Roman standards they had captured from Crassus in 53. B.C., and to his victory over Antony and Cleopatra at Actium in 31 B.C.

**290. sēcūra:** adjective modifying **tū** which is subject of **accipiēs. hic (Caesar) quoque:** *he also*, as well as Aeneas, will be worshipped (**vocābitur**) as a god; see ll. 259–260.

**291. positīs bellīs:** abl. abs.; App. 343. A prophecy of the golden age of peace, when all wars shall cease. **Aspera positīs saecula bellīs:** interlocked order; App. 442. This and the following lines (292–296) refer to the expected return of the Golden Age, which was ardently hoped for and often prophesied in antiquity, when all the world would be good and happy; faith and honor and peace and love would prevail: and sin and wickedness, suffering and sorrow, would be no more.

**292. cāna Fidēs:** one of the earliest shrines at Rome was dedicated to the goddess Fides. This line is usually interpreted symbolically: Fides and Vesta represent the honor and sanctity of the old Roman home, while the reconciliation of Romulus and Remus, once estranged, symbolizes the reconciliation of the two chief parties at Rome, long engaged in deadly civil war.

**293. ferrō et compāgibus artīs:** abl. of means with **claudentur,** l. 294.

**294. claudentur Bellī portae:** apparently referring to the temple of Janus, the doors of which were opened in time of war and closed in time of peace. Augustus closed the temple in 29 B.C., after it had remained continuously opened for more than two centuries. It had been closed only twice before since the foundation of Rome. **impius:** referring to the unholy spirit of civil war.

**295. saeva sedēns super:** alliteration; App. 411.

**295–296. vīnctus post tergum:** (his hands) *bound behind his back.* **ōre:** abl. of means or cause, with **fremet;** App.

post tergum nōdīs fremet horridus *ōre* cruentō."
*Haec ait et* Majā genitum dēmittit *ab* altō,
*ut terrae utque novae* pateant Karthāginis *arcēs*
hospitiō *Teucrīs, nē fātī* nescia *Dīdō*
*fīnibus* arcēret. Volat *ille per* āera *magnum*
rēmigiō ālārum *ac* Libyae citus astitit *ōrīs*.
*Et jam* jussa *facit, pōnuntque* ferōcia Poenī
corda *volente deō; in prīmīs rēgīna* quiētum
*accipit in Teucrōs animum mentemque* benignam.
*At pius Aenēās per noctem plūrima volvēns,*
*ut prīmum lūx* alma *data est,* exīre *locōsque*

---

**āēr, āeris,** *acc.* **āera,** *m.* air, mist, fog†
**āla, ae** *f.* wing†*
**almus, a, um** nurturing, kind(ly)†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**arceō, ēre, uī** keep off, defend
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (on, at) (*dat.*)*
**benignus, a, um** kind(ly), benign†
**citus, a, um** quick, swift†
**cor, cordis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, eruel†
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down, drop*
**exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** go out†
**ferōx, ōcis** fieree, savage, wild
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** rage, roar*
**gignō, ere, genuī, genitus** bear, beget†
**horridus, a, um** horrible, bristling†
**hospitium, (i)ī** *n.* hospitality, welcome†
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* great eommereial city of North Afriea, rival of Rome
**Libya, ae** *f.* distriet of North Afriea*
**Maja, ae** *f.* daughter of Atlas and mother of Mereury, messenger of the gods†
**nescius, a, um** ignorant, unaware†
**nōdus, ī** *m.* knot†
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend†
**Poenus, a, um** Phoenieian, Carthaginian†
**post** behind, after (*acc.*); after(ward)†*
**quiētus, a, um** ealm, peaceful
**rēmigium, (i)ī** *n.* oarage, rowing†
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide, rear
**volō** (1) fly, speed*

---

331, 332. **fremet:** from rage at not being able to indulge in his favorite sport of eneouraging fratrieidal strife.

**297–304. Mercury is sent to Dido, at Carthage, to prepare the way for Aeneas and the Trojans.**

**297. ait:** third sing. of **ajō. Majā:** with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*. **Majā genitum:** *the son of Maja.*

**298–300. pateant, arcēret:** purpose; App. 359; observe the differenee in tense, made possible by the fact that the prineipal verb, **dēmittit,** as a historieal present may be considered either primary or seeondary; App. 353, *a*; 351, 1, *a*.

**299. hospitiō Teucrīs:** two datives; App. 301, 303; or **hospitiō** may be abl. of manner; App. 328. **fātī nescia Dīdō:** i.e., Dido might not know that the Trojans were fated to settle in Italy and might repel them from her land as possible invaders.

**300. (ā) fīnibus. (Teucrōs) arcēret:** negative purpose; App. 359. **āera:** aec. sing. from **āēr,** a Greek form; App. 68.

**301. rēmigiō:** abl. of means; App. 331; a metaphor from the sea; App. 432. **astitit:** perfeet, to denote instantaneous action, after the historieal present, **volat.** (in) **ōrīs.**

**303. deō volente:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **in prīmīs:** *among the first, especially.* **rēgīna:** Dido.

**304. in:** *toward.*

**305–417. Aeneas sets out to explore the unknown region, and meets his mother Venus disguised as a huntress. The goddess tells him that he is near Carthage, relates the history of Dido, announces the safety of his remaining ships, resumes her form as a divinity, and disappears.**

**305. plūrima (mente) volvēns.**

**306–309. ut prīmum:** *when first, as soon as.* **exīre, explōrāre, quaerere, referre:** depend on **cōnstituit** in l. 309. **Aenēās cōnstituit exīre locōsque novōs explōrāre, quaerere quās ōrās accesserit ventō (et quaerere) quī teneant (illōs locōs) referreque exācta sociīs (suīs).**

explōrāre *novōs, quās ventō* accesserit *ōrās,*
*quī teneant* (*nam* inculta *videt*), hominēs*ne* feraе*ne,*
*quaerere* cōnstituit *sociīsque* exācta *referre.*
*Classem in* convexō nemorum *sub* rūpe cavātā
arboribus clausam *circum atque* horrentibus *umbrīs*
occulit; *ipse ūnō* graditur comitātus Achātē
bīna *manū* lātō crispāns hastīlia *ferrō.*
*Cui māter mediā sēsē tulit* obvia *silvā*
virginis *ōs* habitum*que* gerēns *et* virginis *arma*
Spartānae, *vel* quālis *equōs* Thrēissa fatīgat
Harpalycē volucrem*que fugā* praevertitur Hebrum.
*Namque umerīs dē* mōre habilem suspenderat arcum

**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach, reach
**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree†*
**arcus, ūs** *m.* bow*
**bīnī, ae, a** two (each), by twos†
**cavō** (1) hollow (out)†
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close, hem in*
**comitō** (1) accompany, attend†
**cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** establish, resolve†
**convexum, ī** *n.* hollow, valley, sky†
**crispō, āre, ātus** brandish, wave†
**exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** drive out; determine, discover
**explōrō** (1) explore, search (out)
**fatīgō** (1) weary, tire (out)
**fera, ae** *f.* wild beast, animal†
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on), wear*
**gradior, ī, gressus** march, go, proceed†
**habilis, e** easily handled, handy†
**habitus, ūs** *m.* appearance, garb†
**Harpalycē, ēs** *f.* Thracian princess and huntress, renowned for her speed†
**hastīle, is** *n.* spear(-shaft), lance†
**Hebrus, ī** *m.* slow Thracian river which Vergil thought fast†
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder, tremble*
**incultus, a, um** untilled, wild†
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, manner, law*
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**obvius, a, um** in the way, to meet (*dat.*)†
**occulō, ere, uī, ltus** hide, conceal†
**praevertor, ī, rsus** outstrip, surpass†
**quālis, e** of what kind, such (as)†*
**rūpēs, is** *f.* cliff, crag, rock*
**Spartānus, a, um** Spartan, of Sparta, in southern Greece†
**suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** suspend, hang†*
**Thrēissa, ae** *f.* Thracian, of Thrace, a district northeast of Greece†
**virgō, inis** *f.* girl, maid(en)†*
**volucer, cris, cre** swift, winged†*

**307. quās (ōrās) accesserit, quī (eās) teneant:** indir. questions dependent on **quaerere**; App. 349. **ventō:** abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332.

**308. (ea esse) inculta:** **ea** is neuter plural and refers to both **locōs** and **ōrās**, one a masc. and the other a fem. noun; for its gender see App. 239, *b*. **videt:** with the final syllable long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*. **hominēsne feraene (sint). -ne, -ne:** *whether, or.*

**309. sociīs:** indirect object. **exācta:** substantively, *the things determined, learned.*

**311. horrentibus umbrīs:** a transferred epithet; **horrentibus** belongs logically to the trees (**arboribus**) but is transferred to their shadows (**umbrīs**); App. 446. Cf. **horrentī umbrā** (l. 165) and note. **circum:** adverb, *round about.*

**312. ipse (Aenēās):** *the master;* see note on **ipsius** (l. 114). **ūnō = sōlō,** a common meaning. **ūnō Achātē:** abl. of accompaniment without the preposition or ablative of means.

**313. bīna:** this distributive numeral is often used instead of the cardinal **duo** with objects that go in pairs. **manū:** abl. of place or means. **lātō ferrō:** *with broad iron* (*point*); abl. of quality; App. 330.

**314. Cui:** Aeneas, dat. with **obvia** which modifies **māter.** **(in) mediā silvā.**

**316. vel (tālis virginis) quālis . . . fatīgat Harpalycē:** *or* (*of*) *such a girl as the Thracian Harpalyce* (*when she*) *tires the horses* (by outstripping them in a race).

**317. Harpalycē:** nom., a Greek form. **fugā:** *in her swift course.* abl. of means; App. 331.

**318. (dē or in) umerīs.**

vēnātrīx *dederatque* comam diffundere *ventīs*,
nūda genū nōdō*que* sinūs collēcta fluentīs.
*Ac* prior "Heus," inquit, "juvenēs, mōnstrāte, *meārum*
*vīdistis sī quam hīc errantem forte* sorōrum
succīnctam pharetrā *et* maculōsae tegmine lyncis,
*aut* spūmantis aprī *cursum clāmōre* prementem."
*Sīc* Venus; *et* Veneris contrā *sīc* fīlius orsus:
"*Nūlla tuārum audīta mihī neque vīsa* sorōrum,
*Ō quam tē* memorem, virgō? *Namque haud tibi* vultus
mortālis, *nec vōx* hominem sonat; *Ō, dea* certē
(an Phoebī soror? An nymphārum *sanguinis ūna?*),
*sīs* fēlīx *nostrumque* levēs, quaecumque, *labōrem*

---

**an** *interrog.* or, whether†*
**aper, prī** *m.* wild boar†
**certē** certainly, surely
**colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** gather, collect
**coma, ae** *f.* hair†*
**contrā** opposite, in turn*
**diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** scatter†
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, blessed; propitious†*
**fīlius, (i)ī** *m.* son†
**fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow†
**genū, ūs** *n.* knee†
**heus** ho! hallo!†
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**inquam, is, it** say†*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)†*
**levō** (1) lift, lighten
**lynx, lyncis** *m.* (*f.*) lynx, wild cat†
**maculōsus, a, um** spotted†
**memorō** (1) recount, (re)call, relate*
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out†*
**mortālis, e** mortal, human†*
**nōdus, ī** *m.* knot
**nūdus, a, um** nude, bare†
**nympha, ae** *f.* nymph, a minor divinity, represented in the form of a beautiful maiden
**ordior, īrī, orsus** begin, undertake†
**pharetra, ae** *f.* quiver†
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy, brother of Diana, goddess of the chase†*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, control, pursue*
**prior, ius** former, first†*
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whichever, whatever*
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, hollow, bay*
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister, comrade*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray†*
**succingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird (up)†
**teg(i)men, inis** *n.* cover(ing), skin
**vēnātrīx, īcis** *f.* huntress†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
**virgō, inis** *f.* girl, maid(en)*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face*

---

**319. vēnātrīx:** (*as a*) *huntress.* **diffundere:** the inf. of purpose, a poetic use; App. 261.

**320. genū:** acc. of respect; App. 311. **sinūs:** acc., object of **collēcta** used as a middle voice; App. 309; refers to her flowing *robes.*

**321. prior:** *first,* before Aeneas could speak.

**322. quam:** indef., *any* (*one*). **sī vīdistis quam meārum sorōrum hīc errantem, mōnstrāte (eam mihi).**

**325. Sīc Venus (dīxit). Venus, Veneris fīlius:** brought together in the sentence, emphasizing that Venus and Aeneas do not here meet as mother and son. **orsus (est).**

**326. Nūlla (soror). audīta (est) mihī. mihī:** dat. of agent; App. 302; for the length of the final i, see the note on **mihī,** (l. 8).

**327. quam tē (esse) memorem:** *whom* (*what*) *shall I call you?* **memorem** is deliberative subj.; App. 348. **tibi:** dat. of possession. **vultus (est) mortālis.**

**328. nec vōx hominem sonat:** *nor does your voice sound human;* **hominem** is cognate acc.; App. 313.

**329. an Phoebī soror (es)? Phoebī soror:** i.e., Phoebe, Diana, "the huntress queen, chaste and fair." **sanguinis = generis:** part. gen. with **ūna.**

**330. sīs, levēs:** vol. or opt. subj.; App. 253, 254. **quaecumque (es).**

*et quō sub caelō tandem, quibus* orbis *in ōrīs*
jactēmur doceās; ignārī hominum*que locōrumque*
*errāmus ventō hūc vastīs et flūctibus āctī:*
*multa tibi ante ārās nostrā* cadet hostia *dextrā.*"
*Tum* Venus: "*Haud* equidem *tālī mē* dignor *honōre;*
virginibus *Tyriīs* mōs *est* gestāre pharetram
purpureō*que* altē sūrās vincīre coturnō.
Pūnica *rēgna vidēs, Tyriōs et* Agēnoris *urbem;*
*sed fīnēs* Libycī, *genus* intractābile *bellō.*
*Imperium Dīdō Tyriā* regit *urbe* profecta,
germānum *fugiēns. Longa est* injūria, *longae*
ambāgēs; *sed summa sequar* fastīgia *rērum.*
*Huic conjūnx* Sȳchaeus *erat,* dītissimus agrī

---

**Agēnor, oris** *m.* king of Phoenicia†
**ager, grī** *m.* land, field, territory†*
**altē** on high, high up†
**ambāgēs, is** *f.* turning, devious tale†
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**cot(h)urnus, ī** *m.* high boot, buskin†
**dignor, ārī, ātus** deem worthy (*abl.*)†
**dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis** rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell†*
**equidem** indeed, surely*
**fastīgium, (i)ī** *n.* summit, top, point†
**germānus, ī** *m.* brother†*
**gestō** (1) bear, wear, carry†
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f*). man, mortal, human*
**hostia, ae** *f.* victim, sacrifice†
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**injūria, ae** *f.* wrong, insult, injustice
**intractābilis, e** unmanageable, intractable†
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet*
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa†*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, manner, law*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb, world*
**pharetra, ae** *f.* quiver
**proficīscor, ī, fectus** set out, depart†
**Pūnicus, a, um** Phoenician, Punic, Carthaginian†
**purpureus, a, um** purple, crimson†
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct*
**sūra, ae** *f.* (calf of) leg†
**Sȳchaeus, ī** *m.* deceased husband of Dido†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
**vinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, tie
**virgō, inis** *f.* girl, maid(en)*

---

**331–332. et (mē) doceās sub quō caelō tandem (jactēmur), in quibus ōrīs orbis (terrārum) jactēmur. quō sub caelō . . . jactēmur:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **doceās:** vol. or opt. subj.; App. 253, 254. **-que:** with the final **e** elided before the initial vowel of the next verse. Such a verse is called *hypermetric;* App. 402.

**333. ventō, flūctibus:** abl. of means; App. 331. **vastīs:** construe with **flūctibus.**

**334. multa hostia cadet tibi nostrā dextrā (manū) ante ārās (tuās):** Aeneas promises a generous sacrifice to this unknown goddess, if she will grant his prayer. He wishes to make a good bargain, representing the proverbial **dō ut dēs** of Roman religion. **nostrā** ( = **meā**) **dextrā (manū):** abl. of means.

**335–336. Tum Venus (dīxit). honōre:** abl. with **dignor:** App. 337, *a.* **virginibus:** dat. of possession or reference; App. 299, 301. **Tyriīs:** Carthage was settled from Tyre; cf. **Tyriī tenuēre colōnī** (l. 12).

**336–337.** "Do not think me a goddess because I bear a bow and quiver, and am dressed in hunting costume. This is customary among Tyrian girls."

**337. purpureō:** Tyrian "purple" (really *scarlet*) was famous.

**338. Pūnica:** a word related to *Phoenician.* **Agēnoris:** as a Phoenician settlement, Carthage could be called the city of Agenor, founder of the Phoenician race.

**339. fīnēs (sunt) Libycī. genus:** in apposition with Libyans, implied in **Libycī.**

**340. (ex) Tyriā urbe profecta:** *having come from Tyre.*

**341. Longa est injūria = longum est dīcere (nārrāre) injūriam:** *the story of her wrongs is a long one.* **longae (sunt).**

**343. Huic (Dīdōnī):** dat. of possession; App. 299. **agrī:** gen. with adj., **dītissimus:** App. 287; *richest in land.*

Phoenīcum, *et magnō miserae* dīlēctus *amōre*,
*cui pater* intāctam *dederat prīmīsque* jugārat
ōminibus. *Sed rēgna* Tyrī germānus *habēbat*
Pygmaliōn, scelere *ante aliōs immānior omnīs*.
*Quōs inter medius vēnit* furor. *Ille* Sychaeum
impius *ante ārās atque aurī* caecus *amōre*
clam *ferrō* incautum superat, sēcūrus *amōrum*
germānae; factum*que* diū cēlāvit *et* aegram
*multa* malus simulāns vānā spē lūsit amantem.
*Ipsa sed in somnīs* inhumātī *vēnit* imāgō
*conjugis ōra* modīs attollēns pallida mīrīs;
crūdēlīs *ārās* trājecta*que pectora ferrō*
nūdāvit, caecum*que domūs* scelus *omne* retēxit.

---

**aeger, gra, grum** sick (at heart), weary*
**amāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) lover†
**attollō, ere** lift, raise†*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark†*
**cēlō** (1) hide, conceal†
**clam** secretly†
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bloody, fierce*
**dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus** love, ehcrish†
**diū** a long time, long†
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit†*
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, rage*
**germāna, ae** *f.* sister
**germānus, ī** *m.* brother*
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, likeness, ghost†*
**impius, a, um** unholy, unnatural, disloyal
**incautus, a, um** unsuspeeting, careless†
**inhumātus, a, um** unburied†
**intāctus, a, um** untouched, virgin†
**jugō** (1) join, unite, yoke together†
**lūdō, ere, sī, sus** sport, deceive, mock†
**malus, a, um** bad, evil, wicked*
**mīrus, a, um** wonderful, marvelous†
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, measure†*
**nūdō** (1) bare, expose
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, auspices†*
**pallidus, a, um** pale†
**Phoenīx, īcis** *m.* Phoenician†
**Pygmaliōn, ōnis** *m.* wicked brother of Dido†
**retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** uncover, disclose†
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin†*
**sēcūrus, a, um** free from care, careless, heedless (*gen.*)
**simulō** (1) imitate, pretend, feign
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**superō** (1) overcome, surpass; kill*
**Sȳchaeus, ī** *m.* deceased husband of Dido
**trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** pierce†
**Tyrus, ī** *f.* famous city of Phoenicia†
**vānus, a, um** empty, idle, false†

---

**344.** (Dīdōnī) **miserae**: dat. of agent; App. 302.

**345. pater** = Bēlus. (**eam** = Dīdōnem) **intāctam. jugā(ve)rat. ōminibus**: abl. of means; App. 331; by metonymy for *marriage*, since the omens were always consulted for weddings; App. 433.

**347. scelere**: abl. of respect with **immānior**; App. 325.

**348–351. inter quōs** = **inter Pygmaliōnem et Sychaeum**; anastrophe; App. 414. **Ille** ( = Pygmaliōn) **impius atque caecus amōre aurī, sēcūrus amōrum germānae (suae), clam ferrō superat Sychaeum incautum ante ārās.** Observe how strongly the speaker portrays the wicked character of Pygmalion and his disregard for all human or divine considerations.

**349. amōre**: abl. of cause; App. 332.

**350. amōrum**: obj. gen. with adj. **sēcūrus**; App. 284; *reckless of his sister's love* (for her husband).

**351. aegram**: modifies **amantem**, which is used substantively, *lover, loving wife*.

**352. multa simulāns**: to account for the absence of Sychaeus. **lūsit vānā spē (Dīdōnem) aegram amantem; sed ipsa imāgō inhumātī conjugis (Sychaeī) vēnit in somnīs (ad eam** = **Dīdōnem).**

**353. inhumātī**: the ancients believed that unless the corpse were properly buried, the ghost of the dead would wander restlessly about.

**354. modīs mīrīs**: alliteration; abl. of manner, with **pallida**; App. 328.

**355. ārās, pectora**: poetic plural. **ferrō**: abl. of means.

**356. domūs**: gen.

*Tum* celerāre *fugam* patriā*que* excēdere suādet
auxilium*que viae* veterēs *tellūre* reclūdit
thēsaurōs, ignōtum argentī pondus *et aurī.*
*Hīs* commōta *fugam Dīdō sociōsque parābat.*
Conveniunt *quibus aut* odium crūdēle tyrannī
*aut* metus ācer *erat; nāvīs, quae forte parātae,*
corripiunt onerant*que aurō.* Portantur avārī
Pygmaliōnis opēs *pelagō;* dux fēmina factī.
Dēvēnēre *locōs ubi nunc ingentia cernēs*
*moenia surgentemque novae* Karthāginis *arcem,*
mercātī*que* solum, factī *dē nōmine* Byrsam,
taurīnō quantum *possent* circumdare tergō.

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, fierce, spirited*
**argentum, ī** *n.* silver†
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* help, aid, assistance†*
**avārus, a, um** covetous, greedy†
**Byrsa, ae** *f.* citadel of Carthage†
**celerō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed†
**circumdō, are, dedī, datus** surround
**commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move, arouse
**conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come together, assemble†
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up), seize*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bloody, fierce*
**dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** arrive (at)†
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chieftain†*
**excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, depart†
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit*
**fēmina, ae** *f.* woman†
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange†
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* great commercial city of North Africa, rival of Rome
**mercor, ārī, ātus** buy, purchase†
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**odium, (i)ī** *n.* hate, hatred, enmity†
**onerō** (1) load, burden
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, wealth, power*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**pondus, eris** *n.* weight, burden†
**portō** (1) carry (off), bear, bring*
**Pygmaliōn, ōnis** *m.* wicked brother of Dido
**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, how many, as much (as)†*
**reclūdō, ere, sī, sus** disclose, reveal†
**solum, ī** *n.* soil, ground, earth†*
**suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus** advise, urge†
**taurīnus, a, um** of a bull†
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**thēsaurus, ī** *m.* treasure, hoard†
**tyrannus, ī** *m.* tyrant, usurper, ruler†
**vetus, eris** old, ancient, former*

**357. suādet:** the ghost urges Dido to flee. **celerāre, excēdere:** infinitives with **suādet**; ordinary prose would employ **ut** with the subjunctive.

**358. auxilium viae:** (*as*) *an aid* for her flight; **auxilium** is in apposition with **thēsaurōs. veterēs:** and so unknown to Pygmalion.

**360. Hīs (dictīs Sychaeī).**

**361.** (illī) **conveniunt. tyrannī:** of Pygmalion; obj. gen. with **odium** and **metus**; App. 284.

**362. parātae (sunt).**

**364. pelagō:** abl. of route; App. 338. **opēs:** the Roman historian Tacitus (*Annals*, 16, 1) says that the Emperor Nero sent a commission to Carthage to find the gold which Dido had brought and presumably buried there. **fēmina (erat) dux factī:** compare the inscription **Dux fēmina factī** which was stamped on the medals struck to commemorate the defeat of the Spanish Armada by the British in 1588, while Elizabeth was queen of England.

**365. Dēvēnēre = dēvēnērunt**; App. 204, 4. (**ad** or **in**) **locōs**; acc. of place whither; App. 315.

**367. mercātī (sunt). (tantum) solum (vocātum) Byrsam:** (*as much*) *ground* or *land* (*called*) *Byrsa*. **Byrsam:** a Greek word meaning *bull's hide*, later confused with the Carthaginian (Punic) word *bosra*, meaning *citadel;* hence the story that the Libyan natives agreed to sell to the Phoenicians as much land as could be covered with a bull's hide and that the Carthaginians cut the hide into long strips, thus securing a considerable area.

*Sed vōs quī tandem? Quibus aut vēnistis ab ōrīs?*
*Quōve tenētis* iter?" *Quaerentī tālibus ille*
suspīrāns *īmōque trahēns ā pectore vōcem:*
"*Ō dea, sī prīmā* repetēns *ab* orīgine pergam
*et* vacet annālīs *nostrōrum audīre labōrum,*
*ante diem* clausō compōnet Vesper Olympō.
*Nōs Trojā antīquā, sī* vestrās *forte per* aurīs
*Trojae nōmen iit,* dīversa *per aequora* vectōs
*forte suā* Libycīs tempestās appulit *ōrīs.*
*Sum pius Aenēās,* raptōs *quī ex* hoste penātīs
*classe* vehō *mēcum, fāmā super* aethera nōtus.
*Ītaliam quaerō* patriam *et genus ab Jove summō.*
Bis dēnīs Phrygium cōnscendī *nāvibus aequor,*

---

**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**annālis, is** *m.* story, record, annals†
**appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive to (*dat.*)†
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**bis** twice*
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close, fasten*
**compōnō, ere, posuī, positus** compose, construct, settle
**cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** ascend, embark
**dēnī, ae, a** ten (each), by tens†
**dīversus, a, um** scattered, various*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) stranger, enemy, foe†*
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey†*
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa*
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar†*
**Olympus, ī** *m.* Greek mountain, home of the gods, heaven†
**orīgō, inis** *f.* origin, beginning, source
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus** proceed†
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), rob*
**repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** seek again, repeat, retrace†
**suspīrō** (1) draw a deep breath, sigh†
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* tempest, storm; time*
**vacō**(1) be free (from), be at leisure†
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey*
**Vesper, eris** (**erī**) *m.* (god of the) evening (star)†
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*

---

**369. Sed quī (estis) vōs?** It is Aeneas's turn to speak.

**370. (Venerī) quaerentī tālibus (vōcibus) ille (Aenēās dīxit).**

**372. Ō dea:** Aeneas insists upon his contention that he is addressing a goddess, in spite of Venus's denial (ll. 335–337); or is it merely flattery paid to a beautiful young woman? **Sī pergam (dīcere annālīs nostrōrum labōrum):** a future less vivid condition; App. 381.

**372–373. et (sī) vacet (tibi):** *and if you should have the leisure;* **vacet** is used impersonally. **audīre:** inf. of purpose; App. 261.

**374. ante:** *sooner,* that is, than my story would be told. **clausō Olympō:** abl. abs.; when Phoebus, the sun god, returned to Olympus at the end of the day, the doors of heaven were closed for the night.

**375–377. tempestās suā forte appulit nōs vectōs (ab) antīquā Trojā — sī forte nōmen Trojae iit per aurīs vestrās — per dīversa aequora Libycīs ōrīs( = ad Libycās ōrās). Nōs:** acc., obj. of **appulit,** in l. 377. **Trojā antīquā (vectōs):** abl. of place whence without a preposition; App. 320, *a.*

**377. forte suā:** contrary to the plans and desires of Aeneas. **ōrīs:** dat. with a compound; App. 298.

**378. pius:** see the note on **pietāte** (l. 10) and on **pius** (l. 220).

**379. classe:** abl. of means. **fāmā:** abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. Naïve self-esteem, not conceit. **aethera:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

**380. (quaerō) Ītaliam patriam et genus (patrium) ab Jove:** refers to the legend that Dardanus, the son of Jupiter and Electra, and founder of the Trojan race, had formerly lived in Italy.

**381. Bis dēnīs:** *twice ten;* more poetic than simply *twenty.* With adverbs of multiplication, as **bis,** etc., the distribu-

*mātre deā* mōnstrante *viam data fāta secūtus;*
*vix* septem convulsae *undīs* Eurō*que* supersunt.
*Ipse* ignōtus, egēns, Libyae dēserta peragrō,
Eurōpā *atque* Asiā pulsus." *Nec plūra* querentem
passa Venus *mediō sīc* interfāta dolōre *est:*
"Quisquis *es, haud,* crēdō, invīsus caelestibus *aurās*
vītālīs carpis, *Tyriam quī* advēneris *urbem.*
Perge modo *atque hinc tē rēgīnae ad līmina* perfer.
*Namque tibī* reducēs *sociōs classemque relātam*
nuntiō *et in* tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus *āctam,*
nī frūstrā augurium vānī docuēre *parentēs.*
Aspice bis sēnōs laetantīs *agmine* cycnōs,

**adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** arrive, reach†
**Aquilō, ōnis** *m.* (north) wind
**Asia, ae** *f.* Asia (Minor)†
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at†*
**augurium, (i)ī** *n.* augury, prophecy†
**bis** twice*
**caelestēs, ium** *m.* (*f.*) divinities, gods
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, take, consume†
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear, shatter†
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust*
**cycnus, ī** *m.* swan†
**dēsertum, ī** *n.* desert, waste†
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, instruct*
**dolor, ōris** *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion*
**egeō, ēre, uī** be needy, lack†
**Eurōpa, ae** *f.* Europe†
**Eurus, ī** *m.* (east) wind
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly†*
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange
**interfor, fārī, fātus** interrupt†
**invīsus, a, um** hateful, hated, odious
**laetor, ārī, ātus** rejoice, exult†
**Libya, ae** *f.* district of North Africa*
**modo** only, (just) now†
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out*
**nī, nisi** if not, unless, except*
**nuntiō** (1) announce†
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure, allow*
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** drive, force†
**peragrō** (1) wander through†
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear, betake†
**pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus** proceed
**queror, ī, questus** complain, lament†
**quisquis, quicquid** whoever, whatever†
**redux, ucis** led back, restored†
**sēnī, ae, a** six (each), by sixes†
**septem** seven
**supersum, esse, fuī** survive, remain†
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**vānus, a, um** empty, idle, false
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change, rout*
**vītālis, e** of life, vital†

tive numerals are commonly employed instead of the cardinals. **Phrygium aequor:** *the sea near Troy.* **nāvibus:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**382.** **(meā) mātre deā mōnstrante:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**384.** **(ego) ipse ignōtus:** his person is unknown at present, even though his fame is widespread (l. 379).

**385.** **(ex) Eurōpā, (ex) Asiā:** ablatives of separation. **Eurōpā = Ītaliā:** due to Juno's interference; compare ll. 251–252. **Asiā = Trojā:** because of the destruction of Troy. **plūra (Aenēān) querentem. Venus nōn passa (eum = Aenēān) querentem plūra ( = querī plūra) sīc interfāta (est in) mediō dolōre. plūra:** obj. of **querentem; Aenēān** is understood as object of **passa.**

**387–388.** **haud invīsus:** this figure of speech is called *litotes;* App. 431. **caelestibus:** dat. with **invīsus. aurās vītālīs carpis:** *you breathe, live.* **quī advēneris:** rel. clause of characteristic, with additional idea of cause; App. 389. **(ad) urbem.**

**389.** **perfer:** imp. of **perferō;** App. 202.

**390–391.** **classem:** his twelve lost ships. **nam tibi nuntiō sociōs (tuōs esse) reducēs classemque (tuam esse) relātam et āctam in tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus.**

**391.** **in tūtum (portum). versīs Aquilōnibus:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **āctam:** from **agō;** modifies **classem.**

**392.** **docuēre = docuērunt (mē).**

**393.** **sēnōs:** see note on **dēnīs** (l. 381). The two groups of swans, which had been separated through fright and had reunited after the danger was past, correspond to

aetheriā *quōs lāpsa* plagā *Jovis* āles apertō
turbābat *caelō; nunc terrās* ordine *longō*
*aut capere aut captās jam* dēspectāre *videntur:*
*ut* reducēs *illī* lūdunt strīdentibus ālīs
*et* coetū cīnxēre polum cantūs*que dedēre,*
*haud* aliter *puppēsque tuae* pūbēs*que tuōrum*
*aut portum tenet aut* plēnō *subit* ōstia *vēlō.*
Perge modo *et,* quā *tē dūcit via,* dērige gressum."
*Dīxit et* āvertēns roseā cervīce refulsit,
ambrosiae*que* comae dīvīnum vertice odōrem
spīrāvēre; *pedēs* vestis dēflūxit *ad īmōs;*

---

**aetherius, a, um** of the upper air, ethereal†
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**āles, itis** *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl†
**aliter** otherwise†*
**ambrosius, a, um** ambrosial, immortal†
**apertus, a, um** open(ed), clear
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn (aside), avert*
**cantus, ūs** *m.* song, melody, music†
**cervīx, īcis** *f.* neck†
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** encircle, gird*
**coetus, ūs** *m.* company, band, flock†
**coma, ae** *f.* hair*
**dēfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow down†
**dērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** direct, guide†
**dēspectō** (1) look down (on)†
**dīvīnus, a, um** divine, holy†
**gressus, ūs** *m.* step, walk, gait†
**lūdō, ere, sī, sus** sport, mock
**modo** only, (just) now
**odor, ōris** *m.* odor, fragrance†
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, line, array†*
**ōstium, (i)ī** *n.* mouth, harbor, entrance
**pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus** proceed
**plaga, ae** *f.* region, tract†
**plēnus, a, um** full, complete, swelling†
**polus, ī** *m.* pole, sky, heaven
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, young men†*
**quā** where(by), in any way
**redux, ucis** led back, restored
**refulgeō, ēre, lsī** shine, gleam†
**roseus, a, um** rosy, pink†
**spīrō** (1) breathe (forth), exhale†
**strīd(e)ō, ĕre, dī** creak, rustle, whir
**turbō** (1) throw into confusion, agitate†*
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, summit, head*
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), robe†*

---

the two groups of the twelve ships under Ilioneus, which will reunite after a short separation. Thus **sociōs reducēs** of l. 390 corresponds to **ut reducēs illī** of l. 397. **agmine**: abl. of manner; App. 328; the swans had just been put to flight and scattered by the eagle.

**394. quōs āles Jovis lāpsa aetheriā plagā turbābat (in) apertō caelō. Jovis āles**: the eagle was the bird of Jove and bore his thunderbolt. **(dē) aetheriā plagā**: *from the height of heaven.*

**395–396. terrās capere**: *to alight.* **caelō**: abl. of place where or of route; App. 319, 338. **nunc videntur**: now, after the eagle has disappeared, the swans are seen in two groups. One group, in a long row, returns to its feeding place on the land; the other group flies above and gazes down at the places occupied (**terrās captās**) by their comrades.

**396. captās (terrās) dēspectāre**: *to look down upon the places* (**terrās**) *already occupied.*

**397. illī** = **cycnī.**

**398. coetū**: abl. of manner; App. 328. **cīnxēre, dedēre** = **cīnxērunt, dedērunt**; App. 204, 4. **cantūs**: acc. plural.

**399. haud aliter**: litotes; App. 431. The main point of the comparison is in the happy return to safety of both swans and Trojans after their disaster. **-que . . . -que**: polysyndeton; App. 439.

**400. tenet, subit**: the subjects are **puppēs** and **pūbēs**, but the verbs agree in number with **pūbēs**, the nearest; App. 236, *b.*

**402. Dīxit (Venus) et (sē) āvertēns. cervīce**: abl. of means.

**403. (ā) vertice**: abl. of separation. **dīvīnum odōrem**: a special fragrance is often attributed to the gods.

**404. spīrāvēre** = **spīrāvērunt. vestis dēflūxit**: with the exception of Diana, all the goddesses wore flowing robes.

*et* vēra incessū patuit *dea. Ille ubi mātrem*
agnōvit *tālī fugientem est vōce secūtus:*
"*Quid nātum* totiēns, crūdēlis *tū* quoque, falsīs
lūdis imāginibus? Cūr *dextrae* jungere *dextram*
*nōn datur ac* vērās *audīre et* reddere *vōcēs?*"
*Tālibus* incūsat gressum*que ad moenia tendit.*
*At* Venus obscūrō gradientīs āere saepsit,
*et multō* nebulae *circum dea fūdit* amictū,
*cernere nē quis eōs* neu *quis* contingere *posset*
mōlīrī*ve* moram *aut veniendī* poscere causās.
*Ipsa* Paphum sublīmis abit *sēdēsque* revīsit
*laeta suās, ubi* templum *illī,* centum*que* Sabaeō
tūre calent *ārae* sertīs*que* recentibus hālant.

---

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart*
**āēr, āeris,** *acc.* **āera,** *m.* air, mist, fog
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize†*
**amictus, ūs** *m.* wrap, robe†
**caleō, ēre, uī** be hot, burn†
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason*
**centum** hundred*
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, befall*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, harsh, bloody*
**cūr** why?†
**falsus, a, um** false, deceitful, pretended†
**gradior, ī, gressus** step, go, proceed
**gressus, ūs** *m.* step, walk, gait
**hālō** (1) breathe (forth), be fragrant†
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, shape, ghost*
**incessus, ūs** *m.* walk, gait, stride†
**incūsō** (1) reproach, chide, blame†
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**lūdō, ere, sī, sus** sport, mock
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** work, effect, make
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hindrance, hesitation†*
**nebula, ae** *f.* cloud, mist, fog†
**neu, nēve** and (that) not, and lest†
**obscūrus, a, um** dark†*
**Paphus (os), ī** *f.* city of Cyprus, famous center of the worship of Venus†
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, be evident
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek†*
**quoque** also*
**recēns, entis** fresh, recent†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, reply†*
**revīsō, ere** revisit†
**Sabaeus, a, um** Sabaean, of Saba in southern Arabia, famous for its incense†
**saepiō, īre, psī, ptus** hedge in, inclose†
**sertum, ī** *n.* wreath, garland†
**sublīmis, e** on high, aloft, uplifted
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary†*
**totiēns** so often, so many times†
**tūs, tūris** *n.* incense, unguent†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
**vērus, a, um** true, real, honest†*

---

**405. Ille:** Aeneas. The hiatus between **dea** and **Ille** is justified by the pause in thought after **dea**; cf. **Samō: hīc** (l. 16).

**406.** (**eam**) **fugientem.**

**407. Quid tū quoque crūdēlis totiēns lūdis** (**mē**) **nātum** (**tuum**) **falsīs imāginibus? quid:** adverbial, *why?* **nātum** (**tuum**): emphatic by position. **tū quoque:** "*even you,* as well as others who might be expected to deceive me."

**408. dextrae** (**manuī**): dat. with **jungere**; App. 297.

**409. vērās vōcēs:** contrasted with **falsīs imāginibus** of l. 407.

**410. Tālibus** (**dictīs Aenēās**) **incūsat** (**mātrem suam**). **moenia** (**Karthāginis**).

**411. obscūrō āere:** such a concealing cloud or mist is a device very common in epic tradition and in folk tales. (**Aenēān Achātēnque**) **gradientīs.**

**412. circum** (**eōs**) **fūdit:** *surrounded (them).* **dea:** (*as*) *a goddess,* i.e., by her supernatural power.

**413. quis:** indef. **cernere** (**eōs**). **posset:** negative purpose; App. 359.

**414. mōlīrī moram:** alliteration. **veniendī:** a gerund in the gen. modifying **causās.**

**415. Ipsa:** Venus; see the note on **ipsa** (l. 42) and on **ipsius** (l. 114). **Paphum:** acc. of place to which; App. 315, *a.*

**416. laeta:** contrasted with **trīstior** (l. 228). **templum** (**est**) **illī. illī: Venerī,** dat. of possession; App. 299. **Sabaeō:** cf. *Paradise Lost,* 4, 162:

"Sabaean odors from the spicy shore
Of Araby the blest."

Corripuēre *viam* intereā, quā sēmita mōnstrat.
*Jamque* ascendēbant collem, *quī plūrimus urbī*
imminet adversās*que* aspectat dēsuper *arcēs*.
Mīrātur mōlem *Aenēās*, māgālia *quondam*,
mīrātur portās strepitum*que et* strāta *viārum*.
Īnstant *ardentēs Tyriī: pars dūcere* mūrōs
mōlīrī*que arcem et manibus* subvolvere *saxa*,
*pars* optāre *locum tēctō et* conclūdere sulcō;
jūra magistrātūs*que* legunt sānctum*que* senātum.
*Hīc portūs aliī* effodiunt; *hīc alta* theātrīs
fundāmenta locant *aliī*, *immānīsque* columnās
rūpibus excīdunt, scaenīs decora *alta futūrīs*.
Quālis apēs aestāte *novā per* flōrea rūra
exercet *sub* sōle *labor*, *cum gentis* adultōs

---

**adultus, a, um** grown, adult†
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**aestās, ātis** *f.* summer
**apis, is** *f.* bee†
**ascendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** ascend, mount†
**a(d)spectō** (1) look at, see, face†
**collis, is** *m.* hill†
**columna, ae** *f.* column, pillar†
**conclūdō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close†
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up), hasten on*
**decus, oris** *n.* ornament, beauty, dignity†
**dēsuper** from above
**effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus** dig out, excavate†
**excīdō, ere, ī, sus** cut out, destroy†
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** busy, train†*
**flōreus, a, um** flowery†
**fundāmentum, ī** *n.* foundation†
**immineō, ēre** overhang, menace (*dat.*)
**īnstō, āre, stitī** urge on, press on (*dat.*)†
**intereā** meanwhile, meantime*
**jūs, jūris** *n.* law, justice, decree
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, gather†*
**locō** (1) place, locate, establish*
**māgālia, ium** *n.* huts, hovels†
**magistrātus, ūs** *m.* magistrate, officer†
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire†*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* mass, burden, structure*
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** work, effect, make
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out*
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart†*
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, door, opening*
**quā** where(by), in any way
**quālis, e** such (as), of what sort, as*
**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
**rūs, rūris** *n.* country (district)†
**sānctus, a, um** sacred, holy, revered†*
**scaena, ae** *f.* stage, background
**sēmita, ae** *f.* path†
**senātus, ūs** *m.* senate, council of elders†
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**strātum, ī** *n.* pavement; bed†
**strepitus, ūs** *m.* noise, uproar†
**subvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** roll up†
**sulcus, ī** *m.* furrow, trench, ditch†
**theātrum, ī** *n.* theater†

---

**418–436. Aeneas and Achates, rendered invisible by Venus, proceed to Carthage and admire the rising city.**

**418.** (Aenēās Achātēsque) **corripuērunt viam:** *they hurried along their way.* **sēmita** (sē) **mōnstrat.**

**419. plūrimus:** *with imposing size.* **urbī:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**421. mōlem** (**urbis**). **quondam:** before the erection of the city. **Mīrātur . . . mīrātur:** anaphora; App. 413.

**423. dūcere:** *extend;* this and the following infinitives depend on **Īnstant**; App. 259.

**423–425. pars, pars:** in partitive apposition with **Tyriī.**

**425. tēctō:** *for a house;* dat. of purpose; App. 303. **conclūdere** (**locum tēctī**) **sulcō:** for the foundation.

**426. magistrātūs:** acc. plural.

**427–428. aliī . . . aliī:** *some . . . others.*

**429.** (**ex**) **rūpibus:** the typical open-air theater of classical times was commonly excavated from a hillside. **scaenīs:** dat. **decora:** apposition with **columnās.**

**430–431.** (**tālis est labor illīs**) **quālis** (**labor**) **exercet apēs:** the simile is famous; cf. App. 441. **aestāte novā:** abl. of time; App. 322.

ēdūcunt fētūs, *aut cum* līquentia mella
stīpant *et* dulcī distendunt nectare cellās,
*aut* onera *accipiunt venientum, aut agmine factō*
ignāvum fūcōs pecus *ā* praesēpibus arcent;
fervet opus redolent*que* thymō fragrantia mella.
"*Ō* fortūnātī, *quōrum jam moenia surgunt!*"
*Aenēās ait et* fastīgia suspicit *urbis.*
Īnfert *sē* saeptus nebulā (mīrābile *dictū*)
*per mediōs*, miscet*que virīs neque cernitur ūllī.*
Lūcus *in urbe fuit mediā, laetissimus umbrae,*
*quō prīmum* jactātī *undīs et* turbine Poenī
effōdēre *locō* signum, *quod* rēgia *Jūnō*
mōnstrārat, *caput* ācris *equī; sīc nam fore bellō*
ēgregiam *et* facilem vīctū *per* saecula *gentem.*

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, keen, spirited*
**arceō, ēre, uī** keep off, defend
**cella, ae** *f.* cell, storeroom†
**distendō, ere, ī, ntus** distend, stretch†
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fresh*
**ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead forth†
**effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus** dig out, excavate
**ēgregius, a, um** remarkable, distinguished†
**facilis, e** easy†
**fastīgium, (i)ī** *n.* summit, top, height
**ferv(e)ō, ēre, (ferbu)ī** glow, boil†
**fētus, ūs** *m.* offspring, brood, swarm†
**fortūnātus, a, um** fortunate, blessed†
**fragrāns, antis** fragrant, sweet-smelling†
**fūcus, ī** *m.* drone†
**ignāvus, a, um** lazy, idle†
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear (in, into)
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet*
**līquēns, entis** liquid, flowing†
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood†*
**mel, mellis** *n.* honey†
**mīrābilis, e** wonderful, marvelous†
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out*
**nebula, ae** *f.* cloud, mist, fog
**nectar, aris** *n.* nectar†
**onus, eris** *n.* burden, load†
**opus, eris** *n.* work, deed, toil†*
**pecus, oris** *n.* flock, herd, swarm†*
**Poenus, a, um** Phoenician, Carthaginian
**praesēpe, is** *n.* stall, hive†
**redoleō, ēre, uī** be fragrant, smell (of)†
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly†*
**saeculum, ī** *n.* generation, age
**saepiō, īre, psī, ptus** hedge in, inclose
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, token, signal†*
**stīpō** (1) stuff, crowd, stow†
**suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look up (at)†
**thymum, ī** *n.* thyme, a flowering plant†
**turbō, inis** *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus** live, be alive

---

**434.** venient(i)um (apium).

**435.** fūcōs: *the drones;* apposition with ignāvum pecus.

**437–493. Aeneas visits the temple of Juno where he sees depicted the leading incidents of the Trojan War.**

**437.** Ō fortūnātī: substantively; *O fortunate ones!* jam moenia surgunt: Aeneas was impatiently looking forward to the time when the walls of his own city would rise.

**438.** ait: third sing. of ajō.

**439.** dictū: supine, abl. of respect with mīrābile; App. 271, 325.

**440.** per mediōs (virōs): *through the midst (of) the men;* App. 246. (sē) miscet virīs: virīs is dat. with miscet; App. 297. ūllī: dat. of agent; App. 302.

**441.** umbrae: gen. with adj.; App. 287.

**442.** (in) quō . . . locō = ubi. jactātī: on their stormy voyage from Tyre. prīmum: immediately after landing.

**443.** effōdēre = effōdērunt.

**444.** mōnstrā(ve)rat: App. 204, 1. caput equī: a common device on Carthaginian coins. fore = futūram esse: indirect statement depending on dīxerat implied in mōnstrā(ve)rat; App. 263.

**445.** vīctū: supine, abl. of respect with facilem; App. 271, 325, *easy to live, to sustain,* referring to the great commercial success of Carthage. gentem (Pūnicam).

*Hīc* templum *Jūnōnī ingēns* Sīdōnia *Dīdō*
condēbat, *dōnīs* opulentum *et nūmine dīvae,*
aerea *cui* gradibus *surgēbant līmina* nexae*que*
aere trabēs, foribus cardō strīdēbat aēnīs.
*Hōc prīmum in* lūcō *nova rēs* oblāta timōrem
lēniit, *hīc prīmum Aenēās* spērāre salūtem
ausus *et* adflictīs melius cōnfīdere *rēbus.*
*Namque sub ingentī* lūstrat *dum* singula templō
*rēgīnam* opperiēns, *dum quae fortūna sit urbī*
artificum*que manūs* intrā *sē* operum*que labōrem*
mīrātur, *videt* Īliacās *ex* ordine pugnās
*bellaque jam fāmā tōtum* vulgāta *per* orbem,
Atrīdās *Priamumque et* saevum ambōbus Achillem.

---

**Achillēs, is** (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
**adflīgō, ere, xī, ctus** strike down, shatter†
**aēnus, a, um** (of) bronze, brazen
**aereus, a, um** (of) bronze, brazen†
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze*
**ambō, ae, ō** both†
**artifex, icis** *m.* artist, artisan†
**Atrīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Atreus, (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaus; leaders of the Greeks against Troy†
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**cardō, inis** *m.* hinge, pivot, socket†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found, build*
**cōnfīdō, ere, sus sum** trust (in) (*dat.*)†
**foris, is** *f.* door, gate, entrance†
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, stride, gait†
**Īliacus, a, um** Ilian, Trojan*
**intrā** within, among (*acc.*)†
**lēniō, īre, īvī** (iī), **ītus** soothe, soften†
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**lūstrō** (1) purify, survey, traverse†*
**melior, ius** better, superior†
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire*
**nectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus** bind, fasten†
**offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus** present†
**opperior, īrī, per(i)tus** await, wait for†
**opulentus, a, um** rich, wealthy†
**opus, eris** *n.* work, deed, toil*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb, earth*
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, line, array*
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight†*
**saevus, a, um** fierce, harsh, stern*
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, security, health†
**Sīdōnius, a, um** Sidonian, Phoenician†
**singulī, ae, a** separate, single†
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect†*
**strīd(e)ō, ēre, dī** grate, creak, whir
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**timor, ōris** *m.* fear, anxiety, dread
**trabs (trabēs), trabis** *f.* beam, timber†
**vulgō** (1) publish, make known†

---

**446. Sīdōnia:** *Phoenician;* Tyre or Sidon, each a famous Phoenician city, came to be synonymous with Phoenicia.

**447. dōnīs, nūmine:** ablatives of respect depending on **opulentum**; App. 325.

**448–449. cui surgēbant gradibus aerea līmina trabēsque nexae aere, (et) cardō strīdēbat foribus aēnīs. aerea, aere, aēnīs:** the lavish use of costly bronze helps to indicate the magnificence of the temple. **cui gradibus:** *on the steps of which;* **cui** is dat. of reference, with the force of a genitive; App. 301. **nexae (erant). -que:** the elision of the final **e** before the initial diphthong of the first word of the next line forms a hypermetric verse: cf. l. 332 and see App. 402.

**449. aere:** abl. of means. **foribus aēnīs:** abl. of place where or dat. of reference; App. 319, 301.

**450. timōrem (Aenēae).**

**452. ausus (est). rēbus:** abl. or dat. with special verb, **cōnfīdere**; App. 319, 297.

**454. sit:** subjunctive in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **urbī:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

**455. artificum manūs intrā sē:** *the rival deeds of skill of the artists,* referring to the temple and its equipment.

**456. ex ordine:** *in order.* **fāmā:** abl. of means. **tōtum orbem (terrārum):** *the whole world.*

**458. ambōbus (Atrīdīs Priamōque):** Achilles was fighting against the Trojans, and of course was hostile to Priam, the

Cōnstitit *et* lacrimāns "*Quis jam locus*" inquit "Achātē,
*quae* regiō *in terrīs nostrī nōn* plēna *labōris?*
Ēn *Priamus. Sunt hīc* etiam *sua* praemia laudī;
*sunt lacrimae rērum et mentem* mortālia tangunt.
Solve metūs; *feret haec* aliquam *tibi fāma* salūtem."
*Sīc ait atque animum* pictūrā pascit inānī
*multa* gemēns, largō*que* ūmectat flūmine vultum.
*Namque vidēbat utī* bellantēs Pergama *circum*
hāc *fugerent* Grajī, premeret Trojāna juventūs,
hāc Phryges, īnstāret currū cristātus Achillēs.
*Nec procul hinc* Rhēsī niveīs tentōria *vēlīs*

**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**Achillēs, is** (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
**aliquī, qua, quod** some, any†*
**bellō** (1) war, battle†
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand fast, halt*
**cristātus, a, um** plumed, crested†
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**ēn** see! look! behold!†
**etiam** also, even*
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream†*
**gemō, ere, uī, itus** groan (for), lament
**Grajus, a, um** Greek†*
**hāc** here, there†
**inānis, e** empty, idle, vain†*
**inquam, is, it** say*
**īnstō, āre, stitī** press on, urge (on)
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men†*
**lacrimō** (1) weep, shed tears, lament†
**largus, a, um** copious, plentiful†
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit†*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**mortālis, e** mortal, human*
**niveus, a, um** snowy, white†
**pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus** feed (on), graze
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy†*
**Phryx, Phrygis** Phrygian, Trojan†
**pictūra, ae** *f.* picture, painting†
**plēnus, a, um** full, complete, swelling
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize†*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, urge*
**regiō, ōnis** *f.* region, district†
**Rhēsus, ī** *m.* Thracian prince, ally of the Trojans, slain on the first night after his arrival at Troy†
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, security, health
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose, dismiss*
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch†*
**tentōrium, (i)ī** *n.* tent†
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan*
**ūmectō** (1) wet, moisten†
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face*

Trojan king; furthermore, a bitter feud arose near the end of the war between Achilles and the sons of Atreus, Agamemnon and Menelaüs, because Agamemnon had forcibly deprived Achilles of one of his war prizes, a captive girl Briseïs. This feud was the occasion of the "Wrath of Achilles," the theme of Homer's *Iliad.*

**459. lacrimāns:** see the note on **frīgore** (l. 92). **Achātē:** vocative.

**460. nōn (est) plēna.**

**461. hīc etiam:** *here also*, as well as elsewhere. **laudī:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

**462. lacrimae rērum:** *compassion for suffering.* **mentem mortālia:** alliteration, heightening the pathos. **mortālia:** substantively, *human (woes).*

**463. metūs:** acc. pl. **haec fāma (Teucrōrum).**

**464. ait:** third sing. of **ajō.**

**466–467. utī hāc Grajī bellantēs circum Pergama fugerent. utī:** *how;* introduces three indirect questions. **Grajī:** pl. of **Grajus** and pronounced as though spelled **Grajjī**, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.*

**467–468. fugerent, premeret, īnstāret:** subjunctives in indir. quest.; App. 349. **hāc . . . hāc:** *here . . . there*, in the series of pictures being described.

**468. Phryges (fugerent). cristātus:** the Homeric warrior wore a helmet with waving plumes.

**469. Nec procul hinc:** in another picture. **Rhēsī:** an ally of the Trojans. The oracle had proclaimed that Troy could not be captured if Rhesus's horses ever drank of the waters of the Xanthus or grazed on the Trojan meadows. Ulysses and Diomedes surprised Rhesus on the night of his arrival, killed him, and drove off his horses before they had partaken of the fateful water and grass.

agnōscit lacrimāns, *prīmō quae* prōdita *somnō*
Tȳdīdēs *multā* vastābat caede cruentus,
*ardentīsque* āvertit *equōs in* castra prius quam
pābula gustāssent *Trojae* Xanthum*que* bibissent.
*Parte aliā fugiēns* āmissīs Trōilus *armīs*,
*īnfēlīx puer atque* impār congressus Achillī,
*fertur equīs* currū*que* haeret resupīnus inānī,
lōra *tenēns* tamen; *huic* cervīx*que* comae*que trahuntur*
*per terram, et* versā pulvis īnscrībitur hastā.
Intereā *ad* templum *nōn* aequae Palladis *ībant*
crīnibus Īliades passīs peplum*que ferēbant*
suppliciter, *trīstēs et* tūnsae *pectora* palmīs;

---

**Achillēs, is** (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
**aequus, a, um** equal, even, impartial†
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**bibō, ere, ī** drink (of, in)†
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter†
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment†*
**cervīx, īcis** *f.* neck
**coma, ae** *f.* hair*
**congredior, ī, gressus** meet, fight with (*dat.*)†
**crīnis, is** *m.* locks, hair†*
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, cruel
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**gustō** (1) taste, eat†
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** hang, cling to (*dat.*)†*
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear†
**Īlias, adis** *f.* Trojan woman†
**impār, aris** unequal, ill-matched†
**inānis, e** empty, idle, vain*
**īnscrībō, ere, psī, ptus** mark†
**intereā** meanwhile, meantime*
**lacrimō** (1) weep, shed tears, lament
**lōrum, ī** *n.* thong, rein
**pābulum, ī** *n.* fodder, pasture†
**Pallas, adis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread, dishevel†*
**peplus** (**um**), **ī** *m.* (*n.*) robe, gown†
**prius** former, sooner, first
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditus** hand over, betray
**pulvis, eris** *m.* dust†
**quam** how, than, as*
**resupīnus, a, um** supine, on the back†
**suppliciter** beseechingly, humbly†
**tamen** nevertheless, however*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine*
**Trōilus, ī** *m.* youngest son of Priam†
**tundō, ere, tutudī, tū(n)sus** beat†
**Tȳdīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, famous Greek chieftain
**vastō** (1) ravage, devastate, (lay) waste†
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change, rout*
**Xanthus, ī** *m.* river near Troy†

---

**470. prīmō prōdita:** alliteration. **prīmō somnō:** abl. of time when or means; App. 322, 331.

**471. vastābat:** action represented as taking place in the picture. **caede cruentus:** alliteration. **multā caede:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**472. in castra:** i.e., to the Greek camp.

**473. gustā(vi)ssent, bibissent:** descriptive or anticipatory; App. 376, *a*.

**474. (in) Parte aliā:** in a fourth picture. **āmissīs armīs:** abl. abs., referring to only a part of his arms, such as his shield, for he still holds his spear. **Trōilus:** slain by Achilles.

**475. impār congressus Achillī:** *unequal to Achilles in battle.*

**476.** His foot seems to have caught in the chariot as he fell backward. **currū inānī:** abl. with **haeret**; App. 319.

**477. huic:** dat. of reference equivalent to a genitive.

**478. versā hastā:** *with trailing* (lit. *turned*) *spear.* **pulvis:** with the last syllable irregularly long for metrical convenience.

**479. nōn aequae:** *hostile*, because of the adverse Judgment of Paris.

**480. crīnibus passīs:** abl. of quality; App. 330. **passīs:** from **pandō**; dishevelled hair was a sign of mourning. **peplum:** a fine gown, as an offering to the goddess.

**481. pectora:** acc., with the "middle" participle, **tūnsae**; App. 309.

*dīva* solō fīxōs *oculōs* āversa *tenēbat.*
Ter *circum* Īliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs
exanimum*que aurō corpus* vendēbat Achillēs.
*Tum* vērō *ingentem* gemitum *dat pectore ab īmō,*
*ut* spolia, *ut* currūs, *utque ipsum corpus* amīcī
*tendentemque manūs Priamum* cōnspexit inermīs.
*Sē* quoque principibus permixtum agnōvit Achīvīs,
Ēōās*que* aciēs *et* nigrī Memnonis *arma.*
*Dūcit* Amāzonidum lūnātīs *agmina* peltīs
Penthesilēa *furēns mediīsque in* mīlibus *ardet,*
aurea subnectēns exsertae cingula mammae
bellātrīx, audet*que virīs* concurrere virgō.
*Haec dum* Dardaniō *Aenēae* mīranda *videntur,*

---

**Achillēs, is** (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge, battle line, army†*
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**Amāzonis, idis** *f.* Amazon, female warrior†
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend†*
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold†*
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**bellātrīx, īcis** *f.* warrior†
**cingulum, ī** *n.* belt, girdle†
**concurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run together, fight with (*dat.*)†
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan†*
**Ēōus, a, um** of the dawn, eastern†
**exanimus, a, um** breathless, lifeless†
**exserō, ere, uī, rtus** thrust out, expose†
**fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus** fix, fasten*
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, lament†*
**Hector, oris,** *acc.* **ora,** *m.* Trojan leader*
**Īliacus, a, um** Ilian, Trojan*
**inermis, e** unarmed†
**lūnātus, a, um** crescent, moon-shaped†
**mamma, ae** *f.* breast, pap†
**Memnōn, onis** *m.* Ethiopian king, son of Aurora and ally of the Trojans, slain by Achilles†
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand†*
**mīrandus, a, um** wonderful, marvelous
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**niger, gra, grum** black, dusky†*
**pelta, ae** *f.* light shield†
**Penthesilēa, ae** *f.* queen of the Amazons, ally of the Trojans, slain by Achilles†
**permisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle†
**princeps, cipis** *m.* (*f.*) chief, leader†
**quoque** also*
**raptō** (1) snatch, drag†
**solum, ī** *n.* soil, ground, earth*
**spolium, (i)ī** *n.* spoil(s), booty, plunder
**subnectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus** fasten beneath†
**ter** thrice, three times*
**vendō, ere, didī, ditus** sell†
**vērō** truly, indeed, but†
**virgō, inis** *f.* girl, maid(en)*

---

**482. dīva (Pallas). solō:** dat. of direction; App. 306; her eyes were directed to the ground, as a sign of sullen displeasure.

**483. Hectora:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68. This sixth picture represents the ransom of Hector's body from Achilles, who had dragged it thrice around the walls of Troy.

**484. aurō:** abl. of price; App. 336. **corpus vendēbat Achillēs (Priamō).**

**485. (Aenēās) dat.**

**486. currūs:** poetic plural; the chariot with which Achilles dragged Hector around Troy. **ut, ut, ut:** anaphora; App. 413.

**487. spolia:** taken by Achilles from Hector. **manūs inermīs:** as a suppliant.

**488. principibus:** dat., or abl. with **permixtum.**

**489. Ēōāsque aciēs (agnōvit):** Trojan allies from Ethiopia led by Memnon.

**490. lūnātīs peltīs:** abl. of quality; App. 330; crescent shields were characteristic of the Amazons.

**493. virīs:** dat. with the special verb, **concurrere. virgō:** (although) *a girl;* contrasted with **virīs.**

**494–508. Dido visits the temple and gives audience to her subjects.**

**494. Dardaniō:** *Trojan;* used here to indicate why these scenes had so much meaning for Aeneas.

*dum* stupet obtūtū*que* haeret dēfīxus *in ūnō*,
*rēgīna ad* templum, formā pulcherrima *Dīdō*,
incessit *magnā* juvenum stīpante catervā.
Quālis *in* Eurōtae rīpīs *aut per* juga Cynthī
exercet Dīāna chorōs, *quam* mīlle *secūtae*
*hinc atque hinc* glomerantur Orēades; *illa* pharetram
*fert umerō* gradiēns*que deās* superēminet *omnīs*
(Lātōnae tacitum pertemptant gaudia *pectus*):
*tālis erat Dīdō, tālem sē laeta ferēbat*
*per mediōs* īnstāns operī *rēgnīsque futūrīs*.
*Tum* foribus *dīvae, mediā* testūdine templī,
saepta *armīs* soliō*que* altē subnixa resēdit.
Jūra *dabat* lēgēs*que virīs*, operum*que labōrem*
*partibus* aequābat jūstīs *aut* sorte *trahēbat:*

---

**aequō** (1) equal(ize)*
**altē** on high, loftily
**caterva, ae** *f.* band, troop, crowd†
**chorus, ī** *m.* chorus, dance, band†
**Cynthus, ī** *m.* mountain in Delos, birthplace of Apollo and Diana†
**dēfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus** fix, fasten
**Dĭāna, ae** *f.* goddess of the hunt and of the mountains†
**Eurōtās, ae** *m.* river of Sparta, center of the worship of Diana†
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** busy, train*
**foris, is** *f.* door, gate, entrance
**forma, ae** *f.* form, beauty, shape*
**gaudium, (i)ī** *n.* joy, rejoicing†
**glomerō** (1) gather, roll together†
**gradior, ī, gressus** step, go, proceed
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** hang, cling (to)*
**incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** march, go (majestically)
**īnstō, āre, stitī** press on, urge (*dat.*)
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge†*
**jūs, jūris** *n.* law, justice, right
**jūstus, a, um** just, fair, right(cous)†
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**Lātōna, ae** *f.* mother of Apollo and Diana†
**lēx, lēgis** *f.* law, regulation, decree†
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**obtūtus, ūs** *m.* gaze, view†
**opus, eris** *n.* work, deed, toil*
**Orēas, adis** *f.* Oread, a mountain nymph†
**pertemptō** (1) try; master, possess†
**pharetra, ae** *f.* quiver
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, illustrious*
**quālis, e** such (as), of what sort*
**resīdō, ere, sēdī** sit down†
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore†*
**saepiō, īre, psī, ptus** hedge in, inclose
**solium, (i)ī** *n.* throne, seat†
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, fate, destiny*
**stīpō** (1) stuff, crowd, throng, stow
**stupeō, ēre, uī** stand agape, be dazed†
**subnixus, a, um** resting on (*abl.*)†
**superēmineō, ēre** tower above†
**tacitus, a, um** silent, speechless, still†
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**testūdō, inis** *f.* tortoise, vault, dome†

---

**496. formā:** abl. of respect with **pulcherrima:** App. 325.

**497. stīpante catervā:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**498. Quālis:** correlative with **tālis,** (l. 503).

**499. Dīāna:** with long **i**; elsewhere with short **i.**

**500. illa: Dīāna. hinc atque hinc:** *on this side and on that; on both sides.*

**501.** (in) **umerō. deās** (Orēadas).

**502. tacitum pectus:** as indicating joy too deep for words.

**504. per mediōs** (virōs).

**505. dīvae:** *of the shrine* (lit. *of the goddess*).

**505–506.** (in) **foribus,** (in) **testūdine,** (in) **soliō.**

**507. virīs** (Tyriīs): her subjects. The use of temples for the transaction of public business was very common in ancient Rome; hence Vergil assigned a similar custom to the Carthaginians.

**508. sorte trahēbat:** *assigned the work by lot.*



AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE

A Greek vase in the Metropolitan Museum of Art.



*Gramstorff Bros.* *Turner*

DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE

Turner's famous painting. The boys sailing toy ships in the foreground hint at the future naval greatness of Carthage and the fatal wars with Rome.

*cum* subitō *Aenēās* concursū accēdere *magnō*
Anthea Sergestum*que videt* fortem*que* Cloanthum
*Teucrōrumque aliōs, āter quōs aequore* turbō
dispulerat penitus*que aliās* āvēxerat *ōrās.*
Obstipuit *simul ipse, simul* percussus Achātēs
laetitiā*que* metū*que;* avidī conjungere *dextrās*
*ardēbant; sed rēs animōs* incognita turbat.
Dissimulant *et* nūbe cavā speculantur amictī
*quae fortūna virīs, classem quō lītore* linquant,
*quid veniant; cūnctīs nam* lēctī *nāvibus ībant*
ōrantēs veniam *et* templum *clāmōre petēbant.*
Postquam intrōgressī *et* cōram *data* cōpia *fandī,*
*maximus* Īlioneus placidō *sīc pectore* coepit:
"*Ō rēgīna, novam cui* condere *Juppiter urbem*

---

**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach
**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**amiciō, īre, uī (ixī), ictus** infold, wrap†
**Antheus, eī,** *acc.* **ea,** *m.* Trojan leader
**āvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear away†
**avidus, a, um** eager, greedy†
**cavus, a, um** hollow*
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**coepī, isse, coeptus** begin†
**concursus, ūs** *m.* throng, crowd†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found, build*
**conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join†
**cōpia, ae** *f.* abundance; opportunity†
**cōram** face to face, in the presence†
**dispellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive apart, disperse, scatter†
**dissimulō** (1) hide, disguise†
**fortis, e** strong, brave, valiant*
**Īlioneus, eī** *m.* Trojan leader
**incognitus, a, um** unknown†
**intrōgredior, ī, gressus** enter, go in(to)†
**laetitia, ae** *f.* joy, gladness, delight†
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, gather*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert†*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
**obstipēscō, ere, stipuī** stand agape†*
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech†*
**penitus** deep within, deeply, wholly*
**percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** strike, astound†
**placidus, a, um** calm, quiet, peaceful*
**postquam** after (that), when*
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader†*
**speculor, ārī, ātus** spy out, watch†
**subitō** suddenly*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**turbō, inis** *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
**turbō** (1) confuse, disturb, perplex*
**venia, ae** *f.* favor, grace, pardon†

---

**509–560. A deputation from the missing Trojan ships waits on Dido to complain of the outrages of her people and bewail the loss of their leader Aeneas.**

**509–512. cum Aenēās subitō videt accēdere Anthea** (acc.) **Sergestumque fortemque Cloanthum aliōsque Teucrōrum, quōs āter turbō dispulerat** (in) **tōtō aequore. concursū magnō:** abl. of manner; App. 328. (ad) **aliās ōrās.**

**513. ipse:** Aeneas; see the note on l. 114. **simul . . . simul** = et . . . et. **percussus** (est.)

**515. rēs incognita:** the uncertainty of the situation keeps them silent.

**516. Dissimulant** (animōs).

**517. quae** (sit) **fortūna:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **virīs:** dat. of possession. (in) **quō lītore.**

**517–518. linquant, veniant:** subjunctives in indir. quest.; App. 349.

**518. quid** = cūr, *why?* (virī) **lēctī.** (ex) **cūnctīs nāvibus.**

**519. clāmōre:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**520. intrōgressī** (sunt illī Teucrī) **et data** (est) **cōpia fandī. fandī:** *of speaking;* a gerund.

**521. maximus** (nātū): *the eldest, the leader.* **Īlioneus:** with the **eu** pronounced as a diphthong (one syllable). **placidō pectore:** as befitting his age and dignity.

**522–523. condere, frēnāre:** objects of **dedit,** *granted.*

jūstitiāque *dedit gentīs* frēnāre superbās,
Trōes *tē miserī, ventīs maria omnia* vectī,
ōrāmus; prohibē īnfandōs *ā nāvibus ignīs*,
parce *piō generī et* propius *rēs* aspice *nostrās*.
*Nōn nōs aut ferrō* Libycōs populāre penātīs
*vēnimus, aut* raptās *ad lītora* vertere praedās;
*nōn ea vīs animō nec tanta* superbia *victīs*.
*Est locus*, Hesperiam Grajī cognōmine *dīcunt*,
*terra antīqua*, potēns *armīs atque* ūbere glaebae;
Oenōtrī coluēre *virī; nunc fāma* minōrēs
*Ītaliam dīxisse* ducis *dē nōmine gentem*.
*Hic cursus fuit*,

---

**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look at, see*
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, cognomen
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, cherish, inhabit*
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chieftain*
**frēnō** (1) curb, check, restrain
**glaeba, ae** *f.* soil, clod, glebe†
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**Hesperia, ae** *f.* west land, Italy†
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, accursed
**jūstitia, ae** *f.* justice, equity†
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa*
**minōrēs, um** *m.* descendants†
**Oenōtr(i)us, a, um** Oenotrian, of Oenotria, in southern Italy†
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus** spare (*dat.*)
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household (gods)*
**populō** (1) ravage, plunder, devastate†
**potēns, entis** ruling, powerful*
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, prey
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** keep off, prohibit†
**prope** near, close; *compar.* **propius**†*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), seize*
**superbia, ae** *f.* pride, haughtiness†
**superbus, a, um** haughty, proud*
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder; fertility†
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry, convey*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, drive away*

---

**523. gentīs:** the native Libyan tribes.

**524. Trōes miserī:** in apposition with **nōs** the understood subject of **ōrāmus**. **ventīs vectī:** alliteration, heightening the pathos. (**per**) **maria omnia.**

**525. ā nāvibus (nostrīs).**

**526. parce piō:** alliteration. **piō generī:** the Trojans; **generī** is dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**527. Nōn:** emphatic. **populāre penātīs:** alliteration.

**527–528. populāre, vertere:** inf. of purpose.

**529. vīs (est). victīs:** referring to the capture of Troy by the Greeks. **animō, victīs:** datives of possession. **superbia (est).**

**530. Grajī dīcunt ( = vocant) (illum locum) Hesperiam. Hesperia** literally means "*Land of the Evening*" or "*Western Land.*" Compare **Hesperus,** *the evening star.* This name for Italy came from the Greeks (**Grajī dīcunt**), as Vergil indicates. **Grajī:** pl. of **Grajus** and pronounced as though spelled **Grajjī**, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*.

**531. armīs, ūbere:** abl. of respect or cause with **potēns;** App. 325, 332.

**532. Oenōtrī:** evidently derived from a Greek word, **Oenōtria,** "*Vineland,*" since grapes were much cultivated in Italy. **coluēre = coluērunt. fāma (est) = dīcunt,** and so followed by indir. disc.; App. 263. **minōrēs:** subject of **dīxisse = vocāvisse.**

**533. ducis:** Italus was a legendary king of one of the native Italian tribes (the Oenotrians). The word *Italy* is probably related to the word **vitulus,** *bull,* and therefore means "*Land of Herds.*" **gentem, Ītaliam:** two accusatives; App. 316, *a*.

**534. Hic cursus (nōbīs) fuit.** There are more than fifty such incomplete lines in the *Aeneid,* one of the marks of the unfinished state of the poem at Vergil's death. See Introd. 5.

*cum* subitō adsurgēns *flūctū* nimbōsus Orīōn
*in* vada caeca *tulit* penitus*que* procācibus Austrīs
*perque undās* superante salō *perque* invia *saxa*
dispulit; *hūc* paucī vestrīs adnāvimus *ōrīs*.
*Quod genus hoc* hominum? *Quaeve hunc* tam barbara mōrem
permittit patria? Hospitiō prohibēmur harēnae;
*bella* cient *prīmāque* vetant cōnsistere *terrā*.
*Sī genus* hūmānum *et* mortālia temnitis *arma*,
*at* spērāte *deōs* memorēs fandī *atque* nefandī.
*Rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō* jūstior alter
*nec* pietāte *fuit, nec bellō major et armīs*.
*Quem sī fāta virum servant, sī* vēscitur *aurā*
aetheriā *neque* adhūc crūdēlibus occubat *umbrīs*,

---

**adhūc** as yet, still, so far†
**adnō** (1) swim, float (to) (*dat.*)†
**adsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise†
**aetherius, a, um** of the upper air, ethereal
**alter, era, erum** the other (of two), second†*
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**barbarus, a, um** foreign, savage†
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** arouse, excite, stir†*
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast)*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bitter, bloody*
**dispellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive apart, scatter, disperse
**fandus, a, um** speakable, right
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**hospitium, (i)ī** *n.* hospitality, refuge
**hūmānus, a, um** human, of men†
**invius, a, um** pathless, impenetrable†
**jūstus, a, um** just, fair, right(eous)
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering*
**mortālis, e** mortal, human, earthly*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, manner, law*
**nefandus, a, um** unspeakable, wrong†
**nimbōsus, a, um** stormy, rainy†
**occubō, āre** lie (dead)†
**Ŏrīōn, ōnis** *m.* constellation, whose rising and setting come in the rainy season†
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**paucus, a, um** little, few, scanty†*
**penitus** deep within, deeply, wholly*
**permittō, ere, mīsī, missus** allow, grant†
**pietās, ātis** *f.* loyalty, devotion, duty*
**procāx, ācis** wanton, boisterous†
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** keep off, prohibit
**salum, ī** *n.* the (salt) sea†
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect*
**subitō** suddenly*
**superō** (1) overcome, surpass*
**tam** so, so much, so very, such†*
**temnō, ere** scorn, despise, disdain†
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)
**vēscor, ī** feed on; breathe (*abl.*)†
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vetō, āre, uī, itus** prohibit, forbid, prevent

---

**535. flūctū**: abl. of place where; App. 319.

**536–538. procācibus Austrīs**: abl. of means. **tulit (nōs). dispulitque (nōs) procācibus Austrīs penitus perque undās perque invia saxa, salō superante (nōs).**

**537. superante salō**: abl. abs.; App. 343.

**538. paucī (nōs)**: subject of **adnāvimus. vestrīs ōrīs = ad vestrās ōrās**; dat. of direction; App. 306.

**539. Quod genus (est) hoc. hoc**: pronounced **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c*. **hunc mōrem**: the Trojans had not been allowed to beach and repair their ships (l. 551).

**540. (ab) hospitiō.**

**541. (virī tuī) cient. vetant (nōs). (in) prīmā terrā**: abl. of place, *on the first (part of, edge of) your land;* that is, *on the beach.*

**543. memorēs (esse).**

**544. nōbīs**: dat. of possession; App. 299. **quō**: abl. with compar.; App. 327.

**545. pietāte, bellō, armīs**: ablatives of respect; App. 325.

**547. aetheriā**: as opposed to the lower world. **(in) umbrīs (mortis)**: abl. of place where; App. 319; *the lower world, Hades.*

*nōn* metus, officiō *nec tē* certāsse priōrem
paeniteat: *sunt et* Siculīs regiōnibus *urbēs*
*armaque*, Trojānō*que ā sanguine* clārus *Acestēs*.
Quassātam *ventīs* liceat subdūcere *classem*
*et silvīs* aptāre trabēs *et* stringere *rēmōs*,
*sī datur Ītaliam sociīs et rēge* receptō
*tendere, ut Ītaliam laetī* Latium*que petāmus;*
sīn absūmpta salūs, *et tē, pater* optime *Teucrum*,
pontus *habet* Libyae *nec* spēs *jam* restat Iūlī,
*at* freta Sīcaniae saltem *sēdēsque parātās*,
unde *hūc* advectī, *rēgemque petāmus Acestēn.*"
*Tālibus* Īlioneus; *cūnctī simul ōre* fremēbant
Dardanidae.
*Tum* breviter *Dīdō* vultum dēmissa profātur:

---

**absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take away, destroy, consume†
**advehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey (to)†
**aptō** (1) fit, shape, equip†
**breviter** shortly, briefly†
**certō** (1) strive, rival, fight, vie†
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Dardanian, Trojan†
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let down, drop, lower*
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** murmur, applaud*
**fretum, ī** *n.* strait, sea†
**Īlioneus, eī** *m.* Trojan leader
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district of central Italy*
**Libya, ae** *f.* district of North Africa*
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** be permitted†*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*
**officium, (i)ī** *n.* service, duty, kindness†
**optimus, a, um** best, noblest, finest†
**paenitet, ēre, uit** it repents†
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea*
**prior, ius** former, first*
**profor, fārī, fātus** speak, say†
**quassō** (1) shake, shatter†
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, recover*
**regiō, ōnis** *f.* region, district
**restō, āre, stitī** remain, survive†
**saltem** at least†
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, security, health
**Sīcania, ae** *f.* Sicily, a large island south of Italy†
**Siculus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily
**sīn** but if, if, however†
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus** strip, graze†
**subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw up, beach, remove†
**trabs (trabēs), trabis** *f.* beam, timber
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan*
**unde** whence, from which source*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face*

---

**548. nōn (est) metus (nōbīs). certā-(vi)sse:** App. 204. **officiō:** abl. of respect; App. 325.

**549. paeniteat:** vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254; *do not regret to have been the first to contend in rivalry of kindness.* **sunt et(iam) (nōbīs in) Siculīs regiōnibus:** even though Aeneas be dead, our Sicilian kinsmen will repay your kindness.

**551. liceat (nōbīs) subdūcere classem (nostram) quassātam ventīs. ventīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **liceat (nōbīs):** vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

**552. aptāre trabēs:** for repairing the ships. **(in) silvīs:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **stringere rēmōs:** *trim (branches into) oars*, acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

**553–554. sociīs et rēge receptō:** abl. abs.; **receptō:** agreeing with the nearer of the two nouns which it modifies. **ut laetī petāmus Ītaliam Latiumque, sī (nōbīs) datur tendere (cursum ad, in) Ītaliam. ut . . . petāmus:** purpose; App. 359.

**555. absūmpta (est). pater optime:** Aeneas. **Teuc(rō)rum.**

**557. sēdēs (in Sīcaniā) parātās.**

**558. advectī (sumus). petāmus:** vol. (hortatory) subj.; App. 254.

**559. Tālibus (dictīs) Īlioneus (dīxit).**

**561–578. Dido replies kindly and consoles the Trojans, offering them assistance and promising to send messengers in search of Aeneas.**

**561. vultum:** object of **dēmissa**, used in the "middle" voice; App. 309; *with*

"Solvite corde metum, *Teucrī*, sēclūdite *cūrās*.
*Rēs* dūra *et rēgnī* novitās *mē tālia* cōgunt
mōlīrī *et* lātē *fīnīs* custōde tuērī.
*Quis genus* Aeneadum, *quis Trojae* nesciat *urbem*,
virtūtēsque *virōsque aut tantī* incendia *bellī?*
*Nōn* obtūnsa adeō gestāmus *pectora* Poenī,
*nec* tam āversus *equōs Tyriā* Sōl jungit *ab urbe*.
Seu *vōs* Hesperiam *magnam* Sāturniaque *arva*
sīve Erycis *fīnīs rēgemque* optātis *Acestēn*,
auxiliō tūtōs dīmittam opibusque juvābō.
*Vultis et hīs mēcum* pariter cōnsīdere *rēgnīs?*
*Urbem quam* statuō, vestra *est;* subdūcite *nāvīs;*
Trōs *Tyriusque mihī nūllō* discrīmine *agētur*.

---

**adeō** so (far), even†
**Aeneadae, ārum** *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* aid, help, assistance*
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** force, compel†*
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** settle, rest†*
**cor, cordis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian)†*
**dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus**, send away, let go, dismiss†
**discrīmen, inis** *n.* difference, crisis
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern†*
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* son of Venus and half-brother of Aeneas, who settled in Sicily where he gave his name to a mountain and city†
**gestō** (1) bear, wear, carry
**Hesperia, ae** *f.* west land, Italy
**incendium, (i)ī** *n.* fire, conflagration†
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**lātē** far and wide, widely
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** work, contrive, make
**nesciō, īre, īvī, (iī)** not know, be ignorant†
**novitās, ātis** *f.* novelty, newness†
**obtundō, ere, tudī, tū(n)sus** blunt, dull†
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, wealth, power
**optō** (1) desire, choose, hope (for)*
**pariter** equally, on equal terms†*
**Poenus, a, um** Phoenician, Carthaginian
**Sāturnius, a, um** Saturnian, of Saturn, an early Italian god who ruled during the Golden Age
**sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus** exclude, shut out†
**seu, sīve** or (if), whether
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day; **Sōl, Sōlis** sun-god*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose, dismiss, relax*
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** establish, build†
**subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw up, beach, remove
**tam** so, so much, so very, such*
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus)** watch, protect†*
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* valor, manhood, excellence†*

---

*downcast look*, because of her modesty, a characteristic much cultivated and highly prized among ancient women, especially young women.

**563. Rēs dūra:** *harsh necessity*, referring to the dangers to the new settlement from the wild Libyan tribes and from her brother Pygmalion. **tālia:** the harsh treatment of which the Trojans complain.

**565. Quis genus Aenead(ār)um (nesciat)? nesciat:** deliberative, subj.; App. 348.

**566. tantī bellī:** the Trojan War.

**567. Nōn obtūnsa adeō pectora:** *we are not so dull*, that we do not know the name and fame of Troy and the Trojans.

**568. nec tam adversus,** etc.: *we are not so far removed from the rest of the world with its activities.* The rising and setting of the sun were thought of as due to the course of the sun-god in his chariot.

**569. Sāturnia** = *Italian*, because Saturn was the chief god of Italy, where he had ruled during the Golden Age.

**570. Erycis fīnīs:** Sicily.

**571.** (vōs) tūtōs.

**572.** (in) rēgnīs.

**573. Urbem:** attracted from the nom. into the case of the following relative **quam**; App. 242, *a*.

**574. Trōs Tyriusque,** etc.: this expression has become proverbial for impartial

*Atque* utinam *rēx ipse* Notō compulsus *eōdem*
*adforet Aenēās!* Equidem *per lītora* certōs
dīmittam *et* Libyae lūstrāre extrēma *jubēbō*,
*sī quibus* ējectus *silvīs aut urbibus errat.*"
*Hīs animum* arrēctī *dictīs et* fortis Achātēs
*et pater Aenēās* jamdūdum ērumpere nūbem
*ardēbant.* Prior *Aenēān* compellat Achātēs:
"*Nāte deā, quae nunc animō* sententia *surgit?*
*Omnia* tūta *vidēs, classem sociōsque* receptōs.
*Ūnus* abest, *mediō in flūctū quem vīdimus ipsī*
summersum; *dictīs* respondent cētera *mātris.*"
*Vix ea fātus erat cum* circumfūsa repente
scindit *sē* nūbēs *et in* aethera purgat apertum.
Restitit *Aenēās* clārāque *in lūce* refulsit
*ōs umerōsque deō* similis; *namque ipsa* decōram
caesariem *nātō* genetrīx *lūmenque* juventae

---

**absum, esse, āfuī** be absent, lack†
**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**apertus, a, um** open(ed), clear
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, prick up
**caesariēs, ēī** *f.* (long) hair, locks†
**certus, a, um** sure, trustworthy*
**cēterus, a, um** the rest, the other(s)†
**circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour round†
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive, force†
**compellō** (1) address, accost, speak to†
**decōrus, a, um** beautiful, graceful, seemly†
**dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send away, let go, dismiss
**ējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw out, eject†
**equidem** indeed, surely, to be sure*
**ērumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break (out), burst (forth)†
**extrēmus, a, um** furthest, last, extreme*
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant*
**genetrīx, īcis** *f.* mother†
**jamdūdum** long ago, long since, for some time†
**juventa, ae** *f.* youth, young manhood†
**Libya, ae** *f.* district of North Africa*
**lūstrō** (1) purify, survey, traverse*
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
**prior, ius** former, sooner, first*
**purgō** (1) clear, cleanse, melt†
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, recover*
**refulgeō, ēre, lsī** gleam, shine, glitter
**repente** suddenly†
**respondeō, ēre, dī, ōnsus** (cor)respond†*
**restō, āre, stitī** remain
**scindō, ere, scidī, scissus** split, part
**sententia, ae** *f.* opinion, purpose
**similis, e** like, similar (*dat., gen.*)*
**summergō (subm–), ere, rsī, rsus** sink, drown
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**utinam** would that! O that!†

---

justice. **Tyrius:** *Carthaginian.* **mihī:** dat. of agent.; App. 302.

**576. adforet:** opt. subj.; App. 253. **certōs (virōs).**

**578. sī:** *in case that.* **ējectus (ex undīs). (in) silvīs, (in) urbibus. quibus:** *any,* indef. pronoun.

**579–594. To the surprise of all, Aeneas suddenly appears.**

**579. animum:** acc. of respect; App. 311.

**581. Aenēān:** acc., a Greek form.

**582. Nāte deā:** *goddess-born,* **deā** being abl. of source; App. 323. **(in) animō.**

**584. Ūnus: Orontēs:** see ll. 113 ff.

**585. dictīs mātris (tuae):** referring to the prophecy of Venus (ll. 390 ff.).

**586. fātus erat (Achātēs).**

**587. (nūbēs sē) purgat.**

**589–591. ōs umerōsque:** accusatives of respect; App. 311. **namque genetrīx ipsa** (Venus) **adflā(ve)rat nātō** (suō) **decōram caesariem lūmenque purpureum juventae et laetōs honōrēs. ipsa genetrīx:** Venus, as goddess of beauty. **nātō:**

purpureum *et laetōs oculīs* adflārat *honōrēs:*
quāle *manūs* addunt eborī decus, *aut ubi* flāvō
argentum Pariusve lapis circumdatur *aurō.*
*Tum sīc rēgīnam* adloquitur *cūnctīsque* repente
imprōvīsus *ait:* "Cōram, *quem quaeritis, adsum,* 595
Trōius *Aenēās,* Libycīs *ēreptus ab undīs.*
*Ō sōla* īnfandōs *Trojae* miserāta *labōrēs,*
*quae nōs,* relliquiās *Danaum, terraeque marisque*
*omnibus* exhaustīs *jam cāsibus, omnium* egēnōs,
*urbe, domō* sociās, grātēs persolvere dignās 600
*nōn* opis *est nostrae, Dīdō, nec* quidquid ubīque *est*
*gentis* Dardaniae, *magnum quae* sparsa *per* orbem.
*Dī tibi, sī qua piōs* respectant *nūmina, sī quid*

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**adflō** (1) breathe on (*dat.*)†
**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost
**argentum, ī** *n.* silver
**circumdō, are, dedī, datus** surround†
**cōram** face to face, in the presence
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**decus, oris** *n.* ornament, beauty, dignity
**dignus, a, um** worthy, fitting, seemly†
**ebur, oris** *n.* ivory†
**egēnus, a, um** needy, lacking (*gen.*)†
**exhauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drain, exhaust†
**flāvus, a, um** tawny, yellow†
**grātēs, ium** *f.* gratitude, thanks†
**imprōvīsus, a, um** unexpected, unforeseen†
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, accursed
**lapis, idis** *m.* stone†
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a district of North Africa*
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate†*
**ops, opis** *f.* help, power, resources, wealth*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb, earth*
**Parius, a, um** Parian, of Paros, a Greek island noted for its fine marble; marble†
**persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** pay (fully)†
**purpureus, a, um** red, purple, radiant
**quālis, e** such (as), of what sort, as*
**quisquis, quidquid** whoever, whatever
**re(l)liquiae, ārum** *f.* rest, remnant, leavings
**repente** suddenly
**respectō** (1) regard, look at†
**sociō** (1) join, ally, share, associate
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, disperse†*
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan*
**ubīque** everywhere, anywhere†

---

dat. with compound **adflā(ve)rat**; App. 298. **lūmen purpureum:** *ruddy glow.* **laetōs honōrēs:** *joyous grace.*

**592.** (**tāle**) **decus quāle:** (*such*) *beauty as.* **manūs:** nom. pl.; *the hands* (of an artist).

**593. aurō:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**594–612. Aeneas profusely thanks Dido for her kindness.**

**594. cūnctīs:** dat., depends on **imprōvīsus.**

**595.** (**ego**), **quem quaeritis, adsum.**

**597. Ō** (**tū**) **sōla.**

**598. quae:** subj. of **sociās,** l. 600. **re(l)liquiās Dana(ōr)um:** see the note on l. 30.

**599. omnium:** gen. with adj.; App. 287.

**600. urbe, domō:** abl. of means or place where. Dido had not only admitted the Trojans to the city, but had offered them the hospitality of her own home.

**601–602. opis:** pred. gen. of possession; App. 283; *it is not in our power.* **nec** (**est opis Dardaniae gentis**), **quidquid Dardaniae gentis est ubīque quae** (**est**) **sparsa per magnum orbem** (**terrārum**). **nec quidquid:** *nor* (*in the power of*) *whatever of the Trojan race there is anywhere.* **gentis:** part. gen.; App. 286.

**603. Dī:** emphatic by position; subject of **ferant** in l. 605. **qua, quid:** indef. **tibi:** with **ferant** in l. 605.

**603–604. sī quid,** etc.: *if justice is* (*counts for*) *anything anywhere.* **sibi:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **rēctī:** gen. with the adj. **cōnscius;** App. 287.

ūsquam jūstitia *est et mēns sibi* cōnscia rēctī,
praemia digna *ferant. Quae tē* tam *laeta tulērunt*
saecula? *Quī tantī tālem* genuēre *parentēs?*
*In* freta *dum* fluviī current, *dum montibus umbrae*
lūstrābunt convexa, polus *dum sīdera* pascet,
semper *honōs nōmenque tuum* laudēsque *manēbunt,*
quae *mē* cumque *vocant terrae.*" *Sīc fātus* amīcum
Īlionēa *petit dextrā* laevāque Serestum,
post *aliōs,* fortemque Gyān fortemque Cloanthum.
Obstipuit *prīmō* aspectū Sīdōnia *Dīdō,*
*cāsū* deinde *virī tantō, et sīc ōre* locūta *est:*
"*Quis tē, nāte deā, per tanta* perīcula *cāsus*
īnsequitur? *Quae vīs immānibus* applicat *ōrīs?*
*Tūne ille Aenēās quem* Dardaniō *Anchīsae*
alma Venus Phrygiī genuit Simoëntis *ad undam?*

---

**almus, a, um** nurturing, kind(ly)
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend*
**applico, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus)** drive to†
**a(d)spectus, ūs** *m.* sight, view†
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious, aware†
**convexum, ī** *n.* hollow, valley, sky
**cumque;** *see* **quīcumque**
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run, flow†
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**deinde** then, thereupon, next*
**dignus, a, um** worthy, fitting, seemly
**fluvius, (i)ī** *m.* river, stream†
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant*
**fretum, ī** *n.* strait, sea
**gignō, ere, genuī, genitus** bear, beget
**Gyās, ae,** *acc.* **ān,** *m.* Trojan leader
**Īlioneus, eī,** *acc.* **ēa,** *m.* Trojan leader
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, pursue*
**jūstitia, ae** *f.* justice, right(eousness)
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left†*
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say†*
**lūstrō** (1) survey, traverse, purify*
**obstipēscō, ere, stipuī** stand agape*
**pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus** feed, graze
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* risk, danger, peril†
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**polus, ī** *m.* pole, sky, heaven
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); afterward, next*
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize*
**quī, quae, quod;** *see* **quīcumque**
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** who(so)ever, what(so)ever*
**rēctum, ī** *n.* right, justice, virtue
**saeculum, ī** *n.* generation, age
**semper** always, ever, forever†*
**Serestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**Sīdōnius, a, um** Sidonian, of Sidon, a famous Phoenician city
**Simoīs, entis** *m.* river near Troy
**tam** so (much, very), such*
**ūsquam** anywhere, at any time†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*

---

**605. ferant:** opt. subj.; App. 253.

**606. tālem (fēminam,** *lady*). **genuēre** = **genuērunt.**

**607. montibus:** dat. of reference or abl. of place.

**608. polus sīdera pascet:** according to some of the ancient philosophers, fine particles of fire in the highest heavens furnish the fuel for the light of the stars.

**610. quae:** to be taken with **cumque;** this separation of the parts of a compound word is called *tmesis;* App. 445.

**611. Īlionēa:** acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 69. **dextrā (manū), laevā (manū):** an example of chiasmus; App. 420.

**612. post:** adverbial, *afterward, next.* **Gyān:** acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

**613–630. Dido welcomes Aeneas, telling him that she already knew of him and his fame.**

**613–614. aspectū (virī). cāsū:** abl. of cause; App. 332. **deinde:** two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

**615. nāte deā:** *goddess-born.* **Quis cāsus:** the ordinary form of the interrogative adj. is **quī;** App. 111, *a.*

**616. ōrīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**617. Tūne** = **esne tū. Dardaniō Anchīsae:** note the hiatus and the spondaic line; App. 399, 395.

**618. alma:** a common epithet of Venus.

*Atque* equidem Teucrum meminī Sīdōna *venīre*
*fīnibus* expulsum *patriīs*, *nova rēgna petentem*
auxiliō Bēlī; *genitor tum* Bēlus opīmam
vastābat Cyprum *et victor* diciōne *tenēbat*.
*Tempore jam ex illō cāsus mihi* cognitus *urbis*
Trojānae *nōmenque tuum rēgēsque* Pelasgī.
*Ipse* hostis *Teucrōs* īnsignī laude *ferēbat*
*sēque* ortum *antīquā Teucrōrum ā* stirpe *volēbat*.
Quāre *agite*, *Ō tēctīs*, juvenēs, succēdite *nostrīs*.
*Mē* quoque *per multōs* similis *fortūna labōrēs*
jactātam *hāc* dēmum *voluit* cōnsistere *terrā*.
*Nōn* ignāra malī *miserīs* succurrere discō."
*Sīc* memorat; *simul Aenean in* rēgia *dūcit*
*tēcta*, *simul dīvum* templīs indīcit *honōrem*.

---

**auxilium**, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
**Bēlus**, ī *m.* Phoenician king†
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** learn; know†
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast), halt*
**Cyprus**, ī *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean†
**dēmum** at length, finally†
**diciō, ōnis** *f.* sway, rule, power
**discō, ere, didicī** learn (how)†
**equidem** indeed, surely, truly*
**expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive out, banish†
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) stranger, enemy, foe*
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, inexperienced*
**indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** appoint, decree†
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**malum**, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
**meminī, isse** remember, recall
**memorō** (1) recount, (re)call, say*
**opīmus, a, um** rich, fertile, fat†
**orior, īrī, ortus** rise, spring†
**Pelasgus, a, um** Pelasgian, Greek†
**quārē** wherefore, therefore, why†
**quoque** also*
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**Sīdōn, ōnis,** *acc.* **ōna,** *f.* famous Phoenician city†
**similis, e** similar, like*
**stirps, pis** *f.* stock, stem, race†
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go under, approach, enter (*dat.*)†
**succurrō, ere, currī, cursus** help, aid (*dat.*)†
**templum**, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**Teucer (crus), crī** *m.* early Trojan king†
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan*
**vastō** (1) ravage, (lay) waste, devastate

---

**619. Sīdōna:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68. **Teucrum:** subj. of **venīre.** He had been expelled by his father, Telamon, for not bringing back his brother Ajax safely from the Trojan War, and had gone to Phoenicia. Ajax had been disgraced in the Greek army, had gone mad, and had committed suicide.

**621. genitor (meus).**

**622. (Cyprum) tenēbat.**

**623. cognitus (est).**

**624. rēgēs Pelasgī:** such as Agamemnon, Menelaüs, Achilles, Diomedes, Ulysses, and Nestor.

**625. Ipse (Teucer) hostis:** (*Teucer*) *himself* (*though*) *an enemy.* **ferēbat:** *extolled.* **laude:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**626. volēbat:** *would have it* (*that*). Note that **volēbat** rhymes with **ferēbat** at the end of l. 625. **ortum (esse).**

**627. tēctīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**629. (in) hāc terrā.**

**630. malī miserīs:** the effect is heightened by bringing these two words together, and by the alliteration. **miserīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**631–642. Dido escorts Aeneas and his party to her palace and prepares to entertain them at dinner.**

**631. Aenēān:** acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

**632. dīv(ōr)um. (in) templīs:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **honōrem:** *an honor* (*to the gods*), *a sacrifice.*

*Nec* minus intereā *sociīs ad lītora mittit*
vīgintī taurōs, *magnōrum* horrentia centum
terga suum, pinguīs centum *cum mātribus* agnōs,
*mūnera* laetitiam*que diī.*
*At domus* interior rēgālī splendida luxū
īnstruitur, *mediīsque parant* convīvia *tēctīs;*
arte labōrātae vestēs ostrō*que* superbō,
*ingēns* argentum mēnsīs, caelāta*que in aurō*
fortia facta *patrum*, seriēs *longissima rērum*
*per* tot *ducta virōs antīquā ab* orīgine *gentis.*
*Aenēās* (*neque* enim *patrius* cōnsistere *mentem*
passus *amor*) rapidum *ad nāvīs* praemittit Achātēn,
Ascaniō *ferat haec ipsumque ad moenia dūcat;*
*omnis in* Ascaniō cārī *stat cūra parentis.*

---

**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**agnus, ī** *m.* lamb†
**argentum, ī** *n.* silver
**ars, artis** *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice†*
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**caelō** (1) engrave, carve, chase†
**cārus, a, um** dear, fond, beloved*
**centum** hundred*
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast), rest*
**convīvium, (i)ī** *n.* banquet, feast†
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit*
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant*
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder, tremble*
**īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** array, equip, build, instruct†
**intereā** meanwhile, meantime*
**interior, ius** inside, inner
**labōrō** (1) work, form†
**laetitia, ae** *f.* joy, gladness, delight
**luxus, ūs** *m.* luxury, magnificence†
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**minor, us** less, smaller, slighter†
**orīgō, inis** *f.* origin, beginning, source
**ostrum, ī** *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson†
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure, allow*
**pinguis, e** fat, rich, fertile
**praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send (before, forth)†
**rapidus, a, um** swift, hurrying*
**rēgālis, e** royal, regal, kingly†
**seriēs, ēī** *f.* succession, series, row†
**splendidus, a, um** bright, resplendent†
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**sūs, suis** *m.* (*f.*) hog, pig, swine†
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, bullock, ox†*
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**tot** so many*
**vestis, is** *f.* robe, cloth(ing), tapestry*
**vīgintī** twenty†

---

**633. sociīs (Aenēae). Nec minus:** *likewise, moreover.*

**635. suum:** gen. pl. of **sūs.**

**636. mūnera:** (*as*) *gifts*, in apposition with **taurōs, terga, agnōs. diī:** gen. of **diēs**, an old form. Another incomplete line; cf. l. 534 and note.

**637. interior domus:** *the inner* (*part of the*) *palace.*

**638.** (in) **tēctīs.**

**639. vestēs (īnstruuntur). arte:** abl. of manner; App. 328; dependent on **labōrātae. ostrō superbō:** abl. of quality; App. 330. The Tyrian "purple" was famous; cf. line 337.

**640. ingēns:** *massive* or *a vast amount.* (in) **mēnsīs.**

**641. fortia facta:** alliteration. **patrum (Tyriōrum):** *early heroes of Tyre.*

**642. ducta:** modifies **seriēs** (l. 641).

**643–656. Aeneas sends Achates to bring Ascanius, and some costly presents for Dido.**

**644. passus (est).**

**645. Ascaniō:** indir. obj. **(ut) ferat, dūcat:** purpose; App. 359; or substantive clauses developed from the volitive, dependent upon the idea of bidding implied in **praemittit Achātēn;** App. 360.

*Mūnera* praetereā Īliacīs *ērepta* ruīnīs
*ferre jubet*, pallam signīs *aurōque* rigentem
*et* circumtextum croceō vēlāmen acanthō,
ornātūs Argīvae Helenae, *quōs illa* Mycēnīs,
Pergama *cum peteret* inconcessōs*que* hymenaeōs,
extulerat, *mātris* Lēdae mīrābile *dōnum;*
praetereā scēptrum, Īlionē *quod* gesserat ōlim,
*maxima* nātārum *Priamī*, collō*que* monīle
bācātum, *et* duplicem gemmīs *aurōque* corōnam.
*Haec* celerāns iter *ad nāvīs tendēbat* Achātēs.
*At* Cytherēa *novās* artīs, *nova pectore* versat
cōnsilia, *ut* faciem mūtātus *et ōra* Cupīdō

**acanthus, ī** *m.* acanthus, a flowering plant†
**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful eomrade of Aeneas*
**Argīvus, a, um** Argive, of Argos, a Greek eity
**ars, artis** *f.* art(istry), skill, artifiee*
**bācātus, a, um** set (strung) with pearls†
**celerō** (1) hasten, speed, hurry
**circumtexō, ere, uī, xtus** embroider, weave around†
**collum, ī** *n.* neek†*
**cōnsilium, (i)ī** *n.* plan, advice
**corōna, ae** *f.* crown, garland†
**croceus, a, um** yellow, saffron†
**Cupīdō, inis** *m.* Cupid, god of love†
**Cytherēa, ae** *f.* the Cytherean, Venus, who was born on the island of Cythera
**duplex, icis** double, two(fold)
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry off, lift*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* faee, appearanee†*
**gemma, ae** *f.* gem, jewel†
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on), wear, wage*
**Helena, ae** *f.* Helen, famous Greek woman, married to Menelaüs; she eloped with Paris and thus brought on the Trojan War†
**hymenaeus, ī** *m.* (god of) marriage†
**Īliacus, a, um** Ilian, Trojan*
**Īlionē, ēs** *f.* eldest daughter of Priam†
**inconcessus, a, um** illegal, forbidden†
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**Lēda, ae** *f.* mother of Helen†
**mīrābilis, e** wonderful, marvelous
**monīle, is** *n.* collar, neeklaee†
**mūtō** (1) (ex)ehange, transform, alter†*
**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* Greek eity
**nāta, ae** *f.* daughter
**ōlim** onee, at some time*
**ornātus, ūs** *m.* ornament, adornment†
**palla, ae** *f.* eloak, mantle, robe†
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (eitadel of) Troy*
**praetereā** besides, heneeforth*
**rigēns, entis** stiff, rigid†
**ruīna, ae** *f.* downfall, ruin
**scēptrum, ī** *n.* staff, seepter, power
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, token, figure*
**vēlāmen, inis** *n.* garment, robe, veil†
**versō** (1) keep turning, revolve†

**647. (ex) ruīnīs:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **Mūnera:** ef. l. 636; sueh an exehange of gifts between host and guest was eommon in antiquity and is still found among many peoples.

**648. (Achātēn) ferre jubet.**

**649. acanthō:** a common element in the decorative art of antiquity and well known from its use as one of the features of the eapital of the Corinthian eolumn.

**650. ornātūs:** aee. pl., apposition with **pallam** and **vēlāmen**, whieh in turn are in apposition with **mūnera. Mycēnīs:** plaee from whieh; App. 320.

**651. peteret: cum** temporal, with a long final syllable before the pause and under the metrieal aecent; App. 394, *a.* **inconcessōs hymenaeōs:** her fateful marriage with Paris.

**653. Īlionē:** nom., a Greek form; App. 66.

**654. maxima (nātū): *eldest.* collō:** dat. of purpose; a eollar *for the neck.*

**655. gemmīs aurōque:** abl. of means or of manner; App. 331, 328.

**656. Haec:** obj. of **celerāns.**

**657–698. Venus substitutes Cupid for Ascanius, that Dido may fall in love with Aeneas.**

**657. (in) pectore. novās, nova:** rhetorieal repetition, called anaphora.

**658. faciem et ōra:** objeets of the "middle" partieiple **mūtātus**; App. 309.

prō dulcī Ascaniō *veniat, dōnīsque furentem*
incendat *rēgīnam atque* ossibus implicet *ignem.*
Quippe *domum* timet ambiguam *Tyriōsque* bilinguīs,
ūrit atrōx *Jūnō et sub noctem cūra* recursat.
Ergō *hīs* āligerum *dictīs* adfātur Amōrem:
"*Nāte, meae vīrēs, mea magna* potentia, *sōlus,*
*nāte, patris summī quī tēla* Typhōea temnis,
*ad tē* cōnfugiō *et* supplex *tua nūmina* poscō.
Frāter *ut Aenēās pelagō tuus omnia circum*
*lītora* jactētur odiīs *Jūnōnis* àcerbae,
nōta *tibi, et nostrō* doluistī saepe dolōre.
*Nunc* Phoenissa *tenet Dīdō* blandīs*que* morātur

**acerbus, a, um** bitter, cruel, harsh†
**adfor, fārī, fātus** address, speak to†
**āliger, era, erum** winged†
**ambiguus, a, um** doubtful, deceitful†
**Amor, ōris** *m.* Love, Cupid†
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**atrōx, ōcis** dark, fierce, savage†
**bilinguis, e** double-tongued, dishonest†
**blandus, a, um** caressing, persuasive†
**cōnfugiō, ere, fūgī** flee (for help)†
**doleō, ēre, uī, itus** grieve, suffer
**dolor, ōris** *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion*
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear*
**ergō** therefore, then†*
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**implicō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus)** infold, mingle, encircle†
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, fire†*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet*
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, linger; detain†*
**nōtus, a, um** (well)known, familiar*
**odium, (i)ī** *n.* hate, hatred, enmity
**os, ossis** *n.* bone†*
**Phoenissa, ae** *f.* Phoenician (woman)†
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek*
**potentia, ae** *f.* power, might, strength†
**prō** before, for (*abl.*)*
**quippe** truly, forsooth, surely, indeed
**recursō** (1) keep recurring, return†
**saepe** often*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**temnō, ere** scorn, despise, disdain
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread†*
**Typhōeus, a, um** Typhoean, of Typhoeus, a giant who while trying to capture heaven was slain by Jupiter with his thunderbolt†
**ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn, inflame†

**659. dōnīs:** abl. of means with **incendet. furentem:** proleptic; App. 440; *may inflame the mad queen*, i.e., *may inflame the queen to madness.* See the note on l. 69.

**659–660. veniat, incendat, implicet:** purpose; App. 359.

**660. ossibus:** *her innermost nature*, where her deepest feelings were. **ossibus:** dat. with a compound; App. 298. **ignem (amōris).**

**661. ambiguam, bilinguīs:** one's enemies are likely to be characterized as lying scoundrels. The Romans came to hate the Carthaginians during the Punic Wars so bitterly that **Pūnica fidēs** became synonymous for treachery.

**662. ūrit (Venerem) atrōx Jūnō:** (*the thought of*) *cruel Juno inflames* (*Venus with anxiety*).

**664. sōlus:** nom., although preceded by the voc. **nāte.**

**665. patris summī: Jovis. tēla:** thunderbolts with which Jupiter overthrew the giant Typhoeus, who along with the other giants was attempting to capture heaven by storm. The ancients loved to represent Cupid as scorning the thunderbolts of Jove, as a mark of the resistless power of Love. This was sometimes summed up in the proverb **omnia vincit amor.**

**666. supplex:** (*as*) *a suppliant.*

**667–669. ut frāter . . . nōta (sunt):** *how your brother* (*Aeneas*) *is tossed about is known to you.* **(in) pelagō.**

**668. jactētur:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. The last syllable is lengthened before the pause under the metrical accent; App. 394, *a.*

**669. nōta (sunt):** for **nōtum est;** a Greek construction. **nostrō = meō;** compare the use of the "editorial we" in English. **doluistī dolōre:** pleonasm; App. 438.

**670. (eum) tenet.**

*vōcibus, et* vereor *quō sē* Jūnōnia vertant
hospitia: *haud tantō* cessābit cardine *rērum.*
Quōcircā *capere ante* dolīs *et* cingere *flammā*
*rēgīnam* meditor, *nē quō sē nūmine* mūtet,
*sed magnō Aenēae mēcum teneātur amōre.*
Quā *facere id possīs nostram nunc accipe mentem:*
rēgius accītū cārī *genitōris ad urbem*
Sīdoniam *puer īre parat, mea maxima cūra,*
*dōna ferēns pelagō et flammīs* restantia *Trojae;*
*hunc ego* sōpītum *somnō super alta* Cythēra
*aut super* Īdalium sacrātā *sēde* recondam,
*nē* quā scīre dolōs *mediusve* occurrere *possit.*
*Tū* faciem *illīus noctem nōn* amplius *ūnam*
falle dolō *et* nōtōs *puerī puer* indue vultūs,
*ut, cum tē* gremiō *accipiet laetissima Dīdō*

**accītus, ūs** *m.* summons, call†
**amplius** more, longer, farther†
**cardō, inis** *m.* hinge, pivot, crisis
**cārus, a, um** dear, fond, beloved*
**cessō** (1) delay, cease, hesitate†
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird*
**Cythēra, ōrum** *n.* island south of Greece, birthplace of Venus†
**dolus, ī** *m.* trick, deceit, wiles, fraud*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* face, appearance*
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, counterfeit†*
**gremium, (i)ī** *n.* lap, bosom, embrace†
**hospitium, (i)ī** *n.* hospitality, welcome
**Īdalium, (i)ī** *n.* mountain of Cyprus, sacred to Venus†
**induō, ere, uī, ūtus** put on, don†
**Jūnōnius, a, um** of Juno†
**meditor, ārī, ātus** consider, plan, intend†
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
**nōtus, a, um** (well)known, familiar*
**occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** (run to) meet, thwart (*dat.*)†
**quā,** by what (any) way (means), how, where(by), in any way
**quōcircā** wherefore†
**recōndō, ere, didī, ditus** hide, establish†
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**restō, āre, stitī** remain, survive
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate†*
**sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** know (how)
**Sīdōnius, a, um** Sidonian, Phoenician
**sōpītus, a, um** asleep, sleeping, lulled†
**vereor, ērī, itus** fear, dread†
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change, rout*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face*

**671. Jūnōnia:** Venus suspects Juno as having inspired the hospitality of Dido. **vertant:** subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349.

**672. cardine:** *at such a crisis*, abl. of time when; App. 322.

**673. capere dolīs, cingere flammā:** military terms. **flammā (amōris).**

**674. quō:** indefinite. **mūtet:** negative purpose; App. 359. **nūmine (Jūnōnis).**

**675. (ut) teneātur (Dīdō):** purpose; App. 359.

**676. possīs:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349.

**677. accītū:** abl. of cause; App. 332. **urbem Sīdoniam = Carthāginem.** See note on **Sīdōnia** in l. 446.

**677–678. rēgius puer:** Ascanius.

**679. (ē, ex) pelagō et flammīs:** abl of separation; App. 340.

**680–681. somnō:** with **sōpītum,** abl. of means or manner; pleonasm; App. 438. **Cythēra, Īdalium:** favorite haunts of Venus.

**681. (in) sacrātā sēde:** in some temple, shrine, or holy place.

**682. quā (viā):** indefinite. **possit (Ascanius):** negative purpose; App. 359. **occurrere (dolīs):** and thus interfere with my plans.

**683. noctem nōn amplius ūnam:** *for one night, no longer.* **noctem:** acc. of duration; App. 314.

**684. puerī puer:** brought together, to show how easy the masquerade would be for Cupid.

**685–688. ut...īnspīrēs...fallās:** purpose; App. 359. **(in) gremiō. laticem Lyaeum:** alliteration. **laticem Lyaeum = vīnum,** *wine*, because Lyaeus, another

rēgālīs *inter* mēnsās laticem*que* Lyaeum,
*cum dabit* amplexūs *atque* ōscula dulcia fīget,
occultum īnspīrēs *ignem* fallās*que* venēnō."
Pāret *Amor dictīs* cārae genetrīcis, *et* ālās
exuit *et* gressū gaudēns incēdit Iūlī.
*At* Venus Ascaniō placidam *per* membra quiētem
inrigat, *et* fōtum gremiō *dea tollit in altōs*
Īdaliae lūcōs, *ubi* mollis amāracus *illum*
flōribus *et* dulcī aspīrāns complectitur *umbrā*.
*Jamque ībat dictō* pārēns *et dōna* Cupīdō
rēgia portābat *Tyriīs* duce *laetus* Achātē.
*Cum venit*, aulaeīs *jam sē rēgīna* superbīs
aureā composuit spondā *mediamque* locāvit,

---

**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**amāracus, ī** *m.* (*f.*) sweet marjoram†
**amplexus, ūs** *m.* embracc, fold†
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**a(d)spīrō** (1) breathe (on), blow on†
**aulaea, ōrum** *n.* curtains, tapestry†
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**cārus, a, um** dear, fond, beloved*
**complector, ī, exus** embracc, infold†
**compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** compose, construct, settle
**Cupīdō, inis** *m.* Cupid, god of love
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fragrant*
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chieftain*
**exuō, ere, uī, ūtus** put off, doff†
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, counterfeit*
**fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxus** fix, fasten, plant*
**flōs, flōris** *m.* flower, blossom, bloom†
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** cherish, fondle
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult†
**genetrīx, īcis** *f.* mother
**gremium, (i)ī** *n.* lap, bosom, embrace
**gressus, ūs** *m.* step, walk, gait
**Īdalia, ae** *f.* mountain of Cyprus, sacred to Venus
**incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go (majestically), stride
**inrigō** (1) irrigate, steep, diffuse†
**īnspīrō** (1) breathe in(to), inspire†
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**latex, icis** *m.* liquid, water, wine†
**locō** (1) locate, place, establish*
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**Lyaeus, a, um** Lyaean, of Lyaeus (Bacchus), god of wine†
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, part*
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**mollis, e** soft, gentle, tender†
**occulō, ere, uī, ultus** hide, conceal
**ōsculum, ī** *n.* dainty lip, kiss
**pāreō, ēre, uī, itus** yield, obey (*dat.*)†
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet*
**portō** (1) carry (away), bear, bring*
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* rest, sleep, peace†*
**rēgālis, e** royal, regal, kingly
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**sponda, ae** *f.* couch†
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**venēnum, ī** *n.* poison, venom†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*

---

name for Bacchus, was god of wine. (**rēgīna Dīdō**) **dabit. ignem** (**amōris**), **venēnō** (**amōris**).

**689. dictīs**: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**690. gressū**: abl. of cause with **gaudēns**; App. 332.

**691. Ascaniō**: dat. of reference; App. 301.

**692.** (**eum**) **fōtum** (**in**) **gremiō.**

**694. flōribus, umbrā**: ablatives of means with **complectitur.**

**695. dictō**: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**696. Tyriīs**: dat. of reference; App. 301. **Achātē**: abl. of cause with **laetus**, or abl. abs. with **duce**; App. 332, 343.

**697. venit** (**Cupīdō**): present tense, *when he comes*, the queen has (already) arranged herself. (**in**) **aulaeīs.**

**698. aureā**: two syllables by synizesis; App. 403. (**in**) **spondā** (**sē**) **mediam locāvit**: *placed herself on a couch in the midst*, the place of honor, as befitted a queen.

*jam pater Aenēās et jam* Trojāna juventūs
conveniunt, strātō*que super* discumbitur ostrō.
*Dant manibus* famulī lymphās Cereremque canistrīs
expediunt tōnsīs*que ferunt* mantēlia villīs.
Quīnquāgintā intus famulae, *quibus* ordine *longam*
*cūra* penum struere *et flammīs* adolēre penātīs;
centum *aliae* totidemque parēs aetāte ministrī,
*quī* dapibus mēnsās onerent *et* pōcula *pōnant.*
*Nec nōn et Tyriī per līmina laeta* frequentēs
convēnēre, torīs *jussī* discumbere pictīs.
Mīrantur *dōna Aenēae*, mīrantur Iūlum,
flagrantīs*que deī* vultūs simulātaque verba,
pallamque *et* pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō.

**acanthus, ī** *m.* acanthus, a flowering plant
**adoleō, ēre, uī, ultus** magnify, honor†
**aetās, ātis** *f.* age, time
**canistrum, ī** *n.* basket, hamper†
**centum** hundred*
**Cerēs, eris** *f.* (goddess of) grain; bread
**conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come together, assemble, agree, harmonize
**croceus, a, um** saffron, yellow
**daps, dapis** *f.* banquet, feast*
**discumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** recline (at table)†
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** bring forth
**famula, ae** *f.* maid-servant†
**famulus, ī** *m.* man-servant, page†
**flagrō** (1) burn, blaze, glow†
**frequēns, entis** thronging, crowded†
**intus** within, inside
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**lympha, ae** *f.* water†
**mantēle, is** *n.* napkin, towel†
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**minister, trī** *m.* man-servant, attendant†
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire*
**onerō** (1) load, burden
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, line, array*
**ostrum, ī** *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson
**palla, ae** *f.* cloak, robe, mantle
**pār, paris** equal, similar, even†*
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**penus, ūs (ī)** *m.* (*f.*) food, store†
**pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus** paint, embroider†
**pōculum, ī** *n.* cup, goblet†
**quīnquāgintā** fifty†
**simulō** (1) imitate, pretend, feign
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, spread, strew*
**struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** arrange, pile (up), construct, contrive†
**tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus** shear, clip†
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch†*
**totidem** as many, so many†
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan*
**vēlāmen, inis** *n.* garment, robe, veil
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech†
**villus, ī** *m.* tuft, nap, hair, bristle†
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face*

**699–747. The great banquet in Dido's palace.**

**700. discumbitur:** impersonal, *it is reclined = they (the guests) recline.* The ancient Romans reclined at banquets.

**701. manibus:** *for (washing) their hands;* dat. of purpose; App. 303. **Cererem:** *Ceres*, goddess of grain, used here by metonymy for *bread;* App. 433. **(ex) canistrīs.**

**702. tōnsīs villīs:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

**703. intus:** *within (the serving rooms).* **famulae (sunt). quibus (erat) cūra:** dat. of possession. **(in, ex) ordine.**

**704. flammīs adolēre penātīs:** *to honor the household gods with fires* (on the altars).

**705. aetāte:** abl. of respect; App. 325.

**706. onerent, pōnant:** purpose; App. 359.

**707. Nec nōn:** *likewise.* **et:** *also.* **laeta:** a transferred epithet; it was really the people who were happy, not the doorways.

**708. convēnēre = convēnērunt. (in) torīs.**

**709. Iūlum:** really Cupid, masquerading as Iulus (Ascanius).

**710. deī (Cupīdinis).**

**711. pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō:** interlocked order; App. 442.

Praecipuē *īnfēlīx*, pestī dēvōta *futūrae*,
explērī *mentem* nequit ardēscitque tuendō
Phoenissa, *et* pariter *puerō dōnīsque movētur*.
*Ille ubi* complexū *Aenēae* collōque pependit
*et magnum* falsī implēvit *genitōris amōrem*,
*rēgīnam petit*. *Haec oculīs, haec pectore tōtō*
haeret *et* interdum gremiō fovet īnscia *Dīdō*
īnsīdat quantus *miserae deus*. *At* memor *ille*
*mātris* Acīdaliae paulātim abolēre Sychaeum
incipit *et* vīvō temptat praevertere *amōre*
*jam* prīdem residēs *animōs* dēsuētaque corda.
Postquam *prīma* quiēs epulīs mēnsaeque remōtae,
crātēras *magnōs* statuunt *et* vīna corōnant.

---

**aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itus** abolish, remove†
**Acīdalius, a, um** Acidalian, of Acidalia, a fountain in Boeotia, sacred to Venus†
**ardēscō, ere, arsī** catch fire, burn†
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**complexus, ūs** *m.* embrace†
**cor, cordis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*
**corōnō** (1) crown, wreathe†
**crātēr, ēris** *m.* (mixing) bowl, urn†
**dēsuētus, a, um** unaccustomed, disused†
**dēvoveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus** vow, doom, devote†
**epulae, ārum** *f.* banquet, feast
**expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete, satisfy
**falsus, a, um** false, deceitful, pretended
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** fondle, cherish
**gremium, (i)ī** *n.* lap, bosom, embrace
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** hang, cling (to)*
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake†*
**īnscius, a, um** ignorant, unaware†
**īnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** settle on†
**interdum** sometimes, at times†
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering, unforgetting*
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**nequeō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** be unable†
**pariter** equally, on equal terms*
**paulātim** gradually, little by little†
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang*
**pestis, is** *f.* plague, ruin, destruction†
**Phoenissa, ae** *f.* Phoenician (woman), Dido
**postquam** after (that), when*
**praecipuē** especially
**praevertō, ere, ī, rsus** occupy first, outstrip, surpass
**prīdem** long ago, long since, for some time†
**quantus, a, um** how much, how great, how many*
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* calm, peace, quiet, lull*
**removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** remove
**reses, idis** inert, unstirred, sluggish†
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** set up, build
**Sȳchaeus, ī** *m.* deceased husband of Dido
**temptō** (1) try, test, attempt, seek†*
**tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus)** watch, guard*
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**vīvus, a, um** living, natural, alive

---

**712. pestī futūrae dēvōta:** her love was to cause her destruction, as is told in the fourth book of the *Aeneid*.

**713. tuendō:** gerund; from **tueor**, abl. of means; App. 269, 331; *with (by) gazing*.

**714. Phoenissa:** Dido. **puerō:** abl., thought of as means, coördinate with **dōnīs**.

**718.** (in) **gremiō**.

**719. īnsīdat:** subj. in an indir. quest., depending on **īnscia**; App. 349. **miserae:** substantively, *the unfortunate* (*woman*), proleptic; dat. with compound; App. 440, 298. **ille: Cupīdō**.

**720. mātris Acīdaliae:** *of his Acidalian mother* (Venus). **mātris:** gen. with the adj. **memor**; App. 287. **abolēre Sychaeum:** to make her forget Sychaeus entirely.

**721. vīvō amōre:** *with a living love* for Aeneas; contrasted with her old love for the dead Sychaeus.

**722. dēsuēta corda:** *her heart* (*now*) *having become unaccustomed* (*to love*).

**723. epulīs** (**fuit**): dat. of possession; App. 299; *when the first lull came in the feasting*. **mēnsae remōtae** (**sunt**). Cf. l. 216.

**724. crātērās:** acc. pl., a Greek form.

Fit strepitus *tēctīs vōcemque per* ampla volūtant
ātria; dēpendent lychnī laqueāribus aureīs
incēnsī *et noctem flammīs* fūnālia *vincunt.*
*Hīc rēgīna* gravem gemmīs *aurōque* poposcit
implēvit*que* merō pateram, *quam* Bēlus *et omnēs*
*ā* Bēlō solitī; *tum facta* silentia *tēctīs:*
"*Juppiter*, hospitibus *nam tē dare* jūra loquuntur,
*hunc laetum Tyriīsque diem Trojāque* profectīs
*esse velīs, nostrōsque hujus* meminisse minōrēs.
*Adsit* laetitiae Bacchus dator *et* bona *Jūnō;*
*et vōs, Ō* coetum, *Tyriī*, celebrāte faventēs."
*Dīxit et in* mēnsam laticum lībāvit *honōrem*
*prīmaque*, lībātō, *summō* tenus attigit *ōre;*
*tum* Bitiae *dedit* increpitāns; *ille* impiger hausit

**amplus, a, um** ample, full, spacious†
**ātrium, (i)ī** *n.* great hall, atrium†
**attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach†
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**Bacchus, ī** *m.* (god of) wine
**Bēlus, ī** *m.* early Phoenician king†
**Bitiās, ae** *m.* Carthaginian courtier†
**bonus, a, um** good, kind(ly), useful*
**celebrō** (1) throng, attend, honor†
**coetus, ūs** *m.* assembly, crowd, company
**dator, ōris** *m.* giver, bestower†
**dēpendeō, ēre** hang down (from) (*abl.*)†
**faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautus** favor, befriend†
**fīō, fierī, factus** become, be made
**fūnāle, is** *n.* taper, lamp†
**gemma, ae** *f.* gem, jewel
**gravis, e** heavy, weighty, serious*
**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drain, draw (off)†
**hospes, itis** *m.* guest, host, stranger†
**impiger, gra, grum** eager, quick†
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** light, inflame*
**increpitō** (1) challenge, chide†
**jūs, jūris** *n.* law, right, decree
**laetitia, ae** *f.* joy, gladness, delight
**laquear, āris** *n.* fretted (paneled) ceiling†
**latex, icis** *m.* liquid, water, wine
**lībō** (1) taste, pour (as a libation)
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say*
**lychnus, ī** *m.* lamp, chandelier†
**meminī, isse** remember, recall (*gen.*)
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**merum, ī** *n.* unmixed wine†
**minōrēs, um** *m.* descendants, posterity
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl†
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek*
**proficīscor, ī, fectus** set out, depart
**silentium, (i)ī** *n.* silence, quiet, repose†
**soleō, ēre, solitus sum** be accustomed†
**strepitus, ūs** *m.* noise, uproar
**tenus** up to, as far as (*abl.*)†
**volūtō** (1) roll, revolve, ponder

The wine was mixed with water and was not brought in till the guests had finished eating. **vīna corōnant:** *they encircle the wine* (bowls) with garlands and wreaths of leaves and flowers, a usual custom at Roman and Greek banquets.

**725. strepitus:** the sound of joyful revelry. **(in) tēctīs.**

**726. (dē) laqueāribus. aureīs:** two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

**728. pateram gravem gemmīs aurōque.**

**729. Bēlus:** a remote ancestor of Dido, not to be confused with Belus, her father, mentioned in l. 621. **omnēs ā Bēlō:** *all those* (*descended from*) *Belus.*

**730. solitī (erant implēre). facta (sunt). silentia:** poetic plural. **(in) tēctīs.**

**731. Juppiter:** Dido invokes the blessing of Jupiter as god of hospitality.

**732. velīs hunc diem esse laetum. (hīs) Trojā profectīs = Teucrīs.**

**733. velīs:** opt. subj.; App. 253. **hujus (diēī).**

**734. Adsit:** opt.; App. 253. **laetitiae:** obj. gen. with **dator**; App. 284.

**735. coetum:** obj. of **celebrāte. faventēs:** *speaking no unpropitious word, graciously.*

**736. honōrem:** *honor* (to the gods), *offering.*

**737. lībātō:** impersonal abl. abs., *a libation having been poured;* App. 343. **summō ōre:** with a dainty feminine sip, to observe the ancient proprieties.

**738. dedit (pateram).**

spūmantem pateram *et* plēnō *sē* prōluit *aurō;*
post *aliī* procerēs. Citharā crīnītus Iōpās
personat aurātā, docuit *quem maximus* Atlās.
*Hic* canit *errantem* lūnam sōlis*que labōrēs,*
unde hominum *genus et* pecudēs, unde imber *et ignēs,*
Arctūrum pluviās*que* Hyadas *geminōsque* Triōnēs;
*quid tantum* Ōceanō properent *sē* tingere sōlēs
hībernī, *vel quae* tardīs mora *noctibus* obstet.
Ingeminant plausū *Tyriī,* Trōes*que sequuntur.*
*Nec nōn et* variō *noctem* sermōne *trahēbat*
*īnfēlīx Dīdō longumque* bibēbat *amōrem,*

---

**Arctūrus, ī** *m.* bright star in the constellation Boötes, which rose in the stormy season†
**Atlās, antis** *m.* god who supported the sky on his shoulders; high mountain of northwest Africa†
**aurātus, a, um** gilded†
**bibō, ere, ī** drink (of, in)
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, proclaim*
**cithara, ae** *f.* harp, lyre, cither†
**crīnītus, a, um** long-haired†
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, instruct*
**hībernus, a, um** wintry, of winter
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**Hyades, um** *f.* constellation, rising in the stormy season†
**imber, bris** *m.* rain, flood, water
**ingeminō** (1) redouble†
**Iōpās, ae** *m.* Phoenician bard†
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon†*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hindrance, hesitation*
**obstō, āre, stitī, status** oppose, hinder (*dat.*)†
**Ōceanus, ī** *m.* ocean
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl
**pecus, udis** *f.* member of flock, animal†*
**personō, āre, uī, itus** sound, play†
**plausus, ūs** *m.* clapping, applause†
**plēnus, a, um** full, filled
**pluvius, a, um** watery, rainy†
**post** after (*acc.*); afterward, then*
**procer, eris** *m.* noble, lord†
**prōluō, ere, uī, ūtus** drench, wash†
**properō** (1) hasten, hurry†
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, speech
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray
**tardus, a, um** slow, late, lazy†
**ting(u)ō, ere, tīnxī, tīnctus** wet, dip†
**Triōnēs, um** *m.* constellations, the Greater and Lesser Bear†
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**unde** whence, from what source (cause)*
**varius, a, um** varied, different*

---

**739. plēnō aurō:** *the full* (*cup of*) *gold.*

**740. post** = **posteā. procerēs (pateram hausērunt). Citharā:** abl. of instrument or means; App. 331. **crīnītus:** *long-haired,* a style often affected by artists even today.

**742. Hic: Iōpās. lūnam, labōrēs:** cognate acc. with **canit,** stating themes of the song; cf. **arma virumque canō** (l. 1). **sōlis labōrēs:** *eclipses,* since the sun was thought of as struggling and suffering during an eclipse.

**743. unde hominum genus (sit):** the first of a series of indirect questions depending on **canit. unde (sint) ignēs (Jovis):** *lightnings.*

**745. quid hībernī sōlēs properent tantum:** why the winter days are so short and the nights so long. **(in) Ōceanō.**

**746. properent, obstet:** subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349. **tardīs noctibus (hībernīs):** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**748–756. Dido, smitten with love for Aeneas, begs him to tell all about himself and his adventures, beginning with the fall of Troy.**

**748. Nec nōn et:** *likewise, also.*

**749. īnfēlīx:** cf. **pestī dēvōta futūrae,** (l. 712). **longum amōrem:** *deep* (*draughts of*) *love.*

*multa super Priamō* rogitāns, *super* Hectore *multa;*
*nunc quibus* Aurōrae *vēnisset* fīlius *armīs,*
*nunc* quālēs Diomēdis *equī, nunc* quantus Achillēs.
"Immō *age et ā prīmā dīc,* hospes, orīgine *nōbīs*
īnsidiās" inquit "*Danaum cāsūsque tuōrum*
errōrēs*que tuōs; nam tē jam* septima portat
*omnibus errantem terrīs et flūctibus* aestās."

**Achillēs, is** (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
**aestās, ātis** *f.* summer
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* goddess of dawn, mother of Memnon, a Trojan ally†*
**Diomēdēs, is** *m.* Greek chieftain, who captured the horses of Aeneas, the finest under the sun†
**error, ōris** *m.* wandering, straying†
**fīlius,** (i)ī *m.* son
**Hector, oris** *m.* Trojan leader*
**hospes, itis** *m.* guest, host, stranger
**immō** nay (rather), rather†
**inquam, is, it** say*
**īnsidiae, ārum** *f.* ambush, treachery, snare, trick†
**orīgō, inis** *f.* origin, beginning, source
**portō** (1) carry, bear, bring*
**quālis, e** of what sort, such (as)*
**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, how many, as*
**rogitō** (1) ask (often, eagerly)†
**septimus, a, um** seventh†

**750–752** Dido's questions indicate that her primary interest is not in the things about which she inquires but in Aeneas.

**751. quibus armīs . . . vēnisset:** indir. quest.; App. 349.

**752. quālēs (essent) equī, quantus (esset) Achillēs:** indirect questions; App. 349.

**753. dīc:** imp. of **dīcō**; App. 202.

**754. Dana(ōr)um.**

**756. (in) terrīs et (in) flūctibus.**

# BOOK II

CONTICUĒRE *omnēs* intentī*que ōra tenēbant.*
Inde torō *pater Aenēās sīc* orsus *ab altō:*
"Īnfandum, *rēgīna, jubēs* renovāre dolōrem,
Trojānās *ut* opēs *et* lāmentābile *rēgnum*
ēruerint *Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī*
*et quōrum pars magna fuī. Quis tālia fandō*
Myrmidonum Dolopum*ve aut* dūrī mīles Ulixī
temperet *ā lacrimīs? Et jam nox* ūmida *caelō*
praecipitat suādent*que* cadentia *sīdera somnōs.*
*Sed sī tantus amor cāsūs* cognōscere *nostrōs*

---

**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** learn; know
**conticēscō, ere, ticuī** become silent, hush†
**Dolopes, um** *m.* Greeks of Thessaly†
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, anger, pain, passion*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**ēruō, ere, uī, utus** overthrow, tear up†
**inde** thence, afterward, thereupon*
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, accursed
**intentus, a, um** intent, eager, strained†
**lāmentābilis, e** lamentable, pitiable, sad†
**mīles, itis** *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)†
**Myrmidones, um** *m.* Greeks of Thessaly, subjects of Achilles†
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
**ordior, īrī, orsus** begin, undertake
**praecipitō** (1) throw (headlong), fall†
**renovō** (1) renew, revive†
**suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus** advise, urge
**temperō** (1) control, restrain, refrain
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch, cushion*
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**Ulixēs, is** (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader†*
**ūmidus, a, um** moist, dewy, damp†

---

**1–12. Acceding to Dido's request Aeneas agrees to describe the fall of Troy, in spite of the sorrow renewed by such memories.**

**1. conticuēre ( = conticuērunt), tenēbant:** observe the difference in tenses, the perfect denoting instantaneous, completed result, *they grew silent;* the imperf. continued action, *they continued to hold;* App. 351, 2 and 4. **ōra (in, ad Aenēān) tenēbant.**

**2. pater:** simply a title of honor and veneration, because of its Roman associations, where it was regularly used of a member of the senatorial and ruling aristocracy. **ab altō torō:** on which he was reclining at the banquet. **orsus (est):** from **ordior.**

**3. Īnfandum:** emphatic by position. **jubēs (mē) renovāre.**

**4. Trojānās:** with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.* **(fandō) ut Danaī ēruerint Trojānās opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum (fandō)que (ea) miserrima quae (ego) ipse vīdī. fandō:** *by telling.* **ut:** *how.*

**5. ēruerint:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **miserrima:** substantively: *the heart-breaking events.*

**6. tālia:** substantively, obj. of **fandō** in l. 6. **fandō:** gerund of **for;** abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

**7. (quis) mīles. Myrmidonum Dolopumve:** part. genitives, depending on **quis;** App. 286.

**8. temperet:** deliberative subj.; App. 348. **(dē) caelō:** the night is personified; App. 437; after passing the zenith at midnight in her chariot, she is now rushing down into the western wave; it is thus after midnight.

**9. praecipitat (in mare).**

**10. sī amor (est tibi) cognōscere = sī vīs (from volō) cognōscere;** App. 264.

*et* breviter *Trojae suprēmum audīre labōrem,*
quamquam *animus* meminisse horret lūctū*que* refūgit,
incipiam.
Frāctī *bellō fātīsque* repulsī
ductōrēs *Danaum* tot *jam lābentibus* annīs
īnstar *montis equum* dīvīnā Palladis arte
aedificant, sectā*que* intexunt abiete costās;
vōtum prō reditū simulant; *ea fāma* vagātur.
*Hūc* dēlēcta *virum* sortītī *corpora* fūrtim
inclūdunt caecō laterī, penitus*que* cavernās
*ingentīs*, uterum*que* armātō mīlite complent.

---

**abiēs, etis** *f.* fir, pine†
**aedificō** (1) build, construct, erect†
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish†*
**ars, artis** *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice*
**breviter** shortly, briefly, concisely
**caecus, a, um** blind, dark, hidden*
**caverna, ae** *f.* hollow, cavity, cavern†
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete†
**costa, ae** *f.* rib, side
**dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, select†
**dīvīnus, a, um** divine, celestial, holy
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader, chieftain, guide
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter*
**fūrtim** stealthily, secretly, furtively†
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder, tremble*
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus** inclose, confine†
**īnstar** *n. indecl.* likeness, image (*gen.*)†
**intexō, ere, xuī, xtus** (in)weave, cover†
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**lūctus, ūs** *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow†
**meminī, isse** remember, recall
**mīles, itis** *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)
**Pallas, adis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
**penitus** deep(ly), within, completely*
**prō** before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)*
**quamquam** although; however, but†
**reditus, ūs** *m.* return (home)†
**refugiō, ere, fūgī** flee, retreat, recoil†
**repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus** drive back, repel†
**secō, āre, uī, sectus** cut, slice, cleave*
**simulō** (1) pretend, imitate, feign
**sortior, īrī, ītus** draw (by) lot, allot†
**tot** so many, as many*
**uterus, ī** *m.* belly, womb†
**vagor, ārī, ātus** wander, spread abroad†
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
**voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus** vow, consecrate

---

**11. Trojae:** with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*. **suprēmum labōrem:** *the final agony.*

**12. lūctū:** abl. of cause; App. 332.

**13–20. After ten years of unsuccessful effort, the Greeks, worn out by the long siege and lacking confidence in their strength and courage, resort to strategy. They pretend to flee but hide in the neighboring island of Tenedos, leaving behind an enormous wooden horse, in which are concealed the bravest of the Greek leaders.**

**13. bellō, fātīs:** ablatives of means; App. 331.

**14. ductōrēs** = **ducēs. Dana(ōr)um:** App. 37, *d*. **lābentibus annīs:** abl. abs., denoting cause; App. 343. The siege of Troy was now in its tenth and final year.

**15. aedificant equum īnstar montis:** "big as a mountain," hyperbole; App. 428. **Palladis arte:** as goddess of wisdom and the arts, Minerva had inspired the Greeks with the idea and with the skill necessary for its execution.

**16. abiete:** pronounce **abjete** here, making the first syllable long by position; App. 401.

**17. (Danaī) simulant (equum esse) vōtum prō (suō) reditū:** *for their (safe) return (home).*

**18. dēlēcta vir(ōr)um corpora** = **virōs dēlēctōs. Hūc** ( = **in hunc equum**) **caecō laterī fūrtim inclūdunt dēlēcta corpora vir(ōr)um, sortītī (ea).**

**19. caecō laterī** = **in caecum latus,** dat. of direction or with compound; App. 306, 298.

*Est in* cōnspectū Tenedos, nōtissima *fāmā*
īnsula, dīves opum *Priamī dum rēgna manēbant,*
*nunc* tantum sinūs *et* statiō male fīda carīnīs:
*hūc sē* prōvectī dēsertō *in lītore* condunt.
*Nōs* abiisse ratī *et ventō petīsse* Mycēnās.
Ergō *omnis longō* solvit *sē* Teucria lūctū:
panduntur portae, juvat *īre et* Dōrica castra
dēsertōs*que vidēre locōs lītusque relictum:*
*hīc* Dolopum *manus, hīc* saevus *tendēbat* Achillēs;
*classibus hīc locus, hīc* aciē certāre solēbant.
*Pars* stupet innūptae *dōnum* exitiāle Minervae

---

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart, go (away)*
**Achillēs, is** (ī) *m.* Greek leader*
**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge; battle line, army*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel, ship†*
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment*
**certō** (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish; hide*
**cōnspectus, ūs** *m.* sight, view
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis** rich, wealthy (*gen.*)
**Dolopes, um** *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
**Dōricus, a, um** Doric, Spartan, Greek†
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**exitiālis, e** fatal, destructive, deadly†
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trustworthy, safe*
**innūptus, a, um** unwed, virgin†
**īnsula, ae** *f.* island
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**lūctus, ūs** *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow
**male** badly, illy, not†
**Minerva, ae** *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts†
**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* Greek city; Greece
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread, open, loosen*
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry, convey†
**reor, rērī, ratus** suppose, think, reckon†
**saevus, a, um** stern, fierce, raging*
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, hollow, bosom, bay*
**soleō, ēre, itus sum** be accustomed
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free, pay*
**statiō, ōnis** *f.* station, anchorage†
**stupeō, ēre, uī** be dazed, stand agape (at)
**tantum** so much, so great, only
**Tenedos, ī** *f.* small island near Troy†
**Teucria, ae** *f.* Troy, Troyland†

---

**21–30. After the departure of the Greeks, the Trojans rush out to see the deserted camp.**

**21. Est:** *there is.* **in cōnspectū (Trojae). fāmā:** abl. of respect; App. 325.

**22. opum:** gen. of respect with the adj. **dīves**; App. 294. **Priamī rēgna:** poetic plural; App. 243.

**23. nunc (īnsula est) tantum sinus. male fīda = īnfīda:** *unsafe, treacherous;* litotes; App. 431. **carīnīs = nāvibus:** dat. with **īnfīda**; App. 304, 443.

**24. hūc = ad hanc īnsulam. (Danaī) prōvectī (per pelagus).**

**25. Nōs:** contrasted with the treacherous Greeks; App. 247. **Nōs ratī (sumus Danaōs) abiisse. ventō:** abl. of means; App. 331. **Mycēnās = Graeciam,** *Greece;* App. 443.

**26. lūctū:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **omnis longō Teucria lūctū:** interlocked order; App. 442.

**27. juvat (nōs) īre (ex urbe):** impersonal, *it pleases (us), we delight.*

**29–30. hīc manus (tendēbat). hīc . . . hīc . . . hīc:** the Trojans point out these places to one another. The anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413. **hīc (erat) locus classibus (Danaōrum):** refers to the place where the Greek vessels had been drawn up on shore. **classibus = nāvibus:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **aciē:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **hīc (Danaī) aciē certāre solēbant.**

**31–56. The more prudent among them urge the Trojans to destroy the wooden horse. Laocoön takes the lead in this proposal and strikes the side of the horse with his spear.**

**31. stupet = mīrātur:** its object is **dōnum. exitiāle:** *fatal* (for Troy), as will be seen in the sequel. **Minervae:** obj. gen.; App. 284.

*et* mōlem mīrantur *equī; prīmusque* Thymoetēs
*dūcī* intrā mūrōs hortātur *et arce* locārī,
sīve dolō seu *jam Trojae sīc fāta ferēbant.*
*At* Capys, *et quōrum* melior sententia *mentī,*
*aut pelagō Danaum* īnsidiās suspectaque *dōna*
praecipitāre *jubent* subjectīsque ūrere *flammīs,*
*aut* terebrāre cavās uterī *et* temptāre latebrās.
Scinditur incertum studia *in* contrāria vulgus.
*Prīmus* ibi *ante omnīs magnā* comitante catervā
Lāocoōn *ardēns summā* dēcurrit *ab arce,*
*et procul: 'Ō miserī, quae tanta* īnsānia, cīvēs?
Crēditis āvectōs hostīs? *Aut ūlla* putātis
*dōna* carēre dolīs *Danaum? Sīc* nōtus Ulixēs?

**āvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry, convey (away)
**Capys, yos** *m.* Trojan leader
**careō, ēre, uī, itus** be free from, lack (*abl.*)†
**caterva, ae** *f.* crowd, band, troop
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**cīvis, is** *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot†
**comitō** (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow†
**contrārius, a, um** opposite, opposing
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run down†
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
**hortor, ārī, ātus** exhort, urge, incite†*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**ibi** there, then†
**incertus, a, um** uncertain, wavering†
**īnsānia, ae** *f.* madness, frenzy, folly†
**īnsidiae, ārum** *f.* snare, ambush, treachery
**intrā** within, inside, in(to) (*acc.*)
**Lāocoōn, ontis** *m.* Trojan priest of Neptune†
**latebra, ae** *f.* hiding place, cavern, lair†
**locō** (1) place, locate, establish*
**melior, ius** better, superior, nobler
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, structure, burden
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**praecipitō** (1) throw (headlong), fall
**putō** (1) suppose, think, consider†
**scindō, ere, scidī, scissus** split, divide
**sententia, ae** *f.* opinion, purpose, view
**sīve, seu** or (if), whether, either
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit
**subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place under†
**suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** suspect
**temptō** (1) try, test, examine, explore*
**terebrō** (1) bore into, pierce†
**Thymoetēs, ae** *m.* Trojan leader†
**Ulixēs, is** (**eī, ī**) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn, consume
**uterus, ī** *m.* belly, womb
**vulgus, ī** *n.* (*m.*) rabble, crowd, herd

**32. mīrantur:** pl. with a collective noun, **pars**, although the preceding verb, **stupet**, is singular; App. 236, *a*.

**33. hortātur (equum) dūcī et (in) arce locārī = hortātur ut equus dūcātur et locētur in arce (Trojae):** App. 360.

**34. dolō:** abl. of cause; App. 332. **fāta (sē) ferēbant:** *fates were tending;* an oracle had foretold that a child born on a certain day would cause the destruction of Troy. When a child was born to Thymoetes and Paris was born to Priam on that day, Priam put to death the son of Thymoetes, thinking thereby to avert ruin for the state.

**35. et (eī) quōrum sententia melior (erat) mentī:** *and those whose mind had a better counsel.* **mentī:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

**36. pelagō:** dat. of direction; App. 306. **Dana(ōr)um īnsidiās suspectaque dōna = equum.**

**37. -que = -ve;** some advise the destruction of the horse in the sea or by fire; others an examination of its contents. **(nōs) jubent. ūrere (equum) flammīs:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**38. cavās latebrās:** obj. of both **terebrāre** and **temptāre.**

**40. comitante catervā:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**42. et procul (clāmat). īnsānia (est ista).**

**43. āvectōs (esse).**

**44. dolīs:** abl. of separation with **carēre;** App. 340. **dōna Dana(ōr)um. nōtus (est vōbīs) Ulixēs:** Ulysses, the

*Aut hōc* inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī,
*aut haec in nostrōs* fabricāta *est* māchina mūrōs,
īnspectūra *domōs ventūraque* dēsuper *urbī*,
*aut* aliquis latet error; *equō nē* crēdite, *Teucrī*.
Quidquid *id est*, timeō *Danaōs et dōna ferentīs*.'
*Sīc fātus* validīs *ingentem vīribus* hastam
*in* latus *inque* ferī curvam compāgibus alvum
contorsit. *Stetit illa* tremēns, uterō*que* recussō
īnsonuēre cavae gemitum*que dedēre* cavernae.
*Et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn* laeva *fuisset*,
impulerat *ferrō* Argolicās foedāre latebrās,
*Trojaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta manērēs*.

---

**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod)** some(one), any(one)*
**alvus, ī** *f.* belly, body†
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek†
**caverna, ae** *f.* hollow, cavity, cave
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**compāgēs, is** *f.* joint, seam, fastening
**contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** hurl, twirl†
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**curvus, a, um** curved, crooked†*
**dēsuper** from above
**error, ōris** *m.* error, deceit, trick
**fabricō** (1) fashion, make†
**ferus, ī** *m.* beast, monster, horse*
**foedō** (1) befoul, defile; mar, mangle†
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, moan*
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear, lance, dart
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** impel, drive
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close, confine
**īnsonō, āre, uī** (re)sound, roar, echo†
**īnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look into†
**laevus, a, um** left, foolish, unlucky*
**latebra, ae** *f.* hiding place, cavern, lair
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**lignum, ī** *n.* wood, timber†
**māchina, ae** *f.* machine, engine, device†
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**occultō** (1) hide, conceal, secrete†
**quisquis, quidquid** whoever, whatever
**recutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** strike (back), shake†
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread, be anxious*
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**uterus, ī** *m.* belly, womb
**validus, a, um** strong, stout, mighty

---

leader of the Greeks in cunning, craft, and treachery.

**45.** (in) **hōc lignō** = **in hōc equō, quī est dē lignō factus**: metonymy; App. 433.

**46. māchina (bellī).**

**47. īnspectūra, ventūra**: the fut. participles denote purpose; App. 274. **urbī**: dat. of direction = **in urbem**; App. 306.

**48. nē crēdite**: **nē** with the imp. is a poetic use; App. 256, *a*. **equō**: dat. with **crēdō**; App. 297.

**49. timeō Danaōs et** (*even*) **dōna ferentīs**: a favorite quotation. The Greeks are so treacherous that they are not to be trusted even when making gifts (sacrificing, as in this case) to their gods.

**50. validīs ingentem vīribus hastam**: interlocked order; App. 442. **vīribus**: abl. of manner; App. 328; from **vīs**, not **vir**, as may be seen from the quantity of the **i** as well as from its case form.

**51. ferī** = **equī. compāgibus**: with **curvam**, abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331.

**52. illa** = **hasta. uterō recussō**: abl. abs. with causal force; App. 343, *a*.

**53. īnsonuēre, dedēre** = **īnsonuērunt, dedērunt**: App. 204, 4. **gemitum**: merely the hollow sound.

**54. sī, sī**: rhetorical repetition, called anaphora; App. 413.

**54–56. fuisset, stāret, manērēs**: condition contrary to fact, with mixed apodosis (**impulerat**) for **impulisset**: App. 382, *d*. **sī fāta de(ōr)um (nōn laeva fuissent). laeva**: *unfavorable, hostile*.

**55.** (**Lāocoōn nōs**) **impulerat.**

**56. Troja**: pronounce **Trojja**; App. 6, *b*. **manērēs**: observe the change to the second person; personification and apostrophe add to the pathos; App. 417, 437.

Ecce, *manūs* juvenem intereā post terga revīnctum
pāstōrēs *magnō ad rēgem clāmōre trahēbant*
Dardanidae, *quī sē* ignōtum *venientibus* ultrō,
*hoc ipsum ut* strueret *Trojamque* aperīret Achīvīs,
obtulerat, fīdēns *animī atque in* utrumque *parātus*,
seu versāre dolōs seu certae occumbere *mortī*.
Undique vīsendī studiō Trojāna juventūs
circumfūsa *ruit* certant*que* inlūdere captō.
*Accipe nunc Danaum* īnsidiās *et* crīmine *ab ūnō*
disce *omnīs*.
*Namque ut* cōnspectū *in mediō* turbātus, inermis,

**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**aperiō, īre, uī, rtus** open, reveal*
**captus, ī** *m.* captive, prisoner†
**certō** (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
**certus, a, um** sure, certain, fixed, reliable*
**circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour round
**cōnspectus, ūs** *m.* sight, view, (crowd of) spectators
**crīmen, inis** *n.* crime, guilt, charge†
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
**discō, ere, didicī** learn; *perf.* know
**dolus, i** *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
**ecce** see! look! behold!†*
**fīdō, ere, fīsus sum** trust (in) (*dat.*, *abl.*)†*
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange
**inermis, e** unarmed
**inlūdō, ere, sī, sus** mock, insult (*dat.*)†
**īnsidiae, ārum** *f.* snare, ambush, treachery
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**occumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** fall; meet (*dat.*)
**offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus** present, place before, offer
**pāstor, ōris** *m.* shepherd, herdsman†
**post,** afterward(s); behind (*acc.*)*
**revinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, tie back†
**sīve, seu** or (if), whether, either
**struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus** build, contrive
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, rear; skin, hide*
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**turbō** (1) confuse, agitate, disturb*
**ultrō** further(more), voluntarily†*
**undique** on (from) all sides†*
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both†*
**versō** (1) keep turning; employ
**vīsō, ere, sī, sus** see, gaze on, visit†

**57–198. Sinon, a lying Greek, is captured and brought to Priam. He says the horse is an offering to Minerva and will bring good fortune and victory to its possessors.**

**57–59. Ecce intereā Dardanidae pāstōrēs trahēbant juvenem revīnctum manūs post terga. Ecce:** introducing a new element in the story. **manūs:** acc., obj. of the middle part. **revīnctum,** *his hands bound behind his back*, or acc. of respect; App. 309, *a*; 311.

**58. rēgem (Priamum). magnō (cum) clāmōre:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**59. (juvenem) quī ultrō obtulerat sē ignōtum (pāstōribus Dardanidīs = Teucrīs) venientibus:** his name was Sinon.

**60. hoc:** pronounce **hocc**; App. 107, 3,*c*. **hoc ipsum:** *this very thing*, i.e., to be brought before the king and questioned. **strueret, aperīret:** purpose; App. 359.

**61. animī:** a loc., *in his soul;* App. 37, *c*.

**62. mortī:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **versāre, occumbere:** apposition with **utrumque.**

**63. vīsendī:** gen. of gerund, depending on **studiō**, abl. of cause; App. 332. **Trojāna:** pronounce **Trojjāna**; App. 6, *b*.

**64. captō:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **ruit certantque:** for use of singular and plural cf. **stupet et mīrantur,** ll. 31–32; App. 236, *a*.

**65. Dana(ōr)um:** App. 37, *d*.

**66. omnīs (Danaōs):** a general conclusion from a specific instance. For the incomplete line, see the note on I, 534.

**67. ut:** *as*, its usual meaning with the ind. **turbātus:** a pretense on the part of Sinon.

cōnstitit *atque oculīs* Phrygia *agmina* circumspexit:
'*Heu, quae mē tellūs*' inquit '*quae mē aequora possunt*
*accipere? aut quid jam miserō mihi* dēnique restat,
*cui neque* apud *Danaōs* ūsquam *locus, et super ipsī*
Dardanidae īnfēnsī *poenās cum sanguine* poscunt?'
*Quō* gemitū conversī *animī* compressus *et omnis*
impetus. Hortāmur *fārī quō sanguine* crētus,
*quidve ferat;* memoret *quae sit* fīdūcia *captō.*
[*Ille haec* dēpositā *tandem* formīdine *fātur*:]
'*Cūncta* equidem *tibi, rēx, fuerit* quodcumque, fatēbor
vēra,' inquit; '*neque mē* Argolicā *dē gente* negābō;
*hoc prīmum; nec, sī miserum fortūna* Sinōnem

---

**apud** among, at, in (*acc.*)†
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**circumspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look round (on)†
**comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus** check, crush, repress†
**cōnstō, āre, stitī, status** stand (fast)
**convertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change
**crētus, a, um** born, sprung†
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
**dēnique** finally, at last, at length†
**dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus** lay down, drop†
**equidem** indeed, truly*
**fateor, ērī, fassus** confess, agree†
**fīdūcia, ae** *f.* trust, reliance, faith
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, fright, dread, terror†
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, moan*
**hortor, ārī, ātus** urge, exhort, incite*
**impetus, ūs** *m.* onset, violence†
**īnfēnsus, a, um** hostile, bitter†
**inquam, īs, it** say*
**memorō** (1) recall, recount, relate*
**negō** (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whatever*
**restō, āre, stitī** remain, be left
**Sinōn, ōnis** *m.* a lying Greek†
**ūsquam** anywhere, ever
**vērus, a, um** true, real, honest*

---

**68. circumspexit:** the spondaic close, with its slow movement, helps the reader to visualize the slow-turning glance of Sinon as he looks over the crowd.

**69. Heu:** Sinon artfully seeks to rouse the pity and then to win the confidence of the Trojans. He pretends to be in despair. To his former enemies the Trojans who are in possession of the land are now added the equally hostile Greeks who control the sea. He plays his part with consummate skill and ingenuity. **quae tellūs (potest mē accipere).**

**71. cui locus (est):** dat. of possession; App. 299. **neque = nōn. et (ā quō). super:** adv., *besides.*

**72. poenās cum sanguine (meō) poscunt:** *they demand punishment with my blood,* i.e., *my life as penalty.*

**73. conversī (sunt) animī et compressus (est) impetus. (nostrī) animī:** *feelings.*

**74. Hortāmur (illum) fārī. quō sanguine:** abl. of source; App. 323. **crētus (sit):** indir. quest.; App. 349.

**75. quid (= quem nuntium) ferat:** *what he has to say;* indir. quest.; App. 349. **memoret:** indir. command, representing an imp. indir. disc., depending on **hortāmur;** App. 390. **sit:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **(eī) captō:** dat. of possession; App. 299; i.e., what grounds of confidence had induced him to surrender voluntarily and on what did he base his hopes of mercy.

**76. haec (dicta). dēpositā formīdine:** abl. abs.; App. 343. The "fear" is pretended.

**77. fuerit quodcumque:** *come what may,* i.e., *no matter what may happen to me.*

**78. mē (esse).**

**79. hoc prīmum (fatēbor, dīcam):** by first making a true statement of an undoubted fact, but one which a desperate man might have denied, Sinon wins the confidence of the Trojans, who are now more likely to believe the rest of his story. **Sinōnem = mē,** used for the rhetorical effect. "Others may be liars, but not

fīnxit, vānum etiam mendācem*que* improba finget.
*Fandō* aliquod *sī forte tuās* pervēnit *ad* aurīs
Bēlīdae *nōmen* Palamēdis *et* incluta *fāmā*
glōria, *quem* falsā *sub* prōditiōne Pelasgī
īnsontem īnfandō indiciō, quia *bella* vetābat,
dēmīsēre necī, *nunc* cassum *lūmine* lūgent:
*illī mē comitem et* cōnsanguinitāte propinquum
pauper *in arma pater prīmīs hūc mīsit ab* annīs.
*Dum stābat rēgnō* incolumis *rēgumque* vigēbat

---

**aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod)** some, any*
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**Bēlīdēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Belus†
**cassus, a, um** empty, deprived of (*abl.*)†
**cōnsanguinitās, ātis** *f.* kinship (by blood)†
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down, drop, lower*
**etiam** also, even, besides, furthermore*
**falsus, a, um** false, untrue, deceitful
**fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus** make, form†
**glōria, ae** *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride†
**improbus, a, um** wicked, bad, cruel†
**inclutus, a, um** famous, renowned†
**incolumis, e** safe, unharmed, intact†
**indicium, (i)ī** *n.* charge, information†
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, accursed
**īnsōns, ontis** innocent, guiltless†
**lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctus** mourn, lament†
**mendāx, ācis** lying, false, deceitful†
**nex, necis** *f.* death, murder, destruction†
**Palamēdēs, is** *m.* wily Greek, destroyed by Ulysses†
**pauper, eris** poor, needy; lowly†
**Pelasgus, a, um** Pelasgian, Greek
**perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** arrive, come (to)†
**prōditiō, ōnis** *f.* (charge of) treason†
**propinquus, a, um** near (of kin), close†
**quia** because†
**vānus, a, um** empty, idle, false, vain
**vetō, āre, uī, itus** forbid, prevent, hinder
**vigeō, ēre, uī** flourish, thrive†

---

Sinon." **miserum**: pred., *if fortune has made Sinon* (*me*) *unfortunate.*

**80. vānum, mendācem**: pred., as is **miserum**, l. 79. **improba (fortūna) finget (mē).**

**81. Fandō (for)**: abl. of the gerund, *by report;* App. 269.

**81–82. aliquod nōmen**: *any* (*mention of the*) *name.*

**81–83. pervēnit nōmen et glōria**: the verb is sing. to agree with its nearest subj.; App. 236, *b.*

**82. fāmā**: abl. of respect with **incluta**; App. 325.

**82–83. glōria incluta fāmā.**

**83. falsā sub prōditiōne**: *under a false* (*accusation of*) *treason.*

**84. īnfandō indiciō**: abl. of means; App. 331. According to the story, Ulysses had hidden a sum of money and a forged letter of Priam in Palamedes's tent; then, on a suggestion of Ulysses, the Greeks searched the tent, found the money and letter, and condemned Palamedes to death. **quia vetābat**: indicative, since it gives the reasons of the speaker; App. 357. This statement of Sinon is calculated to win the sympathy of the Trojans by showing that he and his friend were at heart on the Trojan side and were opposed to the war.

**85. dēmīsēre = dēmīsērunt**: App. 204, 4. **necī = ad necem**: dat. of direction; App. 306. **(illum) cassum lūmine (vītae). lūmine**: abl. of separation; App. 340.

**86. illī**: emphatic by position; a dat. of reference; App. 301. **comitem**: (*as*) *a comrade.* **cōnsanguinitāte**: abl. of respect; App. 325.

**87. pauper, prīmīs ab annīs, mīsit**: clever suggestions of Sinon to arouse pity and to excuse his part in the war by saying that he had been sent when he was a mere child and that his father was forced to this action by his poverty. Going to war as a "soldier of fortune" was a common method among the ancients of gaining wealth. **hūc** = *to Troy.* **prīmīs ab annīs**: "from my earliest youth."

**88. rēgnō**: abl. of respect with **incolumis**, or abl. of place where; App. 325, 319.

**88–89. (Palamēdēs) stābat rēgumque (Danaōrum) vigēbat (in) conciliīs. nōs**: emphatic; App. 247.

conciliīs, *et nōs* aliquod *nōmenque* decus*que*
gessimus. Invidiā postquam pellācis Ulixī
(*haud* ignōta loquor) *superīs* concessit *ab ōrīs*,
adflictus *vītam in* tenebrīs lūctū*que trahēbam*
*et cāsum* īnsontis *mēcum* indignābar amīcī.
*Nec* tacuī dēmēns *et mē*, *fors sī qua tulisset*,
*sī patriōs* umquam remeāssem *victor ad* Argōs,
prōmīsī ultōrem *et* verbīs odia aspera *mōvī*.
*Hinc mihi prīma* malī lābēs, *hinc* semper Ulixēs
crīminibus terrēre *novīs*, *hinc* spargere *vōcēs*
*in* vulgum ambiguās *et quaerere* cōnscius *arma*.
*Nec* requiēvit enim, dōnec Calchante ministrō —

---

**adflīgō, ere, xī, ctus** crush, strike down
**aliquī (quis), qua, quod (quid)** some(one), any(one)*
**ambiguus, a, um** of double meaning, doubtful, obscure, ambiguous
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, comrade*
**Argī, ōrum** *m.* Argos, a city of southern Greece; Greece
**asper, era, erum** harsh, rough, fierce*
**Calchās, antis** *m.* a famous Greek seer†
**concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, yield†
**concilium, (i)ī** *n.* council, assembly†
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious (of guilt)
**crīmen, inis** *n.* crime, guilt, charge
**decus, oris** *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
**dēmēns, entis** mad, insane, foolish†
**dōnec** until, while, as long as
**enim** for, indeed, surely*
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** bear, carry (on)*
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange
**indignor, ārī, ātus** be angry (at)
**īnsōns, ontis** innocent, guiltless
**invidia, ae** *f.* envy, malice, grudge†
**lābēs, is** *f.* slip, defect, stain, ruin†
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, tell*
**lūctus, ūs** *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, trouble, misfortune*
**minister, trī** *m.* servant, helper
**odium, (i)ī** *n.* hate, hatred, enmity
**pellāx, ācis** deceitful, wily, crafty†
**postquam** after (that), when*
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**remeō** (1) return, go back†
**requiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** rest, repose†
**semper** always, ever*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sow*
**taceō, ēre, uī, itus** be silent, hush*
**tenebrae, ārum** *f.* darkness, gloom†
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**Ulixēs, is (eī, ī)** *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**ultor, ōris** *m.* avenger†
**umquam** ever, at any time†
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech, talk
**vulgus, ī** *n.* (*m.*) rabble, crowd, herd

---

**89.** (in) **conciliīs**, abl. of place where; App. 319. **et nōs**: *I also;* the "editorial we."

**90. Invidiā Ulixī**: Ulysses is said to have borne a special grudge against Palamedes, because the latter detected his pretended madness when he was trying to avoid going to the Trojan War. **Invidiā**: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332.

**91.** (**Palamēdēs**) **superīs concessit ab ōrīs** = *died*, used euphemistically for *was killed;* App. 423.

**93. mēcum** = **cum mē**: *privately, in secret;* App. 321.

**93–96. mē prōmīsī ultōrem**: *I promise myself* (*as*) *an avenger.*

**94. dēmēns**: "fool that I was." **sī qua fors** (**mē**) **tulisset** (**ad Argōs patriōs**).

**95. Argōs**: used for Greece; App. 443.

**96. verbīs** (**meīs**). **odia** (**Ulixis**).

**97. lābēs** (**mihi fuit**). **Ulixēs**: nom. subject of the hist. infinitives **terrēre, spargere, quaerere**; App. 277. **mihi**: dat. of reference; App. 301.

**98. terrēre** (**mē**). **vōcēs**: *rumors.*

**99. vulgum**: masc. acc., a rare form. **cōnscius** (**suī malī**): *conscious* (*of his guilt*). **arma** (**in mē**): an opportunity to use violence against me.

**100. Calchante ministrō**: abl. abs.; App. 343; for the aposiopesis, see the note on **Quōs ego**, I, 135, and compare App. 416. Sinon skillfully stops his narrative, just when he has aroused the curiosity of his audience to the highest pitch.

*sed quid ego haec* autem nēquīquam ingrāta revolvō,
*quidve* moror? *Sī omnīs ūnō* ordine *habētis* Achīvōs,
*idque audīre* sat *est*, jamdūdum sūmite *poenās:*
*hoc* Ithacus *velit et magnō* mercentur Atrīdae.'
*Tum* vērō *ardēmus* scītārī *et quaerere* causās,
ignārī scelerum *tantōrum* artis*que* Pelasgae.
Prōsequitur pavitāns *et* fictō *pectore fātur:*
'Saepe *fugam Danaī Trojā* cupiēre *relictā*
mōlīrī *et longō fessī* discēdere *bellō;*
*fēcissentque* utinam! Saepe *illōs* aspera pontī
interclūsit hiems *et* terruit Auster *euntīs.*
Praecipuē *cum jam hic* trabibus contextus acernīs

---

**acernus, a, um** (of) maple†
**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**ars, artis** *f.* art(istry), skill, cunning*
**asper, era, erum** harsh, rough, fierce*
**Atrīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaüs
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**autem** moreover, but, however†*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**contexō, ere, xuī, xtus** weave, construct†
**cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** desire, wish†
**discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart†
**fictus, a, um** feigned, false, pretended
**hiems, emis** *f.* winter; storm*
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, inexperienced*
**ingrātus, a, um** unpleasant, ungrateful†
**interclūdō, ere, sī, sus** shut off, hinder†
**Ithacus, a, um** Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses†
**jamdūdum** long since, at once
**mercor, ārī, ātus** buy, purchase, trade
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** undertake, do, make, build
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, linger; detain*
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly†*
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, array, rank, row*
**pavitō** (1) tremble, be afraid†
**Pelasgus, a, um** Pelasgian, Greek
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**praecipuē** especially, particularly
**prōsequor, ī, secūtus** proceed, follow†
**revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** (un)roll, revolve, tell†
**saepe** often, frequently*
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)†*
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**scītor, ārī, ātus** inquire, seek to know†
**sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take, exact†
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**trabs (trabēs), trabis** *f.* beam, timber
**utinam** O that! would that!
**vērō** truly, indeed, but

---

**101. ego:** observe the emphasis denoted by the pronoun as though to say "who am I to be telling you this?" See App 247. **haec (dicta vōbīs) ingrāta.**

**102. quid** (*why*) **(vōs) moror. Sī omnīs ūnō ordine habētis Achīvōs:** *if you consider all Greeks in the same class* (*as scoundrels*); abl. of manner; App. 328.

**103. id audīre = mē esse Danaum (Achīvum). sūmite poenās:** punishment was looked upon as a fine, which the inflictor *takes* and the sufferer *gives*. Hence **sūmere poenās** = *inflict* (literally *take*) *punishment*, while **dare poenās** = *suffer* (literally *give*) *punishment*.

**104. hoc:** pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c*. **Ithacus = Ulixēs. velit, mercentur:** subjunctives; apodosis (conclusion) of less vivid future with the protasis (condit. clause) omitted; App. 381. **magnō:** abl. of price, used substantively, *with a great* (*price*); App. 336. A clever suggestion; the Trojans would please their own bitterest foes, Ulysses and the sons of Atreus, if they should put Sinon to death.

**107.** (Sinōn) **prōsequitur. fictō pectore:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**108. Trojā:** pronounce **Trojjā**; App. 6, *b*; 15. **Trojā relictā:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **cupiēre = cupiērunt:** App. 204, 4.

**108–109. bellō:** abl. of means with **fessī**; App. 331. **fugam:** obj. of **mōlīrī = parāre magnō cum labōre.**

**110. fēcissent (id):** subj. in an unfulfilled wish (opt.); App. 253.

**111.** (illōs) **euntīs:** *trying to go*, a conative pres. part.; the storms prevented them as often as they tried to sail home; App. 351, 1, *e*.

**112. acernīs:** the horse is variously

*stāret equus, tōtō* sonuērunt aethere nimbī.
Suspēnsī Eurypylum scītātum ōrācula Phoebī
*mittimus, isque* adytīs *haec trīstia dicta* reportat:
"*Sanguine* plācāstis *ventōs et* virgine caesā,
*cum prīmum* Īliacās, *Danaī, vēnistis ad ōrās:*
*sanguine quaerendī* reditūs *animāque* litandum
Argolicā." Vulgī *quae vōx ut vēnit ad* aurīs,
obstipuēre *animī* gelidusque *per īma* cucurrit
ossa tremor, *cui fāta parent, quem* poscat Apollō.
*Hīc* Ithacus *vātem magnō* Calchanta tumultū

---

**adytum, ī** *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary†
**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy†*
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), slay†
**Calchās, antis** *m.* a famous Greek seer
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run, flow
**Eurypylus, ī** *m.* Greek leader†
**gelidus, a, um** icy, cold, chilly†
**Īliacus, a, um** Ilian, Trojan*
**Ithacus, a, um** Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses
**litō** (1) sacrificc (acccptably), appease†
**nimbus, ī** *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
**obstipēscō, ere, stipuī** be dazed, stand agape*
**ōrāculum, ī** *n.* oracle, prophecy†
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**plācō** (1) appease, propitiate, placate
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**reditus, ūs** *m.* return (home)
**reportō** (1) bring back, report†
**scītor, ārī, ātus** inquire, seek to know
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**suspēnsus, a, um** doubtful, anxious†
**tremor, ōris** *m.* trembling, shaking†
**tumultus, ūs** *m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub†
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
**vulgus, ī** *n.* (*m.*) crowd, rabble, herd

---

represented by Vergil; here it is of maple; in l. 16 it was of pine; in the later passages it is of oak. Instead of using the general word *wood*, the poet strives to employ specific terms, at the expense of consistency.

**113. stāret:** subj. with descriptive **cum**; App. 378. **tōtō aethere:** abl. of place where; App. 319.

**114. (nōs) suspēnsī. scītātum:** supine after a verb of motion to express purpose; App. 270. **ōrācula Phoebī:** apparently at Delphi, where the most famous oracle of Apollo was located. The next most important oracle was at Delos, Apollo's birthplace.

**115. (ex) adytīs (Phoebī).**

**116. plācā(vi)stis. virgine caesā:** this refers to the sacrifice of Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon, at Aulis, where the Greek fleet was detained by adverse winds on the eve of sailing for Troy. After Iphigenia had been sacrificed to Diana in obedience to the divine command, the gods sent favorable winds which wafted the Greek fleet straight to Troy. For a modern treatment of this story read Tennyson's *Dream of Fair Women.*

**118. sanguine:** cf. **sanguine** in l. 116, and for the rhetorical repetition known as *anaphora* see App. 413. **quaerendī (sunt nōbīs) reditūs, litandum (est nōbīs):** passive periphrastics denoting necessity; App. 199, *b*. Observe the shift from the personal (**quaerendī**) to the impersonal (**litandum**) construction. **reditūs:** poetic plural; App. 243. **animā:** abl. of means. **litandum (est):** *it must be sacrificed, sacrifice must be made.*

**119. quae vōx ut vēnit ad aurīs vulgī:** *as (when) this report had come to the ears of the rabble.* Observe the Latin use of the relative pronoun where English prefers the demonstrative.

**120. obstipuēre = obstipuērunt:** App. 204, 4. **per īma ossa:** *through the marrow;* literally *through the innermost (part of their) bones:* App. 246.

**121. cui fāta (tālem mortem) parent. parent, poscat:** subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349.

**122. vātem magnō Calchanta** (acc.) **tumultū:** interlocked order; App. 442.

prōtrahit *in mediōs; quae sint ea nūmina dīvum*
flāgitat. *Et mihi jam multī* crūdēle canēbant
artificis scelus, *et* tacitī ventūra *vidēbant.*
Bis quīnōs silet *ille diēs* tēctus*que* recūsat
prōdere *vōce suā* quemquam *aut* oppōnere *mortī.*
*Vix tandem, magnīs* Ithacī *clāmōribus āctus,*
compositō rumpit *vōcem et mē* dēstinat *ārae.*
Adsēnsēre *omnēs et, quae sibi* quisque timēbat,
*ūnius in miserī* exitium conversa *tulēre.*
*Jamque diēs* īnfanda *aderat; mihi sacra parārī*
*et* salsae frūgēs *et circum* tempora vittae.
*Ēripuī*, fateor, lētō *mē et* vincula rūpī,
līmōsō*que* lacū *per noctem* obscūrus *in* ulvā

**adsentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** assent, agree†
**artifex, ficis** *m.* contriver, plotter
**bis** twice*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), prophesy, proclaim, chant*
**compositum, ī** *n.* compact, agreement, prearrangement
**convertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bitter, bloody*
**dēstinō** (1) mark, intend, destine†
**exitium, (i)ī** *n.* destruction, ruin†
**fateor, ērī, fassus** confess, agree
**flāgitō** (1) demand (urgently), importune†
**frūx, frūgis** *f.* fruit, grain, meal
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, accursed
**Ithacus, a, um** Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses
**lacus, ūs** *m.* lake, marsh, mere†
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin†*
**līmōsus, a, um** muddy, slimy, miry†
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, hidden, obscure*
**oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus** oppose, expose†
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditus** hand over, betray
**prōtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus** drag (forth)†
**quīni, ae, a** five (each), by fives†
**quisquam, quaequam, quicquam** any(one, thing)
**quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque)** each, every (one)†
**recūsō** (1) refuse, decline, object†
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth), utter†*
**salsus, a, um** salted, salty, briny†
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**sileō, ēre, uī** be silent, be still, hush
**tacitus, a, um** silent, peaceful, quiet
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, hide†*
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread, be anxious*
**ulva, ae** *f.* sedge, marsh grass†
**ventūrum, ī** *n.* the future, what is (was) to come
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, chain, cable*
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, garland, band†*

**123. prōtrahit:** Sinon represents Calchas as pretending to be unwilling. **in (nōs) mediōs:** *into our midst;* App. 246. **sint:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **dīv(ōr)um.**

**124. mihi:** *for me;* App. 301. **mihi jam multī:** alliteration; App. 411.

**125. artificis** = **Ulixis. tacitī:** through fear of Ulysses. **ventūra:** substantively, "what was coming."

**126. quīnōs:** the distributive numeral for the cardinal, **quīnque,** as is usual with adverbs of multiplication, as **bis.** Cf. I, 381, note. **ille** = **Calchās. tēctus:** *in his tent.*

**127. oppōnere (quemquam) mortī.**

**129. (ex, dē) compositō (cum Ulixe). ārae:** dat. **rumpit vōcem:** cognate acc., *he breaks (into) speech* = *he speaks;* or the verb is used in a causative sense, *he causes his voice to break (forth);* App. 313, 307.

**130. Adsēnsēre** = **adsēnsērunt.**

**130–131. et (fāta Danaī) tulēre** ( = **tulērunt):** the Greeks were content to let Sinon suffer.

**131. ūnius in miserī exitium conversa:** (*when*) *turned to the destruction of one poor wretch.*

**132. parārī:** hist. inf.; App. 257.

**133. salsae frūgēs:** *salted meal,* sprinkled on the victim's head, as a preparation for sacrifice. **(mea) tempora. vittae:** *fillets,* regularly bound on the heads of sacrificial victims.

**134. Ēripuī mē lētō:** dat. or abl. of separation; App. 305, 340. **fateor:** as a victim devoted to the gods, it was sac-

dēlituī *dum vēla darent, sī forte dedissent.*
*Nec mihi jam* patriam *antīquam* spēs *ūlla videndī,*
*nec* dulcīs *nātōs* exoptātum*que parentem,*
*quōs illī fors et poenās ob nostra* reposcent
effugia, *et* culpam *hanc miserōrum morte* piābunt.
Quod *tē per superōs et* cōnscia *nūmina* vērī,
*per sī qua est quae* restet adhūc mortālibus ūsquam
intemerāta fidēs, ōrō, miserēre *labōrum*
*tantōrum,* miserēre *animī nōn* digna *ferentis.'*
*Hīc lacrimīs vītam damus et* miserēscimus ultrō.
*Ipse virō prīmus* manicās *atque* arta levārī
vincla *jubet Priamus dictīsque* ita *fātur* amīcīs:
'Quisquis *es* (āmissōs *hinc jam* oblīvīscere Grajōs)
*noster eris; mihique haec* ēdissere vēra rogantī:

---

**adhūc** still, as yet, up to this point
**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)†*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** lose, let go*
**artus, a, um** close, tight, narrow*
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious, aware
**culpa, ae** *f.* fault, blame, guilt, sin†
**dēlitēscō, ere, lituī** hide, skulk, lurk†
**dignus, a, um** worthy, fitting, deserved
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**ēdisserō, ere, uī, rtus** tell, set forth†
**effugium, (i)ī** *n.* flight, escape†
**exoptō** (1) desire, long for, crave†
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, fidelity, trust(worthiness), reliance*
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**intemerātus, a, um** inviolate, pure†
**ita** thus, so†
**levō** (1) lift, relieve, lighten, remove
**manicae, ārum** *f.* handcuff, bond, manacle†
**misereor, ērī, itus** pity, commiserate (*gen.*)†
**miserēscō, ere** pity, commiserate†
**mortālis, e** mortal, human, earthly*
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen., acc.*)†
**ōrō** (1) beseech, entreat, pray (for)*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**piō** (1) appease, expiate, atone for†
**quisquis, quaequae, quidquid** whoever, whatever
**quod** because, but, therefore†
**reposcō, ere** demand, seek, claim†
**restō, āre, stitī** remain, be left
**rogō** (1) ask, seek, request, beg†
**spēs, speī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**ultrō** further, voluntarily*
**ūsquam** anywhere, ever
**vērum, ī** *n.* truth, right, reality†
**vērus, a, um** true, real, honest*
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, chain, cable*

---

relegc for Sinon to escape and thus thwart the divine will.

**136.** **dum (Danaī) vēla darent; (vēla) dedissent:** subjunctives of anticipation; App. 374.

**137.** **mihi:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **spēs ūlla (est). patriam:** obj. of **videndī,** the gen. of the gerund.

**138.** **nātōs:** inconsistent with **prīmīs ab annīs,** l. 87; but great poets such as Vergil and big liars such as Sinon rarely worry over logical consistency.

**139.** **quōs poenās:** with **reposcent,** which takes two accusatives; App. 316. In English we should say *demand punishment of them.* **illī (Danaī). fors et** = **forsitan,** *perhaps.*

**140.** **(meam) culpam. (illōrum) miserōrum.**

**141–143.** **tē** (= **Priamum**) **ōrō.**

**142–143.** **per (intemerātam fidem), sī est (ali)qua intemerāta fidēs quae restet. quae restet:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

**143–144.** **miserēre (meōrum) labōrum, miserēre (meī) animī:** rhetorical repetition of the deponent imperative **miserēre** which governs the genitives, **labōrum** and **animī;** App. 289, 413.

**144.** **digna:** substantively, object of **ferentis.**

**145.** **miserēscimus (Sinōnem).**

**146.** **virō:** dat of reference; App. 301.

**147.** **dictīs:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**148.** **oblīvīscere:** imp. **Grajōs:** pronounce **Grajjōs;** App. 6, *b*; 15; the acc. instead of the gen. commonly used with **oblīvīscor;** App. 288, *a.*

**148–149.** **Quisquis es, noster eris:** said to be the technical formula used by a Roman general when receiving a deserter from the enemy.

*quō* mōlem *hanc immānis equī* statuēre? *Quis* auctor?
*Quidve petunt? Quae* relligiō? *Aut quae* māchina *bellī?'*
*Dīxerat. Ille* dolīs īnstrūctus *et* arte Pelasgā
*sustulit* exūtās vinclīs *ad sīdera* palmās:
'*Vōs* aeternī *ignēs, et nōn* violābile vestrum
testor *nūmen,' ait, 'vōs ārae* ēnsēs*que* nefandī,
*quōs fūgī,* vittae*que deum, quās* hostia gessī:
fās *mihi* Grajōrum sacrāta resolvere jūra,
fās ōdisse *virōs atque omnia ferre sub aurās,*
*sī qua* tegunt; *teneor* patriae *nec* lēgibus *ūllīs.*
*Tū* modo prōmissīs *maneās servātaque servēs*
*Troja* fidem, *sī* vēra *feram, sī magna* rependam.
*Omnis* spēs *Danaum et* coeptī fīdūcia *bellī*
Palladis auxiliīs semper *stetit.* Impius *ex quō*

---

**aeternus, a, um** eternal, undying*
**ars, artis** *f.* art(istry), cunning, skill*
**auctor, ōris** *m.* author, maker, originator†
**auxilium,** (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
**coepī, isse, ptus** begin, commence
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife†*
**exuō, ere, uī, ūtus** strip, free, doff
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, fidelity, trustworthiness, reliance*
**fīdūcia, ae** *f.* confidence, reliance, trust
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** bear, wear*
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**hostia, ae** *f.* (sacrificial) victim
**impius, a, um** impious, disloyal, wicked
**īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** instruct, construct, build, arrange
**jūs, jūris** *n.* law, right, oath, justice
**lēx, lēgis** *f.* law, decree, regulation
**māchina, ae** *f.* machine, engine, device
**modo** only, (just) now
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, structure, burden*
**nefandus, a, um** unutterable, accursed
**ōdī, isse** hate, loathe, detest†
**Pallas, adis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**Pelasgus, a, um** Pelasgian, Greek
**prōmissum, ī** *n.* promise, agreement
**re(l)ligiō, ōnis** *f.* religion, offering†
**rependō, ere, ī, pēnsus** repay, requite
**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** break, free†
**sacrō** (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
**semper** always, ever*
**spēs, speī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** set up, establish
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, hide*
**testor, ārī, ātus** (call to) witness, invoke†
**vērum, ī** *n.* truth, right, reality
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, chain, cable*
**violābilis, e** violable, to be violated†
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, garland, band*

---

**150. quō:** *for what purpose?* **statuēre** = **statuērunt (Danaī). quis (fuit) auctor.**

**151. quae (est), quae (est).** Sinon had, of course, been waiting for just such questions.

**152. dīxerat (Priamus). ille (Sinōn).**

**153. vinclīs:** abl. of separation; App. 340; the form **vinculīs** ( - ˘ - ) can not be used in hexameter.

**154. aeternī ignēs = sīdera,** although it is broad daylight. **nōn violābile** = *inviolable; not to be desecrated* (by perjury).

**156. de(ōr)um. hostia:** (*as*) *a sacrificial victim.* Sinon swears by all that is good and holy, that he may gain greater credence for the lies he is planning to tell.

**157–158. fās (est), fās (est):** rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

**158. sub aurās** = *into the light of day.*

**159. sī qua (Danaī) tegunt:** the use of the indicative would imply that there *are* secrets to disclose. **nec teneor patriae lēgibus ūllīs.**

**160.** (in) **prōmissīs:** abl. of place where; App. 319. **maneās, servēs:** vol. subj.; App. 254.

**161. Troja:** vocative. **magna (praemia):** *rich returns.*

**162. Dana(ōr)um. bellī:** obj. gen.; App. 284.

**163. auxiliīs:** abl. of means or place;

Tȳdīdēs *sed* enim scelerum*que* inventor Ulixēs
fātāle adgressī sacrātō āvellere templō
Palladium caesīs *summae* custōdibus *arcis*
corripuēre *sacram* effigiem *manibusque* cruentīs
virgineās ausī *dīvae* contingere vittās:
*ex illō* fluere *ac* retrō sublāpsa *referrī*
spēs *Danaum*, frāctae *vīrēs*, āversa *deae mēns*.
*Nec* dubiīs *ea* signa *dedit* Trītōnia mōnstrīs.
*Vix positum* castrīs simulācrum: *arsēre* coruscae
*lūminibus flammae* arrēctīs, salsus*que per* artūs
sūdor *iit*, ter*que ipsa* solō (mīrābile *dictū*)
ēmicuit parmam*que ferēns* hastam*que* trementem.

**adgredior, ī, gressus** attack, undertake†
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, arouse
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, body*
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear away†
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus,** turn away, avert*
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment*
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch; befall*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**coruscus, a, um** flashing, bright, quivering
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, cruel
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**dubius, a, um** doubtful, uncertain
**effigiēs, ēī** *f.* image, statue, effigy†
**ēmicō, āre, uī** flash forth, dash forth†
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**fātālis, e** fatal, fated, fateful†
**fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow, ebb, vanish
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter*
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear, dart, lance
**inventor, ōris** *m.* inventor, contriver†
**mīrābilis, e** wonderful, marvelous
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* prodigy, omen, portent†*
**Palladium, (ī)i** *n.* statue of Pallas†
**parma, ae** *f.* shield, buckler†
**retrō** back, backward†
**sacrō** (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
**salsus, a, um** salted, salty, briny
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, mark, token, signal*
**simulācrum, ī** *n.* image, statue, likeness†
**solum, ī** *n.* soil, ground, earth*
**spēs, speī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**sublābor, ī, lāpsus** slip down, fall†
**sūdor, ōris** *m.* sweat, perspiration†
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**ter** thrice, three times*
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**Trītōnia, ae** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†
**Tȳdīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, a Greek leader
**Ulixēs, is (eī, ī)** *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**virgineus, a, um** maidenly, pure†
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, garland, band*

App. 331, 319. **ex quō (tempore)**: correlative with **ex illō (tempore)** in l. 169.

**165. templō**: abl. of separation; App. 320, 340.

**165–166. fātāle Palladium**: the oracle had proclaimed that Troy was fated to be impregnable so long as the image of Pallas (the Palladium) remained in the citadel of Troy. Ulysses and Diomedes disguised themselves, entered the citadel, and succeeded in carrying off the image to the Greek camp.

**166. caesīs custōdibus**: abl. abs.; App. 343.

**167. corripuēre = corripuērunt**; App. 204, 4.

**168. ausī (sunt). vittās**: fillets were commonly worn by images of the gods, by their representatives (priests and priestesses), and by sacrificial victims, such as Sinon (l. 133). **dīvae**: *Minerva's*.

**169. ex illō (tempore)**: correlative with **ex quō (tempore)**, l. 163. **fluere, referrī**: historical infinitives; App. 257.

**170. frāctae (sunt) vīrēs, āversa (est) deae mēns.**

**171. ea signa**: perhaps here for **ejus reī signa**, a common usage; i.e., signs of her anger.

**172. positum (erat in) castrīs (Danaōrum). arsēre = arsērunt**; App. 204, 4.

**173. lūminibus (= oculīs) arrēctīs (īrā). lūminibus**: abl. of separation; App. 340.

**174. ipsa (dea)**: the image itself, i.e., without external aid. **(ā) solō**: abl. of separation; App. 340. **mīrābile dictū**: App. 271, 325.

Extemplō temptanda *fugā* canit *aequora* Calchās,
*nec posse* Argolicīs exscindī Pergama *tēlīs*
ōmina nī repetant Argīs *nūmenque* redūcant
*quod pelagō et* curvīs *sēcum* āvēxēre carīnīs.
*Et nunc quod patriās ventō petiēre* Mycēnās,
*arma deōsque parant comitēs pelagōque* remēnsō
improvīsī *aderunt.* Ita dīgerit ōmina Calchās.
*Hanc* prō Palladiō monitī, prō *nūmine* laesō
effigiem statuēre, nefās *quae trīste* piāret.
*Hanc* tamen immēnsam Calchās attollere mōlem
rōboribus textīs *caelōque* ēdūcere *jussit,*
*nē* recipī portīs *aut dūcī in moenia posset,*

**Argī, ōrum** *m.* Argos, a city of southern Greece; Greece
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**attollō, ere** lift, raise, rear*
**āvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry away; convey
**Calchās, antis** *m.* a famous Greek seer
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), proclaim, prophesy, chant*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel, ship*
**curvus, a, um** curved, bent, winding*
**dīgerō, ere, gessī, gestus** distribute; explain†
**ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw out, erect
**effigiēs, ēī** *f.* image, statue, effigy
**exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus** cut out, destroy†
**extemplō** immediately, at once, suddenly
**immēnsus, a, um** immense, immeasurable†
**improvīsus, a, um** unforeseen, sudden
**ita** thus, so
**laedō, ere, sī, sus** hurt, offend, strike
**mōlēs, is** *f.* mass, structure, burden*
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** warn, advise†
**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* a Greek city
**nefās** *n. indecl.* guilt, impiety†*
**nisi, nī** unless, if not*
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, sign, portent*
**Palladium, (i)ī** *n.* statue of Pallas
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**piō** (1) appease, expiate, atone for
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**prō** before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)*
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, accept*
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead back, bring back, restore
**remētior, īrī, mēnsus** remeasure, recross†
**repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** reseek, repeat
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength†*
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** set up, establish
**tamen** nevertheless, however, but*
**temptō** (1) try, test, seek, examine*
**texō, ere, xuī, xtus** weave, cover†

**176–177. temptanda** (esse) **aequora, posse:** indir. disc. with **canit;** App. 263.

**178. repetant** (ex) **Argīs, redūcant:** subjunctives in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, *b*. This refers to a Roman custom. If a general met with bad luck on an expedition, he returned to Rome to obtain new auspices (**ōmina repetere**).

**179. quod:** refers to **nūmen,** *the divine favor* which they had brought with them when they came from Greece. **sēcum = cum sē;** App. 321, *a*. **curvīs carīnīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **pelagō:** *by sea,* abl. of the route; App. 338. **āvēxēre = āvēxērunt.**

**180. ventō:** abl. of means; App. 331. **petiēre = petīvērunt.**

**181. arma** (nova). **pelagō remēnsō:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **remēnsō:** with passive force, although a deponent verb.

**182. ita:** refers to ll. 176–179, the following sentence being thrown in parenthetically by Sinon as representing his own view.

**183.** (Danaī) **monitī:** by the prodigies and their interpretation by Calchas, ll. 172–179.

**184. statuēre = statuērunt. nefās:** the theft of the Palladium by Ulysses and Diomedes, ll. 164–168. **piāret:** rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

**185. immēnsam:** pred. acc.; the Greeks were to build the image so large that the Trojans would not be able to take it into the city and thus secure its protecting power for themselves.

**186. rōboribus:** abl. of material; App. 324. See the note on **acernīs,** l. 112. **caelō:** dat. of direction; App. 306.

**187. nē posset:** negative purpose; App. 359.

neu populum *antīquā sub* relligiōne tuērī.
*Nam sī* vestra *manus* violāsset *dōna* Minervae,
*tum magnum* exitium (*quod dī* prius ōmen *in ipsum*
convertant!) *Priamī imperiō* Phrygibus*que futūrum;*
sīn *manibus* vestrīs vestram ascendisset *in urbem,*
ultrō Asiam *magnō* Pelopēa *ad moenia bellō*
*ventūram et nostrōs ea fāta manēre* nepōtēs.'
*Tālibus* īnsidiīs perjūrī*que* arte Sinōnis
crēdita *rēs, captīque* dolīs *lacrimīsque* coāctīs
*quōs neque* Tȳdīdēs *nec* Lārīsaeus Achillēs,
*nōn* annī domuēre decem, *nōn* mīlle carīnae.
*Hīc aliud majus miserīs multōque* tremendum
objicitur magis *atque* imprōvida *pectora* turbat.

**Achillēs, is** (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**ars, artis** *f.* art(istry), cunning, skill*
**a(d)scendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** ascend, mount
**Asia, ae** *f.* Asia (Minor)
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel, ship*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** force, compel*
**convertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**decem** ten†
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
**domō, āre, uī, itus** subdue, crush†
**exitium, (i)ī** *n.* destruction, ruin
**imprōvidus, a, um** unforeseeing, heedless†
**īnsidiae, ārum** *f.* ambush, snare, treachery
**Lārīs(s)aeus, a, um** Larissaean, of Larissa, a city of northern Greece†
**magis** more, rather*
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**Minerva, ae** *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant†*
**nēve, neu** nor, neither, or lest
**objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** present, place before†
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, sign, portent*
**Pelopēus, a, um** of Pelops, legendary Greek king for whom the Peloponnesus was named; Greek†
**perjūrus, a, um** perjured, treacherous†
**Phryx, Phrygis** *m.* Phrygian, Trojan
**populus, ī** *m.* people, race, nation*
**prius** sooner, before
**re(l)ligiō, ōnis** *f.* religion, offering
**sīn** but if, if, however
**Sinōn, ōnis** *m.* a lying Greek
**tremendus, a, um** terrible, dreadful
**tueor, ērī, itus** (**tūtus**) watch, protect*
**turbō** (1) confuse, agitate, disturb*
**Tȳdīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes, a Greek leader
**ultrō** voluntarily, further*
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**violō** (1) violate, outrage, profane†

**188. antīquā sub re(l)ligiōne:** *under shelter of their ancient faith.* The horse if taken into the city would serve the purpose of the stolen Palladium in protecting Troy. **neu (haec effigiēs posset) tuērī populum (Trojae).**

**189. sī violāsset:** subj. in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, *b*. **Minervae:** obj. gen.; App. 284.

**190. ipsum (Calchanta).**

**190–191. exitium futūrum (esse):** inf. in indir. disc., quoting Calchas's supposed statement; App. 263.

**191. convertant:** opt. subj.; App. 253.

**192. sīn ascendisset (ille equus):** subj. in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; cf. **violāsset** in l. 189; App. 390, *b*.

**193. Asiam: Trojam. Pelopēa:** the Greek leaders, Agamemnon and Menelaüs, were descendants of Pelops.

**194. ventūram (esse), manēre:** indir. disc.; App. 263. **nepōtēs:** obj. of **manēre.**

**196. crēdita (est), captīque (sumus). rēs:** the story of Sinon.

**197. neque Tȳdīdēs (domuit) nec Achillēs (domuit).**

**198. domuēre = domuērunt.**

**199–227. As a punishment for Laocoön, who had struck the wooden horse with his spear, Minerva sends two horrible serpents which destroy him and his two little sons.**

**199–200. Hīc aliud** (*another omen*) **majus multōque magis tremendum objici-**



*Corcoran Gallery of Art* — *Henri Paul Motte*

THE TROJAN HORSE



*Alinari, Rome* *Vatican Museum*

LAOCOÖN AND HIS SONS

Lāocoōn, *ductus* Neptūnō sorte sacerdōs,
sollemnīs taurum *ingentem* mactābat *ad ārās*.
Ecce autem *geminī ā* Tenedō tranquilla *per* alta
(horrēscō *referēns*) immēnsīs orbibus anguēs
incumbunt *pelagō* pariter*que ad lītora tendunt;*
*pectora quōrum inter flūctūs* arrēcta jubae*que*
sanguineae superant *undās; pars* cētera pontum
pōne legit sinuat*que* immēnsa volūmine terga.
Fit sonitus spūmante salō; *jamque arva tenēbant*
*ardentīsque oculōs* suffectī *sanguine et ignī*
sībila lambēbant linguīs vibrantibus *ōra*.
Diffugimus vīsū exsanguēs. *Illī agmine* certō
Lāocoönta *petunt; et prīmum* parva duōrum
*corpora nātōrum* serpēns amplexus uterque

---

**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold†*
**anguis, is** *m.* (*f.*) snake, serpent†
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, rear
**autem** moreover, but, however*
**certus, a, um** sure, fixed, certain, reliable*
**cēterus, a, um** rest, remaining, other
**diffugiō, ere, fūgī** flee apart, scatter†
**duo, ae, o** two†*
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**exsanguis, e** bloodless, lifeless, pale†
**fīō, fierī, factus** become, arise
**horrēscō, ere, horruī** shudder, tremble†
**immēnsus, a, um** immense, immeasurable
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** lean upon, overhang, lower (over) (*dat.*)
**juba, ae** *f.* mane, crest†
**lambō, ere** lick, lap†
**Lāocoōn, ontis** *m.* Trojan priest of Neptune
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose; skim*
**lingua, ae** *f.* tongue, language†
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor†
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, fold, coil; earth*
**pariter** equally, side by side*
**parvus, a, um** small, little†*
**pōne** behind, after†
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**sacerdōs, dōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**salum, ī** *n.* (the salt) sea, brine
**sanguineus, a, um** bloody, blood-red†
**serpēns, entis** *m.* (*f.*) serpent, snake†
**sībilus, a, um** hissing, whirring†
**sinuō** (1) fold, curve, twist, wind†
**sollemnis, e** annual, customary, solemn†
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, noise, crash†*
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, fate, destiny, oracle*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** supply, suffuse†
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
**Tenedos, ī** *f.* small island near Troy
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, body, rear*
**tranquillus, a, um** tranquil, calm†
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each, both*
**vibrō** (1) quiver, vibrate, dart†
**vīsus, ūs** *m.* sight, view, vision, aspect†
**volūmen, inis** *n.* fold, coil, roll†

---

**tur (nōbīs) miserīs. majus:** pronounce **majjus**; App. 6, *b*.

**201. Neptūnō:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **ductus sorte:** *drawn (chosen) by lot.*

**203–204. autem ecce geminī anguēs immēnsibus orbibus — horrēscō (haec dicta) referēns — (venientēs) ā Tenedō:** symbolizing the later coming of the Greek ships from Tenedos, bringing destruction with them. **immēnsibus orbibus:** abl. of quality or manner; App. 330, 328.

**205. pelagō:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**208. volūmine:** abl. of manner or respect; App. 328, 325.

**209. spūmante salō:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**210. oculōs:** obj. of the middle participle **suffectī**; App. 309, *a*.

**212. vīsū:** abl. of cause with **exsanguēs**; App. 332.

**213. Lāocoönta:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

implicat *et miserōs* morsū dēpascitur artūs;
post *ipsum* auxiliō *subeuntem ac tēla ferentem*
corripiunt spīrīs*que* ligant *ingentibus; et jam*
bis *medium* amplexī, bis collō squāmea *circum*
terga *datī* superant *capite et* cervīcibus *altīs.*
*Ille simul manibus tendit* dīvellere nōdōs
perfūsus saniē vittās *ātrōque* venēnō,
*clāmōrēs simul* horrendōs *ad sīdera tollit:*
quālis mūgītus, *fūgit cum* saucius *āram*
taurus *et* incertam excussit cervīce secūrim.
*At geminī* lāpsū dēlūbra *ad summa* dracōnēs
effugiunt saevae*que petunt* Trītōnidis *arcem,*
*sub pedibusque deae* clipeī*que sub* orbe teguntur.
*Tum* vērō tremefacta *novus per pectora cūnctīs*

**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold*
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, body*
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* help, aid, assistance*
**bis** twice*
**cervīx, īcis** *f.* neck
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler†*
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** seize, snatch up*
**dēlūbrum, ī** *n.* shrine, temple, fane†
**dēpascor, ī, pāstus** feed on, devour†
**dīvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear apart†
**dracō, ōnis** *m.* dragon, serpent†
**effugiō, ere, fūgī** flee, escape†
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake off*
**horrendus, a, um** horrible, horrifying*
**implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus)** entwine
**incertus, a, um** uncertain, ill-aimed
**lāpsus, ūs** *m.* gliding, rolling, sinking†
**ligō** (1) bind, tie, fasten†
**morsus, ūs** *m.* bite, biting, jaws, fangs
**mūgītus, ūs** *m.* bellow(ing), roar†
**nōdus, ī** *m.* knot; fold, coil
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, fold, coil; earth*
**perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** soak, drench†
**post** after(ward); behind (*acc.*)*
**quālis, e** (such) as, of what sort*
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**saniēs, ēī** *f.* blood, gore†
**saucius, a, um** wounded, stricken†
**secūris, is** *f.* ax†
**spīra, ae** *f.* fold, coil, spire†
**squāmeus, a, um** scaly†
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, hide*
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, body, rear*
**tremefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus** make tremble, appall, alarm†
**Trītōnis, idis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†
**venēnum, ī** *n.* poison, venom, drug
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, garland, band*

**216. post:** *afterward*, adv. **ipsum (Lāocoönta). auxiliō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303.

**218. circum:** with **datī** = **circumdatī**, *placed around;* App. 445. **medium (illum** = **Lāocoönta). collō:** dat. with the compound **circumdatī**; App. 298.

**219. terga:** obj. of the middle part. **datī**, *having placed;* App. 309, *a*. **superant (illum** = **Lāocoönta). capite:** for **capitibus**, which could not be used in dactylic verse because of its three successive short syllables; abl. of means or degree of difference; App. 331, 335.

**220. Ille: Lāocoōn.**

**221. vittās:** acc. with **perfūsus**, a middle part. or acc. of respect; App. 309, *a*; 311.

**223. (tālis est mūgītus Lāocoöntis) quālis (est) mūgītus (taurī);** a simile; App. 441.

**224. (ā) cervīce.**

**225. lāpsū:** *with a gliding (movement)*; abl. of manner; App. 328. **dēlūbra summa** = **dēlūbra arcis Trojae**, where the temple of Minerva stood, l. 226.

**226. saevae:** *angry, hostile (to the Trojans)*.

**227. deae** = the statue of the goddess. **teguntur:** a middle use = **sē tegunt**; App. 309. Many statues of Minerva show a snake at her feet, which may have given rise to this feature of the story.

**228–249. Partly induced by the lying speech of Sinon and partly frightened by**

īnsinuat pavor, *et* scelus expendisse merentem
Lāocoönta *ferunt, sacrum quī* cuspide rōbur
laeserit *et* tergō scelerātam intorserit hastam.
*Dūcendum ad sēdēs* simulācrum ōrandaque *dīvae*
*nūmina* conclāmant.
Dīvidimus mūrōs *et moenia* pandimus *urbis*.
Accingunt *omnēs* operī *pedibusque* rotārum
subjiciunt lāpsūs, *et* stuppea vincula collō
intendunt: scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs
fēta *armīs*. *Puerī circum* innūptaeque puellae
*sacra* canunt fūnemque *manū* contingere gaudent:
*illa subit mediaeque* mināns inlābitur *urbī*.
*Ō* patria, *Ō dīvum domus* Īlium *et* incluta *bellō*

**accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird (on), equip
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant*
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**conclāmō** (1) cry, shout, exclaim†
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, befall*
**cuspis, pidis** *f.* point, spear, lance
**dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus** divide, separate
**expendō, ere, ī, pēnsus** expiate, pay (for)†
**fātālis, e** fatal, deadly, fated, fateful
**fētus, a, um** teeming, pregnant, filled
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cable†
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear, dart, lance
**Īlium, (i)ī** *n.* Ilium, Troy
**inclutus, a, um** famous, renowned
**inlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide in(to) (*dat.*)†
**innūptus, a, um** unmarried, virgin
**īnsinuō** (1) wind, creep, coil†
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, extend†
**intorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** hurl (against) (*dat.*)†
**laedō, ere, ī, sus** strike, hurt, offend
**Lāocoōn, ontis** *m.* Trojan priest of Neptune
**lāpsus, ūs** *m.* gliding, rolling, sinking
**māchina, ae** *f.* machine, engine, device
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, merit, earn†*
**minor, ārī, ātus** tower; threaten (*dat.*)
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**opus, eris** *n.* work, task, deed, labor*
**ōrō** (1) entreat, pray (for), beseech*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread, open, loosen*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**pavor, ōris** *m.* terror, shuddering, alarm†
**puella, ae** *f.* girl†
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength*
**rota, ae** *f.* wheel
**scandō, ere, ī, scānsus** mount, climb†
**scelerātus, a, um** criminal, wicked†
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, impiety, sin*
**simulācrum, ī** *n.* image, statue, likeness
**stuppeus, a, um** hempen, (of) tow†
**subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place under (*dat.*)
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, body, rear*
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* chain, bond, cable*

**the portentous death of Laocoön, the Trojans make a breach in the walls of the city, drag the horse inside, and hold high carnival as a thanksgiving to the gods for the preservation of their city.**

**228. cūnctīs**: dat. of reference; App. 301.

**229–230. īnsinuat (sē). expendisse**: indir. disc. with **ferunt**, *say;* App. 263.

**231. laeserit, intorserit**: causal relative clause, or characteristic, with causal force; App. 389. **tergō**: dat. with compound; App. 298.

**232. Dūcendum (esse), ōranda (esse). ad sēdēs (deōrum) = ad dēlūbra summa,** l. 225 = **arcem. dīvae (Minervae).**

**234.** For the unfinished line, see the note on I, 534.

**235. omnēs (sē) accingunt operī. operī**: dat. of purpose; App. 303. **rotārum lāpsūs**: *rollings* (*glidings*) *of wheels = rolling wheels;* App. 425. **pedibus (equī)**: dat. with compound.

**236.** (**ā**) **collō**: App. 340; or dat. with a compound; App. 298.

**238. armīs**: abl. with **fēta**; App. 337. **circum (equum).**

**239. sacra (carmina)**: *sacred songs.*

**240. illa (māchina) = equus. urbī**: dat. with compound; App. 298.

**241. dīv(ōr)um domus**: in apposition with **Īlium.** Note the apostrophe and personification; App. 417, 437.

*moenia* Dardanidum! quater *ipsō in līmine* portae
substitit *atque* uterō sonitum quater *arma dedēre;*
īnstāmus tamen immemorēs caecī*que* furōre
*et* mōnstrum *īnfēlīx* sacrātā sistimus *arce.*
*Tunc* etiam *fātīs* aperit Cassandra *futūrīs*
*ōra deī* jussū *nōn* umquam crēdita *Teucrīs.*
*Nōs* dēlūbra *deum miserī, quibus* ultimus *esset*
*ille diēs,* fēstā vēlāmus fronde *per urbem.*
Vertitur intereā *caelum et ruit* Ōceanō *nox*
involvēns *umbrā magnā terramque* polum*que*
Myrmidonum*que* dolōs; *fūsī per moenia Teucrī*
conticuēre; sopor *fessōs* complectitur artūs.

**aperiō, īre, uī, rtus** open, disclose*
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, body*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**Cassandra, ae** *f.* Trojan prophetess, never believed†
**complector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold
**conticēscō, ere, ticuī** become silent, hush
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
**dēlūbrum, ī** *n.* shrine, temple, fane
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**fēstus, a, um** festal, festive†
**frōns, frondis** *f.* branch, foliage†*
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
**immemor, oris** unmindful, heedless†
**īnstō, āre, stitī** press on, pursue
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**involvō, ere, ī, volūtus** wrap, envelop†
**jussus, ūs** *m.* command, order, behest†
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* omen, portent, monster*
**Myrmidones, um** *m.* Greeks of Thessaly, subjects of Achilles
**Ōceanus, ī** *m.* ocean
**polus, ī** *m.* pole; heavens, sky
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**quater** four times
**sacrō** (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** stand, stop, stay†
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise
**sopor, ōris** *m.* sleep, slumber†
**subsistō, ere, stitī** stop, halt, resist†
**tamen** nevertheless, however, but*
**ultimus, a, um** last, final, farthest†*
**umquam** ever, at any time
**uterus, ī** *m.* belly, womb
**vēlō** (1) veil, cover, deck, clothe†
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, revolve, change*

**242. Dardanid(ār)um:** App. 34, *b.* **in līmine:** to stop or stumble on the threshold was considered a bad omen and sure to bring misfortune.

**243. (ab) uterō:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **dedēre = dedērunt:** App. 204, 4.

**245. (in) sacrātā arce:** as containing the temple and statues of the gods; abl. of place where; App. 319, *b.*

**246. fātīs futūrīs:** abl. of means or dat. of purpose; App. 331, 303.

**247. deī:** Apollo. **nōn crēdita:** Cassandra had been beloved of Apollo, who had granted her the gift of prophecy. Because she finally played him false, Apollo placed upon her the necessity of forever prophesying and of never being believed. Even today such a prophet is often called a Cassandra. **Teucrīs:** dat. of agent; App. 302.

**248. quibus esset:** adversative rel. clause or characteristic with accessory notion of cause; App. 388, 389.

**248–249. Nōs:** emphatic; App. 247. **Nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs esset ultimus, vēlāmus dēlūbra de(ōr)um.**

**250–267. That night, while the Trojans sleep, the Greeks return from Tenedos and enter the city through the breach made by the Trojans to introduce the horse. Sinon opens the fastenings of the horse, releasing the Greek warriors, who open the gates of Troy and join their forces with the troops from the ships and proceed to lay waste the city with fire and sword.**

**250. Vertitur caelum:** The ancients believed that the earth remained stationary, while the heavens, including sun, moon, and stars, revolved around it. **(ex) Ōceanō:** night was conceived as "rising" from the ocean as the sun sank into it.

**252. fūsī per moenia:** thus scattered and disorganized the Trojans were later unable to oppose the attacking Greeks.

**253. conticuēre = conticuērunt.**



*Gramstorff Bros.* *Rossetti*

CASSANDRA, THE PROPHETESS, ON THE WALLS OF TROY

This Trojan princess was granted the gift of prophecy by Apollo, who later as punishment decreed that no one should believe her. Behind her a warrior buckles on his greaves. Priam and Hecuba in the background.



*Alinari, Rome* *Vatican Museum*

MINERVA

On her breast is the Medusa and coiling at her feet the serpent.

*Et jam* Argīva phalānx īnstrūctīs *nāvibus ībat*
*ā* Tenedō tacitae *per* amīca silentia lūnae
*lītora* nōta *petēns, flammās cum* rēgia *puppis*
extulerat, *fātīsque deum* dēfēnsus inīquīs
inclūsōs uterō *Danaōs et* pīnea fūrtim
laxat claustra Sinōn. *Illōs* patefactus *ad aurās*
reddit *equus, laetīque* cavō *sē* rōbore prōmunt
Thessandrus Sthenelus*que* ducēs *et* dīrus Ulixēs,
dēmissum *lāpsī per* fūnem, Acamās*que* Thoās*que*
Pēlīdēs*que* Neoptolemus *prīmusque* Machāōn
*et* Menelāus *et ipse* dolī fabricātor Epēos.

**Acamās, antis** *m.* Greek leader†
**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)*
**Argīvus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**claustra, ōrum** *n.* barrier, bar, bolt
**dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus** ward off, protect†
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let down, drop*
**dīrus, a, um** dire, fearful, dreadful*
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, treachery, trick, fraud*
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** lift, carry off*
**Epēos, ī** *m.* Greek leader, maker of the wooden horse†
**fabricātor, ōris** *m.* constructor, maker†
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cable
**fūrtim** stealthily, furtively, secretly
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close, confine
**inīquus, a, um** unfair, unjust, hostile†
**īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** equip, array, build; instruct
**laxō** (1) loosen, free, open, release†
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**Machāōn, onis** *m.* Greek leader and surgeon†
**Menelāus, ī** *m.* Greek leader, Helen's husband†
**Neoptolemus, ī** *m.* Greek leader, son of Achilles†
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus** lay open†
**Pēlīdēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Pelcus†
**phalānx, angis** *f.* phalanx, troop†
**pīneus, a, um** of pine†
**prōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** bring forth†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, give back, render*
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength*
**silentium, (i)ī** *n.* silence, quiet, stillness
**Sinōn, ōnis** *m.* a lying Greek
**Sthenelus, ī** *m.* Greek leader†
**tacitus, a, um** silent, still, quiet
**Tenedos, ī** *f.* small island near Troy
**Thessandrus, ī** *m.* Greek leader†
**Thoās, antis** *m.* Greek leader†
**Ulixēs, is** (**eī, ī**) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**uterus, ī** *m.* womb, belly

**254. phalānx īnstrūctīs nāvibus**: the fleet in battle order; abl. of quality; App. 330.

**255. amīca**: *friendly* (to the attacking Grecks). **tacitae lūnae**: cf. "how still the moonlight sleeps upon that bank."

**256. flammās**: as a signal for the other ships, but especially for Sinon, that he might know when to open the horse and let out the Greeks. **rēgia puppis**: the flagship of the commander-in-chief, Agamemnon. **nōta**: since they had encamped there for ten years.

**257. de(ōr)um. inīquīs**: *unfriendly* (to the Trojans).

**258. (in) uterō (equī)**: abl. of place where; App. 319, *b*. **pīnea**: in l. 16 the horse is of fir, in l. 112 of maple, in l. 186 of oak, here of pine; but there is no accounting for poetic caprice.

**258–259. Danaōs et claustra laxat**: for the hysteron proteron, see I, 69; for the zeugma see I, 356 and II, 54, and compare App. 429, 447. **ad aurās**: *to the open air.*

**260. (ex) rōbore.**

**262. lāpsī**: *having descended*, deponent participle.

**263. prīmus**: *noble;* Machaon was probably not the first to climb down, and he was certainly not the leader or most prominent.

**264. dolī fabricātor = equī fabricātor** here.

Invādunt *urbem somnō* vīnō*que* sepultam;
caeduntur vigilēs, portīs*que* patentibus *omnīs*
*accipiunt sociōs atque agmina* cōnscia jungunt.
*Tempus erat quō prīma* quiēs mortālibus aegrīs
incipit *et dōnō dīvum* grātissima serpit.
*In somnīs*, ecce, *ante oculōs* maestissimus Hector
*vīsus adesse mihī* largōs*que* effundere flētūs,
raptātus bīgīs *ut quondam*, *āterque* cruentō
pulvere *perque pedēs* trājectus lōra tumentīs.
Ei *mihi*, quālis *erat*, quantum mūtātus *ab illō*
Hectore *quī* redit exuviās indūtus Achillī,
*vel Danaum* Phrygiōs jaculātus *puppibus ignīs;*
squālentem barbam *et* concrētōs *sanguine* crīnīs

**Achillēs, ī (is, eī)** *m.* Greek leader*
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary, wretched*
**barba, ae** *f.* beard, whiskers†
**bīgae, ārum** *f.* two-horse chariot†
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**concrētus, a, um** grown together, hardened, matted†
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious; confederate
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, cruel
**ecce** look! see! behold!*
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out*
**ei** alas! ah!†
**exuviae, ārum** *f.* spoils, booty; slough†
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, tears, lament†
**grātus, a, um** welcome, pleasing, grateful†
**Hector, oris** *m.* Trojan leader*
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**induō, ere, uī, ūtus** don, clothe, put on
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** attack, invade†
**jaculor, ārī, ātus** hurl, throw, fling
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, unite*
**largus, a, um** abundant, copious
**lōrum, ī** *n.* thong, leather strap, rein
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mortālis, is** *m.* mortal, man, human*
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, be evident
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
**pulvis, pulveris** *m.* dust
**quālis, e** (such) as, of what sort*
**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, how many, as*
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* quiet, rest, sleep, peace*
**raptō** (1) snatch, drag, carry off
**redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** return†
**sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), pultus** bury†
**serpō, ere, psī, ptus** creep (on), crawl†
**squāleō, ēre, uī** be rough, be filthy†
**trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw across, pierce
**tumeō, ēre, uī** swell, be swollen†
**vigil, ilis** *m.* (*f.*) guard, watchman, sentinel†
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*

**266. portīs:** abl. of route, a variety of the abl. of means; App. 338, 331.

**267. sociōs (ex nāvibus).**

**268–297. The ghost of Hector appears to Aeneas in a dream and urges him to flee from the doomed city and to rescue the paternal gods from destruction.**

**268. quō:** abl. of time when; App. 322.

**269. dīv(ōr)um.**

**270. (meōs) oculōs.**

**271. vīsus (est) adesse:** *seemed to appear.*

**272. raptātus bīgīs (Achillis):** for the story, cf. I, 483–484 and the note.

**273. pedēs trājectus lōra:** *his feet pierced with thongs;* **pedēs** is used with the preposition **per** and **lōra** is object of the participle **trājectus** used as a middle; App. 309, *a*.

**274. mihi:** dat. of reference or interest with the interjection **ei**; App. 301.

**275. exuviās:** object of **indūtus**, used as a middle participle; App. 309, *a*. Hector had slain and despoiled Patroclus, who was wearing the armor of his friend Achilles.

**276. Dana(ōr)um puppibus:** dat. of direction or reference; App. 306, 301. This refers to the battle around the Greek ships, when the Trojans under Hector almost captured the Greek camp and set fire to several of the ships.

vulnera*que illa* gerēns, *quae circum plūrima* mūrōs
*accēpit patriōs.* Ultrō flēns *ipse vidēbar*
compellāre *virum et* maestās exprōmere *vōcēs:*
'*Ō lūx* Dardaniae, spēs *Ō* fīdissima *Teucrum,*
*quae tantae tenuēre* morae? *Quibus* Hector *ab ōrīs*
exspectāte *venīs? Ut tē* post *multa tuōrum*
fūnera, post variōs hominum*que urbisque labōrēs*
dēfessī aspicimus! *Quae* causa indigna serēnōs
foedāvit vultūs? *Aut* cūr *haec* vulnera *cernō?'*
*Ille* nihil, *nec mē quaerentem* vāna morātur,
*sed* graviter gemitūs *īmō dē pectore dūcēns,*
'*Heu fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs' ait 'ēripe flammīs.*
Hostis *habet* mūrōs; *ruit altō ā* culmine *Troja.*
Sat patriae *Priamōque datum: sī* Pergama *dextrā*
dēfendī *possent,* etiam *hāc* dēfēnsa *fuissent.*
*Sacra suōsque tibī* commendat *Troja* penātīs;
*hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere*
*magna,* pererrātō statuēs *quae* dēnique pontō.'

**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look (at)
**causa, ae** *f.* eause, reason, oeeasion*
**commendō** (1) intrust, eommit†
**compellō** (1) address, aeeost, speak to
**culmen, inis** *n.* top, summit, peak, roof†*
**cūr** why? for what reason?
**Dardania, ae** *f.* eity of Dardanus, Troy†
**dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus** defend, protect
**dēfessus, a, um** weary, tired, worn
**dēnique** finally, at last
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**exprōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** express, bring forth†
**exspectō** (1) await (eagerly), expect†*
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trustworthy, safe*
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep, lament†
**foedō** (1) defile, befoul, mar, mangle
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, lament, roar*
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** bear, earry (on)*
**graviter** heavily, grievously
**Hector, oris** *m.* Trojan leader*
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**indignus, a, um** undeserved, unworthy†
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, hindranee*
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, heed*
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**nihil, nīl** nothing, not at all†
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, eountry*
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**pererrō** (1) wander through, traverse†
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); afterward*
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**serēnus, a, um** serene, calm, fair, elear†
**spēs, speī** *f.* hope, expeetation*
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** set up, establish
**ultrō** voluntarily, further*
**vānus, a, um** vain, idle, useless, false
**varius, a, um** various, manifold, diverse*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* eountenanee, faee, aspeet*

**278.** circum mūrōs.
**281.** Teucr(ōr)um.
**282.** tenuēre = (tē) tenuērunt.
**282–283.** Hector expectāte: voe. (tū) venīs.
**283.** Ut: *how gladly.*
**285–286.** serēnōs vultūs (tuōs), haec vulnera (tua).
**287.** Ille (dīcit) nihil.
**289.** nāte: voe. nāte deā: *goddess-born;* literally, *born from a goddess.*
**291–292.** Sat . . . datum (est ā tē). sī (quā) dextrā dēfendī possent, hāc (dextrā meā), dēfēnsa fuissent.
**293.** (sua) sacra: the saered emblems, statues, ete. comitēs: (*as*) *comrades,* in apposition with hōs.
**294.** moenia = urbem, as often. hīs (penātibus): dat. of reference; App. 301.
**295.** pererrātō pontō: abl. abs.; App. 343. quae (moenia) magna dēnique statuēs, pontō pererrātō.

*Sīc ait et manibus* vittās Vestam*que* potentem
aeternum*que* adytīs effert penetrālibus *ignem*.
Dīversō intereā miscentur *moenia* lūctū,
*et* magis *atque* magis, quamquam sēcrēta *parentis*
*Anchīsae domus* arboribus*que* obtēcta recessit,
clārēscunt sonitūs *armōrumque* ingruit horror.
Excutior *somnō et summī* fastīgia *tēctī*
ascēnsū superō *atque* arrēctīs auribus astō:
*in* segetem velutī *cum flamma furentibus* Austrīs
incidit, *aut* rapidus montānō flūmine torrēns
sternit agrōs, sternit sata *laeta* boum*que labōrēs*
praecipitīs*que trahit silvās:* stupet īnscius *altō*
*accipiēns* sonitum *saxī dē* vertice pāstor.
*Tum* vērō manifesta fidēs, *Danaumque* patēscunt

**adytum, ī** *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
**aeternus, a, um** eternal, undying*
**ager, grī** *m.* field, territory, land*
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree, wood(s)*
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, prick up
**a(d)scēnsus, ūs** *m.* climbing, ascent†
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (ready, by)*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**bōs, bovis** *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow†
**clārēscō, ere, clāruī** grow clear†
**dīversus, a, um** diverse, scattered*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry forth, lift*
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake out*
**fastīgium, (i)ī** *n.* roof, battlement, top
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, fidelity, trustworthiness*
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**horror, ōris** *m.* horror, alarm, fright†
**incidō, ere, cidī** fall (on) (*dat.*)†
**ingruō, ere, uī** rush (on, in), assail (*dat.*)†
**īnscius, a, um** ignorant, inexperienced
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**lūctus, ūs** *m.* grief, sorrow, lament
**magis** more, rather*
**manifestus, a, um** clear, plain, manifest†
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle, confuse*
**montānus, a, um** (of a) mountain†
**obtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, hide†
**pāstor, ōris** *m.* shepherd, herdsman
**patēscō, ere, patuī** lie open, be disclosed†
**penetrālis, e** inmost, interior†
**potēns, entis** powerful, mighty*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, precipitate†*
**quamquam** although, however, but
**rapidus, a, um** swift, whirling, hurrying*
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** retire, withdraw†
**sata, ōrum** *n.* crops, harvest†
**sēcrētus, a, um** separate, remote, secret†
**seges, etis** *f.* crop, harvest, grain field†
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, noise, crash*
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, strew, spread*
**stupeō, ēre, uī** be dazed (at), stand agape
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
**torrēns, entis** *m.* torrent
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**vertex, icis** *m.* vertex, summit, peak*
**Vesta, ae** *f.* goddess of the hearth
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, garland, band*

**297. aeternum ignem:** the sacred fire of Vesta which was never allowed to go out, and from which was always kindled the fire which was given to each colony sent out from Rome.

**298–369. Aeneas, however, preferring an honorable death to what he considered a dishonorable flight, finds a few comrades and rushes vainly into battle.**

**298. moenia = urbs = Troja. miscentur:** *is filled;* the word suggests confusion.

**301. (nōbīs) ingruit horror.**

**302. somnō:** abl. of separation; App. 340.

**304. furentibus Austrīs:** abl. abs., denoting attendant circumstance; App. 343.

**305. montānō flūmine:** abl. of means with either **rapidus** or **sternit**; App. 331.

**306. sternit, sternit:** rhetorical repetition called anaphora; App. 413. **bo(v)um labōrēs:** (*the products of*) *the oxen's toil.*

**308. accipiēns = audiēns.**

**309. manifesta (est) fidēs:** *the truth* (of the situation) *was fully revealed;* or *Sinon's perjured faith was manifest.*

īnsidiae. *Jam* Dēiphobī *dedit* ampla ruīnam
Volcānō superante *domus, jam* proximus *ardet*
Ūcalegōn; Sīgēa *ignī* freta lāta relūcent.
Exoritur *clāmorque virum* clangor*que* tubārum.
*Arma* āmēns *capiō; nec* sat ratiōnis *in armīs,*
*sed* glomerāre *manum bellō et* concurrere *in arcem*
*cum sociīs ardent animī;* furor *īraque mentem*
praecipitat, pulchrum*que* morī succurrit *in armīs.*
Ecce autem *tēlīs* Panthūs ēlāpsus Achīvum,
Panthūs Othryadēs, *arcis* Phoebī*que* sacerdōs,
*sacra manū victōsque deōs* parvum*que* nepōtem
*ipse trahit cursūque* āmēns *ad līmina tendit.*

---

**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**āmēns, entis** mad, insane, distracted†
**amplus, a, um** spacious, large, full, wide
**autem** but, however, moreover*
**clangor, ōris** *m.* clang, blare, noise†
**concurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run together, fight (with), struggle
**Dēiphobus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader, Helen's husband after the death of Paris†
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**ēlābor, ī, lāpsus** slip out, escape
**exorior, īrī, ortus** arise, spring up†
**fretum, ī** *n.* strait, sea, waters
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
**glomerō** (1) gather, roll together
**īnsidiae, ārum** *f.* ambush, treachery, snare
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish†*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**Othryadēs, ae** *m.* son of Othrys†
**Panthūs, ī** *m.* Trojan leader†
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**praecipitō** (1) throw headlong, urge on, fall, sink
**proximus, a, um** next, neighbor(ing)
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, illustrious, glorious*
**ratiō, ōnis** *f.* reason, cause, method†
**relūceō, ēre, lūxī** shine back, reflect†
**ruīna, ae** *f.* downfall, ruin, collapse
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**Sīgēus, a, um** of Sigeüm, a promontory near Troy†
**succurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** succor, occur
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
**tuba, ae** *f.* trumpet†
**Ūcalegōn, ontis** *m.* Trojan leader†
**Volcānus (Vulcānus), ī** *m.* Vulcan, (god of) fire†

---

**310. Dēiphobī:** as Helen's present husband he draws the pent-up fury of the Greeks.

**311. dedit ruīnam = ruit. Volcānō = ignī:** metonymy; abl. abs.; App. 433, 343.

**311–312. ardet Ūcalegōn:** a shortened way of saying **domus Ūcalegontis ardet.**

**312. ignī:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**313. Exoritur:** of the third conjugation here; it agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, *b*. **vir(ōr)um.**

**314. nec (est) ratiōnis:** part. gen. with **sat(is)**; App. 286; I am too dazed to form a clear plan and I seize my arms without any adequate reason.

**315–316. (meī) animī ardent glomerāre et concurrere. bellō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303. **(meī) animī:** poetic plural; App. 243. **(meam) mentem.**

**317. (esse) pulchrum morī in armīs succurrit (mihi):** *it occurs to me that it is glorious to die in arms.*

**318. Panthūs:** nom. sing. with **ū**, a Greek form; App. 67. **Achīv(ōr)um.**

**318–319. Panthūs, Panthūs:** observe the rhetorical effect obtained by repetition; App. 413.

**319. arcis:** site of the temple of Apollo as well as that of various other shrines of the gods.

**320. sacra:** as in l. 293. **victōs deōs:** the gods fought for their people; and when the gods were conquered the people were also defeated.

**321. (nostra) līmina = līmina Anchī-**

*'Quō rēs summa locō,* Panthū? *Quam* prendimus *arcem?'*
*Vix ea fātus eram* gemitū *cum tālia* reddit:
*'Vēnit summa diēs et* inēluctābile *tempus*
Dardaniae. *Fuimus* Trōes, *fuit* Īlium *et ingēns*
glōria *Teucrōrum;* ferus *omnia Juppiter* Argōs
trānstulit; incēnsā *Danaī* dominantur *in urbe.*
Arduus armātōs *mediīs in moenibus* astāns
*fundit equus victorque* Sinōn incendia miscet
īnsultāns. Portīs *aliī* bipatentibus *adsunt,*
mīlia quot *magnīs* umquam *vēnēre* Mycēnīs;
obsēdēre *aliī tēlīs* angusta *viārum*
oppositīs; *stat ferrī* aciēs mūcrōne coruscō
stricta, *parāta* necī; *vix prīmī* proelia temptant

**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge; battle line, army*
**angustum, ī** *n.* narrow place, strait†
**arduus, a, um** lofty, steep, towering†*
**Argī, ōrum** *m.* city and district of southern Greece
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (ready, by)*
**bipatēns, entis** doubly open, double†
**coruscus, a, um** flashing, bright, quivering
**Dardania, ae** *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
**dominor, ārī, ātus** rule, hold sway
**ferus, a, um** wild, fierce, cruel, savage†*
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, lament, roar*
**glōria, ae** *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride
**Īlium, (i)ī** *n.* Ilium, Troy
**incendium, (i)ī** *n.* fire, conflagration
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** burn, inflame, fire*
**inēluctābilis, e** inevitable, inescapable†
**īnsultō** (1) leap upon, taunt, insult†
**mīlle; *pl.* mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**misceō, ēre, cuī, mixtus** mix, mingle, confuse*
**mūcrō, ōnis** *m.* point, edge, blade†
**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* city of Greece, home of Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks against Troy
**nex, necis** *f.* death, destruction, murder
**obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** besiege, beset†
**oppositus, a, um** opposing, hostile
**Panthūs, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** seize, grasp†
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, fray, fight†
**quot** as many as, how many†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, reply*
**Sinōn, ōnis** *m.* a lying Greek
**stringō, ere, īnxī, ictus** draw, graze
**temptō** (1) try, test, venture, examine*
**trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** transfer
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**umquam** ever, at any time

**sae, meī patris. cursū:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**322. Quō (in) locō (est) rēs summa** = *in what situation is the state* (**rēs summa**)? or *in what spot is the chief conflict?* **Panthū:** voc., a Greek form; App. 67. **pre(he)ndimus:** with a future sense; *what position are we trying to hold, now that the main arx is untenable?* See App. 351, 1, *c*; 348, *a*.

**323. tālia (dicta). gemitū:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**324.** Panthus practically says: "No use to resist; we have no position anywhere to defend; our last day has come." **summa:** *final.*

**325. Dardaniae:** dat. of direction or reference; App. 306, 301. **Trōes fuimus, fuit Īlium:** observe the pathos of the tense: *We have been (but we are no longer) Trojans; Troy is a thing of the past;* App. 351, 4, *a*.

**326. ferus:** *hostile* (to the Trojans). **(ad) Argōs** = *to Greece;* App. 443.

**328. Arduus armātōs:** alliteration; App. 411. **equus armātōs (virōs) fundit.**

**330. aliī . . . aliī:** *some . . . others.* **Portīs bipatentibus:** *through wide-open gates;* abl. of route; App. 338.

**331. mīlia quot:** *as many thousands as.* **vēnēre** (= **vēnērunt**) **Mycēnīs:** abl. of place whence; App. 320.

**332. obsēdēre** = **obsēdērunt. aliī (Danaī). tēlīs oppositīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **angusta (loca).**

**333. mūcrōne coruscō:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

**334. necī (Teucrōrum):** *for the slaughter* (of the Trojans).

portārum vigilēs *et* caecō Mārte resistunt.'
*Tālibus* Othryadae *dictīs et nūmine dīvum*
*in flammās et in arma feror, quō trīstis* Erīnys,
*quō* fremitus *vocat et sublātus ad* aethera *clāmor.*
Addunt *sē sociōs* Rhīpeus *et maximus armīs*
Ēpytus, oblātī *per* lūnam, Hypanis*que* Dymās*que*
*et* laterī adglomerant *nostrō,* juvenis*que* Coroebus
Mygdonidēs — *illīs ad Trojam forte diēbus*
*vēnerat* īnsānō Cassandrae incēnsus *amōre*
*et* gener auxilium *Priamō* Phrygibus*que ferēbat,*
*īnfēlīx quī nōn* spōnsae praecepta *furentis*
*audierit!*
*Quōs ubi* cōnfertōs audēre *in* proelia *vīdī,*
incipiō *super hīs:* 'Juvenēs, fortissima frūstrā

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**adglomerō** (1) roll together, gather, join†
**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**auxilium,** (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**Cassandra, ae** *f.* prophetess, daughter of Priam, never believed
**cōnfertus, a, um** crowded, packed†
**Coroebus, ī** *m.* suitor of Cassandra, daughter of Priam†
**Dymās, antis** *m.* Trojan leader†
**Ēpytus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader†
**Erīnys, yos** *f.* a Fury, Curse†
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant, stout*
**fremitus, ūs** *m.* (up)roar, din, applause†
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**gener, erī** *m.* (prospective) son-in-law†
**Hypanis, is** *m.* Trojan leader†
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** burn, fire, inflame*
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**īnsānus, a, um** mad, insane, frenzied†
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**Mārs, rtis** *m.* (god of) war
**Mygdonidēs, ae** *m.* son of Mygdon†
**offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus** present
**Othryadēs, ae** *m.* son of Othrys, Panthus
**Phryx, Phrygis** *m.* Phrygian, Trojan
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**praeceptum, ī** *n.* precept, advice†
**proelium,** (i)ī *n.* battle, fray, fight
**resistō, ere, stitī** resist, halt, stop
**Rhīpeus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader†
**spōnsa, ae** *f.* fiancée, wife†
**vigil, ilis** *m.* guard, watchman, sentinel

---

**335. caecō Mārte (= bellō):** *in blind warfare,* that is fighting in the dark; abl. of place where; App. 319, 433.

**336. dictīs:** abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332. **dīv(ōr)um.**

**337. trīstis Erīnys (bellī mē vocat):** *the fell fury (of battle calls me).*

**338. aethera:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

**339. sociōs (mihi). armīs:** abl. of respect with **maximus,** *mighty in battle;* App. 325.

**340. oblātī (mihi) per lūnam (= lūcem lūnae).**

**341. laterī nostrō (sē) adglomerant:** *attach (themselves) to me.*

**342. illīs diēbus:** abl. of time when; App. 322.

**343. (Coroebus)vēnerat. Cassandrae:** *for Cassandra,* obj. gen.; App. 284.

**344. gener:** *as a (prospective) son-in-law.*

**345. īnfēlīx (vir). furentis:** to the ancients and to primitive peoples a raving person was "touched of God," and his utterances were inspired by the divinity; so of Cassandra (**spōnsae**) here.

**346. audierit:** rel. clause of characteristic, with accessory notion of cause; App. 389; cf. l. 231.

**347. audēre in proelia:** *were bold for battle.*

**348. super:** adv. **hīs (dictīs):** abl. of means. **frūstrā:** *in vain;* since resistance is useless.

*pectora, sī vōbīs* audentem extrēma cupīdō
certa *sequī, quae sit rēbus fortūna vidētis;*
excessēre *omnēs* adytīs *ārīsque relictīs*
*dī quibus imperium hoc steterat;* succurritis *urbī*
incēnsae: moriāmur *et in media arma ruāmus.*
*Ūna* salūs *victīs nūllam* spērāre salūtem.'
*Sīc animīs* juvenum furor additus. Inde, lupī ceu
raptōrēs *ātrā in* nebulā, *quōs* improba ventris
exēgit caecōs rabiēs catulī*que relictī*
faucibus exspectant siccīs, *per tēla, per* hostīs
vādimus *haud* dubiam *in mortem mediaeque tenēmus*
*urbis* iter; *nox ātra* cavā circumvolat *umbrā.*
*Quis* clādem *illīus noctis, quis* fūnera *fandō*
explicet *aut possit lacrimīs* aequāre *labōrēs?*

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**adytum, ī** *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), match, level*
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**catulus, ī** *m.* cub, puppy, whelp†
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**certus, a, um** fixed, sure, certain, reliable*
**ceu** as, just as, as if†
**circumvolō** (1) flit around, hover around†
**clādēs, is** *f.* slaughter, ruin, havoc†
**cupīdō, inis** *f.* love, desire, eagerness†
**dubius, a, um** doubtful, uncertain
**excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart, retire
**exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** drive (out)
**explicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus)** express, unfold, explain†
**exspectō** (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
**extrēma, ōrum** *n.* extremity, last hazard, death*
**faucēs, ium** *f.* throat, jaws; pass†
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**improbus, a, um** wicked, evil, cruel
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** burn, fire, inflame*
**inde** thence, thereupon, next*
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**lupus, ī** *m.* wolf†
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**nebula, ae** *f.* cloud, fog, mist
**rabiēs, ēī** *f.* rage, madness, fury
**raptor, ōris** *m.* robber; *adj.* ravenous†
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, security, health
**siccus, a, um** dry, thirsty†
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
**succurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run to aid, succor (*dat.*)
**vādō, ere** go, advance, rush, march†
**venter, tris** *m.* belly, stomach†

---

**349–350. pectora:** apposition with **juvenēs. sī vōbīs (est) certa cupīdō sequī (mē) audentem extrēma. vōbīs:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **cupīdō (est). sequī:** depends on **cupīdō**; App. 264. **quae fortūna sit:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **(nostrīs) rēbus:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

**351. adytīs ārīsque relictīs:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **excessēre dī:** the ancient gods are regularly represented as deserting cities about to be captured.

**352. quibus:** *by whose aid;* abl. of means; App. 331. **urbī:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**353. moriāmur et ruāmus:** volitives; App. 254. This is an example of hysteron proteron; App. 429; i.e., the act represented by **ruāmus** really comes before that of **moriāmur,** although **moriāmur** precedes in the sentence. This is a permissible device, as it indicates *priority of interest,* instead of the usual priority of time. See the note on I, 69.

**354. Ūna salūs (est) victīs. victīs:** dat. of possession; App. 299.

**355. additus (est).**

**356–357. ventris rabiēs** = *mad hunger, raving hunger.*

**360. urbis:** gen. of possession; App. 283, or of quality; App. 285.

**361. fūnera fandō:** alliteration; App. 411. **Quis (explicet) clādem.**

**362. explicet, possit:** deliberative or potential subjunctives; App. 348, 252. **lacrimīs:** abl. of means; App. 331.

*Urbs antīqua ruit multōs* dominā̆ta *per* annōs;
*plūrima perque viās* sternuntur inertia passim
*corpora perque domōs et* relligiōsa *deōrum*
*līmina. Nec sōlī poenās dant sanguine Teucrī;*
*quondam* etiam *victīs* redit *in* praecordia virtūs
*victōrēsque* cadunt *Danaī.* Crūdēlis ubīque
lūctus, ubīque pavor *et plūrima mortis* imāgō.
*Prīmus sē Danaum magnā* comitante catervā
Androgeōs offert *nōbīs*, socia *agmina* crēdēns
īnscius, *atque* ultrō verbīs compellat amīcīs:
'Fēstīnāte, *virī! Nam quae* tam sēra morātur
sēgnitiēs? *Alīī* rapiunt incēnsa *feruntque*
Pergama: *vōs* celsīs *nunc prīmum ā nāvibus ītis?'*
*Dīxit, et* extemplō (*neque* enim respōnsa *dabantur*
fīda satis) sēnsit *mediōs* dēlāpsus *in* hostīs.

**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)*
**Androgeōs, ī** (ō) *m.* Greek leader†
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**caterva, ae** *f.* crowd, troop, band
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**comitō** (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow
**compellō** (1) address, accost, speak to
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bitter, bloody*
**dēlābor, ī, lāpsus** slip, fall, sink†
**dominor, ārī, ātus** rule, hold sway
**enim** for, indeed, truly
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**extemplō** suddenly, at once, immediately
**fēstīnō** (1) hurry, hasten, speed†*
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trustworthy, safe*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**imāgo, inis** *f.* image, form, ghost*
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** burn, inflame*
**iners, rtis** inactive, lifeless, tame†
**īnscius, a, um** ignorant, unaware
**lūctus, ūs** *m.* grief, sorrow, lament
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, detain*
**offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus** present
**passim** everywhere, all about†*
**pavor, ōris** *m.* terror, shuddering, alarm
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**praecordia, ōrum** *n.* heart, breast†
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** plunder, snatch (up)
**redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** return
**re(l)ligiōsus, a, um** holy, sacred†
**respōnsum, ī** *n.* answer, reply†
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**sēgnitiēs, ēī** *f.* sloth, laziness†
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive, feel
**sērus, a, um** (too) late, slow†
**socius, a, um** allied, associated†
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, strew, spread*
**tam** so (much), so very, such*
**ubīque** everywhere, anywhere
**ultrō** voluntarily, further*
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech, talk
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* valor, manhood, excellence*

**364–365. inertia corpora:** of the slain Trojans.

**365. et** = *and even.*

**366. poenās dant:** *suffer punishment;* see the note on **sūmite poenās** in l. 103.

**367. victīs:** dat. of reference; App. 301.

**369. lūctus** (est). **pavor:** with the final syllable lengthened for metrical reasons; App. 394, *a.* **plūrima:** *many a.*

**370–402. Aeneas and his comrades gain some initial successes, and on the advice of Coroebus, one of their number, they exchange their own armor for that of the Greeks they had slain. This trick gives them an advantage, and their success increases.**

**370. Dana(ōr)um:** App. 37, *d.*

**371. crēdēns** (nōs esse) **socia agmina** (= Danaōs).

**372.** (nōs) **compellat.**

**373.** (vōs) **morātur.**

**374. incēnsa Pergama:** obj. of both **rapiunt** and **ferunt.**

**375. vōs:** emphatic, as always when expressed as subject; App. 247.

**377. dēlāpsus** (esse) = **sē dēlāpsum esse.**

Obstipuit retrō*que pedem cum vōce* repressit.
Improvīsum asprīs velutī *quī* sentibus anguem
pressit humī nītēns trepidus*que* repente refūgit
attollentem *īrās et* caerula colla tumentem,
*haud* secus Androgeōs vīsū tremefactus abībat.
Inruimus dēnsīs *et* circumfundimur *armīs,*
ignārōs*que locī* passim *et* formīdine *captōs*
sternimus. Aspīrat *prīmō Fortūna labōrī.*
*Atque hīc* successū exsultāns *animīsque* Coroebus
*'Ō sociī,* quā *prīma'* inquit *'fortūna* salūtis
mōnstrat iter, quā*que* ostendit *sē dextra, sequāmur:*
mūtēmus clipeōs *Danaumque* īnsignia *nōbīs*
aptēmus. Dolus an virtūs, *quis in* hoste requīrat?

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart, retreat*
**an** whether, or*
**Androgeōs, ī** (ō) *m.* Greek leader
**anguis, is** *m.* snake, serpent
**aptō** (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish*
**asper, (e)ra, (e)rum** harsh, rough, fierce*
**a(d)spīrō** (1) breathe upon, favor (*dat.*)
**attollō, ere** lift, raise, rear*
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark blue, bluish black†*
**circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour round
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**Coroebus, ī** *m.* suitor of Cassandra
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense†*
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
**exsultō** (1) leap forth, dance, surge, exult†
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, earth, soil*
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, inexperienced*
**improvīsus, a, um** unforeseen, unexpected
**inquam, is, it** say*
**inruō, ere, uī** rush in†
**īnsigne, is** *n.* mark, badge, device†
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out, teach*
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, alter, transform*
**nītor, ī, sus (nixus)** strive, climb, step firmly†
**obstipēscō, ere, puī** be dazed, stand agape*
**ostendō, ere, ī, tus** show, display*
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, trample*
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way
**refugiō, ere, fūgī** flee, retreat, recoil
**repente** suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly
**reprimō, ere, pressī, pressus** check†
**requīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus** seek, ask (for)
**retrō** back, backward
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, deliverance, health
**secus** otherwise, differently†
**sentis, is** *m.* brier, bramble†
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, strew, spread*
**successus, ūs** *m.* success, progress†
**tremefactus, a, um** trembling, appalled
**trepidus, a, um** alarmed, agitated†
**tumeō, ēre, uī** swell; be swollen
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* valor, manhood, excellence*
**vīsus, ūs** *m.* sight, appearance, view

**378. retrō:** pleonastic with the **re** in **repressit**; App. 438.

**379. asprīs = asperīs,** a form (– ◡ –) which could not be used in hexameter; (in) **sentibus asprīs. velutī (ille) quī.**

**380. humī:** loc.; App. 37, *c.*

**381. (anguem) attollentem. colla:** acc. of respect; App. 311.

**382. haud secus:** litotes; App. 431.

**383. circumfundimur (iīs):** middle; *we pour ourselves around (them)*, i.e., *we surround them;* App. 309. **dēnsīs (armīs):** abl. of means.

**385. labōrī:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**386. successū, animīs:** ablatives of cause; App. 332.

**387–388. salūtis:** obj. gen. with **iter**; App. 284. **(fortūna) ostendit sē. dextra:** irregularly agreeing with **fortūna** instead of with **sē.**

**388–390. sequāmur, mūtēmus, aptēmus:** vol. subjunctives; App. 254.

**390. Dolus an virtūs (sit):** indir. quest.; App. 349. **requīrat:** deliberative quest.; App. 348.

*Arma dabunt ipsī.' Sīc fātus* deinde comantem
Androgeō galeam clipeī*que* īnsigne decōrum
induitur laterī*que* Argīvum accommodat ēnsem.
*Hoc* Rhīpeus, *hoc ipse* Dymās *omnisque* juventūs
*laeta facit:* spoliīs *sē* quisque recentibus armat.
Vādimus immixtī *Danaīs haud nūmine nostrō*
*multaque per* caecam congressī proelia *noctem*
cōnserimus, *multōs Danaum* dēmittimus Orcō.
Diffugiunt *aliī ad nāvīs et lītora cursū*
fīda *petunt; pars ingentem* formīdine turpī
scandunt rūrsus *equum et* nōtā conduntur *in* alvō.
*Heu* nihil invītīs fās quemquam fīdere *dīvīs!*

**accommodō** (1) fit, adjust†
**alvus, ī** *f.* belly, body
**Androgeōs, ī** (ō) *m.* Greek leader
**Argīvus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**caecus, a, um** blind, dark, hidden*
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**comāns, antis** hairy, crested†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, hide*
**congredior, ī, gressus** meet, encounter
**cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus** join, engage in†
**decōrus, a, um** ornamental, becoming
**deinde** thereupon, then, next
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down*
**diffugiō, ere, fūgī** flee (apart), scatter
**Dymās, antis** *m.* Trojan leader
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
**fīdō, ere, fīsus sum** trust, confide, rely (in, on) (*dat., abl.*)*
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trustworthy, safe*
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mingle, mix (with) (*dat.*)†
**induō, ere, uī, ūtus,** don, clothe, put on
**īnsigne, is** *n.* mark, badge, device
**invītus, a, um** unwilling, unfriendly†
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**nihil, nīl** nothing, not at all
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**Orcus, ī** *m.* (god of) death, Hades†
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, fray, fight
**quisquam, quaequam, quicquam** any(one, thing)
**quisque, quaeque, quodque** each, every (one)
**recēns, entis** recent, fresh, new, late
**Rhīpeus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)†*
**scandō, ere, ī, ānsus** climb, mount
**spolium, (i)ī** *n.* spoils, booty, plunder
**turpis, e** shameful, disgraceful, foul†
**vādō, ere** go, advance, rush, march

**391. deinde:** two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

**392. Androgeō:** gen., a Greek form; App. 67.

**394. Hoc (facit) Rhīpeus. hoc:** pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.* **ipse:** *also*, a not uncommon meaning. **omnis juventūs = omnēs juvenēs.**

**396. Danaīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **haud nūmine nostrō:** abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329; *not under the protection of our own ( = friendly) divinities.* By donning Greek armor, the Trojans forfeit the protection of their own gods.

**397. congressī (Danaōs).**

**398. Dana(ōr)um. Orcō:** dat. of direction, = **ad Orcum**; App. 306.

**399. aliī (Danaī). cursū:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**400. fīda lītora:** where their ships were.

**401. conduntur:** middle = **sē condunt**; App. 309.

**402–430. The Trojans, disguised in Greek armor, see Cassandra, the betrothed of Coroebus, being dragged from the shrine of Minerva by Ajax and his comrades. In trying to rescue her, Coroebus is killed, and the other Trojans are overwhelmed by the weapons of their friends who are ignorant of their disguise.**

**402. fās (est). nihil:** adverbial, *not at all.* **dīvīs:** dat. with a special verb, **fīdere**; App. 297.

Ecce *trahēbātur* passīs Priamēia virgō
crīnibus *ā* templō Cassandra adytīs*que* Minervae
*ad caelum tendēns ardentia lūmina* frūstrā,
*lūmina, nam* tenerās arcēbant vincula palmās.
*Nōn tulit hanc* speciem furiātā *mente* Coroebus
*et sēsē medium* injēcit peritūrus *in agmen.*
Cōnsequimur *cūnctī et* dēnsīs incurrimus *armīs.*
*Hīc prīmum ex altō* dēlūbrī culmine *tēlīs*
*nostrōrum* obruimur oritur*que miserrima* caedēs
*armōrum* faciē *et* Grajārum errōre jubārum.
*Tum Danaī* gemitū *atque ēreptae* virginis *īrā*
undique collēctī invādunt, ācerrimus Ajāx
*et geminī* Atrīdae Dolopum*que* exercitus *omnis;*

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, fierce, spirited*
**adytum, ī** *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
**Ajāx, ācis** *m.* Greek leader, captor of Cassandra*
**arceō, ēre, uī** confine, restrain, defend
**Atrīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaüs
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, massacre, murder
**Cassandra, ae** *f.* prophetess, daughter of Priam, never believed
**colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** collect, gather
**cōnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, overtake†
**Coroebus, ī** *m.* suitor of Cassandra
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**culmen, inis** *n.* top, summit, peak, roof*
**dēlūbrum, ī** *n.* shrine, temple, fane
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense*
**Dolopes, um** *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**error, ōris** *m.* error, deceit, trick
**exercitus, ūs** *m.* army, host, band†
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, form, aspect*
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**furiō** (1) frenzy, madden, infuriate†
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**incurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run in(to), attack†
**injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw in(to)†
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** attack, march in
**juba, ae** *f.* mane, crest
**Minerva, ae** *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
**obruō, ere, uī, utus** overwhelm, crush
**orior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring (up)
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, spread, loosen, dishevel*
**pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** perish, die†
**Priamēius, a, um** of Priam, Priam's†
**speciēs, ēī** *f.* sight, spectacle, appearance†
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**tener, era, erum** tender, delicate, soft†
**undique** on (from) all sides*
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* chain, bond, cable*
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en), daughter*

**403. trahēbātur:** by Ajax; see I, 39–45; observe the picturesque effect of the imperf.; App. 351. 2. **Priamēia virgō:** *the daughter of Priam*, the adj. being equivalent to the gen., as often.

**403–404. passīs crīnibus:** abl. of means or quality; App. 331, 330.

**405–406. lūmina, lūmina:** repetition for the sake of the rhetorical effect; App. 413.

**407. Coroebus:** Cassandra's lover, ll. 341–346.

**409. (Danaīs) incurrimus. dēnsīs armīs:** abl. of means; cf. l. 383.

**410. prīmum:** correlative with **tum**, l. 412. **dēlūbrī:** of Minerva, l. 404.

**411. obruimur:** with the final syllable long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*. **oritur:** of the third conjugation here. Cf. **exoritur**, l. 313.

**412. faciē, errōre:** ablatives of cause; App. 332. **Grajārum:** pronounce **Grajjārum**; App. 6, *b*. **errōre jubārum:** *the mistake of* (*caused by*) *the Greek crests*, subj. gen.; App. 284.

**413. ēreptae virginis (Cassandrae):** subj. gen.; *the wrath of* (*caused by*) *the girl snatched* (*from them*), or gen. of definition; App. 284, 282. **gemitū:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **īrā:** abl. of cause; App. 332.

**414. collēctī:** middle; App. 309. **invādunt (nōs). Ajāx:** pronounced **Ajjāx**; App. 6, *b*.

**415. geminī = duo:** they were not twins.

adversī ruptō ceu *quondam* turbine *ventī*
cōnflīgunt, Zephyrus*que* Notus*que et laetus* Eōīs
Eurus *equīs;* strīdunt *silvae* saevit*que* tridentī
spūmeus *atque īmō* Nēreus ciet *aequora* fundō.
*Illī* etiam, *sī quōs* obscūrā *nocte per umbram*
*fūdimus* īnsidiīs *tōtāque* agitāvimus *urbe,*
appārent; *prīmī* clipeōs mentīta*que tēla*
agnōscunt *atque ōra* sonō discordia signant.
Īlicet obruimur numerō; *prīmusque* Coroebus
Pēneleī *dextrā dīvae* armipotentis *ad āram*
prōcumbit; cadit *et* Rhīpeus, jūstissimus *ūnus*
*quī fuit in Teucrīs et* servantissimus aequī
(*dīs* aliter *vīsum*); pereunt Hypanis*que* Dymās*que*

---

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**aequum, ī** *n.* justice, right(eousness)†
**agitō** (1) drive, stir, buffet, pursue†
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**aliter** otherwise, differently
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear
**armipotēns, entis** powerful in arms†
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**ceu** (just) as, as if
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** stir (up), arouse*
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**cōnflīgō, ere, xī, ctus** clash, struggle†
**Coroebus, ī** *m.* suitor of Cassandra
**discors, rdis** differing, discordant†
**Dymās, antis** *m.* Trojan leader
**Eōus, a, um** eastern, of the dawn
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**Eurus, ī** *m.* (east) wind
**fundus, ī** *m.* bottom, base, depth(s)†
**Hypanis, is** *m.* Trojan leader
**īlicet** immediately, at once†
**īnsidiae, ārum** *f.* ambush, snare, treachery
**jūstus, a, um** just, fair, right(eous), true
**mentior, īrī, ītus** deceive, lie, pretend†
**Nēreus, ī** *m.* a minor sea god†
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude*
**obruō, ere, ruī, rutus** overwhelm, crush
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, hidden, gloomy*
**Pēneleus, eī** *m.* Greek leader†
**pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** perish, die
**prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** fall, sink†
**Rhīpeus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**saeviō, īre, īvī (iī) ītus** rage, be fierce
**servāns, antis** observant, heedful†
**signō** (1) observe, mark, indicate†
**sonus, ī** *m.* sound, noise, speech†
**spūmeus, a, um** foamy, frothy†
**strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī** creak, roar, rustle
**tridēns, entis** *m.* trident, three-pronged spear
**turbō, inis** *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
**Zephyrus, ī** *m.* (west) wind

---

**416–417. ceu quondam turbine ruptō, ventī cōnflīgunt adversī:** a simile; App. 441. **turbine ruptō:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**418. equīs:** abl. of cause with **laetus;** App. 332. The wind god was conceived as driving his swift steeds like some great warrior. **strīdunt:** of the third conjugation here, but ordinarily of the second. **tridentī:** abl. of means; App. 331.

**418–419.** Note the alliteration of s; App. 411.

**419. spūmeus Nēreus. (ex) fundō.**

**420–422. Illī (Danaī) appārent. sī quōs:** indef. **īnsidiīs:** by the trick of exchanging armor and insignia; see ll. 389–395. **tōtā urbe:** abl. of route or space over which; App. 338.

**422–423. (illī Danaī) prīmī . . . agnōscunt atque . . . signant. sonō:** abl. of respect with **discordia;** App. 325. The Trojans and Greeks are represented as speaking the same language (**ōra**) but with a dialect differing (**discordia**) in sound (**sonō**). (**nostra**) **ōra.**

**425. dextrā (manū). dīvae armipotentis: Minervae.**

**426. jūstissimus ūnus: ūnus** is often thus used simply to emphasize the superlative and is not to be translated.

**427. servantissimus aequī:** *most devoted to justice;* **aequī** is used substantively as an obj. gen.; App. 284.

**428. dīs aliter vīsum (est):** *the gods decreed otherwise* (lit., *it seemed otherwise*

cōnfīxī *ā sociīs; nec tē tua plūrima,* Panthū,
*lābentem* pietās *nec* Apollinis īnfula tēxit.
Īliacī cinerēs *et flamma* extrēma *meōrum,*
testor, *in* occāsū vestrō *nec tēla nec ūllās*
vītāvisse vicēs, *Danaum et, sī fāta fuissent*
*ut* caderem, meruisse *manū.* Dīvellimur inde,
Īphitus *et* Peliās *mēcum* (*quōrum* Īphitus aevō
*jam* gravior, Peliās *et* vulnere tardus Ulixī),
prōtinus *ad sēdēs Priamī clāmōre vocātī.*
*Hīc* vērō *ingentem* pugnam, ceu cētera nūsquam
*bella forent, nūllī tōtā* morerentur *in urbe,*
*sīc* Mārtem indomitum *Danaōsque ad tēcta ruentīs*

---

**aevum, ī** *n.* age, life, time, eternity†
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**cēterus, a, um** other, remaining, rest
**ceu** as, just as, as if
**cinis, eris** *m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the dead)†*
**cōnfīgō, ere, xī, xus** pierce, transfix†
**dīvellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear apart
**extrēmus, a, um** extreme, final, last*
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**Īliacus, a, um** Ilian, Trojan*
**inde** thence, thereupon, next*
**indomitus, a, um** uncontrolled, ungovernable†
**īnfula, ae** *f.* fillet, garland, band†
**Īphitus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader†
**Mārs, rtis** *m.* (god of) war
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, merit, earn*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**nūsquam** nowhere, never†
**occāsus, ūs** *m.* sinking, fall, destruction
**Panthūs, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**Peliās, ae** *m.* Trojan leader†
**pietās, ātis** *f.* piety, devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
**prōtinus** immediately, at once†
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, fray, combat*
**tardus, a, um** slow, retarded, lazy, late
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**testor, ārī, ātus** call to witness, testify
**Ulixēs, is** (**eī, ī**) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vicis** (*gen.*) *f.* (inter)change; fortune†
**vītō** (1) shun, avoid, dodge, escape†
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

*to the gods*); the underlying thought seems to be: "if any one deserved to survive the fall of Troy it was the righteous Rhipeus, but the ways of the gods are past finding out."

**429.** (**suīs**) **sociīs**: Trojans on the roof of the temple, misled by their armor into believing Aeneas and his companions to be Greeks. **Panthū**: voc., a Greek form; App. 67.

**430. īnfula**: fillets were worn by priests and others, such as sacrificial victims, to indicate their sanctity and their consecration to the divinity.

**431–505. Aeneas and his comrades hasten to the palace of Priam, which is being stormed.**

**431. meōrum**: substantively, *of my people*, as though the flames of Troy were the funeral flames of his people. **cinerēs, flamma**: vocatives.

**432–433.** (**vōs**) **testor, (mē) vītāvisse**, indir. statement; App. 263.

**433. vicēs Dana(ōr)um**: *perils of (from) the Greeks*, subj. gen.; App. 284. **sī fuissent**: protasis of condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

**434. ut caderem**: depends partly on **fāta**, partly on **meruisse**; App. 364. (**mē**) **meruisse** (**ut caderem**) **manū** (*for my deeds*); or construe: **Dana(ōr)um manū.**

**435–436. Īphitus et Peliās**: in partitive apposition with **nōs** understood as subject of **dīvellimur. mēcum** = **cum mē**: App. 321, *a.* **quōrum Īphitus (est) gravior, et Peliās (est) tardus. Ulixī**: subj. gen. with **vulnere**, *the wound of (inflicted by) Ulysses;* App. 284.

**437. vocātī**: agrees with the subj. of **dīvellimur.**

**438. pugnam** (**cernimus**).

**439. ceu . . . forent, (ceu) . . . morerentur**: condit. comparisons; App. 383.

*cernimus* obsessum*que* *āctā* testūdine *līmen.*
Haerent parietibus scālae postīs*que* *sub ipsōs*
nītuntur gradibus clipeōs*que* *ad tēla* sinistrīs
prōtēctī objiciunt, prēnsant fastīgia *dextrīs.*
Dardanidae contrā turrīs *ac tōta domōrum*
culmina convellunt; *hīs sē,* quandō ultima *cernunt,*
extrēmā *jam in morte parant* dēfendere *tēlīs;*
aurātās*que* trabēs, veterum decora *alta parentum,*
dēvolvunt; *aliī* strictīs mūcrōnibus *īmās*
obsēdēre forēs, *hās servant agmine* dēnsō.
Īnstaurātī *animī rēgis* succurrere *tēctīs*
auxiliō*que* levāre *virōs vimque* addere *victīs.*
*Līmen erat* caecae*que* forēs *et* pervius ūsus
*tēctōrum inter sē Priamī,* postēs*que* *relictī*

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**aurātus, a, um** gilded, golden
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* help, aid, assistance*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**contrā** opposite, on the other side*
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear up, shatter
**culmen, inis** *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
**decus, oris** *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
**dēfendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** defend, protect
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense*
**dēvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** roll down†
**extrēmus, a, um** extreme, utter, last*
**fastīgium, (i)ī** *n.* roof, top, summit
**foris, is** *f.* door, gate, entrance
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, stride, rung
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** hang, cling to (*dat.*)*
**īnstaurō** (1) renew, refresh†
**levō** (1) relieve, lighten, lift, remove
**mūcrō, ōnis** *m.* edge, point, sword
**nītor, ī, sus (nixus)** climb on, rest on (*abl.*)
**objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hold toward
**obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** besiege, beset
**pariēs, ietis** *m.* house-wall, wall†
**pervius, a, um** passable, traversable†
**postis, is** *m.* post, door, gate†
**pr(eh)ēnsō** (1) seize, grasp, clutch†
**prōtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect†
**quandō** when, since, because
**scālae, ārum** *f.* ladder, stairway†
**sinistra, ae** *f.* left hand†
**stringō, ere, īnxī, ictus** draw, strip, graze
**succurrō, ere, ī, cursus** succor (*dat.*)
**testūdō, inis** *f.* tortoise, roof of overlapping shields held by soldiers over their heads
**trabs (trabēs), trabis** *f.* beam, timber
**turris, is** *f.* tower, turret†
**ultimus, a, um** last, final, farthest*
**ūsus, ūs** *m.* employment, use†
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*

**441. āctā testūdine:** abl. abs.; App. 343. An assaulting party, protected by their upraised shields and bearing a fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell; hence the Romans gave it the name, **testūdō,** *tortoise.*

**442. parietibus:** dat. or abl. with **haerent;** App. 319, 297; pronounced here as though spelled **parjetibus** so that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.

**443. gradibus:** *up the rungs;* abl. of route; App. 338.

**445–446. contrā:** adv. **turrīs, culmina:** objects of **convellunt. ultima (fāta) = mortem.**

**446–447. hīs tēlīs:** abl. of means; App. 331. **sē dēfendere parant.**

**449. aliī (Teucrī).**

**450. obsēdēre = obsēdērunt:** App. 204, 4.

**451. Īnstaurātī (sunt) animī (nostrī). tēctīs:** dat. with compound, **succurrere;** App. 298.

**452. auxiliō:** abl. of means; App. 331. **victīs (Teucrīs):** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**453. erat:** agreeing with its nearest subject, **līmen;** App. 236, *b.* **pervius ūsus:** *a passable use, a way through which one might pass,* coördinate with **līmen, forēs,** and **postēs.**

**454. inter sē:** connecting the different parts of the palace (**tēctōrum**) with each other. **tēctōrum:** poetic plural; App. 243. **relictī:** *secluded,* unknown except to members of Priam's family.

*ā* tergō, *īnfēlīx* quā *sē, dum rēgna manēbant,*
saepius Andromachē *ferre* incomitāta solēbat
*ad* socerōs *et* avō *puerum* Astyanacta *trahēbat.*
Ēvādō *ad summī* fastīgia culminis, unde
*tēla manū miserī* jactābant inrita *Teucrī.*
Turrim *in* praecipitī *stantem summīsque sub* astra
ēductam *tēctīs,* unde *omnis Troja vidērī*
*et Danaum* solitae *nāvēs et* Achāica castra,
adgressī *ferrō circum,* quā *summa* labantīs
jūnctūrās tabulāta *dabant,* convellimus *altīs*
*sēdibus* impulimus*que; ea lāpsa* repente ruīnam
*cum* sonitū *trahit et Danaum super agmina* lātē
incidit. *Ast aliī subeunt, nec saxa nec ūllum*
*tēlōrum* intereā cessat *genus.*
Vestibulum *ante ipsum prīmōque in līmine* Pyrrhus

---

**Achāicus, a, um** Achaean, Greek†
**adgredior, ī, gressus** approach, attack
**Andromachē, ēs (a, ae)** *f.* wife of Hector†
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**Astyanax, actis** *m.* infant son of Hector and Andromache†
**avus, ī** *m.* grandfather; ancestor†
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment*
**cessō** (1) yield, delay, cease
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear up, shatter
**culmen, inis** *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
**ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead forth, raise
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** go out, traverse, mount†
**fastīgium, (i)ī** *n.* roof, top, summit
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** push forward
**incidō, ere, ī** fall (on); chance upon
**incomitātus, a, um** unaccompanied†
**inritus, a, um** useless, vain, unavailing†
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**jactō** (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter*
**jūnctūra, ae** *f.* joint, fastening†
**labō** (1) totter, waver, vacillate†
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**praeceps, cipitis** *n.* precipice, sheer edge*
**Pyrrhus, ī** *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles†
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way
**repente** suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly
**ruīna, ae** *f.* ruin, downfall, collapse
**saepe** often, frequently*
**socer, erī** *m.* father (parent)-in-law†
**soleō, ēre, itus sum** be accustomed
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, noise, crash*
**tabulātum, ī** *n.* floor, story†
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, body, rear*
**turris, is** *f.* tower, turret
**unde** whence, from which place*
**vestibulum, ī** *n.* entry, vestibule†

---

**455. rēgna (Priamī):** poetic plural; App. 243.

**455–456. īnfēlīx Andromachē sē ferre solēbat.** To Aeneas, who is relating the story, Andromache was **īnfēlīx,** because of the loss of Hector who had been slain by Achilles and because of the death of her son Astyanax, who was killed by the Greeks after the fall of Troy.

**456. saepius:** *very often, quite often,* a common use of the comparative.

**457. socerōs:** *parents-in-law,* Priam and Hecuba. **avō = Priamō:** dat. of direction; App. 306 = **ad Priamum. Astyanacta:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

**458. Ēvādō ad fastīgia:** *I mount to the roof* (after entering the palace by the secret passage just described).

**460–464. Turrim adgressī convellimus impulimusque. tēctīs:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **in praecipitī:** *on the sheer edge.* **Troja (solita est) vidērī et nāvēs Dana-(ōr)um solitae (sunt vidērī):** a watch tower. **ferrō:** iron tools, such as crow-bars.

**464–465. (ex) altīs sēdibus:** abl. of separation; App. 340.

**466. Dana(ōr)um.**

**467. aliī (Danaī).**

**468. cessat:** agrees with **ūllum genus,** its nearest subject; App. 236, *b.*

**469. Pyrrhus:** Achilles's young son who has just come to Troy.

exsultat *tēlīs et lūce* coruscus aēnā;
quālis *ubi in lūcem* coluber mala grāmina pāstus,
frīgida *sub terrā* tumidum *quem* brūma tegēbat,
*nunc, positīs novus* exuviīs nitidus*que* juventā,
lūbrica convolvit *sublātō pectore* terga
arduus *ad* sōlem, *et* linguīs micat *ōre* trisulcīs.
Ūnā *ingēns* Periphās *et equōrum* agitātor Achillis,
armiger Automedōn, ūnā *omnis* Scȳria pūbēs
succēdunt *tēctō et flammās ad* culmina jactant.
*Ipse inter prīmōs* correptā dūra bipennī
*līmina* perrumpit postīs*que ā* cardine vellit
aerātōs; *jamque* excīsā trabe firma cavāvit
rōbora *et ingentem* lātō *dedit ōre* fenestram.

**Achillēs, is** (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
**aēnus, a, um** bronze, brazen
**aerātus, a, um** bronze, brazen†
**agitātor, ōris** *m.* driver, charioteer†
**arduus, a, um** high, steep, lofty*
**armiger, erī** *m.* armorbearer, squire†
**Automedōn, ontis** *m.* Greek leader†
**bipennis, is** *f.* double ax†
**brūma, ae** *f.* midwinter†
**cardō, inis** *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
**cavō** (1) hollow out
**coluber, brī** *m.* snake, serpent†
**convolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** roll, coil†
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**coruscus, a, um** flashing, bright, waving
**culmen, inis** *n.* top, summit, peak, roof*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**excīdō, ere, ī, sus** cut out; destroy
**exsultō** (1) leap forth, dance, surge, exult
**exuviae, ārum** *f.* spoils; skin, slough
**fenestra, ae** *f.* window, opening, breach†
**firmus, a, um** firm, strong, solid†
**frīgidus, a, um** cold, frosty, chill†
**grāmen, inis** *n.* grass, herb, plant†
**jactō** (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter*
**juventa, ae** *f.* youth, young manhood
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious*
**lingua, ae** *f.* tongue, language
**lūbricus, a, um** slippery, slimy†
**malus, a, um** bad, evil, wicked, baneful*
**micō, āre, uī** flash, quiver, dart
**nitidus, a, um** shining, bright, sleek†
**pascor, ī, pāstus** feed (on), graze, eat
**Periphās, antis** *m.* Greek leader†
**perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break through†
**postis, is** *m.* post, door, gate
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, young men*
**quālis, e** such (as), of what sort*
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength*
**Scȳrius, a, um** Scyrian, of Scyros, an island of the Aegean where Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus) was born†
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach (*dat.*)
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, body, rear*
**trabs (trabēs), is** *f.* beam, timber
**trisulcus, a, um** threefold, tripartite, forked†
**tumidus, a, um** swollen, swelling
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus** tear (up)†

**470. tēlīs et lūce aēnā coruscus** = *flashing and gleaming in his bronze armor.* For a further description see III, 467–468.

**471–475. quālis est coluber ubi, pāstus mala grāmina, quem tumidum frīgida brūma sub terrā tegēbat, nunc novus, exuviīs positīs, nitidusque juventā, in lūcem (ēvādēns) sublātō pectore arduus ad sōlem lūbrica terga convolvit, et linguīs trisulcīs (in) ōre micat.** **mala grāmina pāstus:** the ancients thought that serpents derived their venom from feeding on poisonous herbs (**mala grāmina**). **tumidum:** with venom. **positīs:** *shed.* **linguīs trisulcīs:** abl. of means; App. 331; the ancients thought that the serpent's tongue had three forks.

**478. tēctō (Priamī):** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**479. Ipse (Pyrrhus):** see the note on **ipsius**, I, 114. **correptā bipennī:** abl. abs. or means; App. 343, 331.

**479–480. correptā dūra bipennī līmina:** interlocked order; App. 442. **līmina:** *the doors.*

**482. lātō ōre:** *wide-mouthed;* abl. of quality; App. 330.

Appāret *domus* intus *et* ātria *longa* patēscunt,
appārent *Priamī et* veterum penetrālia *rēgum*,
armātōs*que vident stantīs in līmine prīmō*.
*At domus* interior gemitū *miserōque* tumultū
miscētur, penitus*que* cavae plangōribus aedēs
fēmineīs ululant; ferit aurea *sīdera clāmor*.
*Tum* pavidae *tēctīs mātrēs ingentibus errant*
amplexae*que tenent* postīs *atque* ōscula fīgunt.
Īnstat *vī patriā* Pyrrhus; *nec* claustra *nec ipsī*
custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō
jānua, *et* ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
Fit *via vī;* rumpunt aditūs *prīmōsque* trucīdant
immissī *Danaī et* lātē *loca* mīlite complent.

**aditus, ūs** *m.* approach, entrance†
**aedēs, ium** *f.* house, home†
**amplector, ī, exus** embrace, encompass*
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear
**ariēs, etis** *m.* (battering) ram†
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**ātrium,** (i)ī *n.* great hall, atrium
**aureus, a, um** golden, (of) gold*
**cardō, inis** *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**claustrum, ī** *n.* bolt, fastening, barrier
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, repcated*
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move from†
**fēmineus, a, um** feminine, women's†
**feriō, īre** strike, smite, beat, kill
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, fasten, print*
**fīō, fierī, factus** become, be made
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let in†
**īnstō, āre, stitī** press on, urge on
**interior, ius** inner, interior
**intus** within, inside
**jānua, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrancc†
**labō** (1) totter, waver, vacillate
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**mīles, itis** *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**ōsculum, ī** *n.* dainty lips; kiss
**patēscō, ere, uī** open up, be revealed
**pavidus, a, um** fearful, frightened†
**penetrālia, ium** *n.* chamber, sanctuary, inner room
**penitus** (deep) within, inside, completely*
**plangor, ōris** *m.* clamor, wailing, beating (of the breast), shriek†
**postis, is** *m.* post, door, gate
**prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** fall, sink
**Pyrrhus, ī** *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**sufferō, ferre, sustulī, sublātus** withstand, endure†
**trucīdō** (1) slay, slaughter, butcher†
**tumultus, ūs** *m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub
**ululō** (1) howl, shriek, wail†
**valeō, ēre, uī** be strong, avail, be able†
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*

**483. ātria:** Vergil has in mind the general arrangement of a Roman house rather than that of an ancient Trojan palace.

**483–484. Appāret, appārent:** rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

**485. armātōs (Teucrōs):** mentioned in ll. 449–450. **(Danaī) vident.**

**486. domus interior:** *the inner house = the interior of the house;* App. 246; contrasted with the scene at the entrance (**in līmine prīmō**).

**488. ferit sīdera clāmor:** hyperbole; App. 428.

**489.** (in) **tēctīs.**

**490. ōscula:** of farewell.

**491. vī patriā:** *with his father's might,* **patriā = patris = Achillis** (gen.).

**492. sufferre (Pyrrhum). ariete crēbrō:** abl. of means; App. 331; *with the frequent (battering) ram, with the repeated blows of the battering ram;* **ariete,** pronounced **arjete** here, that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.

**493. cardine:** abl. of separation with **ēmōtī;** App. 340.

**494. via vī:** alliteration; App. 411. **aditūs:** acc. of effect; App. 307; cf. "he broke a hole in the ice." **prīmōs (virōs):** mentioned in l. 485.

*Nōn sīc,* aggeribus ruptīs *cum* spūmeus amnis
exiit oppositās*que* ēvīcit gurgite mōlēs,
*fertur in arva furēns* cumulō *campōsque per omnīs*
*cum* stabulīs armenta *trahit. Vīdī ipse furentem*
caede Neoptolemum *geminōsque in līmine* Atrīdās,
*vīdī* Hecubam centum*que* nurūs *Priamumque per ārās*
*sanguine* foedantem *quōs ipse* sacrāverat *ignīs.*
Quīnquāgintā *illī* thalamī, spēs ampla nepōtum,
barbaricō postēs *aurō* spoliīs*que* superbī
procubuēre; *tenent Danaī* quā dēficit *ignis.*
Forsitan *et Priamī fuerint quae fāta* requīrās.
*Urbis utī captae cāsum* convulsa*que vīdit*
*līmina tēctōrum et medium in* penetrālibus hostem,

---

**agger, eris** *m.* mound, heap, dike, dam
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream, torrent†*
**amplus, a, um** ample, full, spacious, wide
**armentum, ī** *n.* herd, flock, drove, cattle
**Atrīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaüs
**barbaricus, a, um** barbaric, foreign†
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
**centum** hundred*
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear up, shatter
**cumulus, ī** *m.* heap, mass, pile
**dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** fail, be lacking†
**ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus** overcome, surmount†
**exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** go forth, depart
**foedō** (1) defile, pollute, disfigure
**fors(it)an** perhaps, possibly, perchance†
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirlpool, abyss, gulf*
**Hecuba, ae** *f.* wife of Priam†
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, structure, dike*
**Neoptolemus, ī** *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**nurus, ūs** *f.* daughter(-in-law)†
**oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus** oppose, place against
**penetrālia, ium** *n.* chamber, sanctuary, inner room
**postis, is** *m.* post, door, gate
**prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** fall (forward), sink
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way
**quīnquāgintā** fifty
**requīrō, ere, sīvī, sītus** ask, seek
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**sacrō** (1) hallow, consecrate, dedicate*
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**spolium,** (i)ī *n.* spoils, booty, plunder
**spūmeus, a, um** foamy, frothy
**stabulum, ī** *n.* stable, stall, abode†
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**thalamus, ī** *m.* marriage chamber, bedroom†*

---

**496–498. Nōn sīc spūmeus amnis fertur** = *not so* (*furiously*) *does a foaming river rush onward;* litotes and a simile; App. 431, 441. **exiit:** from its channel. **fertur furēns, cumulō campōs:** double alliteration; App. 411. **cumulō:** abl. of manner; App. 328; as in I, 105.

**500. caede:** abl. of manner with **furentem;** App. 328, *a.*

**501. nurūs:** daughters and daughters-in-law; Priam and Hecuba had fifty of each.

**502. foedantem ignīs.**

**503. illī:** *those famous,* as often. **thalamī:** of Priam's fifty sons and their wives.

**504. aurō spoliīsque:** abl. of means or cause limiting **superbī;** App. 331, 332. **barbaricō:** from a Roman or Greek point of view; *foreign.*

**505. prōcubuēre** = **prōcubuērunt;** App. 204, 4.

**506–558. Hecuba and Priam take refuge at the altar in the court of the palace, but Priam is nevertheless ruthlessly slain by Pyrrhus.**

**506. quae fuerint Priamī fāta:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **requīrās:** potential subjunctive; or it may be taken as a subjunctive in an indirect question introduced by **an** and dependent upon **fors sit** (in **forsitan**); **sit** would then be a potential subjunctive.

*arma* diū senior dēsuēta trementibus aevō
circumdat nēquīquam *umerīs et* inūtile *ferrum*
cingitur, *ac* dēnsōs *fertur* moritūrus *in* hostīs.
Aedibus *in mediīs* nūdō*que sub* aetheris axe
*ingēns āra fuit* juxtā*que* veterrima laurus
incumbēns *ārae atque umbrā* complexa penātīs.
*Hīc* Hecuba *et* nātae nēquīquam altāria *circum,*
praecipitēs *ātrā* ceu tempestāte columbae,
condēnsae *et dīvum* amplexae simulācra sedēbant.
*Ipsum* autem sūmptīs *Priamum* juvenālibus *armīs*
*ut vīdit, 'Quae mēns* tam dīra, *miserrime conjūnx,*
impulit *hīs* cingī *tēlīs? Aut quō ruis?'* inquit.
*'Nōn tālī* auxiliō *nec* dēfēnsōribus istīs
*tempus* eget; *nōn, sī ipse meus nunc adforet* Hector.

---

**aedēs, ium** *f.* house, home
**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether
**aevum, ī** *n.* age, life, time, eternity
**altāria, ium** *n.* altar†
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold*
**autem** but, however, moreover*
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* aid, help, assistance*
**axis, is** *m.* axle, axis; height†
**ceu** (just) as, as if
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird, encircle*
**circumdō, dare, dedī, datus** surround, place around (*dat.*)
**columba, ae** *f.* dove, pigeon†
**complector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold
**condēnsus, a, um** crowded, thick, dense†
**dēfēnsor, ōris** *m.* defender, protector†
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense*
**dēsuētus, a, um** unaccustomed, unused
**dīrus, a, um** dire, awful, dreadful*
**diū** a long time, long
**egeō, ēre, uī** need, lack, require (*abl.*)
**Hector, oris** *m.* Trojan leader, son of Priam and Hecuba*
**Hecuba, ae** *f.* wife of Priam
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** urge, drive
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** lean (on, over) (*dat.*)
**inquam, is, it** say*
**inūtilis, e** useless, futile, valueless†
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)†*
**juvenālis, e** youthful, of a young man†
**juxtā** next, close at hand†*
**laurus, ī (ūs)** *f.* laurel (tree)†
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**nāta, ae** *f.* daughter
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**nūdus, a, um** naked, bare, nude, open
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, precipitate*
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit*
**senior, ōris** *m.* old (aged) man, sire†
**simulācrum, ī** *n.* image, statue, likeness
**sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take, assume
**tam** so (much), such*
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* tempest, storm; season*
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**vetus, eris** ancient, old, aged, former*

---

**509–510. senior** (Priamus) **umerīs trementibus aevō arma diū dēsuēta nēquīquam circumdat. senior:** with the intensive meaning of the comparative, *though a very old man.*

**510. umerīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **ferrum:** obj. of the middle verb **cingitur,** *he girds on his sword;* App. 309.

**512. Aedibus in mediīs:** *in the inner court of the palace,* open to the sky; App. 246. As usual in such descriptions, the details are those of a wealthy Roman house of Vergil's own time.

**514. ārae:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**515. altāria circum = circum altāria:** App. 414.

**516. ātrā tempestāte:** abl. of means with the verbal idea implied in **praecipitēs.**

**517. dīv(ōr)um.**

**518. sūmptīs armīs:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**520. (tē) impulit. cingī:** middle, *to gird yourself;* App. 309.

**521. auxiliō, dēfēnsōribus:** ablatives with **eget;** App. 340. The idea seems to be: "human strength is unavailing, and only the gods and their sacred altars can protect us now."

**522. adforet = adesset:** condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

*Hūc tandem* concēde; *haec āra* tuēbitur *omnīs,*
*aut* morière *simul.' Sīc ōre* effāta recēpit
*ad sēsē et sacrā* longaevum *in sēde* locāvit.
Ecce autem ēlāpsus Pyrrhī *dē* caede Polītēs,
*ūnus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per* hostīs
porticibus *longīs fugit et* vacua ātria lūstrat
saucius. *Illum ardēns* īnfēstō vulnere Pyrrhus
īnsequitur, *jam jamque manū tenet et* premit hastā.
*Ut tandem ante oculōs* ēvāsit *et ōra parentum,*
concidit *ac multō vītam cum sanguine fūdit.*
*Hīc Priamus,* quamquam *in mediā jam morte tenētur,*
*nōn* tamen abstinuit *nec vōcī īraeque* pepercit:
'*At tibi* prō scelere,' exclāmat, 'prō *tālibus* ausīs
*dī, si qua est caelō* pietās *quae tālia* cūret,
persolvant grātēs dignās *et* praemia reddant

---

**abstineō, ēre, uī, tentus** refrain, restrain†
**ātrium, (i)ī** *n.* great hall, atrium
**ausum, ī** *n.* daring deed, daring†
**autem** but, however, moreover*
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
**concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, come
**concidō, ere, ī** fall (in a heap)†
**cūrō** (1) regard, care (for), heed†
**dignus, a, um** worthy, suitable, fit(ting)
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak, utter, say†
**ēlābor, ī, lāpsus** slip out, escape
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** escape, come forth
**exclāmō** (1) cry (out), shout, exclaim†
**grātēs, ium** *f.* thanks, requital, reward
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear, lance, dart
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**īnfēstus, a, um** hostile, threatening†
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, pursue*
**locō** (1) place, establish, locate*
**longaevus, a, um** aged, very old†
**lūstrō** (1) traverse; survey; purify*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus** spare (*dat.*)
**persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** pay fully
**pietās, ātis** *f.* loyalty, righteousness, justice, sense of duty, nobility*
**Polītēs, ae** *m.* son of Priam, slain by Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus)†
**porticus, ūs** *f.* colonnade, corridor, portico†
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, pierce*
**prō** for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
**Pyrrhus, ī** *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
**quamquam** although, however, but
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, accept*
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, render*
**saucius, a, um** wounded, hurt
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus)** protect, watch*
**vacuus, a, um** empty, vacant, free†
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

**523. concēde:** imp.; *come here.* **(nōs) omnīs.**

**524. morière** = **moriēris,** fut. 2nd sing.; App. 204, 4. **simul (cum nōbīs). ōre:** picturesque pleonasm; App. 438. **recēpit (longaevum Priamum).**

**525. sacrā in sēde** = **in ārā.**

**526. Pyrrhī:** subj. gen. with **caede;** App. 284.

**528. porticibus:** around the inner court of the palace; abl. of the route; App. 338.

**529. Illum: Polītēn. īnfēstō vulnere:** *with hostile weapon* (which would inflict a wound).

**530. (illum) tenet et (illum) premit. jam jam:** rhetorical repetition to portray the excited anticipation of Pyrrhus and the frenzied fear of Polites; App. 413.

**531. ante oculōs et ōra parentum.**

**534. vōcī īraeque:** datives with special verb; App. 297.

**535–537. At dī tibi persolvant grātēs** ( = **grātiās**) **dignās. (in) caelō. quae**

dēbita, *quī nātī* cōram *mē cernere* lētum
*fēcistī et patriōs* foedāstī fūnere vultūs.
*At nōn ille*, satum *quō tē* mentīris, Achillēs
*tālis in* hoste *fuit Priamō; sed* jūra fidem*que*
supplicis ērubuit *corpusque* exsangue sepulcrō
reddidit Hectoreum *mēque in mea rēgna* remīsit.'
*Sīc fātus* senior *tēlumque* imbelle sine ictū
conjēcit, raucō *quod* prōtinus aere repulsum,
*et summō* clipeī nēquīquam umbōne pependit.
*Cui* Pyrrhus: '*Referēs* ergō *haec et* nuntius *ībis*
Pēlīdae *genitōrī. Illī mea trīstia* facta
dēgeneremq*ue* Neoptolemum nārrāre mementō.

**Achillēs, is** (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze*
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl, shoot†
**cōram** before the face, face to face
**dēbitus, a, um** due, owed, destined†
**dēgener, eris** degenerate, ignoble, base†
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**ērubēscō, ere, ērubuī** reverence, blush (before)†
**exsanguis, e** bloodless, lifeless, pale
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, exploit, undertaking*
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, fidelity, reliance*
**foedō** (1) defile, pollute, disfigure
**fūnus, eris** *n.* death, funeral, disaster*
**Hectoreus, a, um** of Hector, Trojan leader, son of Priam
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**ictus, ūs** *m.* stroke, blow, wound†
**imbellis, e** unwarlike, harmless†
**jūs, jūris** *n.* law, right, justice
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**meminī, isse** remember, recall
**mentior, īrī, ītus** lie, deceive, pretend
**nārrō** (1) relate, recount, report, narrate†
**Neoptolemus, ī** *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**nuntius, (i)ī** *m.* messenger, message†
**Pēlīdēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Peleus, Achilles†
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang*
**prōtinus** immediately, forthwith
**Pyrrhus, ī** *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
**raucus, a, um** hoarse, sounding, clanging†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, render*
**remittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send back†
**repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus** drive back, repel
**senior, ōris** *m.* old (aged) man, sire
**sepulcrum, ī** *n.* tomb, burial†
**serō, ere, sēvī, satus** sow, beget†*
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**supplex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) suppliant*
**umbō, ōnis** *m.* boss, knob, shield†
**vultus, ūs** *m.* face, countenance, gaze*

**cūret**: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **persolvant, reddant**: opt.; App. 253. **grātēs**: *reward, requital.*

**538.** (tibi) quī. mē cernere = ut cernam: depends on fēcistī.

**539.** foedā(vi)stī. fūnere (nātī).

**540.** ille: *that famous*, as often. (ex) quō mentīris tē (esse) satum. mentīris: *you falsely say.* quō: abl. of source; App. 323.

**541.** After the death of Hector, Priam had ransomed his corpse from Achilles. Cf. I, 483–484. in hoste Priamō: *in the case of, toward his enemy Priam;* Priam's use of his own name adds a touch of pathos.

**542.** sepulcrō: dat. of purpose; App. 303.

**543.** Hectoreum = Hectoris: an adj. for a gen. is a common usage.

**544.** Sīc fātus (est) senior.

**545.** repulsum (est).

**546.** (dē) summō umbōne: App. 246; Priam's spear had stuck in the top of the boss of Pyrrhus's shield and now hung there harmless.

**547.** Pyrrhus (dīxit). Referēs et ībis: hysteron proteron; App. 429; the futures are here used with the force of imperatives, *go and tell;* App. 351, 3, *a.* nuntius: (*as*) *a messenger.*

**548.** (meō) genitōrī = Achillī.

**548–549.** mea trīstia facta dēgeneremque Neoptolemum: ironical and mocking.

**549.** mementō: imp.

*Nunc* morere.' *Hoc dīcēns* altāria *ad ipsa* trementem
*trāxit et in multō* lāpsantem *sanguine nātī*,
implicuit*que* comam laevā, *dextrāque* coruscum
extulit *ac* laterī capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.
*Haec fīnis Priamī fātōrum, hic* exitus *illum*
sorte *tulit Trojam* incēnsam *et* prōlāpsa *videntem*
Pergama, tot *quondam* populīs *terrīsque* superbum
rēgnātōrem Asiae. Jacet *ingēns lītore* truncus,
āvulsum*que umerīs caput et* sine *nōmine corpus.*
*At mē tum prīmum* saevus circumstetit horror.
Obstipuī; *subiit* cārī *genitōris* imāgō,
*ut rēgem* aequaevum crūdēlī vulnere *vīdī*
*vītam* exhālantem; *subiit* dēserta Creūsa
*et* dīrepta *domus et* parvī *cāsus* Iūlī.

**abdō, ere, didī, ditus** hide, bury
**aequaevus, a, um** of equal age†
**altāria, ium** *n.* altar
**Asia, ae** *f.* Asia (Minor)
**āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear from
**capulus, ī** *m.* hilt, handle, head†
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**circumstō, āre, stetī** surround, stand around†
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**coruscus, a, um** flashing, bright, waving
**Creūsa, ae** *f.* wife of Aeneas, lost at the sack of Troy†
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bloody, bitter*
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dīripiō, ere, uī, reptus** plunder, ravage
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** raise, lift*
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**exhālō** (1) breathe out, exhale†
**exitus, ūs** *m.* exit, issue, end†
**horror, ōris** *m.* shudder(ing), horror, alarm
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, picture, likeness*
**implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus)** entwine
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** burn, fire*
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**laeva, ae** *f.* left hand
**lāpsō, āre** slip, stumble, totter, fall†
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**obstipēscō, ere, stipuī** be dazed, stand agape*
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**prōlābor, ī, lāpsus** slide, fall, perish†
**rēgnātor, ōris** *m.* ruler, sovereign, lord†
**saevus, a, um** cruel, stern, fierce*
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, fate, destiny; oracle*
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**tenus,** to, up to, as far as (*abl.*)
**tot** so many*
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, shake, quiver*
**truncus, ī** *m.* trunk, body, torso†
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

**550. morere:** imp. **altāria ad ipsa:** an act of unspeakable impiety. **trementem (Priamum):** from old age and anger, not from fear.

**551. lāpsantem sanguine nātī:** a touch of pathos.

**552–553. coruscum (ēnsem). laterī = in latus:** dat. of direction; App. 306.

**554. Haec (fuit) fīnis: Haec** is attracted to the gender of the predicate, **fīnis,** which is here feminine, though ordinarily masculine. **hic(c) exitus (vītae).**

**556. populīs terrīsque:** ablatives of cause with **superbum;** App. 332.

**557. Asiae:** obj. gen. with **rēgnātōrem;** App. 284. **(in) lītore:** his headless corpse is thrown out on the beach for the dogs and birds to devour. It is said that Vergil here has in mind the fate of Pompey, once one of the world's most powerful men; he was defeated in battle, lost his power, and was finally beheaded in Egypt, where his body was cast out and allowed to lie on the beach.

**559–566. The sight of Priam so brutally slain reminds Aeneas of the danger of his own aged father, Anchises, and of his wife and child.**

**560. subiit (meam mentem).**

**561. aequaevum:** Anchises was of about the same age as Priam.

**563. dīrepta:** in my imagination. **domus:** nom. sing. with the final syllable

Respiciō *et quae sit mē circum* cōpia lūstrō.
Dēseruēre *omnēs* dēfessī, *et corpora* saltū
*ad terram mīsēre aut ignibus* aegra *dedēre.*
*Jamque* adeō *super ūnus eram, cum līmina* Vestae
*servantem et* tacitam sēcrētā *in sēde* latentem
Tyndarida aspiciō; *dant* clāra incendia *lūcem*
*errantī* passim*que oculōs per cūncta ferentī.*
*Illa sibi* īnfēstōs ēversa ob Pergama *Teucrōs*
*et poenās Danaum et* dēsertī *conjugis īrās*
praemetuēns, *Trojae et* patriae commūnis Erīnys,
abdiderat *sēsē atque ārīs* invīsa sedēbat.
Exarsēre *ignēs animō; subit īra* cadentem

---

**abdō, ere, didī, ditus** hide, bury
**adeō** indeed, so much, truly
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary, wretched*
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look (at)*
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**commūnis, e** common, mutual, general†
**cōpia, ae** *f.* abundance, plenty, forces
**dēfessus, a, um** tired, weary, worn
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**Erīnys, yos** *f.* Fury, Curse
**ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, destroy
**exardēscō, ere, arsī, arsus** blaze (up)†
**incendium, (i)ī** *n.* blaze, conflagration
**īnfēstus, a, um** hostile, threatening
**invīsus, a, um** hated, hateful, odious
**lateō, ēre, uī** hide, lie hid, lurk*
**lūstrō** (1) survey; traverse; purify*
**ob** on account of, for (*acc.*)
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**praemetuō, ere** fear beforehand†
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look back†*
**saltus, ūs** *m.* leap, bound, dancing†
**sēcrētus, a, um** remote, hidden, secret
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit*
**tacitus, a, um** silent, still, quiet
**Tyndaris, idis** *f.* daughter of Tyndarus, Helen†
**Vesta, ae** *f.* goddess of the hearth

---

long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a.*

**564. Respiciō:** Aeneas on the roof of the palace had been so fascinated in looking down on the murder of Priam that he had forgotten all else. He now looks around for his followers and finds them gone. **quae cōpia (virōrum). sit:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **mē circum = circum mē:** App. 414.

**565. saltū:** abl. of means or manner.

**565–566. dēseruēre, mīsēre, dedēre = dēseruērunt, mīsērunt, dedērunt.**

**566. aegra (corpora):** *wearied and wounded (bodies).*

**567–633. Seeing that all is lost, Aeneas turns to go, when he catches sight of Helen, the cause of all the trouble, crouching just inside a temple of Vesta. He prepares to kill her but is restrained by his mother, Venus, who appears and urges him to hurry home to protect his family.**

**567–588.** The best manuscripts of Vergil do not have these lines, and many scholars consider the passage spurious, as they are inconsistent with VI, 494–530. This inconsistency may be due to the unfinished condition of the poem or to the unaccountable caprice of the poet.

**567. super:** adv. to be taken with **eram. ūnus supereram:** *I alone survived.*

**569. Tyndarida:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68. **clāra incendia lūcem dant:** explains why Aeneas could see Helen.

**570.** (mihi) errantī.

**571–573. Illa, commūnis Erīnys Trojae et patriae (suae), praemetuēns Teucrōs īnfēstōs sibi,** etc. **Dana(ōr)um:** subj. gen.; App. 284. **dēsertī conjugis īrās:** Menelaüs's anger.

**574.** (in) ārīs. (Tyndaris) invīsa (ab omnibus) sedēbat.

**575. ignēs (īrae). Exarsēre = exarsērunt. (in meō) animō. subit (mē) ulcīscī et sūmere:** the infinitives are complementary, depending on the idea of wishing implied in **īra,** *the angry desire;* App. 259, 264.

ulcīscī patriam *et* scelerātās sūmere *poenās.*
'Scīlicet *haec* Spartam incolumis *patriāsque* Mycēnās
aspiciet, partō*que* *ībit rēgīna* triumphō,
conjugium*que* *domumque patris nātōsque vidēbit*
Īliadum turbā *et* Phrygiīs comitāta ministrīs?
Occiderit *ferrō Priamus? Troja arserit ignī?*
Dardanium totiēns sūdārit *sanguine lītus?*
*Nōn* ita. *Namque* etsī *nūllum* memorābile *nōmen*
fēmineā *in poenā est nec habet* victōria laudem,
exstīnxisse nefās tamen *et* sūmpsisse merentīs
laudābor *poenās, animumque* explēsse juvābit
ultrīcis *flammae et* cinerēs satiāsse *meōrum.'*

---

**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look (at)*
**cinis, eris** *m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the dead)*
**comitō** (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow
**conjugium,** (i)ī *n.* marriage; husband†
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**etsī** although, even if†
**expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill (with), sate (*gen.*)
**exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** extinguish, destroy†
**fēmineus, a, um** of (over) a woman, feminine
**Īlias, adis** *f.* Trojan woman
**incolumis, e** safe, sound, unharmed
**ita** thus, so
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**laudō** (1) praise, commend, laud, extol†
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**memorābilis, e** memorable, glorious†
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**minister, trī** *m.* attendant, servant
**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* a city of Greece, home of Agamemnon
**nefās** *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, impious wretch*
**occidō, ere, ī, cāsus** fall, sink, die†
**pariō, ere, peperī, partus** gain, produce†
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**satiō** (1) satisfy, sate, satiate, glut†
**scelerātus, a, um** criminal, wicked, infamous
**scīlicet** doubtless, of course, forsooth†
**Sparta, ae** *f.* country of Greece, home of Helen and Menelaüs†
**sūdō** (1) sweat, perspire†
**sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take, exact
**tamen** however, nevertheless, moreover*
**totiēns** so many times
**triumphus, ī** *m.* triumph, victory†
**turba, ae** *f.* mob, crowd, throng; tumult
**ulcīscor, ī, ultus** avenge; punish†
**ultrīx, īcis** avenging, vengeful†
**victōria, ae** *f.* victory, conquest, triumph†

---

**576. sūmere:** *exact, inflict.* **scelerātās poenās = sceleris poenās:** *punishment of (for) her crime.*

**577. Scīlicet:** *forsooth;* ironical; App. 430.

**578. partō triumphō:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**579. conjugium = conjugem.**

**580. turbā, ministrīs:** ablatives of accompaniment with the participle **comitāta,** which here has a passive meaning; App. 321.

**581–582. Occiderit, arserit, sūdā(ve)rit:** fut. perfects; i.e., shall she return in triumph home when all Troy has perished?

**583. Nōn ita (erit):** *it shall not be!* See App. 351, 3, *a.*

**584. fēmineā in poenā:** the adj. is here equivalent to the obj. gen.; App. 284; *punishment (exacted) of a woman.* **(fēminea) victōria:** *victory over a woman.*

**585–586. exstīnxisse nefās laudābor:** *I shall be praised for having destroyed that abomination;* i.e., Helen. **merentīs poenās = meritās poenās:** *deserved punishment.*

**586. (mē) juvābit:** used impersonally, with **explē(vi)sse et satiā(vi)sse** as its subject; App. 258.

**587. flammae:** gen. with the special verb, **explē(vi)sse,** *to have sated my soul with the vengeful flame;* App. 287. **meōrum:** substantively, *of my people.*

*Tālia* jactābam *et* furiātā *mente ferēbar,*
*cum mihi sē, nōn ante oculīs* tam clāra, *videndam*
obtulit *et* pūrā *per noctem in lūce* refulsit
alma *parēns,* cōnfessa *deam* quālis*que vidērī*
caelicolīs *et* quanta solet, *dextrāque* prehēnsum
continuit roseō*que haec* īnsuper addidit *ōre:*
'*Nāte, quis* indomitās *tantus* dolor excitat *īrās?*
*Quid furis aut* quōnam *nostrī tibi cūra* recessit?
*Nōn* prius aspiciēs *ubi fessum* aetāte *parentem*
līqueris *Anchīsēn,* superet *conjūnxne* Creūsa
Ascanius*que puer? Quōs omnīs* undique Grajae
circum *errant* aciēs *et,* nī *mea cūra* resistat,
*jam flammae tulerint* inimīcus *et* hauserit ēnsis.

---

**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge; battle line, army*
**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**aetās, ātis** *f.* age, (time of) life, time
**almus, a, um** nurturing, kind(ly)
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look (at)*
**caelicola, ae** *m.* (*f.*) divinity, deity†
**circum** around, about†
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**cōnfiteor, ērī, fessus** confess, reveal†
**contineō, ēre, uī, tentus** hold together, restrain, check†
**Creūsa, ae** *f.* wife of Aeneas, lost at the sack of Troy
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, anger, pain, passion*
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**excitō** (1) arouse, stir up, excite†
**furiō** (1) madden, frenzy, infuriate
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drain, drink; destroy
**indomitus, a, um** uncontrolled, ungovernable
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly
**īnsuper** in addition, above
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, ponder, blurt out*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, forsake*
**nisi, nī** unless, if not*
**offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus** present
**pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** seize, grasp
**prius** sooner, before, first
**pūrus, a, um** pure, bright, clean, clear†
**quālis, e** (such) as, of what sort*
**quantus, a, um** as great as, how great*
**quōnam** whither, where on earth†
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart, retire, withdraw
**refulgeō, ēre, lsī, lsus** shine, gleam
**resistō, ere, stitī** resist, oppose
**roseus, a, um** rosy, red, pink
**soleō, ēre, itus sum** be accustomed
**superō** (1) overcome, surmount, survive*
**tam** so (much), such*
**undique** everywhere, from all sides*

---

**588. Tālia (dicta).**

**589–591. cum (mea) alma parēns nōn ante tam clāra (meīs) oculīs obtulit sē mihi videndam. videndam:** the gerundive expressing purpose, *to be seen;* App. 268. **alma parēns Aenēae** = Venus. **cōnfessa (sē esse) deam.**

**591–593. caelicolīs:** dat. with **vidērī. quālis, quanta:** the gods surpassed human beings in form and stature. **dextrā mē prehēnsum continuit:** *grasped me by my right hand and held me back;* Aeneas had already raised his sword to strike Helen.

**593–594. haec (dicta). Nāte:** voc. (tuās) **īrās. quis:** the regular form of the interrog. adj. is **quī;** App. 111, *a.*

**595. nostrī:** *for me* (and mine); obj. gen.; App. 284, 247, *a.* Venus thus identifies herself with the family of Aeneas. **tibi:** ethical dat. or dat. of reference; App. 300, 301.

**596–597. Nōn = nōnne. ubi:** *in what condition.* **ubi . . . līqueris, conjūnxne superet:** indir. questions; App. 349.

**598. Quōs omnīs circum = circum quōs omnīs;** App. 414.

**599–600. nī resistat, (eōs) tulerint, (eōs) hauserit:** condit. and conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382, *c.*

*Nōn tibi* Tyndaridis faciēs invīsa Lacaenae
culpātus*ve* Paris, *dīvum* inclēmentia, *dīvum*,
*hās* ēvertit opēs sternit*que ā* culmine *Trojam*.
Aspice (*namque omnem, quae nunc* obducta tuentī
mortālīs hebetat vīsūs *tibi et* ūmida *circum*
cālīgat, nūbem *ēripiam; tū nē qua parentis*
jussa timē neu praeceptīs pārēre recūsā):
*hīc, ubi* disjectās mōlēs āvulsa*que saxīs*
*saxa vidēs*, mixtō*que* undantem pulvere fūmum,
Neptūnus mūrōs *magnōque* ēmōta tridentī
fundāmenta quatit *tōtamque ā sēdibus urbem*

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)*
āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear from
cālīgō, āre, āvī be dark, darken†
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
culpō (1) blame, censure, reprove†
disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw apart, scatter
ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove, upheave
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, destroy
faciēs, ēī *f.* face, appearance, form*
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fog, fume†
fundāmentum, ī *n.* foundation, base
hebetō (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken†
inclēmentia, ae *f.* cruelty, harshness†
invīsus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
Lacaenus, a, um Laconian, of Laconia (Sparta), a district of southern Greece, home of Helen†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, burden*
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
nēve, neu neither, nor, or not
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
obdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw over†
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)
Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
praeceptum, ī *n.* advice, instruction
pulvis, eris *m.* dust
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter†
recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew, spread*
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of Neptune
tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus) watch, protect*
Tyndaris, idis *f.* daughter of Tyndarus, Helen
ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, dewy
undō (1) swell, roll, wave†
vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, view, aspect, vision

**601.** **tibi**: ethical dat. or dat. of reference. **nōn Tyndaridis faciēs (hās opēs ēvertit)**.

**602.** **dīv(ōr)um, dīv(ōr)um**: rhetorical repetition; App. 413; emphasizing that it is the vengeance of the gods, not Helen's beauty, which is responsible for the destruction of Troy. Juno and Minerva were vengeful toward Troy because of the adverse Judgment of Paris, while Neptune was angry at being cheated by Laomedon; see note on l. 610.

**604.** **Aspice**: imp.

**604–606.** **namque ēripiam omnem nūbem, quae nunc obducta hebetat mortālīs vīsūs tibi tuentī, et (ēripiam omnem nūbem quae) ūmida circum (tē)**. **tibi** is dat. of reference with **hebetat vīsūs**; App. 301. **(quae) ūmida circum (tē) cālīgat**: *which spreads a dark veil of mist around (you)*.

**606.** **parentis**: use of the noun, instead of the personal pronoun, **meī**, for rhetorical effect.

**606–607.** **tū**: emphatic; App. 247. **nē timē, neu recūsā**: the pres. imp. with **nē** is chiefly poetical; App. 256, *a*. **praeceptīs**: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**609.** **mixtō pulvere**: abl. abs.

**610.** **Neptūnus**: Neptune and Apollo had built the walls of Troy for Laomedon, father of Priam. When the work was finished, Laomedon not only refused to pay the gods the price agreed upon, but expelled them from his kingdom. Neptune is now getting his revenge by destroying the walls he had built.

ēruit. *Hīc Jūnō* Scaeās saevissima portās
*prīma tenet* sociumque *furēns ā nāvibus agmen*
*ferrō* accīncta *vocat.*
*Jam summās arcēs* Trītōnia, respice, Pallas
īnsēdit limbō effulgēns *et* Gorgone saevā.
*Ipse pater Danaīs animōs vīrīsque* secundās
sufficit, *ipse deōs in* Dardana suscitat *arma.*
*Ēripe, nāte, fugam fīnemque* impōne *labōrī.*
Nūsquam aberō *et* tūtum *patriō tē līmine* sistam.'
*Dīxerat et* spissīs *noctis sē* condidit *umbrīs.*
Appārent dīrae faciēs inimīcaque *Trojae*
*nūmina magna deum.*
*Tum* vērō *omne mihī vīsum* cōnsīdere *in ignīs*
Īlium *et ex īmō* vertī Neptūnia *Troja;*
*ac* velutī *summīs antīquam in montibus* ornum
*cum ferrō* accīsam crēbrīsque bipennibus īnstant
ēruere agricolae certātim; *illa* ūsque minātur

---

**absum, esse, āfuī** be absent, be distant
**accīdō, ere, ī, sus** cut, hew†
**accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird, equip
**agricola, ae** *m.* farmer, rustic†
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear
**bipennis, is** *f.* double ax
**certātim** in rivalry, zealously†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, hide*
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** settle, sink*
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, incessant*
**Dardanus, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan†
**dīrus, a, um** dire, fearful, dreadful*
**effulgeō, ēre, lsī** flash, glitter, gleam†
**ēruō, ere, uī, utus** overthrow, tear up
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* face, form, appearance*
**Gorgō, onis** *f.* Gorgon, a monster with serpent locks and the power of turning beholders into stone; the head of one of them, Medusa, was fixed on the Aegis, the serpent-fringed shield of Minerva†
**Īlium, (i)ī** *n.* Ilium, Troy
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place (on) (*dat.*)*
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly
**īnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit in (on), occupy
**īnstō, āre, stitī** press, urge (on)
**limbus, ī** *m.* border, hem, fringe†
**minor, ārī, ātus** threaten, menace; tower
**Neptūnius, a, um** of Neptune, god of the sea†
**nūsquam** nowhere, never
**ornus, ī** *f.* ash (tree)†
**Pallas, adis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look back (at)*
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**Scaeus, a, um** Scaean, name of chief gate at Troy†
**secundus, a, um** favorable, prosperous, second*
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** stand, set(tle), stop
**socius, a, um** allied, associated, friendly
**spissus, a, um** thick, dense, crowded†
**sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** supply, suffuse
**suscitō** (1) arouse, stir up, excite†
**Trītōnius, a, um** Tritonian
**tūtus, a, um** safe, secure, protected*
**ūsque** continuously, constantly†
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, change*

---

**612–613. Jūnō prīma** (*as leader, foremost*) **furēns.**

**613. socium agmen** (Danaōrum).

**615. respice:** imp.

**617. Ipse pater** (Juppiter).

**618. in:** *against.*

**619. Ēripe:** imp. (tuam) **fugam,** (tuō) **labōrī.**

**620. (in) līmine patriō:** *at your father's threshold, on your father's doorstep.*

**622. dīrae faciēs** (deōrum): made visible to Aeneas by his mother's magic power, ll. 604–606.

**623. de(ōr)um.**

**624. vīsum** (est) **cōnsīdere in ignīs:** *seemed to sink into flames.*

**625. Neptūnia Troja:** because, according to the myth, Neptune had built the walls of Troy. See the note on l. 610.

**626–628. ac velutī cum agricolae in**

*et* tremefacta comam concussō vertice nūtat,
vulneribus dōnec paulātim ēvicta *suprēmum*
congemuit *trāxitque* jugīs āvulsa ruīnam.
Dēscendō *ac dūcente deō flammam inter et* hostīs
expedior: *dant tēla locum flammaeque* recēdunt.
*Atque ubi jam patriae* perventum *ad līmina sēdis*
*antīquāsque domōs, genitor, quem tollere in altōs*
optābam *prīmum montīs prīmumque petēbam,*
abnegat excīsā *vītam* prōdūcere *Trojā*
exsilium*que* patī. *'Vōs Ō, quibus* integer aevī
*sanguis,' ait,* 'solidae*que suō stant* rōbore *vīrēs,*
*vōs* agitāte *fugam.*
*Mē sī* caelicolae *voluissent dūcere vītam,*
*hās mihi servāssent sēdēs.* Satis *ūna superque*

---

**abnegō** (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†
**aevum, ī** *n.* age, life, time, eternity
**agitō** (1) pursue, drive, buffet, hasten
**āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear from
**caelicola, ae** *m.* (*f.*) divinity, deity
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses, foliage*
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake†
**congemō, ere, uī** groan, moan, sigh†
**dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** descend†
**dōnec** until, while, as long as
**ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus** overcome
**excīdō, ere, ī, sus** cut off, destroy
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** extricate, bring out, prepare
**exsilium, (i)ī** *n.* exile, place of exile†
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**integer, gra, grum** whole, sound†
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**nūtō** (1) nod, totter, sway†
**optō** (1) wish, desire, choose, select*
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure; permit*
**paulātim** gradually, little by little
**perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** arrive
**prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** prolong†
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength*
**ruīna, ae** *f.* ruin, downfall, collapse
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**solidus, a, um** solid, firm, staunch†
**tremefactus, a, um** trembling, quivering
**vertex, icis** *m.* summit, top, head*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

**summīs montibus certātim antīquam ornum ēruere īnstant:** a simile; App. 441. **illa (ornus) minātur:** *it threatens (to fall).*

**629. comam:** acc. of respect with **tremefacta**; App. 311. **vertice:** abl. of means; *the tree nods (with) its head.*

**630. suprēmum:** substantively; *has groaned its last.*

**631. trāxit ruīnam:** falls with a crash, dragging down other objects with it. **(ā) jugīs (montis) āvulsa.**

**632. Dēscendō (ex arce). dūcente deō (Venere):** abl. abs.; App. 343. **deō:** feminine here, referring to Venus. **inter flammam et hostīs.**

**633. expedior:** middle = **mē expediō**; App. 309. **dant (mihi) locum:** *give way before me.*

**634–704. Anchises at first refuses to survive the destruction of the city, but is finally induced by a double portent of the gods to flee with Aeneas.**

**634. perventum (est mihi) = pervēnī:** with the emphasis upon the action rather than the actor.

**635. tollere:** Anchises had been lamed by lightning and could not walk; see note on ll. 648–649.

**635–636. altōs montīs.**

**636. prīmum, prīmum:** rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

**637. excīsā Trojā:** abl. abs.

**638. Vōs:** emphatically contrasted with **mē** in l. 641; App. 247. **quibus:** dat. of possession; App. 299. **aevī:** gen. with **integer**; App. 287.

**639. sanguis (est). rōbore:** abl. of means.

**640. vōs:** emphatic; App. 247, 413.

**641–642. sī voluissent, servā(vi)ssent:** condit. contrary to fact; App. 382. **satis**

*vīdimus* excidia *et captae* superāvimus *urbī.*
*Sīc Ō sīc positum* adfātī discēdite *corpus.*
*Ipse manū mortem* inveniam; miserēbitur hostis
exuviās*que petet.* Facilis jactūra sepulcrī.
*Jam* prīdem invīsus *dīvīs et* inūtilis annōs
dēmoror, *ex quō mē dīvum pater atque* hominum *rēx*
fulminis adflāvit *ventīs et* contigit *ignī.*'
*Tālia* perstābat memorāns fīxus*que manēbat.*
*Nōs* contrā effūsī *lacrimīs conjūnxque* Creūsa
Ascanius*que omnisque domus, nē* vertere *sēcum*

---

**adflō** (1) breathe upon, blow upon (*dat.*)
**adfor, fārī, fātus** address, accost*
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**contrā** on the other side*
**Creūsa, ae** *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
**dēmoror, ārī, ātus** delay, hinder, prolong†
**discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart, withdraw
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out*
**excidium, (i)ī** *n.* destruction, downfall
**exuviae, ārum** *f.* spoils, plunder, booty
**facilis, e** easy, endurable, favorable
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, fasten, imprint*
**fulmen, inis** *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**inūtilis, e** useless, futile, valueless
**inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** find, come upon†
**invīsus, a, um** hateful, hated, odious
**jactūra, ae** *f.* throwing away, loss†
**memorō** (1) recount, (rc)call, say*
**misereor, ērī, itus** pity, commiserate (*gen.*)*
**perstō, āre, stitī, status** persist, continue†
**prīdem** long since, long ago, for some time
**sepulcrum, ī** *n.* tomb, burial
**superō** (1) surmount, survive (*dat.*)*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, change*

---

**ūna superque:** *enough and more* (*than enough*) *have I seen one destruction and have survived one capture of the city.* Anchises refers to a previous capture of Troy by Hercules, who had been promised the hand of the Princess Hesione in marriage. When her father, King Laomedon, broke the promise, Hercules captured and sacked the city.

**643. urbī:** dat. with compound (**superāvimus** = **superfuimus**); App. 298.

**644. adfātī (meum) corpus:** refers to the custom of calling "**valē**" thrice to the dead before the body was buried or burned. **positum:** *laid out*, **pōnere** being the technical expression for laying out a corpse. Anchises thus bids them to treat him as already dead. Probably he stretches himself out on a couch as though dead to add vividness to his appeal.

**645. manū mortem inveniam:** alliteration; App 411. **manū:** I shall die fighting (**manū**), i.e., by provoking the enemy to kill me; or **manū** may hint at suicide. Cf. l. 434, **ut caderem meruisse manū. miserēbitur hostis:** or an enemy through pity (said ironically) will be willing to kill me.

**646. Facilis (est) jactūra sepulcrī:** said with the greatest bitterness and the resignation of despair, since the loss of ceremonial burial was counted one of the most grievous of calamities; see notes on I, 95, 353.

**647–648. Jam prīdem dēmoror annōs:** *too long have I delayed the years* (which wish to bear me to death); App. 351, 1, *b*.. **ex (eō tempore) quō:** *since the time when.* **dīv(ōr)um pater atque hominum rēx** = **Juppiter.** Anchises had foolishly boasted of the love of Venus and had been lamed by a stroke of lightning for his impiety.

**649. adflāvit (mihi). ventīs, ignī:** ablatives of means; some ancient philosophers thought that lightning was driven by swift gusts of wind.

**650. Tālia (dicta).**

**651. Nōs:** emphatic contrast; App. 247. **effūsī (sumus) lacrimīs:** *we were dissolved in tears.* **lacrimīs** is abl. of manner or means.

**651–653. -que . . . -que . . . -que:** *both . . . and . . . and.*

**652–653. nē . . . vellet:** subst. clause developed from the vol., dependent on the idea of entreaty implied in **effūsī**

*cūncta pater fātōque* urgentī incumbere *vellet.*
Abnegat inceptōque *et sēdibus* haeret *in īsdem.*
Rūrsus *in arma feror mortemque miserrimus* optō.
*Nam quod* cōnsilium *aut quae jam fortūna dabātur?*
*'Mēne* efferre *pedem, genitor, tē posse relictō*
spērāstī *tantumque* nefās *patriō* excidit *ōre?*
*Sī* nihil *ex tantā superīs* placet *urbe relinquī,*
*et* sedet *hoc animō* peritūraeque addere *Trojae*
*tēque tuōsque* juvat: patet istī jānua lētō,
*jamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine* Pyrrhus,
*nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī* obtruncat *ad ārās.*
*Hoc erat,* alma *parēns, quod mē per tēla, per ignīs*
*ēripis, ut mediīs* hostem *in* penetrālibus *utque*
Ascanium *patremque meum* juxtāque Creūsam

---

**abnegō** (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**almus, a, um** kind(ly), nurturing
**Ascanius,** (i)ī *m.* Iulus, son of Aeneas*
**cōnsilium,** (i)ī *n.* plan, advice; council
**Creūsa, ae** *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** bear forth, lift*
**excidō, ere, ī** fall (from), perish
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** hang, cling (to)*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**inceptum, ī** *n.* beginning, plan, attempt
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** lean on (*dat.*)
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**jānua, ae** *f.* door, doorway, entrance
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**juxtā** next, near(by), at the same time*
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**nefās** *n. indecl.* crime, impiety, sin*
**nihil, nīl** nothing, not at all
**obtruncō** (1) slay, slaughter, butcher, kill†
**optō** (1) wish, desire, choose, select*
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend
**penetrālia, ium** *n.* sanctuary, chamber
**pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** perish, die
**placeō, ēre, uī, itus** please (*dat.*)
**Pyrrhus, ī** *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, backward*
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit, be fixed*
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
**urgeō, ēre, ursī** press, urge, incite

---

(**sumus**). **sēcum** = **cum sē**; App. 321, *a.* **vertere sēcum cūncta:** because the rest of the family would remain with him, unless Anchises were willing to go. **fātō:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **incumbere:** *to lean on* (*add his weight to*) *our overwhelming fate.*

**654.** (**in eōdem**) **inceptō et sēdibus haeret in īsdem:** *he remains fixed in his purpose and his place.* One word thus governing two or more others in a different sense is an example of what is called *zeugma.* Compare Dickens, who says of a lady that she departed "in a flood of tears and a sedan chair," and see App. 447.

**657–658. spērā(vi)stīne, genitor, mē posse efferre pedem. tē relictō:** abl. abs.

**659. superīs:** dat. with special verb; App. 297. **nihil:** subj. of **relinquī.**

**660. hoc** = **hocc:** subject of **sedet,** and explained by the following clause; App. 107, 3, *c.* (**tuō**) **animō:** abl. of place where.

**661. tēque tuōsque:** objects of **addere. et sī** (**tē**) **juvat.**

**662. jam:** *in a moment, immediately.*

**663. patris, patrem:** with varying quantity of the first syllable, since it is composed of a short vowel followed by a mute and a liquid, making the syllable common, i.e., either long or short, according to whether it is read **pa-tris** or **pat-ris, pa-trem** or **pat-rem;** App. 11, 17, 18. (**quī obtruncat**) **nātum,** (**quī**) **patrem obtruncat:** the pres. ind., "Pyrrhus is accustomed to slaughter"; App. 351, 1.

**664–665. Hoc:** pronounce **hocc,** making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.* **Hoc erat quod mē ēripis:** *was it for this that*

alterum *in* alterius mactātōs *sanguine cernam?*
*Arma, virī, ferte arma; vocat lūx* ultima *victōs.*
Reddite *mē Danaīs;* sinite īnstaurāta revīsam
proelia. Numquam *omnēs* hodiē moriēmur inultī.'
*Hinc ferrō* accingor rūrsus clipeō*que* sinistram
īnsertābam aptāns *mēque* extrā *tēcta ferēbam.*
Ecce autem complexa *pedēs in līmine conjūnx*
haerebat, parvum*que patrī tendēbat* Iūlum:
'*Sī* peritūrus abīs, *et nōs* rape *in omnia tēcum;*
sīn aliquam expertus sūmptīs spem *pōnis in armīs,*
*hanc prīmum* tūtāre *domum. Cui* parvus Iūlus,
*cui pater et conjūnx quondam tua dicta relinquor?'*
*Tālia* vōciferāns gemitū *tēctum omne* replēbat,
*cum* subitum *dictūque* oritur mīrābile mōnstrum.
*Namque manūs inter* maestōrum*que ōra parentum*
ecce levis *summō dē* vertice *vīsus* Iūlī

---

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart*
**accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird, equip
**aliquis, qua, quid** some, any*
**alter, era, erum** the other (of two), one (of two)*
**aptō** (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish
**autem** however, but, moreover*
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**complector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**experior, īrī, pertus** try, test
**extrā** outside, beyond (*acc.*)†
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** hang, cling (to)*
**hodiē** today, this day, now†
**īnsertō** (1) insert, thrust into†
**īnstaurō** (1) renew, refresh, repeat
**inultus, a, um** unavenged†
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**levis, e** light, slight, flickering
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mīrābilis, e** wonderful, marvelous
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* omen, prodigy, monster*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**numquam** never, at no time, not†
**orior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** perish, die
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, fray, combat
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch, drag*
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, give back*
**repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill†
**revīsō, ere** see again, revisit
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**sīn** but if
**sinistra, ae** *f.* left hand
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** permit, allow*
**spēs, speī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take (up)
**tūtor, ārī, ātus** protect, guard†
**ultimus, a, um** last, final, farthest*
**vertex, icis** *m.* summit, head, peak*
**vōciferor, ārī, ātus** scream, shout†

---

*you save(d) me?* **alma parēns** = Venus. **ut, ut:** rhetorical repetition, indicating excitement; App. 413.

**667. alterum in alterius mactātōs:** *slaughtered, one in the blood of the other.* **ut . . . cernam:** clause of purpose in apposition with **hoc**; App. 359.

**668. lūx** = **diēs** or **lūx (vītae).**

**669. īnstaurāta** = **īnstaurem et. (ut) revīsam:** a subst. vol. clause used as obj. of **sinite**; App. 360.

**671. ferrō accingor:** middle; *I gird (myself) with my sword;* App. 309.

**674. patrī** = **mihi:** but thus used here to emphasize the paternal relation.

**675. et:** *also.* **tēcum** = **cum tē:** App. 321, *a.*

**677. tūtāre:** imp. **Iūlus (relinquitur).**

**678. (tuus) pater (relinquitur). dicta** ( = **vocāta**)**:** in agreement with **ego** understood subj. of **relinquor.**

**679. Tālia (dicta).**

**680. dictū:** supine; abl. of respect with **mīrābile**; App. 271, 325.

**681. inter manūs et ōra.**

**682–684. levis apex (flammae) vīsus**

*fundere lūmen* apex, tāctū*que* innoxia mollīs
lambere *flamma* comās *et circum* tempora pascī.
*Nōs* pavidī trepidāre metū crīnem*que* flagrantem
excutere *et* sānctōs restinguere fontibus *ignīs*.
*At pater Anchīsēs oculōs ad sīdera laetus*
extulit *et caelō* palmās *cum vōce tetendit:*
'*Juppiter* omnipotēns, precibus *sī* flecteris *ūllīs*,
aspice *nōs, hoc* tantum, *et sī* pietāte merēmur,
*dā* deinde augurium, *pater, atque haec* ōmina firmā.'
*Vix ea fātus erat* senior, subitō*que* fragōre
intonuit laevum, *et dē caelō lāpsa per umbrās*
stēlla facem *dūcēns multā cum lūce* cucurrit.
*Illam summa super lābentem* culmina *tēctī*
*cernimus* Īdaeā clāram *sē* condere *silvā*

**apex, apicis** *m.* point, spike, tongue†
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** behold, look (at)*
**augurium, (i)ī** *n.* omen, augury
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish; hide*
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**culmen, inis** *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run, speed
**deinde** then, thereupon, next*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** lift, carry off*
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake off, shake out*
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, blaze, firebrand*
**firmō** (1) confirm, strengthen, ratify†
**flagrō** (1) blaze, burn, glow
**flectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, turn
**fōns, fontis** *m.* fountain, water
**fragor, ōris** *m.* crash, thunder, roar
**Īdaeus, a, um** of Ida, a high mountain near Troy†
**innoxius, a, um** harmless, innocent†
**intonō, āre, uī** thunder, roar
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**lambō, ere** lick, lap
**mereor, ērī, itus** deserve, merit, earn
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
**mollis, e** soft, gentle, delicate, mild
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, prodigy, portent
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand*
**pascor, ī, pāstus** feed (on), graze
**pavidus, a, um** frightened, timid
**pietās, ātis** *f.* piety, devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty†*
**restinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** extinguish†
**sānctus, a, um** holy, sacred, revered*
**senior, ōris** *m.* old (aged) man, sire
**stēlla, ae** *f.* star, meteor†
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**tāctus, ūs** *m.* touch†
**tantum** only (so much)
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**trepidō** (1) tremble, hurry excitedly†

(est) **fundere lūmen, flammaque, innoxia tāctū, (vīsa est) lambere mollīs comās. fundere lūmen apex:** supposed by those versed in omens to presage future royal power, the subject of such a divine demonstration becoming the light of his people. According to the tradition, Servius Tullius, one of the legendary kings of early Rome, had a similar experience as a child. **tāctū:** abl. of respect, "doing no harm by touching"; App. 325.

**685–686. Nōs:** emphatic; App. 247. **trepidāre, excutere, restinguere:** historical infinitives, with a conative meaning for the last two, *we tried to;* App. 257; 351, 1, *c.*

**686. sānctōs:** because of their divine origin. **fontibus = aquīs:** *water;* metonymy; App. 433, 243.

**688. caelō = ad caelum:** dat. of direction; App. 306.

**690. hoc tantum (quaerō):** *only so much (do I ask).*

**690–691. a(d)spice, dā, firmā:** imperatives. The Romans often asked for a second omen to confirm the first.

**692. senior:** as in ll. 509, 544.

**693. intonuit laevum:** *it thundered on the left,* which was considered a good omen. **laevum:** best taken as an adverbial acc.; App. 93, 94, 310.

**694. stēlla:** *a meteor.* **facem dūcēns:**

signantemque *viās; tum longō* līmite sulcus
*dat lūcem et* lātē *circum loca* sulphure fūmant.
*Hīc* vērō *victus genitor sē tollit ad aurās*
adfāturque *deōs et* sānctum *sīdus* adōrat.
'*Jam jam nūlla* mora *est; sequor et* quā *dūcitis adsum,*
*dī patriī; servāte domum, servāte* nepōtem.
Vestrum *hoc* augurium, vestrōque *in nūmine Troja est.*
Cēdō equidem *nec, nāte, tibī comes īre* recūsō.'
*Dīxerat ille, et jam per moenia* clārior *ignis*
*audītur*, propiusque aestūs incendia *volvunt.*
'Ergō *age*, cāre *pater*, cervīcī impōnere *nostrae;*
*ipse subībō umerīs nec mē labor* iste gravābit;
quō *rēs* cumque cadent, *ūnum et* commūne perīclum,
*ūna* salūs ambōbus *erit. Mihi* parvus Iūlus
*sit comes, et* longē *servet* vestīgia *conjūnx.*

---

**adfor, fārī, fātus** address, accost*
**adōrō** (1) entreat, worship, honor
**aestus, ūs** *m.* flood, tide, surge; heat
**ambō, ae, ō** both
**augurium, (i)ī** *n.* omen, augury
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, cease; go†*
**cervīx, īcis** *f.* neck
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**commūnis, e** common, mutual, general
**cumque** *see* **quō . . . cumque**†
**equidem** indeed, truly*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**fūmō** (1) smoke, reek, fume†
**gravō** (1) burden, load, oppress†
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place (on) (*dat.*)*
**incendium, (i)ī** *n.* flame, conflagration
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**līmes, itis** *m.* path, boundary, trail†
**longē** far (away), (from) afar*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* danger, peril, risk
**prope** near; *compar.* **propius** nearer*
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way
**quō . . . cumque (quōcumque)** whereso-ever, whithersoever†
**recūsō** (1) refuse, decline, object
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, deliverance, health
**sānctus, a, um** holy, sacred, revered*
**signō** (1) mark (out), indicate
**sulcus, ī** *m.* furrow, trench, track
**sulphur, uris** *n.* sulphur, brimstone†
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace†*

---

making a trail of light by "drawing a torch" across the sky.

**697.** (nostrās) viās: indicating that they should flee to the forests of Mt. Ida for protection. longō līmite: *long drawn;* abl. of quality; App. 330.

**698.** circum: adv.

**699.** sē tollit ad aurās: *arises* (from his couch).

**702.** domum: *family, household;* metonymy; App. 433. (meum) nepōtem = Ascanium.

**703.** Vestrum (est), vestrō: rhetorical repetition; App. 413. Troja: Anchises considered that all that remained of Troy was this one family.

**705–745. Aeneas places his aged father, Anchises, on his shoulders, and thus bearing him and the images of the gods, he flees, accompanied by his young son, Ascanius, and his wife, Creüsa, but loses Creüsa on the way.**

**706.** aestūs: acc. plural.

**707.** impōnere: imp. middle, *place yourself;* App. 309. cervīcī: *on my shoulders;* dat. with compound; App. 298.

**708.** (tē) subībō. umerīs: abl. of means.

**709.** quō . . . cumque: separated by tmesis; App. 445. perīc(u)lum (erit).

**710.** (nōbīs) ambōbus. Mihi: dat. of possession or reference; App. 299, 301.

**711.** sit, servet: volitive subjunctives; App. 254. (mea) vestīgia: i.e., let Creüsa follow.



*Art Extension Society, New York* *Baroccio*

THE FALL OF TROY

Aeneas is carrying his father, Anchises. Little Iulus is at the left and Creüsa, his wife, is following him.




*Metropolitan Museum of Art*

*Hector Le Roux*

ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS

*Vōs*, famulī, *quae dīcam animīs* advertite vestrīs.
*Est urbe* ēgressīs tumulus templum*que* vetustum
dēsertae Cereris, juxtā*que antīqua* cupressus
relligiōne *patrum multōs servāta per* annōs.
*Hanc ex* dīversō *sēdem veniēmus in ūnam.*
*Tū, genitor, cape sacra manū patriōsque* penātīs;
*mē bellō ē tantō* dīgressum *et* caede recentī
attrectāre nefās, dōnec *mē* flūmine vīvō
abluerō.'
*Haec fātus* lātōs *umerōs* subjecta*que* colla
veste *super* fulvī*que* īnsternor pelle leōnis,
succēdō*que* onerī; *dextrae sē* parvus Iūlus
implicuit *sequiturque patrem nōn* passibus aequīs;
pōne *subit conjūnx. Ferimur per* opāca *locōrum,*

---

**abluō, ere, ī, ūtus** wash, purify†
**advertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn toward, regard†
**aequus, a, um** equal, even, just
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**attrectō** (1) handle, touch†
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, blood(shed), murder
**Cerēs, eris** *f.* (goddess of) grain
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**cupressus, ī** *f.* cypress†
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dīgredior, ī, gressus** (de)part, go away†
**dīversus, a, um** different, various*
**dōnec** until, as long as, while
**ēgredior, ī, gressus** go forth, depart
**famulus, ī** *m.* servant, attendant
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**fulvus, a, um** yellow, tawny, blond
**implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus)** enfold, wind, twine, cling (*dat.*)
**īnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay on, cover, spread, strew†
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**juxtā** next, near (by), close, nigh*
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious*
**leō, ōnis** *m.* lion†
**nefās** *n. indecl.* guilt, impiety, wrong*
**onus, eris** *n.* burden, load, weight
**opācus, a, um** dark, obscure, gloomy†
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**passus, ūs** *m.* step, pace, gait, stride†
**pellis, is** *f.* hide, skin, pelt†
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**pōne** behind, from behind
**recēns, entis** recent, fresh, new, late
**re(l)ligiō, ōnis** *f.* religion, sanctity
**subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place under
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go under, approach (*dat.*)
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, hill†*
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**vetustus, a, um** old, ancient, former†
**vīvus, a, um** living, alive; running

---

**712.** (ea) **quae dīcam:** *what I shall say;* **dīcam** is fut. indic.

**713–714.** (ex) **urbe.** (illīs) **ēgressīs:** dat. of reference; App. 301. **templum dēsertae Cereris:** hypallage for **dēsertum templum Cereris;** App. 426. **cupressus (est).**

**715.** **re(l)ligiōne:** abl. of cause; App. 332; an example of tree worship, one of the more primitive forms of religion.

**716.** **in hanc ūnam sēdem. ex dīversō:** *from different (directions);* they were not to go together, because so large a group would be sure to attract the attention of the Greeks.

**717.** **Tū:** emphatically contrasted with **mē;** App. 247.

**718–719.** **nefās (est) mē, dīgressum ē tantō bellō et caede recentī, attrectāre (sacra patriōsque penātīs). flūmine vīvō:** running water was supposed to be especially pure and was much used in religious ceremonies.

**721.** **umerōs, colla:** objects of **īnsternor,** used as a middle; *I cover my shoulders and neck;* App. 309.

**722.** **veste, pelle:** ablatives of means. **super:** adv.

**723.** **onerī:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **dextrae:** dat. with compound.

**725.** **opāca locōrum = opāca loca.**

*et mē, quem* dūdum *nōn ūlla* injecta *movēbant*
*tēla neque* adversō glomerātī *ex agmine* Grajī,
*nunc omnēs* terrent *aurae,* sonus excitat *omnis*
suspēnsum *et* pariter *comitīque* onerīque timentem.
*Jamque* propinquābam portīs *omnemque vidēbar*
ēvāsisse *viam,* subitō *cum* crēber *ad* aurīs
*vīsus adesse pedum* sonitus, *genitorque per umbram*
prōspiciēns '*nāte*' exclāmat '*fuge, nāte;* propinquant.
*Ardentīs* clipeōs *atque* aera micantia *cernō.*'
*Hīc mihi* nescio *quod* trepidō male *nūmen* amīcum
cōnfūsam *ēripuit mentem. Namque* āvia *cursū*
*dum sequor et* nōtā excēdō regiōne *viārum,*
*heu miserō conjūnx fātōne ērepta* Creūsa
substitit, *errāvitne viā* seu lassa resēdit,
incertum; *nec* post *oculīs est* reddita *nostrīs.*
*Nec* prius āmissam respexī *animumve* reflexī

---

**adversus, a, um** opposing, facing*
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze*
**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**āvius, a, um** pathless, remote†
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** confuse†
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, numerous*
**Creūsa, ae** *f.* wife of Aencas, left behind at the sack of Troy
**dūdum** for a long time, long since†
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** traverse, escape
**excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart
**excitō** (1) arouse, startle, stir (up)
**exclāmō** (1) cry out, shout, exclaim
**glomerō** (1) roll together, assemble
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**incertus, a, um** uncertain, doubtful
**injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast on
**lassus, a, um** tired, weary, worn (out)†
**male** badly, poorly, not
**micō, āre, uī** flash, glitter, vibrate, dart
**nesciŏ, īre, īvī (iī)** not know, know not
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**onus, eris** *n.* burden, load, weight
**pariter** equally, side by side*
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**post** behind, after (*acc.*); afterward*
**prius** sooner, before, formerly
**propinquō** (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)†
**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look forth
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, give back, render*
**reflectō, ere, flexī, flexus** turn back†
**regiō, ōnis** *f.* region, district
**resīdō, ere, sēdī** sit down
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look back (at, for)*
**sīve, seu** or (if), whether
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, crash, roar, noise*
**sonus, ī** *m.* sound, noise, roar,
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**subsistō, ere, stitī** halt, stop, withstand
**suspēnsus, a, um** doubtful, anxious
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread, be anxious*
**trepidus, a, um** agitated, alarmed

---

**726–729. omnēs aurae mē suspēnsum et timentem terrent. Grajī:** pronounce **Grajjī,** making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b.* **comitī: Ascaniō. onerī: Anchīsae.**

**730. portīs:** dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**732. vīsus (est):** *seemed.*

**733. (Danaī) propinquant.**

**734. aera = tēla.**

**735. mihi trepidō:** dat. of separation; App. 305. **nescio:** with the final **o** irregularly short; **nescio quod nūmen:** *I don't know what divinity = some divinity or other.* **male amīcum = inimīcum:** *unfriendly, hostile;* litotes; App. 431.

**736. āvia (loca):** *out-of-the-way section.*

**738–740. heu, conjūnxne Creūsa, ērepta miserō fātō, substitit, errāvitne (ex) viā, seu lassa resēdit, (est) incertum:** *snatched away, alas! by an unhappy fate, did my wife Creūsa halt?* etc. **(mihi) miserō:** dat. of separation; App. 305. **-ne . . . -ne, seu:** *whether . . . or, or;* the three clauses depend loosely on **incertum (est).**

**741. Nec (eam = Creūsam) āmissam**

quam tumulum *antīquae* Cereris *sēdemque* sacrātam
*vēnimus: hīc* demum collēctīs *omnibus ūna*
dēfuit, *et comitēs nātumque virumque* fefellit.
*Quem nōn* incūsāvī āmēns hominumque *deōrumque,* 745
*aut quid in* ēversā *vīdī* crūdēlius *urbe?*
Ascanium *Anchīsēnque patrem Teucrōsque* penātīs
commendō *sociīs et* curvā valle recondō;
*ipse urbem* repetō *et* cingor fulgentibus *armīs.*
*Stat cāsūs* renovāre *omnīs omnemque* revertī 750
*per Trojam et* rūrsus *caput* objectāre perīclīs.
Principiō mūrōs obscūraque *līmina* portae,
quā gressum extuleram, repetō *et* vestīgia retrō
observāta *sequor per noctem et lūmine* lūstrō:
horror ubīque *animō, simul ipsa* silentia terrent. 755

---

**āmēns, entis** mad, insane, distracted
**Ascanius,** (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
**Cerēs, eris** *f.* (goddess of) grain
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird, encircle*
**colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** collect, gather
**commendō** (1) intrust, commit
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, harsh, bloody*
**curvus, a, um** curved, winding, bent*
**dēmum** at length, finally
**dēsum, esse, fuī** be absent, lack†
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry forth, raise, lift*
**ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus** overturn, destroy
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, baffle, elude, escape the notice of*
**fulg(e)ō, ĕre, lsī** gleam, flash, glitter†
**gressus, ūs** *m.* step, course, gait
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**horror, ōris** *m.* horror, terror, shudder(ing)
**incūsō** (1) accuse, blame, chide
**lūstrō** (1) survey; traverse; purify*
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**objectō** (1) throw to, expose†
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, obscure, gloomy*
**observō** (1) observe, watch, note†
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* danger, peril, risk
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**principiō** first(ly), at first†
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way
**quam** thĭan, how, as*
**recondō, ere, didī, ditus** establish; hide
**renovō** (1) renew, revive
**repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** seek again
**retrō** back(ward), again
**revertor, ī, rsus** return, turn back†
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
**silentium,** (i)ī *n.* silence, stillness, quiet
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, terrify
**tumulus, ī** *m.* hill, mound*
**ubīque** everywhere, anywhere
**vallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale
**vestīgium,** (i)ī *n.* step, track, trace*

---

**respexī animumve reflexī:** *nor did I look back for her lost as she was or cast a thought behind.* In the excitement and confusion, Aeneas forgets to look back for his wife or even to think of her. Thus he loses her. It may be noted here that it is essential to the plot that Aeneas should be without a wife both at Carthage and when he finally arrives in Latium.

**742.** (ad) tumulum, (ad) sēdem.

**743.** collēctīs omnibus: abl. abs.

**745.** Quem hominumque deōrumque: partitive genitives; App. 286. deōrumque: the final e is elided before the initial diphthong of the next verse, making l. 745 hypermetric; App. 402.

**746–794. Aeneas returns to search for Creüsa, but is met by her ghost, who informs him of her death and urges him to hasten his flight from Troy.**

**748.** (in) curvā valle.

**749.** urbem repetō et cingor armīs: for the hysteron proteron, see the note on I, 69; App. 429. cingor: middle = mē cingō; App. 309.

**750.** Stat (mihi sententia): *I am determined.*

**751.** (meum) caput = vītam.

**752.** Principiō: correlative with inde, in l. 756.

**754.** lūmine = oculō: used here for the sake of the alliteration or for metrical reasons, or both.

**755.** horror (est meō) animō.

Inde *domum, sī forte pedem, sī forte tulisset,*
*mē referō:* inruerant *Danaī et tēctum omne tenēbant.*
Īlicet *ignis* edāx *summa ad* fastīgia *ventō*
*volvitur;* exsuperant *flammae, furit* aestus *ad aurās.*
Prōcēdō *et Priamī sēdēs arcemque* revīsō:
*et jam* porticibus·vacuīs *Jūnōnis* asȳlō
custōdēs lēctī Phoenīx *et* dīrus Ulixēs
praedam adservābant. *Hūc* undique Trōia gaza
incēnsīs *ērepta* adytīs, mēnsae*que deōrum*
crātēres*que aurō* solidī, captīva*que* vestis
congeritur. *Puerī et* pavidae *longō* ordine *mātrēs*
*stant circum.*
Ausus quīn etiam *vōcēs* jactāre *per umbram*
implēvī *clāmōre viās,* maestus*que* Creūsam
nēquīquam ingemināns iterum*que* iterum*que vocāvī.*
*Quaerentī et tēctīs urbis* sine *fīne ruentī*
*īnfēlīx* simulācrum *atque ipsius umbra* Creūsae

---

**adservō** (1) guard, watch†
**adytum, ī** *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
**aestus, ūs** *m.* flood, tide, surge; heat
**asȳlum, ī** *n.* refuge, sanctuary†
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**captīvus, a, um** captive, captured†
**congerō, ere, gessī, gestus** heap up†
**crātēr, ēris** *m.* mixing bowl
**Creūsa, ae** *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), keeper*
**dīrus, a, um** dire, terrible, cursed*
**edāx, ācis** devouring, eating, consuming†
**etiam** even, also, besides, yet, still*
**exsuperō** (1) surmount, mount (high)†
**fastīgium, (i)ī** *n.* top, roof, summit
**gaza, ae** *f.* wealth, treasure
**īlicet** immediately, at once
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** burn, kindle*
**inde** thence, thereupon*
**ingeminō** (1) redouble, repeat, increase
**inruō, ere, uī** rush in
**iterum** again, anew, a second time†*
**jactō** (1) hurl, toss, fling; utter*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, collect*
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, array, row*
**pavidus, a, um** terrified, fearful
**Phoenīx, īcis** *m.* Greek leader†
**porticus, ūs** *f.* colonnade, portico
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, spoils, prey
**prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** advance†
**quīn** nay even, (but) that*
**revīsō, ere** see again, revisit
**simulācrum, ī** *n.* image, phantom, likeness
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**solidus, a, um** solid, firm, massive
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan*
**Ulixēs, is** (**eī, ī**) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**undique** everywhere, from all sides*
**vacuus, a, um** empty, vacant, free
**vestis, is** *f.* garment, cloth(ing), robe*

---

**756. sī forte, sī forte:** rhetorical repetition, representing the repeated thought in the mind of Aeneas; App. 413. **sī tulisset:** implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

**759. ad aurās = ad caelum.**

**761. (in) porticibus:** ablative of place where. **asȳlō:** in apposition with **porticibus**; the use of this Greek word, meaning *a place not to be plundered*, emphasizes the impiety of the Greeks in thus desecrating the holy sanctuary of Juno's temple.

**764. adytīs:** dat. of separation; App. 305. **mēnsae:** *tables* on which food and other offerings were placed for the gods.

**765. aurō:** abl. of material; App. 324.

**766. congeritur:** agreeing in number with the nearest subject; App. 236, *b*. **Puerī, mātrēs** ( = **fēminae**): to be carried off into slavery.

**770. iterumque iterumque:** rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

**771. (in) tēctīs.**

**771–773. mihi quaerentī et ruentī si-**

*vīsa mihi ante oculōs et* nōtā *major* imāgō.
Obstipuī, *steteruntque* comae *et vōx* faucibus haesit.
*Tum sīc* adfārī *et cūrās hīs* dēmere *dictīs:*
'*Quid tantum* īnsānō juvat indulgēre dolōrī,
*Ō* dulcis *conjūnx? Nōn haec* sine *nūmine dīvum*
ēveniunt; *nec tē hinc comitem* asportāre Creūsam
fās, *aut ille* sinit *superī* rēgnātor Olympī.
*Longa tibi* exsilia *et vastum maris aequor* arandum,
*et terram* Hesperiam *veniēs, ubi* Lȳdius *arva*
*inter* opīma *virum* lēnī fluit *agmine* Thybris:
illīc *rēs laetae rēgnumque et* rēgia *conjūnx*
parta *tibī; lacrimās* dilēctae pelle Creūsae.
*Nōn ego* Myrmidonum *sēdēs* Dolopumve superbās

---

**adfor, fārī, fātus** address, accost*
**arō** (1) plow, furrow, till†
**asportō** (1) carry away, carry from†
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**Creūsa, ae** *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy
**dēmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** remove, take away†
**dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus** love, cherish
**Dolopes, um** *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, anger, pain, passion*
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**ēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come out, happen†
**exsilium, (i)ī** *n.* exile, place of exile
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
**faucēs, ium** *f.* jaws, throat; pass
**fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow, ebb, stream
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** stick, cling (to)*
**Hesperius, a, um** Hesperian, western, Italian
**illīc** there, at that place
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, phantom, likeness*
**indulgeō, ēre, lsī, ltus** indulge in, yield to (*dat.*)†
**īnsānus, a, um** mad, frantic, insane
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**lēnis, e** gentle, soft, mild†
**Lȳdius, a, um** Lydian, of Lydia, a country of Asia Minor, earlier home of the Etruscans who settled in Italy and probably founded Rome†
**Myrmidones, um** *m.* Greeks of Thessaly
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**obstipēscō, ere, stipuī** be dazed, stand agape*
**Olympus, ī** *m.* a Greek mountain, home of the gods, heaven
**opīmus, a, um** rich, fertile, sumptuous
**pariō, ere, peperī, partus** acquire, win, produce
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** drive (away), dismiss
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**rēgnātor, ōris** *m.* ruler, sovereign, lord
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** permit, allow*
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**Thybris, (id)is** *m.* Tiber, a river of Italy†

---

**mulācrum et umbra Creūsae vīsa (est).** **īnfēlīx:** a transferred epithet; App. 446. **ipsius:** for the short penult, see the note on **illius**, I, 16. **vīsa (est):** agrees with its nearest subject. **(imāgine mihi) nōtā:** abl. with comparative; App. 327. The shades of the dead, as well as the gods, regularly appeared as larger than human beings.

**774. stetĕrunt:** with short penult.

**775. (Creūsa) adfārī et dēmere:** historical infinitives; App. 257.

**776. Quid = cūr:** *why?* **(tē) juvát. dolōrī:** dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**777. Nōn sine nūmine:** litotes; App. 431. **dīv(ōr)um.**

**778. comitem:** (*as*) *a comrade.*

**779. fās (est). aut = nec. rēgnātor:** Jupiter.

**780. exsilia tibi (ferenda sunt). arandum (est tuīs nāvibus).**

**781. (ad) terram.**

**782. vir(ōr)um:** gen. with **opīma;** App. 287.

**783. rēgia conjūnx:** Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus, was married to Aeneas shortly after his arrival in Italy.

**784. parta (est):** agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, *b.* **Creūsae:** obj. gen., *tears of (for) Creūsa;* App. 284.

**785. ego:** emphatic, as always when expressed; App. 247.

aspiciam *aut* Grajīs servītum *mātribus* ībō,
Dardanis *et dīvae* Veneris nurus;
*sed mē magna deum* genetrīx *hīs* dētinet *ōrīs*.
*Jamque* valē *et nātī servā* commūnis *amōrem*.'
*Haec ubi dicta dedit*, lacrimantem *et multa volentem*
*dīcere* dēseruit, tenuisque recessit *in aurās*.
Ter cōnātus ibī collō *dare* bracchia *circum*;
ter frūstrā comprēnsa *manūs* effūgit imāgō,
pār levibus *ventīs* volucrīque simillima *somnō*.
*Sīc* dēmum *sociōs* cōnsūmptā *nocte* revīsō.
*Atque hīc ingentem comitum* adflūxisse *novōrum*
invenīō admīrāns numerum, *mātrēsque virōsque*,
collēctam exsiliō pūbem, miserābile vulgus.
Undique convēnēre *animīs* opibusque *parātī*

---

**adfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow together†
**admīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire†
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look (at)*
**bracchium, (i)ī** *n.* (fore)arm†*
**colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** collect, gather
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**commūnis, e** common, mutual, general
**compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** grasp†
**cōnor, ārī, ātus** attempt, try, endeavor†
**cōnsūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** consume, waste†
**conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come together, assemble
**Dardanis, idis** *f.* Trojan woman†
**dēmum** at length, finally
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus** detain, hold back†
**effugiō, ere, fūgī** escape, flee from
**exsilium, (i)ī** *n.* exile, place of exile
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**genetrīx, īcis** *f.* mother
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**ibī** there, then
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, likeness, phantom*
**inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** find, come upon
**lacrimō** (1) weep, shed tears, lament
**levis, e** light, unsubstantial, slight
**miserābilis, e** miserable, wretched
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude*
**nurus, ūs** *f.* daughter-in-law
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
**pār, paris** equal, like, similar (*dat.*)*
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, young men*
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart, retire
**revīsō, ere** revisit, see again
**serviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** be a slave, serve (*dat.*)†
**similis, e** like, similar (*dat.*)*
**tenuis, e** slight, thin, fine†
**ter** thrice, three times*
**undique** everywhere, from all sides*
**valeō, ēre, uī** be strong, fare well, be able
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
**volucer, cris, cre** winged, swift*
**vulgus, ī** *n.* (*m.*) crowd, rabble, herd

---

**786. servītum:** supine in **um** after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

**788. de(ōr)um genetrīx:** Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods. **(in) ōrīs.**

**790. (mē) lacrimantem.**

**792. cōnātus (sum). collō dare bracchia circum:** *to place my arms around her neck;* **circum** is here an adverb.

**794. ventīs, somnō:** dat. with the adj., **pār**; App. 304.

**795–804. Aeneas returns to his comrades and finds a great number of men and women collected ready to follow wherever he may be willing to lead them.**

**798. exsiliō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303.

**799. convēnēre = convēnērunt. animīs, opibus:** ablatives of respect; App. 325. **parātī (īre mēcum).**

*in* quāscumque *velim pelagō* dēdūcere *terrās.* 800
*Jamque* jugīs *summae surgēbat* Lūcifer Īdae
*dūcēbatque diem, Danaīque* obsessa *tenēbant*
*līmina* portārum, *nec* spēs opis *ūlla dabātur.*
Cessī *et sublātō montīs genitōre petīvī.*

---

**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, depart*
**dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead forth, launch†
**Īda, ae** *f.* mountain near Troy†
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**Lūcifer, erī** *m.* morning star, light-bringer†
**obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** besiege, beset
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, wealth power*
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whatever*
**spēs, speī** *f.* hope, expectation*

---

**800. velim:** subj. in implied indir. disc.; App. 390. **dēdūcere:** the technical word among the Romans for leading out a colony.

**801.** (**in**) **jugīs:** abl. of place where.

**803. spēs opis:** hope of helping Troy or of receiving help from Troy.

**804. montīs:** Mt. Ida, near Troy, thus following the trail blazed out by the meteor; see l. 697.

# BOOK III

POSTQUAM *rēs* Asiae *Priamīque* ēvertere *gentem*
immeritam *vīsum superīs*, ceciditque superbum
Īlium *et omnis* humō fūmat Neptūnia *Troja*,
dīversa exsilia *et* dēsertās *quaerere terrās*
auguriīs *agimur dīvum, classemque sub ipsā*
Antandrō *et* Phrygiae mōlīmur *montibus* Īdae,
incertī *quō fāta ferant, ubi* sistere *dētur*,
contrahimusque *virōs. Vix prīma* incēperat aestās
*et pater Anchīsēs dare fātīs vēla jubēbat*,
*lītora cum* patriae lacrimāns *portūsque relinquō*
*et campōs ubi Troja fuit. Feror* exsul *in* altum

---

**aestās**, ātis *f.* summer, summer time
**altum**, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**Antandros** (us), ī *f.* town near Troy†
**Asia**, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)
**augurium**, (i)ī *n.* omen, propheey
**cadō**, ere, **cecidī**, **cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**contrahō**, ere, **trāxī**, **tractus** draw together, gather†
**dēserō**, ere, **uī**, **rtus** desert, abandon*
**dīversus**, a, um separated, far apart*
**ēvertō**, ere, ī, **rsus** overturn, destroy
**exsilium**, (i)ī *n.* (place of) exile
**exsul**, ulis *m.* (*f.*) exile, refugee†
**fūmō** (1) smoke, reek, fume
**humus**, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
**Īda**, ae *f.* mountain near Troy
**Īlium**, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Tróy
**immeritus**, a, um undeserving, guiltless†
**incertus**, a, um doubtful, uneertain
**incipiō**, ere, **cēpī**, **ceptus** begin, undertake*
**lacrimō** (1) weep, shed tears, lament
**mōlior**, īrī, ītus do, make, build, effect
**Neptūnius**, a, um Neptunian, of Neptune, god of the sea, who with the help of Apollo built the walls of Troy
**patria**, ae *f.* fatherland, eountry*
**Phrygius**, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
**postquam** after (that), when*
**sistō**, ere, **stetī**, **status** set(tle), stop
**superbus**, a, um proud, haughty*

---

**1–12. The Trojan survivors build a fleet near Antandros at the foot of Mt. Ida and set sail in search of new homes.**

**1. rēs, gentem:** objects of ēvertere. **ēvertere:** subj. of **vīsum (est)**, *it seemed (best);* App. 258.

**2. immeritam:** emphatie by position. **superīs (deīs).**

**3. (ab) humō:** abl. of separation; App. 340. **Neptūnia Troja:** see II, 610, 625, and note.

**4. dēsertās:** the small band of Trojans were too weak to seize any lands already oecupied.

**5. auguriīs dīv(ōr)um.**

**7. incertī:** an ineonsisteney with the prediction of Creüsa, II, 781; due either to the eapriee of the poet, to the unfinished eondition of the poem, or to the faet that Aeneas did not trust the prophecies of his wife. **(nōs) ferant, dētur:** indireet questions, depending on **incertī**; App. 349. **dētur (nōbīs):** *it is granted;* the subject is **sistere**; App. 258.

**8. prīma aestās:** *the first (of) summer;* App. 246; the Trojan fugitives had spent the winter near Antandros.

**9. pater Anchīsēs:** in aneient Roman times the father **(pater familiās)** was the reeognized head of the house. **dare fātīs vēla:** modeled on the expression **dare ventīs vēla**, but indieating the spirit of the Trojans as they set out trusting to the gods and "with a heart for any fate."

**11. Troja fuit:** ef. II, 325, **fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium**, and the note.

*cum sociīs nātōque*, penātibus *et magnīs dīs.*
*Terra procul vastīs* colitur Māvortia *campīs*
(Thrāces arant) ācrī *quondam* rēgnāta Lycūrgō,
hospitium *antīquum Trojae* sociīque penātēs
*dum fortūna fuit. Feror hūc et lītore* curvō
*moenia prīma* locō *fātīs* ingressus inīquīs
Aeneadāsque *meō nōmen dē nōmine* fingō.
*Sacra* Diōnaeae *mātrī dīvīsque ferēbam*
auspicibus coeptōrum operum, *superōque* nitentem
caelicolum *rēgī* mactābam *in lītore* taurum.
*Forte fuit* juxtā tumulus, *quō* cornea *summō*

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, fierce, spirited*
**Aeneadae, ārum** *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas
**arō** (1) plow, till, cultivate
**auspex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) seer, guardian, guide†
**caelicola, ae** *m.* (*f.*) god, divinity
**coepī, isse, ptus** begin, undertake
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor*
**corneus, a, um** of cornel, a kind of tree†
**curvus, a, um** bent, curved, winding*
**Diōnaeus, a, um** Dionean, of Dione, mother of Venus†
**fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus** form, make, fashion
**hospitium, (i)ī** *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance, friend(ship)
**ingredior, ī, gressus** enter, begin, land†
**inīquus, a, um** unfavorable, unjust, unfair, adverse
**juxtā** close, near, next, nigh (*acc.*)*
**locō** (1) place, establish, locate*
**Lycūrgus, ī** *m.* king of Thrace†
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
**Māvortius, a, um** martial, beloved of Mars, god of war
**nitēns, entis** shining, white, sleek
**opus, eris** *n.* work, task, labor, deed*
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**rēgnō** (1) rule, reign, govern, sway
**socius, a, um** allied, friendly
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
**Thrāx, ācis** *m.* Thracian†
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, hill, tomb*

---

**12. cum sociīs nātōque, penātibus et magnīs dīs:** indicating the various factors of most importance for the future. The **penātēs,** household gods, are here distinguished from the major divinities (**magnī dī**), such as Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, Minerva, Vesta, etc. Observe the spondaic verse giving a solemn and majestic close; App. 395.

**13–18. Founding of Aenos, or Aenea, in Thrace.**

**13. procul (ā Trojā):** *at a (little) distance,* only across the Hellespont, a narrow strait. **campīs:** abl. of quality or of place where; App. 330, 319. **terra Māvortia:** the chief god of the fierce Thracians was Mars, the brutal god of war.

**14. Thrācēs:** nom. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, *a.* (**illam terram**) **Thrāces arant. ācrī Lycūrgō:** dat. of agent; App. 302. He had attacked the women attendants of Bacchus with an ox goad. For this he was first blinded and then destroyed by Jupiter.

**15. hospitium antīquum Trojae (fuit) et penātēs (fuērunt) sociī (cum penātibus Trojae).**

**16. dum fortūna (Trojae) fuit:** some of the same pathos as in II, 325, **fuit Īlium. (in) lītore.**

**17. ingressus (terram). fātīs inīquīs:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**18. Aeneadās:** apposition with **nōmen;** App. 241. Either Aenos, at the mouth of the Hebrus, or Aenea, on the west coast of Thrace, may be referred to here; or Vergil may have confused the two towns. **nōmen (meīs virīs) fingō.**

**19–48. Aeneas prepares to offer sacrifice, but is deterred by the omens of the murdered Polydorus.**

**19. Diōnaeae mātrī:** Venus, the mother of Aeneas and daughter of Dione. **dīvīsque (aliīs).**

**20–21. auspicibus:** apposition with **mātrī dīvīsque;** App. 241. **superō regī caelicol(ār)um:** Jupiter.

**22. tumulus:** a mound formed by the

virgulta *et* dēnsīs hastīlibus horrida myrtus.
Accessī viridem*que ab* humō convellere *silvam*
cōnātus, rāmīs tegerem *ut* frondentibus *ārās,*
horrendum *et dictū videō* mīrābile mōnstrum.
*Nam quae prīma* solō ruptīs rādīcibus arbōs
vellitur, *huic ātrō* līquuntur *sanguine* guttae
*et terram* tābō maculant. *Mihi* frīgidus horror
membra quatit gelidus*que* coït formīdine *sanguis.*
Rūrsus *et* alterius lentum convellere vīmen
īnsequor *et* causās penitus temptāre latentīs:
*āter et* alterius *sequitur dē* cortice *sanguis.*
*Multa movēns animō* nymphās venerābar agrestīs

---

**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach, reach
**agrestis, e** rustic, rural†
**alter, era, erum** another (of two), second*
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree, wood(s)*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**coëō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** come together, curdle†
**cōnor, ārī, ātus** try, attempt, endeavor
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear up, shatter
**cortex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) bark, rind, shell†
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense*
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
**frīgidus, a, um** cold, chilly, frosty
**frondēns, entis** leafy, fronded†
**gelidus, a, um** cold, chilly, icy
**gutta, ae** *f.* drop†
**hastīle, īlis** *n.* spear-shaft, shoot
**horrendus, a, um** dreadful, horrible*
**horridus, a, um** bristling, horrible
**horror, ōris** *m.* shudder, terror, dread
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, soil, earth*
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, proceed*
**latēns, entis** hiding, hidden, secret
**lentus, a, um** pliant, tough, flexible†
**līquor, ī** flow, trickle, drip, run†
**maculō** (1) spot, stain, pollute†
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**mīrābilis, e** wonderful, marvelous
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* omen, prodigy, monster*
**myrtus, ī** *f.* myrtle, a shrub sacred to Venus and the dead†
**nympha, ae** *f.* nymph, one of the demi-goddesses who presided over the sea, rivers, fountains, forests, trees, etc.
**penitus** within, far, wholly, deeply*
**quatiō, ere, quassus** shake, shatter
**rādīx, īcis** *f.* root†
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, bough, shoot†*
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, soil*
**tābum, ī** *n.* corruption; gore, blood†
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**temptō** (1) try, test, explore, examine*
**vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus** tear (up)
**veneror, ārī, ātus** reverence, supplicate†
**vīmen, inis** *n.* twig, shoot, withe†
**virgultum, ī** *n.* thicket, bush, copse†
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous†*

---

action of the wind and waves over the unburied body of Polydorus. **quō (in) summō (erant):** *on the summit of which (were)*; App. 246.

**23. virgulta (erant). hastīlibus:** the cornel and myrtle shoots were often used as spear shafts and are here called **hastīlia** for the additional reason given in the story which follows.

**24. (tumulum) accessī. silvam:** *thicket.* **cōnātus (sum). ut tegerem:** purpose; App. 359.

**26. dictū:** supine, used as abl. of respect with **mīrābile**; App. 271.

**27–28. ruptīs rādīcibus:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **nam guttae ātrō sanguine ( = ātrī sanguinis) līquuntur huic arborī ( = ex hāc arbore) quae vellitur prīma. (ex) solō. arbōs:** attracted into the rel. clause, becoming nom. instead of dat.; App. 242, *a*. **huic (arborī):** dat. of separation; App. 305. **ātrō sanguine:** abl. of quality denoting material; App. 330, 324.

**29. Mihi:** dat. of reference equivalent to a possessive adjective.

**30. gelidus:** proleptic; App. 440. **formīdine:** abl. of cause; App. 332.

**31. alterius (arboris).**

**34. movēns:** *pondering.* **(meō) animō:** abl. of place where or means; App. 319, 331. **nymphās:** as patron deities of the

Grādīvumque *patrem*, Geticīs *quī* praesidet *arvīs*,
rīte secundārent vīsūs ōmenque levārent.
Tertia *sed* postquam *majōre* hastīlia nīsū
adgredior genibusque adversae obluctor harēnae
(ēloquar an sileam?) gemitus lacrimābilis *īmō*
*audītur* tumulō *et vōx* reddita *fertur ad* aurīs:
'*Quid miserum, Aenēā*, lacerās? *Jam* parce sepultō,
parce *piās* scelerāre *manūs*. *Nōn mē tibi Troja*
externum *tulit aut* cruor *hic dē* stīpite mānat.
*Heu fuge* crūdēlīs *terrās, fuge lītus* avārum:
*nam* Polydōrus *ego*. *Hīc* cōnfīxum ferrea tēxit
*tēlōrum* seges *et* jaculīs incrēvit acūtīs.'

---

**acūtus, a, um** sharp, keen, pointed
**adgredior, ī, gressus** approach, attack|
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing, opposing*
**an** whether, or*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**avārus, a, um** greedy, avaricious
**cōnfīgō, ere, xī, xus** pierce, transfix
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bitter, bloody*
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore†
**ēloquor, ī, locūtus** speak (out), declare†
**externus, a, um** foreign, strange†
**ferreus, a, um** (of) iron†
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**genū, ūs** *n.* knee
**Geticus, a, um** Getic, of the Getae, a people on the Danube†
**Grādīvus, ī** *m.* Mars, god of war†
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**hastīle, īlis** *n.* spear shaft, spear-like shoot
**incrēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus** grow up (in)†
**jaculum, ī** *n.* spear, javelin†
**lacerō** (1) tear, lacerate, mutilate†
**lacrimābilis, e** tearful, mournful†
**levō** (1) lighten, alleviate, lift, remove
**mānō** (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)†
**nīsus, ūs** *m.* effort, struggle, exertion†
**obluctor, ārī, ātus** struggle against (*dat.*)†
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, sign, portent*
**parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus** spare, refrain, forbear (*dat.*)
**Polydōrus, ī** *m.* son of Priam, killed by Polymnestor, king of Thrace†
**postquam** after (that), when*
**praesideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** preside over (*dat.*)†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give (back), utter, render, return*
**rīte** duly, fittingly, with due ceremony†
**scelerō** (1) defile, pollute, stain
**secundō** (1) prosper, make favorable†
**seges, etis** *f.* crop, harvest, grain field
**sepultus, ī** *m.* one buried, corpse
**sileō, ēre, uī** be silent, be still, hush
**stīpes, itis** *m.* trunk, stock, shoot†
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**tertius, a, um** third*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, hill, tomb*
**vīsus, ūs** *m.* sight, view, vision, aspect

---

place. All trees, groves, fountains, and streams were sacred to the nymphs.

**35. arvīs**: dat. with compound; App. 298.

**36. (ut) secundārent, levārent**: subst. clauses developed from vol. or opt. and depending upon **venerābor**, *I was beseeching;* App. 360, 253.

**38. genibus**: abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331. **harēnae**: dat. with compound; App. 298.

**39–40. ēloquar an sileam**: deliberative questions; App. 348. **(ex) īmō tumulō**: *from the lowest (depths of the) mound;* App. 246. **(meās) aurīs.**

**41. (mē) miserum. (mihi) sepultō**: dat. with special verb, **parce**; App. 297.

**42–43. (tuās) piās manūs. tibi externum. cruor (externus tuō cruōrī). nōn dē stīpite (arboris sed dē meō corpore) hic cruor mānat.**

**44. crūdēlīs, avārum**: transferred epithets; App. 446.

**45–46. ego (sum). (mē) cōnfīxum. ferrea tēlōrum seges**: Polydorus had been pierced with a number of spears, which had taken root in his slain body and produced the myrtle grove. **jaculīs acūtīs**: abl. of quality or material with **seges**; App. 330, 324.

*Tum* vērō ancipitī *mentem* formīdine pressus
obstipuī *steteruntque* comae *et vōx* faucibus haesit.
*Hunc* Polydōrum *aurī quondam cum* pondere *magnō*
*īnfēlīx Priamus* fūrtim mandārat alendum
Thrēiciō *rēgī, cum jam* diffīderet *armīs*
Dardaniae cingī*que urbem* obsidiōne *vidēret.*
*Ille, ut* opēs frāctae *Teucrum et Fortūna* recessit,
*rēs* Agamemnoniās victrīcia*que arma secūtus*
fās *omne* abrumpit: Polydōrum obtruncat, *et aurō*
*vī* potitur. *Quid nōn* mortālia *pectora* cōgis,
*aurī sacra* famēs! Postquam pavor ossa *relīquit,*
dēlēctōs populī *ad* procerēs *prīmumque parentem*

**abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break (off)†
**Agamemnonius, a, um** of Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks against Troy†
**alō, ere, uī, (i)tus** nourish, rear†
**anceps, cipitis** doubtful, double†
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** force (together), drive*
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**Dardania, ae** *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
**dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, select
**diffīdō, ere, sus sum** distrust, mistrust (*dat.*)†
**famēs, is** *f.* hunger, famine, greed
**fās** *n. indecl.* justice, right, divine will*
**faucēs, ium** *f.* throat, jaws; pass
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter*
**fūrtim** stealthily, secretly, furtively
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** stick (to) (*dat.*)*
**mandō** (1) intrust, commit†
**mortālis, e** mortal, human, earthly*
**obsidiō, ōnis** *f.* siege, blockade†
**obstipēscō, ere, stipuī** be amazed, stand agape*
**obtruncō** (1) kill, slaughter, slay, butcher
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
**os, ossis** *n.* bone
**pavor, ōris** *m.* terror, shudder(ing), alarm
**Polydōrus, ī** *m.* son of Priam, treacherously murdered by Polymnestor, king of Thrace
**pondus, eris** *n.* weight, burden, mass, load
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**postquam** after (that), when*
**potior, īrī, ītus** possess, gain (*abl.*)
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (op)press, repress, check, control*
**procer, eris** *m.* leader, chief, noble
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, depart
**Thrēicius, a, um** Thracian, of Thrace, a country northeast of Greece†
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**victrīx, īcis** *f.* victorious, conquering†

**47. ancipitī formīdine:** from the sight and the voice. **mentem:** acc. of respect with **pressus** ( = **oppressus**); App. 311.

**48. stetĕrunt:** with short penult.

**49–56. The story of the murder of Polydorus.**

**50. mandā(ve)rat. alendum:** the gerundive expressing purpose, *to be reared;* App. 268.

**51–52. Thrēiciō rēgī: Polymnēstor. armīs:** abl. or dat. with **diffīderet**; App. 297, 325. (**Priamus**) **diffīderet, vidēret: cum** descriptive; App. 378.

**53. Ille** = **Thrēicius rēx** (l. 51) = **Polymnēstor. frāctae (sunt). Teucr(ōr)um. Fortūna (Teucrōrum).**

**54. rēs:** *fortunes.* **secūtus:** (treacherously) *going over to.*

**55. fās omne abrumpit:** he was bound by treaty and by the sacred ties of hospitality to Troy. **aurō:** abl. with **potitur**; App. 342.

**56. vī:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **potĭtur:** here of the third conjugation, but ordinarily of the fourth. **Quid:** cognate acc. (inner obj.); App. 313; or supply **facere.**

**57–68. The Trojans in solemn session decide to give Polydorus a proper burial and abandon the haunted spot.**

**57. aurī:** obj. gen., *greed, hunger of (for) gold;* App. 284. **sacra:** *accursed;* **sacer** meant anything *set aside or consecrated to the gods,* and hence here *devoted to destruction.* (**mea**) **ossa.**

**58. prīmum parentem (meum):** Aeneas

mōnstra *deum referō, et quae sit* sententia poscō.
*Omnibus īdem animus,* scelerātā excēdere *terrā,*
linquī pollūtum hospitium *et dare classibus* Austrōs.
Ergō īnstaurāmus Polydōrō fūnus: *et ingēns*
aggeritur tumulō *tellūs; stant* mānibus *ārae,*
caeruleīs maestae vittīs *ātrāque* cupressō,
*et circum* Īliades crīnem *dē* mōre solūtae;
īnferimus tepidō spūmantia cymbia lacte
*sanguinis et sacrī* paterās, *animamque* sepulcrō
condimus *et magnā suprēmum vōce* ciēmus.

**aggerō, ere, gessī, gestus** heap (up)†
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**caeruleus, a, um** dark (blue), sable*
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** rouse, summon, stir (up), excite, invoke*
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** lay (away), hide, found, establish*
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**cupressus, ī** *f.* cypress, a tree sacred to the dead and often planted around tombs
**cymbium,** (i)ī *n.* bowl†
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, depart (*abl.*)
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**hospitium,** (i)ī *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance
**Īlias, adis** *f.* Trojan (woman)
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus** bring to, offer
**īnstaurō** (1) renew, refresh, repeat
**lac, lactis** *n.* milk†
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, shades, ghost; Hades†*
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* omen, prodigy, monster*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, law*
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl
**polluō, ere, uī, ūtus** defile, profane, pollute†
**Polydōrus, ī** *m.* son of Priam
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**scelerō** (1) defile, pollute, stain
**sententia, ae** *f.* opinion, purpose, view
**sepulcrum, ī** *n.* tomb, grave, burial
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose, pay, free*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth*
**tepidus, a, um** warm, tepid†
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, hill, tomb*
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

consults the Trojan chiefs in turn, as though they were Roman senators; and Anchises, as **princeps,** *first* in rank and age, speaks first.

**59. de(ōr)um. referō:** according to the Roman custom of consulting the senate when important prodigies occurred, **referō** being the technical word for laying a matter before that body. **quae sententia sit:** indir. quest.; App. 349.

**60–61. Omnibus (est):** dat. of possession; App. 299. **(nōs) excēdere, (nōs) linquī, (nōs) dare:** in apposition with **animus. dare classibus Austrōs (ventōs):** a poetical variation of the more usual expression **dare ventīs classēs (vēla).** Cf. III, 9, **dare fātīs vēla,** and see App. 426.

**62. īnstaurāmus:** it was important that all funerals should be properly performed, with all due ceremonies, as otherwise the soul of the dead would not be able to rest in peace. Polymnestor had not given Polydorus a proper burial, and so this ceremony is duly performed by Aeneas. The description of the funeral is adapted to Roman custom.

**63. mānibus (Polydōrī):** *to the soul (of Polydorus),* dat. of reference; App. 301.

**65. Īliades (stant). crīnem solūtae:** a conventional sign of grief; **crīnem** is obj. of the middle part. **solūtae;** App. 309, *a.*

**66. tepidō lacte:** freshly milked; abl. of material; App. 324. Other common offerings to the dead were wine, honey, and oil.

**67–68. sanguinis sacrī:** the blood of victims sacrificed to the gods. **animam condimus:** *we "lay the ghost,"* by giving the body a proper burial, and thus enabling the soul to cross the river Styx and to rest in peace in Hades. The souls of the unburied must wander in misery for a hundred years. **suprēmum:** adverbial; *for the last (time);* see note on I, 219, and on II, 644. The poet is describing the usual Roman rite.

Inde *ubi prīma* fidēs *pelagō*, plācāta*que ventī*
*dant maria et* lēnis crepitāns *vocat* Auster *in* altum,
dēdūcunt *sociī nāvīs et lītora* complent.
Prōvehimur *portū terraeque urbēsque* recēdunt.
*Sacra marī* colitur *mediō* grātissima *tellūs*
Nēreïdum *mātrī et* Neptūnō Aegaeō,
*quam pius* Arquitenēns *ōrās et lītora circum*
*errantem* Myconō *ē* celsā Gyarō*que* revīnxit,
immōtam*que* colī *dedit et* contemnere *ventōs*.
*Hūc feror: haec fessōs* tūtō placidissima *portū*
*accipit*. Ēgressī venerāmur Apollinis *urbem*.

---

**Aegaeus, a, um** of the Aegean Sea†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**Arquitenēns (arci-), entis** *m.* archer, Apollo†
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor*
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete
**contemnō, ere, tempsī, temptus** despise, scorn†
**crepitō** (1) crackle, rustle, creak†
**dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw down, launch
**ēgredior, ī, gressus** step out, disembark
**fides, eī** *f.* faith, trust(worthiness)*
**grātus, a, um** pleasing, agreeable, grateful
**Gyaros, ī** *f.* an island in the Aegean†
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, immovable
**inde** thence, after that, next*
**lēnis, e** gentle, soft, mild, light
**Myconus, ī** *f.* an island in the Aegean†
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**Nēreïs, idis** *f.* a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus†
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet*
**plācō** (1) propitiate, calm, quiet
**prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry (forward), convey
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart, recede
**revinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind (fast)
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**veneror, ārī, ātus** reverence, supplicate

---

**69–89. They land in Delos to consult the oracle.**

**69.** (est) **pelagō**: dat. of possession; App. 299; or abl. = **fidēs** (**est nōbīs in**) **pelagō**; App. 319; or dat. with the construction of **fīdō**; App. 297. **ventī** (positī).

**70. vocat** (nōs).

**71. dēdūcunt**: *launch;* **subdūcere** is the technical term for beaching vessels on the shore at the end of a voyage, and **dēdūcō** is the technical term for launching them or drawing them down into the water again.

**72.** (ā, **ex**) **portū. recēdunt**: an optical illusion familiar to all travelers.

**73–74.** (in) **mediō marī**: *in the midst of the sea.* **sacra tellūs**: the island of Delos, sacred to Apollo as his birthplace. **grātissima mātrī Nēreïdum et Neptūnō. Nēreïdum mātrī**: Doris, goddess of the sea and wife of the sea-god Nereus. **mātrī et Neptūnō Aegaeō**: note the two cases of hiatus and the spondaic fifth foot; App. 399, 395.

**75. pius Arquitenēns**: (*Apollo*) *in* (*filial*) *devotion.* According to the story, the goddess Latona was an outcast and could find no land willing to receive her till she came to Delos, at that time a floating island. The island allowed her to remain, where she gave birth to the twins, Apollo and Diana. In gratitude for this hospitality, Apollo bound Delos fast to the neighboring islands and so made it a firm and habitable land. **errantem circum ōrās et lītora**: App. 414.

**76. ē celsā Myconō Gyarōque**: *off lofty Myconus and Gyaros.* Myconus is in fact a low island.

**77. dedit** (illam terram esse) **immōtam et colī et contemnere ventōs**: formerly the island had been floating around at the mercy of the wind and waves and was uninhabitable.

**78–79. haec** (tellūs) **accipit** (nōs) **fessōs. Apollinis urbem**: Delos, a city of the same name as the island.

*Rēx* Anius, *rēx īdem* hominum Phoebī*que* sacerdōs,
vittīs *et sacrā* redimītus tempora laurō
occurrit; veterem *Anchīsēn* agnōvit amīcum.
Jungimus hospitiō *dextrās et tēcta subīmus.*
Templa *deī saxō* venerābar strūcta vetustō:
'*Dā* propriam, Thymbraee, *domum; dā moenia fessīs*
*et genus et mānsūram urbem; servā* altera *Trojae*
Pergama, relliquiās *Danaum atque* immītis Achillī.
*Quem sequimur? Quōve īre jubēs? Ubi pōnere sēdēs?*
*Dā, pater,* augurium *atque animīs* inlābere *nostrīs.*'
*Vix ea fātus eram:* tremere *omnia vīsa* repente,
*līminaque* laurus*que deī, tōtusque movērī*
*mōns circum et* mūgīre adytīs cortīna reclūsīs.

---

**Achillēs, is** (eī, ī) *m.* Greek leader*
**adytum, ī** *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**alter, era, erum** another (of two), second*
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, comrade*
**Anius,** (i)ī *m.* king of Delos†
**augurium,** (i)ī *n.* augury, omen, portent
**cortīna, ae** *f.* tripod, caldron, on which the priestess sat when delivering oracles†
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**hospitium,** (i)ī *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance
**immītis, e** cruel, harsh, fierce, unfeeling
**inlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide (into) (*dat.*)
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**laurus, ī** (**ūs**) *f.* laurel, an evergreen tree sacred to Apollo
**mūgiō, īre, īvī** (**iī**), **ītus** bellow, roar†
**occurrō, ere,** (cu)**currī, cursus** (run to) meet (*dat.*)
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**proprius, a, um** one's own, secure, permanent
**reclūdō, ere, ī, sus** open, disclose
**redimiō, īre, iī** (**īvī**), **ītus** bind around, encircle†
**re(l)liquiae, ārum** *f.* rest, remnant, leavings
**repente** suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**struō, ere, ūxī, ūctus** heap up, build
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**Thymbraeus, a, um** of Thymbra, a city of the Troad, sacred to Apollo†
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**veneror, ārī, ātus** reverence, supplicate
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*
**vetustus, a, um** old, ancient, former
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

---

**80. īdem:** the union of government and religion is common among primitive peoples, as at Rome under the early kings.

**81. vittīs:** as a symbol of his priestly office. **tempora:** *temples;* object of the middle participle **redimītus;** App. 309, *a.* **laurō sacrā (Apollinī).**

**82. (nōbīs) occurrit. veterem amīcum.**

**83. hospitiō:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**84. saxō vetustō:** abl. of material; App. 324.

**85. Thymbraee (Apollō):** voc. **Dā (nōbīs). dā (nōbīs) fessīs.**

**86. mānsūram:** *that shall abide.*

**87. re(l)liquiās Dana(ōr)um atque immītis Achillī:** subj. genitives, as in I, 30, *the remnants of* (*allowed to escape by*) *the Danaans,* etc.; App. 284.

**88. Quem sequimur:** the pres. ind. is occasionally used where one would expect the fut. ind. (**quem sequēmur**) or the deliberative subj. (**quem sequāmur**); App. 348, *a,* 351, 1, *c.* See note on II, 322, **quam prendimus arcem.** (**jubēs**) **pōnere.**

**89. pater:** a common appellation for an ancient god. **animīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**90–98. The oracle bids them seek the "ancient mother of their race," i.e., the original home of the Trojans.**

**90. ea** (**dicta**). **vīsa** (**sunt**): true pass. of **videō,** *were seen.*

**91. līminaque:** with e forming a long syllable; App. 394, *a.* Cf. **pulvis,** I, 478, and **domus,** II, 563.

**92. mōns:** Mt. Cynthus, sacred to

Summissī *petimus terram et vōx fertur ad* aurīs:
'Dardanidae dūrī, *quae vōs ā* stirpe *parentum*
*prīma tulit tellūs, eadem vōs* ūbere *laetō*
*accipiet* reducēs. *Antīquam* exquīrite *mātrem.*
*Hīc domus Aenēae cūnctīs* dominābitur *ōrīs*
*et nātī nātōrum et quī* nāscentur *ab illīs.*'
*Haec* Phoebus; mixtō*que ingēns* exorta tumultū
laetitia, *et cūnctī quae sint ea moenia quaerunt,*
*quō* Phoebus *vocet errantīs jubeatque* revertī.
*Tum genitor* veterum *volvēns* monimenta *virōrum*
'*Audīte, Ō* procerēs,' *ait* '*et* spēs discite vestrās.
Crēta *Jovis magnī mediō* jacet īnsula pontō,
*mōns* Īdaeus *ubi et gentis* cūnābula *nostrae.*
Centum *urbēs* habitant *magnās,* ūberrima *rēgna,*

---

**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**centum** hundred*
**Crēta, ae** *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterrancan†
**cūnābula, ōrum** *n.* cradle, birthplace†
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
**discō, ere, didicī** learn (how)
**dominor, ārī, ātus** hold sway, rule, govern
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, rough*
**exorior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up
**exquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus** scarch (out)†
**habitō** (1) dwell, inhabit, possess†
**Īdaeus, a, um** Idaean, of Ida, a mountain near Troy and onc in Crete
**īnsula, ae** *f.* island
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**laetitia, ae** *f.* joy, delight, gladness
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mingle, mix*
**monimentum (monumentum), ī** *n.* reminder, memorial, record, tradition†
**nāscor, ī, nātus** be born, arisc*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**procer, eris** *m.* leader, chief, noble
**redux, ducis** returning, restored
**revertor, ī, rsus** turn back, return
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**stirps, is** *f.* stock, lineage, stem, race
**summissus, a, um** prostrate, humble†
**tumultus, ūs** *m.* tumult, uproar, din
**ūber, eris** *n.* fertility, wealth, bosom; *adj.* rich, fertile†
**vester, tra, trum** your (own), yours*
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*

---

Apollo. **cortīna:** *the kettle* on the tripod which scrved as a seat for the priestcss when she delivered the oraclcs.

**93. Summissī petimus terram:** *we fall low on the ground, fall prostrate.*

**94–95. Dardanidae:** *descendants of Dardanus.* Dardanus had once lived in Italy, making the term especially appropriate here. **quae tellūs prīma tulit vōs:** as later developments show, this reference was to Italy, but the Trojans failed to understand it so. Ancient oracles were commonly ambiguous. **eadem (tellūs).**

**97. Hīc = in hāc terrā, vestrā antīquā mātre. ōrīs:** dat. with spccial vcrb, or abl. of place where; App. 297, 319.

**98. et (eī) quī.**

**99–120. Led by Anchises's false interpretation of the oracle they sail for Crete.**

**99. Haec (dicta) Phoebus (fātus est). exorta (est). mixtō tumultū:** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**100–101. ea moenia:** *the city;* promiscd by Apollo, ll. 95–98. **sint, vocet, jubeat:** subjunctives in indirect questions; App. 349. **quō Phoebus (nōs) errantīs vocet jubeatque (nōs) revertī.**

**102. volvēns:** as though written on a scroll, thc form of the ancient book. **(meus genitor): Anchīsēs.**

**104. Crēta Jovis magnī:** sincc Jove was born and reared there. **mediō (in) pontō:** *in the midst of the sea;* App. 246.

**105. mōns Īdaeus (est) et cūnābula (sunt).** There was a Mt. Ida in Crete as well as in the Troad, evidence to Anchises of the Cretan origin of the Trojans.

**106. (illī virī Crētae) habitant. rēgna:** each city formed an independent kingdom.

*maximus* unde *pater, sī* rīte *audīta* recordor,
Teucrus Rhoetēās *prīmum est* advectus *in ōrās,*
optāvit*que locum rēgnō.* Nōndum Īlium *et arcēs*
Pergameae *steterant;* habitābant vallibus *īmīs.*
*Hinc māter* cultrīx Cybelī Corybantia*que* aera
Īdaeum*que* nemus, *hinc* fīda silentia *sacrīs,*
*et* jūnctī currum dominae *subiēre* leōnēs.
Ergō *agite et dīvum dūcunt* quā jussa *sequāmur:*
plācēmus *ventōs et* Gnōsia *rēgna petāmus.*
*Nec longō* distant *cursū:* modo *Juppiter adsit,*
tertia *lūx classem* Crētaeīs sistet *in ōrīs.'*
*Sīc fātus* meritōs *ārīs* mactāvit *honōrēs,*

---

**advehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry to, convey
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze, bronze cymbals, used in the worship of Cybele*
**Corybantius, a, um** of the Corybantes, priests of Cybele, Mother of the Gods†
**Crētaeus, a, um** Cretan, of Crete†
**cultrīx, īcis** *f.* dweller, inhabitant†
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**Cybelus, ī** *m.* mountain in Phrygia, sacred to Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods†
**distō, āre** stand apart, be distant†
**domina, ae** *f.* mistress, queen, lady†
**ergō** therefore, hence, consequently*
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, true, trustworthy*
**Gnōs(s)ius, a, um** of Gnossus, a city of Crete†
**habitō** (1) dwell, inhabit, possess
**Īdaeus, a, um** of Mt. Ida, near Troy and in Crete
**Īlium, (i)ī** *n.* Ilium, Troy
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**leō, ōnis** *m.* lion
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, merit, earn*
**modo** only, (just) now
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**nōndum** not yet†
**optō** (1) wish (for), choose, hope (for)*
**Pergameus, a, um** of Pergamum, Trojan†
**plācō** (1) propitiate, calm, quiet, soothe
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way
**recordor, ārī, ātus** recall, remember†
**Rhoetēus, a, um** of Rhoeteüm, a promontory near Troy†
**rīte** duly, with proper ceremonies
**silentium, (i)ī** *n.* silence, mystery, quiet
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** station, set(tle)
**tertius, a, um** third*
**Teucrus (cer), crī** *m.* early king of Troy
**unde** whence, from which place*
**vallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale

---

**107.** (noster) **maximus** (nātū) **pater:** *our eldest (earliest) ancestor.* **audīta:** *what I have heard.*

**109. rēgnō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303.

**110.** (illī virī) **habitābant:** cf. l. 106, **habitant.** (in) **vallibus.**

**111. Hinc: ex Crētā. Hinc** (vēnit) **māter** (deōrum) **cultrīx** (montis) **Cybelī. Cybelī:** obj. gen. with **cultrīx;** App. 284. **Corybantia aera:** the Corybantes, priests and attendants of Cybele, accompanied the processions of the goddess with loud clashing of cymbals and violent, ecstatic dancing and leaping.

**112. Īdaeum nemus:** a grove on Mt. Ida sacred to the goddess. **nemus:** with the last syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a.* **silentia sacrīs:** according to this account, the secret and mysterious ceremonies of Cybele and the custom of representing her as being drawn in a chariot by a yoke of lions all came from Crete. **sacrīs:** dat. of reference with **vēnit** understood.

**113. currum subiēre** ( = **subiērunt**): *went beneath the car = went beneath the yoke of the car.* Cybele was often represented in a chariot drawn by lions or other wild animals.

**114–115. sequāmur, quā jussa de-(ōr)um** (nōs) **dūcunt. sequāmur, plācēmus, petāmus:** vol.; App. 254.

**116. Nec longō cursū:** about 150 miles; abl. of degree of difference; App. 335. **Juppiter:** as the god of the sky, of the weather, and of storms. **adsit:** subj. in a proviso clause; App. 375.

**117. lūx** (diēī). (**nostram**) **classem.**

**118. sīc fātus** (Anchīsēs).

taurum Neptūnō, taurum *tibi*, pulcher Apollō,
nigram Hiemī pecudem, Zephyrīs fēlīcibus albam.
*Fāma* volat pulsum *rēgnīs* cessisse paternīs
Īdomenēa ducem, dēserta*que lītora* Crētae,
hoste vacāre *domum sēdēsque* astāre *relictās*.
Linquimus Ortygiae *portūs pelagōque* volāmus
bacchātam*que* jugīs Naxum viridem*que* Donūsam,
Ōlearum niveam*que* Parum sparsās*que per aequor*
Cycladas, *et* crēbrīs legimus freta cōnsita *terrīs*.
Nauticus exoritur variō certāmine *clāmor:*
hortantur *sociī* Crētam proavōs*que petāmus*.
Prōsequitur *surgēns ā puppī ventus euntīs*,

**albus, a, um** white†*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (by, ready)*
**bacchor, ārī, ātus** revel (over), traverse in Bacchic revel, celebrate the rites of Bacchus†
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, yield*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* rivalry, contest†*
**cōnserō, ere, sēvī, situs** sow, scatter, sprinkle†
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, numerous*
**Crēta, ae** *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean
**Cyclades, um** *f.* islands of the Aegean†
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** abandon, desert*
**Donūsa, ae** *f.* island of the Aegean†
**dux, ducis** *m.* leader, guide, pilot*
**exorior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, favorable, fortunate*
**fretum, ī** *n.* strait, sea, waters
**Hiems, emis** *f.* Winter, Storm*
**hortor, ārī, ātus** urge, encourage, incite*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**Īdomeneus, eī** *m.* king of Crete†
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** gather, skim*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**nauticus, a, um** of sailors, nautical†
**Naxos, ī** *f.* island of the Aegean†
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**niger, gra, grum** black, gloomy, dusky*
**niveus, a, um** white, snowy
**Ōlearus (os), ī** *f.* island of the Aegean†
**Ortygia, ae** *f.* early name of Delos, an island of the Aegean†
**Paros, ī** *f.* island of the Aegean, famous for its clear white marble†
**paternus, a, um** paternal, ancestral†
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal, member of flock*
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** drive (out)
**proavus, ī** *m.* ancestor, forefather†
**prōsequor, ī, secūtus** accompany, attend
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, illustrious, noble*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** strew, scatter*
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
**vacō** (1) be empty, be free (*abl.*)
**varius, a, um** varied, different, diverse*
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*
**volō** (1) fly (forth, abroad)*
**Zephyrus, ī** *m.* the (west) wind

**120. albam (pecudem):** white victims were offered to kindly divinities, black victims to destructive ones.

**121–134. The founding of the Cretan Pergamum.**

**121–123. (ex) rēgnīs. cessisse, dēserta (esse), vacāre, astāre:** indir. statement depending on **fāma volat** = **dīcunt**; App. 390. Observe the differences of tense; App. 351, 1 and 4. **Īdomenēa:** acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 69. The legend relates that Idomeneus was overtaken by a storm while returning from the expedition against Troy, and vowed to the god of the sea that he would sacrifice the first one who met him on his safe return home. This proved to be his own son, and the gods in anger at such a sacrifice sent a pestilence which caused Idomeneus to be driven from Crete and later to settle in Italy. **dēserta (esse). hoste:** abl. of separation with **vacāre**; App. 340.

**124. pelagō:** abl. of route; App. 338.

**125–127. bacchātam: (in) jugīs. Naxum, Donūsam, Ōlearum, Parum, Cycladas, freta:** objects of **legimus.**

**128. variō certāmine:** the ships are racing each other.

**129. (ut) petāmus:** subst. vol. clause; App. 360.

**130. (nōs) euntīs:** *as we sail.*

*et tandem antīquīs* Cūrētum adlābimur *ōrīs.*
Ergō avidus mūrōs optātae mōlior *urbis*
Pergameam*que vocō, et laetam* cognōmine *gentem*
hortor amāre focōs *arcemque* attollere *tēctīs.*
*Jamque* ferē siccō subductae *lītore puppēs;*
cōnūbiīs *arvīsque novīs* operāta juventūs;
jūra *domōsque dabam:* subitō *cum* tābida membrīs
corruptō *caelī* tractū miserand*aque vēnit*
arboribus*que* satīs*que* luēs *et* lētifer annus.
Linquēbant dulcīs *animās aut* aegra *trahēbant*
*corpora; tum* sterilīs exūrere Sīrius agrōs,

**adlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide to (*dat.*)†
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary, wretched*
**ager, grī** *m.* field, territory, land*
**amō** (1) love, cherish, like*
**annus, ī** *m.* year; season*
**arbōs** (or), **oris** *f.* tree; wood(s)*
**attollō, ere** raise, lift, rear*
**avidus, a, um** eager, desirous
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, title
**cōnūbium, (i)ī** *n.* marriage, wedlock
**corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break up, spoil, taint
**Cūrētes, um** *m.* Cretan priests of Jupiter identified with the Corybantes†
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn (up), consume
**ferē** almost, about†
**focus, ī** *m.* hearth, fireplace, home†
**hortor, ārī, ātus** urge, encourage, incite*
**jūs, jūris** *n.* law, right, justice, decree
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**lētifer, era, erum** deadly, death-bearing†
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, give up*
**luēs, is** *f.* blight, pestilence, plague†
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**miserandus, a, um** piteous, pitiable
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** do, make, build, effect
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**operor, ārī, ātus** be busy, be occupied with (*dat.*)†
**optō** (1) desire, choose, wish, hope (for)*
**Pergameus, a, um** of Pergamum, Trojan
**sata, ōrum** *n.* crops, harvest
**siccus, a, um** dry, thirsty
**Sīrius, (i)ī** *m.* the dog star†
**sterilis, e** barren, unfruitful, sterile†
**subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw up, beach, remove
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**tābidus, a, um** wasting, decayed†
**tractus, ūs** *m.* region, quarter†

**131. Cūrētum:** priests and attendants of Jupiter during his infancy in Crete. **ōrīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**133. (et hanc urbem) vocō Pergameam:** Pergamum, a Cretan city, is thus connected by Vergil with Troy (Pergamum) and the wanderings of Aeneas. **cognōmine:** abl. of cause with **laetam**; App. 332.

**134. hortor amāre = hortor ut ament:** App. 360, *a.* **tēctīs:** *for* (*to protect*) *their homes;* dat. of reference; App. 301.

**135–146. A grievous pestilence falls upon man and beast and all living things, and they prepare to consult the oracle again.**

**135. (in) lītore subductae (erant):** the ships were drawn up on land when not in active use and were launched only on the occasion of a voyage. See the note on l. 71.

**136. cōnūbiīs:** pronounced here as though spelled **cōnūbjīs**, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. **cōnūbiīs, arvīs:** datives or ablatives of means with **operāta** (**erat**); App. 331.

**137–139. cum subitō, corruptō caelī tractū, vēnit** (*there came*) **membrīs aboribusque satīsque tābida miserandaque luēs. membrīs:** dat. of direction with **vēnit**, or of reference; App. 306, 301.

**138. corruptō tractū:** abl. abs., or abl. of source; App. 343, 323. This was formerly a common explanation of plagues, usually interpreted as being produced by divine wrath.

**141. sterilīs:** proleptic; *Sirius parched the fields bare*, i.e., till they became bare; App. 440. **Sīrius:** the Dog Star rises with the sun in the latter part of summer,

ārēbant herbae *et* vīctum seges aegra negābat.
Rūrsus *ad* ōrāclum Ortygiae Phoebum*que* remēnsō
hortātur *pater īre marī* veniam*que* precārī,
*quam fessīs fīnem rēbus ferat,* unde *labōrum*
temptāre auxilium *jubeat, quō* vertere *cursūs.*
*Nox erat et terrīs* animālia *somnus habēbat:*
effigiēs *sacrae dīvum* Phrygiī*que* penātēs,
*quōs mēcum ab Trojā mediīsque ex ignibus urbis*
extuleram, *vīsī ante oculōs* astāre jacentis
*in somnīs multō* manifestī *lūmine,* quā *sē*
plēna *per* īnsertās *fundēbat* lūna fenestrās;
*tum sīc* adfārī *et cūrās hīs* dēmere *dictīs:*
'*Quod tibi* dēlātō Ortygiam *dictūrus* Apollō *est,*

---

**adfor, fārī, fātus** address, accost*
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary, wretched*
**animal, ālis** *n.* animal, living thing†
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**āreō, ēre, uī** be dry; parch†
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (by, ready)*
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* aid, help, assistance*
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring (down) to, convey†
**dēmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** remove
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry forth, raise*
**effigiēs, ēī** *f.* image, likeness, ghost
**fenestra, ae** *f.* window, opening
**herba, ae** *f.* grass, herbage, sward*
**hortor, ārī, ātus** urge, encourage, incite*
**īnserō, ere, uī, rtus** place, insert†
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**manifestus, a, um** clear, plain, manifest
**negō** (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
**ōrāc(u)lum, ī** *n.* oracle, prophecy
**Ortygia, ae** *f.* ancient name of Delos, an island in the Aegean
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**plēnus, a, um** full, complete, swelling
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray (for, to), invoke†*
**quā** where, where(by), in any (some) way
**remētior, īrī, mēnsus** remeasure, retraverse
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**seges, etis** *f.* crop, harvest, grain field
**temptō** (1) try, seek, test, examine*
**unde** whence, from what source*
**venia, ae** *f.* favor, pardon, grace
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, (ex)change*
**vīctus, ūs** *m.* food, living, victuals

---

during the intensely hot weather known as "dog days" (canicular days), once thought to be due to the combined heat of the Dog Star (Sirius) and the sun. **exūrere:** hist. inf.; App. 257.

**143–144. remēnsō marī:** abl. abs., **remēnsō** being used as a passive. **pater (Anchīsēs) hortātur (nōs) īre = ut eāmus;** App. 360, *a.*

**145–146. quam fīnem ferat (Phoebus), unde (nōs) temptāre auxilium jubeat, quō (jubeat nōs) vertere cursūs:** indir. questions depending on the idea of asking implied in **veniam precārī;** App. 349. **(nōbīs) fessīs. labōrum auxilium:** *help of (for) our troubles;* obj. gen.; App. 284.

**147–171. The penates (household gods) appear to Aeneas by night and tell him to leave Crete and seek a western land called Hesperia by the Greeks but Italy by the inhabitants.**

**147. (in) terrīs.**

**148–151. effigiēs Phrygiīque penātēs . . . vīsī (sunt) astāre. dīv(ōr)um. jacentis (meī) in somnīs:** *as I lay asleep.*

**151. manifestī:** modifying **effigiēs Phrygiīque penātēs,** and agreeing with the latter. **quā:** adv.

**152. īnsertās:** *set* (in the walls).

**153. adfārī, dēmere:** depending on **vīsī sunt** understood, or else historical infinitives, with **effigiēs Phrygiīque penātēs** (understood) as subject; App. 257. **cūrās (meās).**

**154. dēlātō:** *having arrived,* i.e., if you should go. **Ortygiam:** acc. of place to which; App. 315, *a.*

*hīc* canit *et tua nōs* ēn ultrō *ad līmina mittit.*
*Nōs tē* Dardaniā incēnsā *tuaque arma secūtī,*
*nōs* tumidum *sub tē* permēnsī *classibus aequor,*
*īdem ventūrōs tollēmus in* astra nepōtēs
*imperiumque urbī dabimus. Tū moenia magnīs*
*magna parā longumque fugae nē* linque *labōrem.*
Mūtandae *sēdēs. Nōn haec tibi lītora* suāsit
Dēlius *aut* Crētae *jussit* cōnsīdere Apollō.
*Est locus,* Hesperiam Grajī cognōmine *dīcunt,*
*terra antīqua,* potēns *armīs atque* ūbere glaebae;
Oenōtrī coluēre *virī; nunc fāma* minōrēs
*Ītaliam dīxisse* ducis *dē nōmine gentem:*
*hae nōbīs* propriae *sēdēs, hinc* Dardanus ortus
Īasius*que pater, genus ā quō* principe *nostrum.*

---

**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), prophesy, proclaim, chant*
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, title
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor, foster*
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle
**Crēta, ae** *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean
**Dardania, ae** *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
**Dardanus, ī** *m.* early king of Troy†
**Dēlius, a, um** Delian, of Delos, birthplace of Apollo†
**dux, ducis** *m.* leader, guide, pilot*
**ēn** lo! behold! see! look!
**glaeba, ae** *f.* soil, sod, glebe
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**Hesperia, ae** *f.* Italy, Westland
**Īasius, (i)ī** *m.* brother of Dardanus†
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, burn*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert, omit*
**minōrēs, um** *m.* descendants, posterity
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**Oenōtr(i)us, a, um** of Oenotria, a district of southern Italy
**orior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up
**permētior, īrī, mēnsus** measure through, traverse†
**potēns, entis** powerful, mighty*
**princeps, cipis** *m.* first, chief, leader
**proprius, a, um** one's own, secure, permanent
**suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus** persuade, recommend
**tumidus, a, um** swollen, surging
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder, bosom, fertility
**ultrō** beyond, voluntarily*

---

**156–157. Dardaniā incēnsā:** abl. abs. **sub tē = tē duce. Nōs secūtī (sumus), nōs permēnsī (sumus).**

**158.** (nōs) **īdem. tuōs nepōtēs:** refers to the power and the glory of the Roman race, and especially to the deification of Julius and Augustus Caesar, who traced their ancestry to Aeneas.

**159–160.** (tuae) **urbī:** Rome. **moenia magnīs magna:** *mighty walls for the mighty.* With **magnīs** understand either **virīs** or **rēbus.** Perhaps the poet deliberately left it ambiguous. **moenia magnīs magna, longum linque labōrem:** intentionally impressive alliteration; App. 411.

**160. parā, linque:** imperatives; the use of **nē** with the imp. is poetic; App. 256, *a.*

**161. Mūtandae (sunt).**

**162. Crētae:** loc.; the only example in the *Aeneid* of the loc. case of an island; App 345.

**163. Grajī:** pronounce **Grajjī;** App 6, *b.* (**quem**) **Grajī dīcunt** ( = **vocant**) **Hesperiam.** Ll. 163–166 = I, 530–533.

**164. armīs, ūbere:** ablatives of respect; App. 325.

**165. Oenōtrī virī coluēre** ( = **coluērunt terram**). **fāma (est) = dīcunt.**

**166. dīxisse** ( = **vocāvisse**) **gentem Ītaliam. dē nōmine ducis (Italī).**

**167. sēdēs (sunt), ortus (est).**

**167–168. Dardanus Īasiusque:** Dardanus and his brother Iasius were born in Etruria. On growing up, Dardanus emigrated to Asia Minor and married the

*Surge age et haec laetus* longaevō *dicta parentī*
*haud* dubitanda *refer:* Corythum *terrāsque* requīrat
Ausoniās: Dictaea negat *tibi Juppiter arva.'*
*Tālibus* attonitus vīsīs *et vōce deōrum*
(*nec* sopor *illud erat, sed* cōram agnōscere vultūs
vēlātās*que* comās praesentia*que ōra vidēbar;*
*tum* gelidus *tōtō* mānābat *corpore* sūdor)
corripiō *ē* strātīs *corpus tendōque* supīnās
*ad caelum cum vōce manūs et mūnera* lībō
intemerāta focīs. Perfectō *laetus honōre*
*Anchīsēn faciō* certum *remque* ordine pandō.
Agnōvit prōlem ambiguam *geminōsque parentīs,*
*sēque novō* veterum dēceptum errōre *locōrum.*
*Tum* memorat: '*Nāte,* Īliacīs exercite *fātīs,*

---

**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**ambiguus, a, um** doubtful, ambiguous
**attonitus, a, um** thunderstruck, astounded†
**Ausonius, a, um** Italian, Ausonian
**certus, a, um** determined, sure, fixed, reliable; **certum facere** inform*
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**cōram** face to face, before the face
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**Corythus, ī** *m.* a city of northern Italy, Cortona†
**dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** deceive†
**Dictaeus, a, um** Dictean, of Dicte, a Cretan mountain†
**dubitō** (1) waver, doubt, hesitate†
**error, ōris** *m.* mistake, wandering
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** drive, harass*
**focus, ī** *m.* hearth, fireplace, home
**gelidus, a, um** cold, chilly, icy
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**intemerātus, a, um** pure, undefiled
**lībō** (1) taste, pour (as a libation)
**longaevus, a, um** long-lived, aged
**mānō** (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)
**memorō** (1) (re)call, relate, recount, say*
**negō** (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, arrangement, array*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread, open, reveal*
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** accomplish, execute, finish, perfect†
**praesēns, entis** present, at hand
**prōlēs, is** *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
**requīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus** (re)seek
**sopor, ōris** *m.* slumber, sleep
**strāta, ōrum** *n.* bed; pavement
**sūdor, ōris** *m.* sweat, perspiration
**supīnus, a, um** supine, upturned†
**vēlō** (1) cover, veil, envelop, wrap (up)
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*
**vīsum, ī** *n.* sight, appearance, vision†
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

daughter of Teucer or Teucrus (l. 108), from whom he inherited the kingdom of Troy. Iasius emigrated to Samothrace. **pater:** a purely honorary title here. **ā quō principe (Dardanō ortum est) nostrum genus.**

**169. longaevō parentī (tuō):** Anchises.

**170. refer:** imp. **(Anchīsēs) requīrat:** vol. (jussive) subj. or indir. command; App. 254.

**172–191. Aeneas reports his vision to Anchises, and the Trojans set sail happy at the prospect of soon ending their wanderings.**

**172.** (ego) attonitus.

**173. vultūs (deōrum).**

**175. corpore:** abl. of separation; App. 340.

**176–177. supīnās manūs:** the attitude of prayer; compare the note on **palmās,** I, 93. **mūnera:** *offerings* of wine.

**178. focīs:** *upon the hearth,* which served as the altar of the penates; dat. of direction; App. 306.

**180. ambiguam prōlem geminōsque parentīs:** i.e., Teucer in Crete and Dardanus in Italy.

**181. dēceptum (esse). locōrum:** obj. gen.; App. 284. **novō veterum:** the words are contrasted by being brought together, a Vergilian conceit. **novō veterum errōre locōrum:** interlocked order; App. 442.

**182. Nāte, exercite:** vocatives.

*sōla mihī tālīs cāsūs* Cassandra canēbat.
*Nunc* repetō *haec generī* portendere dēbita *nostrō*
*et* saepe Hesperiam, saepe Ītala *rēgna vocāre.*
*Sed quis ad* Hesperiae *ventūrōs lītora Teucrōs*
crēderet? *Aut quem tum vātēs* Cassandra *movēret?*
Cēdāmus Phoebō *et* monitī meliōra *sequāmur.'*
*Sīc ait, et cūnctī dictō* pārēmus ovantēs.
*Hanc* quoque dēserimus *sēdem* paucīs*que relictīs*
*vēla damus vastumque* cavā trabe currimus *aequor.*
Postquam altum *tenuēre* ratēs *nec jam* amplius *ūllae*
appārent *terrae, caelum* undique *et* undique pontus,
*tum mihi* caeruleus suprā *caput* astitit imber
*noctem* hiemem*que ferēns, et* inhorruit *unda* tenebrīs.
Continuō *ventī volvunt mare magnaque surgunt*
*aequora,* dispersī jactāmur gurgite *vastō;*

**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**amplius** *comp. adv.* more, farther
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (by, near)*
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue), gloomy*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), prophesy, chant, proclaim*
**Cassandra, ae** *f.* daughter of Priam, a prophetess whom none believed
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, fall to*
**continuō** immediately, at once†
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run (over)
**dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus** owe, be due, be destined
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, abandon*
**dispergō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, disperse†
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirl(pool, wind), flood*
**Hesperia, ae** *f.* Italy, Westland
**hiems, emis** *f.* storm, winter*
**imber, bris** *m.* rain, storm, flood, water
**inhorreō, ēre, uī** shiver, bristle†
**Ītalus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**jactō** (1) toss (about), buffet, hurl, fling*
**melior, ius** better, superior, preferable
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn (of)
**ovō** (1) triumph, rejoice, exult†
**pāreō, ēre, uī, itus** obey, yield (*dat.*)
**paucus, a, um** small, few, meager*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea; waves*
**portendō, ere, ī, ntus** foreshadow, stretch forth†
**postquam** after (that), when*
**quoque** also, even, too, likewise*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** reseek, recall, repeat
**saepe** often, frequently*
**suprā** over, above (*acc.*)†
**tenebrae, ārum** *f.* darkness, gloom
**trabs (trabēs), trabis** *f.* beam, timber, ship
**undique** on (from) all sides*

**184.** repetō (Cassandram) portendere ( = portendisse). See the note on II, 247, for Cassandra's prophecies. dēbita: (*as*) *due.*

**185.** (Cassandram) saepe Hesperiam (vocāre), saepe Itala rēgna vocāre. vocāre: *spoke of, mentioned.*

**186–187.** crēderet, movēret: deliberative subjunctives; App. 348. vātēs: (*as*) *a seer.*

**188.** Cēdāmus: vol. subj.; App. 254.

**189.** dictō: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**190.** paucīs relictīs: to account for the legend that Cretan Pergamum was founded by Trojans. See l. 133.

**191.** vēla (ventīs) damus.

**192–218.** Soon after leaving Crete a violent storm drives the Trojans out of their course to the Strophades, some small islands infested by Harpies.

**192.** tenuēre = tenuērunt.

**193.** (et postquam) caelum (appāret).

**195.** tenebrīs: abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331.

**196.** ventī volvunt mare magna: double alliteration of v v and m m.

**197.** (in) gurgite.

involvēre *diem* nimbī *et nox* ūmida *caelum*
abstulit, ingeminant abruptīs nūbibus *ignēs*.
Excutimur *cursū et* caecīs *errāmus in undīs*.
*Ipse diem noctemque* negat discernere *caelō*
*nec* meminisse *viae mediā* Palinūrus *in undā*.
Trīs adeō incertōs caecā cālīgine sōlēs
*errāmus pelagō*, totidem sine *sīdere noctēs*.
Quārtō *terra diē prīmum sē* attollere *tandem*
*vīsa*, aperīre *procul montīs ac volvere* fūmum.
*Vēla* cadunt, *rēmīs* īnsurgimus; *haud* mora, nautae
adnixī torquent spūmās *et* caerula verrunt.
*Servātum ex undīs* Strophadum *mē lītora prīmum*
excipiunt. Strophades Grajō *stant nōmine dictae*
īnsulae Īoniō *in magnō, quās* dīra Celaenō

---

**abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break off
**adeō** to such an extent, indeed
**adnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** lean upon, strive
**aperiō, īre, uī, rtus** open (out)*
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus** carry away, rob†
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue), gloomy*
**cālīgō, inis** *f.* fog, darkness, gloom†
**Celaenō, ūs** *f.* a harpy†
**dīrus, a, um** terrible, dire, dreadful*
**discernō, ere, crēvī, crētus** distinguish, discern†
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, catch
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake off, drive from*
**fūmus, ī** *m.* smoke, vapor, fume
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**incertus, a, um** indistinguishable, uncertain
**ingeminō** (1) redouble, increase, repeat
**īnsula, ae** *f.* island
**īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise (on) (*dat.*)†
**involvō, ere, ī, volūtus** envelop, wrap in
**Īonius, a, um** Ionian (Sea), Greek†
**meminī, isse** remember, recall (*gen.*)
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
**nauta, ae** *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner†
**negō** (1) deny, refuse, say not (no)
**nimbus, ī** *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot†*
**quārtus, a, um** fourth†
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**spūma, ae** *f.* foam, froth, spray
**Strophades, um** *f.* islands of the Ionian Sea†
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, toss, sway*
**totidem** an equal number, so many
**trēs, tria** three*
**ūmidus, a, um** wet, damp, moist
**verrō, ere, ī, rsus** sweep (over), scour

---

**198.** **involvēre** = **involvērunt.**

**201.** **Ipse Palinūrus:** *the master* (*pilot*). (**sē**) **discernere** (in) **caelō.**

**202.** **viae:** gen. with **meminisse**; App. 288. **nec meminisse** = **et** (**negat sē**) **meminisse:** inf. of indir. statement; App. 263.

**203.** **Trīs incertōs sōlēs** ( = **diēs**): it was so dark that it was uncertain whether day or night prevailed; acc. of duration of time; App. 314. **caecā cālīgine:** abl. of cause with **incertōs**; App. 332.

**204.** (**in**) **pelagō:** or abl. of the route; App. 338. **totidem noctēs** (**errāmus**).

**205–206.** **terra vīsa** (**est**) **sē attollere, aperīre, ac volvere. volvere fumum:** *to send up wreaths of smoke.*

**207.** **Vēla cadunt:** on nearing the shore, the ancients furled the sails of their boats and used the oars. **rēmīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **mora** (**est**).

**208.** **caerul(e)a** (**aequora**).

**210.** **dictae** = **vocātae.** **stant** = **sunt,** but more picturesque.

**211–213.** **īnsulae:** with the final diphthong shortened before the initial vowel of the following word. This is called *semi-hiatus;* App. 400. **Īoniō** (**marī**). **Phīnēia domus:** to punish Phineus for his crimes, Jupiter blinded him and sent the Harpies, which defiled his food when he attempted to eat. Two

Harpyiae*que* colunt *aliae*, Phīnēia postquam
clausa *domus* mēnsās*que* metū līquēre priōrēs.
*Trīstius haud illīs* mōnstrum, *nec* saevior *ūlla*
pestis *et īra deum* Stygiīs *sēsē* extulit *undīs*.
Virgineī volucrum vultūs, foedissima ventris
prōluviēs uncae*que manūs et* pallida semper
*ōra* famē.
*Hūc ubi* dēlātī *portūs* intrāvimus, ecce
*laeta* boum passim *campīs* armenta *vidēmus*
caprigenum*que* pecus *nūllō* custōde *per* herbās.
Inruimus *ferrō et dīvōs ipsumque vocāmus*
*in partem* praedam*que Jovem; tum lītore* curvō
exstruimus*que* torōs dapibus*que* epulāmur opīmīs.

---

**armentum, ī** *n.* herd, drove (of cattle)
**bōs, bovis** *m.* (*f.*) ox, bull, cow
**caprigenus, a, um** goat(-born)†
**claudō, ere, ī, sus** shut (in), (in)close*
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, inhabit*
**curvus, a, um** bent, curved, winding*
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), keeper*
**daps, is** *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring down, convey
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry (out), raise*
**epulor, ārī, ātus** feast, banquet (*abl.*)†
**exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build (up), pile†
**famēs, is** *f.* hunger, famine, greed
**foedus, a, um** foul, filthy, loathsome†
**Harpyia, ae** *f.* harpy, a ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman†
**herba, ae** *f.* grass, herb(age), sward*
**inruō, ere, uī** fall (on), rush on
**intrō** (1) enter, penetrate†
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* portent, monster, prodigy*
**opīmus, a, um** rich, sumptuous, fertile
**pallidus, a, um** pale, pallid, wan
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**pecus, oris** *n.* herd, flock, drove*
**pestis, is** *f.* plague, pestilence, curse
**Phīnēius, a, um** of Phineus, king of Thrace, blinded by the gods and tormented by the harpies for his crimes†
**postquam** after (that), when*
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, plunder, spoils
**prior, ius** former, previous, prior*
**prōluviēs, ēī** *f.* overflow, excrement†
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**semper** always, ever*
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, infernal, of the River Styx in Hades†*
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
**uncus, a, um** curved, hooked, bent
**venter, tris** *m.* belly, maw
**virgineus, a, um** of a girl, maidenly; pure
**volucris, is** *f.* bird, fowl†
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

of the Argonauts, Zetes and Calais, finally chased the Harpies away, and they then took up their abode in the Strophades. **Harpyiae**: **yi** form a diphthong, pronounced *we*.

**213. clausa (est). metū**: abl. of cause; App. 332. **līquēre** = **līquērunt**.

**214. illīs**: abl. with comparative; App. 327. **mōnstrum (sē extulit)**.

**215. de(ōr)um.**

**216. vultūs (erant).**

**218. famē**: with long **e**, as though of the fifth declension; abl. of cause.

**219–244. The Harpies rudely disturb the sacrificial banquet of the Trojans but are finally beaten off.**

**221. caprigenum pecus**: *flock of goats.* **nūllō custōde**: *with no one to guard them;* abl. abs.; App. 343.

**222–223. ferrō**: abl. of means. **dīvōs vocāmus**: i.e., a portion of the booty was promised to the gods as a sacrifice, on condition that they would help the Trojans secure it. **(in) lītore.**

**224. torōs**: couches of turf on which

*At* subitae horrificō lāpsū *de montibus adsunt*
Harpyiae *et magnīs* quatiunt clangōribus ālās,
dīripiunt*que* dapēs contāctū*que omnia* foedant
immundō; *tum vōx* taetrum dīra *inter* odōrem.
Rūrsum *in* sēcessū *longō sub* rūpe cavātā
[arboribus clausam *circum atque* horrentibus *umbrīs*]
īnstruimus mēnsās *ārīsque* repōnimus *ignem;*
rūrsum *ex* dīversō *caelī* caecīs*que* latebrīs
turba sonāns praedam *pedibus* circumvolat uncīs,
polluit *ōre* dapēs. *Sociīs tunc arma* capessant
ēdīcō, *et* dīrā *bellum cum gente* gerendum.
*Haud* secus *ac jussī faciunt* tēctōs*que per* herbam
dispōnunt ēnsīs *et* scūta latentia condunt.
Ergō *ubi* dēlāpsae sonitum *per* curva *dedēre*

---

**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree, wood(s)*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**capessō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** seize (eagerly)
**cavō** (1) hollow (out)
**circumvolō** (1) fly around
**clangor, ōris** *m.* noise, whir, elang
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** shut (in), (in)elose*
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, found, plaee; hide*
**contāctus, ūs** *m.* eontact, touch†
**curvus, a, um** bent, eurved, winding*
**daps, is** *f.* (saerifieial) feast, banquet*
**dēlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide down, slip (down)
**dīripiō, ere, uī, reptus** tear apart, plunder
**dīrus, a, um** terrible, dire, dreadful*
**dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus** arrange, distribute†
**dīversus, a, um** separate(d), different*
**ēdīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** proelaim, order†
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**ergō** therefore, hence, eonsequently*
**foedō** (1) defile, pollute, befoul
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** bear, wage*
**Harpyia, ae** *f.* harpy, a ravenous monster with the face of a woman and the body of a bird
**herba, ae** *f.* grass, herb(age), sward*
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder (at)*
**horrificus, a, um** horrible, horrifying†
**immundus, a, um** foul, filthy, dirty†
**īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build (up), equip, array, heap up, instruet
**lāpsus, ūs** *m.* gliding, slip, swoop
**latebra, ae** *f.* hiding plaee, retreat, lair
**latēns, entis** hiding, hidden, secret
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**odor, ōris** *m.* odor, scent, stench
**polluō, ere, uī, ūtus** defile, pollute, profane
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, plunder, spoils
**quatiō, ere, quassus** shake, shatter
**repōnō, ere, posuī, positus** replaee*
**rūpēs, is** *f.* roek, eliff, erag*
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, baek(ward)*
**scūtum, ī** *n.* shield
**sēcessus, ūs** *m.* retreat, reeess, nook
**secus** otherwise, differently
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, erash, noise
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpeeted
**taeter, tra, trum** foul, filthy, loathsome†
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** hide, eover*
**turba, ae** *f.* erowd, mob, throng, uproar
**uncus, a, um** eurved, bent, hooked

---

to reeline at the banquet. **dapibus**: abl. with **epulāmur = vēscimur**; App. 342; a variety of the abl. of means.

**226. magnīs clangōribus**; *with a terrible din* of their wings.

**228. vōx dīra (est).**

**229–230.** Almost the same as I, 310–311.

**232. dīversō = dīversā parte.**

**233. pedibus**: abl. of means. **turba (Harpyiārum).**

**234. (nostrās) dapēs. (ut) capessant**: a subst. vol. elause, depending on **ēdīcō**; App. 360.

**235. gerendum (esse)**: indir. statement, depending on **ēdīcō**; App. 263, 360, *a.* **dīrā gente (Harpyiārum).**

**236–237. ac**: *than.* **tēctōs, latentia**: proleptic; equivalent to **ita dispōnunt ēnsīs ut tegantur et ita condunt scūta ut lateant**; App. 440.

**238. dedēre = dedērunt.**

*lītora, dat* signum speculā Mīsēnus *ab altā*
aere cavō. Invādunt *sociī et nova* proelia temptant,
obscēnās *pelagī ferrō* foedāre volucrīs.
*Sed neque vim* plūmīs *ūllam nec* vulnera tergō
*accipiunt*, celerī*que fugā sub* sīdera lāpsae
sēmēsam praedam *et* vestīgia foeda *relinquunt*.
*Ūna in* praecelsā cōnsēdit rūpe Celaenō,
*īnfēlīx vātēs*, rumpit*que hanc pectore vōcem:*
'*Bellum* etiam prō caede boum strātīs*que* juvencīs,
Lāomedontiadae, *bellumne* īnferre *parātis*
*et patriō* Harpyiās īnsōntīs pellere *rēgnō?*
*Accipite* ergō *animīs atque haec mea* fīgite *dicta*,
*quae* Phoebō *pater* omnipotēns, *mihi* Phoebus Apollō
praedīxit, *vōbīs* Furiārum *ego maxima* pandō.

**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze (utensil, trumpet)*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**bōs, bovis** *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**Celaenō, ūs** *f.* a harpy
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, speedy*
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit, settle*
**ergō** therefore, hence, consequently*
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, fasten, (im)print*
**foedō** (1) defile, mangle, disfigure
**foedus, a, um** filthy, foul, loathsome
**Furiae, ārum** *f.* Furies, avenging spirits
**Harpyia, ae** *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus** bring to, offer, wage
**īnsōns, ontis** innocent, guiltless
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** go (into), attack
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, steer, ox†*
**Lāomedontiadēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Laomedon; Trojan†
**Mīsēnus, ī** *m.* Trojan trumpeter†
**obscēnus, a, um** disgusting, filthy, foul†
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open (up), disclose*
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** drive (away), strike
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**plūma, ae** *f.* feather, plume†
**praecelsus, a, um** lofty, high†
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, plunder, spoils
**praedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** foretell, predict†
**prō** in behalf of, (in return) for (*abl.*)*
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, conflict, fray
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth), utter*
**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sēmēsus, a, um** half-eaten†
**signum, ī** *n.* sign(al), mark, token*
**specula, ae** *f.* lookout, height, watch-tower†
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay (low, down), strew, spread, fell*
**temptō** (1) try, seek, test, examine*
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide, rear*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace*
**volucris, is** *f.* bird, fowl
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

**240.** **aere cavō = tubā,** *with the trumpet.* **nova proelia:** *strange (unusual) combats.*

**241.** **foedāre:** in loose apposition with **proelia.**

**242.** **(in) plūmīs, (in) tergō:** the weapons of the Trojans glance from the feathers and the backs of the Harpies.

**243.** **sub:** *up toward.*

**245–258. In revenge, Celaeno, leader of the Harpies, gives a horrifying oracle.**

**246.** **rumpit vōcem:** *breaks forth (with) this cry;* **vōcem** is cognate acc.; App. 313. See II, 129, and note. **(ex) pectore.**

**247.** **Bellum:** emphatic by position and by rhetorical repetition; App. 413. **prō** (*in return for*) **caede bo(v)um:** sarcastic.

**248.** **Lāomedontiadae:** in derision, as Laomedon, the legendary ancestor of the Trojans, was a famous perjurer and cheat. See II, 610, and note. **īnferre (nōbīs).**

**249.** **(ē) patriō rēgnō (nostrō). Harpyiās:** **yi** form a diphthong pronounced *we.*

**250–251.** **(in) animīs. quae Phoebō pater omnipotēns (praedīxit). pater omnipotēns:** Jupiter.

**252.** **(quae) ego maxima (nātū) Furiā-**

*Ītaliam cursū petitis ventīsque vocātīs:*
*ībitis Ītaliam portūsque* intrāre licēbit.
*Sed nōn ante datam* cingētis *moenibus urbem*
quam *vōs* dīra famēs *nostraeque* injūria caedis
ambēsās subigat mālīs absūmere mēnsās.'
*Dīxit, et in silvam* pennīs ablāta refūgit.
*At sociīs* subitā gelidus formīdine *sanguis*
dēriguit: cecidēre *animī, nec jam* amplius *armīs,*
*sed* vōtīs precibus*que jubent* exposcere pācem,
sīve *deae* seu *sint* dīrae obscēnae*que* volucrēs.
*Et pater Anchīsēs* passīs *dē lītore* palmīs
*nūmina magna vocat* meritōs*que* indīcit *honōrēs:*
'*Dī,* prohibēte minās; *dī, tālem* āvertite *cāsum*
*et* placidī *servāte piōs.*' *Tum lītore* fūnem

---

**absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** consume, destroy
**ambedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus** eat, gnaw around†
**amplius** more (abundantly)
**auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus** carry off, remove, bear away
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** avert, turn away*
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**dērigēscō, ere, riguī** stiffen, freeze†
**dīrus, a, um** terrible, dire, dreadful*
**exposcō, ere, poposcī** demand, beg, ask†
**famēs, is** *f.* hunger, famine, greed
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, fright, terror, dread
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cable, line, cord
**gelidus, a, um** cold, chilly, icy
**indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** proclaim
**injūria, ae** *f.* wrong, injury, injustice
**intrō** (1) enter, penetrate
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is allowed*
**māla, ae** *f.* jaw, cheek-bone†
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, merit, earn*
**minae, ārum** *f.* threat, menace, danger†
**obscēnus, a, um** filthy, disgusting
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread (open), reveal*
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, indulgence, favor
**penna, ae** *f.* wing, feather†
**placidus, a, um** peaceful, gracious, calm*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty*
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** forbid, hinder
**quam** than, how, as†
**refugiō, ere, fūgī** flee (back), retire
**sīve, seu** whether, or (if)
**subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** compel, force under
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**volucris, is** *f.* bird, fowl
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

**rum pandō:** a poetic confusion of the Furies and Harpies, which were supposed to be distinct.

**253–254. cursū:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **ventīs vocātīs:** alliteration. **Ītaliam, Ītaliam:** intentionally impressive iteration. **(ad) Ītaliam. (vōbīs) licēbit.**

**255. ante . . . quam:** *sooner . . . than, until.* **datam (ā fātīs).**

**256. famēs:** a punishment to fit the crime. **nostrae injūria caedis:** *the wrong of our (attempted slaughter) = the wrong you have done by trying to slay us,* appositional gen.; App. 281. **nostrae:** equivalent to an obj. gen.; App. 284.

**257. subigat:** with **ante quam;** App. 376, *a.* **ambēsās mēnsās (vestrās):** this dreadful prophecy is fulfilled in a harmless manner. The Trojans after arriving in Italy use broad cakes as plates on which to spread their food. After consuming the layer of food, they finally eat these cakes, thus devouring their "tables" and fulfilling the prophecy. See VII, 112–129.

**259–288. In great alarm the Trojans depart and soon reach Actium where they celebrate games in honor of Apollo, and then remain for the winter.**

**259. sociīs:** dat. of reference; App. 301.

**260. cecidēre = cecidērunt.**

**261. jubent (mē).**

**262. sīve (illae Harpyiae) sint deae:** subj. in informal indir. disc.; App. 390, *a.*

**263. passīs palmīs:** the usual attitude of prayer. See I, 93, and note.

**266. (nōs) piōs. fūnem:** collective.

dēripere excussōsque *jubet* laxāre rudentīs.
*Tendunt vēla* Notī: *fugimus* spūmantibus *undīs*
quā *cursum ventusque* gubernātorque *vocābat.*
*Jam mediō* appāret *flūctū* nemorōsa Zacynthos
Dūlichiumque Samēque *et* Nēritos ardua *saxīs.*
Effugimus scopulōs Ithacae, Lāertia *rēgna,*
*et terram* altrīcem saevī exsecrāmur Ulixī.
Mox *et* Leucātae nimbōsa cacūmina *montis*
*et* formīdātus nautīs aperītur Apollō.
*Hunc petimus fessī et* parvae succēdimus *urbī;*
ancora *dē* prōrā jacitur, *stant lītore puppēs.*
Ergō īnspērātā *tandem tellūre* potītī
lūstrāmurque *Jovī* vōtīsque incendimus *ārās,*
Actiaque Īliacīs celebrāmus *lītora* lūdīs.

**Actius, a. um** of Actium, a promontory of western Greece†
**altrīx, īcis** *f.* nurse, nourisher†
**ancora, ae** *f.* anchor
**aperiō, īre, uī, rtus** open (out), loom*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear
**arduus, a, um** high, steep, difficult
**cacūmen, inis** *n.* summit, top, peak†
**celebrō** (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
**dēripiō, ere, uī, reptus** tear away
**Dūlichium, (i)ī** *n.* island of the Ionian Sea†
**effugiō, ere, fūgī** escape (from), flee
**ergō** therefore, then, thence, consequently*
**excutiō, ere, ī, cussus** shake out, loose(n), unfold*
**exsecror, ārī, ātus** curse, execrate, revile†
**formīdō** (1) fear, dread, be afraid†
**gubernātor, ōris** *m.* helmsman, pilot†
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian, of Ilium*
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, burn*
**īnspērātus, a, um** unhoped for†
**Ithaca, ae** *f.* island of the Ionian Sea, kingdom of Ulysses, wily Greek leader†
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw, hurl†
**Lāertius, a, um** of Laërtes, father of Ulysses†
**laxō** (1) loose(n), relax, open, free
**Leucāta, ae** *f.* promontory of Leucas in western Greece†
**lūdus, ī** *m.* play, game, sport, contest†
**lūstrō** (1) purify, traverse, survey*
**mox** presently, soon†
**nauta, ae** *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
**nemorōsus, a, um** wooded, woody†
**Nēritos, ī** *f.* island of the Ionian Sea†
**nimbōsus, a, um** cloudy, stormy
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**potior, īrī, ītus** gain, possess (*abl.*)
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow
**quā** where(by), in any (some) way
**rudēns, entis** *m.* rope, cable, sheet
**saevus, a, um** cruel, fierce, stern*
**Samē, ēs** *f.* island of the Ionian Sea†
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, crag, cliff*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach (*dat.*)
**Ulixēs, is** (eī, ī) *m.* Ulysses, wily Greek leader*
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
**Zacynthus (os), ī** *f.* island of the Ionian Sea†

**268. undīs:** abl. of the route; App. 338.

**270.** (in) **flūctū.**

**271. saxīs:** abl. of cause. **ardua saxīs:** *with its lofty crags.*

**273. Ulixī:** obj. gen.; App. 284.

**275. nautīs:** dat. of agent or reference; App. 302, 301. **Apollō:** i.c., the temple of Apollo at Actium, *dreaded by sailors* on account of the dangers to navigation in that region.

**276. Hunc (Apollinem) = hoc templum Apollinis. urbī:** dat. with compound. Actium became famous as the scene of the great naval victory of Augustus over Antony and Cleopatra in 31 B.C.

**277.** (in) **lītore.**

**278. tellūre:** abl. with **potior;** App. 342.

**279. vōtīs:** abl. of means.

**280. Īliacīs lūdīs:** abl. of means. A festival had been celebrated here in an-

Exercent *patriās* oleō *lābente* palaestrās
nūdātī *sociī:* juvat ēvāsisse tot *urbēs*
Argolicās *mediōsque fugam tenuisse per* hostīs.
Intereā *magnum* sōl circumvolvitur annum
285 *et* glaciālis hiems Aquilōnibus asperat *undās:*
aere cavō clipeum, *magnī* gestāmen Abantis,
postibus adversīs fīgō *et rem* carmine signō:
*AENĒĀS HAEC DĒ DANAĪS VICTŌRIBUS ARMA.*
Linquere *tum portūs jubeō et* cōnsīdere trānstrīs.
290 Certātim *sociī* feriunt *mare et aequora* verrunt.
Prōtinus āeriās Phaeācum abscondimus *arcēs*
*lītoraque* Ēpīrī legimus *portūque subīmus*

---

**Abās, antis** *m.* king of Argos†
**abscondō, ere,** (di)dī, **ditus** hide; see disappear†
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**āerius, a, um** airy, lofty, towering†
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze (implement)*
**annus, ī** *m.* year, circuit; season*
**Aquilō, ōnis** *m.* (north) wind
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**asperō** (1) roughen†
**carmen, inis** *n.* song, verse, poem†
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**certātim** in rivalry, emulously, eagerly
**circumvolvō, ere, volūtus** roll around†
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle*
**Ēpīrus, ī** *f.* a district of northwestern Greece†
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** go forth, escape (from)
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** practice, drive, engage in, harass*
**feriō, īre** strike, smite, kill
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fasten, fix (im)print*
**gestāmen, inis** *n.* equipment, accoutrement†
**glaciālis, e** icy, cold†
**hiems, emis** *f.* winter, storm*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** gather, choose, pass (by), skirt*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**nūdō** (1) bare, strip, expose, uncover
**oleum, ī** *n.* oil†
**palaestra, ae** *f.* wrestling (place, bout)†
**Phaeāces, um** *m.* Phaeacians, a mythical people off the western coast of Greece†
**postis, is** *m.* column, post, portal, door
**prōtinus** immediately, continuously
**signō** (1) sign, mark, designate
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**tot** so many, as many*
**trānstrum, ī** *n.* cross bench, rowers' bench, thwart†
**verrō, ere, ī, rsus** sweep (over), scour

---

cient times and was renewed by Augustus in honor of his victory at Actium in 31 B.C. Vergil assigns the original foundation of the festival and games to Aeneas, to add to their renown and to bestow a bit of delicate flattery on Augustus.

**281. oleō lābente:** the ancient athletes, especially wrestlers, oiled themselves.

**282. nūdātī:** ancient athletes wore no clothing while playing their games. **juvat (nōs):** *we rejoice.*

**284. annum:** obj. of **circum** in **circumvolvitur,** or cognate acc. of the middle verb; App. 308, 309, 313.

**286. aere cavō:** abl. of quality denoting material; App. 330, 324.

**287. (in) postibus adversīs:** *on the entrance pillars* (of the temple). **carmine:** such poetical inscriptions were common.

**288.** *Aenēās* (**dedit Apollinī**) *Haec Arma* (**tracta**) *Dē Danaīs Victōribus.* **Victōribus:** *victorious,* but not wholly so, as Aeneas's inscription means to show.

**289–299. They land in Epirus, now under the rule of Trojan Helenus and Andromache, after the death of Pyrrhus.**

**289. (in) trānstrīs.**

**292. portū:** dat. with compound.

Chāoniō *et* celsam Būthrōtī accēdimus *urbem.*
*Hīc* incrēdibilis *rērum fāma* occupat aurīs,
Prīamidēn Helenum Grajās rēgnāre *per urbīs*
conjugiō Aeacidae Pyrrhī scēptrīs*que* potītum,
*et patriō* Andromachēn iterum cessisse marītō.
Obstipuī mīrō*que* incēnsum *pectus amōre*
compellāre *virum et cāsūs* cognōscere *tantōs.*
Prōgredior *portū classīs et lītora* linquēns,
sollemnīs *cum forte* dapēs *et trīstia dōna*
*ante urbem in* lūcō falsī Simoëntis *ad undam*
lībābat cinerī Andromachē mānīs*que vocābat*
Hectoreum *ad* tumulum, viridī *quem* caespite inānem

**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach, reach
**Aeacidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Acacus, grandfather of Achilles
**Andromachē, ēs** *f.* wife of Hector
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**Būthrōtum, ī** *n.* city of Epirus†
**caespes, itis** *m.* turf, sod†
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, retire, fall to*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**Chāonius, a, um** Chaonian, of Chaonia, a district of northwestern Greece†
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** learn
**compellō** (1) address, speak to, accost
**conjugium, (i)ī** *n.* wedlock, wife, husband
**daps, is** *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
**falsus, a, um** false, pretended, mock, counterfeit
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**Hectoreus, a, um** of Hector, a Trojan hero
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam†
**inānis, e** empty, vain, useless*
**incendō, ere, ī, cēnsus** kindle, burn*
**incrēdibilis, e** unbelievable, incredible†
**iterum** again, a second time, anew*
**lībō** (1) pour out, offer (as a libation)
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead*
**marītus, ī** *m.* husband†
**mīrus, a, um** wonderful, marvelous
**obstipēscō, ere, stipuī** be amazed, stand agape*
**occupō** (1) possess; surprise; occupy†
**potior, īrī, ītus** gain, possess (*abl.*)
**Prīamidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Priam†
**prōgredior, ī, gressus** advance†
**Pyrrhus, ī** *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
**rēgnō** (1) reign, rule, govern, sway
**scēptrum, ī** *n.* scepter, (royal) power
**Simoïs, entis** *m.* river near Troy
**sollemnis, e** annual, solemn, customary
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*

**294.** (nōstrās) aurīs.

**295. rēgnāre:** indir. statement depending on the idea of saying implied in **fāma**; App. 390, 263.

**296. conjugiō (=conjuge=Andromachē) scēptrīsque:** ablatives with the verb **potior**; App. 342. Andromache, the ill-fated wife of Hector, had been allotted in the distribution of the booty to Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus), son of Achilles and descendant of Aeacus. **scēptrīs:** poetic plural; App. 243.

**297. patriō:** i.e., Trojan.

**298–299. amōre:** abl. of means. **incēnsum (est) pectus (meum). amōre compellāre:** *desire to speak to.* Cf. **amor cognōscere,** II, 10, and see App. 264.

**300–343. The pathetic meeting of Aeneas with Andromache at the empty tomb of Hector.**

**300.** (ā) portū.

**301. dapēs, dōna:** food offerings to the dead. Such offerings usually consisted of wine, milk, oil, honey, and sometimes of more solid foods, such as eggs and beans.

**302. falsī Simoëntis:** i.e., a Simoïs named after the one at Troy.

**303. cinerī:** i.e., of Hector. **mānīs vocābat:** to the sacrificial meal.

**304. tumulum inānem:** an empty tomb erected here in honor of Hector, whose ashes had been buried at Troy. Such monuments, common in antiquity, were called *cenotaphs.* **caespite:** abl. of material; App. 324.

*et geminās*, causam *lacrimīs*, sacrāverat *ārās*.
*Ut mē* cōnspexit *venientem et* Trōia *circum*
*arma* āmēns *vīdit, magnīs* exterrita mōnstrīs
dēriguit vīsū *in mediō*, calor ossa *relīquit;*
*lābitur et longō vix tandem tempore fātur:*
'Vērane *tē* faciēs, vērus *mihi* nuntius adfers,
*nāte deā?* Vīvisne? *Aut, sī lūx* alma recessit,
Hector *ubi est?' Dīxit, lacrimāsque* effūdit *et omnem*
implēvit *clāmōre locum. Vix* pauca *furentī*
subjiciō *et* rārīs turbātus *vōcibus* hīscō:
'Vīvō equidem *vītamque* extrēma *per omnia dūcō;*
*nē* dubitā, *nam* vēra *vidēs.*
*Heu! quis tē cāsus* dējectam *conjuge tantō*
excipit, *aut quae* digna satis *fortūna* revīsit,
Hectoris Andromachē? Pyrrhīn cōnūbia *servās?'*

---

**adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring to, present†
**almus, a, um** kind(ly), nourishing
**āmēns, entis** crazy, frantic, distracted
**Andromachē, ēs** *f.* wife of Hector
**calor, ōris** *m.* heat, warmth, glow†
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at
**cōnūbium, (i)ī** *n.* marriage, wedlock
**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast down†
**dērigēscō, ere, riguī** stiffen, freeze
**dignus, a, um** worthy (of), suitable (*abl.*)
**dubitō** (1) doubt, hesitate, waver
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, shed*
**equidem** indeed, surely, truly*
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, catch
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, startle†
**extrēma, ōrum** *n.* extremity, death, end*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, form*
**Hector, oris** *m.* Trojan leader*
**hīscō, ere** gape, falter, stammer†
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**mōnstrum, ī** *m.* prodigy, omen, marvel*
**nuntius, (i)ī** *m.* messenger, message
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**paucus, a, um** small, few, scanty*
**Pyrrhus, ī** *m.* Neoptolemus, son of Achilles
**rārus, a, um** rare, disjointed, broken
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, recede, depart
**revīsō, ere** revisit, see again
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place beneath, interpose
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**turbō** (1) disturb, trouble, agitate*
**vērus, a, um** true, real, genuine*
**vīsus, ūs** *m.* sight, view, vision, aspect
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus** live, be alive

---

**305. causam lacrimīs:** *a cause for tears;* dat. of reference; App. 301.

**306. Ut (Andromachē) mē cōnspexit. Ut:** *as, when.*

**307. mōnstrīs:** the sudden appearance of Aeneas, whom she thought dead, seems miraculous to her, and she thinks it must be his ghost.

**308. vīsū in mediō:** as she gazed; App. 246.

**309. longō tempore** = **post longum tempus;** App. 322.

**310. faciēs, nuntius:** in apposition with the subject of **adfers,** (*as*) *a true appearance and true messenger, do you present yourself?*

**312. Hector ubi est:** if Aeneas had come from the land of the shades, he should be accompanied by Hector or at least be able to bring news of him, since Hector was his old friend and comrade. Andromache's first thought is of her beloved Hector.

**313. (eī) furentī:** *with difficulty do I reply briefly to her in her passionate appeal.*

**314. rārīs vōcibus:** with broken words, abl. of manner; App. 328.

**317. dējectam conjuge tantō:** fallen from the high honor of being Hector's wife.

**319. Pyrrhīn(e):** Andromache had been married, against her will, to her captor Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles, but he was now dead.

Dējēcit vultum *et* dēmissā *vōce* locūta *est:*
'*Ō* fēlīx *ūna ante aliās* Priamēia virgō,
hostīlem *ad* tumulum *Trojae sub moenibus altīs*
*jussa* morī, *quae* sortītūs *nōn* pertulit *ūllōs*
*nec victōris* herī tetigit captīva cubīle!
*Nōs* patriā incēnsā dīversa *per aequora* vectae
stirpis Achillēae fastūs juvenem*que* superbum
servitiō ēnixae *tulimus; quī* deinde *secūtus*
Lēdaeam Hermionēn Lacedaemoniōs*que* hymenaeōs
*mē* famulō famulam*que* Helenō trānsmīsit *habendam.*
*Ast illum ēreptae magnō* flammātus *amōre*
*conjugis et* scelerum Furiīs agitātus Orestēs

**Achillēus, a, um** of Achilles, a Greek leader†
**agitō** (1) drive, harass, pursue, agitate
**captīvus, a, um** captive, captured
**cubīle, is** *n.* couch, bed†
**deinde** then, thereafter, next*
**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast down
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down, lower*
**dīversus, a, um** separate(d), different*
**ēnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** bear, give birth to†
**famula, ae** *f.* bondwoman, maidservant
**famulus, ī** *m.* slave, manservant
**fastus, ūs** *m.* disdain, insolence, pride†
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, fortunate, blessed*
**flammō** (1) inflame, fire, kindle†
**Furiae, ārum** *f.* Furies, avenging spirits
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**Hermionē, ēs** *f.* daughter of Helen†
**herus, ī** *m.* master, owner, lord†
**hostīlis, e** hostile, of an enemy†
**hymenaeus, ī** *m.* Hymen, (god of) marriage
**incendō, ere, ī, cēnsus** kindle, burn*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**Lacedaemonius, a, um** of Lacedaemon (Sparta), a district of southern Greece†
**Lēdaeus, a, um** of Leda, mother of Helen†
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**Orestēs, is** *m.* son of Agamemnon; he killed his mother to avenge the murder of his father, and for this was pursued by the Furies†
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country, home town*
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** endure, bear (to the end)
**Priamēius, a, um** of Priam, king of Troy
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, guilt, sin, villainy*
**servitium, (i)ī** *n.* slavery, bondage
**sortītus, ūs** *m.* (drawing of) lots, allotment†
**stirps, is** *f.* stock, lineage, stem, race
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** transmit, hand over†
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey*
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, daughter*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

**321. Priamēia (= Priamī) virgō:** Polyxena, who was sacrificed by the Greeks as an offering at the tomb of Achilles.

**323. sortītūs:** the captives and other booty were regularly distributed among the victors by lot.

**325. nōs = ego:** the "editorial we," contrasted with Polyxena; App. 247.

**326. stirpis Achillēae:** Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles. **fastūs, juvenem:** objects of **tulimus.**

**327. (in) servitiō:** *as a captive slave.* **ēnixae:** *having borne (him) children,* a son Molossus according to tradition. **quī = is = Pyrrhus.**

**328. Lēdaeam Hermionēn:** Hermione, daughter of Helen and granddaughter of Leda. Her home was in Lacedaemon, a district of southern Greece.

**329. famulō famulam:** the words are intentionally emphasized by being brought together. **mē famulō famulam Helenō:** interlocked order; App. 442. **habendam:** gerundive expressing purpose; App. 268.

**330–331. illum:** Pyrrhus. **ēreptae conjugis:** obj. gen.; App. 284. Hermione had been betrothed to Orestes, but was later given in marriage to Pyrrhus. **scelerum Furiīs agitātus Orestēs:** on his return from the Trojan war, Agamemnon, father of Orestes, had been murdered by his own wife, Clytaemnestra, and her lover, Aegisthus. To avenge this crime, Orestes killed the guilty pair, but for

excipit incautum *patriāsque* obtruncat *ad ārās.*
*Morte* Neoptolemī *rēgnōrum* reddita cessit
*pars* Helenō, *quī* Chāoniōs cognōmine *campōs*
Chāoniam*que omnem* Trojānō *ā* Chāone *dīxit,*
Pergama*que* Īliacam*que* jugīs *hanc* addidit *arcem.*
*Sed tibi quī cursum ventī, quae fāta dedēre?*
*Aut* quisnam ignārum *nostrīs deus* appulit *ōrīs?*
*Quid puer* Ascanius? Superat*ne et* vēscitur *aurā?*
*quem tibi jam Troja —*
Ecqua tamen *puerō est* āmissae *cūra parentis?*
Ecquid *in antīquam* virtūtem *animōsque* virīlīs
*et pater Aenēās et* avunculus excitat Hector?'
*Tālia fundēbat* lacrimāns *longōsque* ciēbat
incassum flētūs, *cum sēsē ā moenibus* hērōs

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive to (*dat.*)
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**avunculus, ī** *m.* maternal uncle†
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, fall to*
**Chāōn, onis** *m.* son of Priam
**Chāonia, ae** *f.* a region of northwestern Greece†
**Chāonius, a, um** Chaonian, of Chaonia, a district of northwestern Greece†
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** arouse, excite, produce, stir up*
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, title
**ecquis, qua, quid** any(one, at all)†
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, catch
**excitō** (1) arouse, excite, stir up
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, lamentation, tears
**Hector, oris** *m.* Trojan leader*
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**incassum** in vain, usclessly†
**incautus, a, um** heedless, unaware
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**lacrimō** (1) weep, shed tears, lament
**Neoptolemus, ī** *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
**obtruncō** (1) slay, kill, slaughter, butcher
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**quisnam, quaenam, quidnam** who (which, what) in the world†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give (back, duly), cede, return, render*
**superō** (1) overcome, surmount, survive*
**tamen** nevertheless, however, but*
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**vēscor, ī** feed on, breathe (*abl.*)
**virīlis, e** manly, heroic, virile†
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manliness, valor, virtue*

murdering his mother he was driven mad by the Furies.

**332. patriās ad ārās:** at an altar raised to Achilles at Delphi.

**333. Morte:** abl. of time; App. 322.

**334. cognōmine:** abl. of respect; App. 325.

**335. omnem:** for **omne,** attracted to the gender of the predicate noun **Chāoniam,** *called the plains Chaonian and the whole land Chaonia,* from Chaon, a brother of Helenus, who had been accidentally killed by him. **dīxit** = **vocāvit.**

**337. venti (dedērunt). dedēre** = **dedērunt (cursum tibi).**

**338. (tē) ignārum:** *unaware* (that we lived here). **ōrīs:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**339. Quid (agit) Ascanius:** *how fares Ascanius?* the usual Roman formula for inquiring of one's health. **aurā:** abl. with **vēscor;** App. 342.

**340.** An incomplete verse and sentence, broken off for the pathetic effect. See the note on I, 534.

**341. āmissae parentis:** Creüsa; Andromache assumes that Creüsa has been killed or captured; **parentis** is obj. gen.; App. 284.

**343. avunculus Hector:** Creüsa was a sister of Hector. **excitat:** does the glory of their achievements rouse him to emulate them?

**344–440. Helenus, who is both prophet and king, receives the Trojans hospitably and warns them of their coming dangers on land and sea.**

**344. Tālia (dicta).**

Prīamidēs *multīs* Helenus comitantibus adfert,
agnōscit*que suōs laetusque ad līmina dūcit,*
*et multum lacrimās* verba *inter* singula *fundit.*
Prōcēdō *et* parvam *Trojam* simulāta*que magnīs*
Pergama *et* ārentem Xanthī cognōmine rīvum
agnōscō, Scaeae*que* amplector *līmina* portae,
*Nec nōn et Teucrī* sociā *simul urbe* fruuntur.
*Illōs* porticibus *rēx accipiēbat in* amplīs:
aulāī mediō lībābant pōcula Bacchī
impositīs *aurō* dapibus, paterās*que tenēbant.*
*Jamque diēs* alter*que diēs* prōcessit, *et aurae*
*vēla vocant* tumidō*que* īnflātur carbasus Austrō:
*hīs vātem* adgredior *dictīs ac tālia* quaesō:

---

**adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring to, present
**adgredior, ī, gressus** approach, address
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** reeognize*
**alter, era, erum** another (of two), seeond*
**amplector, ī, plexus** embraee, enfold*
**amplus, a, um** large, spaeious, broad,* full
**ārēns, entis** dry, parehed, arid
**aula, ae** *f.* hall, eourt, palaee
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**Bacchus, ī** *m.* (god of) wine
**carbasus, ī** *f.* flax, sail†
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, title
**comitō** (1) aceompany, attend, escort, follow
**daps, dapis** *f.* (saerifieial) feast, banquet*
**fruor, ī, frūctus** enjoy (*abl.*)†
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** plaee (on)*
**īnflō** (1) blow in(to), inflate, swell†
**lībō** (1) pour (as a libation), offer
**medium, (i)ī** *n.* middle, midst, eenter
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (eitadel of) Troy*
**pōculum, ī** *n.* (drinking) eup, goblet
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, exit, portal, entranee*
**porticus, ūs** *m.* eolonnade, portico
**Prīamidēs, ae** *m.* deseendant of Priam
**prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** advanee, pass, proeeed
**quaesō, ere, sīvī, sītus** beg, seek, inquire†
**rīvus, ī** *m.* stream, rivulet, brook†
**Scaeus, a, um** Seaean, name of a famous gate in the walls at Troy
**simulō** (1) imitate, pretend, make like
**singulus, a, um** separate, single, one by one
**socius, a, um** allied, associated, friendly
**tumidus, a, um** swollen, swelling
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speeeh, talk
**Xanthus, ī** *m.* river near Troy†

---

**347. suōs:** *his fellow countrymen* = **nōs. dūcit (nōs).**

**348. multum lacrimās fūndit:** *weeps copious tears* (*of joy*). **multum:** adverb.

**349–350. magnīs (Pergamīs):** dat. with **simulāta. parvam, ārentem:** in this reproduetion of their old Trojan home, everything is on a mueh smaller seale than the original; the eity itself is **parva** and the river **ārēns** in marked eontrast with the lofty Troy and the "deep-eddying" Xanthus in Asia Minor. **Xanthī:** appositive gen. with **cognōmine. cognōmine:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

**351. amplector līmina:** in joy at the revival of old memories, Aeneas embraees the gateway eopied after the great Seaean gate at Troy. Embracing the gate or doorpost was an aneient eustom of those who had been away from home a long time.

**352. Nec nōn et:** *likewise also.* **urbe:** abl. with **fruor**; App. 342.

**353. rēx:** Helenus. **accipiēbat:** imperf. of repeated action; App. 351, 2; *day after day the king entertained them,* l. 356.

**354. aulāī = aulae:** an arehaie form; App. 34, *b.* Observe that it has three syllables (**au-lā-ī**) whereas **aulae** has only two (**au-lae**). **(in) mediō. Bacchī:** by metonymy for **vīnī,** *wine;* App. 433. **lībābant:** a ceremony regularly performed at eaeh banquet; App. 351, 2.

**355. impositīs dapibus:** abl. abs.; App. 343. **aurō:** *gold* = golden trays; App. 433; dat. with eompound, **impositīs**; App. 298. **paterās tenēbant:** a detail added for the sake of vividness.

**356. diēs alterque diēs:** *day after day.*

**358. vātem:** Helenus was a famous seer. **quaesō:** old form of **quaerō.**

'Trojugena, interpres *dīvum, quī nūmina* Phoebī,
*quī* tripodas, Clariī laurōs, *quī sīdera* sentīs
*et* volucrum linguās *et* praepetis ōmina pennae,
*fāre age* (*namque omnis cursum mihi* prospera *dīxit*
relligiō, *et cūnctī* suāsērunt *nūmine dīvī*
*Ītaliam petere et terrās* temptāre repostās;
*sōla novum dictūque* nefās Harpyia Celaenō
prōdigium canit *et trīstīs* dēnuntiat *īrās*
obscēnamque famem) *quae prīma* perīcula vītō?
*Quidve sequēns tantōs possim* superāre *labōrēs?*'
*Hīc* Helenus caesīs *prīmum dē* mōre juvencīs
exōrat pācem *dīvum* vittāsque resolvit
sacrātī *capitis, mēque ad tua līmina*, Phoebe,
*ipse manū multō* suspēnsum *nūmine dūcit*,

**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**Celaenō, ūs** *f.* chief harpy
**Clarius, a, um** Clarian, of Claros, a center of the worship of Apollo†
**dēnuntiō** (1) announce, foretell, threaten†
**exōrō** (1) entreat, beg, win, persuade†
**famēs, is** *f.* hunger, famine, greed
**Harpyia, ae** *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**interpres, pretis** *m.* interpreter, agent†
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, ox, steer*
**laurus, ī** (ūs) *f.* laurel, an evergreen sacred to Apollo
**lingua, ae** *f.* tongue, language
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, rule, ritual, law*
**nefās** *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, sin*
**obscēnus, a, um** filthy, disgusting, foul
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, portent, sign*
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose
**penna, ae** *f.* wing, feather
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* peril, danger, risk
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**praepes, etis** flying, flyer†
**prōdigium, (i)ī** *n.* omen, portent†
**prosperus, a, um** favorable, fortunate†
**re(l)ligiō, ōnis** *f.* religion, propheey
**repos(i)tus, a, um** stored (up), remote
**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose, open
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** feel, perceive, understand, know
**suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus** persuade, urge
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
**suspēnsus, a, um** suspended, anxious
**temptō** (1) try, seek, test, attempt*
**tripūs, podis** *m.* tripod, oracle†
**Trojugena, ae** *m.* Trojan-born†
**vītō** (1) avoid, shun, dodge, escape
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, ribbon, wreath*
**volucris, is** *f.* bird, fowl

**359–360. Trojugena, interpres:** vocatives. **dīv(ōr)um. quī (sentīs) nūmina Phoebī, quī (sentīs) tripodas, (quī sentīs) laurōs. tripodas, laurōs:** sacred to Apollo. **sīdera sentīs:** as an astrologer.

**361. volucrum linguās:** ancient seers were supposed to understand and interpret the language and movements of birds and animals.

**362. fāre:** imp. of **for.**

**363–364. suāsērunt (mē) petere. repos(i)tās:** the uncontracted form (˘˘˘–) could not be used in hexameter.

**365–366. Harpyia:** **yi** form a diphthong, pronounced *we*. **novum prōdigium. dictū nefās:** *a horror to tell*, **dictū** being the abl. of the supine; App. 271.

**367. vītō:** for the ind. compare the note on **sequimur**, III, 88, and see App. 351, 1, *c*; 348, *a*.

**368. Quid sequēns:** (*by*) *following what* (*course*). **possim:** conclusion of a future less vivid condition, the condition being implied in **sequēns**; App. 381.

**369. caesīs juvencīs:** abl. abs.

**370. pācem dīvum (Phoebum):** two accusatives; App. 316. **vittās resolvit:** in order that he may yield himself completely to the influence of the god, the seer loosens the fillets, which he had worn while sacrificing, and unbinds his garments.

**372. (mē) suspēnsum multō nūmine:** *deeply moved by the divine presence.*

*atque haec* deinde canit dīvīnō *ex ōre* sacerdōs:
'*Nāte deā* (*nam tē majōribus īre per* altum
auspiciīs manifesta fidēs, *sīc fāta deum rēx*
sortītur *volvitque* vicēs, *is* vertitur ordō),
pauca *tibi ē multīs, quō* tūtior hospita lūstrēs
*aequora et* Ausoniō *possīs* cōnsīdere *portū*,
expediam *dictīs:* prohibent *nam* cētera Parcae
scīre Helenum *fārīque* vetat Sāturnia *Jūnō*.
Principiō *Ītaliam, quam tū jam* rēre propinquam
vīcīnōs*que*, ignāre, *parās* invādere *portūs*,
*longa procul longīs via* dīvidit invia *terrīs*.
*Ante et* Trīnacriā lentandus *rēmus in undā*
*et* salis Ausoniī lūstrandum *nāvibus aequor*
īnfernī*que* lacūs Aeaeae*que* īnsula Circae,

**Aeaeus, a, um** of Aeaea, of Colchis, original home of Circe†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**Ausonius, a, um** Ausonian, Italian†
**auspicium,** (i)ī *n.* augury, auspice(s)†
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**cēterus, a, um** other, rest, remaining
**Circē, ēs** (ae) *f.* famous enchantress, daughter of the Sun, who settled on an island off the western coast of Italy†
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (on), settle*
**deinde** then, thereupon, next*
**dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus** divide, separate
**dīvīnus, a, um** divine, inspired, sacred
**expediō, īre, īvī** (iī), **ītus** disentangle, explain
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, fidelity, evidence*
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**hospitus, a, um** strange; hospitable†
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**īnfernus, a, um** of the underworld, infernal†
**īnsula, ae** *f.* island
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** go (into), attack
**invius, a, um** pathless, trackless
**lacus, ūs** *m.* lake, marsh, mere
**lentō** (1) bend†
**lūstrō** (1) traverse; survey; purify*
**manifestus, a, um** clear, evident
**ordō, inis** *m.* arrangement, order, rank*
**Parcae, ārum** *f.* the Fates
**paucus, a, um** little, slight, few*
**principiō** first(ly), in the first place
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** forbid, hinder
**propinquus, a, um** near, neighboring
**reor, rērī, ratus** think, suppose, reckon
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**sal, salis** *m.* (*n.*) salt, sea, brine
**Sāturnius, a, um** of Saturn, father of the gods
**sciō, īre, īvī, ītus** know (how), understand
**sortior, īrī, ītus** obtain by lot, allot
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Trinacrian, Sicilian
**tūtus, a, um** protected, safe, secure*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vetō, āre, uī, itus** forbid, prevent, hinder
**vīcīnus, a, um** near, close at hand†
**vicis** (*gen.; no nom.*) *f.* change, alternation, fortune

**374–375. Nāte deā:** *goddess-born!* **majōribus auspiciīs:** abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329. **tē īre:** indir. statement with **manifesta fidēs (est),** *it is clearly true;* App. 263.

**376.** ordō (rērum).

**377–379. pauca expediam. quō** ( = **ut eō**) **lūstrēs et possīs:** purpose; App. 359. (in) **portū.**

**380. Helenum = mē:** intentionally impressive use of the third person instead of the first. **vetat (eum = mē).**

**381. Ītaliam:** the eastern coast of Italy was quite near, but not the part of Italy where Aeneas was fated to settle; this he must reach by a long and circuitous journey. **rēre = rēris,** from **reor;** App. 204, 4.

**381–383. longa via invia dīvidit Ītaliam procul (ā tē) longīs terrīs. (cujus) portūs pāras invādere.** Line 383 is an alliterative and jingling verse, to give an oracular effect. Observe the cumulative effect of **longa procul longīs,** to indicate the great distance to be traveled.

**384–385. Ante:** with **quam** in l. 387. **lentandus (est), lūstrandum (est).**

**386. īnfernī lacūs:** the region of

quam tūtā *possīs urbem* compōnere *terrā*.
Signa *tibī dīcam, tū* condita *mente tenētō:*
*cum tibi* sollicitō sēcrētī *ad* flūminis *undam*
lītoreīs *ingēns* inventa *sub* īlicibus sūs
trīgintā *capitum* fētūs ēnixa jacēbit,
alba, sọlō recubāns, albī *circum* ūbera *nātī*,
*is locus urbis erit*, requiēs *ea* certa *labōrum*.
*Nec tū* mēnsārum morsūs horrēsce *futūrōs:*
*fāta viam* invenient *aderitque vocātus* Apollō.
*Hās* autem *terrās* Italīque *hanc lītoris ōram*,
proxima *quae nostrī* perfunditur *aequoris* aestū,
effuge; *cūncta* malīs habitantur *moenia* Grajīs.
*Hīc et* Nāryciī *posuērunt moenia* Locrī,
*et* Sallentīnōs obsēdit mīlite *campōs*

---

**aestus, ūs** *m.* boiling, surge, tide
**albus, a, um** white*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**autem** but, however, moreover*
**certus, a, um** certain, sure, fixed, reliable*
**compōnō, ere, posuī, positus** put together, build, compose
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, found; hide*
**effugiō, ere, fūgī** escape (from), avoid
**ēnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** bear, give birth (to)
**fētus, ūs** *m.* young, offspring, brood
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**habitō** (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
**horrēscō, ere, horruī** shudder (at), dread
**īlex, icis** *f.* holm oak†
**inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** find, come upon
**Ītalus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outsprcad)*
**lītoreus, a, um** of the shore†
**Locrius, a, um** Locrian, Greek†
**malus, a, um** bad, wicked, evil*
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**mīles, itis** *m.* soldier(y), troops
**morsus, ūs** *m.* bite, eating, gnawing
**Nārycius, a, um** of Naryx, a city of Greece†
**obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** besiege, beset
**perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour through, bathe
**proximus, a, um** next, nearest, closest
**quam** than, how, as*
**recubō** (1) lie, recline†
**requiēs, ētis (ēī)** *f.* rest, repose, respite†
**Sallentīnus, a, um** Sallentinian, of the Sallentini, an Italian tribe†
**sēcrētus, a, um** secrct, secludcd, remote, lonely
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, token, signal, mark*
**sollicitus, a, um** anxious, worried†
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, soil, earth*
**sūs, suis** *m.* (*f.*) hog, pig, swine
**trīgintā** thirty
**tūtus, a, um** protected, safe, secure*
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder, bosom, fertility

---

Avernus in Campania, where one of the entrances to the lower world was reputed to be.

**387.** **possīs**: subj. with **ante quam**; App. 376, *a*. **(in) terrā**.

**388.** **(haec signa) condita mente tenētō**. **tenētō**: fut. imp. of **teneō**.

**389–390.** **tibi sollicitō**: dat. of agent with **inventa**, or dat. of reference; App. 302, 301. **lītoreīs**: *growing on the banks* (of the Tiber).

**391.** **trīgintā capitum**: gen. of definition; App. 282. **fētūs**: obj. of **ēnixa**.

**392.** **(in) solō = in terrā = humī. albī nātī (jacēbunt)**: the prophecy is fulfilled in VIII, 82.

**393.** **ea (erit) certa requiēs.**

**394.** **horrēsce**: imp.

**396–398.** **Hās terrās, hanc ōram effuge**: apparently Helenus points toward the nearest parts of Italy, inhabited by Greeks and hence called Magna Graecia, contrasted with the more remote section where Aencas was to settle. **Grajīs**: pronounce **Grajjīs**; App. 6, *b*; dat. of agent; App. 302.

**400.** **mīlite**: collective, *soldiery;* abl. of means.

Lyctius Īdomeneus; *hīc illa* ducis Meliboeī
parva Philoctētae subnixa Petēlia mūrō.
Quīn *ubi* trānsmissae *steterint* trāns *aequora classēs*
*et positīs ārīs jam* vōta *in lītore* solvēs,
purpureō vēlāre comās adopertus amictū,
*nē qua inter* sānctōs *ignīs in honōre deōrum*
hostīlis faciēs occurrat *et* ōmina turbet.
*Hunc sociī* mōrem *sacrōrum, hunc ipse tenētō;*
*hāc* castī *maneant in* relligiōne nepōtēs.
*Ast ubi* dīgressum Siculae *tē* admōverit *ōrae*
*ventus, et* angustī rārēscent claustra Pelōrī,
laeva *tibī tellūs et longō* laeva *petantur*
*aequora* circuitū; *dextrum fuge lītus et undās.*

---

**admoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move to, bring to (*dat.*)†
**adoperiō, īre, uī, rtus** cover†
**amictus, ūs** *m.* veil, wrap, robe
**angustus, a, um** narrow, strait
**castus, a, um** pure, chaste, holy†
**circuitus, ūs** *m.* circuit, detour†
**claustrum, ī** *n.* barrier, straits, bar
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**dīgredior, ī, gressus** separate, depart
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, form*
**hostīlis, e** hostile, unfavorable
**Īdomeneus, eī** *m.* Cretan king who settled in Italy
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**Lyctius, a, um** Lyctian, of Lyctus, a Cretan city†
**Meliboeus, a, um** of Meliboea, a city of Thessaly†
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ceremony, ritual*
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** (run to) meet (*dat.*)
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, portent, sign*
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**Pelōrus (um), ī** *m.* (*n.*) northeastern promontory of Sicily†
**Petēlia, ae** *f.* city of southern Italy founded by Philoctetes†
**Philoctētēs, ae** *m.* Greek leader of Meliboeus who settled in Italy†
**pūrpureus, a, um** purple, crimson
**quīn** nay even, but that, why not*
**rārēscō, ere** widen, (grow) thin†
**re(l)ligiō, ōnis** *f.* religion, ritual, sacred custom
**sānctus, a, um** sacred, holy, revered*
**Siculus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtūs** loose(n), discharge, pay*
**subnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** rest on, lean on (*dat.*)
**trāns** across, over, beyond (*acc.*)†
**trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send across, transmit
**turbō** (1) disturb, confuse, agitate*
**vēlō** (1) veil, adorn, wrap, wreathe
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

**401. Lyctius Īdomeneus:** expelled from Crete; see III, 121–123. **illa:** *that renowned.*

**402. Petēlia (est). mūrō:** abl. of means with **subnītor.**

**405. vēlāre:** imp. passive, with middle force; *veil (for yourself) your head;* refers to the old Roman custom of covering the head while praying, to avoid seeing or hearing anything of evil omen (**hostīlis faciēs**); cf. l. 407. **comās:** obj. of **vēlāre;** App. 309, *a.*

**408. Hunc mōrem:** Vergil thus assigns a Trojan origin to this good old Roman custom. **sociī (tenentō). (tū) tenētō:** fut. imp.

**410. ōrae:** dat. with compound; App. 298.

**412. laeva tellūs:** Sicily. **tibī:** dat. of agent; App. 302.

**413. dextrum lītus:** Italy; i.e., instead of rounding the southern point of Italy, passing along the Italian coast through the straits and turning to the north, Aeneas is told to make the larger circuit around Sicily and thus avoid the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis. **fuge:** imp.

*Haec loca vī quondam et vastā* convulsa ruīnā
(*tantum* aevī longinqua valet mūtāre vetustās)
dissiluisse *ferunt, cum* prōtinus utraque *tellūs*
*ūna foret: vēnit* mediō *vī* pontus *et undīs*
Hesperium Siculō latus abscidit, *arvaque et urbēs*
*lītore* dīductās angustō interluit aestū.
*Dextrum* Scylla latus, laevum implācāta Charybdis
obsidet, *atque īmō* barathrī ter gurgite *vastōs*
sorbet *in* abruptum *flūctūs* rūrsus*que sub aurās*
ērigit alternōs, *et sīdera* verberat *undā*.
*At* Scyllam caecīs cohibet spēlunca latebrīs
*ōra* exsertantem *et nāvīs in saxa trahentem*.
*Prīma* hominis faciēs *et* pulchrō *pectore* virgō

---

**abruptum, ī** *n.* depth, abyss, bottom†
**abscindō, ere, scidī, scissus** cut off, tear (off), rend†
**aestus, ūs** *m.* boiling, surge, tide
**aevum, ī** *n.* age, life, time, eternity
**alternus, a, um** alternate, alternating
**angustus, a, um** narrow, strait
**barathrum, ī** *n.* abyss, chasm, pit†
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**Charybdis, is** *f.* famous whirlpool near Scylla, between Italy and Sicily†
**cohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** restrain, confine†
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear (up), shatter, rend
**dīdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw apart, separate†
**dissiliō, īre, uī** leap apart†
**ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, erect†
**exsertō** (1) thrust forth†
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, form*
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirlpool, gulf, abyss*
**Hesperius, a, um** Hesperian, western, Italian†
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**implācātus, a, um** implacable, insatiable†
**interluō, ere** flow between, wash between†
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**latebra, ae** *f.* hiding place, lair, retreat
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**longinquus, a, um** long, distant†
**medium, (i)ī** *n.* middle, midst, center
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
**obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** besiege, beset
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea; waves*
**prōtinus** continually, continuously, right on(ward)
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, illustrious, noble*
**ruīna, ae** *f.* downfall, convulsion
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**Scylla, ae** *f.* ravenous sea-monster with the body of a beautiful woman encircled about the waist with dogs or wolves, and with the tail of a fish†
**Siculus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily
**sorbeō, ēre, uī** suck in, swallow (up)†
**spēlunca, ae** *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
**ter** thrice, three times*
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), either*
**valeō, ēre, uī, itus** be strong, be able
**verberō** (1) beat, lash, strike, whip†
**vetustās, ātis** *f.* antiquity, (lapse of) time†
**virgō, inis** *f.* girl, daughter, maiden*

---

**414–417. ferunt** ( = **dīcunt**) **haec loca quondam convulsa vī et vastā ruīnā dissiluisse. aevī = temporis. foret: cum** concessive; App.379. **mediō = in medium:** dat. of direction; App. 306. **vī:** abl. of manner; App. 328. **undīs:** abl. of means.

**418. Hesperium latus:** *the western side (of Italy).* **Siculō (latere):** *from the Sicilian (side).*

**419. lītore:** abl. of respect; App. 325; the singular for the plural, referring to the shores on either side of the straits. **angustō aestū:** *with a narrow tideway.*

**420. Scylla (obsidet).**

**421. (in) gurgite. ter:** *three times* (a day).

**422. (Charybdis) sorbet.**

**424–425. Scyllam ōra exsertantem et nāvīs trahentem.**

**426. Prīma:** *in front.* **hominis faciēs (est):** *her appearance is that of a human.* **pectore:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

pūbe tenus, postrēma *immānī corpore* pistrīx
delphīnum caudās uterō commissa lupōrum.
Praestat Trīnacriī mētās lūstrāre Pachȳnī
cessantem, *longōs et* circumflectere *cursūs*,
quam semel īnformem *vastō vīdisse sub* antrō
Scyllam *et* caeruleīs canibus resonantia *saxa*.
Praetereā, *sī qua est* Helenō prūdentia *vātī*,
*sī qua* fidēs, *animum sī* vērīs implet Apollō,
*ūnum illud tibi, nāte deā*, prōque *omnibus ūnum*
praedīcam *et* repetēns iterum*que* iterum*que* monēbō,
*Jūnōnis magnae prīmum* prece *nūmen* adōrā,
*Jūnōnī* cane vōta libēns dominam*que* potentem

**adōrō** (1) honor, entreat, worship
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue)*
**canis, is** *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound†
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**cauda, ae** *f.* tail†
**cessō** (1) loiter, linger, delay, stop
**circumflectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend around, turn around, double†
**committō, ere, mīsī, missus** join to(gether)
**delphīn, īnis** *m.* dolphin, a kind of fish†
**domina, ae** *f.* lady, mistress, queen
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, trust(worthiness)*
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**īnformis, e** shapeless, monstrous†
**iterum** again, anew, repeatedly*
**libēns, entis** willing(ly), glad(ly)†
**lupus, ī** *m.* wolf
**lūstrō** (1) survey; traverse; purify*
**mēta, ae** *f.* goal, turning point, limit
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn
**Pachȳnus (um), ī** *m.* (*n.*) southeastern promontory of Sicily†
**pistrīx, īcis** *f.* fish-like sea monster†
**postrēmus, a, um** hindmost, last†
**potēns, entis** powerful, ruling (*gen.*)*
**praedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** foretell, predict
**praestō, āre, stitī, stitus** stand before, be superior (better)
**praetereā** besides, also, in addition*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, vow, entreaty*
**prō** for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
**prūdentia, ae** *f.* foresight, discretion†
**pūbēs, is** *f.* waist, loins; youth*
**quam** than, how, as†*
**repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** reseek, repeat, recall
**resonō** (1) (re)sound, roar†
**Scylla, ae** *f.* a sea-monster
**semel** once (for all)†
**tenus** up to, down to, as far as (*abl.*)
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Trinacrian, Sicilian
**uterus, ī** *m.* womb, belly
**vērum, ī** *n.* truth, right(eousness)
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

**427. postrēma (faciēs est):** *behind.*

**428. caudās:** obj. of **commissa** used as a middle; App. 309, *a*. The tails of dolphins are joined to the bodies of wolves. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 650–655.

"The one seemed woman to the waist, and fair,
But ended foul in many a scaly fold
Voluminous and vast, a serpent armed
With mortal sting; about her middle round
A cry of hell-hounds never ceasing barked
With wide Cerberean mouths full loud."

**429. mētās:** used figuratively to indicate that they should sail around Pachynus as around a turning post in a race course. (**tē**) **lūstrāre:** subj. of **praestat**; App. 258.

**430. cessantem** (**tē**): subj. of **lūstrāre.**

**432. canibus** = the dogs or wolves of l. 428; a touch of the poetic caprice which scorns an unimaginative consistency.

**433. Helenō = mihi:** the third person is used in order to be more impressive.

**434. fidēs (est mihi). animum (meum).**

**435. ūnum:** emphatic by repetition, as is **iterum** below; App. 413.

**437–438. adōrā:** imp. **Jūnōnis, Jūnōnī:** emphatic by position and repetition. **cane vōta:** *utter* (*chant*) *your prayers;* Roman prayers were often made according to rhythmic formulas. Compare the English word *cant* from Latin **canō. dominam potentem = Jūnōnem.**

supplicibus superā *dōnīs: sīc* dēnique *victor*
Trīnacriā *fīnīs* Italōs *mittēre relictā.*
*Hūc ubi* dēlātus Cūmaeam accesseris *urbem*
dīvīnōs*que* lacūs *et* Averna sonantia *silvīs,*
īnsānam *vātem* aspiciēs, *quae* rūpe *sub īmā*
*fāta* canit foliīs*que* notās *et nōmina* mandat.
Quaecumque *in* foliīs dēscrīpsit carmina virgō
dīgerit *in* numerum *atque* antrō sēclūsa *relinquit:*
*illa manent* immōta *locīs neque ab* ordine cēdunt.
Vērum *eadem,* versō tenuis *cum* cardine *ventus*
impulit *et* tenerās turbāvit jānua frondēs,
numquam deinde cavō volitantia prendere *saxō*

---

**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go to, approach
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look (at)
**Averna, ōrum** *n.* region about Lake Avernus in Italy†
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**cardō, inis** *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
**carmen, inis** *n.* song, verse, prophecy
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield (to), move*
**Cūmaeus, a, um** Cumaean, of Cumae, an Italian city, homc of the Sibyl, an ancient prophetess†
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** carry down, convey
**deinde** then, thereupon, next*
**dēnique** finally, at last
**dēscrībō, ere, psī, ptus** write (down)†
**dīgerō, ere, gessī, gestus** distribute, arrange
**dīvīnus, a, um** divine, sacred, celestial
**folium, (i)ī** *n.* leaf, foliage
**frōns, frondis** *f.* leaf, frond, foliage*
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, immovable
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive, stir
**īnsānus, a, um** insane, frenzied, inspired
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**jānua, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance
**lacus, ūs** *m.* lake, marsh, mere
**mandō** (1) intrust, command, commend
**nota, ae** *f.* mark, sign, letter, writing†
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, order, multitude*
**numquam** never, at no time
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, rank, position*
**pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** grasp, seize
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whichever, whatever*
**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus** shut (off, up)
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, surpass*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**tener, era, erum** tender, soft, delicate
**tenuis, e** thin, slight, fine
**Trīnacria, ae** *f.* Trinacria, Sicily†
**turbō** (1) disturb, confuse, agitate*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vērum** but, truly, however
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
**volitō** (1) fly, flutter†

---

**439. superā:** imp.

**440. (ad) fīnīs mittēre ( = mittēris):** App. 204, 4.

**441–462. But Aeneas must first visit the Sibyl, the mad prophetess of Cumae, who will tell him all the rest he needs to know.**

**442. dīvīnōs:** sacred to the gods of the lower world. **silvīs:** abl. of means with **sonantia.**

**443. īnsānam vātem:** the famous Cumaean Sibyl. Compare the note on **furēns,** II, 345.

**444. notās et nōmina:** written on leaves as prophetic utterances.

**445. virgō:** the Sibyl.

**446. in numerum:** ín the order of occurrcnce of the events which she predicts. **(in) antrō = rūpe sub īmā** of l. 443.

**447. (in) locīs.**

**448. eadem (folia):** obj. of **pre(he)ndere,** in l. 450. **versō cardine (jānuae):** abl. abs.; App. 343.

**449. jānua:** when opened.

**450. (in) cavō saxō = (in) antrō** of l. 446.

*nec* revocāre sitūs *aut* jungere carmina cūrat.
Incōnsultī abeunt *sēdemque* ōdēre Sibyllae.
*Hīc tibi nē qua* morae *fuerint* dispendia *tantī*,
quamvīs increpitent *sociī et vī cursus in* altum
*vēla vocet, possīsque* sinūs implēre secundōs,
quīn adeās *vātem* precibus*que* ōrācula poscās,
*ipsa* canat *vōcemque volēns atque ōra* resolvat.
*Illa tibi Ītaliae* populōs *ventūraque bella*
*et quō* quemque modō *fugiāsque ferāsque labōrem*
expediet, *cursūsque dabit* venerāta secundōs.
*Haec sunt quae nostrā* liceat *tē vōce* monērī.
Vāde *age et ingentem* factīs *fer ad* aethera *Trojam.'*

---

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** go away, depart*
**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach, visit
**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, heaven, ether
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**carmen, inis** *n.* song, verse, prophecy
**cūrō** (1) care (to, for), regard, heed
**dispendium, (i)ī** *n.* expenditure, cost, loss†
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** disentangle, explain
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**incōnsultus, a, um** unconsulted; unconsulted†
**increpitō** (1) chide, challenge, rebuke
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke, unite*
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is allowed*
**modus, ī** *m.* measure, manner, way*
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
**ōdī, isse** hate, detest, loathe
**ōrāc(u)lum, ī** *n.* oracle, prophecy
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, ask (for)*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
**quamvīs** although, however much†
**quīn** not that, but that, nay even, why not*
**quisque, quaeque, quodque** each (one), every(one)
**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose, open
**revocō** (1) call back, recall, restore
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable*
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess†
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
**situs, ūs** *m.* situation, position†
**vādō, ere** go, proceed, rush
**veneror, ārī, ātus** reverence, worship

---

**451. revocāre sitūs:** *to restore (them to) their places.*

**452. abeunt:** the subject is general, *people who have come to consult the oracle.* **ōdēre** = **ōdērunt.**

**453–457. morae:** subj. gen., *damage of delay*, i.e., damage caused by delay; App. 284; or appositional gen.; App. 281. **Hīc nē qua dispendia morae fuerint tantī tibi quīn adeās vātem precibusque poscās (ut) ipsa (Sibylla) canat ōrācula. fuerint:** vol. subj.; App. 254. **tantī:** *of so great value (importance)*; gen. of value; App. 292. **vī:** abl. of manner. **increpitent, vocet, possīs:** concessive subjunctives introduced by **quamvīs**; App. 384. **sinūs (vēlōrum). sinūs implēre secundōs = sinūs implēre secundīs ventīs; secundōs** thus being a transferred epithet; App. 446. **quīn adeās, poscās:** result; App. 366; or with a negatived expression of preventing; App. 362. **(ut) canat, (ut) resolvat:** subst. clauses developed from the volitive depending on **poscās**; App. 360. **ipsa:** directly, not with leaves, as described in ll. 444 ff.

**459. quō modō fugiās, ferās:** indir. questions, *how you can avoid trouble (as far as possible) and how you can bear the rest;* App. 349.

**460. venerāta:** used passively, modifying **illa** in l. 458.

**461. Haec sunt (dicta) quae liceat:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **quae:** retained secondary obj. of **monērī**; App. 309, *a*. **tē:** subj. of **monērī.**

**462. Vāde, age, fer:** imperatives. **aethera:** acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 68.

*Quae* postquam *vātēs sīc ōre* effātus amīcō *est*,
*dōna* dehinc *aurō* gravia sectō*que* elephantō
imperat *ad nāvīs ferrī*, stīpat*que* carīnīs
*ingēns* argentum Dōdōnaeōs*que* lebētas,
lōrīcam cōnsertam hāmīs *aurō*que trilīcem,
*et* cōnum īnsignis galeae cristās*que* comantīs,
*arma* Neoptolemī. *Sunt et sua dōna parentī.*
Addit *equōs*, addit*que* ducēs,
rēmigium supplet, *sociōs simul* īnstruit *armīs*.
Intereā *classem vēlīs* aptāre *jubēbat*
*Anchīsēs*, fieret *ventō* mora *nē qua ferentī.*
*Quem* Phoebī interpres *multō* compellat *honōre:*
'Conjugiō, *Anchīsā*, Veneris dignāte superbō,
*cūra deum*, bis Pergameīs *ērepte* ruīnīs,

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)*
**aptō** (1) fit, equip, prepare, furnish
**argentum, ī** *n.* silver
**bis** twice*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel, ship, boat*
**comāns, antis** hairy, shaggy
**compellō** (1) address, accost, speak to
**conjugium, (i)ī** *n.* marriage, wedlock
**cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus** join, fasten (together)
**cōnus, ī** *m.* cone, peak (of helmet)†
**crista, ae** *f.* crest, plume†
**dehinc** thence, thereupon, next
**dignor, ārī, ātus** deem worthy (*abl.*)
**Dōdōnaeus, a, um** of Dodona, seat of a famous Greek oracle†
**dux, ducis** *m.* leader, guide, pilot*
**effor, fārī, fātus** speak out, say
**elephantus, ī** *m.* elephant, ivory†
**fīō, fierī, factus** become, be made
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**gravis, e** heavy, serious, weighty*
**hāmus, ī** *m.* hook, link†
**imperō** (1) command, bid, order†
**īnsignis, e** marked, distinguished*
**īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build up, equip
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**interpres, etis** *m.* interpreter, prophet
**lebēs, ētis** *m.* basin, kettle, caldron†
**lōrīca, ae** *f.* breastplate, cuirass†
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
**Neoptolemus, ī** *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
**Pergameus, a, um** of Pergamum, Trojan
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**postquam** after (that), when*
**rēmigium, (i)ī** *n.* oarage, body of oarsmen
**ruīna, ae** *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction
**secō, āre, uī, sectus** cut, saw, slice*
**stīpō** (1) stuff, cram, stow, crowd
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**suppleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill (up), supply†
**trilīx, īcis** three-ply, triple†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*

---

**463–505. The Trojans, richly laden with gifts, depart amid the tears and lamentations of all.**

**464. dōna:** making gifts at the meeting and parting of friends was a common mark of esteem and affection. An exchange of gifts was also common, as in I, 647. **gravia:** with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent.

**466. Dōdōnaeōs lebētas:** such kettles as were suspended in the sacred grove at Dodona, from the sound of which when struck the priests interpreted the will of Jupiter. **lebētăs:** acc. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, *a*.

**467. lōrīcam cōnsertam** etc.: *a coat of mail triply woven of gold chains.*

**469. sua:** *appropriate;* **sua** is usually reflexive, but here refers to **parentī** instead of to the subject; App. 248, *a*. **parentī (meō):** Anchises.

**473. fieret:** negative purpose; App. 359. **ventō:** dat. of reference. **ferentī:** *favorable.*

**474. Phoebī interpres:** Helenus.

**475–476. Conjugiō:** abl. with **dignor**; App. 337, *a*. **dignāte:** deponent participle used in passive sense. **Anchīsā, dignāte, cūra, ērepte:** vocatives. **de-(ōr)um. bis:** compare the notes on II, 642–643.

ecce *tibi* Ausoniae *tellūs: hanc* arripe *vēlīs.*
*Et* tamen *hanc pelagō* praeterlābāre necesse *est:*
Ausoniae *pars illa procul quam* pandit Apollō.
Vāde,' *ait* '*Ō* fēlīx *nātī* pietāte. *Quid* ultrā
prōvehor *et fandō surgentīs* dēmoror Austrōs?'
*Nec* minus Andromachē dīgressū maesta *suprēmō*
*fert* pictūrātās *aurī* subtēmine vestīs
*et* Phrygiam Ascaniō chlamydem (*nec* cēdit *honōre*)
textilibus*que* onerat *dōnīs, ac tālia fātur*
'*Accipe et haec, manuum tibi quae* monimenta *meārum*
*sint, puer, et longum* Andromachae testentur *amōrem.*
*conjugis* Hectoreae. *Cape dōna* extrēma *tuōrum,*
*Ō mihi sōla meī super* Astyanactis imāgō.

---

**Andromachē, ēs** (ae) *f.* wife of Hector
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**arripiō, ere, uī, reptus** seize (upon)†
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**Astyanax, actis** *m.* infant child of Hector and Andromache, dashed to death from the walls of Troy by the Greeks
**Ausonia, ae** *f.* Ausonia, Italy†
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield (to), depart; be inferior*
**chlamys, ydis** *f.* cloak, mantle†
**dēmoror, ārī, ātus** delay, detain, hinder
**dīgressus, ūs** *m.* departure†
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**extrēmus, a, um** final, uttermost, last*
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, blessed, fortunate*
**Hectoreus, a, um** of Hector, a Trojan leader
**imāgō, inis** *f.* likeness, image, phantom*
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**minus** less
**monimentum (monumentum), ī** *n.* reminder, memorial
**necesse** necessary; necessity†
**onerō** (1) burden, load, overwhelm
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** sprcad (open), disclose*
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**pictūrō** (1) embroider, picture†
**pietās, ātis** *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
**praeterlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide past†
**prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry forward, convey
**subtēmen, inis** *n.* woof, threads†
**tamen** nevertheless, however, but*
**testor, ārī, ātus** call to witness, testify (to)
**textilis, e** woven, textile†
**ultrā** beyond (*acc.*); further†
**vādō, ere** go, proceed, rush
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robc*

---

**477–478. tibi:** ethical dat.; App. 300; best left untranslated. **ecce tellūs (est):** *yonder lies the land.* **hanc, hanc:** the first **hanc** refers to Italy in general, including the part where Aeneas was destined to settle, the second **hanc** refers to the eastern coast of Italy, forbidden to Aeneas. **arripe:** imp.

**478.** (ut) **praeterlābāre** = (ut) **praeterlābāris:** substantive clause developed from the volitive; App. 204, 4; 360; it is subject of **necesse est.**

**479. pars illa (est) procul:** refers to Latium on the western coast where Aeneas was destined to settle.

**480. Vāde:** imp. **pietāte:** abl. of cause with **fēlīx;** App. 332. **Quid dēmoror Austrōs:** *why do I delay the winds*, which are eager to waft your ships on their way? That is, why do I detain you from sailing with the favorable winds?

**481. fandō:** from **for;** gerund, abl. of means.

**482. dīgressū:** abl. of cause.

**484. honōre:** abl. of respect; App. 325. **nec (Helenō) cēdit honōre:** *and she vies with Helenus in showing us honor.*

**485. tālia (dicta).**

**486–488. et haec:** *these also*, as well as the gifts of Helenus. **Accipe, Cape:** imperatives. **quae sint, et testentur:** rel. clauses of purpose; App. 388.

**489. sōla super:** *sole surviving.* **super:** adverbial = **quae superēs. Astyanactis:** at the capture of Troy, thé Greeks killed the boy Astyanax by hurling him from the wall.

*Sīc oculōs, sīc ille manūs, sīc ōra ferēbat;*
*et nunc* aequālī *tēcum* pūbēsceret aevō.'
*Hōs ego* dīgrediēns *lacrimīs* adfābar obortīs:
'Vīvite fēlicēs, *quibus est fortūna* perācta
*jam sua: nōs alia ex aliīs in fāta vocāmur.*
*Vōbīs* parta quiēs: *nūllum maris aequor* arandum,
*arva neque* Ausoniae semper cēdentia retrō
*quaerenda.* Effigiem Xanthī *Trojamque vidētis*
*quam* vestrae *fēcēre manūs,* meliōribus, optō,
auspiciīs, *et quae fuerit* minus obvia Grajīs.
*Sī* quandō Thybrim vīcīna*que* Thybridis *arva*
intrārō *gentīque meae data moenia cernam,*
cognātās *urbēs* ōlim populōs*que* propinquōs,
Ēpīrō Hesperiam (*quibus īdem* Dardanus auctor

---

**adfor, fārī, fātus** address, accost*
**aequālis, e** equal, of the same age†
**aevum, ī** *n.* age, life, time, eternity
**arō** (1) plow, furrow, till
**auctor, ōris** *m.* founder, author, sponsor
**Ausonia, ae** *f.* Ausonia, Italy
**auspicium, (i)ī** *n.* omen, auspice(s)
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield (to), depart; be inferior*
**cognātus, a, um** kindred, akin†
**Dardanus, ī** *m.* early Trojan king
**dīgredior, ī, gressus** depart, separate
**effigiēs, ēī** *f.* likeness, image, statue
**Ēpīrus, ī** *f.* district of northwestern Greece
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, fortunate, blessed*
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**Hesperia, ae** *f.* Hesperia, Italy, Westland
**intrō** (1) enter, penetrate
**melior, ius** better, superior
**minus** less
**oborior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up†
**obvius, a, um** in the way, exposed (*dat.*)
**ōlim** once, at some time, formerly*
**optō** (1) desire, choose, hope (for)*
**pariō, ere, peperī, partus** bear, gain
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** accomplish, finish†
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**propinquus, a, um** near, neighboring
**pūbēscō, ere, pūbuī** be a youth, grow (up)†
**quandō** ever, when, since
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* rest, quiet, peace, repose*
**retrō** back(ward), again, anew
**semper** always, ever, continually*
**Thybris, (id)is** *m.* Tiber, a river of Italy
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vīcīnus, a, um** near, neighboring
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus** live, be alive
**Xanthus, ī** *m.* river near Troy

---

**490. Sīc (ille ferēbat) oculōs.**

**491. pūbēsceret:** implied condition contrary to fact; App. 382. **aevō:** abl. of quality; App. 330. Astyanax, if he had lived, would have been about as old as his cousin Ascanius.

**493. Vīvite:** imp. *farewell!* **quibus:** dat. of reference.

**494. sua:** irregularly referring to **quibus** instead of to the subject; App. 248, *a*. **alia ex aliīs in fāta:** *from one fate to another.*

**495. Vōbīs:** dat. of reference or of agent. **parta (est) quiēs. arandum (est vōbīs).**

**497. quaerenda (sunt vōbīs).**

**498–499. fēcēre** = **fēcērunt. meliōribus auspiciīs:** (*under*) *with better auspices* (than those of the original Troy); abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

**499. fuerit:** fut. perf., *will prove to be.*

**500. Thybridis:** gen. with **vīcīna**; App. 287.

**501. intrā(ve)rō.**

**502–505. ōlim faciēmus cognātās urbēs populōsque propinquōs utramque ūnam Trojam animīs.** After the battle of Actium in 31 B.C., Augustus founded Nicopolis in Epirus to commemorate his victory. Vergil is probably alluding to this fact in this passage.

**503–504. Ēpīrō (cognātam et propinquam) Hesperiam. Hesperiam:** in partitive apposition with **populōs. quibus:** dat. of possessor. **īdem auctor (erat), īdem cāsūs (erant). utramque** = **ambās urbēs.**

*atque īdem cāsūs*), *ūnam faciēmus* utramque
*Trojam animīs: maneat nostrōs ea cūra* nepōtēs.'
Prōvehimur *pelagō* vīcīna Ceraunia juxtā,
unde iter *Ītaliam cursusque* brevissimus *undīs*.
Sōl *ruit* intereā *et montēs* umbrantur opācī.
Sternimur optātae gremiō *tellūris ad undam*
sortītī *rēmōs* passim*que in lītore* siccō
*corpora* cūrāmus: *fessōs* sopor inrigat artūs.
Necdum orbem *medium Nox* Hōrīs *ācta subībat:*
*haud* sēgnis strātō *surgit* Palinūrus *et omnīs*
explōrat *ventōs atque* auribus āera captat;
*sīdera cūncta* notat tacitō *lābentia caelō*,
Arctūrum pluviās*que* Hyadas *geminōsque* Triōnēs

---

**āēr, āeris**, *acc.* **āera**, *m.* air, cloud, mist
**Arctūrus, ī** *m.* a bright star in the constellation Boötes
**artus, ūs** *m.* limb, joint, body*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**brevis, e** short, brief, shallow
**captō** (1) (try to) catch, listen (to, for)†
**Ceraunia, ōrum** *n.* mountain range of the western coast of Greece†
**cūrō** (1) care (for, to), heed, refresh
**explōrō** (1) search (out), test, examine
**gremium, (i)ī** *n.* bosom, lap, embrace
**hōra, ae** *f.* hour, season, time†
**Hyades, um** *f.* constellation supposed to bring rain
**inrigō** (1) irrigate, flow into, bedew
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**juxtā** near, next (*acc.*)†*
**necdum** not yet
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**notō** (1) mark, observe†
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy†
**optō** (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orbit, earth*
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**pluvius, a, um** rainy, rain-bringing
**prōvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear forward, convey
**sēgnis, e** slow, slothful, inactive†
**siccus, a, um** dry, thirsty
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**sopor, ōris** *m.* sleep, slumber
**sortior, īrī, ītus** get by lot, allot
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay (low), spread, stretch out*
**strātum, ī** *n.* bed, couch; pavement
**tacitus, a, um** silent, quiet, still
**Triōnēs, um** *m.* northern constellations, the Great and Little Bear
**umbrō** (1) shade, shadow, cover†
**unde** whence, from which source*
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*
**vīcīnus, a, um** near, neighboring

---

**utramque**: in apposition with **urbēs** and **populōs**, but attracted to the gender of **Trojam**. **animīs**: abl. of respect; App. 325.

**506–529. The Trojans skirt the coast of Greece to the point nearest Italy and, after a short rest, sail straight across; at dawn they catch sight of the Promised Land, which they joyfully greet as their future home.**

**506–507. pelagō, undīs**: abl. of route. **iter (est ad) Ītaliam. brevissimus**: modifies both **iter** and **cursus**, but agrees with the nearest; the Adriatic is only some forty miles wide at this point.

**508. Sōl ruit (in mare).**

**509. Sternimur**: middle (reflexive), *we lay ourselves down.* **(in) gremiō. ad undam**: *near the water.*

**510. sortītī**: the hard work is distributed by lot as in I, 507–508; this is done in the evening, so that they may start during the night, if weather conditions prove favorable.

**512. orbem**: its course through the vaulted heavens. It was not yet midnight, as is seen from **necdum medium. hōrīs**: abl. of means.

**513. strātō**: abl. of separation.

**514. auribus captat**: *listens to.*

armātum*que aurō* circumspicit Ōrīōna.
Postquam *cūncta videt caelō* cōnstāre serēnō,
*dat* clārum *ē puppī* signum: *nōs* castra *movēmus*
temptāmus*que viam et vēlōrum* pandimus ālās.
*Jamque* rubēscēbat stēllīs Aurōra fugātīs
*cum procul* obscūrōs collīs humilem*que vidēmus*
*Ītaliam. Ītaliam prīmus* conclāmat Achātēs,
*Ītaliam laetō sociī clāmōre* salūtant.
*Tum pater Anchīsēs magnum* crātēra corōnā
induit implēvit*que* merō, *dīvōsque vocāvit*
*stāns* celsā *in puppī:*
'*Dī maris et terrae* tempestātum*que* potentēs,
*ferte viam ventō* facilem *et* spīrāte secundī.'
Crēbrēscunt optātae *aurae portusque* patēscit
*jam* propior, templum*que* appāret *in arce* Minervae.

---

**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of) the dawn*
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**circumspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look around (upon)
**clārus, a, um** clear, distinct, illustrious*
**collis, is** *m.* hill
**conclāmō** (1) shout, exclaim, cry out
**cōnstō, āre, stitī, status** stand firm, be settled†
**corōna, ae** *f.* garland, wreath, crown
**crātēr, ēris,** *acc.* **ēra,** *m.* mixing bowl
**crēbrēscō, ere, bruī** become frequent, renew†
**facilis, e** easy, smooth, favorable
**fugō** (1) put to flight, rout, disperse
**humilis, e** low(ly), low-lying, humble†
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**induō, ere, uī, ūtus** put on, clothe, wreathe
**merum, ī** *n.* (unmixed) wine
**Minerva, ae** *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, obscure, gloomy*
**optō** (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*
**Ōrīōn, ōnis,** *acc.* **ōna,** *m.* a bright constellation, supposed to represent a famous hunter armed with shining golden weapons
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread (open), reveal*
**patēscō, ere, patuī** open (up)
**postquam** after (that), when*
**potēns, entis** powerful, ruling (*gen.*)*
**propior, ius** nearer, closer, nigher
**rubēscō, ere, rubuī** blush, redden†
**salūtō** (1) greet, salute†
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable*
**serēnus, a, um** clear, calm, tranquil
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
**spīrō** (1) breathe, blow, exhale
**stēlla, ae** *f.* star, constellation
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* weather, storm, season*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**temptō** (1) try, test, attempt, examine*

---

**517. aurō:** referring to Orion's belt and upraised sword composed of shining golden stars. **Ōrīōna:** acc. sing., a Greek form; note the spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

**518.** (**in**) **caelō.**

**519. clārum signum:** probably with a trumpet. **castra movēmus:** a military term, used also of naval expeditions.

**523–524. Ītaliam:** thrice repeated for effect; the Promised Land at last; cf. App. 413. **clāmōre:** abl. of manner. **sociī** (**meī**).

**525. crātēra:** acc. sing., a Greek form; see note on I, 724.

**527. in puppī:** where the images of the patron gods of the ship were carried.

**528. maris, terrae, tempestātum:** objective genitives, with **potentēs**; App. 284.

**529.** (**nōbīs**) **ferte:** imp. **ventō:** abl. of means. **spīrāte:** imp.

**530–547. The Trojans land and sacrifice according to the Trojan ritual.**

**530. portus:** probably Portus Veneris in southeast Italy.

*Vēla* legunt *sociī et* prōrās *ad lītora* torquent.
*Portus ab* Eurōō *flūctū* curvātus *in* arcum,
objectae salsā spūmant aspergine cautēs,
*ipse* latet: *geminō* dīmittunt bracchia mūrō
turrītī scopulī refugit*que ab lītore* templum.
Quattuor *hīc, prīmum* ōmen, *equōs in* grāmine *vīdī*
tondentīs *campum* lātē, candōre nivālī.
*Et pater Anchīsēs: 'Bellum, Ō terra* hospita, portās:
*bellō* armantur *equī, bellum haec* armenta minantur.
*Seḍ* tamen *īdem* ōlim currū succēdere suētī
quadripedēs *et* frēna jugō concordia *ferre:*
spēs *et* pācis' *ait. Tum nūmina* sāncta precāmur
Palladis armisonae, *quae prīma accēpit* ovantīs,

---

**arcus, ūs** *m.* arch, bow*
**armentum, ī** *n.* herd, drove (of cattle)
**armisonus, a, um** (re)sounding with arms†
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**a(d)spergō, inis** *f.* sprinkling, spray†
**bracchium, (i)ī** *n.* arm, forearm*
**candor, ōris** *m.* whiteness, gleam, glow†
**cautēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, ledge†
**concors, rdis** harmonious, concordant†
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**curvō** (1) curve, bend, arch, wind†
**dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send away, extend
**Eurōus, a, um** East, Eastern†
**frēnum, ī** *n.* rein, curb, bridle†
**grāmen, inis** *n.* grass, herb(age), sward
**hospitus, a, um** strange, hospitable
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** collect, choose, furl, gather in*
**minōr, ārī, ātus** threaten, menace; tower
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**nivālis, e** snowy†
**objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place before
**ōlim** once, (at) some time, formerly*
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, portent, sign*
**ovō** (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
**Pallas, adis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, favor, repose, grace
**portō** (1) carry, bear, bring, convey*
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, beg, entreat*
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow*
**quadripēs (upēs), edis** *m.* quadruped, horse†
**quattuor** four†
**refugiō, ere, fūgī** flee back, recede
**salsus, a, um** briny, salty
**sānctus, a, um** sacred, holy, revered*
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach, submit (to) (*dat.*)
**suēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus** accustom, be accustomed†
**tamen** nevertheless, however, but*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus** shear, crop
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn, twist, sway*
**turrītus, a, um** tower-like, with towers, turreted†

---

**532. Vēla legunt:** they furl their sails and then row the ships to the land.

**533. ab Eurōō flūctū:** abl. of agent, of a non-person, a rare usage; App. 333, 437.

**535. ipse** (portus). **geminō mūrō:** abl. of quality; App. 330. **dīmittunt** (**in mare**).

**536. refugit:** as they near the shore, the temple is seen to be farther back than appeared at a distance.

**537. prīmum ōmen:** the first sight to strike the eyes in a new-land was often taken as an omen.

**538. candōre:** abl. of quality.

**540. bellō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303. **bellum:** observe the rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

**541–542. īdem quadripedēs suētī** (**sunt**) **succēdere currū. currū:** dat. with compound; App. 298. **jugō:** abl. of means.

**543. spēs** (**est**) **et** (*also*) **pācis.**

**544. Palladis armisonae:** they had landed near a temple of Minerva at

*et capita ante ārās* Phrygiō vēlāmur amictū,
praeceptīs*que* Helenī, *dederat quae maxima,* rīte
*Jūnōnī* Argīvae *jussōs* adolēmus *honōrēs.*
*Haud* mora, continuō perfectīs ordine vōtīs
cornua vēlātārum obvertimus antemnārum,
Grajugenum*que domōs* suspecta*que* linquimus *arva.*
*Hinc* sinus Herculeī (*sī* vēra *est fāma*) Tarentī
*cernitur,* attollit *sē dīva* Lacīnia contrā,
Caulōnis*que arcēs et* nāvifragum Scylacēum.
*Tum procul ē flūctū* Trīnacria *cernitur* Aetna,
*et* gemitum *ingentem pelagī* pulsāta*que saxa*
*audīmus* longē frāctās*que ad lītora vōcēs,*
exsultant*que* vada *atque* aestū miscentur harēnae.

---

**adoleō, ēre, uī, adultus** worship, burn
**aestus, ūs** *m.* boiling, surge, tide
**Aetna, ae** *f.* volcano in Sicily†
**amictus, ūs** *m.* wrap, robe, garment
**antemna, ae** *f.* sail-yard†
**Argīvus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**Caulōn, ōnis** *m.* city of South Italy†
**continuō** immediately, forthwith
**contrā** opposite, in reply (to) (*acc.*)*
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn, tip, end
**exsultō** (1) leap up, rejoice, exult
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, smash*
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**Grajugena, ae** *m.* Grecian-born, Greek†
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**Herculeus, a, um** Herculean, of Hercules, god of strength, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, celebrated for his twelve labors while on earth†
**Lacīnius, a, um** of Lacinium, a promontory of South Italy with a temple of Juno†
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**longē** far (away), at a distance*
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
**nāvifragus, a, um** ship-wrecking†
**obvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn toward†
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, arrangement, row*
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** finish, accomplish
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**praeceptum, ī** *n.* precept, command
**pulsō** (1) strike, beat, lash, batter†
**rīte** duly, according to custom
**Scylacēum, ī** *n.* city in southern Italy†
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
**suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look up at; suspect
**Tarentum, ī** *n.* city of southern Italy, founded by Hercules†
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Trinacrian, Sicilian
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, depths (of waters)
**vēlō** (1) veil, cover (the face), wrap, equip with sails
**vērus, a, um** true, real, genuine, honest*
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

Castrum Minervae; see l. 531. **accēpit (nōs).**

**545. capita:** object of the middle verb **vēlāmur,** *we veil* (for ourselves); App. 309. They thus follow the instructions given in ll. 405–409.

**546. praeceptīs:** *according to the behests;* abl. of accordance; App. 326. **maxima:** (*as*) *most important.*

**547. Jūnōnī Argīvae:** Argos was a famous center of the worship of Juno.

**548–569. They sail southward along the eastern coast of Italy and of Sicily to Mt. Etna, where they land.**

**548. Haud mora (est). ordine:** *in due form.*

**549. cornua antemnārum:** *the tips of the yards.* Note the spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

**550. Grajugen(ār)um.**

**552. dīva Lacīnia** = Juno; here refers to a temple of Juno on the promontory of Lacinium.

**553. arcēs (sē attollunt).**

**554. ē flūctū:** (rising) *from the waves.*

**555. pulsāta (undīs).**

**556. vōcēs (undārum):** *the roar of the breakers.*

*Et pater Anchīsēs:* 'Nīmīrum *hīc illa* Charybdis:
*hōs* Helenus scopulōs, *haec saxa* horrenda canēbat.
*Ēripite, Ō sociī,* pariterque īnsurgite *rēmīs.'*
*Haud* minus *ac jussī faciunt, prīmusque* rudentem
contorsit laevās prōram Palinūrus *ad undās;*
laevam *cūncta* cohors *rēmīs ventīsque petīvit.*
*Tollimur in caelum* curvātō gurgite, *et īdem*
subductā *ad* mānīs *īmōs* dēsēdimus *undā.*
Ter scopulī *clāmōrem inter* cava *saxa dedēre,*
ter spūmam ēlīsam *et* rōrantia *vīdimus* astra.
Intereā *fessōs ventus cum* sōle *relīquit,*
ignārīque *viae* Cyclōpum adlābimur *ōrīs.*
*Portus ab* accessū *ventōrum* immōtus *et ingēns*
*ipse: sed* horrificīs juxtā tonat Aetna ruīnīs,
interdumque *ātram* prōrumpit *ad* aethera nūbem

**accessus, ūs** *m.* approach, access†
**adlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide to (*dat.*)
**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky, heaven*
**Aetna, ae** *f.* volcano of Sicily
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**Charybdis, is** *f.* whirlpool opposite Scylla, between Sicily and Italy
**cohors, rtis** *f.* troop, mass, fleet†
**contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, whirl
**curvō** (1) curve, bend, arch, wind
**Cyclōps, ōpis** *m.* one of a race of one-eyed giants on the eastern coast of Sicily near Mt. Etna†
**dēsīdō, ere, sēdī** sink down, subside†
**ēlīdō, ere, sī, sus** dash (out, up)†
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirl(pool, wind), depth*
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**horrendus, a, um** dreadful, horrible*
**horrificus, a, um** terrifying, horrifying
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, immovable
**īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise (on) (*dat.*)
**interdum** at times, meanwhile
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**juxtā** near, next (*acc.*); close at hand*
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**minus** less
**nīmīrum** doubtless, no wonder, of course†
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot*
**pariter** equally, all together, in unison, side by side*
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow*
**prōrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break forth, shoot forth
**rōrō** (1) drip with dew, be dewy†
**rudō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** roar, creak†
**ruīna, ae** *f.* downfall, ruin; convulsion
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**spūma, ae** *f.* foam, froth, spray
**subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** withdraw (from beneath), remove
**ter** thrice, three times*
**tonō, āre, uī, itus** thunder, roar†

**558.** **hīc (est) illa Charybdis.**

**559.** **Helenus (canēbat), (Helenus) canēbat.**

**560.** **Ēripite (vōs), īnsurgite:** imperatives.

**561.** **ac:** *than.*

**564.** (nōs) **īdem.**

**565.** **subductā undā:** abl. abs., implying cause.

**566.** **dedēre = dedērunt.**

**568.** **cum sōle:** *at sundown.* (nōs) **fessōs.**

**569.** **Cyclōpum ōrīs:** dat. with compound; the east coast of Sicily near Mt. Etna.

**570–587. The Trojans pass an uneasy night in the neighborhood of the volcano.**

**570–571.** **Portus (est). ingēns ipse:** *spacious (in) itself.*

**571.** **ruīnīs:** *downfall* (of lava, etc.); abl. of cause.

**572.** **nūbem:** cognate acc. with **prōrumpit;** App. 313. Compare **rumpit**

turbine fūmantem piceō *et* candente favīllā,
attollit*que* globōs *flammārum et sīdera* lambit,
interdum scopulōs āvulsa*que* vīscera *montis*
ērigit ērūctāns, liquefacta*que saxa sub aurās*
*cum* gemitū glomerat fundō*que* exaestuat *īmō*.
*Fāma est* Enceladī sēmustum fulmine *corpus*
urgērī mōle *hāc, ingentemque* īnsuper Aetnam
impositam ruptīs *flammam* exspīrāre camīnīs,
*et fessum* quotiēns mūtet latus, intremere *omnem*
murmure Trīnacriam *et caelum* subtexere fūmō.
*Noctem illam* tēctī *silvīs immānia* mōnstra
perferimus, *nec quae* sonitum *det* causa *vidēmus*.
*Nam neque erant* astrōrum *ignēs nec* lūcidus aethrā
sīdereā polus, obscūrō *sed* nūbila *caelō*,

---

**aethra, ae** *f.* radiance, bright light†
**Aetna, ae** *f.* volcano of Sicily
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear away
**camīnus, ī** *m.* furnace, chimney†
**candēns, entis** shining, white, hot†
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**Enceladus, ī** *m.* one of the fire-breathing giants who attempted to capture heaven, overthrown by Jupiter's thunderbolt and buried under Mt. Etna†
**ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, upheave
**ērūctō** (1) belch forth, vomit forth†
**exaestuō** (1) boil forth, seethe, surge†
**exspīrō** (1) breathe out, exhale, die
**favīlla, ae** *f.* hot ashes, embers†
**fulmen, inis** *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
**fūmō** (1) smoke, steam, fume, reek
**fūmus, ī** *m.* smoke, vapor, fume, fog
**fundus, ī** *m.* bottom, foundation, base
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**globus, ī** *m.* ball, globe, sphere†
**glomerō** (1) roll together, assemble
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place upon, pile upon*
**īnsuper** (from) above
**interdum** at times, meanwhile
**intremō, ere, uī** tremble, quake, shake†
**lambō, ere** lick, lap
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**liquefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus** melt, liquefy†
**lūcidus, a, um** bright, clear, shining†
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* portent, marvel, monster*
**murmur, uris** *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, turn, transform*
**nūbila, ōrum** *n.* clouds, cloudiness†
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, gloomy, obscure*
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** endure
**piceus, a, um** pitchy, black†
**polus, ī** *m.* pole, sky, heaven
**quotiēns** as often as†
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sēmustus, a, um** half-burnt, half-consumed†
**sīdereus, a, um** starry, of the stars†
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
**subtexō, ere, uī, xtus** weave beneath, veil (from below)†
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, bury, hide*
**Trīnacria, ae** *f.* Trinacria, Sicily
**turbō, inis** *m.* whirl(pool, wind), storm
**urgeō, ēre, ursī** press (upon), urge, incite
**vīscus, eris** *n.* vitals, bowels, flesh

---

**vōcem**, II, 129; III, 246. **aethera**: acc. sing., a Greek form.

**577. fundō**: abl. of separation.

**578–580. corpus exspīrāre flammam**: thus the ancients accounted for the volcano by the story of a great fire-breathing giant buried beneath the mountain.

**578. Fāma est** = **dīcunt**, and so followed by indir. disc.; App. 390.

**579. mōle hāc** (**montis**).

**581. mūtet latus**: turns over; thus the ancients accounted for earthquakes, by the story of a great giant buried alive who shook the earth when he tried to turn over.

**583. mōnstra**: the mysterious noises.

**585–586. polus** (**erat**) **lūcidus. aethrā**: abl. of cause. **nūbila** (**erant**) **caelō. caelō**: dat. of possessor or abl. of place.

*et* lūnam *in* nimbō *nox* intempesta *tenēbat.*
Postera *jamque diēs prīmō surgēbat* Eōō
ūmentem*que* Aurōra polō dīmōverat *umbram,*
*cum* subitō *ē silvīs* maciē cōnfecta *suprēmā*
ignōtī *nova* forma *virī* miseranda*que* cultū
prōcēdit supplex*que manūs ad lītora tendit.*
Respicimus. Dīra inluviēs immissa*que* barba,
cōnsertum tegimen spīnīs: *at* cētera Grajus,
*et quondam patriīs ad Trojam missus in armīs.*
*Isque ubi* Dardaniōs habitūs *et* Trōia *vīdit*
*arma procul,* paulum aspectū conterritus haesit
continuit*que* gradum; mox *sēsē ad lītora* praeceps
*cum* flētū precibus*que tulit: 'Per sīdera* testor,
*per superōs atque hoc caelī* spīrābile *lūmen,*
*tollite mē, Teucrī;* quāscumque abdūcite *terrās:*

**abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead away, earry away†
**a(d)spectus, ūs** *m.* appearanee, sight
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of the) dawn*
**barba, ae** *f.* beard, whiskers
**cēterus, a, um** other, rest, remaining
**cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** aeeomplish, finish, do thoroughly, wear out†
**cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus** fasten, join
**conterreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, terrify†
**contineō, ēre, uī, tentus** hold together, eheek
**cultus, ūs** *m.* dress, mode of life†
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**dīmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move apart, disperse†
**dīrus, a, um** terrible, dire, dreadful*
**Eōus, ī** *m.* eastern star, morning star, dawn
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, tears, lament
**forma, ae** *f.* form, shape, beauty*
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, stride, rung
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**habitus, ūs** *m.* garb, appearanee, dress
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** stiek (to, fast), halt*
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, let grow
**inluviēs, ēī** *f.* filth, dirt, squalor†
**intempestus, a, um** unseasonable, gloomy†
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**maciēs, ēī** *f.* leanness, emaciation†
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, eommiserate*
**mox** soon, presently
**nimbus, ī** *m.* (rain-)eloud*
**paulum** a little, slightly†
**polus, ī** *m.* pole, sky, heaven
**posterus, a, um** following, rear, next
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
**prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** advanee
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whiehever, whatever; any*
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back), look at*
**spīna, ae** *f.* thorn, backbone†
**spīrābilis, e** breathable, vital†
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**teg(i)men, inis** *n.* covering, garment
**testor, ārī, ātus** eall to witness, testify
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**ūmēns, entis** dewy, wet†

**587. nox intempesta:** *the dead of night.*

**588–611.** While preparing to set sail the Trojans discover Achaemenides, a Greek who had been deserted by Ulysses when he escaped from the cave of the Cyclops.

**588. prīmō Eōō:** *at daybreak,* abl. of time.

**591. nova:** *strange.*

**593. Respicimus:** the Trojans were departing when their attention is called by the appearance of the strange figure, and they look back. **inluviēs (erat illī), barba (erat illī).**

**594. cōnsertum (erat). cētera:** aec. of respeet; App. 311. **Grajus (erat).**

**599. testor (vōs) = ōrō, precor.**

**600. lūmen = āera.**

**601. tollite mē (vōbīscum):** *take me* (with you). **(ad) quāscumque terrās.**

*hoc* sat *erit.* Scio *mē Danaīs ē classibus ūnum*
*et bellō* Īliacōs fateor *petiisse* penātīs.
Prō *quō, sī* sceleris *tanta est* injūria *nostrī,*
spargite *mē in flūctūs vastōque* immergite pontō;
*sī* pereō, hominum *manibus* periisse juvābit.'
*Dīxerat et* genua amplexus genibus*que* volūtāns
haerēbat. *Quī sit fārī, quō sanguine* crētus,
hortāmur, *quae* deinde agitet *fortūna* fatērī.
*Ipse pater dextram Anchīsēs haud multa* morātus
*dat* juvenī *atque animum* praesentī pignore firmat.
*Ille haec* dēpositā *tandem* formīdine *fātur:*
'*Sum* patriā *ex* Ithacā, *comes īnfēlīcis* Ulixī,
*nōmine* Achaemenidēs, *Trojam genitōre* Adamastō
paupere (*mānsissetque* utinam *fortūna!*) profectus.

---

**Achaemenidēs, ae** *m.* comrade of Ulysses, rescued by Aeneas from the land of the Cyclopes†
**Adamastus, ī** *m.* father of Achaemenides†
**agitō** (1) drive, pursue, agitate, harass
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold*
**crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus** grow, spring
**deinde** then, thereupon, next*
**dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus** lay aside
**fateor, ērī, fassus** confess, admit
**firmō** (1) confirm, strengthen, encourage
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
**genū, ūs** *n.* knee
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** stick (to), cling (to) (*dat.*)*
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, mortal, human*
**hortor, ārī, ātus** encourage, urge, incite*
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**immergō, ere, rsī, rsus** plunge into (*dat.*)†
**injūria, ae** *f.* wrong, injury, injustice
**Ithaca, ae** *f.* island-kingdom of Ulysses, wily Greek leader
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, hesitate, detain*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**pauper, eris** poor, needy
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** perish, die
**pignus, oris** *n.* pledge, token, security†
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**praesēns, entis** present, immediate
**prō** for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
**proficīscor, ī, fectus** set out, go
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, guilt, sin, villainy*
**sciŏ, īre, īvī, ītus** know (how), understand
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, strew*
**Ulixēs, is (eī, ī)** *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**utinam** would that! O that!
**volūtō** (1) roll (over and over), revolve

---

**602.** Sciŏ: with final vowel irregularly short. mē (esse).

**605.** spargite, immergite: imperatives. (in) pontō.

**606.** pereō hominum: hiatus; App. 399. juvābit (mē).

**607–609.** genua (nostra) amplexus genibus (suīs) volūtāns (nōbīs) haerēbat. hortāmur (illum) fārī quī (= quis) sit (ille) (et) quō sanguine (sit) crētus. (hortāmur eum) fatērī quae fortūna (eum) agitet.

**611.** praesentī pignore: *by an immediate pledge* (of friendship); i.e., the right hand just given him by Anchises.

**612–654. Warned by Achaemenides of the ferocity of the Cyclopes, the Trojans immediately set sail, taking Achaemenides with them.**

**613.** īnfēlīcis: from the point of view of a Greek.

**614–615.** nōmine: abl. of respect; App. 325. (ad) Trojam. genitōre paupere: abl. abs.; *because of my father's poverty;* said to excuse his part in the Trojan War and to win the sympathy of his hearers. Compare Sinon's tale to the same effect, II, 87. mānsisset utinam fortūna: opt. subj.; App. 253;

*Hīc mē, dum* trepidī crūdēlia *līmina* linquunt,
immemorēs *sociī vastō* Cyclōpis *in* antrō
dēseruēre. *Domus* saniē dapibus*que* cruentīs,
intus opāca, *ingēns. Ipse* arduus, *altaque* pulsat
*sīdera* (*dī tālem terrīs* āvertite pestem!)
*nec vīsū* facilis *nec dictū* adfābilis *ūllī;*
vīsceribus *miserōrum et sanguine* vēscitur *ātrō.*
*Vīdī egomet* duo *dē* numerō *cum corpora nostrō*
prēnsa *manū magnā mediō* resupīnus *in* antrō
frangeret *ad saxum,* saniē*que* aspersa natārent
*līmina; vīdī ātrō cum* membra fluentia tābō
manderet *et* tepidī tremerent *sub* dentibus artūs —
*haud* impūne quidem, *nec tālia* passus Ulixēs
oblītus*ve suī est* Ithacus discrīmine *tantō.*
*Nam simul* explētus dapibus vīnō*que* sepultus

**adfābilis, e** may be addressed, may be spoken to, approachable, affable†
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**arduus, a, um** lofty, steep, towering*
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, body*
**a(d)spergō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle†
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn aside, avert*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bloody, bitter*
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, cruel
**Cyclōps, ōpis** *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants in Sicily
**daps, dapis** *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
**dēns, dentis** *m.* tooth†
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**discrīmen, inis** *n.* crisis, danger, distinction, difference
**duo, ae, o** two, a pair*
**expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, stuff, fulfil
**facilis, e** easy, endurable, favorable
**fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow, stream
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, smash, crush*
**immemor, oris** unmindful, forgetful
**impūne** with impunity, without punishment†
**intus** within, on the inside
**Ithacus, ī** *m.* native of Ithaca, Ulysses
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**mandō, ere, ī, mānsus** crunch, chew†
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**natō** (1) swim, float, overflow†
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, order*
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen.*)
**opācus, a, um** dark, gloomy, obscure
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure, permit*
**pestis, is** *f.* plague, curse, scourge
**pre(he)endō, ere, ī, ēnsus** seize, grasp
**pulsō** (1) beat, smite, lash, batter
**quidem** indeed, surely, at least†
**resupīnus, a, um** supine, flat on the back
**saniēs, ēī** *f.* blood, gore
**sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), sepultus** bury, inter
**tābum, ī** *n.* corruption, gore
**tepidus, a, um** warm, tepid
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**trepidus, a, um** trembling, alarmed
**Ulixēs, is** (**eī, ī**) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**vēscor, ī** feed on (*abl.*)
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**vīscus, eris** *n.* vitals, flesh, bowels

*would that our fortune had remained,* so that it would not have been necessary for me to go forth as a soldier of fortune!

**616. dum:** regularly with the pres. ind.; App. 372. **trepidī (sociī).**

**617. immemorēs (meī). Cyclōpis:** Polyphemus was the name of this particular Cyclops.

**618 dēseruēre = dēseruērunt. Domus (Cyclōpis est). saniē, dapibus:** ablatives of quality; App. 330

**619. Ipse (Cyclōps est) arduus.**

**620. dī:** voc. **āvertite:** imp.

**621. vīsū, dictū:** supines; ablatives of respect; App. 271. **ūllī:** dat. of reference.

**622. vīsceribus, sanguine:** ablatives with **vēscor;** App. 342.

**628. passus (est).**

**629. suī:** gen. with **oblīvīscor;** App. 288; *forgot himself,* i.e., his accustomed cunning.

**630. simul (atque):** *as soon as.*

cervīcem īnflexam *posuit,* jacuit*que per* antrum
immēnsus saniem ērūctāns *et* frusta cruentō
*per somnum* commixta merō, *nōs magna* precātī
*nūmina* sortītī*que* vicēs ūnā undique *circum*
*fundimur, et tēlō lūmen* terebrāmus acūtō
*ingēns quod* torvā *sōlum sub* fronte latēbat,
Argolicī clipeī *aut* Phoebēae lampadis īnstar,
*et tandem laetī sociōrum* ulcīscimur *umbrās.*
*Sed fugite, Ō miserī, fugite atque ab lītore* fūnem
rumpite.
*Nam* quālis quantus*que* cavō Polyphēmus *in* antrō
lānigerās claudit pecudēs *atque* ūbera pressat,
centum *aliī* curva *haec* habitant *ad lītora* vulgō
īnfandī Cyclōpes *et altīs montibus errant.*
Tertia *jam* lūnae *sē* cornua *lūmine* complent

**acūtus, a, um** sharp, pointed, acute
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**centum** hundred*
**cervīx, īcis** *f.* neck
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** shut (in), (in)close*
**clipeus, ī** *m.* shield, buckler*
**commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle†
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn, tip, end
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, cruel
**curvus, a, um** curved, curving, arched*
**Cyclōps, ōpis** *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants
**ērūctō** (1) belch out, vomit (forth)
**frōns, frontis** *f.* forehead, front, brow*
**frustum, ī** *n.* piece, fragment, morsel
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cable, cord
**habitō** (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
**immēnsus, a, um** enormous, immense
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, accursed
**īnflectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, turn†
**īnstar** *n.* likeness, appearance (*gen.*)
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**lampas, adis** *f.* torch, lamp, light†
**lāniger, era, erum** wool-bearing, woolly†
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk*
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**merum, ī** *n.* (unmixed) wine
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal, member of flock*
**Phoebēus, a, um** of Phoebus (Apollo), god of light, music, and prophecy†
**Polyphēmus, ī** *m.* a one-eyed, man-eating giant, one of the Cyclopes†
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray (to, for), entreat*
**pressō** (1) press, squeeze, crush†
**quālis, e** of what sort, what kind*
**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, as great as*
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**saniēs, ēī** *f.* blood, gore
**sortior, īrī, ītus** obtain by lot, allot
**terebrō** (1) bore, pierce
**tertius, a, um** third*
**torvus, a, um** fierce, scowling, grim†
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder, breast, fertility
**ulcīscor, ī, ultus** avenge, punish
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**undique** on (from) all sides*
**vicis** (*gen.; no nom.*) *f.* change, alternation; danger
**vulgō** commonly, everywhere†

**631. (Cyclōps) posuit. per:** denoting the huge size of the monster.

**633. merō:** given to the Cyclops by Ulysses.

**634. vicēs (nostrās):** the part each is to play in the following action.

**635. tēlō:** a sharpened stake, with blazing point. **lūmen = oculum,** as often.

**636. latēbat:** the deep-set eye seemed to hide beneath his beetling brow.

**637. Argolicī clipeī (īnstar):** the **clipeus** was a large round shield, bright and shining, and big enough to cover the body of a man. **Phoebēae lampadis:** *the sun;* gen. with **īnstar,** referring to the size and dazzling effect of the Cyclops's eye.

**639–640. fugite, rumpite:** imperatives.

**641–643. quālis quantusque (est) Polyphēmus (quī) claudit, centum (tālēs tantīque) aliī habitant.**

**644. (in) montibus. Cyclōpĕs:** with short ĕ, a Greek form; App. 65, *a.*

**645. Tertia:** translate as though an

*cum vītam in silvīs inter* dēserta ferārum
lūstra *domōsque trahō, vastōsque ab* rūpe Cyclōpas
prōspiciō sonitum*que pedum vōcemque* tremēscō.
Vīctum *īnfēlīcem,* bācās lapidōsa*que* corna,
*dant* rāmī, *et* vulsīs pascunt rādīcibus herbae.
*Omnia* conlūstrāns *hanc prīmum ad lītora classem*
cōnspexī *venientem. Huic mē,* quaecumque *fuisset,*
addīxī: satis *est gentem* effūgisse nefandam.
*Vōs animam hanc* potius quōcumque absūmite lētō.'
*Vix ea fātus erat summō cum monte vidēmus*
*ipsum inter* pecudēs *vastā sē* mōle *moventem*
pāstōrem Polyphēmum *et lītora* nōta *petentem,*
mōnstrum horrendum, īnforme, *ingēns, cui lūmen* adēmptum.

---

**absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** consume, destroy
**addīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** assign to, surrender†
**adimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** remove†
**bāca, ae** *f.* berry†
**conlūstrō** (1) light up, survey, traverse†
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at
**cornum, ī** *n.* cornel berry†
**Cyclōps, ōpis** *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**effugiō, ere, fūgī** escape, shun, avoid
**fera, ae** *f.* wild beast, animal
**herba, ae** *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, horrible*
**īnformis, e** shapeless, monstrous
**lapidōsus, a, um** stony, hard†
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**lūstrum, ī** *n.* bog, fen, lair†
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* portent, monster, marvel*
**nefandus, a, um** unspeakable, terrible
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus** feed (on), graze
**pāstor, ōris** *m.* shepherd, herdsman
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal, member of a herd*
**Polyphēmus, ī** *m.* a one-eyed, man-eating giant, one of the Cyclopes
**potius** rather, preferably†
**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** discern, look forth (on)
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whichever, whatever*
**rādīx, īcis** *f.* root
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, bough, twig*
**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sat(is)** sufficient(ly), enough*
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
**tremēscō, ere** tremble (at), shake†
**vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus** pluck, pull (up)
**vīctus, ūs** *m.* food, victuals, living

---

adverb, *for the third time;* i.e., the moon has been full three times since . . .

**646–647. cum trahō:** English employs the perfect, *since I have been dragging (out).* The present tense is used, as in French, to indicate that this condition continues into the present: *I am still dragging (out);* App. 351, 1, *b.*

**650. dant (mihi), pascunt (mē). vulsīs rādīcibus:** abl. of means.

**652. quaecumque fuisset:** *whatever it should be,* implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

**653. gentem nefandam** = the Cyclopes.

**654. hanc (meam) animam** = vītam. **potius (quam mē relinquāris). absūmite:** imp.

**655–714. Frightened by the appearance of Polyphemus and the other Cyclopes, the Trojans flee in terror, but remembering the advice of Helenus, they avoid the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis and sail around the eastern, southern, and western coast of Sicily to Drepanum, where Anchises dies.**

**655. summō (in) monte.**

**656. vastā mōle:** abl. of quality or manner; App. 330, 328.

**658.** A shaggy verse, corresponding to the sense. **cui:** dat. of separation; App. 305. **lūmen (= oculus) adēmptum (erat).**

Trunca *manum* pīnus regit *et* vestīgia firmat;
lānigerae comitantur ovēs; *ea sōla* voluptās
sōlāmen*que* malī.
Postquam *altōs* tetigit *flūctūs et ad aequora vēnit,*
*lūminis* effossī fluidum lavit inde cruōrem
dentibus īnfrendēns gemitū, graditur*que per aequor*
*jam medium,* necdum *flūctus* latera ardua tīnxit.
*Nōs procul* inde *fugam* trepidī celerāre receptō
supplice *sīc* meritō tacitī*que* incīdere fūnem,
vertimus *et* prōnī certantibus *aequora rēmīs.*
Sēnsit, *et ad* sonitum *vōcis* vestīgia torsit.
Vērum *ubi nūlla datur dextrā* adfectāre potestās
*nec* potis Īoniōs *flūctūs* aequāre *sequendō,*

---

**adfectō** (1) grasp (at), seize†
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), match, even, level*
**arduus, a, um** lofty, steep, towering*
**celerō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**certō** (1) strive, struggle, vie
**comitor, ārī, ātus** accompany, attend, escort, follow*
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**dēns, dentis** *m.* tooth
**effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus** dig out, gouge out, excavate
**firmō** (1) strengthen, support
**fluidus, a, um** flowing, liquid, fluid†
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cable, cordage
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**gradior, ī, gressus** walk, stride, march, go
**incīdō, ere, ī, sus** cut†
**inde** then(ce), thereupon, next*
**īnfrend(e)ō, ĕre** gnash, grate†
**Īonius, a, um** Ionian, a sea off the western coast of Greece
**lāniger, era, erum** wool-bearing, woolly
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**lavō, āre (ere), (āv)ī, ātus (lautus)** wash†
**malum, ī** *n.* trouble, evil, woe, misfortune*
**mereor, ērī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**necdum** not yet
**ovis, is** *f.* sheep, ewe†
**pīnus, ūs** (ī) *f.* pine tree†
**postquam** after (that), when*
**potestās, ātis** *f.* power, ability, opportunity†
**potis, e** able, powerful†
**prōnus a, um** bending forward, sloping
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** take (back), welcome, receive*
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, guide*
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive, understand, feel
**sōlāmen, inis** *n.* solace, consolation†
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**tacitus, a, um** silent, noiseless, still
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**ting(u)ō, ere, tīnxī, tīnctus** wet, tinge
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, whirl, sway, turn*
**trepidus, a, um** trembling, alarmed
**truncus, a, um** lopped, trimmed†
**verrō, ere, ī, rsus** sweep (over), scour
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, change*
**vērum** but, indeed, truly
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* (foot)step, trace, track*
**voluptās, ātis** *f.* pleasure, joy, delight†

---

**659. manum:** i.e., he uses the trunk of a pine tree as a cane.

**660. (illum) comitantur. ea (erat illī):** ea, although referring to **ovēs**, is attracted into the number and gender of the predicate noun **voluptās**; App. 240, *a*.

**662. aequora (alta).**

**663. inde:** with water from the sea.

**664. dentibus:** abl. of means. **gemitū:** abl. of manner.

**666–667. celerāre, incīdere:** historical infinitives; App. 257. **receptō supplice:** abl. abs., referring to Achaemenides. **sīc meritō:** *having deserved* (it, by warning us of the danger).

**668. vertimus et = et vertimus. rēmīs:** abl. of means.

**669. (Polyphēmus id) sēnsit. vōcis:** *the splash* (of the oars).

**670. adfectāre (nōs) potestās:** for the prose construction **adfectandī (nōs) potestās**; App. 264.

**671. potis (est Polyphēmus) = potest Polyphēmus. sequendō (nōs).**

*clāmōrem* immēnsum *tollit, quō* pontus *et omnēs*
contremuēre *undae,* penitus*que* exterrita *tellūs*
*Ītaliae* curvīs*que* immūgiit Aetna cavernīs.
*At genus ē silvīs* Cyclōpum *et montibus altīs*
excītum *ruit ad portūs et lītora* complent.
*Cernimus* astantīs nēquīquam *lūmine* torvō
Aetnaeōs frātrēs *caelō capita alta ferentīs,*
concilium horrendum: quālēs *cum* vertice celsō
āeriae quercūs *aut* cōniferae cyparissī
cōnstiterunt, *silva alta Jovis* lūcus*ve* Diānae.
Praecipitīs metus ācer *agit* quōcumque rudentīs
excutere *et ventīs* intendere *vēla* secundīs.

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, fierce, spirited*
**āerius, a, um** airy, lofty
**Aetna, ae** *f.* volcano of Sicily
**Aetnaeus, a, um** of Etna, a volcano of Sicily†
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (ready, by)*
**caverna, ae** *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete
**concilium, (i)ī** *n.* gathering, assemblage
**cōnifer, era, erum** cone-bearing†
**cōnstō, āre, stitī, status** stand (firm)
**contremīscō, ere, tremuī** tremble, shake†
**curvus, a, um** curved, curving, winding*
**Cyclōps, ōpis** *m.* one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants
**cyparissus, ī** *f.* cypress, an evergreen tree sacred to Diana and the dead†
**Diāna, ae** *f.* goddess of the chase, of the moon, and of Hades
**exciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** summon (forth), arouse†
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake out, loosen*
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, terrify
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, terrible*
**immēnsus, a, um** immense, enormous
**immūgiō, īre, īvī (iī)** bellow, roar†
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch (out, to, toward)
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**penitus** within, deep(ly), wholly*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**quālis, e** of what sort, of what kind, such (as)*
**quercus, ūs** *f.* oak, a tree sacred to Jove†
**quōcumque** where(so)ever
**rudēns, entis** *m.* cable, rope, cordage
**secundus, a, um** favorable, second*
**torvus, a, um** savage, scowling, grim
**vertex, icis** *m.* peak, summit, head, top*

---

**672. quō:** abl. of cause.

**673. contremuēre = contremuērunt. exterrita (est).**

**675–676. genus ruit et complent:** observe the singular verb followed by the plural, since **genus** is collective and may take either; App. 236, *a.*

**677. lūmine torvō:** *with glaring eye;* effective use of the singular to emphasize the fact that each Cyclops had but one eye. **nēquīquam:** because unable to do us harm.

**678. caelō:** dat. of direction; App. 306. **Aetnaeōs frātrēs:** the Cyclopes who lived around Mt. Etna.

**679. (in) vertice (montis).**

**681. cōnstitĕrunt:** with the penult irregularly short. **silva Jovis = quercūs; lūcus Diānae = cyparissī;** since the oak was sacred to Jove and the cypress to Hecate, the Diana of Hades.

**682. metus ācer agit (nōs) praecipitīs.**

**683. ventīs secundīs:** abl. of means; apparently a south wind. In their anxiety to escape the Cyclopes the Trojans flee with the wind, in spite of the warning of Helenus, but suddenly recalling the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis, they turn back, and with the aid of the wind, which has veered to the north, they sail safely past the land of the Cyclopes.

Contrā jussa monent Helenī, Scyllam *atque* Charybdim
*inter*, utramque *viam* lētī discrīmine parvō,
nī *teneant cursūs;* certum *est dare* lintea retrō.
Ecce autem Boreās angustā *ab sēde* Pelōrī
*missus adest:* vīvō praetervehor ōstia *saxō*
Pantagiae Megarōs*que* sinūs Thapsum*que* jacentem.
*Tālia* mōnstrābat relegēns *errāta* retrōrsus
*lītora* Achaemenidēs, *comes īnfēlīcis* Ulixī.
Sīcaniō praetenta sinū jacet īnsula contrā
Plēmyrium undōsum, *nōmen dīxēre* priōrēs
Ortygiam. Alphēum *fāma est hūc* Ēlidis amnem

**Achaemenidēs, ae** *m.* comrade of Ulysses, rescued by Aeneas from the land of the Cyclopes
**Alphēus, ī** *m.* Greek river (god) in love with the nymph Arethusa, whom he pursued under the sea to Sicily where he reappeared in her fountain at Syracuse†
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**angustus, a, um** narrow, strait
**autem** moreover, however, but*
**Boreās, ae** *m.* north wind†
**certus, a, um** certain, fixed, sure, determined*
**Charybdis, is** *f.* dangerous whirlpool opposite Scylla, between Italy and Sicily
**contrā** opposite, on the contrary, facing (*acc.*)*
**discrīmen, inis** *n.* crisis, difference; danger
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**Ēlis, idis** *f.* district of southwestern Greece†
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
**īnsula, ae** *f.* island
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**linteum, ī** *n.* linen; sail†
**Megarus, a, um** of Megara, a city of Sicily†
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out, teach*
**nisi, nī** if not, unless*
**Ortygia, ae** *f.* an island off Syracuse
**ōstium, (i)ī** *n.* mouth, entrance, harbor
**Pantagiās, ae** *m.* river of Sicily†
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**Pelōrus, ī** *m.* promontory of northeast Sicily
**Plēmyrium, (i)ī** *n.* promontory of Sicily near the harbor of Syracuse†
**praetendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch before†
**praetervehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry (beyond), convey (past)†
**prior, ius** former, sooner, prior*
**relegō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** retrace, pass over again†
**retrō** back(ward), again, anew
**retrōrsus, um** back(ward)†
**Scylla, ae** *f.* sea-monster, with the head and body of a woman, girt with dogs or wolves
**Sīcanius, a, um** Sicanian, Sicilian†
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
**Thapsus, ī** *m.* city of Sicily†
**Ulixēs, is (eī, ī)** *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
**undōsus, a, um** full of waves, wave-beaten†
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*
**vīvus, a, um** living, alive, natural

**684–685. Contrā inter Scyllam atque Charybdim:** App. 414. **utramque viam:** in apposition with **Scyllam atque Charybdim. discrīmine parvō:** abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329. Translate, *each a way of death with little difference.*

**686. nī (sociī meī) teneant cursūs:** *that they should not hold their course;* substantive clause developed from volitive, the object of **monent**; App. 360. **nī** is here equivalent to **nē. certum est (nōbīs):** *we decide;* i.e., we determine to risk the dangers of the Cyclopes rather than those of Scylla and Charybdis.

**688. missus:** by some thoughtful and sympathetic divinity. **vīvō saxō:** *living* (i.e., *natural*) *rock*, as in I, 167; abl. of material; App. 324.

**690. errāta:** *having been wandered over* (*before*), modifies **lītora**, and refers to his previous voyage with Ulysses.

**692. Sīcaniō sinū:** dat. with compound, refers to the harbor of Syracuse.

**693. dīxēre = dīxērunt = vocāvērunt.**

**694–695. fāma est Alphēum amnem Ēlidis ēgisse hūc occultās viās.**

occultās *ēgisse viās* subter *mare, quī nunc*
*ōre,* Arethūsa, *tuō* Siculīs cōnfunditur *undīs.*
*Jussī nūmina magna locī* venerāmur, *et* inde
exsuperō praepingue solum stāgnantis Helōrī.
*Hinc altās* cautēs prōjecta*que saxa* Pachȳnī
rādimus, *et fātīs* numquam concessa *movērī*
appāret Camerīna *procul campīque* Gelōī,
*immānisque* Gelā fluviī cognōmine *dicta.*
Arduus inde Acragās ostentat *maxima* longē
*moenia,* magnanimum *quondam* generātor *equōrum:*
*tēque datīs* linquō *ventīs,* palmōsa Selīnūs,
*et* vada dūra legō *saxīs* Lilybēia caecīs.

---

**Acragās, antis** *m.* Agrigentum, a Greek city of southwestern Sicily†
**appāreō, ēre, uī, itus** appear
**arduus, a, um** lofty, steep, towering*
**Arethūsa, ae** *f.* nymph of a famous Syracusan fountain, beloved by the river (god) Alpheüs†
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, secret*
**Camerīna, ae** *f.* a Greek city of southern Sicily†
**cautēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, ledge
**cognōmen, inis** *n.* (sur)name, title
**concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, allow
**cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour together, mix
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, dangerous*
**exsuperō** (1) rise above, (sur)pass
**fluvius, (i)ī** *m.* river, stream, flood
**Gelā, ae** *f.* a Greek city of southern Sicily†
**Gelōus, a, um** of Gela, a city of southern Sicily†
**generātor, ōris** *m.* producer, breeder†
**Helōrus, ī** *m.* river of southeastern Sicily†
**inde** then(ce), thereupon, next*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** gather, collect, traverse, skim, skirt*
**Lilybēius, a, um** Lilybean, of Lilybaeum, a promontory on the western coast of Sicily†
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**longē** far (away), at a distance*
**magnanimus, a, um** great-souled, generous, spirited
**numquam** never, at no time
**occulō, ere, uī, ltus** hide, secrete, conceal
**ostentō** (1) show, display, exhibit, parade†
**Pachȳnus (um), ī** *m.* (*n.*) promontory of southeastern Sicily
**palmōsus, a, um** full of palms, palmy†
**praepinguis, e** very fat, very rich†
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast forth, jut†
**rādō, ere, ī, sus** scrape, graze, skirt†
**Selīnūs, untis** *f.* city of southwestern Sicily†
**Siculus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, soil, earth*
**stāgnāns, antis** stagnant, marshy†
**subter** beneath, under (*acc.*)†
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, ford, depth
**veneror, ārī, ātus** reverence, entreat

---

**696. ōre, Arethūsa, tuō:** *at your fountain* (**ōre**), *Arethusa.* According to the story, the river Alpheüs of Elis in Greece fell in love with the nymph of the fountain Arethusa and pursued her under the sea to Syracuse, where she emerged. Cf. Shelley's *Arethusa.*

**697. Jussī:** presumably by Helenus.

**700. fātīs:** abl. of accordance; App. 326.

**701. Camerīna:** contrary to the commands of an oracle, the people of Camerina drained a neighboring marsh of the same name, and through this space their enemies advanced and captured the city.

**702. Gelā:** nom. sing. with long final vowel, a Greek form. **fluviī:** there is only one other example in Vergil (IX, 151) of the double **i** in the gen. ending of nouns in **ius, ium.** **dicta = vocāta.**

**704. magnanim(ōr)um:** *spirited.* **quondam:** from the point of view of Vergil, not Aeneas.

**705. datīs ventīs:** the gods are with them and have again changed the winds for them, as they have now rounded the southern point of Sicily and are veering toward the north.

**706. saxīs:** abl. of cause with **dūra,** *dangerous.*

*Hinc* Drepanī *mē portus et* inlaetābilis *ōra*
*accipit. Hīc pelagī* tot tempestātibus *āctus*
*heu, genitōrem, omnis cūrae cāsūsque* levāmen,
710 āmittō *Anchīsēn. Hīc mē, pater* optime, *fessum*
dēseris, *heu, tantīs* nēquīquam *ērepte* perīclīs!
*Nec vātēs* Helenus, *cum multa* horrenda monēret,
*hōs mihi* praedīxit lūctūs, *nōn* dīra Celaenō.
*Hic labor* extrēmus, *longārum haec* mēta *viārum.*
715 *Hinc mē* dīgressum vestrīs *deus* appulit *ōrīs.*"
*Sīc pater Aenēās* intentīs *omnibus ūnus*
*fāta* renārrābat *dīvum cursūsque* docēbat.
Conticuit *tandem factōque hīc fīne* quiēvit.

---

**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive to (*dat.*)
**Celaenō, ūs** *f.* chief of the harpies, foul monsters with bodies of birds and faces of women
**conticēscō, ere, ticuī** become silent, hush
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dīgredior, ī, gressus** depart, separate
**dīrus, a, um** terrible, dire, dreadful*
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, inform, tell*
**Drepanum, ī** *n.* city of western Sicily†
**extrēmus, a, um** utmost, last, extreme*
**Helenus, ī** *m.* a seer, son of Priam
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, dreadful*
**inlaetābilis, e** mournful, desolate†
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch (toward, to, out)
**levāmen, inis** *n.* alleviation, solace†
**lūctus, ūs** *m.* grief, sorrow, lament
**mēta, ae** *f.* turning point, goal, limit
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**optimus, a, um** best, finest, dearest
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* danger, peril, risk
**praedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** foretell, predict
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** become quiet, rest*
**renārrō** (1) relate, recount†
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* weather, storm; season*
**tot** so many, as many*
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*

---

**707. inlaetābilis:** because Anchises died there.

**709. cūrae cāsūsque:** objective genitives; App. 284.

**710–711. pater:** voc., modified by **optime** and **ērepte**. **nēquīquam:** since he did not live to reach the Promised Land. **perīc(u)līs:** dat. of separation; the longer form (⏑ – ⏑ –) could not be used in hexameter.

**712. monēret:** **cum** concessive; App. 379.

**713. Celaenō nōn (hōs mihi praedīxit lūctūs).**

**714. Hic (fuit), haec (fuit):** the pronouns agree with their predicate nouns, **labor** and **mēta**; App. 240, *a*.

**715–718. Setting sail from Drepanum for Italy, the goal of their wanderings, the Trojans are overtaken by a violent storm and driven to the northern coast of Africa, as described in the first book of the *Aeneid*. Aeneas thus completes the story of his adventures. During the whole recital Dido's interest has been growing, and she has fallen deeply in love with Aeneas as the hero of these marvelous adventures.**

**715. Hinc:** the story thus connects with I, 34 (**vix ē cōnspectū Siculae tellūris**, etc.).

**716. intentīs omnibus:** just as in II, 1, at the beginning of Aeneas's speech.

**717. renārrābat:** *recounted, related* (not *retold*, but went through them again by thus recalling them). **dīv(ōr)um.**

**718. factō fīne:** abl. abs. and alliteration; App. 343, 411.

# BOOK IV

*AT rēgīna* gravī jamdūdum saucia *cūrā*
vulnus alit vēnīs *et* caecō carpitur *ignī*.
*Multa virī* virtūs *animō multusque* recursat
*gentis honōs:* haerent īnfīxī *pectore* vultūs
verba*que, nec* placidam membrīs *dat cūra* quiētem.
Postera Phoebēā lūstrābat lampade *terrās*
ūmentem*que* Aurōra polō dīmōverat *umbram*,
*cum* sīc ūnanimam adloquitur male sāna sorōrem:
"Anna soror, *quae mē* suspēnsam īnsomnia terrent!
*Quis novus hic nostrīs* successit *sēdibus* hospes,

**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost
**alō, ere, uī, (i)tus** nourish, cherish
**Anna, ae** *f.* sister of Dido†
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, consume, waste
**dīmoveō, ēre, ōvī, ōtus** divide, remove
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** stick (to), cling (to) (*dat.*)*
**hospes, itis** *m.* (*f.*) guest, host, stranger
**īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix (in, on), fasten
**īnsomnium, (i)ī** *n.* dream, vision in sleep†
**jamdūdum** long since, for some time
**lampas, adis** *f.* torch, lamp, light
**lūstrō** (1) traverse; survey; purify*
**male** badly, ill, scarce, not
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**Phoebēus, a, um** of Phoebus (Apollo), god of light, music, and prophecy*
**placidus, a, um** calm, kindly, quiet*
**polus, ī** *m.* pole, sky, heaven
**posterus, a, um** following, later, next
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* quiet, sleep, rest*
**recursō** (1) run back, come back, recur
**sānus, a, um** sane, sound, rational†
**saucius, a, um** wounded, hurt
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach (*dat.*)
**suspēnsus, a, um** suspended, agitated
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**ūmēns, entis** moist, dewy, wet
**ūnanimus, a, um** one-minded, sympathizing†
**vēna, ae** *f.* vein†
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech, talk
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manliness, virtue, valor*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

**1–30. Dido, madly in love with Aeneas, discloses her feelings to her sister Anna.**

The Dido episode is one of the most famous in all literature, and its effect on later writers has been marked. One of the best known of the English versions is found in Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women.*

**1. At:** denotes the return of the poet to his own narrative and contrasts the restlessness of Dido with the calm (**quiēvit**) indicated by the last line of III. **rēgīna:** Dido. **gravī cūrā:** *passionate love.*

**2. vēnīs, ignī:** ablatives of means.

**3. Multa, multus:** the repetition intentionally strengthens and makes more vivid the idea of frequency and repetition; App. 413. **virī** = **Aenēae. animō** = **ad animum:** dat. of direction.

**4. gentis honōs:** his noble birth, being a member of the royal family and descended from Jupiter and Venus. **(in) pectore.**

**5. verba:** the four causes mentioned as arousing the love of the queen for Aeneas are: his courage (**virtūs**), his noble birth (**gentis honōs**), his handsome appearance (**vultūs**), and his fine words (**verba**).

**6–7. Postera Aurōra lūstrābat. Phoebēā lampade** = *with the sun's rays.*

**7.** IV, 7 = III, 589.

**8. male sāna** = **nōn sāna** = **īnsāna:** cf. **male fīda** = **īnfīda,** II, 23; litotes; App. 431.

**10. Quis (est) hic novus hospes, (quī) nostrīs sēdibus successit:** *what a marvelous stranger this is, who has come to our house!*

*quem sēsē ōre ferēns*, quam fortī *pectore et armīs!*
Crēdō equidem, *nec* vāna fidēs, *genus esse deōrum.*
Dēgenerēs *animōs* timor arguit. *Heu, quibus ille*
jactātus *fātīs! Quae bella* exhausta canēbat!
*Sī mihi nōn animō* fīxum immōtum*que* sedēret
*nē cui mē* vinclō *vellem* sociāre jugālī,
postquam *prīmus amor* dēceptam *morte* fefellit;
*sī nōn* pertaesum thalamī taeda*eque fuisset,*
*huic ūnī* forsan *potuī* succumbere culpae.
Anna, fatēbor enim, *miserī* post *fāta* Sychaeī
*conjugis et* sparsōs frāternā caede penātīs
*sōlus hic* īnflexit sēnsūs *animumque* labantem

**Anna, ae** *f.* sister of Dido
**arguō, ere, uī, ūtus** prove, make clear†
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, murder, massaere
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, reeount*
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**culpa, ae** *f.* fault, blame, weakness, sin
**dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** deeeive
**dēgener, eris** degenerate, base, ignoble
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**equidem** indeed, truly*
**exhauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drain, exhaust; bear [mock*
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deeeive, eheat,
**fateor, ērī, fassus** confess, agree
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, belief, trust(worthiness)*
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, fasten, imprint*
**fors(it)an** perhaps, pcrehanee
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant, stout*
**frāternus, a, um** fraternal, of a brother†
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, immovable
**īnflectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, turn
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, hurl, fling*
**jugālis, e** of wedloek, matrimonial†
**labō** (1) totter, waver, vacillate
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**pertaedet, ēre, taesum** it wearies (*gen.*)†
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); later*
**postquam** after (that), when*
**quam** how, than, as*
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit, settle*
**sēnsus, ūs** *m.* feeling, perception, sense†
**sociō** (1) unite, ally, share (as partner)
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** seatter, sprinkle*
**succumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** yield (to) (*dat.*)†
**Sychaeus, ī** *m.* deeeased husband of Dido
**taeda, ae** *f.* (bridal) toreh, pine (faggot)†
**thalamus, ī** *m.* (bridal) ehamber, wedloek*
**timor, ōris** *m.* fear, dread, eowardice
**vānus, a, um** vain, empty, idle, groundless
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* ehain, bond, eable*

**11. quem sēsē ōre ferēns**: *how noble in appearance.* **quam fortī pectore et (fortibus) armīs**: ablatives of quality; App. 330.

**12.** (illum) **esse genus deōrum. nec** (mea) **fidēs** (est) **vāna.**

**13. Dēgenerēs**: therefore Aeneas's soul is not **dēgener**, as he has always been so fearless.

**14. jactātus** (est).

**15.** (in) **animō. Sī . . . nōn . . . sedēret**: condition eontrary to faet; App. 382.

**16. nē vellem**: *not to be willing*, substantive elause, subjeet of **sedēret**; App. 360. **cui**: indefinite, *any one.* **vinc(u)lō jugālī**: *in bonds of wedlock.*

**17.** (mē) **dēceptam fefellit = mē dēcēpit et fefellit.**

**18. sī nōn** (mē) **pertaesum fuisset. thalamī, taedae**: genitives with the impersonal **pertaedet**; App. 290. **taedae**: *the* (*marriage*) *torch*, by metonymy for *marriage;* App. 433. Torches were earried by attendants in the wedding proeession. Cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, XI, 590–591:

"They light the nuptial toreh and bid
Invoke Hymen."

**19. potuī**: the ind. instead of the more usual subj. expresses the conelusion in a more positive way, as though it were praetieally realized; App. 382, *d.* **huic ūnī culpae**: dat. with eompound; Dido refers to the sin (**culpa**) of loving Aeneas after having sworn eternal fidelity to her former husband, Syehaeus.

**21. frāternā**: equivalent to a subj. gen. with **caede**; *thc murder of Sychaeus by my brother.* Cf. I, 343–356.

**22–23. sōlus hic** (Aenēās). **hic**: with a short syllable here instead of the more usual long; App. 107, 3, *c.* (**meum**)



*Gramstorff Bros.* *Luigi Sabatelli*

THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY



*Gramstorff Bros.* *P.-N. Guérin*

AENEAS AT DIDO'S COURT

Behind Dido and leaning on her couch is Anna. At her side is Cupid, disguised as Ascanius.

impulit. Agnōscō veteris vestīgia *flammae.*
*Sed mihi vel tellūs* optem prius *īma* dehīscat
*vel pater* omnipotēns abigat *mē* fulmine *ad umbrās,*
pallentīs *umbrās* Erebō *noctemque* profundam,
*ante,* pudor, quam *tē* violō *aut tua* jūra resolvō.
*Ille meōs, prīmus quī mē sibi* jūnxit, *amōrēs*
abstulit; *ille habeat sēcum servetque* sepulcrō."
*Sīc effāta sinum lacrimīs* implēvit obortīs.

Anna *refert: "Ō lūce* magis dīlecta sorōrī,
*sōlane* perpetuā maerens carpēre juventā
*nec* dulcīs *nātōs* Veneris *nec* praemia nōris?
*Id* cinerem *aut* mānīs crēdis cūrāre sepultōs?

---

**abigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** drive (away), force†
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**Anna, ae** *f.* sister of Dido
**auferō, erre, abstulī, ablātus** take away, carry off
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, consume, waste
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**cūrō** (1) care (for, to), heed, regard
**dehīscō, ere** yawn, gape, open (up)
**dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus** love, cherish
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak out, say
**Erebus, ī** *m.* underworld, Hades†
**fulmen, inis** *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** strike, drive on
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, sate*
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**jūs, jūris** *n.* right, law, decree, justice
**juventa, ae** *f.* youth, young manhood, young womanhood
**maereō, ēre** mourn, grieve, pine
**magis** more, rather*
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus** learn; *perf.* know*
**oborior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**optō** (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*
**pallēns, entis** pale, pallid, wan†
**perpetuus, a, um** continual, lasting†
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize*
**prius** sooner, before
**profundus, a, um** deep, profound, vast
**pudor, ōris** *m.* shame, modesty, honor†
**quam** how, than, as*
**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), relax
**sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), pultus** bury, inter
**sepulcrum, ī** *n.* tomb, grave, burial
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty, love*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace*
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*
**violō** (1) outrage, violate, defile

---

**animum labantem impulit = meum animum sīc impulit ut labāret;** App. 440.

**24–25. tellūs īma:** *the lowest (deeps of) the earth;* App. 246. **prius:** with **quam,** l. 27, but repeated as **ante** in l. 27 because of the intervening clauses. **optem:** potential subj.; App. 252. **(ut) dehīscat, (ut) abigat:** substantive clauses developed from the optative; App. 360. **pater omnipotēns = Juppiter. ad umbrās = ad mortem,** defined by the next verse.

**27. ante:** repeating **prius** of l. 24. **pudor:** the Romans considered it quite discreditable for a widow to marry.

**28. Ille:** Sychaeus.

**29. habeat (meōs amōrēs) servetque (eōs in) sepulcrō:** volitive (jussive) subjunctives; App. 254.

**30. lacrimīs:** an indication of the strength of the feeling she is trying to suppress.

**31–53. Anna encourages Dido to look forward to marriage with Aeneas.**

**31. magis dīlēcta:** *more beloved = dearer.* **lūce** ( = **vītā**): abl. with comparative; App. 327. **sorōrī = mihi:** dat. of agent; App. 302.

**32. juventā:** abl. of time; practically equivalent to an acc. of duration; App. 322, 314. **carpēre = carpēris;** App. 204, 4.

**33. Veneris praemia:** *the joys of love.* **nō(ve)ris:** fut. perf.; with force of a fut.

**34. Id:** whether you remarry or not. **cinerem aut mānīs (Sychaeī):** subjects of **cūrāre.** Anna's answer to Dido's statement in ll. 28–29 is that her actions

So be it granted - sick

*Estō:* aegram *nūllī quondam* flexēre marītī,
*nōn* Libyae, *nōn ante* Tyrō; dēspectus Iarbās
ductōrēs*que alīī, quōs* Āfrica *terra* triumphīs
dīves alit: placitō*ne* etiam pugnābis *amōrī?*
*Nec venit in mentem quōrum* cōnsēderis *arvīs?*
*Hinc* Gaetūlae *urbēs, genus* īnsuperābile *bellō,*
*et* Numidae īnfrēnī cingunt *et* inhospita Syrtis;
*hinc* dēserta sitī regiō lātē*que furentēs*
Barcaeī. *Quid bella* Tyrō *surgentia dīcam*
germānī*que* minās?
*Dīs* equidem auspicibus reor *et Jūnōne* secundā

---

**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary, wretched*
**Āfricus, a, um** African, of Africa†
**alō, ere, uī, (i)tus** nourish, rear
**auspex, icis** *m.* protector, guide; seer
**Barcaeī, ōrum** *m.* tribe of North Africa†
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle*
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look down on, scorn, despise, disdain†
**dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis** rich, wealthy
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader, chieftain, guide
**equidem** indeed, surely, truly*
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**flectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, move
**Gaetūlus, a, um** of the Gaetuli, a tribe of North Africa†
**germānus, ī** *m.* brother*
**Iarbās, ae** *m.* African chieftain, one of Dido's suitors†
**īnfrēnus, a, um** unbridled, without bridles†
**inhospitus, a, um** inhospitable, wild†
**īnsuperābilis, e** unconquerable†
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**Libya, ae** *f.* country of North Africa*
**marītus, ī** *m.* (prospective) husband, suitor
**minae, ārum** *f.* threat, menace, peril
**Numidae, ārum** *m.* tribe of North Africa†
**placeō, ēre, uī, itus** please (*dat.*)
**pugnō** (1) fight, oppose, resist (*dat.*)†
**regiō, ōnis** *f.* region, district, quarter
**reor, rērī, ratus** think, suppose, reckon
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable*
**sitis, is** *f.* thirst, drought†
**Syrtis, is** *f.* region of quicksand on the northern coast of Africa
**triumphus, ī** *m.* triumph, victory
**Tyrus, ī** *f.* famous city of Phoenicia, birthplace of Dido

---

cannot possibly disturb the ashes and shade of Sychaeus.

**35. Estō:** imp. 3d sing. of **sum**; (*so*) *be it, granted that.* **(tē) aegram:** *while you mourned for your husband* (during the time immediately following his death).

**36. Libyae:** loc.; App. 345. **(in) Tyrō:** loc. abl. **dēspectus (est tibi).**

**37–38. Āfrica terra triumphīs dīves:** Vergil is thinking of the many triumphs later celebrated by Roman generals for their victories in Africa, **triumphīs** being abl. of respect with **dīves**; App. 325. **placitō:** with active force, *agreeable, pleasing* (*to you*). **pugnābis** = **resistēs. amōrī:** dat. with special verb; App. 297.

**39. Nec venit in (tuam) mentem:** *does it not occur to you?* **quōrum consēderis (in) arvīs:** indir. quest.; App. 349; subject of **venit**; *what sort of people* (i.e., how fierce and hostile) *they are in whose territory you have settled.*

**40–42. Hinc . . . hinc:** *from this side . . . from that side.* **īnfrēnī:** *unbridled;* possibly a play on words, denoting that the Libyans rode their horses without bridles and that they were a wild, fierce, unrestrained (unbridled) tribe. **cingunt (tē). sitī:** abl. of cause with **dēserta.**

**43. Barcaeī (sunt). Tyrō:** abl. of place from which; App. 320, *a.*

**44. germānī:** Pygmalion. See I, 346–364, 563–564.

**45. Dīs auspicibus, Jūnōne secundā:** ablatives absolute. **Jūnōne:** both as goddess of marriage and as guardian of Carthage.

*hunc cursum* Īliacās *ventō tenuisse* carīnās.
*Quam tū urbem*, soror, *hanc cernēs, quae surgere rēgna*
conjugiō *tālī! Teucrum* comitantibus *armīs*
Pūnica *sē* quantīs attollet glōria *rēbus!*
*Tū* modo posce *deōs* veniam, *sacrīsque* litātīs
indulgē hospitiō causās*que* innecte morandī,
*dum pelagō* dēsaevit hiems *et* aquōsus Orīōn,
quassātae*que* ratēs, *dum nōn* tractābile *caelum.*"
*Hīs dictīs* impēnsō *animum* flammāvit *amōre*
spem*que dedit* dubiae *mentī* solvit*que* pudōrem.
Principiō dēlūbra adeunt pācem*que per ārās*
exquīrunt; mactant lēctās *dē* mōre bidentīs
lēgiferae Cererī Phoebō*que patrīque* Lyaeō,

**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach
**aquōsus, a, um** watery, rainy†
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**bidēns, entis** *f.* with two teeth, two-year old sheep†
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, pretext*
**Cerēs, eris** *f.* (goddess of) grain
**comitor, ārī, ātus** accompany, escort, attend, follow*
**conjugium, (i)ī** *n.* wedlock, husband, wife
**dēlūbrum, ī** *n.* shrine, temple, sanctuary
**dēsaeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** rage (furiously)†
**dubius, a, um** doubtful, wavering
**exquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus** seek (out)
**flammō** (1) inflame, burn, fire
**glōria, ae** *f.* renown, glory, fame, pride
**hiems, emis** *f.* winter, storm*
**hospitium, (i)ī** *n.* hospitality, welcome
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**impēnsus, a, um** vast, vehement†
**indulgeō, ēre, lsī, ltus** indulge, favor (*dat.*)
**innectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus** weave, connect†
**lēgifer, era, erum** law-bringing†
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, collect*
**litō** (1) sacrifice (favorably), appease
**Lyaeus, ī** *m.* Bacchus, (god of) wine
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
**modo** only, (just) now
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
**Ŏrīōn, ōnis** *m.* the storm-bringing constellation, named for a famous hunter transported to heaven
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**principiō** first(ly), in the first place
**pudor, ōris** *m.* shame, modesty, honor
**Pūnicus, a, um** Punic, Carthaginian
**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, how many*
**quassō** (1) shake, shatter, toss
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), release, break down, free, pay*
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**tractābilis, e** manageable, favorable†
**venia, ae** *f.* favor, pardon, grace

**46. hunc cursum:** *their course hither.*

**47. Quam, quae:** *how great! what (a)!* **quam urbem hanc cernēs (surgere), quae rēgna (cernēs) surgere.**

**48. conjugiō tālī:** abl. of cause. **Teucr(ōr)um.**

**49. quantīs rēbus:** *to what heights of achievement!*

**50. deōs veniam:** two accusatives with a verb of asking; App. 316.

**52. Orīōn:** a constellation rising at the rainy and stormy season.

**53. quassātae (sunt) ratēs, nōn tractābile (est) caelum.**

**54–89. Love drives Dido to frenzy.**

**54. (jam) impēnsō.**

**56. (Dīdō Annaque) adeunt. dēlūbra (urbis), ārās (urbis). pācem (deōrum),** or **pācem (deōs).**

**57. bidentīs:** literally *two-toothed*, because of the two prominent teeth sheep have when about two years old. At this age they were considered especially acceptable for sacrifice.

**58. lēgiferae:** *law-giving*, because of the civilizing influence of agriculture on early man.

*Jūnōnī ante omnīs, cui* vincla jugālia *cūrae.*
*Ipsa tenēns dextrā* pāteram pulcherrima *Dīdō*
candentis vaccae *media inter* cornua *fundit,*
*aut ante ōra deum* pinguīs spatiātur *ad ārās,*
īnstauratque *diem dōnīs,* pecudumque reclūsīs
*pectoribus* inhiāns spirantia cōnsulit exta.
*Heu, vātum* ignārae *mentēs! Quid* vōta *furentem,*
*quid* dēlūbra juvant? Est mollis *flamma* medullās
intereā *et* tacitum vīvit *sub pectore* vulnus.
Ūritur *īnfēlix Dīdō tōtāque* vagātur
*urbe furēns,* quālis conjectā cerva sagittā,
*quam procul* incautam nemora *inter* Crēsia fīxit
pāstor *agēns tēlīs* līquitque volātile *ferrum*
nescius: *illa fugā silvās* saltūsque peragrat

**candēns, entis** white, shining, sleek
**cerva, ae** *f.* deer, doe†
**conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl, shoot
**cōnsulō, ere, uī, ltus** consult, consider†
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn, tip, end
**Crēsius, a, um** of Crete, Cretan†
**dēlūbrum, ī** *n.* shrine, temple, sanctuary
**edō, ere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus** eat, consume†
**exta, ōrum** *n.* entrails, vitals†
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, pierce, imprint*
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**incautus, a, um** unaware, unsuspecting
**inhiō** (1) yawn, gape† .
**īnstaurō** (1) renew, refresh, repeat
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**jugālis, e** of wedlock, matrimonial
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**medulla, ae** *f.* marrow†
**mollis, e** soft, yielding, tender
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**nescius, a, um** ignorant, unaware
**pāstor, ōris** *m.* shepherd, herdsman
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal (of the flock)*
**peragrō** (1) wander through, scour
**pinguis, e** fat, rich, fertile
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, noble, splendid, handsome, illustrious*
**quālis, e** of what sort, (such) as*
**reclūdō, ere, sī, sus** open, disclose
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow
**saltus, ūs** *m.* forest, glade, pasture†
**spatior, ārī, ātus** walk, stride†
**spīrō** (1) breathe (forth), blow, quiver
**tacitus, a, um** silent, noiseless, secret
**ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn, consume
**vacca, ae** *f.* heifer, young cow†
**vagor, ārī, ātus** wander, roam
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* chain, bond, cable*
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus** live, be alive
**volātilis, e** flying, winged, swift†
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

**59. Jūnōnī:** as presiding over marriage. **ante omnīs (aliōs deōs). cui vinc(u)la (sunt) cūrae:** **cui** and **cūrae** are double datives; App. 308, *a.*

**61. fundit (vīnum,** *wine*): it was customary to pour an offering of wine between the horns of the victim as part of the sacrificial ceremony.

**62. ante ōra de(ōr)um:** i.e., before their images. **pinguīs:** modifying **ārās**; observe the long vowel of the ending. The altars were fat (rich) with offerings.

**63. dōnīs:** *gifts* (to the gods), *sacrifices.*

**64. pectoribus:** with the final syllable irregularly long under the metrical accent; App. 394, *a.*

**65. vātum:** the seers who interpret the omens apparently encourage Dido in her hopeless love, not realizing (**mentēs ignārae**) that she is past praying for. **quid vōta (juvant) furentem (amōre):** *how can sacrifices help one crazed (with love)?*

**66. Est:** from **edō**; observe the long vowel.

**69–71. (in) urbe. furēns (amōre). quālis cerva (vagātur), sagittā conjectā** (abl. abs.), **quam incautam inter Crēsia nemora pāstor agēns tēlīs procul fixit.** The chance shot of a shepherd has taken effect without his knowing it. **quam:** refers to the *deer* (**cerva**).

**72. nescius:** i.e., of the success of his shot. **fugā:** abl. of manner.

Dictaeōs; haeret laterī lētālis harundō.
*Nunc media Aenēān sēcum per moenia dūcit*
Sīdoniāsque ostentat opēs *urbemque parātam,*
incipit effārī *mediāque in vōce* resistit;
*nunc eadem lābente diē* convīvia *quaerit,*
Īliacōsque iterum dēmēns *audīre labōrēs*
exposcit pendetque iterum nārrantis *ab ōre.*
Post *ubi* dīgressī, *lūmenque* obscūra vicissim
lūna premit suādentque cadentia *sīdera somnōs,*
*sōla domō* maeret vacuā strātīsque *relictīs*
incubat. *Illum* absēns absentem *auditque videtque,*
*aut* gremiō Ascanium *genitōris* imāgine *capta*
dētinet, īnfandum *sī* fallere *possit amōrem.*

**absēns, entis** absent, separated, distant
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, set*
**convīvium, (i)ī** *n.* feast, banquet
**dēmēns, entis** crazy, mad, distracted
**dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus** retain, hold back
**Dictaeus, a, um** of Dicte, a mountain in Crete; Cretan
**dīgredior, ī, gressus** (de)part, separate
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak (out), say
**exposcō, ere, poposcī** demand, entreat
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, cheat, mock, beguile*
**gremium, (i)ī** *n.* bosom, lap, embrace
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling to, stick to (*dat.*)*
**harundō, inis** *f.* reed, arrow†
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**imāgō, inis** *f.* likeness, form, phantom*
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**incubō, āre, uī, itus** recline (upon) (*dat.*)
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, unutterable
**iterum** again, anew, a second time*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**lētālis, e** deadly, mortal, lethal, fatal†
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**maereō, ēre** mourn, grieve, pine
**nārrō** (1) narrate, tell, recount
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, obscure, gloomy*
**ops, opis** *f.* help, resources, wealth, power*
**ostentō** (1) show (off), display, exhibit, parade
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang, depend*
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); afterward*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press*
**resistō, ere, stitī** stop, resist (*dat.*)
**Sīdonius, a, um** of Sidon, a famous city of Phoenicia
**strātum, ī** *n.* bed, couch; pavement
**suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus** persuade, advise
**vacuus, a, um** empty, free, vacant
**vicissim** in turn, by turns†

**75–76. Sīdoniās:** Dido came from Tyre not from Sidon. Vergil's knowledge of geography is hazy, and he often confuses Tyre and Sidon, the two great cities of Phoenicia. Cf. I, 338. **opēs urbemque:** subtle temptations to the needy Aeneas and his followers (**omnium egēnōs,** I, 599), who were so eager to found a city where they might end their wanderings. **mediā:** App. 246.

**77. lābente diē:** *as the day wanes,* the usual time for the chief meal.

**78. dēmēns:** Aeneas's presence would serve to aggravate her unhappy passion.

**79. pendet ab ōre (Aenēae) nārrantis:** *hangs on his words.*

**80. Post:** adv. **ubi (omnēs) dīgressī (sunt). lūmen (suum).**

**81. premit = reprimit.**

**82. strātīs relictīs (ab Aenēā):** in the banqueting hall, after the guests have departed, she throws herself on the couch which Aeneas had occupied, to appease her sense of desolation felt in the absence of one secretly loved.

**83. absēns absentem:** bringing the same or similar words together is a favorite type of play on words among many classical authors.

**84. Ascanium:** he has now been brought back from Idalium, and Cupid is no longer substituting for him. Vergil, however, tells us nothing of this second exchange. **genitōris imāgine:** i.e., his resemblance to his father.

**85. sī possit:** implied indir. quest.; App. 349.

*Nōn* coeptae adsurgunt turrēs, *nōn arma* juventūs
exercet *portūsve aut* prōpugnācula *bellō*
tūta *parant:* pendent opera interrupta minae*que*
mūrōrum *ingentēs* aequāta*que* māchina *caelō*.
*Quam simul ac tālī* persēnsit peste *tenērī*
cāra *Jovis conjūnx nec fāmam* obstāre furōrī,
*tālibus* adgreditur Venerem Sāturnia *dictīs:*
"Ēgregiam vērō laudem *et* spolia ampla *refertis*
*tūque puerque tuus* (*magnum et* memorābile *nūmen*),
*ūna* dolō *dīvum sī* fēmina *victa* duōrum *est*.
*Nec mē* adeō fallit veritam *tē moenia nostra*
suspectās *habuisse domōs* Karthāginis *altae*.
*Sed quis erit* modus, *aut quō nunc* certāmine *tantō?*
Quīn potius pācem aeternam pactōs*que* hymenaeōs

---

**adeō** to such an extent, so (much)
**adgredior, ī, gressus** attack, address
**adsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise
**aequō** (1) (make) equal, match, level, even*
**aeternus, a, um** everlasting, eternal*
**amplus, a, um** large, grand, ample, wide
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, rivalry, strife*
**coepī, isse, ptus** begin, commence
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud*
**duo, ae, o** two*
**ēgregius, a, um** remarkable, noble
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** drive, exercise*
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, cheat, mock, escape the notice (of)*
**fēmina, ae** *f.* woman, female
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
**hymenaeus, ī** *m.* wedding (hymn); Hymen
**interrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** interrupt†
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**māchina, ae** *f.* machine, engine, device
**memorābilis, e** memorable, glorious
**minae, ārum** *f.* threat, menace, pinnacle
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, measure, limit*
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, battlement*
**obstō, āre, stitī, status** oppose, resist (*dat.*)
**opus, eris** *n.* work, labor, deed, task*
**pacīscor, ī, pactus** stipulate, bargain, fix†
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang, depend*
**persentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** feel deeply, perceive (thoroughly)†
**pestis, is** *f.* plague, destruction, scourge
**potius** rather, preferably
**prōpugnāculum, ī** *n.* rampart, battlement†
**quīn** that not, but that, why not, nay even*
**Sāturnia, ae** *f.* daughter of Saturn, Juno
**spolium, (i)ī** *n.* booty, spoils, plunder
**suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look from beneath, suspect
**turris, is** *f.* tower, turret
**tūtus, a, um** protected, safe, secure*
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty; love*
**vereor, ērī, itus** fear, dread, revere
**vērō** truly, indeed, but

---

**87. bellō:** dat. of purpose.

**88–89. minae mūrōrum:** *threatenings of walls = threatening walls.* Cf. II, 235, **rotārum lāpsūs,** *glidings of wheels = gliding wheels.*

**90–128. Juno favors the marriage, that she may turn Aeneas aside from Italy, and so agrees to help Venus consummate the affair, promising to devise a suitable situation.**

**90. Quam:** Dido; subj. of **tenērī,** *that she was held.* **peste = amōre;** or = **peste amōris.**

**91. fāmam:** (regard for) *her reputation, good name.* **Jovis conjūnx:** Juno.

**93. Ēgregiam:** scornful sarcasm. **refertis:** a technical term for carrying off the spoils won in battle.

**94. puer tuus:** Cupid. (est) **nūmen (vestrum).**

**96–97. adeō:** *to such an extent* (as you think). **tē habuisse:** subj. of **fallit.**

**98. modus (certāminis), aut quō (tendimus) certāmine tantō. quō:** *whither, how far.*

**99. Quīn = cūr nōn. hymenaeōs (Dīdōnis Aenēaeque).**

exercēmus? *Habēs tōtā quod mente petīstī:*
*ardet* amāns *Dīdō trāxitque per* ossa furōrem.
Commūnem *hunc* ergō populum paribus*que* regāmus
auspiciīs; liceat Phrygiō servīre marītō
dōtālīs*que tuae Tyriōs* permittere *dextrae.*"
*Ollī* (sēnsit enim simulātā *mente* locūtam,
*quō rēgnum Ītaliae* Libycās āverteret *ōrās*)
*sīc* contrā *est* ingressa Venus: "*Quis tālia* dēmēns
abnuat *aut tēcum* mālit contendere *bellō?*
*Sī* modo *quod* memorās factum *fortūna sequātur.*
*Sed fātīs* incerta *feror, sī Juppiter ūnam*
*esse velit Tyriīs urbem Trojāque* profectīs,
miscērī*ve* probet populōs *aut* foedera jungī.
*Tū conjūnx, tibi* fās *animum* temptāre precandō.

---

**abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus** nod dissent, refuse†
**amō** (1) love, like, cherish*
**auspicium, (i)ī** *n.* auspices, power
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn aside, avert*
**commūnis, e** (in) common, joint, mutual
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** strive, contend
**contrā** opposite, facing, in reply*
**dēmēns, entis** crazy, mad, distracted
**dōtālis, e** of a dower, as a dower†
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** drive, exercise, perform*
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, act, exploit*
**fās** *n.* right, justice, decree, law*
**foedus, eris** *n.* treaty, pact, alliance
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
**incertus, a, um** uncertain, doubtful
**ingredior, ī, gressus** enter, proceed
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**Libycus, a, um** of Libya, a country of North Africa*
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, tell, talk*
**mālō, mālle, māluī** prefer, wish rather†
**marītus, ī** *m.* husband
**memorō** (1) recall, recount, relate, say*
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**modo** only, (just) now
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**pār, paris** equal, like, similar*
**permittō, ere, mīsī, missus** intrust, allow
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat, invoke*
**probō** (1) test, prove, approve†
**proficīscor, ī, fectus** set out, go
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct*
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** feel, perceive
**serviō, īre, īvī (ii), ītus** serve (*dat.*)
**simulō** (1) simulate, counterfeit, pretend
**temptō** (1) try, test, seek, examine*
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty; love*

---

**101. ardet amāns Dīdō = ardet amōre Dīdō.**

**102–103. paribus auspiciīs:** *with equal authority*, since only the highest Roman magistrates had the right to take the auspices. Juno proposes that she and Venus shall preside over the united peoples (Trojans and Carthaginians) with equal authority.

**103. liceat (Dīdōnī):** vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254. **marītō** = Aeneas: dat. with special verb, **servīre**; App. 297.

**104. dōtālīs:** predicatively, *as a dowry.*

**105. Ollī (Jūnōnī):** an archaic form of **illī**; it depends on **ingressa est (dīcere)** in l. 107. **sēnsit (Jūnōnem) locūtam (esse).**

**106. rēgnum Ītaliae:** *the (destined) kingdom of Italy.* **quō ( = ut) āverteret:** purpose; App. 388. **(ad) ōrās.**

**107. Quis dēmēns abnuat:** deliberative subj.; App. 348.

**109. Sī modo ( = utinam) factum fortūna sequātur:** *may fortune attend the deed* (of uniting the two peoples); opt. subj.; App. 253. Venus implies, but does not definitely promise, that she would consent under certain vaguely suggested conditions.

**110–111. sī . . . velit:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **(illīs) Trojā profectīs:** dat. of possession; equivalent to **Teucrīs.**

**113. Tū (es) conjūnx (Jovis), tibi (est).**

Perge, *sequar*.'' *Tum sīc* excēpit rēgia *Jūnō:*
"*Mēcum erit* iste *labor. Nunc quā* ratiōne *quod* īnstat
cōnfierī *possit,* paucīs (adverte) docēbō.
Vēnātum *Aenēās* ūnā*que miserrima Dīdō*
*in* nemus *īre parant, ubi prīmōs* crāstinus ortūs
extulerit Tītān radiīs*que* retēxerit orbem.
*Hīs ego* nigrantem commixtā grandine nimbum,
*dum* trepidant ālae saltūs*que* indāgine cingunt,
dēsuper īnfundam *et* tonitrū *caelum omne* cīēbō.
Diffugient *comitēs et nocte* tegentur opācā:
spēluncam *Dīdō* dux *et* Trojānus *eandem*
dēvenient. *Aderō et, tua sī mihi* certa voluntās,
cōnūbiō jungam stabilī propriam*que* dicābō.

---

**advertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn to, heed
**āla, ae** *f.* wing, hunters, beaters*
**certus, a, um** fixed, sure, certain, reliable*
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** stir up, arouse*
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle
**cōnfīō, fierī, fectus** be done, be finished†
**cōnūbium, (i)ī** *n.* wedlock, matrimony
**crāstinus, a, um** tomorrow's, of tomorrow†
**dēsuper** from above
**dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come down, arrive (at)
**dicō** (1) consecrate, assign, proclaim
**diffugiō, ere, fūgī** flee apart, scatter
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry (out), raise*
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** take up, rejoin
**grandō, inis** *f.* hail(storm, stones)†
**indāgō, inis** *f.* (circle of) nets, toils†
**īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour (into, upon)†
**īnstō, āre, stitī** press on, desire, urge
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**nigrāns, antis** black, dusky, dark†
**nimbus, ī** *m.* (storm)cloud, rainstorm*
**opācus, a, um** dark, gloomy, dusky
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb(it), earth*
**ortus, ūs** *m.* rising, source†
**paucus, a, um** little, few, slight, scanty*
**pergō, ere, perrēxī, rēctus** proceed
**proprius, a, um** one's own, permanent
**radius, (i)ī** *m.* rod, spoke, ray†
**ratiō, ōnis** *f.* manner, purpose, reason
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** uncover, recover
**saltus, ūs** *m.* forest, glade, pasture
**spēlunca, ae** *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
**stabilis, e** firm, stable, lasting
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**Tītān, ānis** *m.* a god, the sun†
**tonitrus, ūs** *m.* thunder†
**trepidō** (1) tremble; scurry; quiver
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**ūnā** at the same time, together
**vēnor, ārī, ātus** hunt, go hunting†
**voluntās, ātis** *f.* will, wish, consent†

---

**115–116. mēcum = cum mē;** App. 321, *a*; here equivalent to **meus. quod īnstat:** *the business in hand;* subj. of **possit. quā ratiōne . . . possit:** indir. quest.; App. 349. **paucīs (dictīs).**

**117. Vēnātum:** supine of **vēnor,** after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

**120–122. Hīs (Dīdōnī et Aenēae), dum ālae trepidant cinguntque saltūs indāgine, ego īnfundam dēsuper nimbum. ālae:** troops of beaters, who frighten the game and drive them past the hunters.

**122. tonitrū:** ordinarily the prerogative of Jove, but here wielded by Juno, as by Pallas (Minerva) in I, 42.

**124. (in) spēluncam.**

**125. Aderō:** in her capacity of goddess of marriage (**Jūnō Prōnuba**). **voluntās (est).**

**126. cōnūbiō:** pronounced here as though spelled **cōnūbjō,** for the sake of the meter; App. 401. **jungam (Dīdōnem Aenēae) et (eam) propriam dicābō.** This verse is repeated from I, 73.

*Hic* hymenaeus *erit.*" *Nōn* adversāta *petentī*
adnuit *atque* dolīs rīsit Cytherēa repertīs.
Ōceanum intereā *surgēns* Aurōra *relīquit.*
*It* portīs jubare exortō dēlēcta juventūs,
rētia rāra, plagae, lātō vēnābula *ferrō,*
Massȳlī*que ruunt* equitēs *et* odōra canum *vīs.*
*Rēgīnam* thalamō cūnctantem *ad līmina prīmī*
Poenōrum exspectant, ostrō*que* īnsignis *et aurō*
*stat* sonipēs *ac* frēna ferōx spūmantia mandit.
*Tandem* prōgreditur *magnā* stīpante catervā
Sīdoniam pictō chlamydem circumdata limbō;
*cui* pharetra *ex aurō,* crīnēs nōdantur *in aurum,*
aurea purpuream subnectit fībula vestem.

**adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus** nod assent, promise
**adversor, ārī, ātus** oppose, resist (*dat.*)†
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
**canis, is** *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound
**caterva, ae** *f.* band, troop, crowd
**chlamys, ydis** *f.* cloak, mantle, cape
**circumdō, dare, dedī, datus** surround, encircle
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, tresses, locks*
**cūnctor, ārī, ātus** delay, linger, wait†
**Cytherēa, ae** *f.* Venus, born at Cythera
**dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, select
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud*
**eques, itis** *m.* horseman, knight†
**exorior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up
**ex(s)pectō** (1) expect, (a)wait, linger*
**ferōx, ōcis** fierce, spirited, fiery, wild
**fībula, ae** *f.* brooch, buckle, clasp†
**frēnum, ī** *n.* bridle, bit, curb
**hymenaeus, ī** *m.* wedding (hymn); Hymen
**īnsignis, e** marked, notable, splendid*
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**jubar, aris** *n.* ray of light, sunshine†
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious*
**limbus, ī** *m.* border, fringe, hem
**mandō, ere, ī, mānsus** champ, chew
**Massȳlus, a, um** of the Massyli, a people of North Africa†
**nōdō** (1) (tie in a) knot, bind, fasten†
**Ōceanus, ī** *m.* Ocean
**odōrus, a, um** smelling, keen-scented†
**ostrum, ī** *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson
**pharetra, ae** *f.* quiver
**pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus** paint, embroider
**plaga, ae** *f.* net, snare, toils†
**Poenus, ī** *m.* Carthaginian, Phoenician
**porta, ae** *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
**prōgredior, ī, gressus** advance, proceed
**purpureus, a, um** purple, crimson
**rārus, a, um** scattered, wide-meshed
**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus** find (out)†
**rēte, is** *n.* net, snare, toils†
**rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus** smile, laugh (at)†
**Sīdonius, a, um** of Sidon, Sidonian
**sonipēs, pedis** *m.* prancing steed†
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**stīpō** (1) stuff, stow, crowd, throng
**subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** tie (beneath), fasten
**thalamus, ī** *m.* (bridal) chamber, wedlock*
**vēnābulum, ī** *n.* hunting spear†
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

**127. Hic**: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, *a*; pronounce **hicc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c*. **Nōn adversāta (Jūnōnī) petentī**: *not opposing her request.*

**128. dolīs (Jūnōnis) repertīs**: abl. abs.

**129–159. Aeneas and Dido go on a hunting party.**

**130. portīs**: abl. of the route or of separation. **jubare (sōlis) exortō**: abl. abs. **juventūs**, collective noun = **Tyriī et Teucrī.**

**132. ruunt**: zeugma, as it strictly applies to only the last two of its subjects, while with the first three it means *are hurried forth;* App. 447. **odōra canum vīs**: *keen-scented pack of hounds*, **odōra** being a transferred epithet; App. 446.

**135.** Note the alliteration; App. 411.

**136. prōgreditur (Dīdō).**

**137. chlamydem**: object of **circumdata** used as a middle; App. 309, *a*.

**138. cui pharetra (est)**; dat. of possession. **crīnēs nōdantur in aurum**: *her hair is tied into a knot with gold*, i.e., with a golden cord or clasp of some sort.

*Nec nōn et* Phrygiī *comitēs et laetus* Iūlus
incēdunt. *Ipse ante aliōs* pulcherrimus *omnīs*
īnfert *sē socium Aenēās atque agmina* jungit.
Quālis *ubi* hībernam Lyciam Xanthīque fluenta
dēserit *ac* Dēlum māternam invīsit Apollō
īnstauratque chorōs, mixtīque altāria *circum*
Crētesque Dryopesque fremunt pictīque Agathyrsī:
*ipse* jugīs Cynthī graditur mollīque fluentem
fronde premit crīnem fingēns *atque* implicat *aurō*,
*tēla* sonant *umerīs: haud illō* sēgnior *ībat*
*Aenēās, tantum* ēgregiō decus ēnitet *ōre*.
Postquam *altōs ventum in montīs atque* invia lūstra,
ecce ferae *saxī* dējectae vertice caprae

**Agathyrsī, ōrum** *m.* people of Scythia in southeastern Europe†
**altāria, ium** *n.* altar
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**capra, ae** *f.* she-goat†
**chorus, ī** *m.* song, dance, choral band
**Crētes, ium** *m.* Cretans, inhabitants of Crete†
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, tresses, locks*
**Cynthus, ī** *m.* mountain of Delos
**decus, oris** *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw (down), dislodge
**Dēlos, ī** *f.* island of the Aegean, birthplace of Apollo†
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**Dryopes, um** *m.* a people of northern Greece†
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**ēgregius, a, um** remarkable, noble
**ēniteō, ēre, uī** shine forth, gleam, glitter†
**ferus, a, um** wild, savage, fierce, cruel*
**fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus** form, fashion, mold
**fluentum, ī** *n.* stream, flood†
**fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow, stream, ebb
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** roar, shout, groan*
**frōns, frondis** *f.* leaf, foliage, garland*
**gradior, ī, gressus** walk, stride, march, go
**hībernus, a, um** wintry, of the winter, stormy
**implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus)** entwine
**incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go (proudly)
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring (to), present
**īnstaurō** (1) renew, refresh, repeat
**invīsō, ere, ī, sus** visit, look on, view†
**invius, a, um** pathless, trackless
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**lūstrum, ī** *n.* marsh, bog, lair
**Lycia, ae** *f.* country of Asia Minor†
**māternus, a, um** maternal, of one's mother†
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mollis, e** soft, yielding, tender
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus** paint, embroider, tattoo
**postquam** after (that), when*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, cover, confine*
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious*
**quālis, e** of what sort, (such) as*
**sēgnis, e** slow, slothful, inactive
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**vertex, icis** *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
**Xanthus, ī** *m.* river near Troy†

**140. Nec nōn:** *likewise.*

**142. Aenēās agmina (sua) jungit (agminibus Dīdōnis).**

**143. Quālis:** Aeneas is here likened to Apollo, as Dido was likened to Diana in I, 498 ff. **hībernam Lyciam:** *his winter quarters in Lycia.*

**146. Crētesque:** with a long final syllable under the verse accent, before the pause, and before the following **Dr(-)**; App. 394, *a*; 16. **Crētes, Dryopes, Agathyrsī:** strange worshippers come from all sorts of remote regions.

**147. ipse:** Apollo.

**148. fronde:** of the laurel, sacred to Apollo.

**149. tēla sonant umerīs:** from Homer. Apollo was the archer god. **illō:** abl. with comparative; App. 327.

**150. tantum (quantum Apollinis).**

**151. ventum (est illīs):** *they came,* with the emphasis on the action rather than on the actors.

**152. dējectae:** by the beaters composing the **ālae** of l. 121.

dēcurrēre jugīs; *aliā dē parte* patentīs
trānsmittunt *cursū campōs atque agmina* cervī
pulverulenta *fugā* glomerant *montīsque relinquunt.*
*At puer* Ascanius *mediīs in* vallibus ācrī
gaudet *equō jamque hōs cursū, jam* praeterit *illōs,*
spūmantem*que darī* pecora *inter* inertia vōtīs
optat aprum, *aut* fulvum dēscendere *monte* leōnem.
Intereā *magnō* miscērī murmure *caelum*
incipit, īnsequitur commixtā grandine nimbus,
*et Tyriī comitēs* passim *et* Trojāna juventūs
Dardanius*que* nepōs Veneris dīversa *per* agrōs
*tēcta* metū *petiēre; ruunt dē montibus* amnēs.
Spēluncam *Dīdō* dux *et* Trojānus *eandem*
dēveniunt. *Prīma et Tellūs et* prōnuba *Jūnō*

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fiery*
**ager, grī** *m.* field, territory, land*
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**aper, prī** *m.* wild boar
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**cervus, ī** *m.* deer, stag
**commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run (down), hasten
**dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** descend
**dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come (down), arrive (at)
**dīversus, a, um** separated, different*
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**fulvus, a, um** tawny, yellow, blond
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**glomerō** (1) roll together, gather, collect
**grandō, inis** *f.* hail(storm, stones)
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**iners, rtis** lazy, spiritless, tame, idle
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow*
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**leō, ōnis** *m.* lion
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle, confuse*
**murmur, uris** *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**nimbus, ī** *m.* rainstorm, (storm)cloud*
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend
**pecus, oris** *n.* flock, herd
**praetereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** surpass, pass (by)†
**prōnuba, ae** *f.* matron of honor, bride-woman†
**pulverulentus, a, um** dusty†
**spēlunca, ae** *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** cross, send across
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**vallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty; love*
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, desire*

---

**154.** (sē) **trānsmittunt cursū campōs:** **campōs** is object of the preposition **trāns** in composition, while **cursū** is abl. of manner; App. 308, 328.

**157. equō:** abl. of cause.

**158. pecora inertia:** as **ferae caprae** and **cervī**, which Ascanius disdainfully calls *tame herds.* **vōtīs:** (in answer) *to his prayers;* indir. obj. with **darī.**

**160–172. While all are intent on the chase, Juno sends a sudden tempest, scattering the party and driving Aeneas and Dido to the same lonely cave, where they go through a form of marriage under unlucky omens.**

**163. nepōs Veneris** = Ascanius.

**166–168.** Vergil here indicates the various features in a Roman wedding and represents Nature herself as performing these ceremonies. Earth and Heaven, as universal parents, take the part of human parents in bringing the couple together; the lightnings (**ignēs**) are the wedding torches (**taedae**); Juno performs the duty of the matron of honor (**prōnuba**), and the cries of the mountain nymphs

*dant* signum; fulsēre *ignēs et* cōnscius aethēr
cōnūbiīs, *summōque* ululārunt vertice nymphae.
*Ille diēs prīmus* lētī *prīmusque* malōrum
causa *fuit; neque* enim speciē *fāmāve movētur*
*nec jam* fūrtīvum *Dīdō* meditātur *amōrem:*
conjugium *vocat, hōc* praetexit *nōmine* culpam.
Extemplō Libyae *magnās it Fāma per urbēs,*
*Fāma,* malum *quā nōn aliud* vēlōcius *ūllum:*
mōbilitāte viget *vīrīsque* adquīrit *eundō,*
parva metū prīmō, mox *sēsē* attollit *in aurās*
ingrediturque solō *et caput inter* nūbila condit.
*Illam Terra parēns īrā* inrītāta *deōrum*
extrēmam, *ut* perhibent, Coeō Enceladōque sorōrem

**adquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, sītus** acquire, gain†
**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, heaven, ether*
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**Coeus, ī** *m.* one of the Titans, a giant, son of Earth†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, hide*
**conjugium,** (i)ī *n.* wedlock, husband, wife
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious, confederate, witness
**cōnūbium,** (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
**culpa, ae** *f.* fault, offense, guilt, blame
**Enceladus, ī** *m.* one of the Titans, a giant, son of Earth
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**extemplō** immediately, at once, suddenly
**extrēmus, a, um** final, last, furthest*
**fulg(e)ō, ĕre, lsī** shine, flash, gleam
**fūrtīvus, a, um** secret, stolen†
**ingredior, ī, gressus** enter, proceed
**inrītō** (1) vex, enrage, provoke†
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**Libya, ae** *f.* country of North Africa*
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
**meditor, ārī, ātus** meditate, design
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
**mōbilitās, ātis** *f.* activity, motion, speed†
**mox** soon, presently
**nūbila, ōrum** *n.* clouds, cloudiness
**nympha, ae** *f.* nymph, minor female divinity of the forests, waters, etc.
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**perhibeō, ēre, uī, itus** present, say†
**praetexō, ere, uī, xtus** fringe, cloak†
**prīmō** at first, in the beginning
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, soil, earth*
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**speciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, sight, aspect
**ululō** (1) howl, wail, shout, shriek
**vēlōx, ōcis** swift, quick, rapid, fleet†
**vertex, icis** *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
**vigeō, ēre, uī** flourish, be strong, thrive

take the place of the wedding song and festal cries. **Prīma Tellūs:** Earth was called **prīma** as the oldest of the gods; as Mother Earth, the producer and nurse of life, she presided over marriage. **prōnuba:** the matron whose function it was to join the hand of the bride to that of the groom at the wedding.

**167. dant signum:** i.c., for the wedding. **ignēs** (*lightnings*): instead of the marriage torches ordinarily employed at weddings. **cōnscius:** *witness* (to the marriage).

**168. cōnūbiīs:** *to the marriage;* poetic plural; pronounced here as though spelled **cōnūbjīs,** for the sake of the meter; App. 401. **ululā(vē)runt:** instead of the marriage songs ordinarily sung at weddings. (in) **vertice (montis).**

**170–171. speciē fāmāve:** *by* (regard for) *appearances or* (for) *her reputation.* **movētur nec Dīdō meditātur:** in Latin the subject of two such clauses is often placed in the second, contrary to English usage.

**173–197. Dame Gossip (Rumor) spreads exaggerated reports of the love affair, finally carrying the news to Iarbas, an African chieftain and one of Dido's rejected suitors.**

**174. quā:** abl. with compar.; App. 327. **nōn (est).**

**175. eundō:** abl. of the gerund of **eō;** App. 269.

**177.** (in) **solō** = (in) **terrā.**

**178. deōrum:** obj. gen. with **īrā;** App. 284. In anger at the gods for slaying her

prōgenuit *pedibus* celerem *et* pernīcibus ālīs,
mōnstrum horrendum, *ingēns, cui* quot *sunt corpore* plūmae,
tot vigilēs *oculī* subter (mīrābile *dictū*),
tot linguae, totidem *ōra* sonant, tot subrigit aurīs.
*Nocte* volat *caelī* mediō *terraeque per umbram*
strīdēns, *nec* dulcī dēclīnat *lūmina somnō;*
*lūce* sedet custōs *aut summī* culmine *tēctī*
turribus *aut altīs, et magnās* territat *urbēs,*
tam fictī prāvīque tenāx quam nuntia vērī.
*Haec tum* multiplicī populōs sermōne replēbat,
gaudēns, *et* pariter facta *atque* īnfecta canēbat:
*vēnisse Aenēān* Trojānō *sanguine* crētum,
*cui sē* pulchra *virō* dignētur jungere *Dīdō;*

---

**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, tell, proclaim, prophesy*
**celer, eris, ere** swift, speedy, quick*
**crētus, a, um** grown, sprung
**culmen, inis** *n.* roof, summit, top, peak*
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**dēclīnō** (1) turn aside, bend down, droop†
**dignor, ārī, ātus** deem worthy, deign (*abl.*)
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, act, exploit*
**fictum, ī** *n.* falsehood, fiction†
**gaudeō, ērē, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**horrendus, a, um** awful, terrible, dire*
**īnfectus, a, um** not done, false†
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**lingua, ae** *f.* tongue, language
**medium, (i)ī** *n.* middle, center
**mīrābilis, e** wonderful, marvelous
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* prodigy, portent, monster*
**multiplex, icis** manifold, multiple†
**nuntia, ae** *f.* messenger†
**pariter** equally, alike*
**pernīx, īcis** active, nimble, swift†
**plūma, ae** *f.* feather, plume
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**prāvum, ī** *n.* wrong, perverse act†
**prōgignō, ere, genuī, genitus** bring forth, bear†
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious, noble*
**quam** how, than, as*
**quot** as many as
**repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, stuff
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle*
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, gossip
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**strīd(e)ō, ĕre, ī** hiss, whir, rustle
**subrigō, ere, surrēxī, rēctus** raise, rise†
**subter** beneath, below†
**tam** so, as, such*
**tenāx, ācis** tenacious, holding (to)†
**territō** (1) frighten, terrify, alarm†
**tot** so many, as many*
**totidem** the same number, so many
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**turris, is** *f.* tower, turret
**vērum, ī** *n.* truth, right, reality
**vigil, ilis** wakeful, watchful, sleepless†
**volō** (1) fly, flit, speed*

---

children, the Titans, Earth bore the giants, Rumor being one of them.

**181.** Rumor is covered with feathers; and beneath each feather is an eye, a tongue, a mouth, and an ear. **cui**: dat. of possessor.

**182. oculī (sunt) subter (plūmās).**

**183. (Fāma) subrigit tot aurīs**: *Rumor raises as many listening ears.*

**184. caelī mediō terraeque**: *'twixt heaven and earth.*

**185. strīdēns**: with her wings as she flies, referring to the buzz of gossip. **lūmina (sua)** = **oculōs**, as often.

**186–187. lūce**: *by day*, abl. of time; App. 322. **(in) culmine aut (in) turribus.**

**188. fictī**: gen. with **tenāx**; App. 287.

**189. Haec** = **Fāma.**

**190. facta atque īnfecta**: "fact and fiction." Literally, *things done and not done.* **canēbat**: followed by indir. disc.

**192. virō** = **conjugī. jungere**: complementary inf.; App. 259.

*nunc* hiemem *inter sē* luxū, quam *longa*, fovēre
*rēgnōrum* immemorēs turpique cupīdine *captōs*.
*Haec* passim *dea* foeda *virum* diffundit *in ōra*.
Prōtinus *ad rēgem cursūs* dētorquet Iarbān
incenditque *animum dictīs atque* aggerat *īrās*.
*Hic* Hammōne satus raptā Garamantide nymphā
templa *Jovī* centum lātīs *immānia rēgnīs*,
centum *ārās posuit* vigilemque sacrāverat *ignem*,
excubiās *dīvum* aeternās, pecudumque cruōre
pingue solum *et* variīs flōrentia *līmina* sertīs.
*Isque* āmēns *animī et* rūmōre accēnsus amārō
*dīcitur ante ārās media inter nūmina dīvum*
*multa Jovem manibus* supplex ōrāsse supīnīs:

---

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, inflame
**aeternus, a, um** eternal, everlasting*
**aggerō** (1) heap up, pile up, increase†
**amārus, a, um** bitter, unpleasant†
**āmēns, entis** mad, crazy, frenzied
**centum** hundred*
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**cupīdō, inis** *f.* love, desire, longing
**dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn (away)†
**diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** scatter, spread
**excubiae, ārum** *f.* watch(fire), sentinel†
**flōreō, ēre, uī** bloom, flourish, blossom†
**foedus, a, um** foul, loathsome, filthy
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** cherish, fondle
**Garamantis, idis** of the Garamantes, an African tribe†
**Hammōn, ōnis** *m.* god of North Africa, famous for his oracle and identified by the Romans with Jupiter†
**hiems, emis** *f.* winter, storm*
**Iarbās, ae** *m.* African chieftain, one of Dido's unsuccessful suitors
**immemor, oris** unmindful, forgetful
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, burn, inflame*
**lātus, a, um** wide, broad, spacious*
**luxus, ūs** *m.* luxury, splendor, excess
**nympha, ae** *f.* nymph, one of the minor divinities of the forests, waters, etc.
**ōrō** (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat*
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal (of the flock)*
**pinguis, e** fat, rich, fertile
**prōtinus** continuously, immediately
**quam** how, than, as*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (away), seize, ravish*
**rūmor, ōris** *m.* rumor, report, gossip†
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate*
**serō, ere, sēvī, satus** sow, beget*
**sertum, ī** *n.* wreath, garland
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, soil, earth*
**supīnus, a, um** flat, upturned
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**turpis, e** shameful, disgraceful
**varius, a, um** varied, different, diverse*
**vigil, ilis** watchful, wakeful, sleepless

---

**193.** (Dīdōnem et Aenēān) **inter sē fovēre hiemem quam longa (ea hiems sit). inter sē fovēre:** *were caressing one another the whole long winter;* **inter sē** is commonly thus employed to denote reciprocal action. **quam longa (sit):** *however long it may be.*

**194. rēgnōrum:** Carthage and Italy.

**195. vīr(ō)rum.**

**198–218. Iarbas prays to his father, Jupiter Ammon, for help, reproaching him that he had allowed Aeneas, a mere adventurer, to be preferred to himself.**

**198. Hic:** pronounce hicc.

**199–200. templa centum (posuit), centum ārās posuit:** Latin commonly expresses the verb with only the second of two such clauses, English with the first. Compare the note on ll. 170–171.

**201. excubiās:** apposition with **ignem;** the never-dying fire stands sentry in honor of the gods, like the sacred fire of Vesta at Rome.

**202. pingue:** from the blood and the fat of the many sacrifices.

**203. Is:** Iarbas. **animī:** gen. with **āmēns;** or loc.; App. 287, 37, *c.*

**204. media inter nūmina:** *amid the divine presences.*

"*Juppiter* omnipotēns, *cui nunc* Maurūsia pictīs
*gēns* epulāta torīs Lēnaeum lībat *honōrem*,
aspicis *haec?* An *tē, genitor, cum* fulmina torquēs
nēquīquam horrēmus, caecī*que in* nūbibus *ignēs*
terrificant *animōs et* inānia murmura miscent?
Fēmina, *quae nostrīs errāns in fīnibus urbem*
exiguam pretiō *posuit, cui lītus* arandum
*cuique locī* lēgēs *dedimus*, cōnūbia *nostra*
reppulit *ac* dominum *Aenēān in rēgna* recēpit.
*Et nunc ille* Paris *cum* sēmivirō comitātū,
Maeoniā mentum mitrā crīnem*que* madentem
subnexus, raptō potitur: *nōs mūnera* templīs
quippe *tuīs ferimus fāmamque* fovēmus inānem."
*Tālibus* ōrantem *dictīs ārāsque tenentem*

---

**an** whether, or*
**arō** (1) plow, till, furrow
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold*
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**comitātus, ūs** *m.* retinue, train, company†
**cōnūbium,** (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
**crīnis, is** *m.* long hair, locks, tresses*
**dominus, ī** *m.* master, lord, ruler
**epulor, ārī, ātus** feast, banquet (*abl.*)
**exiguus, a, um** small, scanty, petty†
**fēmina, ae** *f.* woman, female
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** cherish, fondle
**fulmen, inis** *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
**horreō, ēre, uī** shudder (at), quake
**inānis, e** empty, useless, vain, idle*
**Lēnaeus, a, um** Lenaean, Bacchic, of Bacchus, god of wine†
**lēx, lēgis** *f.* law, jurisdiction, term
**lībō** (1) pour (as a libation), offer
**madeō, ēre, uī** drip, be wet, reek†
**Maeonius, a, um** Maeonian, Lydian, Asiatic†
**Maurūsius, a, um** Moorish†
**mentum, ī** *n.* chin, beard†
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mitra, ae** *f.* mitre, cap, turban†
**murmur, uris** *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), beseech, entreat*
**Paris, idis** *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
**pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus** paint, embroider
**potior, īrī, ītus** possess, gain (*abl.*)
**pretium,** (i)ī *n.* price, reward, value†
**quippe** forsooth, surely, indeed
**raptum, ī** *n.* plunder, prey, booty†
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, recover*
**repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus** reject, repel
**sēmivir, virī** half-man, effeminate†
**subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** tie (under)
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**terrificō** (1) frighten, terrify, alarm†
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, sway, hurl*
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*

---

**206–207. Maurūsia gēns:** the people of Iarbas.

**208–210.** "Are all your thunders and lightnings but empty threats? You do not really reward the good and punish the wicked."

**211–212. Fēmina:** Dido; emphatic by position. **pretiō:** abl. of price; App. 336. She had not taken the place by force, but had been compelled to buy it, a confession of weakness.

**212–213.** See the note on ll. 199–200.

**214. dominum:** said with bitter disdain.

**215. Paris:** Aeneas is another Paris in stealing the woman Iarbas was planning to marry. **sēmivirō:** the hardy African chieftain despises the more cultured Trojans as being effeminate Orientals.

**216–217. mentum, crīnem:** objects of the middle participle **subnexus**; App. 309, *a*. **madentem:** *dripping* (with perfume), another mark of effeminacy. **raptō:** abl. with **potior**; App. 342. **potĭtur:** with i irregularly short.

**218. quippe:** ironical. **fāmam fovēmus inānem:** *we keep alive a baseless belief* in your power and justice.

**219–237. Moved by the prayer of Iarbas, Jupiter sends Mercury to Aeneas to remind him of his high destiny and of his duty to his son Ascanius.**

**219. (Iarbān) ōrantem:** obj. of **audiit.**

*audiit* Omnipotēns, *oculōsque ad moenia* torsit
rēgia *et* oblītōs *fāmae* meliōris amantīs.
*Tum sīc* Mercurium adloquitur *ac tālia* mandat:
"Vāde *age, nāte, vocā* Zephyrōs *et lābere* pennīs
Dardaniumque ducem, *Tyriā* Karthāgine *quī nunc*
exspectat *fātīsque datās nōn* respicit *urbēs*,
adloquere *et* celerīs dēfer *mea dicta per aurās*.
*Nōn illum nōbīs* genetrīx pulcherrima *tālem*
prōmīsit Grajumque ideō bis vindicat *armīs;*
*sed fore quī* gravidam *imperiīs bellōque* frementem
*Ītaliam* regeret, *genus altō ā sanguine* Teucrī
prōderet, *ac tōtum sub* lēgēs *mitteret* orbem.
*Si nūlla* accendit *tantārum* glōria *rērum*
*nec super ipse suā* mōlītur laude *labōrem*,

---

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, inflame
**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost
**amāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) lover
**bis** twice*
**celer, eris, ere** swift, speedy, quick*
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** carry (down), report
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**ex(s)pectō** (1) (a)wait, expect, linger, tarry, dally*
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** rage, roar, ring*
**genetrīx, trīcis** *f.* mother
**glōria, ae** *f.* renown, glory, fame, pride
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**gravidus, a, um** heavy, burdened, pregnant, filled, teeming†
**ideō** therefore, for this reason†
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
**laus, laudis** *f.* glory, praise, merit*
**lēx, lēgis** *f.* law, jurisdiction, term
**mandō** (1) command, intrust, enjoin
**melior, ius** better, superior, preferable
**Mercurius, (i)ī** *m.* messenger of the gods, god of commerce, and escort of departed souls to Hades†
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** do, (strive to) accomplish
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen.*)
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb(it), earth*
**penna, ae** *f.* wing, feather
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditus** betray, transmit
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, noble, splendid, handsome, illustrious*
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct, guide*
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back) at, regard*
**Teucer (crus), crī** *m.* early king of Troy
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, sway, hurl*
**vādō, ere** go, proceed, advance
**vindicō** (1) vindicate, claim (as free), rescue†
**Zephyrus, ī** *m.* (west) wind

---

**220–221. moenia rēgia:** of Carthage. **fāmae:** gen. with **oblītōs**; App. 288.

**222. adloquitur:** with final syllable irregularly long, due to the pause and the verse accent; App. 394, *a*.

**223. Zephyrōs, pennīs:** he is to use every contrivance for speed. **lābere:** imp. **pennīs:** attached to his sandals.

**224. ducem:** obj. of the imp. **adloquere**, l. 226.

**226. dēfer:** imp.; App. 202.

**227. tālem** (**virum**).

**228. ideō:** *for this purpose;* that he might dally at ease in Carthage. **bis vindicat:** *rescued;* once from Diomedes (I, 96–98, and notes), and again at the fall of Troy (II, 620 ff.). **armīs:** abl. of separation.

**229–230. sed** (**genetrīx prōmīsit illum**) **fore** (**tālem**) **quī regeret:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **imperiīs:** *with* (future) *empire.*

**231. tōtum orbem:** through the later development of the Roman Empire, especially under Augustus, who is here thus complimented by the poet.

**232. accendit** (**illum**).

**233–234. super laude suā. pater:** emphatic; could a father do this, and have so little true paternal feeling? **Ascaniō:** indir. obj. of **invidet. arcēs:** dir. obj. of **invidet.**

Ascaniō*ne pater* Rōmānās invidet *arcēs?*
*Quid* struit? *Aut quā* spē inimīcā *in gente* morātur
*nec* prōlem Ausoniam *et* Lāvīnia respicit *arva?*
Nāviget! *Haec* summa *est, hic nostrī* nuntius *estō.*"
*Dīxerat. Ille patris magnī* pārēre *parābat*
*imperiō: et prīmum pedibus* tālāria nectit
aurea, *quae* sublīmem ālīs sīve *aequora* suprā
seu *terram* rapidō pariter *cum* flāmine portant.
*Tum* virgam *capit: hāc animās ille* ēvocat Orcō
pallentīs, *aliās sub* Tartara *trīstia mittit,*
*dat somnōs* adimit*que, et lūmina morte* resignat.
*Illā* frētus *agit ventōs et* turbida trānat
nūbila. *Jamque* volāns apicem *et* latera ardua *cernit*
Atlantis dūrī *caelum quī* vertice fulcit,

---

**adimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** take away
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**apex, icis** *m.* peak, summit, head
**arduus, a, um** lofty, steep, towering*
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**Atlās, antis** *m.* god who supports heaven on his shoulders, grandfather of Mercury; a mountain of Northwest Africa
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**Ausonius, a, um** Ausonian, Italian
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**ēvocō** (1) call out, summon†
**flāmen, inis** *n.* breeze, blast, wind†
**frētus, a, um** relying (on) (*abl.*)†
**fulciō, īre, lsī, ltus** support, prop†
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly
**invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus** begrudge (*dat.*)*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**Lāvīn(i)us, a, um** of Lavinium, an early Italian city
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, detain*
**nāvigō** (1) (set) sail, navigate
**nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** bind, fasten
**nūbila, ōrum** *n.* clouds, cloudiness
**nuntius, (i)ī** *m.* messenger, message
**Orcus, ī** *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
**pallēns, entis** pale, pallid, wan
**pāreō, ēre, uī, itus** obey, yield (*dat.*)
**pariter** equally, alike*
**portō** (1) carry, bear, convey*
**prōlēs, is** *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
**rapidus, a, um** swift, snatching*
**resignō** (1) (un)seal, open, close†
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back) at, regard*
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**sīve, seu** whether, or, either if, or if
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build, plan
**sublīmis, e** on high, towering, lofty
**summa, ae** *f.* sum, substance, chief thing†
**suprā** over, above (*acc.*)
**tālāria, ium** *n.* (winged) sandals, anklets†
**Tartara, ōrum** *n.* Hades, the lower world†
**trānō** (1) swim across, float†
**turbidus, a, um** troubled, stormy†
**vertex, icis** *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
**virga, ae** *f.* staff, wand, twig†
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit*

---

**235. spē inimīcā:** hiatus; App. 399. **inimīcā gente:** Vergil is thinking of later times when Rome and Carthage were such bitter foes.

**237. Nāviget:** vol. subj.; App. 254. **hic nostrī nuntius estō:** *this be our (my) message.* **nostrī:** gen. pl. of **ego.** **estō:** imp.

**238–258. Mercury hastens from Olympus to Carthage.**

**240. ālīs:** attached to the **tālāria.** **(illum) sublīmem. aequora suprā = suprā aequora:** anastrophe; App. 414.

**242. virgam:** the **cādūceus** or magic winged wand entwined with serpents. **hāc (virgā):** as escort of the souls of the dead, Mercury conducted them in both directions; to Hades after death, and back to the upper world as ghosts.

**245.** Compare the flight of Raphael in *Paradise Lost,* V, 255 ff. **Illā (virgā):** abl. of means with **frētus.** **agit ventōs:** *outstrips the winds.*

**247. Atlantis:** in the following description, Vergil skillfully mingles the conception of Atlas as a god and as a mountain.

Atlantis, cīnctum adsiduē *cui* nūbibus *ātrīs*
pīniferum *caput et ventō* pulsātur *et* imbrī,
nix umerōs īnfūsa tegit, *tum* flūmina mentō
praecipitant senis, *et* glaciē riget horrida barba.
*Hīc prīmum* paribus nītēns Cyllēnius ālīs
cōnstitit: *hinc tōtō* praeceps *sē corpore ad undās*
*mīsit* avī similis, *quae circum lītora, circum*
piscōsōs scopulōs humilis volat *aequora* juxtā.
*Haud* aliter *terrās inter caelumque* volābat
*lītus* harēnōsum *ad* Libyae, *ventōsque* secābat
māternō *veniēns ab* avō Cyllēnia prōles.
*Ut prīmum* ālātīs tetigit māgālia plantīs,
*Aenēān* fundantem *arcēs ac tēcta* novantem
cōnspicit. *Atque illī* stellātus iaspide fulvā

---

**adsiduē** constantly, ever, continually†
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**ālātus, a, um** winged, furnished with wings†
**aliter** otherwise, differently*
**Atlās, antis** *m.* god who supports heaven on his shoulders, grandfather of Mercury; mountain of Northwest Africa
**avis, is** *f.* bird, fowl†
**avus, ī** *m.* grandfather; ancestor
**barba, ae** *f.* beard, whiskers
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at
**cōnstō, āre, stitī, status** stand firm, halt
**Cyllēnius, (i)ī** *m.* the Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury; *adj.*, **Cyllēnius, a, um** Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury†
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**fulvus, a, um** yellow, tawny, blond
**fundō** (1) found, build, establish†
**glaciēs, ēī** *f.* ice†
**harēnōsus, a, um** sandy†
**horridus, a, um** bristling, awful, rough
**humilis, e** low(ly), low-lying, humble
**iaspis, idis** *f.* jasper, a semi-precious stone†
**imber, bris** *m.* rain, flood, storm, water
**īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour on (in)
**juxtā** close (to), next (to) (*acc.*)*
**Libya, ae** *f.* country of Northwest Africa*
**māgālia, ium** *n.* huts, hovels
**māternus, a, um** maternal, of a mother
**mentum, ī** *n.* chin, beard
**nītor, ī, sus (nixus)** strive, rest on (*abl.*)
**nix, nivis** *f.* snow†
**novō** (1) renew, make (new), build†
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
**pār, paris** equal, balanced, like*
**pīnifer, era, erum** pine-bearing†
**piscōsus, a, um** fishy, fish-haunted†
**planta, ae** *f.* heel; sole of foot†
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**praecipitō** (1) fall headlong, hasten
**prōlēs, is** *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
**pulsō** (1) beat, strike, lash, batter
**rigeō, ēre, uī** be stiff, be rigid
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, cleave, slice*
**senex, senis** *m.* old man*
**similis, e** like, similar (*dat.*, *gen.*)*
**stēllātus, a, um** starred, star-spangled†
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**umerus, ī** *m.* shoulder
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit*

---

**248. cīnctum (est). cui:** *whose.*
**250. (dē) mentō:** abl. of separation.
**252. Hīc:** on the summit of Atlas. **ālīs:** abl. of means with **nītēns.**
**257. ad lītus:** App. 414.
**258. māternō avō:** Atlas. The mother of Mercury was Maja, daughter of Atlas.

**259–278. Mercury finds Aeneas busily engaged in furthering Dido's plans; he delivers his message and disappears.**

**261–262. stēllātus ēnsis:** only the hilt was studded.

ēnsis *erat Tyrioque ardēbat* mūrice laena
dēmissa *ex umerīs*, dīves *quae mūnera Dīdō*
*fēcerat, et* tēnuī tēlās discrēverat *aurō*.
Continuō invādit: "*Tū nunc* Karthāginis *altae*
fundāmenta locās pulchramque uxōrius *urbem*
exstruis? *Heu, rēgnī rērumque* oblīte *tuārum!*
*Ipse deum tibi mē* clārō dēmittit Olympō
rēgnātor, *caelum ac terrās quī nūmine* torquet:
*ipse haec ferre jubet* celerīs mandāta *per aurās:*
*Quid* struis? *Aut quā* spē Libycīs teris ōtia *terrīs?*
*Sī tē nūlla movet tantārum* glōria *rērum*
[*nec super ipse tuā* mōlīris laude *labōrem,*]
Ascanium *surgentem et* spēs hērēdis Iūlī
respice, *cui rēgnum Ītaliae* Rōmānaque *tellūs*
dēbētur." *Tālī* Cyllēnius *ōre* locūtus
mortālīs vīsūs *mediō* sermōne *relīquit*
*et procul in* tenuem *ex oculīs* ēvānuit *auram*.

---

**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, speedy*
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**continuō** immediately, at once
**Cyllēnius, (i)ī** *m.* the Cyllenean; Mercury, born on Mt. Cyllene
**dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus** owe, be due, be destined
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let down, send down, lower, drop*
**dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis** rich, wealthy
**discernō, ere, crēvī, crētus** separate
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**ēvānēscō, ere, nuī** vanish, disappear†
**exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build (up), rear
**fundāmentum, ī** *n.* foundation, base
**glōria, ae** *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride
**hērēs, ēdis** *m.* heir, successor†
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** attack, address
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
**laena, ae** *f.* (woolen) mantle, cloak†
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
**locō** (1) place, lay, establish, locate*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, tell, talk*
**mandātum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** undertake, accomplish, do
**mortālis, e** mortal, human, earthly*
**mūrex, icis** *m.* purple (dye), crimson, scarlet†
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen.*)
**Olympus, ī** *m.* Greek mountain, home of the gods; heaven
**ōtium, (i)ī** *n.* leisure, idleness, quiet†
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid, illustrious*
**rēgnātor, ōris** *m.* ruler, lord, director
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back) at, regard*
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, speech
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build, contrive
**tēla, ae** *f.* web, textile†
**tenuis, e** slight, thin, fine, delicate
**terō, ere, trīvī, trītus** rub, wear, waste†
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, hurl, sway*
**uxōrius, a, um** wife-ruled, uxorious, henpecked†
**vīsus, ūs** *m.* sight, vision, view, aspect

---

**264. tenuī aurō:** she had interwoven the warp with fine gold thread.

**266. uxōrius:** *wife-enslaved;* used as a term of reproach.

**267. oblīte:** vocative of the participle of **oblīvīscor. rēgnī rērumque:** genitives with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

**274. Iūlī:** obj. gen.

**277. mediō (in) sermōne:** *in the middle (of his) speech, abruptly;* App. 246.

**278. in tenuem auram:** cf. Shakespeare, *Tempest*, IV, i, 148–150:

"These our actors,
As I foretold you, were all spirits and
Are melted into air, into thin air."

*At* vērō *Aenēās* aspectū obmūtuit āmēns,
arrēctae*que* horrōre comae *et vōx* faucibus haesit.
*Ardet* abīre *fugā* dulcīs*que relinquere terrās*,
attonitus *tantō* monitū *imperiōque deōrum*.
*Heu quid agat? Quō nunc rēgīnam* ambīre *furentem*
audeat adfātū? *Quae prīma* exordia sūmat?
*Atque animum nunc hūc* celerem *nunc* dīvidit illūc
*in partīsque* rapit variās *perque omnia* versat.
*Haec* alternantī potior sententia *vīsa est:*
Mnēsthea Sergestum*que vocat* fortem*que* Serestum,
*classem* aptent tacitī *sociōsque ad lītora* cōgant,
*arma parent et quae rēbus sit* causa novandīs
dissimulent; *sēsē* intereā, quandō optima *Dīdō*

---

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart*
**adfātus, ūs** *m.* address, speech†
**alternō** (1) change, alternate, waver†
**ambiō, īre, īvī (iī), itus** go around; conciliate†
**āmēns, entis** mad, frenzied, distraught
**aptō** (1) equip, make ready, furnish
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** erect, stand on end
**a(d)spectus, ūs** *m.* sight, appearance
**attonitus, a, um** thunderstruck, astounded
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**celer, eris, ere** swift, speedy, quick*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** muster, compel*
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**dissimulō** (1) conceal, dissimulate, pretend otherwise
**dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus** divide, distribute
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**exordium, (i)ī** *n.* beginning, commencement†
**faux, faucis** *f.* jaws, throat; gulf
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant, stout*
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling (to), halt (*dat.*)*
**horror, ōris** *m.* shudder(ing), horror, alarm
**illūc** thither, to that place†
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**Mnēstheus, eī (eos), *acc.* ea,** *m.* Trojan leader†*
**monitus, ūs** *m.* advice, warning†
**novō** (1) renew, make new, alter, build
**obmūtēscō, ere, tuī** be dumb, stand speechless†
**optimus, a, um** best, finest
**potior, ius** preferable, better
**quandō** when, since, because
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** seize, snatch, rob*
**sententia, ae** *f.* opinion, resolve, view
**Serestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader*
**sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take, employ
**tacitus, a, um** silent, still, secret
**varius, a, um** various, different, diverse*
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**versō** (1) keep turning, roll, revolve

---

**279–295. Obeying the divine commands Aeneas instructs his followers to prepare secretly for the voyage, and seeks a favorable opportunity for informing Dido of his plan to depart.**

**281. fugā:** abl. of manner. **relinquere terrās (Carthāginis):** Vergil constantly endeavors to represent his hero Aeneas as a man of such thorough devotion (**pius Aenēās**) that he is ever ready to sacrifice self to the will of Heaven and to surrender whatever life holds most dear, if it be the divine will.

**283–284. agat, audeat, sūmat:** deliberative subjunctives; App. 348. **furentem (amōre).**

**285. animum celerem dīvidit:** Cf. Tennyson, *Passing of Arthur*,

"This way and that dividing the swift mind."

**286. rapit (animum), versat (animum).**

**287. (Aenēae) alternantī:** whether he should inform Dido.

**289–291. (ut) aptent, cōgant, parent, dissimulent:** indir. commands after **vocat**, which implies **et imperat** or some such expression; App. 390. **rēbus novandīs:** an expression commonly used for taking a new step, such as a revolution. **quae . . . sit causa:** indir. quest.; App. 349.

**291–293. sēsē temptātūrum (esse):**

nesciat *et tantōs* rumpī *nōn* spēret *amōrēs*,
temptātūrum aditūs *et quae* mollissima *fandī*
*tempora, quis rēbus dexter* modus. Ōcius *omnēs*
*imperiō laetī* pārent *et* jussa facessunt.
*At rēgīna* dolōs (*quis* fallere *possit* amantem?)
praesēnsit, mōtūs*que* excēpit *prīma futūrōs*
*omnia* tūta timēns. *Eadem* impia *Fāma furentī*
dētulit armārī *classem cursumque parārī*.
Saevit inops *animī tōtamque* incēnsa *per urbem*
bacchātur, quālis commōtīs excita *sacrīs*
Thyias, *ubi audītō* stimulant trietērica Bacchō
orgia nocturnus*que vocat clāmōre* Cithaerōn.

**aditus, ūs** *m.* approach, access
**amāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) lover
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**bacchor, ārī, ātus** rush wildly, rave
**Bacchus, ī** *m.* (god of) wine
**Cithaerōn, ōnis** *m.* Greek mountain near Thebes, on which the rites of Bacchus were celebrated†
**commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move, stir, shake, agitate
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** carry down, report
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud*
**exciō, īre, īvī, itus** arouse, excite, stir
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, catch, understand, reply
**facessō, ere, (īv)ī, ītus** do, make, fulfill†
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, cheat, mock*
**impius, a, um** wicked, accursed, disloyal
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, burn*
**inops, opis** needy, destitute, bereft (of)†
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, behest, order
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, limit, method*
**mollis, e** soft, yielding, easy, mild
**mōtus, ūs** *m.* movement, emotion†
**nesciō, īre, īvī (iī)** not know, be ignorant
**nocturnus, a, um** of the night, nocturnal
**ōcior, ius** swifter, quicker; very swift†
**orgia, ōrum** *n.* mystic rites, orgies†
**pāreō, ēre, uī, itus** obey, yield (*dat.*)
**praesentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive first, suspect†
**quālis, e** of what sort, (such) as*
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth), utter*
**saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** rage, storm
**spērō** (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
**stimulō** (1) spur, goad, prick, incite†
**temptō** (1) try, attempt, seek, test*
**Thyias, adis** *f.* Bacchante, a woman devotee of the worship of Bacchus†
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread*
**trietēricus, a, um** triennial†
**tūtus, a, um** protected, safe, secure*

implied indir. disc., dependent on **vocat**, l. 288, which implies **et dīcit** or some such expression; App. 390. **nesciat**: subj. in a dependent clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, *b*.

**293–294. quae tempora (sint), quis modus (sit)**: indir. questions, objects of **temptātūrum (esse)**; App. 349.

**296–330. Dido, learning that the fleet was being equipped and suspecting the truth, bitterly reproaches Aeneas and with tears and prayers attempts to prevail on him to remain.**

**296. possit**: deliberative subj.; App. 348.

**298. tūta**: (no matter how) *safe*, with **omnia**. **furentī** (Dīdōnī).

**300. animī**: gen. with adj. **inops**; App. 287.

**302–303. Thyias**: **yi** form a diphthong pronounced *we*. The Bacchic revels celebrated every third year on Mt. Cithaeron, near Thebes, were famous. When the **sacra** were brought out of the temple and shaken, the Thyiads or Bacchantes ran wild, dressed themselves in fawn skins, and joined the Bacchic orgies, where they brandished the **thyrsī** (*wands*), and danced to the accompaniment of clashing cymbals. Cf. Wordsworth, *Duddon Sonnets*, 20:

"Dance like a Bacchanal from rock to rock,
Tossing her frantic thyrsus wide and high."

**audītō Bacchō**: abl. abs.; *as the cry 'Bacchus' is heard*. The worshippers

*Tandem hīs Aenēān* compellat *vōcibus* ultrō:
"Dissimulāre etiam spērāstī, perfide, *tantum*
*posse* nefās tacitus*que meā* dēcēdere *terrā?*
*Nec tē noster amor nec tē data dextera quondam*
*nec* moritūra *tenet* crūdēlī fūnere *Dīdō?*
Quīn etiam hībernō mōlīris *sīdere classem*
*et mediīs* properās Aquilōnibus *īre per* altum,
crūdēlis? *Quid, sī nōn arva* aliēna *domōsque*
ignōtās *peterēs, et Troja antīqua manēret,*
*Troja per* undōsum *peterētur classibus aequor?*
*Mēne fugis? Per ego hās lacrimās dextramque tuam tē*
(quandō *aliud mihi jam miserae* nihil *ipsa relīquī*),
*per* cōnūbia *nostra, per* inceptōs hymenaeōs,
*sī* bene *quid dē tē* meruī, *fuit aut tibi* quicquam
dulce *meum,* miserēre *domūs lābentis et* istam,
ōrō, *sī quis* adhūc precibus *locus,* exue *mentem.*
*Tē* propter Libycae *gentēs* Nomadum*que* tyrannī
ōdēre, īnfēnsī *Tyriī; tē* propter *eundem*

---

**adhūc** to this point, till now
**aliēnus, a, um** belonging to another, other's, alien, foreign†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**Aquilō, ōnis** *m.* (north) wind
**bene** well, rightly, securely, fully†
**compellō** (1) address, accost, speak to
**cōnūbium, (i)ī** *n.* wedlock, marriage
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bloody, bitter*
**dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart†
**dissimulō** (1) conceal, dissimulate, pretend otherwise
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, pleasant, delightful*
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**exuō, ere, uī, ūtus** bare, doff, discard
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**hībernus, a, um** wintry, of the winter
**hymenaeus, ī** *m.* marriage (song), god of marriage, Hymen
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**īnfēnsus, a, um** hostile, bitter
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**Libycus, a, um** of Libya, a country of North Africa*
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**misereor, ērī, itus** pity, commiserate (*gen.*)*
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** prepare, attempt, do
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**nefās** *n. indecl.* impiety, sin, crime*
**nihil, nīl** nothing, not at all
**Nomas, adis** *m.* tribe of North Africa†
**ōdī, isse** hate, detest, loathe
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**perfidus, a, um** treacherous, perfidious†
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
**properō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**propter** on account of, near (*acc.*)†
**quandō** when, since, if ever, because
**quīn** why not, but that, nay even*
**quisquam, quicquam** anyone, anything
**spērō** (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
**tacitus, a, um** silent, noiseless, secret
**tyrannus, ī** *m.* ruler, chieftain, tyrant
**ultrō** further, voluntarily*
**undōsus, a, um** billowy, wavy

---

shouted **'iō Bacche,'** and **'Euoe Bacche.'** **stimulant (illam), vocat (illam).**

**305–306. etiam spērā(vi)stī, perfide, (tē) posse dissimulāre tantum nefās?**

**309. hībernō sīdere = tempore.** The ancients regularly suspended navigation during the winter months.

**311–313. Quid, sī,** etc.: you wouldn't sail now, even if you were going back to secure homes in Troy, and were not (as you are) sailing away to strange foreign lands (**arva aliēna**). **Troja peterētur (hībernō sīdere):** the conclusion of the conditions contrary to fact, **sī peterēs** and **sī manēret;** App. 382.

**314–319. Mē:** emphatic by position, obj. of **fugis. per lacrimās et per dextram. tē:** obj. of **ōrō. miserēre:** imp. **domūs:** gen. with **misereor;** App. 289.

**319. sī quis** (indef.). **locus (sit).**

**320–321. gentēs et tyrannī ōdēre (mē). ōdēre = ōdērunt. īnfēnsī (mihi sunt)**

exstīnctus pudor *et, quā sōlā sīdera* adībam,
*fāma* prior. *Cui mē* moribundam dēseris, — hospes
(*hoc sōlum nōmen* quoniam *dē conjuge* restat)?
*Quid* moror? An *mea* Pygmaliōn *dum moenia* frāter
dēstruat *aut captam dūcat* Gaetūlus Iarbās?
Saltem *sī qua mihī dē tē* suscepta *fuisset*
*ante fugam* subolēs, *sī quis mihi* parvulus aulā
lūderet *Aenēās, quī tē* tamen *ōre referret,*
*nōn* equidem omnīnō *capta ac* dēserta *vidērer.*"
*Dīxerat. Ille Jovis* monitīs immōta *tenēbat*
*lūmina et* obnixus *cūram sub* corde premēbat.
*Tandem* pauca *refert: "Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō*
ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, *rēgīna,* negābō

---

**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach
**an** whether, or*
**aula, ae** *f.* hall, palace, court
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dēstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** destroy†
**ēnumerō** (1) recount, enumerate†
**equidem** indeed, truly, surely*
**exsting(u)ō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** extinguish, blot out, destroy, ruin
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**Gaetūlus, a, um** of the Gaetuli, an African tribe
**hospes, itis** *m.* (*f.*) stranger, guest, host
**Iarbās, ae** *m.* African prince, one of Dido's suitors
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, unshaken
**lūdō, ere, sī, sus** play, sport, mock
**monitum, ī** *n.* advice, warning
**moribundus, a, um** dying, about to die†
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**negō** (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
**numquam** never, at no time
**obnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** struggle†
**omnīnō** altogether, completely, utterly†
**parvulus, a, um** tiny, very small, little†
**paucus, a, um** little, few, scanty*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, crush*
**prior, ius** sooner, former, first, prior*
**pudor, ōris** *m.* shame, modesty, honor
**Pygmaliōn, ōnis** *m.* wicked brother of Dido
**quoniam** since, because†
**restō, āre, stitī** remain, be left
**saltem** at least, at any rate
**subolēs, is** *f.* offspring, progeny, child†
**suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** take up, beget, bear
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**valeō, ēre, uī, itus** be strong, be able, fare well

---

**Tyriī:** the native chieftains, as well as her own people, resented her kindly attitude toward Aeneas and the Trojans, who were foreigners.

**322. et (fāma) quā sīdera adībam:** *was about to gain immortal fame.* **(exstīncta est) fāma (mea):** *(my) reputation.*

**323. moribundam = moritūram.**

**324. hoc nōmen = hospes. dē conjuge = dē nōmine conjugis.**

**325. Quid (= cūr) moror (mortem meam). An (moror):** *am I waiting?* **dum dēstruat, dūcat:** anticipatory subjunctives with **dum**; App. 374.

**327. suscepta:** refers to the Roman custom of placing a new-born child on the ground before the father, who picked it up if he wished to acknowledge and rear it as his own.

**329. referret:** characteristic; App. 389.

**331–361. Aeneas replies that he is not following his own desires but the plans of the gods and the stern decrees of fate.**

**331. Dīxerat (Dīdō). monitīs:** abl. of cause with **tenēbat.**

**332. lūmina = oculōs. premēbat = reprimēbat:** repressing all outward indications of his feelings.

**333–335. Ego, rēgīna, numquam negābō tē prōmeritam (esse dē mē) plūrima quae:** answer to Dido's **sī meruī** of l. 317.

prōmeritam, *nec mē* meminisse pigēbit Elissae
*dum* memor *ipse meī, dum* spīritus *hōs* regit artūs.
Prō *rē* pauca loquar. *Neque ego hanc* abscondere fūrtō
spērāvī (*nē* finge) *fugam, nec conjugis* umquam
praetendī taedās *aut haec in* foedera *vēnī.*
*Mē sī fāta meīs* paterentur *dūcere vītam*
auspiciīs *et* sponte *meā* compōnere *cūrās,*
*urbem* Trojānam *prīmum* dulcīs*que meōrum*
relliquiās colerem, *Priamī tēcta alta manērent,*
*et* recidīva *manū posuissem* Pergama *victīs.*
*Sed nunc Ītaliam magnam* Grȳnēus Apollō,
*Ītaliam* Lyciae *jussēre* capessere sortēs;
*hic amor, haec* patria *est. Sī tē* Karthāginis *arcēs*
Phoenissam Libycae*que* aspectus dētinet *urbis,*
*quae tandem* Ausoniā *Teucrōs* cōnsīdere *terrā*

---

**abscondō, ere, (di)dī, ditus** hide
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, member, body*
**a(d)spectus, ūs** *m.* sight, appearance
**Ausonius, a, um** Ausonian, Italian
**auspicium, (i)ī** *n.* auspices, authority
**capessō, ere, īvī, ītus** (try to) seize, reach
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, dwell (in), cherish, honor*
**compōnō, ere, posuī, positus** put together, settle, calm, quiet
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle*
**dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus** hold back, detain
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**Elissa, ae** *f.* Dido†
**fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus** fashion, pretend, imagine, form, mold
**foedus, eris** *n.* treaty, agreement, pact
**fūrtum, ī** *n.* stealth, theft, trick†
**Grȳnēus, a, um** of Grynium, a town in Asia Minor, with an oracle of Apollo†
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* Carthage, a city of North Africa
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, tell, talk*
**Lycia, ae** *f.* country of Asia Minor
**meminī, isse** remember, recall (*gen.*)
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure, allow*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**paucus, a, um** little, few, scanty*
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**Phoenissa, ae** *f.* Phoenician woman, Dido
**piget, ēre, uit** it displeases†
**praetendō, ere, ī, ntus** hold before, use as screen
**prō** instead of, in behalf of, for, before (*abl.*)*
**prōmereor, ērī, itus** deserve, render service, merit, earn†
**recidīvus, a, um** revived, renewed†
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct, guide*
**re(l)liquiae, ārum** *f.* remnants, relics, leavings
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, fate, portion, oracle*
**spērō** (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
**spīritus, ūs** *m.* breath, spirit, life, soul†
**spōns, spontis** *f.* wish, will, desire†
**taeda, ae** *f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**umquam** ever, at any time

---

**valēs** = **potes**. **Elissae** = **Dīdōnis**; gen. with **meminī**; App. 288.

**336. dum memor (sum) meī.**

**337. Prō rē:** *in defense of my course.*

**338. nē finge:** poetical negative imperative for prose **nōlī fingere**; App. 256, *a.*

**339. praetendī taedās:** *held out (the prospect of) marriage.* **haec in foedera:** i.e., of marriage.

**340. paterentur:** condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

**343–344. colerem, manērent, posuissem:** conclusions contrary to fact; App. 382. **victīs (Teucrīs):** dat. of reference.

**346. Lyciae sortēs** = **sortēs Lyciī Apollinis.**

**347. hic:** pronounce **hicc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.* **hic (est) amor, haec patria est:** refer to Italy, each pronoun being attracted into the gender of its predicate noun; App. 240, *a.*

**349–350. quae invidia est (tibi) Teu-**

invidia *est?* *Et nōs* fās extera *quaerere rēgna.*
*Mē patris Anchīsae,* quotiēns ūmentibus *umbrīs*
*nox* operit *terrās,* quotiēns astra ignea *surgunt,*
admonet *in somnīs et* turbida terret imāgō;
*mē puer* Ascanius *capitisque* injūria cārī,
*quem rēgnō* Hesperiae fraudō *et* fātālibus *arvīs.*
*Nunc* etiam interpres *dīvum Jove missus ab ipsō*
(testor utrumque *caput*) celeris mandāta *per aurās*
dētulit: *ipse deum* manifestō *in lūmine vīdī*
intrantem mūrōs *vōcemque hīs* auribus hausī.
Dēsine *mēque tuīs* incendere *tēque* querēlis;
*Ītaliam nōn* spōnte *sequor.*"
*Tālia dīcentem* jamdūdum āversa tuētur
*hūc* illūc *volvēns oculōs tōtumque* pererrat
*lūminibus* tacitīs *et sīc* accēnsa profātur:

---

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, kindle, burn
**admoneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn†
**Ascanius,** (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
**astrum,** ī *n.* star, constellation*
**auris,** is *f.* ear*
**āvertor, ī, rsus** turn away, avert
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, speedy*
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** carry down, report
**dēsinō, ere, sīvī (iī), situs** cease, desist†
**etiam** also, even, besides, furthermore*
**exterus, a, um** outside, foreign
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine law*
**fātālis, e** fated, fatal, destined
**fraudō** (1) defraud, deprive, cheat†
**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drink (in), drain
**Hesperia, ae** *f.* Hesperia, Italy, Westland
**igneus, a, um** fiery, flaming†
**illūc** thither, to that place
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, likeness, ghost*
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, kindle, burn*
**injūria, ae** *f.* wrong, injury, injustice
**interpres, etis** *m.* (*f.*) interpreter, agent
**intrō** (1) enter, penetrate
**invidia, ae** *f.* grudge, envy, jealousy
**jamdūdum** long since, for a long time
**mandātum, ī** *n.* command, mandate
**manifestus, a, um** clear, manifest
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, battlement*
**operiō, īre, uī, rtus** cover, hide†
**pererrō** (1) wander over, survey
**profor, ārī, ātus** speak (out), say
**querēla, ae** *f.* complaint, lament†
**quotiēns** how often, as often as
**spōns, spontis** *f.* wish, will, desire
**tacitus, a, um** silent, quiet, still, secret
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, terrify
**testor, ārī, ātus** call to witness, swear by, testify
**tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus)** watch, protect, eye*
**turbidus, a, um** troubled, agitated
**ūmēns, entis** moist, dewy, damp
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*

---

**crōs cōnsīdere: cōnsīdere** is the subject and **invidia** the predicate of **est.**

**350. Et:** *also, too* (as well as you). **fās (est).**

**351–353. patris Anchīsae:** with **imāgō.**

**354. mē puer Ascanius (movet):** (the thought of) *my son Ascanius urges me on.* **capitis cārī = Ascanī;** obj. gen., *the wrong* (I am doing) *to Ascanius;* App. 284.

**355. rēgnō, arvīs:** abl. of separation.

**356. interpres dīv(ōr)um:** Mercury.

**357. utrumque = et meum et tuum.**

**361. sponte (meā).**

**362–392. Carried away by her furious passion, Dido curses Aeneas and all his race, hurries from his presence, and falls fainting into the arms of her attendants.**

**362. tuētur:** of past action continued into the present, *has long been eyeing and is still eyeing;* App. 351, 1, *b.*

**363. tōtum (Aenēān) pererrat.**

"*Nec tibi dīva parēns generis nec* Dardanus auctor,
perfide, *sed* dūrīs genuit *tē* cautibus horrēns
Caucasus Hyrcānaeque admōrunt ūbera tigrēs.
*Nam quid* dissimulō *aut quae mē ad majōra* reservō?
Num flētū ingemuit *nostrō?* Num *lūmina* flexit?
Num *lacrimās victus dedit aut* miserātus amantem *est?*
*Quae quibus* anteferam? *Jam jam nec maxima Jūnō*
*nec* Sāturnius *haec oculīs pater* aspicit aequīs.
Nūsquam tūta fidēs. Ējectum *lītore,* egentem
excēpī *et rēgnī* dēmēns *in parte* locāvī.
Āmissam *classem, sociōs ā morte* redūxī
(*heu* furiīs incēnsa *feror!*): *nunc* augur Apollō,
*nunc* Lyciae sortēs, *nunc et Jove missus ab ipsō*

---

**admoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move to
**aequus, a, um** equal, propitious, favorable, just
**amāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) lover
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** lose, let go*
**anteferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** set before, prefer, choose first†
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold, look (at)*
**auctor, ōris** *m.* (*f.*) author, founder, sponsor
**augur, uris** *m.* (*f.*) augur, prophet†
**Caucasus, ī** *m.* rugged mountain range between Europe and Asia†
**cautēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag
**Dardanus, ī** *m.* early king of Troy
**dēmēns, entis** crazy, mad, frenzied
**dissimulō** (1) pretend otherwise, conceal, dissimulate
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, rough*
**egēns, entis** needy, in want, destitute
**ējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast out, eject
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, take
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, trust, confidence*
**flectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, move
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, tears, lament
**furiae, ārum** *f.* furies, madness, frenzy
**gignō, ere, genuī, genitus** bear, produce, beget
**horreō, ēre, uī** shudder, be rough*
**Hyrcānus, a, um** Hyrcanian, of Hyrcania, a wild district on the Caspian Sea†
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, kindle, burn*
**ingemō, ere, uī** groan, roar, lament
**locō** (1) place, locate, establish*
**Lycius, a, um** Lycian, of Lycia, a country of Asia Minor
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**num** *interrog., expecting answer no*†
**nūsquam** nowhere, never
**perfidus, a, um** treacherous, perfidious
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead back, restore
**reservō** (1) reserve, keep back, save†
**Sāturnius, a, um** (born) of Saturn, father of Jupiter and Juno
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
**tigris, (id)is** *m.* (*f.*) tiger, tigress†
**tūtus, a, um** protected, safe, secure*
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder, breast, fertility

---

**365. tibi (est).**

**366–367. dūrīs cautibus:** abl. of cause with **horrēns** or of place where. These are stock comparisons for hard-heartedness in love. **admō(vē)runt ūbera (tibi):** *suckled you.*

**368. majōra (mala):** *greater wrongs.*

**369. flētū:** abl. of cause. **ingemuit:** the third person, since she contemptuously talks about rather than to him. **lūmina** = **oculōs.**

**370. miseror:** with the acc., while **misereor** takes the gen. **(mē) amantem.**

**371. Quae quibus anteferam:** *what shall I say (do) first?*

**372. Sāturnius pater** = **Juppiter.**

**373. (in) lītore. (eum** or **tē) egentem:** Aeneas had said of himself and his followers that they were **omnium egēnōs,** I, 599.

**376–377. nunc, nunc, nunc:** a scornful rejoinder to the **nunc, nunc** of Aeneas, ll. 345, 356; App. 413.

interpres *dīvum fert* horrida jussa *per aurās.*
Scīlicet *is superīs labor est, ea cūra* quiētōs
sollicitat. *Neque tē teneō neque dicta* refellō:
*ī, sequere Ītaliam ventīs, pete rēgna per undās.*
Spērō equidem *mediīs, sī quid pia nūmina possunt,*
supplicia hausūrum scopulīs *et nōmine Dīdō*
saepe *vocātūrum. Sequar ātrīs ignibus* absēns
*et, cum* frīgida *mors animā* sēdūxerit artūs,
*omnibus umbra locīs aderō. Dabis,* improbe, *poenās.*
*Audiam et haec* mānīs *veniet mihi fāma sub īmōs.*"
*Hīs medium dictīs* sermōnem abrumpit *et aurās*
aegra *fugit sēque ex oculīs* āvertit *et* aufert,
linquēns *multa* metū cūnctantem *et multa parantem*
*dīcere.* Suscipiunt famulae conlāpsa*que* membra

**abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break off
**absēns, entis** absent, separated
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary, wretched*
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, body*
**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus** carry away, remove
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**conlābor, ī, lāpsus** collapse, faint†
**cūnctor, ārī, ātus** delay, hesitate, linger
**equidem** indeed, truly, surely*
**famula, ae** *f.* maid servant
**frīgidus, a, um** cold, chilly, frigid
**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drink (in), drain
**horridus, a, um** rough, horrible
**improbus, a, um** wicked, cruel
**interpres, etis** *m.* (*f.*) interpreter, agent
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**quiētus, a, um** quiet, serene, calm
**refellō, ere, ī,** contradict, refute†
**saepe** often, frequently, again and again*
**scīlicet** of course, forsooth, doubtless
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** withdraw, separate†
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, speech
**sollicitō** (1) agitate, disquiet, disturb†
**spērō** (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
**supplicium, (i)ī** *n.* punishment, torture†
**suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** take up, rear

**378–380.** Scornfully sarcastic. **is**: subj., attracted into the gender of the predicate, App. 240, *a.* (**superōs**) **quiētōs.**

**381. ī, sequere**: imperatives. **sequere Ītaliam**: a contemptuous rejoinder to the **Ītaliam sequor** of l. 361.

**382–384. mediīs** (in) **scopulīs**: Dido hopes that the ships of Aeneas may be wrecked on reefs in the midst of the sea; App. 246. **quid**: indef., *anything.* (**tē**) **hausūrum** (**esse**). **Dīdō**: acc., a Greek form; obj. of **vocātūrum. ātrīs ignibus**: the remorseful thoughts about Dido will pursue Aeneas like furies with their *smoking torches.* The idea is that, although far away (**absēns**), she will pursue him with the pangs of a guilty conscience, and after death her ghost will haunt him wherever he may be. Cf. Tasso, *Jerusalem Delivered*, 16, 59–60:

"Go, cruel man, and take with thee that peace
Thou leav'st with me; I do not bid thee stay.
But I will follow — hope for no release —
My angry shade shall haunt thee on thy way;
Like a new Fury I will dog thy path,
With torch and serpents armed, to wreak my wrath."

**385. animā**: the ancients often thought of death as the separation of the body from the soul.

**386. umbra**: (*as*) *a ghost.* **Dabis poenās**: *you shall pay the penalty, suffer punishment.*

**388–389. aurās** ( = **lūcem**) **fugit**: she rushes indoors.

**390. metū**: abl. of cause; *for fear* (of making matters worse).

**391–392. Suscipiunt**: *catch her* (as she faints and falls). **thalamō**: dat. of direction; equivalent to **in thalamum.** (**in**) **strātīs.**

marmoreō *referunt* thalamō strātīsque repōnunt.
*At pius Aenēās*, quamquam lēnīre dolentem
sōlandō cupit *et dictīs* āvertere *cūrās*,
*multa* gemēns *magnōque animum* labefactus *amōre*
jussa tamen *dīvum* exsequitur *classemque* revīsit.
*Tum* vērō *Teucrī* incumbunt *et lītore* celsās
dēdūcunt *tōtō nāvīs*. Natat ūncta carīna,
frondentīsque *ferunt rēmōs et* rōbora *silvīs*
īnfabricāta *fugae* studiō.
Migrantīs *cernās tōtāque ex urbe ruentīs*.
*Ac* velut *ingentem* formīcae farris acervum
*cum* populant hiemis memorēs *tēctōque* repōnunt,
*it* nigrum *campīs agmen* praedamque *per* herbās
convectant calle angustō: *pars* grandia trūdunt
obnixae frūmenta *umerīs*, *pars agmina* cōgunt

---

**acervus, ī** *m.* heap, pile, mass†
**angustus, a, um** narrow, strait
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert, divert*
**callis, is** *m.* path, traek†
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** bring together, foree*
**convectō** (1) eonvey, earry along†
**cupiō, ere, īvī** (iī), **ītus** desire, wish
**dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead down, launeh
**doleō, ēre, uī, itus** grieve, suffer, resent
**exsequor, ī, secūtus** follow out, perform†
**far, farris** *n.* spelt, a kind of grain†
**formīca, ae** *f.* ant†
**frondēns, entis** leafy, fronded
**frūmentum, ī** *n.* grain, eorn†
**gemō, ere, uī, itus** groan, lament, roar
**grandis, e** large, great, tall, huge†
**herba, ae** *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
**hiems, emis** *f.* winter, storm*
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** reeline upon, urge on (work)
**īnfabricātus, a, um** unfashioned, rough†
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**labefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus** shake, stagger†
**lēniō, īre, īvī** (iī), **ītus** soothe, calm
**marmoreus, a, um** (of) marble, white†
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
**migrō** (1) migrate, depart†
**natō** (1) swim, float, overflow
**niger, gra, grum** black, dark, dusky*
**obnītor, ī, sus** (**nixus**) push against, strive
**populō** (1) devastate, plunder, ravage
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, spoils, prey
**quamquam** although, and yet, however
**repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** replaee, lay away, store (up), deposit*
**revīsō, ere** revisit, see again, return to
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength*
**sōlor, ārī, ātus** eonsole, eomfort, solaee
**strātum, ī** *n.* bed, eoueh; pavement
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* eagerness, desire, zeal
**tamen** nevertheless, however, but*
**thalamus, ī** *m.* bridal ehamber, bedroom*
**trūdō, ere, sī, sus** push, shove†
**ung(u)ō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctus** anoint, smear, ealk†
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**vērō** truly, indeed, but

---

**393–449. Her own efforts proving unavailing, Dido sends her sister Anna, hoping that she may persuade Aeneas; but he is deaf to all entreaties.**

**393. dolentem (Dīdōnem).**

**395. animum:** aec. of respeet; App. 311.

**397. incumbunt (labōrī).**

**399. frondentīs:** in their eagerness, studiō, they do not take time to strip off the leaves.

**401. cernās:** potential subj.; App. 252.

**404–405. it, convectant:** the eolleetive noun, **agmen,** may take its verb either in the sing. or pl.; App. 236, *a*.

**406. agmina cōgunt:** *close up the ranks,* to keep the others from straggling; a military term.

castīgant*que* morās, opere *omnis* sēmita fervet.
*Quis tibi tum, Dīdō, cernentī tālia* sēnsus,
*quōsve dabās* gemitūs, *cum lītora* fervere lātē
prōspicerēs *arce ex summā, tōtumque vidērēs*
miscērī *ante oculōs tantīs clāmōribus aequor!*
Improbe *Amor, quid nōn* mortālia *pectora* cōgis!
*Īre* iterum *in lācrimās*, iterum temptāre precandō
cōgitur *et* supplex *animōs* summittere *amōrī*,
*nē quid* inexpertum frūstrā moritūra *relinquat.*

"Anna, *vidēs tōtō* properārī *lītore circum:*
undique convēnēre; *vocat jam* carbasus *aurās*,
*puppibus et laetī* nautae imposuēre corōnās.
*Hunc ego sī potuī tantum* spērāre dolōrem,
*et* perferre, soror, *poterō. Miserae hoc* tamen *ūnum*
exsequere, Anna, *mihī; sōlam nam* perfidus *ille*
*tē* colere, arcānōs etiam *tibi* crēdere sēnsūs;

---

**Anna, ae** *f.* sister of Dido
**arcānus, a, um** secret, hidden
**carbasus, ī** *f.* linen; sail
**castīgō** (1) reprove, chastise, punish†
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** bring together, force*
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, honor*
**conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come together, convene
**corōna, ae** *f.* wreath, garland, crown
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, (in)trust (*dat.*)*
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**etiam** also, even, besides, yet, still*
**exsequor, ī, secūtus** follow out, perform
**ferv(e)ō, ĕre, (bu)ī** boil, be busy
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place upon, set to (*dat.*)*
**improbus, a, um** wicked, cruel, bad
**inexpertus, a, um** untried†
**iterum** again, anew, a second time*
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, loitering*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**mortālis, e** mortal, human, earthly*
**nauta, ae** *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
**opus, eris** *n.* work, toil, task, deed*
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear, endure
**perfidus, a, um** treacherous, perfidious
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat, invoke*
**properō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold
**sēmita, ae** *f.* path
**sēnsus, ūs** *m.* feeling, perception, sense
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
**summittō (sub), ere, mīsī, missus** lower, submit
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**temptō** (1) try, seek, attempt, test*
**undique** on (from) all sides*

---

**408. sēnsus (erat).**

**409. fervĕre:** as though of the third conjugation, although **fervet**, a second conjugational form, has just occurred, l. 407.

**410. arce:** probably some sort of tall watch tower of Dido's palace.

**412. quid cōgis:** see the note on **quid cōgis**, III, 56.

**413. temptāre (Aenēān).**

**415. nē quid (indef.) inexpertum relinquat (et sīc moriātur) frūstrā:** there would be no object in her dying so long as there was any possibility of winning back Aeneas.

**416. properārī:** used impersonally.

**418. corōnās:** as a sign of joy at the prospect of immediate departure. On entering or leaving port, sailors often decked their ships with garlands.

**420. perferre poterō:** Dido is deceiving Anna if she has already determined on suicide in case she loses Aeneas.

**422. colere, crēdere:** historical infinitives; App. 257.

*sōla virī* mollīs aditūs *et tempora* nōrās:
*ī*, soror, *atque* hostem supplex adfārē superbum:
*nōn ego cum Danaīs* Trojānam exscindere *gentem*
Aulide jūrāvī *classemve ad* Pergama *mīsī*,
*nec patris Anchīsae* cinerēs mānīsve revellī:
cūr *mea dicta* negat dūrās dēmittere *in* aurīs?
*Quō ruit?* Extrēmum *hoc miserae det mūnus* amantī:
exspectet facilem*que fugam ventōsque ferentīs*.
*Nōn jam* conjugium *antīquum, quod* prōdidit, ōrō,
*nec* pulchrō *ut* Latiō careat *rēgnumque relinquat:*
*tempus* ināne *petō*, requiem spatium*que* furōrī,
*dum mea mē victam* doceat *fortūna* dolēre.
Extrēmam *hanc* ōrō veniam (miserēre sorōris),
*quam mihi cum dederit* cumulātam *morte* remittam."
*Tālibus* ōrābat, *tālīsque miserrima* flētūs
*fertque refertque* soror. *Sed nūllīs ille movētur*
flētibus, *aut vōcēs ūllās* tractābilis *audit;*
*fāta* obstant placidās*que virī deus* obstruit aurīs.

---

**adfor, ārī, ātus** address, speak to*
**aditus, ūs** *m.* approach, access
**amāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) lover
**Aulis, idis** *f.* port in eastern Greece whence the Greek fleet set sail to attack Troy†
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**careō, ēre, uī** be without, lack (*abl.*)
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**conjugium, (i)ī** *n.* wedlock, marriage
**cumulō** (1) heap (up), pile (high)†
**cūr** why? wherefore?
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down, let down, let fall; receive*
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**doleō, ēre, uī, itus** grieve, suffer, resent
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus** destroy, root out
**ex(s)pectō** (1) (a)wait, expect, hope (for)*
**extrēmus, a, um** last, final, extreme*
**facilis, e** easy, favorable, ready
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, tears, tearful appeal, lament
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**inānis, e** empty, idle, useless, vain*
**jūrō** (1) take oath, swear, conspire†
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district in central Italy*
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**misereor, ērī, itus** pity, commiserate (*gen.*)
**mollis, e** soft, yielding, gentle, delicate
**negō** (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
**nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus** learn; *perf.* know*
**obstō, āre, stitī, status** hinder, oppose
**obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** block, stop†
**ōrō** (1) pray (to, for), entreat, beseech*
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**placidus, a, um** calm, kind(ly), peaceful*
**prōdō, ere, didī, ditus** betray, hand down
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, noble, splendid, handsome, illustrious*
**remittō, ere, mīsī, missus** return, repay
**requiēs, ētis (ēī)** *f.* rest, respite, repose
**revellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear off (up, away)†
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**spatium, (i)ī** *n.* space, time, period†
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**tractābilis, e** manageable, gentle
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**venia, ae** *f.* favor, pardon, grace

---

**423. tempora:** (*suitable*) *time* (for approach). **nō(ve)rās.**

**429–430. det, exspectet:** vol. (jussive); App. 254. **ventōs ferentīs:** *favorable winds*, a common meaning.

**432. pulchrō Latiō:** contemptuously; abl. with **careat. ut careat, (ut) relinquat:** subst. vol. clauses; obj. of **ōrō**; App. 360.

**435. miserēre:** *imp.*

**436. cumulātam:** participle with **quam**, referring to the favor (**veniam**) which she asks for. **morte:** abl. of time or means. The meaning of Dido's statement is obscure, perhaps intentionally so.

**438. fertque refertque (ad Aenēān).**

*Ac* velut annōsō validam *cum* rōbore quercum
Alpīnī Boreae *nunc hinc nunc* flātibus illinc
ēruere *inter sē* certant; *it* strīdor, *et altae*
cōnsternunt *terram* concussō stīpite frondēs;
*ipsa* haeret scopulīs *et* quantum vertice *ad aurās*
aetheriās, *tantum* rādīce *in* Tartara *tendit:*
*haud* secus adsiduīs *hinc atque hinc vōcibus* hērōs
tunditur, *et magnō* persentit *pectore cūrās;*
*mēns* immōta *manet, lacrimae volvuntur* inānēs.
*Tum* vērō *īnfēlīx fātīs* exterrita *Dīdō*
*mortem* ōrat; taedet *caelī* convexa tuērī.
*Quō* magis inceptum peragat *lūcemque relinquat,*
*vīdit,* tūricremīs *cum dōna* impōneret *ārīs,*
(horrendum *dictū*) laticēs nigrēscere *sacrōs*
*fūsaque in* obscēnum *sē* vertere vīna cruōrem.
*Hoc* vīsum *nūllī, nōn ipsī* effāta sorōrī.

---

**adsiduus, a, um** constant, unceasing†
**aetherius, a, um** high in the air, airy
**Alpīnus, a, um** Alpine, of the Alps†
**annōsus, a, um** aged, old, full of years†
**Boreās, ae** *m.* (north) wind
**certō** (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
**concutiō, ere, ussī, ussus** shake, shatter
**cōnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, strew†
**convexum, ī** *n.* hollow, vault, dome
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak out, say, tell
**ēruō, ere, uī, utus** uproot, overthrow
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**flātus, ūs** *m.* blast, wind, blowing†
**frōns, ondis** *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling (to) (*dat.*)*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**horrendus, a, um** horrible, dreadful*
**illinc** from that side, thence†
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, unshaken
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place on (*dat.*)*
**inānis, e** empty, idle, useless, vain*
**inceptum, ī** *n.* beginning, undertaking
**latex, icis** *m.* liquid, water, wine
**magis** more, rather, preferably*
**nigrēscō, ere, gruī** turn black, darken†
**obscēnus, a, um** foul, filthy, disgusting
**ōrō** (1) pray (for, to), entreat, beseech*
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** accomplish, finish
**persentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive, feel
**quantum** how much, how greatly, (as much) as
**quercus, ūs** *f.* oak
**rādīx, īcis** *f.* root
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak, strength*
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**secus** otherwise, differently
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**stīpes, itis** *m.* stock, trunk, stem
**strīdor, ōris** *m.* noise, creaking, roar
**taedet, ēre, uit, taesum** it wearies†
**Tartara, ōrum** *n.* the underworld, Hades
**tueor, ērī, itus** (tūtus) watch, look at*
**tundō, ere, tutūdī, tū(n)sus** beat, assail
**tūricremus, a, um** incense-burning†
**validus, a, um** strong, mighty, sturdy
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**vērō** indeed, truly, but
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, peak, head, summit*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**vīsum, ī** *n.* sight, appearance, vision

---

**441.** rōbore: abl. of quality; App. 330.
**444.** concussō stīpite: abl. abs.
**445.** ipsa (quercus).
**446.** in: *toward.*
**447.** hērōs (Aenēās).

**450–473. Terrified by omens and disturbed by dreams, Dido determines to die.**

**451.** taedet (eam).
**452.** Quō peragat, (quō) relinquat: subjunctives of purpose; App. 388.
**453.** ārīs: dat. with compound.
**454–455.** An omen of evil.
**456.** effāta (est Dīdō).

Praetereā *fuit in tēctīs dē* marmorę templum
*conjugis antīquī*, mīrō *quod honōre* colēbat,
velleribus niveīs *et* fēstā fronde revīnctum:
460 *hinc* exaudīrī *vōcēs et* verba *vocantis*
*vīsa virī, nox cum terrās* obscūra *tenēret,*
*sōlaque* culminibus fērālī carmine būbō
saepe querī *et longās in* flētum *dūcere vōcēs;*
*multaque* praetereā *vātum* praedicta priōrum
465 terribilī monitū horrificant. *Agit ipse furentem*
*in somnīs* ferus *Aenēās*, semperque *relinquī*
*sōla sibī*, semper *longam* incomitāta *vidētur*
*īre viam et Tyriōs* dēsertā *quaerere terrā*,
Eumenidum velutī dēmēns *videt agmina* Pentheus
470 *et* sōlem *geminum et* duplicēs *sē* ostendere Thēbās,
*aut* Agamemnonius scaenīs agitātus Orestēs,
armātam facibus *mātrem et* serpentibus *ātrīs*

---

**Agamemnonius, a, um** of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae
**agitō** (1) drive, hunt, pursue, harass
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**būbō, ōnis** *m.* (*f.*) owl†
**carmen, inis** *n.* song, chant, note
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, honor*
**culmen, inis** *n.* roof, top, peak, summit*
**dēmēns, entis** mad, crazy, frenzied
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**duplex, icis** double, two-fold
**Eumenides, um** *f.* Furies, avenging spirits†
**exaudiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** hear (from)
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand*
**fērālis, e** funereal, of death, fateful†
**ferus, a, um** wild, savage, fierce*
**fēstus, a, um** festal, festive, holiday
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, tears, lament
**frōns, ondis** *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
**horrificō** (1) horrify, terrify, alarm†
**incomitātus, a, um** unaccompanied, alone
**marmor, oris** *n.* marble†
**mīrus, a, um** wonderful, marvelous
**monitus, ūs** *m.* advice, warning
**niveus, a, um** white, snowy
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, dim, gloomy*
**Orestēs, is (ae)** *m.* son of Agamemnon and Clytaemnestra; he killed his mother for murdering his father and so was driven mad by the Furies
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, display*
**Pentheus, eī (eos)** *m.* legendary king of Thebes, driven mad for opposing the worship of Bacchus; he began to see everything double, and was finally torn to pieces by his mother and aunts†
**praedictum, ī** *n.* prophecy, prediction†
**praetereā** besides, also, in addition*
**prior, ius** former, ancient, prior*
**queror, ī, questus** complain, (be)wail
**revinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, wreathe
**saepe** often, frequently, repeatedly*
**scaena, ae** *f.* stage, scene, background
**semper** always, ever, repeatedly*
**serpēns, entis** *m.* (*f.*) serpent, snake
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**terribilis, e** terrible, terrifying, dire†
**Thēbae, ārum** *f.* famous Greek city†
**vellus, eris** *n.* fleece, wool†
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech, talk

---

**457. templum:** a little chapel in honor of her dead husband, in accordance with a common ancient custom. **in tēctīs:** probably in the open court within the palace.

**460. hinc = ex hōc templō.**

**461. virī = conjugis.**

**462. culminibus:** of the palace. **būbō (vīsa est):** another evil omen, and so considered by the superstitious even today.

**466. in somnīs:** *in her dreams*, a not uncommon meaning of **somnus**, especially in the plural.

**468. viam:** cognate acc.; App. 313.

**471. Orestēs:** a favorite subject of Greek and Roman drama; see the notes on III, 331.

*cum fugit* ultrīcēs*que* sedent *in līmine* Dīrae.
Ergō *ubi* concēpit furiās ēvicta dolōre
dēcrēvit*que* morī, *tempus sēcum ipsa* modum*que*
exigit, *et* maestam *dictīs* adgressa sorōrem
cōnsilium vultū tegit *ac* spem fronte serēnat:
"Invēnī, germāna, *viam* (grātāre sorōrī)
*quae mihi* reddat *eum vel eō mē* solvat amantem.
Ōceanī *fīnem* juxtā sōlem*que* cadentem
ultimus Aethiopum *locus est, ubi maximus* Atlās
axem *umerō* torquet stēllīs *ardentibus* aptum:
*hinc mihi* Massȳlae *gentis* mōnstrāta sacerdōs,
Hesperidum templī custōs, epulās*que* dracōnī
*quae dabat et sacrōs servābat in* arbore rāmōs,

**adgredior, ī, gressus** attack, address
**Aethiops, opis** *m.* Ethiopian, African†
**amō** (1) love, like, cherish*
**aptus, a, um** fitted, equipped, studded†
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree; wood(s)*
**Atlās, antis** *m.* god who supported the heavens on his shoulders; high mountain in Northwest Africa
**axis, is** *m.* axle, axis, wheel, vault, sky
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** conceive, realize†
**cōnsilium, (i)ī** *n.* plan, advice; council
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus** decide†
**Dīrae, ārum** *f.* Furies
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**dracō, ōnis** *m.* serpent, dragon
**epulae, ārum** *f.* feast, banquet, food
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus** conquer, master
**exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** work out, plan
**frōns, frontis** *f.* front, forehead, face*
**furia, ae** *f.* fury, madness, frenzy
**germāna, ae** *f.* sister
**grātor, ārī, ātus** congratulate, wish joy to (*dat.*)†
**Hesperides, um** *f.* daughters of Atlas and Hesperia, keepers of a dragon, which guarded a magic tree bearing golden apples†
**inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** find, come upon
**juxtā** close (to), next (*acc.*)*
**maestus, a, um** sad, gloomy, mournful*
**Massȳlus, a, um** of the Massylians, a tribe of North Africa
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, method, limit*
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out, instruct*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**Ōceanus, ī** *m.* Ocean
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give back, return, render, answer*
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit, settle*
**serēnō** (1) (make) clear, make serene
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free, pay*
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**stēlla, ae** *f.* star, constellation
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** conceal, cover*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn, twist, sway*
**ultimus, a, um** last, utmost, farthest, remotest*
**ultrīx, īcis** avenging; avenger
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

**473. in līmine:** to prevent the escape of their victim.

**474–503. Concealing her plans from her sister, Dido builds a great funeral pyre in the palace court, pretending that she is preparing a magic rite which will bring back Aeneas or else free her of her love for him.**

**478. sorōrī:** dat. with grātāre, which is imp.; App. 297.

**479. quae reddat, (quae) solvat:** subjunctives of characteristic; App. 389. **eum, eō:** Dido consciously avoids mentioning the name of Aeneas and refers to him in the vaguest way possible by using the colorless pronoun is rather than one more definite, such as ille.

**483. hinc = ex hōc locō. mōnstrāta (est).**

**485. et (sīc) servābat:** by means of the dragon, the priestess guards the magic tree with its golden apples.

spargēns ūmida mella sopōriferum*que* papāver.
*Haec sē* carminibus prōmittit solvere *mentēs*
*quās velit, ast aliīs* dūrās immittere *cūrās*,
sistere aquam fluviīs *et* vertere *sīdera* retrō,
nocturnōs*que movet* mānīs: mūgīre *vidēbis*
*sub pedibus terram et* dēscendere *montibus* ornōs.
Testor, cāra, *deōs et tē*, germāna, *tuumque*
dulce *caput*, magicās invītam accingier artīs.
*Tū* sēcrēta pyram *tēctō* interiōre *sub aurās*
ērige, *et arma virī* thalamō *quae* fīxa *relīquit*
impius exuviās*que omnīs* lectum*que* jugālem,
*quō* periī, superimpōnās: abolēre nefandī

---

**aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itus** destroy, abolish
**accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, waves, flood*
**ars, artis** *f.* art, device, artifice, skill*
**carmen, inis** *n.* song, poem, incantation, charm
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** descend
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** erect, raise
**exuviae, ārum** *f.* spoils, relics, mementos
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, fasten, transfix*
**fluvius, (i)ī** *m.* river, stream
**germāna, ae** *f.* sister
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send in (to), bring on
**impius, a, um** wicked, accursed, disloyal
**interior, ius** inner, interior
**invītus, a, um** unwilling, reluctant
**jugālis, e** of wedlock, matrimonial
**lectus, ī** *m.* bed, couch†
**magicus, a, um** magic†
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**mel, mellis** *n.* honey
**mūgiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** roar, bellow
**nefandus, a, um** unspeakable, unutterable
**nocturnus, a, um** of the night, nocturnal†
**ornus, ī** *f.* ash tree
**papāver, eris** *n.* poppy, poppy juice
**pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus,** perish, die
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**pyra, ae** *f.* funeral pile, pyre†
**retrō** backward(s), back
**sēcrētus, a, um** remote, secret, secluded
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** stop, stay, set(tle)
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free, pay*
**sopōrifer, era, erum** sleep-bringing†
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**superimpōnō, ere, posuī, positus** lay above†
**testor, ārī, ātus** call to witness, testify
**thalamus, ī** *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
**ūmidus, a, um** moist, damp, wet
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*

---

**486. sopōriferum:** used here as a purely ornamental general epithet, as a sleep-producing food would be the last thing in the world for the keeper to give to a dragon which was playing the part of a watchdog.

**487–488. Haec (sacerdōs). mentēs (ā cūrīs) solvere, aliīs (mentibus) cūrās immittere.**

**489. sistere, vertere:** some of the stock claims of witches and magicians. **fluviīs:** dat. of reference.

**490–491. nocturnōs mānīs:** ghosts ordinarily appear only at night. **terram mūgīre, dēscendere ornōs:** through the magic power of the priestess.

**492–493.** The better classes of Vergil's time condemned the use of witchcraft and magic as being unsportsmanlike. **(mē) invītam accingier = accingī:** an old form of the passive inf., used as a middle, with **artīs** as its obj.; App. 309.

**494. (in) tēctō interiōre sub aurās:** *in the courtyard.*

**495. virī:** Dido continues to avoid mentioning the name of Aeneas; **virī** here possibly means **conjugis,** as often.

**495–496. thalamō, lectum jugālem:** Dido persists in her contention that Aeneas was actually her husband. See ll. 172 and 324.

**497. superimpōnās:** vol., equivalent to an imp.; App. 254.

*cūncta virī* monimenta juvat mōnstrat*que* sacerdōs.”
*Haec* effāta silet, pallor *simul* occupat *ōra*.
*Nōn* tamen Anna *novīs* praetexere fūnera *sacrīs*
germānam crēdit, *nec tantōs mente* furōrēs
concipit *aut* graviōra timet quam *morte* Sychaeī.
Ergō jussa *parat*.
*At rēgīna* pyrā penetrālī *in sēde sub aurās*
ērēctā *ingentī* taedīs *atque* īlice sectā,
intendit*que locum* sertīs *et* fronde corōnat
fūnereā; *super* exuviās ēnsem*que relictum*
effigiem*que* torō locat *haud* ignāra futūrī.
*Stant ārae circum et* crīnīs effūsa sacerdōs
ter centum tonat *ōre deōs*, Erebum*que* Chaos*que*

---

**Anna, ae** *f.* sister of Dido
**centum** hundred*
**Chaos** (*nom. and acc.*) *n.* Chaos, (god of) the lower world†
**concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** conceive, grasp
**corōnō** (1) crown, wreathe, encircle
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**effigiēs, ēī** *f.* image, likeness, effigy
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak out, say, tell
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out; dishevel*
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**Erebus, ī** *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** erect, raise
**exuviae, ārum** *f.* spoils, relics, mementoes
**frōns, ondis** *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
**fūnereus, a, um** funereal, of death†
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
**futūrum, ī** *n.* the future†
**germāna, ae** *f.* sister
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**īlex, icis** *f.* holm-oak
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, cover
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**locō** (1) place, locate, establish*
**monimentum (monumentum), ī** *n.* reminder, memorial
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out, instruct*
**occupō** (1) seize (beforehand), occupy
**pallor, ōris** *m.* paleness, pallor†
**penetrālis, e** inner, innermost
**praetexō, ere, uī, xtus** veil, cover, fringe
**pyra, ae** *f.* funeral pile, pyre
**quam** how, than, as*
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, slice, cleave*
**serta, ōrum** *n.* wreath, garland
**sileō, ēre, uī** be silent, hush, be still
**Sychaeus, ī** *m.* deceased husband of Dido
**taeda, ae** *f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)
**tamen**, however, nevertheless, but*
**ter** three times, thrice*
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread, be anxious*
**tonō, āre, uī, itus** thunder, roar
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*

---

**498. juvat (mē):** the subj. is **abolēre. mōnstrat (mihi).**

**500–502. tamen Anna nōn crēdit germānam (Dīdōnem) praetexere fūnera (hīs) sacrīs novīs, nec (Anna) tantōs furōrēs (Dīdōnis) concipit mente (suā). morte:** abl. of time.

**504–521. Dido offers prayers and sacrifices to the gods of the lower world.**

**504. penetrālī in sēde = in tēctō interiōre:** see l. 494.

**507. super:** adverb.

**508. effigiem (Aenēae):** Greek and Roman magicians commonly thus employed an image of a person or something belonging to him, claiming that thus they could affect the one bewitched and cause him to suffer a fate similar to that experienced by the objects.

**509. crīnīs:** obj. of the middle part. **effūsa;** App. 309, *a*.

**510–511. deōs:** cognate acc.; App. 313. The lower world and its deities were especially invoked in witchcraft and magic rites. **ōra:** apposition with **Hecatēn. tria virginis ōra Diānae:** in apposition with and explanatory of **tergeminam Hecatēn,** as the goddess was Luna in heaven, Diana on earth, and

tergeminamque Hecatēn, tria virginis ōra Diānae.
Sparserat et laticēs simulātōs fontis Avernī,
falcibus et messae ad lūnam quaeruntur aēnīs
pūbentēs herbae nigrī cum lacte venēnī;
quaeritur et nāscentis equī dē fronte revulsus
et mātrī praereptus amor.
Ipsa molā manibusque piīs altāria juxtā
ūnum exūta pedem vinclīs, in veste recīnctā,
testātur moritūra deōs et cōnscia fātī
sīdera; tum, sī quod nōn aequō foedere amantīs
cūrae nūmen habet jūstumque memorque, precātur.
Nox erat et placidum carpēbant fessa sopōrem
corpora per terrās, silvaeque et saeva quiērant

---

**aēnus, a, um** (of) bronze, brazen
**aequus, a, um** equal, mutual, just
**altāria, ium** *n.* altar
**amāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) lover
**Avernus, a, um** of Lake Avernus in Italy, of the lower world*
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, consume, take; enjoy
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious; confederate
**Diāna, ae** *f.* goddess of the chase and the moonlight, identified with Hecate
**exuō, ere, uī, ūtus** bare, doff, put off
**falx, falcis** *f.* scythe, sickle†
**foedus, eris** *n.* treaty, agreement, pact
**fōns, fontis** *m.* fountain, source, spring
**frōns, frontis** *f.* front, forehead, face*
**Hecatē, ēs** *f.* goddess of the lower world, identified with Diana†
**herba, ae** *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
**jūstus, a, um** just, true, righteous, fair
**juxtā** next, close (to) (*acc.*)*
**lac, lactis** *n.* milk, juice, sap
**latex, icis** *m.* liquid, water, wine
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
**metō, ere, messuī, messus** reap, cut†
**mola, ae** *f.* meal†
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**nāscor, ī, nātus** be born, arise*
**niger, gra, grum** black, dark, dusky*
**placidus, a, um** calm, quiet, kind(ly)*
**praeripiō, ere, uī, reptus** seize first†
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat, invoke*
**pūbēns, entis** growing, vigorous†
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** (become) quiet, rest*
**recingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** ungirdle, loosen†
**revellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear (off, up), pluck
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, raging*
**simulō** (1) pretend, simulate, counterfeit
**sopor, ōris** *m.* sleep, slumber
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**tergeminus, a, um** triple, three-fold†
**testor, ārī, ātus** call to witness, testify
**trēs, tria** three*
**venēnum, ī** *n.* poison, drug, venom
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, fastening, cable*
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

---

Hecate in Hades, and thus was often represented by a three-headed statue. Observe the interlocked order; App. 442.

**513. ad lūnam:** *at the right time of the moon*, or *by moonlight*. **aēnīs:** implements of bronze, as belonging to an earlier age, were much used in magical ceremonies.

**515–516. amor revulsus dē fronte nāscentis equī et praereptus mātrī, quaeritur:** the ancients believed that a tumor, called **hippomanēs**, was found on the forehead of a colt at its birth. The mother of the colt bit this off at once; but if she could be forestalled and this tumor secured, it made an unusually effective love charm (**amor**). **mātrī:** dat. with compound.

**517. Ipsa:** Dido; see note on **ipsa**, I, 42.

**518. exūta pedem, recīncta:** see the note on l. 509 and the one on III, 370.

**520–521. sī quod** (*whatever*) **nūmen. nōn aequō foedere amantīs:** *those who love on unequal terms*, i.e., those whose love is unrequited.

**521. cūrae habet (sibi):** *cares for;* **cūrae** is dat. of purpose.

**522–553. Dido bewails her fate and strengthens her resolve to die.**

**523. quiē(ve)rant.**

*aequora, cum mediō volvuntur sīdera* lāpsū,
*cum* tacet *omnis* ager, pecudēs pictae*que* volucrēs,
*quae*que lacūs latē liquidōs *quae*que aspera dūmīs
rūra *tenent, somnō positae sub nocte* silentī.
[Lēnībant *cūrās et* corda oblīta *labōrum.*]
*At nōn īnfēlīx animī* Phoenissa *neque* umquam
solvitur *in somnōs oculīsve aut pectore noctem*
*accipit:* ingeminant *cūrae* rūrsus*que* resurgēns
saevit *amor magnōque īrārum* flūctuat aestū.
*Sīc* adeō īnsistit *sēcumque* ita corde volūtat:
"Ēn, *quid agō?* Rūrsus*ne* procōs inrīsa priōrēs
experiar, Nomadum*que petam* cōnūbia supplex,
*quōs ego sim* totiēns *jam* dēdignāta marītōs?
Īliacās igitur *classīs atque* ultima *Teucrum*
jussa *sequar?* Quia*ne* auxiliō juvat *ante* levātōs

---

**adeō** to such an extent, so (greatly)
**aestus, ūs** *m.* boiling, surge, tide
**ager, grī** *m.* field, country, territory*
**asper, era, erum** rough, harsh*
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* aid, help, assistance*
**cōnūbium, (i)ī** *n.* wedlock, marriage
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**dēdignor, ārī, ātus** disdain, scorn†
**dūmus, ī** *m.* brier, thicket†
**ēn** see! look! behold!
**experior, īrī, pertus** test, try, learn
**flūctuō** (1) fluctuate, wave, surge†
**igitur** therefore, accordingly†
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**ingeminō** (1) (re)double, repeat, increase
**inrīdeō, ēre, sī, sus** laugh (at), mock†
**īnsistō, ere, stitī** begin, continue†
**ita** thus, so, in this way
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**lacus, ūs** *m.* lake, marsh, mere
**lāpsus, ūs** *m.* gliding, slipping, course
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**lēniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** soothe, calm
**levō** (1) lift, raise, relieve, remove
**liquidus, a, um** clear, fluid, liquid†
**marītus, ī** *m.* husband
**Nomas, adis** *m.* tribe of North Africa
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen.*)
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal (of the flock)*
**Phoenissa, ae** *f.* Phoenician (Dido)
**pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus** paint, embroider, variegate
**prior, ius** former, prior, ancient*
**procus, ī** *m.* suitor, lover, wooer†
**quia** because
**resurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise again
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**rūs, rūris** *n.* country, lands, fields
**saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** rage, storm
**silēns, entis** silent, still, quiet
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), relax, pay*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**taceō, ēre, uī, itus** be silent, hush*
**totiēns** so many times, so often
**ultimus, a, um** last, uttermost, utmost*
**umquam** ever, at any time
**volucris, is** *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl
**volūtō** (1) revolve, keep turning; ponder

---

**526. quaeque . . . quaeque:** *both (those) which . . . and (those) which.* **dūmīs:** abl. of cause with **aspera.**

**527.** (in) **somnō. positae:** middle, *having lain down.*

**528. Lēnībant** = **lēniēbant,** which cannot be used in hexameter. **oblīta (erant). labōrum:** gen. with **oblīta;** App. 288.

**529. animī:** loc. or gen. with **īnfēlīx. At nōn Phoenissa (Dīdō cūrās suās lēnībat).**

**534. quid agō** = **quid agam:** with fut. or subj. meaning, as in II, 322. See App. 351, 1, *c*; 348, *a.* **inrīsa:** *only to be laughed at;* proleptic; App. 440.

**535. experiar, petam:** deliberative questions; App. 348.

**536. quōs sim dēdignāta:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **marītōs:** (*as prospective*) *husbands.*

**538–539. Quiane** = **sequar ea jussa quia. (eōs) juvat (meō) auxiliō (sē esse) ante levātōs et apud (eōs) memorēs stat grātia (meī) factī:** bitterly ironical.

*et* bene apud memorēs veteris *stat* grātia factī?
*Quis mē* autem, *fac velle*, sinet ratibusque superbīs
invīsam *accipiet?* Nescīs *heu*, perdita, necdum
Lāomedontēae sentīs perjūria *gentis?*
*Quid tum? Sōla fugā* nautās comitābor ovantīs?
An *Tyriīs omnīque manū* stīpāta *meōrum*
inferar *et, quōs* Sīdoniā *vix urbe* revellī,
rūrsus *agam pelagō et ventīs dare vēla jubēbō?*
Quīn morere *ut* merita *es, ferrōque* āverte dolōrem.
*Tū lacrimīs* ēvicta *meīs, tū prīma furentem*
*hīs*, germāna, malīs onerās *atque* objicis hostī.
*Nōn* licuit thalamī expertem sine crīmine *vītam*
dēgere mōre ferae, *tālīs nec* tangere *cūrās!*

---

**an** whether, or*
**apud** among, near, at (*acc.*)
**autem** moreover, however, but*
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**bene** well, rightly, securely, fully
**comitor, ārī, ātus** accompany, attend, escort, follow*
**crīmen, inis** *n.* crime, guilt, sin; charge
**dēgō, ere, ī** spend, pass†
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus** conquer, overcome
**expers, rtis** free from, without (*gen.*)†
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, achievement, act*
**fera, ae** *f.* wild beast
**germāna, ae** *f.* sister
**grātia, ae** *f.* favor, gratitude, grace†
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear (against); *pass.* proceed
**invīsus, a, um** hated, hateful, odious
**Lāomedontēus, a, um** of Laomedon, a notorious perjurer and founder of Troy†
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted*
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
**mereor, ērī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, manner, way*
**nauta, ae** *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
**necdum** not yet
**nesciō, īre, īvī (iī)** be ignorant, not know
**objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place before, expose (*dat.*)
**onerō** (1) load, burden, overwhelm
**ovō** (1) rejoice, exult, triumph
**perdō, ere, didī, ditus** destroy, lose, ruin†
**perjūrium, (i)ī** *n.* perjury, falsehood†
**quīn** but that, why not, nay even*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**revellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear (away, up), pluck
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive, feel
**Sīdonius, a, um** Sidonian, of Sidon, a Phoenician city
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** allow, permit*
**stīpō** (1) crowd, attend, throng; stow
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**thalamus, ī** *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*

---

**540. fac (mē) velle (sequī jussa Teucrōrum). fac:** *suppose;* imp.; App. 202.

**541. perdita (Dīdō):** addressing herself.

**542. Lāomedontēae:** see note on III, 248.

**543. nautās (Teucrōs) ovantīs:** cf. l. 418, **laetī corōnās,** and note.

**545–546. īnferar** (middle) **et rūrsus agam (Tyriōs), quōs vix revellī.**

**547. Quīn morere:** *nay die, die now.* She is addressing herself, as in l. 541. **morere:** imp.

**548. tū prīma:** Dido blames Anna for having first encouraged her to yield to her love for Aeneas. **(mē) furentem.**

**549. germāna:** voc., though of course Anna is not present.

**550. thalamī expertem:** *without marriage;* App. 287. **Nōn licuit (mihi):** exclamatory; (*alas*) *that I was not permitted!*

**551. mōre:** abl. of manner; *like some wild creature,* alone in the woods. **cūrās (amōris).**

*Nōn servāta* fidēs cinerī prōmissa Sychaeō."
*Tantōs illa suō* rumpēbat *pectore* questūs:
*Aenēās* celsā *in puppī jam* certus *eundī*
carpēbat *somnōs rēbus jam* rīte *parātīs.*
*Huic sē* forma *deī* vultū redeuntis *eōdem*
obtulit *in somnīs* rūrsus*que* ita *vīsa* monēre *est,*
*omnia* Mercuriō similis, *vōcemque* colōremque
*et* crīnīs flāvōs *et* membra decōra juventae:
"*Nāte deā, potes hōc sub cāsū dūcere somnōs,*
*nec quae tē circum stent* deinde perīcula *cernis,*
dēmēns, *nec* Zephyrōs *audīs* spīrāre secundōs?
*Illa* dolōs dīrum*que* nefās *in pectore* versat
certa morī, variōs*que īrārum* concitat aestūs.
*Nōn fugis hinc* praeceps, *dum* praecipitāre potestās?
*Jam mare* turbārī trabibus saevās*que vidēbis*

---

**aestus, ūs** *m.* boiling, surge, tide
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, consume, take; enjoy
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**certus, a, um** certain, fixed, sure, reliable, determined (on) (*gen.*)*
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**color, ōris** *m.* color, hue, appearance†
**concitō** (1) excite, arouse, stir (up)†
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**decōrus, a, um** beautiful, glorious, seemly
**deinde** then, thereupon, next*
**dēmēns, entis** mad, frenzied, distracted
**dīrus, a, um** terrible, dire, dreadful*
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick*
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, trust, fidelity*
**flāvus, a, um** yellow, tawny, blond
**forma, ae** *f.* shape, beauty, form*
**ita** thus, so, in this way
**juventa, ae** *f.* youth, young manhood
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**Mercurius, (i)ī** *m.* Mercury, messenger of the gods
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**nefās** *n. indecl.* crime, wickedness, impiety*
**obferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** present, offer
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* danger, peril, risk
**potestās, ātis** *f.* power, ability, chance
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**praecipitō** (1) throw (fall) headlong, flee
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**questus, ūs** *m.* complaint, lament†
**redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** return
**rīte** properly, duly, ritually
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break (off), burst (forth), utter*
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, raging*
**secundus, a, um** favorable, second*
**similis, e** like, similar (*gen., dat.*)*
**spīrō** (1) breathe (forth), exhale, blow
**Sychaeus, a, um** of Sychaeus, deceased husband of Dido†
**trabs (trabēs), trabis** *f.* beam, ship
**turbō** (1) confuse, disturb, agitate*
**varius, a, um** varied, different, variable*
**versō** (1) keep turning, roll, revolve
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*
**Zephyrus, ī** *m.* (west) wind

---

**552. Nōn servāta (est mihi) fidēs.**

**553. rumpēbat questūs:** same construction as **rumpit vōcem**, II, 129.

**554–583. Again urged by Mercury to hasten his departure, Aeneas arouses his sleeping comrades and hurriedly sails away by night.**

**554. certus eundī:** = **certus īre:** *determined to go;* **eundī** is objective genitive of the gerund from **eō.**

**556. eōdem:** *the same,* as in ll. 238 ff.

**558. omnia:** acc. of respect. **colōremque:** hypermetric; App. 402.

**563. Illa:** Dido.

**564. morī:** the inf. depends on **certa;** App. 265.

**565. praecipitāre (tibi) potestās (est). praecipitāre:** dependent on **potestās;** App. 264.

**566. trabibus (Dīdōnis) = nāvibus Tyriīs.**

conlūcēre facēs, *jam* fervere *lītora flammīs*,
*sī tē hīs* attigerit *terrīs* Aurōra morantem.
Heia *age*, rumpe morās. "Varium *et* mūtābile semper
fēmina." *Sīc fātus noctī sē* immiscuit *ātrae*.
*Tum* vērō *Aenēās* subitīs exterritus *umbrīs*
corripit *ē somnō corpus sociōsque* fatīgat
praecipitīs: "Vigilāte, *virī*, *et* cōnsīdite trānstrīs;
solvite *vēla* citī. *Deus* aethere *missus ab altō*
fēstīnāre *fugam* tortōs*que* incīdere fūnīs
ecce iterum īnstimulat. *Sequimur tē*, sānc*te deōrum*,
quisquis *es*, *imperiōque* iterum pārēmus ovantēs.
*Adsīs Ō* placidus*que* juvēs *et sīdera caelō*
*dextra ferās.*" *Dīxit* vāgīnā*que ēripit* ēnsem
fulmineum strictō*que* ferit retināc*ula ferrō*.
*Īdem omnīs simul* ardor *habet*, rapiunt*que ruuntque;*
*lītora* dēseruēre, latet *sub classibus aequor*,

**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**ardor, ōris** *m.* ardor, zeal, heat†
**attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
**citus, a, um** swift, stirred, quick
**conlūceō, ēre, lūxī** shine, gleam, glare†
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle, subside*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**fatīgō** (1) worry, weary, harass, rouse
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand*
**fēmina, ae** *f.* woman, female
**feriō, īre** strike, smite, cut, kill
**ferv(e)ō, ĕre, (bu)ī** boil, glow
**fēstīnō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**fulmineus, a, um** flashing, lightning-like†
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cable, cord
**heia** ho! up! come!†
**immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mingle (in) (*dat.*)
**incīdō, ere, ī, sus** cut (into)
**īnstimulō** (1) goad (on), urge, prick†
**iterum** again, anew, a second time*
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk*
**mora, ae** *f.* (cause of) delay, hindrance*
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**mūtābilis, e** changeable, fickle†
**ovō** (1) rejoice, exult, triumph
**pāreō, ēre, uī, itus** obey, yield (*dat.*)
**placidus, a, um** calm, kind(ly), quiet*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**quisquis, quidquid** whoever, whichever, whatever
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), plunder*
**retināculum, ī** *n.* cable, rope, hawser†
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break (off), burst (forth), utter*
**sānctus, a, um** holy, sacred, revered*
**semper** always, ever, continually*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), relax, pay*
**stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus** brush, draw
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, whirl, sway*
**trānstrum, ī** *n.* rowing bench, thwart
**vāgīna, ae** *f.* sheath, scabbard†
**varius, a, um** varied, different, variable*
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**vigilō** (1) awake, wake (up), watch†

**567. fervĕre:** as though of the third conjugation, as in l. 409. **flammīs** (tuārum nāvium).

**568. attigerit:** fut. perf.

**569–570. Varium et mūtābile (est) fēmina:** *woman is ever fickle and a changeable thing.* Observe the gender of the adjectives. **noctī:** dat. with **immiscuit**; App. 298.

**571. umbrīs:** *apparition.*

**575. (nōs) fēstīnāre, (nōs) incīdere.**

**576. sānc te deōrum:** *holy god;* part. gen.; App. 286.

**578–579. Adsīs, juvēs, ferās:** vol. or opt.; App. 254, 253. **sīdera dextra:** *favorable weather.*

**581. Īdem ardor habet omnīs (Teucrōs). rapiuntque ruuntque:** alliteration; App. 411.

**582. dēseruēre:** instantaneous perfect.

adnixī torquent spūmās *et* caerula verrunt.
*Et jam prīma novō* spargēbat *lūmine terrās*
Tīthōnī croceum linquēns Aurōra cubīle.
*Rēgīna ē* speculīs *ut prīmam* albēscere *lūcem*
*vīdit et* aequātīs *classem* prōcēdere *vēlīs,*
*lītoraque et* vacuōs sēnsit sine rēmige *portūs,*
terque quaterque *manū pectus* percussa decōrum
flāventīsque abscissa comās "Prō *Juppiter! ībit*
*hic," ait "et nostrīs* inlūserit advena *rēgnīs?*
*Nōn arma* expedient *tōtāque ex urbe sequentur,*
dēripientque ratēs *aliī* nāvālibus? *Īte,*
*ferte* citī *flammās, date tēla,* impellite *rēmōs!*
*Quid* loquor? *Aut ubi sum? Quae mentem* īnsānia mūtat?
*Īnfēlīx Dīdō, nunc tē* facta impia tangunt?
*Tum* decuit, *cum* scēptra *dabās.* Ēn *dextra* fidēsque,

---

**abscindō, ere, scidī, scissus** tear, cut off
**adnītor, ī, sus** (**nixus**) lean (on), strive
**advena, ae** *m.* foreigner, adventurer†
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), level, square*
**albēscō, ere** become white†
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
**caerula, ōrum** *n.* the (blue) sea
**citus, a, um** quick, excited, swift
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**croceus, a, um** yellow, saffron, ruddy
**cubīle, is** *n.* couch, bed
**decet, ēre, uit** be becoming, be fitting†
**decōrus, a, um** beautiful, glorious, seemly
**dēripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch up, tear down
**ēn** see! look! behold!
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** disentangle, prepare, bring forth
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, achievement, act*
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, trust, fidelity*
**flāvēns, entis** yellow, tawny, blond†
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive on, impel
**impius, a, um** wicked, disloyal
**inlūdō, ere, sī, sus** mock, flout (*dat.*)
**īnsānia, ae** *f.* madness, frenzy, folly
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, forsake*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, tell, talk*
**mūtō** (ex)change, transform, alter*
**nāvālia, ium** *n.* shipyard, arsenal†
**percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** strike, shatter
**prō** oh! ah!
**prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** advance
**quater** four times
**ratēs, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**rēmex, igis** *m.* rower, oarsman, crew†
**scēptrum, ī** *n.* scepter, (royal) power
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** feel, perceive
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**specula, ae** *f.* watch tower, lookout
**spūma, ae** *f.* foam, froth, spray
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**ter** three times, thrice*
**Tīthōnus, ī** *m.* husband of Aurora†
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, whirl, sway*
**vacuus, a, um** empty, free, deserted
**verrō, ere, ī, rsus** sweep (over), scour

---

**584–629. Dido's frenzy increases as from her palace window she sees the Trojan fleet depart. She again calls down curses on Aeneas and his followers and prays that some avenger may rise from her ashes to punish such perfidy.**

**586. ē speculīs = arce ex summā:** l. 410.

**587. aequātīs vēlīs:** the god has sent a favorable breeze blowing directly from behind.

**588. vacuōs:** predicate to both **lītora** and **portūs**; App. 238, 239.

**589–591. pectus, comās:** objects of the middle participles **percussa** and **abscissa**; App. 309, *a.* **terque quaterque:** *three times, yea even four times,* as in I, 94. **flāventīs comās:** blondes were much admired and preferred by the Greeks and Romans. **inlūserit:** fut. perf. **advena:** used scornfully, like English *adventurer.*

**591. hic:** pronounce **hicc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.*

**592. Nōn(ne) (Tyriī) expedient arma.**

**596. facta impia:** her unfaithfulness to the memory of Sychaeus.

**597. Tum decuit (tua facta impia**

*quem sēcum patriōs ajunt* portāre penātīs,
*quem subiisse umerīs* cōnfectum aetāte *parentem!*
*Nōn potuī* abreptum dīvellere *corpus et undīs*
spargere? *Nōn sociōs, nōn ipsum* absūmere *ferrō*
Ascanium *patriīsque* epulandum *pōnere* mēnsīs?
Vērum anceps pugnae *fuerat fortūna. — Fuisset:*
*quem* metuī moritūra? Facēs *in* castra *tulissem*
implēssem*que* forōs *flammīs nātumque patremque*
*cum genere* exstīnxem, *mēmet super ipsa dedissem.*
Sōl, *quī terrārum flammīs* opera *omnia* lūstrās,
*tūque hārum* interpres *cūrārum et* cōnscia *Jūnō,*
nocturnīs*que* Hecatē triviīs ululāta *per urbēs*
*et* Dīrae ultrīcēs *et dī* morientis Elissae,
*accipite haec,* meritum*que* malīs advertite *nūmen*
*et nostrās audīte* precēs. *Sī* tangere *portūs*

**abripiō, ere, uī, reptus** tear away, seize
**absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** destroy, consume
**advertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn to, heed
**aetās, ātis** *f.* age, life, time (of life)
**anceps, cipitis** doubtful, double
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment*
**cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** accomplish; wear out
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious; confederate
**Dīrae, ārum** *f.* Furies
**dīvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear in pieces
**Elissa, ae** *f.* Dido, queen of Carthage
**epulor, ārī, ātus** feast (upon), banquet
**exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** destroy, blot out, extinguish
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand*
**forus, ī** *m.* deck, gangway†
**Hecatē, ēs** *f.* goddess of the lower world, identified with Diana
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**interpres, etis** *m.* (*f.*) interpreter, agent
**lūstrō** (1) survey; traverse; purify*
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, sin, misfortune, trouble*
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**metuō, ere, uī** fear, dread, be anxious
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**nocturnus, a, um** of the night, nocturnal
**opus, eris** *n.* work, achievement, task*
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**portō** (1) bear, carry, bring, take*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, imprecation, curse*
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, combat, fray*
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**trivium, (i)ī** *n.* junction of three roads, crossroads†
**ultrīx, īcis** avenging; avenger
**ululō** (1) howl, wail, invoke, shriek
**vērum** but (yet), truly

**tangere tē), cum scēptra dabās (Aenēae). dextra fidēsque (ejus).**

**598. ajunt:** pronounce **ajjunt**, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, *b*.

**599. quem (ajunt).**

**600. Nōn** = **nōnne**, as often.

**602. epulandum:** a form of revenge mentioned more than once in ancient legend, the best-known instance being the famous feast where the sons of Thyestes were slain and served up to their father in a banquet.

**603. fuerat:** mixed condition; App. 382, *d*. **Fuisset:** concessive; (*suppose*) *it had been* (*so*); App. 384.

**604–606. quem metuī moritūra:** *whom had I to fear, since I was going to die anyway?* **castra:** where the Trojan ships were beached and protected. **tulissem, implē(vi)ssem, exstīnx(iss)em, dedissem:** *I could have hurled*, etc.; the subjunctives are best taken as potential; App. 252. **cum genere (Teucrōrum). mē dedissem (in ignīs).**

**609. Hecatē triviīs:** *Diana of the Crossroads*, where she was worshipped at night by weird cries, howls of dogs, and various magical ceremonies.

**612–629.** The curse of a dying person was supposed to be especially potent and almost sure to be fulfilled by the gods. Vergil represents this curse as being later fulfilled literally in the life and fortunes of Aeneas.

īnfandum *caput ac terrīs* adnāre necesse *est*,
*et sīc fāta Jovis* poscunt, *hic* terminus haeret:
*at bellō* audācis populī vexātus *et armīs*,
*fīnibus* extorris, complexū āvulsus Iūlī
auxilium implōret *videatque* indigna *suōrum*
fūnera; *nec, cum sē sub* lēgēs pācis inīquae
trādiderit, *rēgnō aut* optātā *lūce* fruātur,
*sed* cadat *ante diem mediāque* inhumātus harēnā.
*Haec* precor, *hanc vōcem* extrēmam *cum sanguine fundō*.
*Tum vōs, Ō Tyriī*, stirpem *et genus omne futūrum*
exercēte odiīs, cinerī*que haec mittite nostrō*
*mūnera*. *Nūllus amor* populīs *nec* foedera *suntō*.
Exoriāre aliquis *nostrīs ex* ossibus ultor
*quī* face Dardaniōs *ferrōque sequāre* colōnōs,
*nunc*, ōlim, quōcumque *dabunt sē tempore vīrēs*.

---

**adnō** (1) swim (float) to (*dat.*)
**aliquis, qua, quid** some (one, thing)*
**audāx, ācis** daring, bold, valiant†
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* aid, help, assistance*
**āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear from
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**colōnus, ī** *m.* settler, colonist, farmer
**complexus, ūs** *m.* embrace, grasp
**Dardan(i)us, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** work, harass*
**exorior, īrī, ortus** (a)rise, spring up
**extorris, e** outside, foreign†
**extrēmus, a, um** final, last, extreme*
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, fire(brand)*
**foedus, eris** *n.* treaty, agreement, truce
**fruor, ī, frūctus (fruitus)** enjoy (*abl.*)
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling (to), stand fixed*
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**implōrō** (1) implore, beseech, entreat†
**indignus, a, um** unworthy, undeserved
**īnfandus, a, um** unspeakable, unutterable
**inhumātus, a, um** unburied
**inīquus, a, um** unequal, unjust, unfair
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**lēx, lēgis** *f.* law, condition, compact
**necesse** *indecl.* necessary; necessity
**odium, (i)ī** *n.* hatred, enmity, grudge
**ōlim** once, formerly, at some time*
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, favor, agreement
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat, invoke*
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whichever, whatever*
**stirps, pis** *m.* (*f.*) stock, lineage, stem, race
**terminus, ī** *m.* boundary, goal, end†
**trādō, ere, didī, ditus** deliver, transfer†
**ultor, ōris** *m.* avenger
**vexō** (1) agitate, vex, harass, annoy†

---

**613. īnfandum caput** = Aeneas.

**615–620.** It was customary even up to recent times to open at random some revered book such as the *Bible* or the *Aeneid*, and take the first passage meeting the eye as a prophecy of the future. It is said that Charles I of England once tried this and opened the *Aeneid* at this fateful passage; Introd. 9.

**615. audācis populī**: this people proved to be the Rutulians.

**616. fīnibus**: abl. of separation.

**617–620. implōret, videat, fruātur, cadat**: volitives or optatives; App. 254, 253. **lūce** (**vītae**). (**sit**) **inhumātus.**

**621** ff. Dido's second prophecy and prayer are also framed in such a way as to find fulfillment in the Second Punic War, when in the "eternal enmity" between Rome and Carthage, Hannibal arose as Dido's avenger (**ultor**) and brought the Roman Republic to the verge of ruin.

**624. populīs**: Rome and Carthage; dat. of possession.

**625. Exoriāre** ( = **exoriāris**): vol.; App. 254; *rise some avenger!*

**626. quī sequāre** ( = **sequāris**): rel. clause of purpose or of characteristic; App. 388, 389.

**627. dabunt sē** = **dabuntur.**

*Lītora lītoribus* contrāria, *flūctibus undās*
imprecor, *arma armīs:* pugnent *ipsīque* nepōtēsque."
*Haec ait, et partīs animum* versābat *in omnīs,*
invīsam *quaerēns* quam *prīmum* abrumpere *lūcem.*
*Tum* breviter Barcēn nūtrīcem adfāta Sychaeī,
*namque suam* patriā *antīquā* cinis *āter habēbat:*
"Annam, cāra *mihī* nūtrix, *hūc* siste sorōrem:
*dīc corpus* properet fluviālī spargere lymphā,
*et* pecudēs *sēcum et* mōnstrāta piācula *dūcat.*
*Sīc veniat, tūque ipsa piā* tege tempora vittā.
*Sacra Jovī* Stygiō, *quae* rīte incepta *parāvī,*
perficere *est animus fīnemque* impōnere *cūrīs*
Dardaniīque rogum *capitis* permittere *flammae.*"
*Sīc ait. Illa* gradum studiō celebrābat anīlī.

---

**abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break off
**adfor, ārī, ātus** address, accost*
**anīlis, e** of an old woman, aged†
**Anna, ae** *f.* sister of Dido
**Barcē, ēs** *f.* nurse of Dido's deceased husband Sychaeus†
**breviter** briefly, shortly, concisely
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**celebrō** (1) frequent; repeat; hasten
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead); tomb*
**contrārius, a, um** opposite, opposed
**Dardan(i)us, a, um** Trojan, Dardanian*
**fluviālis, e** of a stream, flowing†
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place (on, to) (*dat.*)*
**imprecor, ārī, ātus** imprecate, invoke†
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**invīsus, a, um** hated, hateful, odious
**lympha, ae** *f.* water
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out, instruct*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**nūtrīx, īcis** *f.* nurse
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal (of the flock)*
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** finish, complete
**permittō, ere, mīsī, missus** permit, commit
**piāculum, ī** *n.* expiation, expiatory offering†
**properō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**pugnō** (1) fight, battle, oppose, contend
**quam** how, than, as; **quam prīmum** as soon as possible*
**rīte** duly, properly, ritually
**rogus, ī** *m.* funeral pyre†
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** stand, station, stop
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* desire, zeal, eagerness
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river in Hades*
**Sychaeus, ī** *m.* deceased husband of Dido
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**versō** (1) keep turning, roll, revolve
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

---

**628–629. contrāria:** with **lītora, undās** and **arma. pugnent:** vol. or opt.; App. 254, 253. The verse is hypermetric; App. 402.

**630–705. That nothing may interrupt her plan Dido sends away her husband's old nurse Barce and kills herself with Aeneas's sword on top of the pyre.**

**631. quam prīmum:** *as soon as possible.*

**633. suam (nūtrīcem).** **suam** irregularly referring to Dido rather than to the subject of the sentence; App. 248, *a.*

**635. dīc:** imp.; App. 202. **(ut) properet:** subj. in indir. disc. for imp.; App. 390. **spargere:** as a ceremony of purification.

**637. Sīc:** with the animals for sacrifice, after she has duly purified herself. Dido's real object is to delay the return of the nurse and her sister so that she may kill herself in the meantime.

**638. Jovī Stygiō** = Pluto.

**639. est animus (mihi)** = **volō**; App. 264. Dido is concealing her real purpose.

**640. Dardaniī capitis** = Aeneas, whose name Dido avoids mentioning.

**641. Illa:** Barce, the nurse.

*At* trepida *et* coeptīs *immānibus* effera *Dīdō*
sanguineam *volvēns* aciem, maculīs*que* trementīs
interfūsa genās *et* pallida *morte futūrā*,
interiōra *domūs* inrumpit *līmina et altōs*
cōnscendit furibunda gradūs ēnsem*que* reclūdit
Dardanium, *nōn hōs quaesītum mūnus in* ūsūs.
*Hīc*, postquam Īliacās vestīs nōtum*que* cubīle
cōnspexit, paulum *lacrimīs et mente* morāta
incubuit*que* torō *dīxitque novissima* verba:
"Dulcēs exuviae, *dum fāta deusque* sinēbat,
*accipite hanc animam mēque hīs* exsolvite *cūrīs*.
Vīxī *et quem dederat cursum fortūna* perēgī,
*et nunc magna meī sub terrās ībit* imāgō.
*Urbem* praeclāram statuī, *mea moenia vīdī*,
ulta *virum poenās* inimīcō *ā* frātre recēpī,
fēlīx, *heu* nimium fēlīx, *sī lītora* tantum

---

**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge, line, eye(sight)*
**coeptum, ī** *n.* undertaking, beginning
**cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** mount, climb
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold
**cubīle, is** *n.* couch, bed
**Dardan(i)us, a, um** Trojan, Dardanian*
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**efferus, a, um** wild, savage, mad†
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**exsolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free†
**exuviae, ārum** *f.* spoils, relics, mementos
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, fortunate, blessed*
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**furibundus, a, um** wild, frenzied†
**gena, ae** *f.* cheek†
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**imāgō, inis** *f.* likeness, image, ghost, soul, form*
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** recline on (*dat.*)
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, enemy, unfriendly
**inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break into†
**interfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour among, suffuse†
**interior, ius** inner, interior
**macula, ae** *f.* spot, splotch, stain†
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, hesitate, hinder*
**nimium** too (much), excessively†
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**pallidus, a, um** pale, wan, pallid
**paulum** (a) little, slightly, somewhat
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** accomplish, finish
**postquam** after (that), when*
**praeclārus, a, um** very renowned†
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, take*
**reclūdō, ere, sī, sus** open, unsheathe
**sanguineus, a, um** bloody, bloodshot
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** permit, allow*
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** set (up), found
**tantum** so much, only, merely
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**trepidus, a, um** trembling, excited
**ulcīscor, ī, ultus** avenge, punish
**ūsus, ūs** *m.* use, service, employment
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech, talk
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus** live, be alive

---

**642.** **coeptīs**: abl. of cause.

**643.** **aciem** (oculōrum).

**644.** **genās**: acc. of respect; App. 311.

**645.** **interiōra līmina**: of the inner court, where the pyre had been erected.

**647.** **quaesītum**: Dido had apparently begged the sword of Aeneas, who had given it to her as a keepsake.

**648.** **Īliacās vestīs**: some more presents from Aeneas; cf. I, 648 ff.

**649.** **lacrimīs et mente**: *in tearful recollection;* abl. of manner; App. 328.

**650.** **novissima**: *last.*

**652.** **exsolvite** (**per mortem**).

**657.** **fēlīx** (**fuissem**): implied conclusion of a condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

numquam Dardaniae tetigissent *nostra* carīnae."
*Dīxit, et ōs* impressa torō "Moriēmur inultae,
*sed* moriāmur" *ait.* "*Sīc, sīc* juvat *īre sub umbrās.*
Hauriat *hunc oculīs ignem* crūdēlis *ab* altō
Dardanus, *et nostrae sēcum ferat* ōmina *mortis.*"
*Dīxerat, atque illam media inter tālia ferrō*
conlāpsam aspiciunt *comitēs,* ēnsem*que* cruōre
spūmantem sparsās*que manūs. It clāmor ad alta*
ātria: concussam bacchātur *Fāma per urbem.*
Lāmentīs gemitū*que et* fēmineō ululātū
*tecta* fremunt, resonat *magnīs* plangōribus aethēr,
*nōn* aliter quam *sī* immissīs *ruat* hostibus *omnis*
Karthāgō *aut antīqua* Tyros, *flammaeque furentēs*
culmina *perque* hominum *volvantur perque deōrum.*
*Audiit* exanimis trepidō*que* exterrita *cursū*
unguibus *ōra* soror foedāns *et pectora* pugnīs
*per mediōs ruit, ac* morientem *nōmine* clāmat:

---

**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**aliter** otherwise, differently*
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold*
**ātrium, (i)ī** *n.* hall, court, atrium
**bacchor, ārī, ātus** rave, rush wildly
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**clāmō** (1) shriek, cry (out), call (on)†
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake, shatter
**conlābor, ī, lāpsus** fall in a heap, faint
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, harsh, bloody*
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**culmen, inis** *n.* roof, peak, summit, top*
**Dardan(i)us, (i)ī** *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
**Dardan(i)us, a, um** Trojan, Dardanian*
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**exanimis, e** breathless, lifeless†
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**fēmineus, a, um** feminine, of women
**foedō** (1) pollute, defile, disfigure
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** shout, roar, groan*
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drain, drink (in)
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, human, mortal*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let in, send in
**imprimō, ere, pressī, pressus** press (upon), imprint†
**inultus, a, um** unavenged, unpunished
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**Karthāgō, inis** *f.* city of North Africa
**lāmenta, ōrum** *n.* lamentation, shriek†
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**numquam** never, at no time
**ōmen, inis** *n.* portent, omen, sign*
**plangor, ōris** *m.* wailing, beating (of breast)
**pugnus, ī** *m.* fist†
**quam** how, than, as*
**resonō** (1) (re)sound, roar
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
**trepidus, a, um** trembling, excited
**Tyrus (os), ī** *f.* city of Phoenicia, birthplace of Dido
**ululātus, ūs** *m.* wail, shriek, howl, shout†
**unguis, is** *m.* nail, claw†

---

**659. ōs:** obj. of the middle part. **impressa;** a farewell kiss.

**660. Sīc, sīc:** possibly Dido stabs herself with each **sīc.**

**661–662. Hauriat, ferat:** volitives; App. 254. **Dardanus** = Aeneas. **ōmina:** which will bring him continual sorrow and misfortune.

**663. ferrō:** abl. of means.

**667. fēmineō ululātū:** hiatus; App. 399.

**669. quam sī ruat:** conditional clause of comparison; App. 383.

**670. Tyrŏs:** nom. sing., a Greek form; App. 67.

**671. culmina (tēctōrum Dīdōnis).**

**672. cursū:** abl. of manner.

**673. ōra foedāns et pectora:** as an expression of grief.



A Roman Peristyle

The court of a Roman house in the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York, around which the antiquities of the Museum are exhibited



*Alinari, Rome*

*Guercino*

THE DEATH OF DIDO

Until comparatively recently artists painted classical or biblical characters in contemporary costume. Dido is here garbed like a seventeenth-century Italian lady.

"*Hoc illud,* germāna, *fuit? Mē* fraude *petēbās?*
*Hoc* rogus iste *mihi, hoc ignēs āraeque parābant?*
*Quid prīmum* dēserta querar? *Comitemne* sorōrem
sprēvistī moriēns? *Eadem mē ad fāta vocāssēs:*
*īdem* ambās *ferrō* dolor *atque eadem* hōra *tulisset.*
*Hīs* etiam strūxī *manibus patriōsque vocāvī*
*vōce deōs, sīc tē ut positā,* crūdēlis, abessem?
Exstīnxtī *tē mēque,* soror, populum*que patrēsque*
Sīdoniōs *urbemque tuam. Date,* vulnera lymphīs
abluam *et,* extrēmus *sī quis super* hālitus *errat,*
*ōre* legam." *Sīc fāta* gradūs ēvāserat *altōs,*
sēmianimem*que* sinū germānam amplexa fovēbat
*cum* gemitū *atque ātrōs* siccābat veste cruōrēs.
*Illa* gravīs *oculōs* cōnāta attollere rūrsus
dēficit; īnfīxum strīdit *sub pectore* vulnus.
Ter *sēsē* attollēns cubitō*que* adnixa levāvit,
ter revolūta torō *est oculīsque errantibus altō*

**abluō, ere, uī, ūtus** wash (off)
**absum, esse, āfuī** be away, be distant
**adnītor, ī, sus** (**nixus**) lean on, struggle
**ambō, ae, ō** both
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold*
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**cōnor, ārī, ātus** attempt, try, endeavor
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bloody, hardhearted*
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**cubitum, ī** *n.* elbow, arm†
**dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** fail, faint
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**etiam** also, even*
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** go forth (from), pass over
**exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** blot out, destroy, extinguish
**extrēmus, a, um,** final, last, extreme*
**foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus** fondle, cherish
**fraus, fraudis** *f.* deceit, guile, fraud†
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan, roar, lament*
**germāna, ae** *f.* sister
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**hālitus, ūs** *m.* breath, exhalation†
**hōra, ae** *f.* hour, season, time
**īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, pierce, fasten
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, gather, catch*
**levō** (1) lift, lighten, raise, relieve
**lympha, ae** *f.* water
**morior, ī, mortuus** die, perish*
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**queror, ī, questus** complain, (be)wail
**revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** roll over, revolve
**rogus, ī** *m.* funeral pyre
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**sēmianimis, e** half-dead, dying†
**siccō** (1) dry, stanch†
**Sīdonius, a, um** Sidonian, of Sidon, a city of Phoenicia
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold; bosom; bay; hollow*
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**spernō, ere, sprēvī, sprētus** scorn, reject
**strīd(e)ō, ĕre, ī** hiss, gurgle, rustle
**struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build, plan
**ter** three times, thrice*
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting, funeral) couch, bed*
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

**675–676. Hoc, hoc:** pronounce **hocc,** making a long syllable. **Hoc (fuit) illud (quod parābās):** *was this* (your own death) *that which you were planning?*

**677. Quid querar:** deliberative question; App. 348.

**678–679. vocā(vi)ssēs, tulisset:** best taken as optatives; App. 253.

**680. strūxī (tuum rogum).**

**681. ut abessem:** purpose; App. 359.

**682. Exstīnx(is)tī.**

**684. (ut) abluam:** an obj. clause. **super:** adv.

**685. ōre legam:** it was a Roman custom to catch with a kiss the last breath of a dying kinsman or friend. **gradūs:** of the funeral pyre.

**686. sēmianimem:** pronounce **sēmjanimem** here; App. 401.

**689. strīdit:** from the gurgling blood.

**690. cubitō:** abl. of means with **adnītor.**

**691. (in) torō.**

*quaesīvit caelō lūcem* ingemuit*que* repertā.
*Tum Jūnō* omnipotēns *longum* miserāta dolōrem
difficilīs*que* obitūs Īrim dēmīsit Olympō
*quae* luctantem *animam* nexōs*que* resolveret artūs.
*Nam* quia *nec fātō* meritā *nec morte* perībat,
*sed misera ante diem* subitō*que* accēnsa furōre,
nōndum *illī* flāvum Prōserpina vertice crīnem
abstulerat Stygiō*que caput* damnāverat Orcō.
Ergō Īris croceīs *per caelum* rōscida pennīs
mīlle *trahēns* variōs adversō sōle colōrēs
dēvolat *et* suprā *caput* astitit. "*Hunc ego* Dītī
*sacrum jussa ferō tēque* istō *corpore* solvō."
*Sīc ait et dextrā* crīnem secat: *omnis et* ūnā
dīlāpsus calor *atque in ventōs vīta* recessit.

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, burn
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, member*
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (ready, by)*
**auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus** take away
**calor, ōris** *m.* heat, warmth, glow
**color, ōris** *m.* color, hue, tint
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**croceus, a, um** yellow, saffron, ruddy
**damnō** (1) condemn, sentence, doom, devote†
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down, let go, drop, lower*
**dēvolō** (1) fly down†
**difficilis, e** difficult, hard, painful†
**dīlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide away, depart†
**Dīs, Dītis** *m.* Pluto, god of the lower world†
**dolor, ōris,** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**flāvus, a, um** yellow, tawny, blond
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
**ingemō, ere, uī** groan, roar, lament
**Īris, (id)is** *f.* goddess of the rainbow, messenger of Juno†
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**luctor, ārī, ātus** struggle, wrestle
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**mīlle;** *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**nectō, ere, nexuī, nexus** weave, fasten, bind
**nōndum** not yet
**obitus, ūs** *m.* death, downfall, ruin†
**Olympus, ī** *m.* high Greek mountain, home of the gods; heaven
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**Orcus, ī** *m.* (god of) the lower world, Hades
**penna, ae** *f.* wing, feather
**pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** perish, die
**Prōserpina, ae** *f.* Pluto's queen, goddess of the lower world†
**quia** because
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart, withdraw
**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus** find
**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free
**rōscidus, a, um** dewy†
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, cleave, slice*
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free, pay*
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river in Hades*
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**suprā** above, over (*acc.*)
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**varius, a, um** varied, different, diverse*
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, peak, head, summit*

**692.** **repertā (lūce):** abl. abs.

**695.** **nexōs (animae). resolveret:** rel. clause of purpose; App. 388. For the thought see the note on l. 385.

**696.** **fātō:** natural death was supposed to be occasioned by a decree of the gods.

**698.** **illī:** dat. of reference. **Prōserpina:** she was supposed to cut a lock from the head of the dying, as a sort of offering to the gods of the lower world.

**701.** The rainbow. **adversō sōle:** abl. abs. denoting cause.

**702–703.** **Hunc (crīnem). ego jussa (ā Jūnōne). istō** = tuō, as often.

**705.** **in ventōs:** the soul was identified with the breath, **anima, spīritus** (cf. the English word *spirit*) and at death vanished into the air.

# BOOK V

INTEREĀ *medium Aenēās jam classe tenēbat*
certus iter *flūctūsque ātrōs* Aquilōne secābat
*moenia* respiciēns, *quae jam īnfēlīcis* Elissae
conlūcent *flammīs. Quae tantum* accenderit *ignem*
causa latet; dūrī *magnō sed amōre* dolōrēs
pollūtō, nōtum*que furēns quid* fēmina *possit,*
*trīste per* augurium *Teucrōrum pectora dūcunt.*
*Ut pelagus tenuēre* ratēs *nec jam* amplius *ūlla*
occurrit *tellūs, maria* undique *et* undique *caelum,*
*ollī* caeruleus suprā *caput* astitit imber

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, kindle
**amplius** more, farther
**Aquilō, ōnis** *m.* (north) wind
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (ready, by)*
**augurium, (i)ī** *n.* portent, prophecy
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue)*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**certus, a, um** certain, determined, fixed*
**conlūceō, ēre** shine (brightly), glare
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**Elissa, ae** *f.* Dido
**fēmina, ae** *f.* woman, female
**imber, bris** *m.* rain, cloud, storm, flood
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk*
**nōtum, ī,** *n.* knowledge
**occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** (run to) meet (*dat.*)
**polluō, ere, uī, ūtus** defile, outrage, profane
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back) at*
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, cleave, slice*
**suprā** above, over (*acc.*)
**undique** on (from) all sides*

**1–41. On sailing from Carthage for Italy, Aeneas is driven by a tempest to Drepanum in Sicily, where Anchises had died the previous year. King Acestes again hospitably receives the Trojans.**

The fifth book of the *Aeneid* forms a restful episode in the midst of the stirring action of the poem. This episode, with its somewhat tedious account of the games, does not serve any useful purpose in advancing the plot of the poem and may be omitted with less loss than any other of the six books. The fifth book, however, gives the poet a fine opportunity to develop the character of his hero as **pius Aenēās,** as here displayed in his deep devotion to the memory of his dead father. This is the best justification for the episode. It also furnishes an interesting picture of an ancient athletic contest.

**1. Intereā:** while Dido carries out her plan to commit suicide.

**2. Aquilōne:** with **ātrōs:** specific (north wind) for the general (wind), and really inapplicable here since the Trojans were sailing north. As often, the poet sacrifices logical consistency for the sake of vividness or metrical convenience.

**4–5. Quae causa accenderit:** indir. quest.; App. 349.

**5–7. dūrī magnō sed amōre,** etc.: *but the harsh sufferings when a great love is profaned and the knowledge (of) what a love-crazed woman may do lead the hearts of the Trojans through gloomy forebodings.* **amōre pollūtō:** from Dido's point of view; abl. abs. **quid possit:** indir.

*noctem* hiememque *ferēns et* inhorruit *unda* tenebrīs.
*Ipse* gubernātor *puppī* Palinūrus *ab altā:*
"*Heu* quianam *tantī* cīnxērunt aethera nimbī?
*Quidve, pater* Neptūne, *parās?*" *Sīc* deinde locūtus
colligere *arma jubet* validīsque incumbere *rēmīs*,
oblīquatque sinūs *in ventum ac tālia fātur:*
"Magnanime *Aenēā, nōn, sī mihi Juppiter* auctor
spondeat, *hōc* spērem *Ītaliam* contingere *caelō*.
Mūtātī trānsversa fremunt *et* vespere *ab ātrō*
cōnsurgunt *ventī, atque in* nūbem cōgitur āēr.
*Nec nōs* obnītī contrā *nec tendere tantum*
sufficimus. Superat quoniam *Fortūna, sequāmur,*
*quōque vocat* vertāmus iter. *Nec lītora* longē
fīda reor frāterna Erycis *portūsque* Sicānōs,
*sī* modo rīte memor *servāta* remētior astra."

---

**āēr, āeris** *m.* air, mist, fog
**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, sky*
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**auctor, ōris** *m.* founder, originator, sponsor
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** force (together)*
**colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** collect, gather
**cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise†
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus,** touch, reach*
**contrā** against, opposite (*acc.*); in opposition*
**deinde** then, thence, thereupon*
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* son of Venus and half-brother of Aeneas; settled in Sicily
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, safe, trustworthy*
**frāternus, a, um** fraternal, of a brother
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** roar, groan, shout*
**gubernātor, ōris** *m.* pilot, helmsman
**hiems, emis** *f.* winter, storm*
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** recline on, bend to (*dat.*)
**inhorrēscō, ere, horruī** grow rough, shudder
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**longē** (from) afar, far off*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, tell, talk*
**magnanimus, a, um** noble, great-souled
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
**modo** only, (just) now
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**nimbus, ī** *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
**oblīquō** (1) turn sideways, slope, slant†
**obnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** lean against, struggle
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot*
**quianam** why? wherefore?†
**quoniam** since, because
**remētior, īrī, mēnsus** remeasure, retraverse
**reor, rērī, ratus** suppose, think, reckon
**rīte** duly, correctly, ritually
**Sicānus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily†
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold (of sails); bosom, bay*
**spērō** (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
**spondeō, ēre, spopondī, spōnsus** promise, vouch for†
**sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** suffice, be able
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
**tenebrae, ārum** *f.* darkness, gloom
**trānsversa** *adv.* crosswise, athwart (one's course)†
**validus, a, um** strong, powerful, stout
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vesper, eris (erī)** *m.* evening (star), west

---

quest., in apposition with **nōtum**; App. 349. **pectora = animōs, mentīs.**

**15–16. arma (nāvium) = vēla,** etc. **sinūs (vēlōrum).**

**17. auctor:** (*as*) *guarantor.*

**18. spondeat:** less vivid fut. condition; App. 381. **spērem:** conclusion.

**20. cōgitur āēr:** the ancients thought that clouds were composed of condensed air.

**23. lītora (abesse):** indir. statement with **reor**; App. 263.

**24. frātērna = frātris tuī.**

**25. servāta astra:** *previously observed,* i.e., on their voyage from Sicily to Carthage.

*Tum pius Aenēās:* "Equidem *sīc* poscere *ventōs*
jamdūdum *et* frūstrā *cernō tē tendere* contrā.
Flecte *viam vēlīs.* An *sit mihi* grātior *ūlla,*
*quōve* magis *fessās* optem dēmittere *nāvīs,*
quam *quae* Dardanium *tellūs mihi servat Acestēn* 30
*et patris Anchīsae* gremiō complectitur ossa?"
*Haec ubi dicta, petunt portūs et vēla* secundī
intendunt Zephyrī; *fertur* cita gurgite *classis,*
*et tandem laetī* nōtae advertuntur harēnae.
*At procul ex* celsō mīrātus vertice *montis* 35
adventum sociās*que* ratēs occurrit *Acestēs,*
horridus *in* jaculīs *et* pelle Libystidis ursae,
Trōia Crīnīsō conceptum flūmine *māter*
*quem* genuit. Veterum *nōn* immemor *ille parentum*
grātātur reducēs *et* gazā *laetus* agrestī 40

---

**adventus, ūs** *m.* arrival, approach†
**advertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn to (*dat.*)
**agrestis, e** of the fields, rustic
**an** whether, or*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**citus, a, um** quick, swift, excited
**complector, ī, plexus** embrace, hold
**concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** conceive
**contrā** opposite, against, in opposition*
**Crīnīsus, ī** *m.* river (god) of Sicily†
**Dardanius, a, um** Trojan, Dardanian*
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send down, land, lower, drop*
**equidem** indeed, surely, truly*
**flectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, turn
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**gaza, ae** *f.* treasure, wealth
**gignō, ere, genuī, genitus** beget, bear
**grātor, ārī, ātus** congratulate, wish joy to
**grātus, a, um** agreeable, welcome
**gremium, (i)ī** *n.* bosom; lap; embrace
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirlpool, deep sea*
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**horridus, a, um** rough, bristling
**immemor, oris** unmindful, forgetful
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, strain
**jaculum, ī** *n.* spear, dart
**jamdūdum** long since, for some time
**Libystis, idis** *f.* Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa†
**magis** more, rather, preferably*
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire*
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** (run to) meet
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**pellis, is** *f.* skin, hide, pelt
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, require, ask (for, to)*
**quam** how, than, as*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**redux, ucis** led back, returned, restored
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable*
**socius, a, um** allied, fellow, friendly
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**ursa, ae** *f.* she-bear†
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, peak, head*
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*
**Zephyrus, ī** *m.* (west) wind

---

**27. cernō:** of a past action continuing into the present; *I (have long perceived and still) perceive;* App. 351, 1, *b.*

**28. vēlīs:** abl. of means. **ūlla (tellūs) sit:** potential; App. 252.

**29. quō optem:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **quō = ad quam.**

**30. quam** (*than*) **tellūs quae.**

**33. gurgite = undā:** abl. of route; App. 338.

**36. occurrit (illīs).**

**37. pelle:** commonly worn in earlier times.

**38. māter:** Egesta or Segesta. **Crīnīsō flūmine:** abl. of source; App. 323.

**39. Veterum parentum:** *his ancestry,* which makes him related to Aeneas and the other Trojans.

**40. (Teucrōs) reducēs.**

excipit, *ac fessōs* opibus sōlātur amīcīs.
Postera *cum prīmō* stēllās Oriente fugārat
clāra *diēs, sociōs in* coetum *lītore ab omnī*
advocat *Aenēās* tumulī*que ex* aggere *fātur:*
"Dardanidae *magnī, genus altō ā sanguine dīvum,*
annuus exāctīs complētur mēnsibus orbis,
*ex quō* relliquiās dīvīnī*que* ossa *parentis*
condidimus *terrā* maestās*que* sacrāvimus *ārās.*
*Jamque diēs,* nisi fallor, *adest, quem* semper acerbum,
semper honōrātum (*sīc dī voluistis*) *habēbō.*
*Hunc ego* Gaetūlīs *agerem sī* Syrtibus exsul,
Argolicō*ve marī* dēprēnsus *et urbe* Mycēnae,
annua vōta tamen sollemnīs*que* ordine pompās
exsequerer strueremque *suīs* altāria *dōnīs.*

---

**acerbus, a, um** bitter, grievous, harsh
**advocō** (1) call (to), summon, invite†
**agger, eris** *m.* mound, embankment
**altāria, ium** *n.* altar
**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)*
**annuus, a, um** annual, yearly†
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**coetus, ūs** *m.* assembly, throng, troop
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, found; hide, bury*
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Dardanus, Trojan
**dēpre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** seize, catch†
**dīvīnus, a, um** divine, sacred, sainted
**exāctus, a, um** completed; learned
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, reply
**exsequor, ī, secūtus** fulfil, perform
**exsul, ulis** *m.* (*f.*) exile, refugee
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, trick*
**fugō** (1) rout, put to flight, disperse
**Gaetūlus, a, um** Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli, a North African tribe
**honōrō** (1) honor, respect, venerate, revere†
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mēnsis, is** *m.* month
**Mycēnae (a), ārum (ae),** *f.* city of Greece, capital of Agamemnon
**nisi, nī** if not, unless*
**ops, opis** *f.* help, wealth, resources, power*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, circuit, orb(it), earth*
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, rank, succession*
**Oriēns, entis** *m.* East, dawn
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**pompa, ae** *f.* (solemn) procession, festival†
**posterus, a, um** later, following
**re(l)liquiae, ārum** *f.* remains, remnant, leavings, relics
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
**semper** always, ever, continually*
**sollemnis, e** solemn, annual, stated
**sōlor, ārī, ātus** console, comfort, solace
**stēlla, ae** *f.* star, constellation
**struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** heap up, build
**Syrtis, is** *f.* sand-banks off the northern coast of Africa
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

**42–71. Announcement of the funeral games in honor of Anchises, and the prizes for the various contests.**

**42.** fugā(ve)rat.

**44. tumulīque ex aggere:** as Roman generals in Vergil's day addressed their troops from a mound thrown up for the occasion.

**45. genus (ortum):** *a race sprung.*

**46. exāctīs mēnsibus:** abl. abs.

**47. ex quō (tempore):** *since.* **dīvīnī:** Anchises was thought of as having acquired sanctity after death.

**50. sīc dī voluistis:** one of the many examples of the unquestioning faith of the hero and his pious resignation to the will of the gods who do all things well.

**51–52. Hunc (diem). (in) Gaetūlīs. (in) Syrtibus. (in) marī, (in) urbe. Mycēnae:** appositional gen.; App. 281; this word usually has the plural form.

**54. exsequerer strueremque:** conclusions of implied condition contrary to

*Nunc* ultrō *ad* cinerēs *ipsīus et* ossa *parentis*
*haud* equidem sine *mente*, reor, sine *nūmine dīvum*
*adsumus et portūs* dēlātī intrāmus amīcōs.
Ergō *agite et laetum cūnctī* celebrēmus *honōrem:*
poscāmus *ventōs, atque haec mē sacra* quotannīs
*urbe velit positā* templīs *sibi ferre* dicātīs.
Bīna boum *vōbīs Trojā* generātus *Acestēs*
*dat* numerō *capita in nāvīs;* adhibēte penātīs
*et patriōs* epulīs *et quōs* colit hospes *Acestēs.*
Praetereā, *sī* nōna *diem* mortālibus almum
Aurōra extulerit radiīs*que* retēxerit orbem,
*prīma* citae *Teucrīs pōnam* certāmina *classis;*
*quīque pedum cursū* valet, *et quī vīribus* audāx
*aut* jaculō incēdit melior levibus*que* sagittīs,

**adhibeō, ēre, uī, itus** invite (to), employ†
**almus, a, um** kind(ly), nurturing
**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)*
**audāx, ācis** daring, bold, valiant
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of the) dawn*
**bīnī, ae, a** two (each), by twos
**bōs, bovis** *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
**celebrō** (1) throng, solemnize, celebrate
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, struggle*
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**citus, a, um** quick, swift, excited
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, honor*
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring (down, to land), convey
**dicō** (1) consecrate, dedicate, proclaim
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** bring out, raise*
**epulae, ārum** *f.* banquet, feast
**equidem** indeed, truly, surely*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**generātus, a, um** born, descended†
**hospes, itis** *m.* host, guest, stranger
**incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go, stride
**intrō** (1) enter, penetrate
**jaculum, ī** *n.* dart, spear
**levis, e** light, swift, slight, quick
**melior, ius** better, superior, preferable
**mortālis, e** mortal, human, earthly*
**nōnus, a, um** ninth†
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude*
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, circuit, orb(it), earth*
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**praetereā** besides, in addition, furthermore*
**quotannīs** annually, yearly†
**radius, (i)ī** *m.* spoke, rod, ray
**reor, rērī, ratus** suppose, think, reckon
**retegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** unveil, reveal
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow, shaft, bolt
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**ultrō** further, voluntarily*
**valeō, ēre, uī, itus** be strong, be able

fact; App. 382. **suīs**: irregularly referring to **altāria** instead of to the subject; App. 248, *a*.

**56. haud sine mente (dīvōrum)**: i.e., *by the will of the gods.*

**57. adsumus et intrāmus**: hysteron proteron; App. 429. **intrāmus**: historical present; App. 351, 1, *a*.

**59–60. poscāmus ventōs**: vol.; App. 254; they are to pray to the manes of Anchises for favorable winds when they get ready to leave. **atque (ut pater Anchīsēs) velit, urbe positā, mē ferre quotannīs haec sacra templīs dicātīs sibi**: the reference is to the **parentālia**, an annual Roman festival in honor of the dead. The **ut**-clause is object of **poscāmus**; App. 360.

**61. Trojā**: abl. of origin with **generātus**; App. 323.

**62–63. numerō**: abl. of respect with **bīna**; App. 325. **adhibēte epulīs et patriōs penātīs et (penātīs) quōs Acestēs colit.**

**64–65. nōna Aurōra**: referring to the Roman ceremonies of the **novemdiāle**, a festival celebrated in honor of the deceased nine days after the funeral.

**66. prīma**: *first of all.*

**67. quī**: their antecedents are indicated in **cūnctī** of l. 70.

**68. incēdit**: more picturesque than **est.**

seu crūdō fīdit pugnam committere caestū,
*cūnctī adsint* meritae*que* exspectent praemia palmae.
*Ōre* favēte *omnēs et* cingite tempora rāmīs."
*Sīc fātus* vēlat māternā tempora myrtō.
*Hoc* Helymus *facit, hoc* aevī mātūrus *Acestēs,*
*hoc puer* Ascanius, *sequitur quōs* cētera pūbēs.
*Ille ē* conciliō *multīs cum* mīlibus *ībat*
*ad* tumulum *magnā medius* comitante catervā.
*Hīc* duo rīte merō lībāns carchēsia Bacchō
*fundit* humī, duo lacte *novō,* duo *sanguine sacrō,*
purpureōs*que* jacit flōrēs *ac tālia fātur:*
"Salvē, sāncte *parēns,* iterum salvēte, receptī
nēquīquam cinerēs *animae*que *umbrae*que paternae.

---

**aevum, ī** *n.* age, time, life, eternity
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**Bacchus, ī** *m.* (god of) wine
**caestus, ūs** *m.* boxing-glove, gauntlet, made of a thong of raw-hide with balls of lead or iron fastened in; wrapped around the hands of the boxer†
**carchēsium (i)ī** *n.* cup, goblet†
**caterva, ae** *f.* troop, band, crowd
**cēterus, a, um** rest, remaining, other(s)
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**comitō** (1) accompany, attend, escort
**committō, ere, mīsī, missus** join, begin
**concilium, (i)ī** *n.* assembly, council
**crūdus, a, um** raw, rough, untanned†
**duo, ae, o** two*
**exspectō** (1) expect, await, tarry, hope (for)*
**faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautus** favor, befriend
**fīdō, ere, fīsus sum** trust (in) (*dat., abl.*)*
**flōs, flōris** *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
**Helymus, ī** *m.* Sicilian leader†
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, soil, earth*
**iterum** again, anew, a second time*
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw, hurl
**lac, lactis** *n.* milk
**lībō** (1) pour (as a libation), offer
**māternus, a, um** of a mother, maternal
**mātūrus, a, um** mature, grown, ripe, advanced†
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**merus, a, um** pure, unmixed
**mīlle; *pl.* mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**myrtus, ī (ūs)** *f.* myrtle, a tree sacred to Venus and to the dead
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly*
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize*
**paternus, a, um** of one's father, paternal
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize*
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, combat, fray*
**purpureus, a, um** purple, crimson
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** get back, save*
**rīte** duly, correctly, ritually
**salveō, ēre** be well, hail, farewell†
**sānctus, a, um** sacred, blessed, sainted*
**sīve, seu** or (if), whether
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**vēlō** (1) veil, cover, wrap, wreathe

---

**69. caestū:** the ancient boxing gloves, made of untanned (**crūdō**) hide and often weighted with lead and iron, were quite brutal and sometimes deadly. Boxers were often disfigured and sometimes killed in such contests.

**71. Ōre favēte:** *favor with your speech,* i.e., avoid all words of bad omen. The surest way to do this is to refrain from speaking; hence **ōre** (or **linguīs**) **favēre,** *preserve a holy silence,* is a common formula used by priests at the beginning of religious rites.

**72–103. The propitiatory sacrifice to the manes of Anchises.**

**73. Hoc, hoc:** pronounce **hocc,** making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.* **aevī:** gen. of respect with **mātūrus;** App. 294.

**75. Ille: Aenēās.**

**76. tumulum (Anchīsae).**

**77. Bacchō:** abl. of quality; App. 330.

**78. sanguine:** of a sacrificial victim.

**80–81. nēquīquam:** since he did not live to reach Italy, the Promised Land. **cinerēs receptī (ex Trojā).**

*Nōn* licuit *fīnīs* Ītalōs fātāliaque *arva*
*nec tēcum* Ausonium, quīcumque *est, quaerere* Thybrim."
*Dīxerat haec,* adytīs *cum* lūbricus anguis *ab īmīs*
septem *ingēns* gȳrōs, septēna volūmina *trāxit*
amplexus placidē tumulum *lāpsusque per ārās,*
caeruleae *cui* terga notae maculōsus *et aurō*
squāmam incendēbat fulgor, ceu nūbibus arcus
mīlle jacit variōs adversō sōle colōrēs.
Obstipuit vīsū *Aenēās. Ille agmine longō*
*tandem inter* paterās *et* lēvia pōcula serpēns
lībāvitque dapēs rūrsusque innoxius *īmō*
successit tumulō *et* dēpāsta altāria līquit.
*Hōc* magis inceptōs *genitōrī* īnstaurat *honōrēs,*

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**adytum, ī** *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
**altāria, ium** *n.* altar
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, encircle*
**anguis, is** *m.* snake, serpent
**arcus, ūs** *m.* (rain)bow, arc, arch*
**Ausonius, a, um** Ausonian, Italian
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue)*
**ceu** as, just as, as if
**color, ōris** *m.* color, hue, tint
**daps, dapis** *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
**dēpascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus** feed (on)
**fātālis, e** fatal, fated, destined
**fulgor, ōris** *m.* gleam, glitter, sheen†
**gȳrus, ī** *m.* fold, circle, coil†
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, brighten*
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**innoxius, a, um** harmless, innocent
**īnstaurō** (1) renew, refresh, repeat
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw, hurl
**lēvis, e** smooth, polished, slippery†
**lībō** (1) pour (out), offer, sip, taste
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, forsake*
**lūbricus, a, um** smooth, slippery, slimy
**maculōsus, a, um** spotted, mottled, flecked
**magis** more, rather, preferably*
**mīlle:** *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**nota, ae** *f.* mark, sign, spot
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
**obstipēscō, ere, puī** be amazed*
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl, cup
**placidē** gently, calmly, peacefully†
**pōculum, ī** *n.* (drinking) cup, goblet
**quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque** whoever, whichever, whatever*
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**septem** seven
**septēnī, ae, a** seven (each) by sevens†
**serpō, ere, psī, ptus** creep, crawl
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**squāma, ae** *f.* scale(s)†
**succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach (*dat.*)
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**Thybris, (id)is** *m.* Tiber, a river of Italy
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**varius, a, um** varied, different, diverse*
**vīsus, ūs** *m.* sight, appearance, vision
**volūmen, inis** *n.* fold, coil, roll

**82. licuit (mihi quaerere tēcum) fīnīs Italōs.**

**83. quīcumque est:** *whatever the Tiber may be;* intentional insistence of the poet that his hero does not know the land to which he is going but is obediently following the will of the gods. There is perhaps also an additional touch of Roman pride in the implied contrast of the present fame of the Tiber and of Rome.

**84. adytīs:** the tomb served as a shrine. **anguis:** the protecting genius, or guardian spirit (divinity) of a place or of a dead person, was often represented as a serpent, and the worship of serpents was very common in antiquity.

**85. septem septēna:** seven, like three, was a sacred, mystical number, supposed to be of great potency in bringing good fortune.

**87–88. cui terga caeruleae notae (incendēbant) et (cui) squāmam fulgor maculōsus aurō incendēbat:** *whose back blue spots brightened,* etc., **cui** being dat. of reference. **nūbibus:** abl. of place where; App. 319, *b.*

**90. Ille:** *the serpent;* the pronoun being used, as often, to indicate a change of subject.

**94. īnstaurat:** because interrupted by the appearance of the serpent. **hōc:** *all the more;* abl. of degree of difference:

incertus geniumne *locī* famulumne *parentis*
*esse* putet; caedit bīnās *dē* mōre bidentīs
totque suēs, totidem nigrantīs terga juvencōs,
vīnaque *fundēbat* paterīs *animamque vocābat*
*Anchīsae magnī* mānīsque Acheronte remissōs.
*Nec nōn et sociī, quae* cuique *est* cōpia, *laetī*
*dōna ferunt,* onerant *ārās* mactantque juvencōs;
ordine aēna locant *aliī fūsīque per* herbam
subjiciunt veribus prūnās *et* vīscera torrent.
Exspectāta *diēs aderat* nōnamque serēnā
Aurōram Phaethontis *equī jam lūce* vehēbant,
*fāmaque* fīnitimōs *et* clārī *nōmen Acestae*
excierat: *laetō* complērant *lītora* coetū

---

**Acherōn, ontis** *m.* (river of) Hades†
**aēnum, ī** *n.* bronze (kettle, caldron)
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
**bidēns, entis** *f.* sheep (with two teeth)
**bīnī, ae, a** two (each), by twos
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, famous*
**coetus, ūs** *m.* assembly, gathering
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete
**cōpia, ae,** *f.* abundance, supply; *pl.* forces
**exciō, īre, īvī (iī), itus** arouse, stir (up)
**ex(s)pectō** (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
**famulus, ī** *m.* servant, attendant
**fīnitimus, ī** *m.* neighbor; adjoining people†
**genius, (i)ī** *m.* guardian spirit, genius†
**herba, ae** *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
**incertus, a, um** uncertain, doubtful
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, ox, bull*
**locō,** (1) establish, place, locate, set up*
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
**nigrāns, antis** black, dusky, dark
**nōnus, a, um** ninth
**onerō** (1) load, burden, overwhelm
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, row, rank, line*
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl, cup
**Phaethōn, ontis** *m.* the sun (god)†
**prūna, ae** *f.* live coal, ember†
**putō** (1) think, suppose, consider, reckon
**quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)** each, every(one)
**remittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send back, let go
**serēnus, a, um** clear, calm, serene
**subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place under (*dat.*)
**sūs, suis** *m.* (*f.*) hog, pig, swine
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**torreō, ēre, uī, tostus** roast, boil, parch
**tot** so many*
**totidem** an equal number of, as many
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey*
**verū, ūs** *n.* spit, spike, broach
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**vīscus, eris** *n.* vitals, flesh, bowels

---

App. 335; refers to the favorable omen of the snake's appearance.

**95. famulum:** thus indicating that Anchises had been admitted among the divinities and had been assigned his own personal attendant. **-ne . . . -ne:** *whether . . . or.*

**96–97. putet:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. This sacrifice is called the *suovetaurilia* (**sūs, ovis, taurus**). **nigrantīs:** black victims were offered to the shades of the dead and to the gods of the lower world. **terga:** acc. of respect; App. 311.

**99. mānīs (ex) Acheronte remissōs:** the souls of the dead could thus be temporarily released from the lower world and partake of the funeral offerings made at their graves. See III, 303.

**100. Nec nōn:** *likewise.* **quae cuique est cōpia:** *each according to his means.*

**102. fūsī:** middle; App. 309.

**104–113. The gathering of the contestants and spectators.**

**105. lūce:** abl. of manner with **vehēbat** or of quality with **Aurōram;** App. 328, 330.

**106. fāma:** the report of the games and the prizes.

*vīsūrī* Aeneadās, *pars et* certāre *parātī.*
*Mūnera* principiō *ante oculōs* circō*que* locantur
*in mediō, sacrī* tripodes viridēs*que* corōnae
*et* palmae pretium *victōribus, armaque et* ostrō
perfūsae vestēs, argentī *aurīque* talentum;
*et* tuba commissōs *mediō* canit aggere lūdōs.
*Prīma* parēs ineunt gravibus certāmine *rēmīs*
quattuor *ex omnī* dēlēctae *classe* carīnae.
Vēlōcem Mnēstheus *agit* ācrī rēmige Pristim,
mox Italus Mnēstheus, *genus ā quō nōmine* Memmī,
*ingentemque* Gyās *ingentī* mōle Chimaeram,
*urbis* opus, triplicī pūbēs *quam* Dardana versū
impellunt, ternō cōnsurgunt ordine *rēmī;*
Sergestus*que, domus tenet ā quō* Sergia *nōmen,*

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fierce*
**Aeneadēs, ae** *m.* descendant (follower) of Aeneas
**agger, eris** *m.* mound, embankment
**argentum ī** *n.* silver
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, proclaim, prophesy*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, struggle*
**certō** (1) contend, compete, strive, vie
**Chimaera, ae** *f.* fire-breathing monster; name of a ship†
**circus, ī** *m.* circle, race-course†
**committō, ere, mīsī, missus** join, begin
**cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise
**corōna, ae** *f.* wreath, garland, crown
**Dardanus, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan
**dēligo, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, select
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**Gyās, ae** *m.* Trojan leader
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive, impel
**ineō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** enter†
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**locō** (1) establish, place, locate, set up*
**lūdus, ī** *m.* game, sport, play, contest
**Memmius, (i)ī** *m.* noted Roman family†
**Mnēstheus, eī (eos)** *m.* Trojan leader*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
**mox** soon, presently
**opus, eris** *n.* work, toil, product, deed*
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, row, rank, bank*
**ostrum, ī** *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize*
**pār, paris** equal, well-matched, similar*
**perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** bathe, drench, dye
**pretium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, price, prize
**principiō** first(ly), in the first place
**Pristis, is** *f.* Shark; name of a ship†
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
**quattuor** four
**rēmex, igis** *m.* rower, oarsman, crew
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader*
**Sergius, a, um** of Sergius, a famous Roman family†
**talentum, ī** *n.* talent, worth about $1200†
**ternus, a, um** three (each), triple
**triplex, icis** triple, threefold†
**tripūs, odis** *m.* tripod
**tuba, ae** *f.* trumpet
**vēlōx, ōcis** swift, speedy, fleet
**versus, ūs** *m.* row, tier, line, verse
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*

---

**108. vīsūrī:** *desiring to see;* a common meaning of the fut. part.; App. 274. **certāre:** inf. with **parātī,** which is pl. with the collective noun **pars**; App. 265.

**114–285. Cloanthus wins the boat race.**

**114. rēmīs:** abl. of quality.

**116. Pristim:** *Sea Serpent;* each of these ships probably bore a figurehead representing its name. **ācrī rēmige:** collective.

**117. ā quō nōmine (est) genus Memmī:** the great Roman families loved to trace their ancestry back to Troy. This passage of the *Aeneid* is a good example of the fanciful etymologizing often resorted to in order to establish the connection.

**118. Gyās (agit).**

**119. urbis opus = urbis īnstar:** *the size of a city.* **triplicī versū (rēmōrum):** a trireme.

**121–123. Sergestus, Sergia, Cloanthus, Cluentī:** more fanciful etymologies. The

Centaurō invehitur *magnā*, Scyllāque Cloanthus
caeruleā, *genus* unde *tibī*, Rōmāne Cluentī.
*Est procul in pelagō saxum* spūmantia contrā
*lītora, quod* tumidīs summersum tunditur ōlim
*flūctibus* hībernī condunt *ubi sīdera* Cōrī;
tranquillō silet immōtāque attollitur *undā*
*campus et* aprīcīs statiō grātissima mergīs.
*Hīc* viridem *Aenēās* frondentī *ex* īlice mētam
cōnstituit signum nautīs *pater*, unde revertī
scīrent *et longōs ubi* circumflectere *cursūs*.
*Tum loca* sorte legunt *ipsīque in puppibus aurō*
ductōrēs longē effulgent ostrōque decōrī;
cētera pōpuleā vēlātur fronde juventūs
nūdātōsque *umerōs* oleō perfūsa nitēscit.

---

**aprīcus, a, um** sunny, sun-loving†
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue)*
**Centaurus, ī** *m.* monster with the head of a man and the body of a horse; *f.* name of a ship†
**cēterus, a, um** remaining, other, rest
**circumflectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, turn
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**Cluentius, (i)ī** famous Roman family†
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, bury*
**cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** establish
**contrā** against, opposite (*acc.*)*
**Cōrus, ī** *m.* (northwest) wind†
**decōrus, a, um** beautiful, glorious, seemly
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader, commander, chief
**effulgeō, ēre, lsī** gleam, shine, glitter
**frondēns, entis** leafy, fronded
**frōns, frondis** *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
**grātus, a, um** agreeable, welcome
**hībernus, a, um** of the winter, wintry
**īlex, icis** *f.* holm-oak
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, immovable
**invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, gather*
**longē** afar, from afar*
**mergus, ī** *m.* gull, diver†
**mēta, ae** *f.* turning point, goal, bound
**nauta, ae** *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
**nitēscō, ere, nituī** shine, glisten, gleam†
**nūdō** (1) bare, strip, uncover, expose
**oleum, ī** *n.* olive oil
**ōlim** at some time, once, formerly*
**ostrum, ī** *n.* purple, crimson, scarlet
**perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** bathe, drench
**pōpuleus, a, um** (of) poplar, a tree sacred to Hercules, the perfect athlete and patron saint of athletes†
**revertor, ī, rsus** return, turn back
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** know (how), understand
**Scylla, ae** *f.* sea-monster; name of a ship†
**signum, ī** *n.* mark, sign, signal, token*
**sileō, ēre, uī** be silent, hush, be still
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**statiō, ōnis** *f.* station, post, anchorage
**summergō (subm-), ere, rsī, rsus** submerge, sink
**tranquillum, ī** *n.* calm (weather)
**tumidus, a, um** swollen, swelling
**tundō, ere, tutudī, tū(n)sus** beat, buffet
**unde** whence, from which source*
**vēlō** (1) veil, cover, wrap, wreathe
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*

---

ability to contrive such distorted derivations once passed as a mark of real scholarship. **Cloanthus (invehitur).**

**124. saxum:** a rock just at the surface of the water.

**126. condunt (nūbibus,** *with clouds*).

**127. tranquillō:** abl. of time when. **immōtā undā:** abl. abs.

**128. campus:** (*as*) *a flat surface.*

**130–131. unde = ex quō locō. unde scīrent:** purpose.

**134. cētera juventūs:** *the crew*, as contrasted with the **ductor** of each ship.

**135. umerōs:** obj. of the middle part. **perfūsa;** App. 309, *a*. **oleō:** see note on III, 281.

Cōnsīdunt trānstrīs, intenta*que* bracchia *rēmīs;*
intentī exspectant signum, exsultantia*que* haurit
corda pavor pulsāns laudum*que* arrēcta cupīdō.
Inde *ubi* clāra *dedit* sonitum tuba, *fīnibus omnēs,*
*haud* mora, prōsiluēre *suīs;* ferit aethera *clāmor*
nauticus, adductīs spūmant freta versa lacertīs.
Īnfindunt pariter sulcōs, *tōtumque* dehīscit
convulsum *rēmīs* rōstrīs*que* tridentibus *aequor.*
*Nōn* tam praecipitēs bijugō certāmine *campum*
corripuēre *ruuntque* effūsī carcere currūs,
*nec sīc* immissīs aurīgae undantia lōra
concussēre jugīs prōnī*que in* verbera pendent.
*Tum* plausū fremitū*que virum* studiīs*que* faventum

---

**addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw to, lead to†
**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, heaven*
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, rouse
**aurīga, ae** *m.* charioteer, driver†
**bijugus, a, um** double-yoked, two-horsed; team, chariot†
**bracchium, (i)ī** *n.* (fore)arm*
**carcer, eris** *m.* prison, barrier, starting point
**certāmen, inis** *n.* struggle, contest*
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake, shatter
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (on), settle*
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear up, shatter
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch up, dash over*
**cupīdō, inis** *f.* desire, love, passion
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**dehīscō, ere, hīvī** yawn, open, gape
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, let go*
**ex(s)pectō** (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
**ex(s)ultō** (1) leap up, exult, rejoice
**favēns, entis** *m.* (*f.*) partisan, supporter
**feriō, īre** strike, smite, beat, cut, kill
**fremitus, ūs** *m.* roar, shout(ing)
**fretum, ī** *n.* strait, sea, waters
**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drain, exhaust
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go
**inde** thence, after that, next*
**īnfindō, ere, fidī, fissus** split, cleave†
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, strain
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, team; (mountain) ridge*
**lacertus, ī** *m.* (upper) arm†
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**lōrum, ī** *n.* thong, rein, check
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
**nauticus, a, um** of sailors, nautical
**pariter** equally, side by side*
**pavor, ōris** *m.* fear, alarm, anxiety
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang*
**plausus, ūs** *m.* applause, clapping
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**prōnus, a, um** leaning forward, prone
**prōsiliō, īre, uī (īvī, iī)** leap forward†
**pulsō** (1) beat, lash, strike, throb, batter
**rōstrum, ī** *n.* beak, snout; prow†
**signum, ī** *n.* mark, sign, signal, token*
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit
**sulcus, ī** *m.* furrow, track, trench
**tam** so (much), so greatly, such*
**trānstrum, ī** *n.* rowing-bench, thwart
**tridēns, entis** triple-pointed, three-toothed
**tuba, ae** *f.* trumpet
**undō** (1) wave, sway, undulate, fluctuate
**verber, eris** *n.* blow, lash, whip†
**verrō, ere, ī, rsus** sweep (over), scour
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, change*

---

**136.** intenta (sunt).

**139.** fīnibus: *from their starting places.*

**140.** haud mora (est) = sine morā.

**141.** adductīs (ad pectora): as they make the stroke. versa: probably from vertō, *turn,* but possibly from verrō, *sweep.*

**144.** bijugō: with the first syllable short, since the j was originally initial, bijugō being a compound of bis, *double,* and jugum, *yoke;* App. 6, *b.*

**145.** effūsī: middle; App. 309. The galleys are compared to chariots in a race, the commanders to the charioteers and the rowers to the horses. carcere = fīnibus of l. 139.

**147.** jugīs = equīs: metonymy and dat. of reference; App. 433, 301. in verbera (danda) = ut verbera dent.

**148.** vir(ōr)um.

cōnsonat *omne* nemus, *vōcemque* inclūsa volūtant
*lītora*, pulsātī collēs *clāmōre* resultant.
Effugit *ante aliōs prīmīsque* ēlābitur *undīs*
turbam *inter* fremitum*que* Gyās; *quem* deinde Cloanthus
cōnsequitur, melior *rēmīs*, *sed* pondere pīnus
tarda *tenet*. Post *hōs* aequō discrīmine Pristis
Centaurus*que locum tendunt* superāre priōrem;
*et nunc* Pristis *habet*, *nunc victam* praeterit *ingēns*
Centaurus, *nunc* ūnā ambae jūnctīs*que feruntur*
frontibus *et longā* sulcant vada salsa carīnā.
*Jamque* propinquābant scopulō mētam*que tenēbant*
*cum* princeps *mediōque* Gyās *in* gurgite *victor*
rēctōrem *nāvis* compellat *vōce* Menoetēn:
"*Quō tantum mihi dexter* abīs? *Hūc* dērige gressum;
*lītus* amā *et* laevā stringat sine palmula cautēs;

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart*
**aequus, a, um** equal, just, even, fair
**ambō, ae, ō** both
**amō** (1) love, cherish; hug*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**cautēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, ledge
**Centaurus, ī** *m.* monster with the head of a man and the body of a horse; *f.* name of a ship
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**collis, is** *m.* hill
**compellō** (1) speak to, address, accost
**cōnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, overtake
**cōnsonō, āre, uī** (re)sound, echo†
**deinde** then, thence, thereupon, next*
**dērigō (dī-), ere, rēxī, rēctus** direct
**discrīmen, inis** *n.* difference, interval
**effugiō, ere, fūgī** escape, shoot forth
**ēlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide forth, escape
**fremitus, ūs** *m.* roar, shout(ing)
**frōns, frontis** *f.* front, forehead, face*
**gressus, ūs** *m.* step, course, gait, pace
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirlpool, sea, gulf*
**Gyās, ae** *m.* Trojan leader
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus** shut (in), inclose
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**melior, ius** better, superior, preferable
**Menoetēs, ae** *m.* Trojan pilot†
**mēta, ae** *f.* goal, turning point, bound
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**palmula, ae** *f.* oar-blade, oar†
**pīnus, ūs (ī)** *f.* pine tree; ship
**pondus, eris** *n.* weight, burden, mass
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); afterward*
**praetereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** pass
**princeps, cipis** first, leading, (as) leader
**prior, ius** former, first, prior*
**Pristis, is** *f.* Shark; name of a ship
**propinquō** (1) approach, (draw) near (*dat.*)
**pulsō** (1) beat, strike, lash, throb, batter
**rēctor, ōris** *m.* pilot, leader, master†
**resultō** (1) rebound, re-echo, reverberate†
**salsus, a, um** briny, salty
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** allow, permit*
**stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus** brush, graze
**sulcō** (1) plow, furrow, cleave†
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, surpass, survive*
**tardus, a, um** delayed, slow, late, lazy
**turba, ae** *f.* crowd, mob, throng, uproar
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**vadum, ī** *n.* shoal, sea
**volūtō** (1) roll, revolve, ponder

**149. inclūsa:** *surrounded* (by the hills).

**151. prīmīs undīs:** *over the foremost waves*, in front of the other ships.

**152. inter turbam fremitumque.**

**153. pīnus = nāvis:** metonymy; App. 433.

**154. (Cloanthum) tenet. aequō discrīmine:** abl. of degree of difference; App. 335.

**155. locum superāre priōrem:** *to gain the lead.*

**156. habet (priōrem) locum.**

**157–158. jūnctīs frontibus = pariter;** cf. l. 142.

**159. tenēbant:** *were about to reach;* App. 351, 2, *a*.

**160. victor:** Gyas had been leading thus far.

**162. mihi:** dat of reference, "to my hurt," or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

**163. lītus amā:** *hug the shore;* i.e., the

altum *aliī teneant.*" *Dīxit; sed* caeca Menoetēs
*saxa* timēns prōram *pelagī* dētorquet *ad undās.*
"*Quō* dīversus abīs?" Iterum "*Pete saxa,* Menoetē!"
*cum clāmōre* Gyās revocābat, *et* ecce Cloanthum
respicit īnstantem tergō *et* propiōra *tenentem.*
*Ille inter nāvemque* Gyae scopulōs*que* sonantīs
rādit iter laevum interior subitō*que* priōrem
praeterit *et* mētīs *tenet aequora* tūta *relictīs.*
*Tum* vērō exarsit juvenī dolor ossibus *ingēns*
*nec lacrimīs* caruēre genae, sēgnem*que* Menoetēn
oblītus decoris*que suī sociumque* salūtis
*in mare* praecipitem *puppī* dēturbat *ab altā;*
*ipse* gubernāclō rēctor *subit, ipse* magister
hortātur*que virōs* clāvum*que ad lītora* torquet.
*At* gravis *ut* fundō *vix tandem* redditus *īmō est*
*jam* senior madidā*que* fluēns *in* veste Menoetēs

---

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart*
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**caecus, a, um** blind, hidden, dark*
**careō, ēre, uī** be free from, lack (*abl.*)
**clāvus, ī** *m.* helm, rudder, tiller
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**decus, oris** *n.* beauty, grace, dignity
**dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, turn (aside)
**dēturbō** (1) hurl down, cast down†
**dīversus, a, um** apart, separated, aside*
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**exardēscō, ere, arsī, arsus** flame forth
**fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow, stream, drip
**fundus, ī** *m.* bottom, foundation, base
**gena, ae** *f.* cheek
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**gubernāc(u)lum, ī** *n.* helm, rudder, tiller†
**Gyās, ae** *m.* Trojan leader
**hortor, ārī, ātus** urge, encourage, incite*
**īnstō, āre, stitī** press on, urge (on) (*dat.*)
**interior, ius** inner, inside, interior
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**iterum** again, anew, a second time*
**juvenis, is** *m.* youth, young (man, woman)*
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**madidus, a, um** wet, dripping†
**magister, trī** *m.* master, skipper, pilot
**Menoetēs, ae** *m.* Trojan pilot
**mēta, ae** *f.* goal, turning point, bound
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen.*)
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**praetereō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** pass
**prior, ius** former, first, prior*
**propior, ius** nearer, closer
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow*
**rādō, ere, sī, sus** scrape, shave; skirt
**rēctor, ōris** *m.* pilot, leader, master
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, render*
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see (behind), look back (at), regard*
**revocō** (1) call back, recall, restore
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, health, welfare
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sēgnis, e** slow, lazy, inactive
**senior, ōris** *m.* old (aged) man, sire
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide, rear*
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread, be anxious*
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, turn, sway*
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**vērō** indeed, truly, but
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

---

**saxum** of l. 124 which served as a turning point. (**ut**) **stringat:** obj. of **sine,** an imp. **laevā** (**manū**) *on the left.*

**167. revocābat:** conative, *he kept trying to call back;* App. 351, 2, *a.*

**168. tergō:** dat. with compound. (**loca**) **propiōra** (**saxō**): *the inside track,* since the rock served as the turning point.

**169.** Ille (Cloanthus).

**170. iter:** cognate acc.; App. 313. **interior:** between Gyas and the rock.

**172. juvenī:** dat. of reference.

**174.** soci(ōr)um.

**176. ipse** (Gyās) **rēctor:** (*as*) *pilot.*

*summa petit* scopulī siccā*que in* rūpe resēdit.
*Illum et lābentem Teucrī et* rīsēre natantem
*et* salsōs rīdent revomentem *pectore flūctūs.*
*Hīc laeta* extrēmīs spēs *est* accēnsa duōbus,
Sergestō Mnēstheī*que*, Gyān superāre morantem.
Sergestus *capit ante locum* scopulō*que* propinquat,
*nec tōtā* tamen *ille* prior praeëunte carīnā;
*parte* prior, partim rōstrō premit aemula Pristis.
*At mediā sociōs* incēdēns *nāve per ipsōs*
hortātur Mnēstheus: "*Nunc, nunc* īnsurgite *rēmīs,*
Hectoreī *sociī, Trojae quōs* sorte *suprēmā*
dēlēgī *comitēs; nunc illās* prōmite *vīrīs,*
*nunc animōs, quibus in* Gaetūlīs Syrtibus ūsī
Īoniō*que marī* Maleae*que* sequācibus *undīs.*
*Nōn jam prīma petō* Mnēstheus *neque vincere* certō
(quamquam *Ō! — sed* superent *quibus hoc,* Neptūne, *dedistī*),

---

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, kindle
**aemulus, a, um** emulous, jealous†
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**certō** (1) struggle, contend, vie, compete
**dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, select
**duo, ae, o** two*
**extrēmus, a, um** last, final, extreme*
**Gaetūlus, a, um** Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli, an African tribe
**Gyās, ae** *m.* Trojan leader
**Hectoreus, a, um** of Hector, a Trojan leader
**hortor, ārī, ātus** urge, encourage, incite*
**incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** go, stride
**īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise (on) (*dat.*)
**Īonius, a, um** Ionian, a sea off the west coast of Greece
**Malea, ae** *f.* promontory of southern Greece, dangerous to navigation†
**Mnēstheus, eī (eos)** *m.* Trojan leader*
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**natō** (1) swim, float, overflow
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**partim** partly, partially†
**praeeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** go before, lead†
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, pursue*
**prior, ius** former, prior, first*
**Pristis, is** *f.* Shark; name of a ship
**prōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** put forth
**propinquō** (1) approach, (draw) near (*dat.*)
**quamquam** although, however, but
**resīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle
**revomō, ere, uī** vomit (forth), disgorge†
**rīdeō, ēre, sī, sus** laugh (at), smile
**rōstrum, ī** *n.* beak, snout; prow
**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
**salsus, a, um** briny, salty
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sequāx, ācis** pursuing, swift†
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader*
**siccus, a, um** dry, thirsty
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, fortune, portion; oracle*
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, surpass, win, survive*
**Syrtis, is** *f.* sand-bank off the northern coast of Africa
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**ūtor, ī, ūsus** use, employ, enjoy (*abl.*)

---

**183. extrēmīs duōbus:** dat. of reference.

**184. Mnēstheī:** dat., a Greek form; two syllables by synizesis; App. 69, 403.

**185. ante:** adverbial, *first, before* (*the others*).

**186. praeeunte:** with the first syllable short. This prefix is often shortened before a following vowel.

**190. sorte suprēmā:** abl. of time when.

**192. (illōs) animōs, quibus ūsī (estis). quibus:** abl. with **ūtor**; App. 342.

**194. prīma (loca). Mnēstheus = ego.**

**195. quamquam Ō:** a wish left unexpressed and thus made more vivid; a good example of effective aposiopesis; App. 416. Cf. I, 135, note.

extrēmōs pudeat rediisse: *hoc vincite*, cīvēs,
*et* prohibēte nefās." *Ollī* certāmine *summō*
prōcumbunt: *vastīs* tremit ictibus aerea *puppis*
subtrahitur*que* solum, *tum* crēber anhēlitus artūs
āridaque *ōra* quatit, sūdor fluit undique rīvīs.
Attulit *ipse virīs* optātum *cāsus honōrem*.
*Namque furēns animī dum* prōram *ad saxa* suburget
interior spatiō*que subit* Sergestus inīquō,
*īnfēlīx saxīs in* prōcurrentibus haesit.
Concussae cautēs *et* acūtō *in* mūrice *rēmī*
obnixī crepuēre inlīsa*que* prōra pependit.
Cōnsurgunt nautae *et magnō clāmōre* morantur
ferrātās*que* trudēs *et* acūtā cuspide contōs
expediunt frāctōs*que* legunt *in* gurgite *rēmōs*.
*At laetus* Mnēstheus successū*que* ācrior *ipsō*
*agmine rēmōrum* celerī *ventīsque vocātīs*

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fierce*
**acūtus, a, um** sharp, pointed, acute
**adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring to
**aereus, a, um** bronze, bronze-clad
**anhēlitus, ūs** *m.* panting, gasping†
**āridus, a, um** dry, parched
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, member*
**cautēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, ledge
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, fleet*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, struggle, race*
**cīvis, is** *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake, shatter
**cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise
**contus, ī** *m.* boat hook, pike, pole†
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, hurried*
**crepō, āre, uī, itus** clatter, crash†
**cuspis, idis** *f.* point
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** disentangle, bring forth
**extrēmus, a, um** last, final, extreme*
**ferrātus, a, um** shod with iron, iron-clad†
**fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus** flow, stream, drip
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter*
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirlpool, sea, gulf*
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling (to), stick*
**ictus, ūs** *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
**inīquus, a, um** unfavorable, unjust
**inlīdō, ere, sī, sus** strike on, dash on
**interior, ius** inner, inside, interior
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** collect, choose*
**Mnēstheus, eī (eos)** *m.* Trojan leader*
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, hinder, tarry*
**mūrex, icis** *m.* purple (mollusk), rock
**nauta, ae** *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
**nefās** *n. indecl.* sin, shame, impiety*
**obnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** press against, struggle
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang*
**procumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** lean forward, incline, recline
**prōcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** jut, project†
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** prevent, forbid
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow*
**pudet, ēre, uit** it shames†
**quatiō, ere, quassus** shake, shatter
**redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** return
**rīvus, ī** *m.* stream, rivulet
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader*
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, surface (of the sea)*
**spatium, (i)ī** *n.* space, position
**subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus** draw (up), withdraw†
**suburgeō, ēre** press close†
**successus, ūs** *m.* success, progress
**sūdor, ōris** *m.* sweat, perspiration
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**trudis, is** *f.* pole, pike†
**undique** on (from) all sides*

---

**196.** (nōs) extrēmōs.
**197.** nefās: i.e., of being last (extrēmōs rediisse).
**199.** solum (maris).
**200.** rīvīs: *in streams*, abl. of means.
**201.** virīs: to Mnestheus's crew.
**202.** animī: loc., or a gen. of respect with furēns; App. 345, 294.
**204.** in saxīs prōcurrentibus: *on rocks jutting out;* beneath the water and hence hidden (caeca), l. 164.
**205.** Concussae (sunt).

prōna *petit maria et pelagō* dēcurrit apertō.
Quālis spēluncā subitō commōta columba,
*cui domus et* dulcēs latebrōsō *in* pūmice nīdī,
*fertur in arva* volāns plausum*que* exterrita pennīs
*dat tēctō ingentem*, mox āere *lāpsa* quiētō
rādit iter liquidum celerīs *neque* commovet ālās:
*sīc* Mnēstheus, *sīc ipsa fugā* secat ultima Pristis
*aequora, sīc illam fert* impetus *ipse* volantem.
*Et prīmum in* scopulō luctantem dēserit *altō*
Sergestum brevibus*que* vadīs frūstrā*que vocantem*
auxilia *et* frāctīs discentem currere *rēmīs*.
Inde Gyān *ipsamque ingentī* mōle Chimaeram
cōnsequitur; cēdit, quoniam spoliāta magistrō *est*.
*Sōlus jamque ipsō* superest *in fīne* Cloanthus:
*quem petit et summīs* adnixus *vīribus* urget.
*Tum* vērō ingeminat *clāmor cūnctīque sequentem*

---

**adnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** struggle, strive
**āēr, āeris** *m.* air, mist, fog
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**apertus, a, um** open, clear, free
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* help, aid, assistance*
**brevis, e** short, shallow, brief
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, fall behind*
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, fleet*
**Chimaera, ae** *f.* fire-breathing monster; name of a ship
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**columba, ae** *f.* dove, pigeon
**commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move, startle
**cōnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, overtake
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run, hasten
**dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run down
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**discō, ere, didicī** learn (how); *perf.* know
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter*
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**Gyās, ae** *m.* Trojan leader
**impetus, ūs** *m.* impetus, momentum
**inde** then, thence, next*
**ingeminō** (1) reitcrate, (re)double, increase
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**latebrōsus, a, um** sheltering, crannied†
**liquidus, a, um** liquid, fluid, clear
**luctor, ārī, ātus** struggle, wrestle
**magister, trī** *m.* master, skipper, pilot
**Mnēstheus, eī (eos)** *m.* Trojan leader*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
**mox** soon, presently
**nīdus, ī** *m.* nest(ling)†
**penna, ae** *f.* wing, feather
**plausus, ūs** *m.* clapping, beating
**Pristis, is** *f.* Shark; name of a ship
**prōnus, a, um** leaning forward, sloping downward
**pūmex, icis** *m.* pumice, a porous stone†
**quālis, e** of what kind, (such) as*
**quiētus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet
**quoniam** since, because
**rādō, ere, sī, sus** shave, graze, skim
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, cleave, slice*
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader*
**spēlunca, ae** *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
**spoliō** (1) deprive (of), rob, despoil (*abl.*)†
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**supersum, esse, fuī** remain, be left
**ultimus, a, um** last, final, farthest*
**urgeō, ēre, ursī** press, urge
**vadum, ī** *n.* shoal, sea
**vērō** indeed, truly, but
**volō** (1) fly, speed, hasten*

---

**212.** prōna: to one standing on the shore, the sea seems higher than the land and to slope down to it. Cf. dēvēnēre, I, 365; dēlātō, III, 154; dēmittere, V. 29; dēlātī, V, 57.

**213–215.** Quālis columba, subitō (ex) spēluncā commōta, cui domus et dulcēs nīdī (sunt) in latebrōsō pūmice, fertur, etc.

**216.** (ex) tēctō = ē spēluncā.

**218–219.** ipsa Pristis secat ultima aequora. ultima aequora: *the home stretch.* illam (Pristim).

**220.** (Pristis) dēserit.

**221.** vocantem: *calling for.*

**224.** cēdit (Chimaera).

**227.** clāmor: of those on shore.

īnstīgant studiīs, resonat*que* fragōribus aethēr.
*Hī* proprium decus *et* partum indignantur *honōrem*
nī *teneant, vītamque volunt* prō laude pacīscī;
*hōs* successus alit: *possunt*, quia *posse videntur*.
*Et fors* aequātīs *cēpissent* praemia rōstrīs,
nī palmās pontō *tendēns* utrāsque Cloanthus
*fūdissetque* precēs *dīvōsque in* vōta *vocāsset:*
"*Dī, quibus imperium est pelagī, quōrum aequora* currō,
*vōbīs laetus ego hōc* candentem *in lītore* taurum
cōnstituam *ante ārās* vōtī reus, exta*que* salsōs
prōjiciam *in flūctūs et* vīna liquentia *fundam.*"
*Dīxit, eumque īmīs sub flūctibus audiit omnis*
Nēreidum Phorcī*que* chorus Panopēa*que* virgō,
*et pater ipse manū magnā* Portūnus *euntem*
impulit: *illa* Notō citius volucrī*que* sagittā
*ad terram fugit et portū sē* condidit *altō*.
*Tum* satus *Anchīsā cūnctīs ex* mōre *vocātīs*

---

**aequō** (1) equal(ize), even, level, match*
**aethēr, eris**, *acc.* **era**, *m.* upper air, sky*
**alō, ere, uī**, (i)tus nourish, support
**candēns, entis** white, shining, sleek
**chorus, ī** *m.* band, company, dance
**citō** quickly, swiftly
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found; bury, hide*
**cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** place, stand
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run, speed (over)
**decus, oris** *n.* beauty, glory, dignity
**exta, ōrum** *n.* entrails, vitals
**fragor, ōris** *m.* crash, uproar
**impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive on
**indignor, ārī, ātus** disdain, be angry
**īnstīgō** (1) goad, incite, spur, urge on†
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**liquēns, entis** liquid, clear
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
**Nēreis, idis** *f.* Nereid, a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus, a sea-god
**nisi, nī** if not, unless*
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind
**pacīscor, ī, pactus** pledge, stake
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize*
**Panopēa, ae** *f.* a sea-nymph, daughter of Nereus†
**pariō, ere, peperī, partus** gain, bear
**Phorcus, ī** *m.* a sea-god†
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**Portūnus, ī** *m.* god of harbors†
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
**prō** for, before, on behalf of (*abl.*)*
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast forth†
**proprius, a, um** one's own, secure
**quia** because
**resonō** (1) (re)sound, roar
**reus, ī** *m.* defendant, debtor, payer†
**rōstrum, ī** *n.* beak, snout; prow
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
**salsus, a, um** briny, salty
**serō, ere, sēvī, satus** sow, beget*
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* desire, eagerness, zeal, favor, partisanship
**successus, ūs** *m.* success, progress
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**virgō, inis** *f.* girl, daughter, maiden*
**volucer, cris, cre** winged, fleet, swift*
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

**229–231. Hī . . . hōs:** *the sailors of Cloanthus . . . the sailors of Mnestheus.* **nī teneant:** subordinate clause in implied indir. disc.; App. 358.

**232. fors:** *perhaps.*

**233. pontō:** dat. of direction.

**235. aequora:** obj. of **currō**, used transitively.

**237. vōtī:** gen. with a word of condemning, **reus**; App. 291.

**241. (nāvem) euntem.**

**242. illa (nāvis Cloanthī). Notō, sagittā:** ablatives with the comparative; App. 327.

**244. satus Anchīsā:** Aeneas.

*victōrem magnā* praecōnis *vōce* Cloanthum
dēclārat viridīque advēlat tempora laurō,
*mūneraque in nāvīs* ternōs optāre juvencōs
vīna*que et* argentī *magnum dat ferre* talentum.
*Ipsīs* praecipuōs ductōribus addit *honōrēs:*
*victōrī* chlamydem aurātam, *quam plūrima circum*
purpura Maeandrō duplicī Meliboea cucurrit,
intextus*que puer* frondōsā rēgius Īdā
vēlōcīs jaculō cervōs *cursūque* fatīgat
ācer, anhēlantī similis, *quem* praepes *ab* Īdā
sublīmem pedibus rapuit *Jovis* armiger uncīs:
longaevī palmās nēquīquam *ad sīdera tendunt*
custōdēs, saevit*que* canum lātrātus *in aurās.*
*At quī* deinde *locum tenuit* virtūte secundum,

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fierce*
**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**advēlō** (1) veil, cover, wreathe†
**anhēlō** (1) pant, gasp, puff†
**argentum, ī** *n.* silver
**armiger, erī** *m.* armor-bearer
**aurātus, a, um** gilded, embroidered with gold
**canis, is** *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound
**cervus, ī** *m.* deer, stag
**chlamys, ydis** *f.* cloak, scarf, cape
**Cloanthus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus,** run, speed (over)
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**dēclārō** (1) proclaim, make clear†
**deinde** then, next, after that*
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader, commander, chief
**duplex, icis** twofold, double
**fatīgō** (1) weary, chase, harass, rouse
**frondōsus, a, um** leafy, fronded†
**Īda, ae** *f.* mountain near Troy
**intexō, ere, uī, xtus** weave in
**jaculum, ī** *n.* spear, dart, lance
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
**lātrātus, ūs** *m.* bark(ing), howl(ing)†
**laurus, ī** (**ūs**) *f.* laurel
**longaevus, a, um** aged, long-lived
**Maeander, drī** *m.* winding river of Asia Minor; meandering pattern†
**Meliboeus, a, um** Meliboean, of Meliboea, a Thessalian town
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**pēs, pedis** *m.* foot
**praecipuus, a, um** especial, choice†
**praecō, ōnis** *m.* crier, herald†
**praepes, petis** swift, swooping
**purpura, ae** *f.* purple, crimson†
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), rob*
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, princely*
**saeviō, īre, iī** (**īvī**), **ītus** rage, storm
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable*
**similis, e** like, similar (*dat.*)*
**sublīmis, e** lofty, aloft, on high
**talentum, ī** *n.* a talent, worth about $1200
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**ternī, ae, a** three (each), by threes
**uncus, a, um** crooked, curved
**vēlōx, ōcis** swift, speedy, fleet
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manhood, merit, courage*

---

**247–248. optāre, ferre:** infinitives of purpose; App. 261.

**250–251. circum quam (chlamydem) plūrima purpura cucurrit.**

**251. Maeandrō:** abl. of manner.

**252. puer rēgius:** Ganymede, son of Tros, king of Troy. He was carried to heaven by an eagle, to be Jove's cupbearer. Cf. I, 28. Two scenes are woven in the robe; the first representing the boy as hunting and the second his being carried away by the eagle while his aged guardians lift their hands toward heaven and his dogs bark at the eagle.

**255. Jovis armiger:** the eagle was often represented by the ancients as bearing in his talons the thunderbolt, the weapon of Jupiter. Some United States coins bear this device.

**257. lātrātus:** *barking* (at the eagle).

**258. quī:** its antecedent is **huic,** in l. 259.

lēvibus *huic* hāmīs cōnsertam *aurōque* trilīcem
lōrīcam, *quam* Dēmoleō dētrāxerat *ipse*
*victor* apud rapidum Simoënta *sub* Īliō *altō*,
dōnat *habēre*, *virō* decus *et* tūtāmen *in armīs*.
*Vix illam* famulī Phēgeus Sagaris*que ferēbant*
multiplicem cōnixī *umerīs*; indūtus *at* ōlim
Dēmoleos *cursū* pālantīs Trōas *agēbat*.
Tertia *dōna facit geminōs ex* aere lebētas
cymbia*que* argentō perfecta *atque* aspera signīs.
*Jamque* adeō dōnātī *omnēs* opibus*que* superbī
pūniceīs *ībant* ēvīnctī tempora taenīs,
*cum* saevō *ē* scopulō *multā vix* arte revulsus
āmissīs *rēmīs atque* ordine dēbilis *ūnō*
inrīsam sine *honōre* ratem Sergestus *agēbat*.

---

**adeō** to such an extent, so
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** lose, let go*
**apud** among, at, near (*acc.*)
**argentum, ī** *n.* silver
**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, device, cunning*
**asper, era, erum** rough, harsh, fierce*
**cōnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** struggle†
**cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus** fasten, join
**cymbium, (i)ī** *n.* bowl, cup
**dēbilis, e** weakened, crippled†
**decus, oris** *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
**Dēmoleos (us), ī (ō)** *m.* Greek leader†
**dētrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus** strip (off) (*abl.*)†
**dōnō (1)** present, give, bestow, grant†
**ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, tie†
**famulus, ī** *m.* slave, attendant
**hāmus, ī** *m.* hook, link
**Īlium, (i)ī** *n.* Troy, Ilium
**induō, ere, uī, ūtus** clothe, don
**inrīdeō, ēre, sī, sus** laugh at, ridicule
**lebēs, ētis** *m.* kettle, caldron
**lēvis, e** smooth, polished, slippery
**lōrīca, ae** *f.* breastplate, cuirass
**multiplex, icis** with many folds
**ōlim** once, formerly, at some time*
**ops, opis** *f.* aid, wealth, resources, power*
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, row, rank, bank*
**pālor, ārī, ātus** straggle, scatter†
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** finish, form
**Phēgeus, ī** *m.* Trojan slave†
**pūniceus, a, um** purple, crimson†
**rapidus, a, um** swift, quick, whirling*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**revellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear away
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**Sagaris, is** *m.* Trojan slave†
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader*
**signum, ī** *n.* mark, sign, signal, figure*
**Simoīs, entis** *m.* river near Troy
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**taenia, ae** *f.* ribbon, band, fillet†
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**tertius, a, um** third*
**trilīx, līcis** three-leashed, triple-threaded
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**tūtāmen, inis** *n.* protection, defense†

---

**260. Dēmoleō:** dat. of separation. **ipse (Aenēās).**

**261. Īliō altō:** semi-hiatus; App. 400.

**262. habēre:** inf. of purpose; App. 261. **in armīs = in bellō:** metonymy; App. 433.

**263. Vix ferēbant:** tradition, which is regularly handed down by the old men, continually insists that everything was much better "in the good old days" and that men of former generations were much stronger and braver than their degenerate descendants.

**265. cursū:** abl. of manner; App. 328.

**266. dōna, lebētas:** two accusatives with a verb of making; App. 316, *a*. **lebētăs:** acc. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, *a*.

**267. aspera signīs:** *embossed with figures.*

**269. taen(i)īs.**

**271. ordine ūnō:** *in one bank of oars;* abl. of respect; App. 325.

Quālis saepe *viae* dēprēnsus *in* aggere serpēns,
aerea *quem* oblīquum rota trānsiit *aut* gravis ictū
sēminecem līquit *saxō* lacerum*que* viātor;
nēquīquam *longōs fugiēns dat corpore* tortūs
*parte* ferōx *ardēnsque oculīs et* sībila colla
arduus attollēns; *pars* vulnere clauda retentat
nexantem nōdīs *sēque in sua* membra plicantem:
*tālī* rēmigiō *nāvis sē* tarda *movēbat;*
*vēla facit* tamen *et vēlīs subit* ōstia plēnīs.
Sergestum *Aenēās* prōmissō *mūnere* dōnat
*servātam* ob *nāvem laetus sociōsque* reductōs.
*Ollī* serva *datur* operum *haud* ignāra Minervae,
Crēssa *genus*, Pholoē, *geminīque sub* ūbere *nātī.*
*Hōc pius Aenēās missō* certāmine *tendit*
grāmineum *in campum, quem* collibus undique curvīs

---

**aereus, a, um** bronze, bronze-clad*
**agger, eris** *m.* mound, embankment
**arduus, a, um** lofty, steep, upraised*
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* struggle, contest, race*
**claudus, a, um** lame, crippled†
**collis, is** *m.* hill
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**Crēssa, ae** *f.* Cretan (woman), of Crete†
**curvus, a, um** curving, bent, winding*
**dēpre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** seize, catch
**dōnō** (1) give, present, bestow, grant
**ferōx, ōcis** fierce, spirited, wild
**grāmineus, a, um** grassy, of grass†
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**ictus, ūs** *m.* blow, stroke, wound
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**lacer, era, erum** mangled, lacerated†
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**Minerva, ae** *f.* goddess of wisdom, the arts and handicrafts
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**nexō, āre** bind, twine, weave, coil†
**nōdus, ī** *m.* knot, fold, coil
**ob** on account of, for (the sake of) (*acc.*)
**oblīquus, a, um** aslant, across†
**opus, eris** *n.* work, labor, art, product*
**ōstium, (i)ī** *n.* mouth, entrance, harbor
**Pholoē, ēs** *f.* a Cretan slave†
**plēnus, a, um** full, filled, swelling
**plicō, āre, uī (āvī), itus (ātus)** fold, coil†
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**quālis, e** of what sort, (such) as*
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead back, bring back
**rēmigium, (i)ī** *n.* oarage, rowing
**retentō** (1) hold back, retard, detain†
**rota, ae** *f.* wheel, chariot, car
**saepe** often, frequently, repeatedly*
**sēminex, necis** half-dead†
**Sergestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader*
**serpēns, entis** *m.* (*f.*) serpent, snake
**serva, ae** *f.* female slave†
**sībilus, a, um** hissing
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**tardus, a, um** slow, late, lazy
**tortus, ūs** *m.* twisting, writhing†
**trānseō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** cross, pass (by, beyond)
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder, breast, fertility
**undique** on (from) all sides*
**viātor, ōris** *m.* traveler, wayfarer†
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

**273. Quālis:** correlative with **tālī** in l. 280. **viae aggere:** the Roman roads were carried across valleys on high embankments or on arches of masonry.

**274–278. rota:** of a wagon or chariot. **gravis ictū = gravī ictū. ictū, parte, oculīs:** ablatives of respect; App. 325.

**276. fugiēns:** the present of attempted action (conative present); App. 351, 1, *c.*

**284. datur:** with the final syllable lengthened before the pause and under the metrical accent; App. 394, *a.* **Minervae:** such as spinning, weaving, and other household accomplishments.

**285. genus:** acc. of respect; App. 311. **sub ūbere:** *at her breast.*

**286–362. By a trick of Nisus, Euryalus wins the foot race.**

cingēbant *silvae, mediāque in* valle theātrī
circus *erat; quō sē multīs cum* mīlibus hērōs
cōnsessū *medium tulit* exstrūctō*que* resēdit.
*Hīc, quī forte velint* rapidō contendere *cursū,*
invītat pretiīs *animōs, et* praemia *pōnit.*
Undique conveniunt *Teucrī* mixtī*que* Sicānī,
Nīsus *et* Euryalus *prīmī,*
Euryalus formā īnsignis viridī*que* juventā,
Nīsus *amōre piō puerī; quōs* deinde *secūtus*
rēgius ēgregiā *Priamī dē* stirpe Diōrēs;
*hunc* Salius *simul et* Patrōn, *quōrum* alter Acarnān,
alter *ab* Arcadiō Tegeaeae *sanguine gentis:*
*tum* duo Trīnacriī juvenēs, Helymus Panopēs*que,*
adsuētī *silvīs, comitēs* senīoris *Acestae;*
*multī* praetereā, *quōs fāma* obscūra recondit.

**Acarnān, ānis** *m.* Acarnanian, of Acarnania in northwestern Greece†
**adsuēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** accustom (to)†
**alter, era, erum** one (of two), the other (of two)*
**Arcadius, a, um** Arcadian, of Arcadia in southern Greece†
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**circus, ī** *m.* circle, race-course
**cōnsessus, ūs** *m.* assembly, spectators†
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** strive, contend
**conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** assemble
**deinde** then, next, after that*
**Diōrēs, is** *m.* Trojan noble† ·
**duo, ae, o** two*
**ēgregius, a, um** eminent, noble, remarkable
**Euryalus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†
**exstrūctum, ī** *n.* mound, raised platform
**forma, ae** *f.* form, shape, beauty*
**Helymus, ī** *m.* a Sicilian
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked*
**invītō** (1) invite, summon, induce, tempt†
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**juventa, ae** *f.* youth, young manhood
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**Nīsus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†
**obscūrus, a, um** dim, obscure, dusky*
**Panopēs, ae** *m.* a Sicilian†
**Patrōn, ōnis** *m.* a Greek†
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* prize, reward*
**praetereā** besides, in addition*
**pretium, (i)ī** *n.* prize, reward, price
**rapidus, a, um** swift, speedy, whirling*
**recondō, ere, didī, ditus** establish, hide
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, princely*
**resīdō, ere, sēdī** sit (down)
**Salius, (i)ī** *m.* a Greek†
**senex, senis**; *comp.* **senior** old, aged*
**Sicānus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily†
**stirps, is** *f.* stock, lineage, race, stem
**Tegeaeus, a, um** Tegean, of Tegea, a city of Arcadia†
**theātrum, trī** *n.* theater, grandstand
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Trinacrian, Sicilian
**undique** on (from) all sides*
**vallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*

**288–289. theātrī circus:** the ancient theater was semicircular in shape. Advantage was usually taken of the head of a valley on a curving hillside as a suitable location for placing the seats. **hērōs (Aenēās).**

**290. cōnsessū:** dat. of purpose, *for an assembly;* or else dat. of direction, *to the assembly.* **(in) exstrūctō:** Aeneas prepares to address the assembly, just as a Roman general was accustomed to speak to his soldiers from a raised platform (**agger**), usually made by heaping up earth and stones.

**291–292. invītat pretiīs animōs (eōrum) quī velint. velint:** implied indir. disc.; App. 357. Pope parodies this contest in the *Dunciad,* II, 35 ff.

**294. Nīsus et Euryalus:** the heroes of one of Vergil's most beautiful episodes (IX, 176 ff.) are very effectively introduced here.

**296. puerī:** Euryalus. **secūtus (est).**

**298. Salius (secūtus est). alter (erat).**

*Aenēās quibus in mediīs sīc* deinde locūtus:
"*Accipite haec animīs laetāsque* advertite *mentēs.*
Nēmō *ex hōc* numerō *mihi nōn* dōnātus abībit.
Gnōsia bīna *dabō* lēvātō lūcida *ferrō*
spīcula caelātam*que* argentō *ferre* bipennem;
*omnibus hīc erit ūnus honōs.* Trēs praemia *prīmī*
*accipient* flāvā*que caput* nectentur olīvā.
*Prīmus equum* phalerīs īnsignem *victor habētō;*
alter Amāzoniam pharetram plēnam*que* sagittīs
Thrēiciīs, lātō *quam circum* amplectitur *aurō*
balteus *et* teretī subnectit fībula gemmā;
tertius Argolicā *hāc* galeā contentus abītō."
*Haec ubi dicta, locum capiunt* signō*que* repente
corripiunt spatia *audītō līmenque relinquunt,*
effūsī nimbō similēs: *simul* ultima signant.
*Prīmus* abit longē*que ante omnia corpora* Nīsus

---

**abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** depart*
**advertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn (to), heed
**alter, era, erum** one (of two), the other (of two)*
**Amāzonius, a, um** of the Amazons, a race of warlike women†
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, encircle*
**argentum, ī** *n.* silver
**Argolicus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**balteus, ī** *m.* belt, baldric†
**bīnī, ae, a** two (each), by twos
**bipennis, is** *f.* two-edged ax
**caelō** (1) engrave, chase, carve
**contentus, a, um** content, satisfied†
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch up, speed over*
**deinde** then, next, thereafter*
**dōnō** (1) present, give, reward, bestow
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour forth, stream*
**fībula, ae** *f.* brooch, buckle, clasp
**flāvus, a, um** yellow(ish), tawny, blond
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**gemma, ae** *f.* gem, jewel
**Gnōs(s)ius, a, um** Gnossian, of Gnossus, a Cretan city
**īnsignis, e** marked, distinguished, noble*
**lātus, a, um** wide, broad, spacious*
**lēvō** (1) polish, smooth†
**longē** (from) afar, (by) far*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk*
**lūcidus, a, um** shining, bright, clear
**nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** bind, fasten
**nēmō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) no one, none†
**nimbus, ī** *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
**Nīsus, ī** *m.* a Trojan
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, throng, order*
**olīva, ae** *f.* olive†
**phalerae, ārum** *f.* trappings†
**pharetra, ae** *f.* quiver
**plēnus, a, um** full, filled, teeming
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize*
**repente** suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow, shaft, bolt
**signō, (1)** mark, observe, note
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, signal, mark, token*
**similis, e** like, similar (*dat., gen.*)*
**spatium, (i)ī** *n.* space, distance, course
**spīculum, ī** *n.* spear, dart, arrow†
**subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** bind (fasten) under
**teres, etis** smooth, polished, rounded†
**tertius, a, um** third*
**Thrēicius, a, um** Thracian, of Thrace
**trēs, tria** three*
**ultimus, a, um** last, final, farthest*

---

**305. mihi**: dat. of agent; App. 302.
**306.** (**cuique**) **dabō.**
**307. ferre**: inf. of purpose; App. 261.
**308. ūnus** = **īdem.**
**309. caput**: obj. of the middle verb, **nectentur**; App. 309.
**312. lātō aurō**: abl. of means.
**313. teretī gemmā**: abl. of means.
**314. galeā**: abl. with **contentus**; App. 337. **abītō**: imper.
**316. līmen**: *the starting point.*
**317. ultima** (**loca**): *the goal.* **signant** (**oculīs**).

ēmicat *et ventīs et* fulminis ōcior ālīs;
proximus *huic, longō sed* proximus intervallō,
īnsequitur Salius; spatiō post deinde *relictō*
tertius Euryalus;
Euryalum*que* Helymus *sequitur; quō* deinde *sub ipsō*
ecce volat calcem*que* terit *jam* calce Diōrēs
incumbēns *umerō,* spatia *et sī plūra* supersint
trānseat ēlāpsus prior ambiguum*que relinquat.*
*Jamque* ferē spatiō extrēmō *fessīque sub ipsam*
*fīnem* adventābant, lēvī *cum sanguine* Nīsus
*lābitur īnfēlīx,* caesīs *ut forte* juvencīs
*fūsus* humum viridīs*que super* madefēcerat herbās.
*Hīc* juvenis *jam victor* ovāns vestīgia pressō
*haud tenuit* titubāta solō, *sed* prōnus *in ipsō*
concidit immundō*que* fimō *sacrōque* cruōre.
*Nōn* tamen Euryalī, *nōn ille* oblītus *amōrum:*

---

**adventō** (1) approach, keep coming nearer†
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**ambiguus, a, um** doubtful, uncertain
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**calx, calcis** *f.* heel, foot†
**concidō, ere, ī** fall (in a heap)
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**deinde** then, next, thereafter*
**Diōrēs, is** *m.* Trojan nobleman
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**ēlābor, ī, lāpsus** slip out, get ahead
**ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus** flash forth, dart
**Euryalus, ī** *m.* a Trojan
**extrēmus, a, um** final, last, extreme*
**ferē** almost, about
**fimus (um), ī** *m.* (*n.*) filth, manure†
**fulmen, inis** *n.* lightning, thunderbolt*
**Helymus, ī** *m.* a Sicilian
**herba, ae** *f.* grass, herb(age), plant*
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, soil, earth*
**immundus, a, um** filthy, dirty, foul
**incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** lean on, (*dat.*)
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, pursue*
**intervallum, ī** *n.* interval, space between†
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) young (man, woman)*
**lēvis, e** smooth, slippery, polished
**madefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus** wet, soak†
**Nīsus, ī** *m.* a Trojan
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen.*)
**ōcior, ius** swifter, faster
**ovō** (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
**post** behind, after (*acc.*); afterward*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press*
**prior, ius** prior, former, first*
**prōnus, a, um** prone, flat
**proximus, a, um** next, closest
**Salius, (i)ī** *m.* a Greek
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, soil, earth*
**spatium, (i)ī** *n.* space, distance, course
**supersum, esse, fuī** remain, be left
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**terō, ere, trīvī, trītus** rub, graze
**tertius, a, um** third*
**titubō,** (1) totter, stagger, reel†
**trānseō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** pass by
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, foothold, track*
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*
**volō** (1) fly, speed, hasten*

---

**319. fulminis ālīs:** the ancients often represented the thunderbolt as winged.

**320.** A spondaic line; App. 395.

**323. quō sub ipsō:** *close upon him.*

**324. calcem calce = pedem pede;** App. 443.

**325–326. supersint:** the present here instead of the more usual pluperf. in conclusions of conditions contrary to fact; App. 382. **trānseat, relinquat:** conclusions contrary to fact.

**328. fīnem:** irregularly feminine.

**330. super:** adv. *on the surface.* **fūsus (erat sanguis).**

**333. sacrō:** *sacrificial.*

**334. Nōn (Nīsus oblītus est) Euryalī:** gen. with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

*nam sēsē* opposuit Saliō *per* lūbrica *surgēns*,
*ille* autem spissā jacuit revolūtus harēnā:
ēmicat Euryalus *et mūnere victor* amīcī
*prīma tenet*, plausū*que* volat fremitū*que* secundō.
Post Helymus *subit et nunc* tertia palma Diōrēs.
*Hīc tōtum* caveae cōnsessum *ingentis et ōra*
*prīma patrum magnīs* Salius *clāmōribus* implet,
*ēreptumque* dolō reddī *sibi* poscit *honōrem*.
Tūtātur favor Euryalum *lacrimaeque* decōrae,
grātior *et* pulchrō *veniēns in corpore* virtūs.
Adjuvat *et magnā* prōclāmat *vōce* Diōrēs,
*quī subiit* palmae frūstrā*que ad* praemia *vēnit*
ultima, *sī prīmī* Saliō reddentur *honōrēs*.
*Tum pater Aenēās* "Vestra" inquit "*mūnera vōbīs*
certa *manent*, *puerī et* palmam *movet* ordine nēmō;
*mē* liceat *cāsūs* miserārī īnsontis amīcī."
*Sīc fātus* tergum Gaetūlī *immāne* leōnis

---

**adjuvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, assist†
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, lover, comrade*
**autem** however, moreover, but*
**cavea, ae** *f.* hollow, seats (for spectators), grand stand†
**certus, a, um** fixed, certain, sure, reliable*
**cōnsessus, ūs** *m.* assembly, spectators
**decōrus, a, um** beautiful, becoming
**Diōrēs, is** *m.* Trojan nobleman
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick*
**ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus** flash forth, dart
**Euryalus, ī** *m.* a Trojan
**favor, ōris** *m.* favor, popularity†
**fremitus, ūs** *m.* shout(ing), roar
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**Gaetūlus, a, um** Gaetulian, of Gaetulia in Northwest Africa
**grātus, a, um** welcome, agreeable
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**Helymus, ī** *m.* a Sicilian
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**inquam, is, it** say*
**īnsōns, ontis** innocent, guiltless
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**leō, ōnis** *m.* lion
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted, it is allowed *
**lūbricus, a, um** slippery, smooth, slimy
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate (*gen.*)*
**nēmō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) no one, none
**oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place in the way of (*dat.*)
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, row, rank, array*
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**plausus, ūs** *m.* clapping, applause
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**post** behind, after (*acc.*); later*
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize*
**prōclāmō** (1) proclaim, announce†
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious, noble*
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, (duly) render, give back*
**revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** roll over, revolve
**Salius, (i)ī** *m.* a Greek
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable*
**spissus, a, um** thick, dense, crowded
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**tertius, a, um** third*
**tūtor, ārī, ātus** protect, guard, defend
**ultimus, a, um** last, final, farthest*
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manhood, excellence, courage*
**volō** (1) fly, speed, hasten*

---

**335. lūbrica (loca).**

**336. ille:** Salius.

**337. Euryalus:** with the last syllables lengthened under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a*.

**340–341. ōra prīma patrum:** in the Roman theater the front seats were occupied by the senators (**patrēs**) and other distinguished persons.

**342. reddī** = **ut reddātur.**

**345. Adjuvat (Euryalum).**

**350. liceat:** vol.; App. 254.

*dat* Saliō villīs onerōsum *atque* unguibus aureīs.
*Hīc* Nīsus "*Sī tanta*" inquit "*sunt* praemia *victīs*,
*et tē lāpsōrum* miseret, *quae mūnera* Nīsō
digna *dabis*, *prīmam* meruī *quī* laude corōnam
nī *mē*, *quae* Salium, *fortūna* inimīca *tulisset?*"
*Et simul hīs dictīs* faciem ostentābat *et* ūdō
turpia membra fimō. Rīsit *pater* optimus *ollī*
*et* clipeum efferrī *jussit*, Didymāonis artīs,
Neptūnī *sacrō Danaīs dē* poste refīxum.
*Hōc* juvenem ēgregium praestantī *mūnere* dōnat.
Post, *ubi* cōnfectī *cursūs et dōna* perēgit:
"*Nunc, sī cui* virtūs *animusque in pectore* praesēns,
*adsit et* ēvīnctīs attollat bracchia palmīs."
*Sīc ait, et geminum* pugnae prōpōnit *honōrem*,

**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, workmanship*
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**bracchium,** (i)ī *n.* forearm*
**clipeus (um),** ī *m.* (*n.*) shield, buckler*
**cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** finish, use up
**corōna, ae** *f.* crown, wreath, chaplet
**Didymāōn, onis** *m.* an unknown artist†
**dignus, a, um** worthy, fitting, seemly
**dōnō** (1) present, give, bestow, grant
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** bring forth, raise*
**ēgregius, a, um** eminent, noble, remarkable
**ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, tie
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**fimus (um),** ī *m.* (*n.*) filth, manure
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly
**inquam, is, it** say*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**membrum,** ī *n.* member, limb, body*
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**miseret, ēre, uit, itum** it distresses (*gen.*)
**Neptūnus,** ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**nisi, nī** if not, unless, except*
**Nīsus,** ī *m.* a Trojan
**onerōsus, a, um** heavy, burdensome†
**optimus, a, um** best, finest
**ostentō** (1) keep showing, exhibit, display
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** complete, finish
**post** behind, after (*acc.*); later*
**postis, is** *m.* column, post, door, gate
**praemium,** (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
**praesēns, entis** present, ready, prompt
**praestāns, antis** excellent, surpassing
**prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positus** set forth, display†
**pugna, ae** *f.* fight, battle, fray, combat*
**refīgō, ere, xī, xus** unfasten, take down†
**rīdeō, ēre, sī, sus** laugh (at), smile
**Salius,** (i)ī *m.* a Greek
**turpis, e** shameful, filthy, disgraceful
**ūdus, a, um** wet, moist, damp†
**unguis, is** *m.* claw, nail, talon
**villus,** ī *m.* shaggy hair, tuft, nap
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

**352. aureīs**: two syllables here by synizesis; App. 403.

**354. tē lāpsōrum (virōrum)**: acc. and gen. with a verb of pitying; App. 289. **Nīsō** = **mihi**; therefore **quī meruī** instead of **quī meruit.**

**355–356. meruī, tulisset**: mixed condition; App. 382, *d*. **nī eadem (inimīca) fortūna, quae Salium (tulit), mē tulisset. tulisset**: *had ruined me.*

**357. dictīs**: abl. of accompaniment with **simul**; App. 321.

**359. artīs**: apposition with **clipeum.**

**360. Danaīs**: dat. of agent; App. 302. Apparently this shield had been taken by Aeneas as spoils from the Greeks, who had removed (**refīxum**) it from a temple of Neptune, where it had formerly been dedicated by some worshipper.

**363–484. The aged Entellus defeats the youthful boaster, Dares, in boxing.**

**363. cui** (indef.): dat of possession. **virtūs (est).**

**364. adsit**: vol. (hortatory); App. 254. **ēvīnctīs**: i.e., with the **caestūs,** *boxing gloves*, mentioned in l. 69.

*victōrī* vēlātum *aurō* vittīs*que* juvencum,
ēnsem *atque* īnsignem galeam sōlācia *victō*.
*Nec* mora; continuō *vastīs cum vīribus* effert
*ōra* Darēs *magnōque virum sē* murmure *tollit*,
*sōlus quī* Paridem solitus contendere contrā,
*īdemque ad* tumulum *quō maximus* occubat Hector
*victōrem* Būtēn *immānī corpore, quī sē*
Bebryciā *veniēns* Amycī *dē gente ferēbat*,
perculit *et* fulvā moribundum extendit harēnā.
*Tālis prīma* Darēs *caput altum in* proelia *tollit*,
ostendit*que umerōs* lātōs alterna*que* jactat
bracchia prōtendēns *et* verberat ictibus *aurās*.
*Quaeritur huic alius; nec* quisquam *ex agmine tantō*
audet adīre *virum manibusque* indūcere caestūs.
Ergō alacris *cūnctōsque* putāns excēdere palmā
*Aenēae stetit ante pedēs, nec plūra* morātus

---

**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach
**alacer (cris), cris, cre** eager, elated†
**alternus, a, um** alternate, in (by) turns†
**Amycus, ī** *m.* famous boxer†
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**Bebrycia, ae** *f.* Bebrycia, a country in Asia Minor†
**bracchium, (i)ī** *n.* forearm*
**Būtēs, ae** *m.* famous boxer†
**caestus, ūs** *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet, made of rawhide wrapped around bits of lead and iron
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** struggle, contend
**continuō** at once, immediately
**contrā** against, opposite (*acc.*); in reply*
**Darēs, (ēt)is** *m.* Trojan boxer†
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** bear forth, raise*
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, retire
**extendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch out, extend†
**fulvus, a, um** yellow, tawny, blond
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**Hector, oris** *m.* Trojan leader*
**ictus, ūs** *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
**indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw on†
**īnsignis, e** marked, distinguished, noble*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, swing, strike*
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
**lātus, a, um** wide, broad, spacious*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
**moribundus, a, um** dying, ready to die
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**murmur, is** *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
**occubō, āre** lie (dead, buried)
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, display*
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**Paris, idis** *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
**percellō, ere, culī, culsus** strike down†
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, fight, contest
**prōtendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch forth†
**putō** (1) think, suppose, consider, ponder
**quisquam, quaequam, quidquam** any(one, thing)
**sōlācium, (i)ī** *n.* solace, consolation†
**soleō, ēre, itus sum** be accustomed
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**vēlō** (1) veil, cover, wreathe, clothe
**verberō** (1) strike, lash, beat, whip
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

---

**366. vēlātum aurō:** referring to the custom of gilding the horns of sacrificial victims.

**369.** vir(ōr)um.

**370. Paridem:** Paris, the idol of the ladies, was a great athlete.

**371–374. ad tumulum:** funeral games were celebrated at the tombs of great warriors. **īdem (Darēs) perculit Būtēn, quī veniēns (ex) Bebrycia ferēbat sē (esse) dē gente Amycī. victōrem:** *champion.*

**378. huic alius:** *another to match him.*

**380. alacris: alacer** is the more common form of the nom. masc.

*tum* laevā taurum cornū *tenet atque* ita *fātur:*
"*Nāte deā, sī* nēmō audet *sē* crēdere pugnae,
*quae fīnis standī?* Quō *mē* decet ūsque *tenērī?*
*Dūcere dōna jubē.*" *Cūnctī simul ōre* fremēbant
Dardanidae reddī*que virō* prōmissa *jubēbant.*
*Hīc* gravis Entellum *dictīs* castīgat *Acestēs,*
proximus *ut* viridante torō cōnsēderat herbae:
"Entelle, hērōum *quondam* fortissime frūstrā,
*tantane* tam patiēns *nūllō* certāmine *tollī*
*dōna* sinēs? *Ubi nunc nōbīs deus ille* (magister
nēquīquam memorātus) Eryx? *Ubi fāma per omnem*
Trīnacriam *et* spolia *illa tuīs* pendentia *tēctīs?*"
*Ille sub haec:* "*Nōn* laudis *amor nec* glōria cessit
pulsa metū; *sed* enim gelidus tardante senectā
*sanguis* hebet, frīgent*que* effētae *in corpore vīrēs.*
*Sī mihi quae quondam fuerat quāque* improbus iste
exsultat fīdēns, *sī nunc foret illa* juventās,

---

**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**castīgō** (1) chastise, rebuke, punish
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, give in*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* struggle, contest, strife*
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle*
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn, tip, end
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Trojan, Dardanian
**decet, ēre, uit** it is fitting, it is proper
**effētus, a, um** worn out, exhausted†
**enim** for, truly, indeed*
**Entellus, ī** *m.* Sicilian boxer†
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* famous Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas†
**ex(s)ultō** (1) exult, vaunt, boast, rejoice
**fīdō, ere, fīsus sum** trust (in) (*dat., abl.*)*
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant, stout*
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** rage, roar, shout*
**frīgeō, ēre** be cold, be stiff, freeze†
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**gelidus, a, um** cold, chilly, icy
**glōria, ae** *f.* fame, glory, reputation
**gravis, e** heavy, weighty, venerable*
**hebeō, ēre** be blunt, be sluggish†
**herba, ae** *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**improbus, a, um** shameless, wicked
**iste, ta, tud** that one (you mention)*
**ita** thus, so, in this way
**juventās, ātis** *f.* youth, young manhood†*
**laeva, ae** *f.* left hand*
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**magister, trī** *m.* master, trainer, chief
**memorō** (1) recount, recall, celebrate*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**nēmō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) no one, none
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**patiēns, entis** patient, calm, enduring
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** strike, drive (out)
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang, depend*
**prōmissum, ī** *n.* promise, agreement
**proximus, a, um** next, closest, nearest
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
**quō . . . ūsque** = **quoūsque** how long, to what extent†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give (back), render (duly)*
**senecta, ae** *f.* old age, eld, senility†
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** allow, permit*
**spolium, (i)ī** *n.* spoils, trophy, plunder
**tam** so, to such an extent, such*
**tardō** (1) hinder, check, retard, impede†
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, bullock, ox*
**torus, ī** *m.* couch, bank*
**Trīnacria, ae** *f.* Sicily
**ūsque** *see* **quō . . . ūsque**†
**viridāns, antis** green, flourishing†

---

**384. fīnis:** more commonly masc. **Quō . . . ūsque** = **quoūsque:** an example of what is known as tmesis; App. 445.

**385. jubē (mē) dūcere dōna.**

**391–392. Ubi nōbīs (est) ille deus Eryx, memorātus nēquīquam (tuus) magister? Ubi (est) fāma? nōbīs:** ethical dat.; App. 300.

**393. spolia:** won in boxing contests.

**397. Sī mihi (foret illa juventās), quae quondam fuerat. quā:** abl. of cause. **improbus iste:** *that braggart* = Dares.

*haud* equidem pretiō inductus pulchrō*que* juvencō
*vēnissem, nec dōna* moror." *Sīc* deinde locūtus
*in* medium *geminōs immānī* pondere caestūs
prōjēcit, *quibus* ācer Eryx *in* proelia suētus
*ferre manum* dūrō*que* intendere bracchia tergō.
Obstipuēre *animī: tantōrum ingentia* septem
terga boum plumbō īnsūtō *ferrō*que rigēbant.
*Ante omnīs* stupet *ipse* Darēs longē*que* recūsat,
magnanimus*que* Anchīsiadēs *et* pondus *et ipsa*
*hūc* illūc vinclōrum immēnsa volūmina versat.
*Tum* senior *tālīs referēbat pectore vōcēs:*
"*Quid, sī quis* caestūs *ipsīus et* Herculis *arma*
*vīdisset trīstemque hōc ipsō in lītore* pugnam?
*Haec* germānus Eryx *quondam tuus arma* gerēbat
(*sanguine cernis* adhūc sparsō*que* īnfecta cerebrō),
*hīs magnum* Alcīden contrā *stetit, hīs ego* suētus,

---

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fierce*
**adhūc** to this point, thus far, still, yet
**Alcīdēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Alceus, Hercules†
**Anchīsiadēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Anchises, Aeneas†
**bōs, bovis** *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
**bracchium, (i)ī** *n.* forearm*
**caestus, ūs** *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
**cerebrum, ī** *n.* brain†
**contrā** against, opposite (*acc.*)*
**Darēs, (ēt)is** *m.* Trojan boxer
**deinde** then, next, thereupon*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**equidem** indeed, surely, truly*
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas
**germānus, ī** *m.* brother*
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on), wear*
**Herculēs, is** *m.* god of strength, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, noted for his twelve labors
**illūc** thither, in that direction
**immēnsus, a, um** boundless, vast
**indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead on, draw on
**īnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** taint, stain†
**īnsuō, ere, uī, ūtus** sew in†
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch (out)
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
**longē** (from) afar*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk*
**magnanimus, a, um** great-souled
**medium, (i)ī** *n.* middle, midst, center
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, care for, hinder*
**obstipēscō, ere, puī** be amazed*
**plumbum, ī** *n.* lead†
**pondus, eris** *n.* weight, burden, mass
**pretium, (i)ī** *n.* prize, reward, price
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, fight, contest
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw forward
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious*
**recūsō** (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be reluctant
**rigeō, ēre, uī** be stiff, be rigid
**senior, ōris** *m.* old (aged) man, sire
**septem** seven
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**stupeō, ēre, uī** be amazed
**suēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus** be(come) accustomed
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide; boxing glove*
**versō** (1) roll, revolve, keep turning
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, fastening*
**volūmen, inis** *n.* coil, fold, roll

---

**402. suētus (erat).**
**409. senior:** Entellus.
**410. ipsīus Herculis:** *of Hercules himself.* The **et** connects **caestūs** and **arma.**
**411. trīstem pugnam:** because Eryx was killed in it.
**412. germānus tuus:** he is speaking to Aeneas.
**413. sanguine, cerebrō:** of men he had killed in his day.
**414. Alcīdēn:** the form **Herculēn** (– ⏑ –) could not be used in dactylic hexameter. **suētus (eram pugnāre,** *to fight*).

*dum* melior *vīrīs sanguis dabat,* aemula necdum
temporibus *geminīs* cānēbat sparsa senectūs.
*Sed sī nostra* Darēs *haec* Trōius *arma* recūsat
*idque piō* sedet *Aenēae,* probat auctor *Acestēs,*
aequēmus pugnās. Erycis *tibi* terga remittō
(solve metūs), *et tū* Trojānōs exue caestūs."
*Haec fātus* duplicem *ex umerīs* rejēcit amictum
*et magnōs* membrōrum artūs, *magna* ossa lacertōs*que*
exuit *atque ingēns mediā* cōnsistit harēnā.
*Tum* satus *Anchīsā* caestūs *pater* extulit aequōs
*et* paribus palmās ambōrum innexuit *armīs.*
Cōnstitit *in* digitōs extemplō arrēctus uterque
bracchia*que ad superās* interritus extulit *aurās.*
Abdūxēre retrō longē *capita* ardua *ab* ictū
immiscent*que manūs manibus* pugnam*que* lacessunt,
*ille pedum* melior mōtū frētus*que* juventā,

**abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** withdraw
**aemulus, a, um** emulous, jealous
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), match, even*
**aequus, a, um** equal, even, just, fair
**ambō, ae, ō** both
**amictus, ūs** *m.* cloak, wrap, mantle
**arduus, a, um** lofty, upraised, steep*
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, lift
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, member*
**auctor, ōris** *m.* author, backer, founder
**bracchium,** (i)ī *n.* forearm*
**caestus, ūs** *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
**cāneō, ēre, uī** be white (gray, hoary)†
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast)*
**Darēs,** (ēt)is *m.* Trojan boxer
**digitus, ī** *m.* finger, toe†
**duplex, icis** double, twofold
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** bring forth, raise*
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas
**extemplō** suddenly, immediately, forthwith
**exuō, ere, uī, ūtus** doff, bare, remove
**frētus, a, um** depending on (*abl.*)
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**ictus, ūs** *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
**immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle
**innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** bind, fasten
**interritus, a, um** undaunted, fearless†
**juventa, ae** *f.* youth, young manhood
**lacertus, ī** *m.* upper arm
**lacessō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** provoke†
**longē** (from) afar, far (away)*
**melior, ius** better, superior, preferable
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**mōtus, ūs** *m.* movement, motion, agility
**necdum** not yet
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**pār, paris** equal, like, similar*
**probō** (1) test, try, prove, approve
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
**recūsō** (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be reluctant
**rejiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw back†
**remittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, give up
**retrō** back(ward), again
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit, settle; suit*
**senectūs, ūtis** *f.* old age, eld, senility†
**serō, ere, sēvī, satus** sow, beget*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), dismiss*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide; boxing glove*
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*

**415. aemula:** *jealous* of my youthful strength.

**418. Aenēae:** dat. of reference.

**419. tibi:** dat. of reference. **terga = caestūs.**

**421. rejēcit:** pronounce **rejjēcit** here, making the first syllable long by position.

**422. lacertōsque:** hypermetric; App. 402.

**424. Anchīsā:** abl. of source; App. 323.

**426. in digitōs (pedum),** *on their toes.*

**429.** They begin by sparring.

**430–431. ille, hic:** *the former* (Dares), *the latter* (Entellus).

*hic* membrīs *et* mōle valēns; *sed* tarda trementī
genua labant, *vastōs* quatit aeger anhēlitus artūs.
*Multa virī* nēquīquam *inter sē* vulnera jactant,
*multa* cavō laterī ingeminant *et pectore vastōs*
*dant* sonitūs, *erratque* aurīs *et* tempora *circum*
crēbra *manus*, dūrō crepitant *sub* vulnere mālae.
*Stat* gravis Entellus nīsū*que* immōtus *eōdem*
*corpore tēla* modo *atque oculīs* vigilantibus exit.
*Ille*, velut celsam oppugnat *quī* mōlibus *urbem*
*aut* montāna sedet *circum* castella *sub armīs*,
*nunc hōs*, *nunc illōs* aditūs, *omnemque* pererrat
arte *locum et* variīs adsultibus inritus urget.
Ostendit *dextram* īnsurgēns Entellus *et* altē
extulit: *ille* ictum *venientem ā* vertice vēlōx
praevīdit celerī*que* ēlāpsus *corpore* cessit;
Entellus *vīrīs in ventum* effūdit *et* ultrō

---

**aditus, ūs** *m.* approach, access
**adsultus, ūs** *m.* assault, attack†
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, painful, weary*
**altē** (on) high, loftily
**anhēlitus, ūs** *m.* panting, gasping
**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, member*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**castellum, ī** *n.* fort, castle, fastness†
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, withdraw*
**celer, eris, ere** quick, swift, speedy, fast*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, repeated*
**crepitō** (1) rattle, crash, rustle
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** bring forth, lift*
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out*
**ēlābor, ī, lāpsus** slip (out, aside)
**Entellus, ī** *m.* Sicilian boxer
**exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** go out, escape
**genū, ūs** *n.* knee
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**ictus, ūs** *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
**immōtus, a, um** unmoved, immovable
**ingeminō** (1) (re)double, repeat, reiterate
**inritus, a, um** useless, ineffectual
**īnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise (on)
**jactō** (1) toss, hurl, buffet, fling*
**labō** (1) totter, stagger, waver
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**māla, ae** *f.* jaw
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**modo** only, (just) now
**mōlēs, is** *f.* mass, bulk; war engine*
**montānus, a, um** mountain(ous)
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**nīsus, ūs** *m.* effort, strain, po(i)se
**oppugnō** (1) attack, storm, assault†*
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, display*
**pererrō** (1) wander over, survey, traverse
**praevideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus** foresee†
**quatiō, ere, quassus** shake, shatter
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit, settle; encamp*
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, noise, roar
**tardus, a, um** slow, late, lazy, retarded
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, shake, quaver*
**ultrō** further, voluntarily*
**urgeō, ēre, ursī** press (hard), push, urge
**valeō, ēre, uī, itus** be strong, be able
**varius, a, um** varying, different, diverse*
**vēlōx, ōcis** swift, quick, fleet, fast
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**vertex, icis** *m.* summit, head, top, peak*
**vigilāns, antis** watchful, watching
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

**431.** (eī) **trementī**: dat. of reference.
**432.** **genua**: pronounce as two syllables here, **genva**; App. 401.
**434.** **multa** (**vulnera**).
**439.** An attempt to capture a city by assault. **Ille**: Dares.
**440.** Siege operations.
**444.** **ā vertice**: *from above.*



*Louvre*

THE VENUS OF MELOS



*Alinari, Rome* *Vatican Museum*

APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE

On his back, a quiver full of arrows. His right hand draws back the string, and with his left he holds his bow.

*ipse* gravis graviter*que ad terram* pondere *vastō*
concidit, *ut quondam* cava concidit *aut* Erymanthō
*aut* Īdā *in magnā* rādīcibus ēruta pīnus.
Cōnsurgunt studiīs *Teucrī et* Trīnacria pūbēs;
*it clāmor caelō prīmusque* accurrit *Acestēs*
aequaevum*que ab* humō miserāns attollit amīcum.
*At nōn* tardātus *cāsū neque* territus hērōs
ācrior *ad* pugnam redit *ac vim* suscitat *īra;*
*tum* pudor incendit *vīrīs et* cōnscia virtūs,
praecipitem*que* Darēn *ardēns agit aequore tōtō*
*nunc dextrā* ingemināns ictūs, *nunc ille* sinistrā.
*Nec* mora *nec* requiēs: quam *multā* grandine nimbī
culminibus crepitant, *sīc* dēnsīs ictibus hērōs
crēber utrāque *manū* pulsat versat*que* Darēta.

*Tum pater Aenēās* prōcēdere longius *īrās*
*et* saevīre *animīs* Entellum *haud* passus acerbīs,

---

**accurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run up†
**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fierce*
**acerbus, a, um** bitter, harsh, sad
**aequaevus, a, um** equal-aged, of the same age
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, lover, comrade*
**attollō, ere** lift, rear, raise*
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**concidō, ere, ī** fall (in a heap)
**cōnscius, a, um** conscious, aware
**cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, incessant*
**crepitō** (1) rattle, crash, rustle
**culmen, inis** *n.* peak, summit, roof, top*
**Darēs, (ēt)is,** *acc.* **ēn (ēta),** *m.* Trojan boxer
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, frequent, constant*
**Entellus, ī** *m.* Sicilian boxer
**ēruō, ere, uī, utus** overthrow, ruin
**Erymanthus, ī** *m.* Greek mountain†
**grandō, inis** *f.* hail(stone, storm)
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**graviter** heavily, grievously, seriously
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, soil, earth*
**ictus, ūs** *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
**Īda, ae** *f.* mountain near Troy
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, burn*
**ingeminō** (1) (re)double, repeat, reiterate
**longē** far, (from) afar*
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
**nimbus, ī** *m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*
**patior, ī, passus** endure, suffer, allow*
**pīnus, ūs (ī)** *f.* pine tree
**pondus, eris** *n.* weight, burden, mass
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** advance
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
**pudor, ōris** *m.* (sense of) shame, honor
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
**pulsō** (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
**quam** how, than, as*
**rādīx, īcis** *f.* root
**redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** return
**requiēs, ētis (ēī)** *f.* rest, respite, repose
**saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** rage, storm
**sinister, tra, trum** left (hand)
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* desire, zeal, eagerness
**suscitō** (1) (a)rouse, stir up
**tardō** (1) check, hinder, retard
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Sicilian
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*
**versō** (1) keep turning, spin, revolve
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

---

**448–449. cava pīnus.** (in) **Erymanthō. rādīcibus:** abl. of separation.

**451. caelō = ad caelum:** dat. of direction; App. 306.

**456. aequore:** *over the plain;* abl. of route; App. 338. **Darēn:** acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

**458. quam multā grandine:** *as thick as the hail.*

**460. Darēta:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

*sed fīnem* imposuit pugnae *fessumque* Darēta
*ēripuit* mulcēns *dictīs ac tālia fātur:*
"*Īnfēlīx, quae tanta animum* dēmentia *cēpit?*
*Nōn vīrīs aliās* conversa*que nūmina* sentīs?
Cēde *deō.*" *Dīxitque et* proelia *vōce* dirēmit.
*Ast illum* fīdī aequālēs genua aegra *trahentem*
jactantem*que* utrōque *caput* crassum*que* cruōrem
*ōre* ējectantem mixtōs*que in sanguine* dentēs
*dūcunt ad nāvīs;* galeam*que* ēnsem*que vocātī*
*accipiunt,* palmam Entellō taurum*que relinquunt.*
*Hīc victor* superāns *animīs* taurō*que* superbus
"*Nāte deā, vōsque haec*" inquit "cognōscite, *Teucrī,*
*et mihi quae fuerint* juvenālī *in corpore vīrēs*
*et quā servētis* revocātum *ā morte* Darēta."
*Dīxit, et* adversī contrā *stetit ōra* juvencī
*quī dōnum* astābat pugnae, dūrōs*que* reductā
lībrāvit *dextrā media inter* cornua caestūs
arduus, effrāctō*que* inlīsit *in* ossa cerebrō:
sternitur exanimis*que* tremēns prōcumbit humī bōs.

---

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, painful, weary*
**aequālis, is** *m.* (*f.*) comrade, mate
**arduus, a, um** high, upraised, steep*
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (near, by)*
**bōs, bovis** *m.* (*f.*) bull, ox, cow
**caestus, ūs** *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, retire*
**cerebrum, ī** *n.* brain
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** learn, recognize; *perf.* know
**contrā** against, opposite (*acc.*)*
**convertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn, tip, end
**crassus, a, um** thick, clotted, coarse†
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**Darēs, (ēt)is,** *acc.* **ēn (ēta),** *m.* Trojan boxer
**dēmentia, ae** *f.* madness, folly, frenzy†
**dēns, dentis** *m.* tooth
**dīrimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** separate, end†
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**effringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** shatter†
**ējectō** (1) cast out, vomit, eject†
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**Entellus, ī** *m.* Sicilian boxer
**exanimis, e** breathless, lifeless
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, safe, trusty*
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**genū, ūs** *n.* knee
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, soil, earth*
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place (on) (*dat.*)*
**inlīdō, ere, sī, sus** strike in, dash (in, on)
**inquam, is, it** say*
**jactō** (1) toss, hurl, buffet, fling*
**juvenālis, e** youthful, young
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, bull, ox*
**librō** (1) poise, balance, brandish†
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus** soothe, calm, allay
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** sink forward, fall; recline
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, fight, contest
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw back
**revocō** (1) recall, call back, restore
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** feel, perceive
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay (low), fell*
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**superō** (1) surpass, win, triumph*
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, ox, bullock*
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake*
**utrōque** to each side, from side to side†

---

**466. conversa nūmina:** the gods have deserted you and are on the side of Entellus, to whom they have given new strength (**aliās vīrēs**).

**473. taurō:** abl. of cause.

**481.** The monosyllabic ending suggests the thud of the falling animal.

*Ille super tālīs* effundit *pectore vōcēs:*
"*Hanc tibi*, Eryx, meliōrem *animam* prō *morte* Darētis
persolvō; *hīc victor* caestūs artem*que* repōnō."
Prōtinus *Aenēās* celerī certāre sagittā
invītat *quī forte velint et* praemia *dīcit*,
*ingentīque manū* mālum *dē nāve* Serestī
ērigit *et* volucrem trājectō *in* fūne columbam,
*quō tendant ferrum*, mālō suspendit *ab altō*.
Convēnēre *virī* dējectam*que* aerea sortem
*accēpit* galea; *et prīmus clāmōre* secundō
Hyrtacidae *ante omnīs* exit *locus* Hippocoöntis;
*quem* modo nāvālī Mnēstheus certāmine *victor*
cōnsequitur, viridī Mnēstheus ēvīnctus olīvā.
Tertius Eurytiōn, *tuus, Ō* clārissime, frāter,

---

**aereus, a, um** bronze, bronze-clad
**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
**caestus, ūs** *m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, fleet*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, struggle*
**certō** (1) struggle, compete, contest, vie
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**columba, ae** *f.* dove, pigeon
**cōnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, overtake
**conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** assemble
**Darēs, (ēt)is,** *acc.* **ēn (ēta),** *m.* Trojan boxer
**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast (down)
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out*
**ērigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** erect, raise
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas
**Eurytiōn, ōnis** *m.* Lycian archer, ally of the Trojans†
**ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, wreathe
**exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** go forth, escape
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cord, cable
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**Hippocoōn, ontis** *m.* Trojan archer†
**Hyrtacidēs, ae** *m.* son of Hyrtacus, a Trojan†
**invītō** (1) invite, challenge, summon, induce
**mālus, ī** *m.* mast, staff, pole†
**melior, ius** better, preferable, superior*
**Mnēstheus, eī (eos)** *m.* Trojan leader*
**modo** only, (just) now
**nāvālis, e** naval, of the ships
**olīva, ae** *f.* olive
**persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** pay (fully), render
**praemium, (i)ī** *n.* reward, prize, premium*
**prō** before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
**prōtinus** immediately, continuously
**repōnō, ere, posuī, positus** lay down, resign*
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
**secundus, a, um** second, favorable*
**Serestus, ī** *m.* Trojan leader
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
**suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** suspend*
**tertius, a, um** third*
**trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** pass (through, across, over, around)
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*
**volucer, cris, cre** winged, fleet, swift*

---

**483. meliōrem:** as a more acceptable offering to the god than would be the life of a man.

**485–544. Eurytion is first in archery, but the first prize is awarded to Acestes, on account of his age and dignity and because his arrow shot at random into the sky miraculously took fire and left behind a trail of light.**

**486. invītat (eōs) quī velint:** implied indir. disc.; App. 357.

**488. trājectō:** *thrown over* (the mast).

**489. quō tendant ferrum ( = sagittam):** rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

**490. sortem:** the lots were placed in a helmet which was then shaken. The order in which the lots fell out of the helmet determined the order in which the contestants were to try their skill.

**491–492. prīmus exit locus:** Hippocoön's lot was the first to fall out.

**493. victor:** he had won second place.

Pandare, *quī quondam jussus* cōnfundere foedus
*in mediōs tēlum* torsistī *prīmus* Achīvōs.
Extrēmus galeā*que īmā* subsēdit *Acestēs*,
ausus *et ipse manū* juvenum temptāre *labōrem*.
*Tum* validīs flexōs incurvant *vīribus* arcūs
prō *sē* quisque *virī et* dēprōmunt *tēla* pharetrīs,
*prīmaque per caelum* nervō strīdente sagitta
Hyrtacidae juvenis volucrīs dīverberat *aurās*,
*et venit* adversī*que* īnfīgitur arbore mālī.
Intremuit mālus timuit*que* exterrita pennīs
āles, *et ingentī* sonuērunt *omnia* plausū.
Post ācer Mnēstheus adductō cōnstitit arcū
alta *petēns*, pariter*que oculōs tēlumque tetendit*.
*Ast ipsam* miserandus avem contingere *ferrō*
*nōn* valuit; nōdōs *et* vincula līnea rūpit

**ācer, cris, cre** sharp, spirited, fierce*
**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw (to)
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**āles, itis** *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); the height, heaven
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree, wood(s)*
**arcus, ūs** *m.* bow, arch, arc*
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**avis, is** *f.* bird, fowl
**cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** confuse, shatter
**cōnstō, āre, stitī, status** stand (fast)
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**dēprōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** draw forth†
**dīverberō** (1) strike apart, divide, cleave, cut†
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**extrēmus, a, um** last, final, extreme*
**flectō, ere, flexī, flexus** curve, bend
**foedus, eris** *n.* treaty, agreement, truce
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**Hyrtacidēs, ae** *m.* son of Hyrtacus, a Trojan archer
**incurvō** (1) bend, arch, curve†
**īnfīgō, ere, xī, xus** fasten in, impale
**intremō, ere, uī** tremble, quiver, shake†
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**līneus, a, um** of linen, flaxen†
**mālus, ī** *m.* mast, staff, pole
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**Mnēstheus, eī (eos)** *m.* Trojan leader*
**nervus, ī** *m.* tendon, bowstring†
**nōdus, ī** *m.* knot, fold, coil
**Pandarus, ī** *m.* Lycian archer, ally of the Trojans. While a truce was being arranged between the Greeks and Trojans he was instigated by Minerva to wound Menelaüs, thus breaking the truce†
**pariter** equally, side by side*
**penna, ae,** *f.* wing, feather
**pharetra, ae** *f.* quiver
**plausus, ūs** *m.* clapping, applause
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); later*
**prō** before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
**quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)** each (one), every (one)
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī** hiss, whir, buzz, crash
**subsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** subside, remain†
**temptō** (1) try, test, attempt; examine*
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread, be anxious*
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, whirl, shoot*
**valeō, ēre, uī, itus** be strong, be able
**validus, a, um** strong, mighty, stout
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* fastening, band, cord*
**volucer, cris, cre** winged, swift, fleet

**496.** jussus (ā **Minervā**).

**498. Acestēs = sors Acestae.** Acestes's lot came out last.

**499. et ipse:** in spite of the fact that he was well advanced in years (**aevī mātūrus**, of l. 73).

**501. quisque prō sē:** *each for himself*, **quisque** being in partitive apposition with **virī**.

**505. timuit pennīs:** *fluttered its wings in terror* (*feared by flapping its wings*).

**508. alta petēns:** *aiming aloft.*

*quīs* innexa *pedem* mālō pendēbat *ab altō;*
*illa* Notōs *atque alta* volāns *in* nūbila *fūgit.*
*Tum* rapidus, jamdūdum arcū contenta *parātō*
*tēla tenēns,* frātrem Eurytiōn *in* vōta *vocāvit,*
*jam* vacuō *laetam caelō* speculātus *et* ālīs
plaudentem nigrā fīgit *sub* nūbe columbam.
Dēcidit exanimis *vītamque relīquit in* astrīs
aetheriīs fīxam*que refert* dēlāpsa sagittam.
Āmissā *sōlus* palmā superābat *Acestēs,*
*qui* tamen āeriās *tēlum* contorsit *in aurās*
ostentāns artem*que pater* arcum*que* sonantem.
*Hīc oculīs* subitum objicitur *magnōque futūrum*
auguriō mōnstrum; docuit post exitus *ingēns*
sēra*que* terrificī cecinērunt ōmina *vātēs.*
*Namque* volāns liquidīs *in* nūbibus *arsit* harundō
signāvit*que viam flammīs* tenuīs*que* recessit

---

**āerius, a, um** airy, lofty, towering
**aetherius, a, um** of the upper air, ethereal
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**arcus, ūs** *m.* bow, arch, arc*
**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**augurium, (i)ī** *n.* omen, portent, augury
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, predict, proclaim*
**columba, ae** *f.* dove, pigeon
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, aim, strive
**contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, whirl, shoot
**dēcidō, ere, ī** fall, drop†
**dēlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide down, descend
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**Eurytiōn, ōnis** *m.* Lycian archer, brother of Pandarus, ally of Troy
**exanimis, e** breathless, lifeless
**exitus, ūs** *m.* outcome, result
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, pierce, imprint*
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**harundō, inis** *f.* reed, arrow, shaft
**innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** tie, fasten
**jamdūdum** long since, for some time
**liquidus, a, um** liquid, fluid, clear
**mālus, ī** *m.* mast, staff, pole
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* portent, monster, sign*
**niger, gra, grum** black, dusky*
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
**nūbila, ōrum** *n.* clouds, cloudiness
**objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** oppose (to), present (to)
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, portent, token*
**ostentō** (1) exhibit, show, display, parade
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang*
**plaudō, ere, sī, sus** clap, flap†
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); later*
**rapidus, a, um** swift, quick, whirling*
**recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, disappear
**sagitta, ae** *f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
**sērus, a, um** (too) late, tardy
**signō** (1) · mark, observe, note, notice
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**speculor, ārī, ātus** spy (out), watch
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**superō** (1) surmount, surpass, remain*
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**tenuis, e** thin, slight, fine, delicate
**terrificus, a, um** terrifying, dire†
**vacuus, a, um** empty, free, vacant
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

---

**511. quīs = quibus:** App. 109, *c.* **pedem:** obj. of the middle part. **innexa;** App. 309, *a.*

**512.** (in) **Notōs.**

**514. tēla:** poetic plural. **frātrem:** Pandarus, patron saint of archery.

**518. fīxam** (in corpore). **refert** (ad terram).

**521. pater:** with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a.*

**522–523. mōnstrum subitum futūrumque magnō augurīō.**

**523. augurīō:** dat. of purpose; App. 303. **post:** adv., *afterward.*

**524. sēra:** *the seers chanted forth the*

cōnsūmpta *in ventōs: caelō* ceu saepe refīxa
trānscurrunt crīnem*que* volantia *sīdera dūcunt.*
Attonitīs haesēre *animīs superōsque* precātī
Trīnacriī *Teucrīque virī, nec maximus* ōmen
abnuit *Aenēās, sed laetum* amplexus *Acestēn*
*mūneribus* cumulat *magnīs ac tālia fātur;*
"Sūme, *pater: nam tē voluit rēx magnus* Olympī
*tālibus* auspiciīs exsortem *dūcere honōrēs.*
*Ipsius Anchīsae* longaevī *hoc mūnus habēbis,*
crātēra impressum signīs, *quem* Thrācius ōlim
*Anchīsae genitōrī in magnō mūnere* Cisseus
*ferre suī dederat* monimentum *et* pignus *amōris.*"
*Sīc fātus* cingit viridantī tempora laurō
*et prīmum ante omnīs victōrem* appellat *Acestēn.*
*Nec* bonus Eurytiōn praelātō invīdit *honōrī,*

**abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus** nod dissent, deny, reject
**amplector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold*
**appellō** (1) name, call, address, proclaim†
**attonō, āre, uī, itus** stupefy, astound
**auspicium,** (i)ī *n.* auspice, omen, sign
**bonus, a, um** good(ly), kind(ly), noble*
**ceu** as, just as
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, encircle*
**Cisseus, eī** *m.* king of Thrace and father of Hecuba, wife of Priam†
**cōnsūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** consume
**crātēr, ēris,** *acc.* **ēra,** *m.* mixing bowl
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, (flowing) train, locks*
**cumulō** (1) heap up, load (down), increase
**Eurytiōn, ōnis** *m.* Lycian archer, ally of Troy
**exsors, rtis** choice, special, exempt from lot†
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling to (*dat.*); halt, be amazed*
**imprimō, ere, pressī, pressus** impress, embrace
**invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus** begrudge, envy (*dat.*)*
**laurus, ī (ūs)** *f.* laurel
**longaevus, a, um** aged, long-lived
**monimentum (monumentum)** ī *n.* reminder, memorial
**ōlim** formerly, once, at some time*
**Olympus, ī** *m.* high mountain in Thessaly, home of the gods, heaven
**ōmen, inis** *n.* omen, portent, token*
**pignus, oris** *n.* pledge, token, proof
**praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** prefer†
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat, invoke*
**refīgō, ere, xī, xus** unfasten. The ancients thought stars were fixed, a belief perpetuated in the term *fixed stars.*
**saepe** often, frequently*
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, figure, mark, carving*
**sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take, use, select
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**Thrācius, a, um** Thracian, of Thrace†
**trānscurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run across†
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Sicilian
**viridāns, antis** green, verdant, flourishing
**volō,** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

*omens* (*interpretation*) *late;* i.e., after the event had taken place. It is uncertain to what event the poet here refers.

**527.** (dē) **caelō.**

**530–531. nec ōmen abnuit:** the Romans immediately accepted omens which they thought were good, by saying, "**Ōmen accipiō.**" They refused to accept those which they considered of evil portent. By this method they hoped to secure the advantages and avoid the disadvantages of the various prodigies sent as signs by the gods. **laetum:** apparently Acestes also considers it a good omen.

**534. exsortem:** a term applied to a part of the booty excepted from the general distribution by lot (**sors**) and bestowed upon some warrior who had especially distinguished himself.

**538. ferre:** inf. of purpose; App. 261. **suī:** obj. gen. with **monimentum;** App. 284.

**539. tempora** (**Acestae**).

**541. Nec praelātō invīdit honōrī:** *be-*

quamvīs *sōlus* avem *caelō* dējēcit *ab altō*.
Proximus ingreditur *dōnīs quī* vincula rūpit,
extrēmus volucrī *quī* fīxit harundine mālum.
*At pater Aenēās* nōndum certāmine *missō*
custōdem *ad sēsē comitemque* impūbis Iūlī
Ēpytidēn *vocat, et* fīdam *sīc fātur ad* aurem:
"Vāde *age et* Ascaniō, *sī jam* puerīle *parātum*
*agmen habet sēcum cursūsque* īnstrūxit *equōrum,*
*dūcat* avō turmās *et sēsē* ostendat *in armīs*
*dīc*" *ait. Ipse omnem longō* discēdere circō
īnfūsum populum *et campōs jubet esse* patentīs.
Incēdunt *puerī* pariter*que ante ōra parentum*
frēnātīs lūcent *in equīs, quōs omnis euntīs*
Trīnacriae mīrāta fremit *Trojaeque* juventūs.
*Omnibus in* mōrem tōnsā coma pressa corōnā;

**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**avis, is** *f.* bird, fowl
**avus, ī** *m.* grandfather, ancestor
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, struggle*
**circus, ī** *m.* circle, race course, circuit
**coma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**corōna, ae** *f.* wreath, garland, crown
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** strike down
**discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw
**Ēpytidēs, ae** *m.* son of Epytus, a Trojan†
**extrēmus, a, um** final, last, extreme*
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, safe, trusty*
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, pierce, imprint*
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** roar, applaud*
**frēnō** (1) bridle, curb, check, restrain
**harundō, inis** *f.* reed, arrow (shaft)
**impūbēs, is** youthful, boyish†
**incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** advance, stride
**īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour in
**ingredior, ī, gressus** advance, enter
**īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** array, arrange, equip
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**juventūs, ūtis** *f.* youth, young men*
**lūceō, ēre, lūxī** shine, glisten, gleam†
**mālus, ī** *m.* mast, staff, pole
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
**nōndum** not yet
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, exhibit*
**pariter** equally, evenly, side by side*
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (rc)press*
**proximus, a, um** next, closest
**puerīlis, e** boyish, of boys†
**quamvīs** although, as (much as) you wish
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus** shear, clip
**Trīnacria, ae** *f.* Sicily
**turma, ae** *f.* band, troop, company†
**vādō, ere** go (on), proceed
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, fastening, cable*
**volucer, cris, cre** winged, swift; fleet*

*grudged not the honor (to Acestes) preferred (to his own).*

**543.** **dōnīs**: abl. of respect with **proximus**; App. 325.

**545–603. Ascanius and the noblest of the Trojan youth stage equestrian games and a sham battle in honor of the sainted Anchises.**

**547.** **fīdam ad aurem**: *secretly.* Aeneas plans a surprise for the spectators.

**548–551.** **Ascaniō dīc**: observe the shorter form of the imperatives, **dīc, dūc, fac, fer**; App. 202. **(ut) dūcat, (ut) ostendat**: indir. commands; App. 390. **avō (Anchīsae)**: dat. of reference, *in honor of his grandfather.* **Ipse (Aenēās)**: see note on I, 42. **longō circō**: the space cleared was oblong, not round.

**554–555.** **quōs euntīs**: obj. of **mīrāta. omnis juventūs.**

**556.** **in mōrem = dē mōre**: *according to custom.* Vergil is here representing that this sport (the **Lūdus Trojae**), which was an annual affair at Rome in his own day, was of great and revered antiquity. See the note on **Īliacīs lūdīs**, III, 280. **pressa (est).**

cornea bīna *ferunt* praefīxa hastīlia *ferrō*,
*pars* lēvīs *umerō* pharetrās; *it pectore summō*
flexilis obtortī *per* collum circulus *aurī*.
Trēs equitum numerō turmae ternī*que* vagantur
ductōrēs; *puerī* bis sēnī quemque *secūtī*
*agmine* partītō fulgent paribus*que* magistrīs.
*Ūna* aciēs juvenum, *dūcit quam* parvus ovantem
*nōmen* avī *referēns* Priamus, *tua* clāra, Polītē,
prōgeniēs, auctūra Italōs; *quem* Thrācius albīs
portat *equus* bicolor maculīs, vestīgia *prīmī*
alba *pedis* frontem*que* ostentāns arduus albam.
Alter Atys, *genus* unde Atiī *dūxēre* Latīnī,
parvus Atys *puerō*que *puer* dīlēctus Iūlō.

---

**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge, battle-line, army*
**albus, a, um** white*
**alter, era, erum** the other (of two), the one (of two)*
**arduus, a, um** high, lofty, steep*
**Atius, (i)ī** *m.* famous Roman family†
**Atys, yos** *m.* a Trojan†
**augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus** increase, magnify†
**avus, ī** *m.* grandfather, ancestor
**bicolor, ōris** dappled, of two colors†
**bīnī, ae, a** two (each), by twos
**bis** twice*
**circulus, ī** *m.* circlet, necklace†
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, illustrious*
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**corneus, a, um** of cornel wood, cornel
**dīligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus** love, cherish
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader, guide, chief
**eques, itis** *m.* horseman, knight
**flexilis, e** pliant, flexible†
**frōns, frontis** *f.* front, forehead, brow*
**fulg(e)ō, ĕre, lsī** gleam, glitter, shine
**hastīle, is** *n.* spear(shaft)
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**Latīnus, a, um** Latin, of Latium, Roman
**lēvis, e** smooth, polished, slippery
**macula, ae** *f.* spot, stain, splotch
**magister, trī** *m.* master, trainer, chief
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, throng, order*
**obtorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist†
**ostentō** (1) show, display, exhibit, parade
**ovō** (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
**pār, paris** equal, similar, like, even; pair*
**partior, īrī, ītus** divide, part, distribute
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**pharetra, ae** *f.* quiver
**Polītēs, ae** *m.* Trojan leader, legendary founder of Politorium, an Italian city
**portō** (1) bear, carry, convey, bring*
**praefīgō, ere, xī, xus** tip, point†
**Priamus, ī** *m.* a Trojan, grandson of Priam, king of Troy†
**prōgeniēs, ēī** *f.* progeny, descendant
**quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)** each (one)
**sēnī, ae, a** six (each), by sixes
**ternī, ae, a** three (each), by threes
**Thrācius, a, um** Thracian, of Thrace
**trēs, tria** three*
**turma, ae** *f.* band, troop, company
**unde** whence, from which source*
**vagor, ārī, ātus** wander, roam, stray
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* foot(print), step, track*

---

**557–558. (pars) ferunt, pars (ferunt). pectore summō:** *at their throats;* abl. of place; App. 319, 246.

**559. per = circum.**

**560. turmae equitum (sunt) trēs numerō:** abl. of respect; App. 325.

**561. quemque (ductōrem). bis sēnī:** thus making thirty-six boys, in addition to their three leaders.

**562. magistrīs:** the **ductōrēs** of l. 561. **agmine partītō** (in **trīs turmās**).

**563. aciēs (est).**

**564. Polītē:** voc., a Greek form; App. 66.

**565. auctūra Italōs:** by his descendants and great achievements. According to legend, the Italian city Politorium was founded by Polites.

**566–567. prīmī pedis:** *the first (part) of the foot,* just above the hoof; App. 246.

**568. Alter (ductor est) Atys. Atys, Atiī:** more fanciful etymologizing.

**569. puerōque puer dīlēctus Iūlō:** a fine touch of the poet in representing

Extrēmus formā*que ante omnīs* pulcher Iūlus
Sīdoniō *est* invectus *equō, quem* candida *Dīdō*
*esse suī dederat* monimentum *et* pignus *amōris.*
Cētera Trīnacriīs pūbēs seniōris *Acestae*
*fertur equīs.*
Excipiunt plausū pavidōs gaudent*que* tuentēs
Dardanidae, veterum*que* agnōscunt *ōra parentum.*
Postquam *omnem laetī* cōnsessum *oculōsque suōrum*
lūstrāvēre *in equīs,* signum *clāmōre parātīs*
Ēpytidēs longē *dedit* īnsonuit*que* flagellō.
*Ollī* discurrēre parēs *atque agmina* ternī
dīductīs solvēre chorīs, rūrsus*que vocātī*
convertēre *viās* īnfēsta*que tēla tulēre.*
Inde *aliōs* ineunt *cursūs aliōsque* recursūs
adversī spatiīs, alternōs*que* orbibus orbīs

---

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**alternus, a, um** alternate, alternating
**candidus, a, um** lustrous, white, fair†
**cēterus, a, um** other, remaining, rest
**chorus, ī** *m.* band, train, chorus
**cōnsessus, ūs** *m.* assembly, crowd
**convertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Trojan, Dardanian
**dīdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** draw apart
**discurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run apart†
**Ēpytidēs, ae** *m.* son of Epytus, a Trojan
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** receive, welcome
**extrēmus, a, um** last, final, extreme*
**flagellum, ī** *n.* whip, scourge, lash†
**forma, ae** *f.* form, beauty, shape*
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**inde** thence, thereupon, next*
**ineō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** enter, undertake
**īnfēstus, a, um** hostile, threatening
**īnsonō, āre, uī** (re)sound, roar
**invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry, convey
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**longē** (from) afar, far (away)*
**lūstrō** (1) traverse; survey; purify*
**monimentum (monumentum), ī** *n.* reminder, memorial
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, orb(it), earth*
**pār, paris** equal, similar, like, even; pair*
**pavidus, a, um** fearful, nervous, timid
**pignus, oris** *n.* pledge, token, proof
**plausus, ūs** *m.* clapping, applause
**postquam** after (that), when*
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid, illustrious*
**recursus, ūs** *m.* a running back, retreat†
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**senior, ōris** *m.* old (aged) man, sire
**Sīdonius, a, um** Sidonian, of Sidon, a Phoenician city
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), separate*
**spatium, (i)ī** *n.* space, place, interval
**ternī, ae, a** three (each), by threes
**Trīnacrius, a, um** Sicilian
**tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus)** watch, gaze (on)*
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*

---

Atys, the ancestor of the Atii, as a bosom friend of Iulus, the ancestor of the Julii. Octavius (Augustus) Caesar was by birth a member of the **gēns Atia**, Julius Caesar of the **gēns Jūlia**. **puerō Iūlō**: dat. of agent; App. 302.

**572. esse**: inf. of purpose; App. 261. **suī monimentum.**

**575.** (**eōs puerōs**) **pavidōs**: *shy, nervous*, since they were unaccustomed to performing in public.

**576. agnōscunt** (in **puerīs**).

**579. flagellō**: abl. of means.

**580–582.** Vergil is apparently describing the intricate movements of the **Lūdus Trojae**, which he had himself witnessed at Rome. The various figures and evolutions may be compared to those performed by a well-trained chorus of ballet dancers, with much apparent confusion but always preserving the strictest order. **discurrēre, solvēre, tulēre** = **discurrērunt**, etc. **īnfēsta tēla**: a sham battle, as **pugnae simulācra** in l. 585.

**584. spatiīs**: abl. of respect with **adversī.**

impediunt pugnae*que* cient simulācra *sub armīs;*
*et nunc* terga *fugā* nūdant, *nunc* spīcula vertunt
īnfēnsī, *factā* pariter *nunc* pāce *feruntur.*
*Ut quondam* Crētā *fertur* Labyrinthus *in altā*
parietibus textum caecīs iter ancipitem*que*
mīlle *viīs habuisse* dolum, quā signa *sequendī*
frangeret indēprēnsus *et* inremeābilis error:
*haud aliō Teucrum nātī* vestīgia *cursū*
impediunt texunt*que fugās et* proelia lūdō,
delphīnum similēs *quī per maria* ūmida nandō
Carpathium Libycum*que* secant (lūdunt*que per undās*).
*Hunc* mōrem *cursūs atque haec* certāmina *prīmus*
Ascanius, Longam mūrīs *cum* cingeret Albam,
*rettulit et* prīscōs docuit celebrāre Latīnōs,
*quō puer ipse* modō, *sēcum quō* Trōia pūbēs;

---

**Alba, ae** *f.* Alba Longa, a city in Latium, mother of Rome
**anceps, cipitis** doubtful, perplexing
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**caecus, a, um** blind, dark, hidden*
**Carpathius, a, um** Carpathian, of Carpathus, an island of the Aegean Sea†
**celebrō** (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, struggle*
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** stir, (a)rouse*
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround, gird(le)*
**Crēta, ae** *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean
**delphīn, īnis** *m.* dolphin, a fish
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, puzzle, trick, fraud*
**error, ōris** *m.* wandering, maze, error
**frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break (off)*
**impediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** hinder, entangle†
**indēprēnsus, a, um** undiscovered, insoluble†
**īnfēnsus, a, um** hostile, threatening
**inremeābilis, e** irretraceable†
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**Labyrinthus, ī** *m.* the Labyrinth, a famous structure in Crete built by Daedalus for King Minos and full of intricate, winding passages†
**Latīnus, a, um** Latin, of Latium, Roman
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
**Longa, ae** *see* **Alba**
**lūdō, ere, sī, sus** sport, play, mock
**lūdus, ī** *m.* sport, play, game, contest
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, measure, limit*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**nō** (1) swim, float
**nūdō** (1) bare, expose, denude, strip
**pariēs, etis** *m.* (house) wall
**pariter** equally, evenly, side by side*
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, favor, quiet, rest
**prīscus, a, um** ancient, primitive†
**proelium, (i)ī** *n.* battle, fight, contest, fray
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
**quā** where, whereby; in any (some) way
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, cleave, slice*
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, signal, mark, token*
**similis, e** like, similar (*gen., dat.*)*
**simulācrum, ī** *n.* likeness, appearance, pretence, phantom
**spīculum, ī** *n.* spear, dart, arrow
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide, rear*
**texō, ere, uī, xtus** weave, intertwine
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**ūmidus, a, um** moist, watery, wet
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace*

---

**589. parietibus:** pronounce **parjetibus** here; App. 401.

**590–591. mīlle viīs dolum:** *a maze with a thousand winding ways;* abl. of quality. **quā frangeret:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

**593. lūdō:** abl. of manner.

**594. delphīnum:** gen. with adj., **similis**; App. 287.

**595. Carpathium Libycumque (mare).**

**599. quō modō puer ipse (celebrāvit), quō (modō) Trōia pūbēs (celebrāvit).**

Albānī docuēre *suōs; hinc maxima* porrō
*accēpit* Rōma *et patrium servāvit honōrem;*
Trojaque *nunc puerī*, Trojānum *dīcitur agmen.*
Hāc celebrāta tenus sānctō certāmina *patrī.*
*Hinc prīmum Fortūna* fidem mūtāta novāvit.
*Dum* variīs tumulō *referunt* sollemnia lūdīs,
Īrim *dē caelō mīsit* Sāturnia *Jūnō*
Īliacam *ad classem ventōsque* aspīrat *euntī,*
*multa movēns* necdum *antīquum* saturāta dolōrem.
*Illa viam* celerāns *per* mīlle colōribus arcum
*nūllī vīsa* citō dēcurrit trāmite virgō.
Cōnspicit *ingentem* concursum *et lītora* lūstrat
dēsertōsque *videt portūs classemque relictam.*
*At procul in sōlā* sēcrētae Trōades actā
āmissum *Anchīsēn* flēbant, *cūnctaeque* profundum

**acta, ae** *f.* beach, shore†
**Albānus, a, um** Alban, of Alba Longa
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**arcus, ūs** *m.* (rain)bow, arch, arc*
**a(d)spīrō** (1) breathe (blow) upon
**celebrō** (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
**celerō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, struggle, game*
**citus, a, um** quick, swift
**color, ōris** *m.* color, hue, tint
**concursus, ūs** *m.* crowd, throng
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at
**dēcurro, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run down
**dēserō, ere, uī, rtus** desert, forsake*
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, protection, fidelity*
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep, bewail, lament
**hāc . . . tenus** = **hāctenus** so far, still, yet†
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**Īris, idis** *f.* goddess of the rainbow, messenger of Juno
**lūdus, ī** *m.* sport, game, play, contest
**lūstrō** (1) traverse; survey; purify*
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**mūtō** (1) change, transform, shift, alter*
**necdum** not yet
**novō** (1) make new, alter
**porrō** further, in succession†
**profundus, a, um** deep, profound, vast
**Rōma, ae** *f.* Rome
**sānctus, a, um** holy, sainted, sacred*
**Sāturnius, a, um** of Saturn, ancient Italian god of agriculture, father of Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, and several other gods
**saturō** (1) sate, assuage, fill, satisfy†
**sēcrētus, a, um** remote, secluded, secret
**sollemne, is** *n.* ceremony, rite
**tenus** *see* **hāc . . . tenus**†
**trāmes, itis** *m.* path†
**Trōas, adis (ados)** *f.* Trojan woman†
**Troja, ae** *f.* Troy; name of an equestrian game†
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**varius, a, um** varying, different, diverse*
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

**602.** **puerī (dīcuntur = vocantur) Troja = is cursus puerōrum dīcitur Troja. dīcitur = vocātur.** Vergil is thus assigning a Trojan origin to these games and equestrian evolutions, which had in fact been instituted by Sulla and revived by Julius and Augustus Caesar. See Introd. 6.

**603.** **Hāc . . . tenus = hāctenus:** a case of tmesis or separation of a compound word into its original parts; App. 445. **celebrāta (sunt) certāmina patrī (Anchīsae).**

**604–663. Juno sends Iris from heaven to the Trojan women, who are weary of their wanderings, and instigates them to set fire to the fleet, in the hope that Aeneas will be forced to give up his undertaking and to settle in Sicily.**

**604.** **novāvit:** *changed* (from good to bad). See the note on **novandīs**, IV, 290.

**605.** (in) **tumulō.**

**607.** (eī) **euntī.**

**608.** **dolōrem:** obj. of the middle part. **saturāta**; App. 309, *a.*

**609–610.** **mīlle colōribus:** abl. of quality; App. 330. **Illa virgō = Īris. per arcum:** *down a rainbow.* **citō trāmite:** abl. of the route.

pontum aspectābant flentēs. *Heu* tot vada *fessīs*
*et tantum* superesse *maris, vōx omnibus ūna.*
*Urbem* ōrant, taedet *pelagī* perferre *labōrem.*
Ergō *inter mediās sēsē haud* ignāra nocendī
conjicit *et* faciem*que deae* vestem*que* repōnit;
fit Beroē, Tmariī *conjūnx* longaeva Doryclī,
*cui genus et quondam nōmen nātīque fuissent,*
*ac sīc* Dardanidum *mediam sē mātribus* īnfert.
*"Ō miserae, quās nōn manus"* inquit *"*Achāica *bellō*
*trāxerit ad* lētum patriae *sub moenibus! Ō gēns*
*īnfēlīx, cui tē* exitiō *Fortūna* reservat?
Septima post *Trojae* excidium *jam* vertitur aestās,
*cum* freta, *cum terrās omnīs,* tot inhospita *saxa*
*sīderaque* ēmēnsae *ferimur, dum per mare magnum*
*Ītaliam sequimur fugientem et volvimur undīs.*
*Hīc* Erycis *fīnēs* frāternī *atque* hospes *Acestēs:*
*quis* prohibet mūrōs jacere *et dare* cīvibus *urbem?*

---

**Achāicus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**aestās, ātis** *f.* summer (time)
**a(d)spectō** (1) look at, behold
**Beroē, ēs** *f.* a Trojan woman†
**cīvis, is** *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot
**conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl, fling
**Dardanis, idis** *f.* Trojan woman
**Doryclus, ī** *m.* a Greek, husband of Beroë†
**ēmētior, īrī, mēnsus** measure off, traverse†
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* half-brother of Aeneas, settled in Sicily
**excidium, (i)ī** *n.* destruction, downfall
**exitium, (i)ī** *n.* destruction, doom
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**fīō, fierī, factus** become, be made
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep, bewail, lament
**frāternus, a, um** of a brother, fraternal
**fretum, ī** *n.* strait, sea, waters
**hospes, itis** *m.* host, guest, stranger, friend
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear in(to)
**inhospitus, a, um** inhospitable, wild
**inquam, is, it** say*
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw (up), erect
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**longaevus, a, um** aged, old, long-lived
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**noceō, ēre, uī, itus** harm, hurt†
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear, endure
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); later*
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** prevent, prohibit
**repōnō, ere, posuī, positus** replace, lay aside*
**reservō** (1) keep (back), reserve, save (up)
**septimus, a, um** seventh
**supersum, esse, fuī** remain, be left
**taedet, ēre, uit, taesum** it wearies
**Tmarius, a, um** Tmarian, of Tmarus, a Greek mountain†
**tot** so many, as many*
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, sea
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, revolve, roll (round)*
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

---

**616. superesse:** exclamatory inf.; App. 262. **vōx (est) ūna ( = eadem).**

**617. Urbem (deōs) ōrant:** such verbs may take two accusatives, one of the person asked and the other of the thing requested; App. 316. **taedet (eōs).**

**618. nocendī:** gen. of the gerund with adj.; App. 287, 266.

**619. (Īris) conjicit.**

**620–621. Beroē cui (magnum) genus et (magnum) nōmen nātīque (multī) fuissent:** rel. clause of characteristic, with accessory idea of cause; App. 389.

**623–624. trāxerit:** causal rel. clause; App. 357. For a similar thought compare I, 94–96; III, 321–324.

**627. freta (omnia).**

*Ō* patria *et* raptī nēquīquam *ex* hoste penātēs,
*nūllane jam Trojae dīcentur moenia?* Nūsquam
Hectoreōs amnīs, Xanthum *et* Simoënta, *vidēbō?*
Quīn *agite et mēcum* īnfaustās exūrite *puppīs.*
*Nam mihi* Cassandrae *per somnum vātis* imāgō
*ardentīs dare vīsa* facēs: '*Hīc quaerite Trojam;*
*hīc domus est*' inquit '*vōbīs.*' *Jam tempus agī rēs,*
*nec tantīs* mora prōdigiīs. Ēn quattuor *ārae*
Neptūnō; *deus ipse* facēs *animumque* ministrat."
*Haec* memorāns *prīma* īnfēnsum *vī* corripit *ignem*
*sublātāque procul dextrā* cōnixa coruscat
*et* jacit. Arrēctae *mentēs* stupefacta*que* corda
Īliadum. *Hīc ūna ē multīs, quae maxima* nātū,
Pyrgō, tot *Priamī nātōrum* rēgia nūtrīx:
"*Nōn* Beroē *vōbīs, nōn haec* Rhoetēia, *mātrēs,*
*est* Doryclī *conjūnx;* dīvīnī signa decōris
*ardentīsque* notāte *oculōs; quī* spīritus *illī,*
*quis* vultus *vōcisque* sonus *vel* gressus *euntī.*

**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** raise, rouse
**Beroē, ēs** *f.* a Trojan woman
**Cassandra, ae** *f.* prophetess, daughter of Priam, believed by none
**cōnītor, ī, sus (nixus)** struggle, strain
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**coruscō** (1) flash, wave, brandish†
**decor, ōris** *m.* beauty, grace, charm†
**dīvīnus, a, um** divine, heavenly, sacred
**Doryclus, ī** *m.* a Greek
**ēn** see! look! behold!
**exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn (up), consume
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand*
**gressus, ūs** *m.* walk, gait, step, tread
**Hectoreus, a, um** of Hector, a Trojan leader
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**Īlias, adis** *f.* Trojan woman, Ilian
**imāgō, inis** *f.* form, likeness, ghost*
**īnfaustus, a, um** ill-omened, accursed†
**īnfēnsus, a, um** hostile, dangerous
**inquam, is, it** say*
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw (up), erect
**memorō** (1) recall, recount, relate*
**ministrō** (1) tend, serve, furnish, provide
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
**nātus, ūs** *m.* (*only in abl. sing.*) birth†
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**notō** (1) observe, mark, note, notice
**nūsquam** nowhere, never
**nūtrīx, īcis** *f.* nurse
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**penātēs, ium** *m.* household gods*
**prōdigium, (i)ī** *n.* omen, portent, prodigy
**Pyrgō, ūs** *f.* nurse of Priam's children†
**quattuor** four
**quīn** that not, but that, why not, nay even*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (away), rob*
**rēgius, a, um** royal, regal, kingly*
**Rhoetēius, a, um** Rhoetcian, of Rhoeteüm, a promontory near Troy, Trojan†
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, mark, signal, token*
**Simoīs, entis** *m.* river near Troy
**sonus, ī** *m.* sound, tone, noise
**spīritus, ūs** *m.* spirit, air, life, soul
**stupefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus** astound†
**tot** so many*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*
**Xanthus, ī** *m.* river near Troy

**632. nēquīquam:** if we must always wander.

**633. dīcentur = vocābuntur.**

**636. Cassandrae:** eagerly accepted by the women here as prophesying something they want.

**638. tempus (est) rēs agī:** rēs being subject of the passive inf. agī.

**639. nec tantīs (est) mora prōdigiīs:** *nor do such prodigies* (dat.) *admit delay.*

**644. quae maxima nātū (erat):** *who was oldest.*

**646. vōbīs:** ethical dat.; App. 300.

**648. quī spīritus (sit) illī:** indir. quest. after **notāte**; App. 349.

*Ipsa egomet* dūdum Beroën dīgressa *relīquī*
aegram, indignantem *tālī* quod *sōla* carēret
*mūnere nec* meritōs *Anchīsae* īnferret *honōrēs.*"
*Haec* effāta.
*At mātrēs prīmō* ancipitēs *oculīsque* malignīs
ambiguae spectāre ratēs *miserum inter amōrem*
praesentis *terrae fātīsque vocantia rēgna:*
*cum dea sē* paribus *per caelum sustulit* ālīs
*ingentemque fugā* secuit *sub* nūbibus arcum.
*Tum* vērō attonitae mōnstrīs *āctaeque* furōre
conclāmant, rapiunt*que* focīs penetrālibus *ignem*
(*pars* spoliant *ārās*), frondem *ac* virgulta facēs*que*
conjiciunt. *Furit* immissīs Volcānus habēnīs
trānstra *per et rēmōs et* pictās abiete *puppīs.*
Nuntius *Anchīsae ad* tumulum cuneōs*que* theātrī
incēnsās perfert *nāvīs* Eumēlus, *et ipsī*
respiciunt *ātram in* nimbō volitāre favīllam.

---

**abiēs, etis** *f.* fir
**aeger, gra, grum** sick, weary, wretched*
**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**ambiguus, a, um** doubtful, hesitating
**anceps, cipitis** doubtful, uncertain
**arcus, ūs** *m.* (rain)bow, arch, arc*
**attonitus, a, um** amazed, astounded
**Beroë, ēs** *f.* a Trojan woman
**careō, ēre, uī** lack, have no part in (*abl.*)
**conclāmō** (1) shout, call, exclaim
**conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl, fling
**cuneus, eī** *m.* wedge, block (of seats)†
**dīgredior, ī, gressus** depart, separate
**dūdum** just now, lately
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak, say, declare
**Eumēlus, ī** *m.* a Trojan†
**favīlla, ae** *f.* cinder, ashes, embers
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand*
**focus, ī** *m.* fireplace, altar
**frōns, frondis** *f.* foliage, frond*
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
**habēna, ae** *f.* rein, curb, check
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, loose
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** burn, fire*
**indignor, ārī, ātus** disdain, fret
**īnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear to (*dat.*)
**malignus, a, um** hostile, spiteful†
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* portent, omen, sign*
**nimbus, ī** *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
**nuntius, (i)ī** *m.* messenger, message
**pār, paris** equal, even, well-balanced*
**penetrālis, e** inner(most)
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring, report
**pingō, ere, pīnxī, pictus** paint, embroider
**praesēns, entis** present, ready
**quod** because, the fact that
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), rob*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back) at, regard*
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, cleave, slice*
**spectō** (1) look at, see, view, watch†
**spoliō** (1) strip, plunder, despoil
**theātrum, ī** *n.* theater, grandstand
**trānstrum, ī** *n.* rowing-bench, thwart
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**vērō** indeed, truly, but
**virgultum, ī** *n.* brushwood, bush
**Volcānus (Vulcānus), ī** *m.* (god of) fire
**volitō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

---

**651. carēret:** subj. giving the reason of some one (Beroë) other than the speaker; App. 358.

**655. spectāre:** hist. inf.; App. 257.

**656. fātīs:** abl. of means. **rēgna (Ītaliae sē) vocantia.**

**658. arcum:** acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

**662. habēnīs:** the fire rushes like a swift horse when given free rein.

**663. (ex) abiete:** pronounce here as though spelled **abjete**; App. 401.

**664–679. Ascanius rushes from the games to save the ships and is followed by Aeneas. The Trojan women hide.**

**664. cuneōs:** *the wedge-shaped blocks* of seats of the theater.

**666. in nimbō:** *in a cloud* (of smoke).

*Prīmus et* Ascanius, *cursūs ut laetus* equestrīs
*dūcēbat, sīc* ācer *equō* turbāta *petīvit*
castra, *nec* exanimēs *possunt* retinēre magistrī.
"*Quis* furor iste *novus? Quō nunc, quō tenditis*" inquit,
"*heu, miserae* cīvēs? *Nōn* hostem inimīca*que* castra
Argīvum, vestrās spēs ūritis. Ēn, *ego* vester
Ascanius!" — galeam *ante pedēs* prōjēcit ināne*m*,
*quā* lūdō indūtus *bellī* simulācra ciēbat.
Accelerat *simul Aenēās, simul agmina Teucrum.*
*Ast illae* dīversa metū *per lītora* passim
diffugiunt, *silvāsque et* sīcubi concava fūrtim
*saxa petunt;* piget inceptī *lūcisque, suōsque*
mūtātae agnōscunt excussa*que pectore Jūnō est.*
*Sed nōn* idcircō *flamma atque* incendia *vīrīs*
indomitās *posuēre;* ūdō *sub* rōbore vīvit
stuppa vomēns tardum fūmum, lentus*que* carīnās

---

**accelerō** (1) hasten (up), hurry†
**ācer, cris, cre** keen, spirited, fierce*
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**Argīvus, a, um** Argive, Greek
**Ascanius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment*
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** stir, (a)rouse*
**cīvis, is** *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot
**concavus, a, um** hollow, cavernous†
**diffugiō, ere, fūgī** flee apart, disperse
**dīversus, a, um** separated, various*
**ēn** see! look! behold!
**equester, tris, tre** equestrian, cavalry†
**exanimis, e** breathless, lifeless
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake off*
**fūmus, ī** *m.* smoke, vapor, fume
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
**fūrtim** stealthily, by stealth, furtively
**galea, ae** *f.* helmet
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) cnemy, foe, stranger*
**idcircō** for this (reason), therefore†
**inānis, e** empty, useless, vain*
**incendium, (i)ī** *n.* fire, conflagration
**inceptum, ī** *n.* beginning, undertaking
**indomitus, a, um** untamed, wild, fierce
**induō, ere, ī, ūtus** don, clothe, put on
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly
**inquam, is, it** say*
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**lentus, a, um** pliant, slow, tough
**lūdus, ī** *m.* game, sport, play, contest
**magister, trī** *m.* trainer, master, chief
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**piget, ēre, uit, itum** it wearies, it repents
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl, fling
**retineō, ēre, uī, tentus** hold back†
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak; strength*
**sīcubi** if anywhere, wherever†
**simulācrum, ī** *n.* likeness, appearance, pretence, phantom
**spēs, speī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**stuppa, ae** *f.* tow, calking, hemp†
**tardus, a, um** slow, lazy, late, retarded
**turbō** (1) confuse, disorder, disturb*
**ūdus, a, um** moist, damp, wet
**ūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus** live, be alive
**vomō, ere, uī, itus** vomit, belch forth†

---

**668. sīc:** *just as he was* dressed for the games.

**669. castra (nāvium).**

**671. cīvēs (meae):** *my people;* an appeal to their loyalty.

**673. ante pedēs (eārum):** Ascanius remains on his horse.

**678. piget (eās).**

**679. Jūnō:** (*the power of*) *Juno.*

**680–699. Four of the ships burn; but in answer to the fervent prayer of Aeneas, Jupiter sends a heavy rainstorm which extinguishes the fire and saves the rest.**

**681–682. vīvit stuppa = vīvit ignis in stuppā,** the stuppa serving as calking.

ēst vapor *et tōtō* dēscendit *corpore* pestis,
*nec vīrēs* hērōum īnfūsa*que* flūmina prōsunt.
*Tum pius Aenēās umerīs* abscindere vestem
auxiliō*que vocāre deōs et tendere* palmās:
"*Juppiter* omnipotēns, *si* nōndum exōsus *ad ūnum*
Trojānōs, *sī quid* pietās *antīqua labōrēs*
respicit hūmānōs, *dā flammam* ēvādere *classī*
*nunc, pater, et* tenuīs *Teucrum rēs ēripe* lētō.
*Vel tū, quod* superest, īnfēstō fulmine *mortī,*
*sī* mereor, dēmitte *tuāque hīc* obrue *dextrā.*"
*Vix haec* ēdiderat *cum* effūsīs imbribus *ātra*
tempestās sine mōre *furit* tonitrū*que* tremēscunt
ardua *terrārum et campī; ruit* aethere *tōtō*
turbidus imber aquā dēnsīs*que* nigerrimus Austrīs,
implentur*que super puppēs,* sēmusta madēscunt
rōbora, restīnctus dōnec vapor *omnis et omnēs*
quattuor āmissīs *servātae ā* peste carīnae.
*At pater Aenēās cāsū* concussus acerbō

---

**abscindō, ere, scidī, scissus** tear from
**acerbus, a, um** bitter, harsh, sad
**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, flood, waves*
**arduum, ī** *n.* height, steep
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**auxilium, (i)ī** *n.* help, aid, assistance*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake, shatter
**dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send (hurl) down*
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, dense, repeated*
**dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** descend, sink
**dōnec** until, while, as long as
**ēdō, ere, didī, ditus** put forth, utter†
**edō, ere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus** eat, consume
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out*
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** escape, come out
**exōsus, a, um** hating utterly, detesting†
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**fulmen, inis** *n.* lightning, thunderbolt*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**hūmānus, a, um** human, mortal, earthly
**imber, bris** *m.* rain, flood, storm, water
**impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, satisfy*
**īnfēstus, a, um** hostile, destructive
**īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour (on, in)
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**madēscō, ere, duī** drip, become wet†
**mereor, ērī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, wont, precedent*
**niger, gra, grum** black, dark, dusky*
**nōndum** not yet
**obruō, ere, uī, utus** overwhelm, bury
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
**pestis, is** *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
**pietās, ātis** *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, mercy, justice, nobility*
**prōsum, desse, fuī** be helpful, avail†
**quattuor** four
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back) at, regard*
**restinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** extinguish
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak; strength*
**sēmustus, a, um** half-burned
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**supersum, esse, fuī** remain, be left
**tempestās, ātis** *f.* storm; season*
**tenuis, e** slight, slender, fine, thin
**tonitrus, ūs** *m.* thunder
**tremēscō, ere** tremble, shake, quiver
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan*
**turbidus, a, um** confused, turbid
**vapor, ōris** *m.* heat, fire, vapor†
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*

---

**683.** ēst: from edō; observe the long ē.

**685–686.** abscindere, vocāre, tendere: hist. infinitives; App. 257.

**687.** exōsus (es). ad ūnum: *to a man, utterly.*

**688.** (tua) pietās.

**691–692.** dēmitte (id). quod superest: *this remnant;* obj. of dēmitte.

**700–718. Nautes advises Aeneas to allow those who are weak and tired out by the journey to found a colony in Sicily.**

*nunc hūc ingentīs, nunc* illūc *pectore cūrās*
mūtābat versāns, Siculīs*ne* resīderet *arvīs*
oblītus *fātōrum*, Italās*ne* capesseret *ōrās*.
*Tum* senior Nautēs, *ūnum* Trītōnia Pallas
*quem* docuit *multāque* īnsignem reddidit arte
(*haec* respōnsa *dabat, vel quae* portenderet *īra*
*magna deum vel quae fātōrum* posceret ordō) —
*isque hīs Aenēān* sōlātus *vōcibus* īnfit:
"*Nāte deā, quō fāta trahunt* retrahunt*que sequāmur;*
quidquid *erit,* superanda *omnis fortūna ferendō est.*
*Est tibi* Dardanius dīvīnae stirpis *Acestēs:*
*hunc cape* cōnsiliīs *socium et* conjunge *volentem;*
*huic* trāde āmissīs superant *quī nāvibus et quōs*
pertaesum *magnī* inceptī *rērumque tuārum est;*
longaevōs*que* senēs *ac fessās aequore mātrēs*
*et* quidquid *tēcum* invalidum metuēns*que* perīclī *est*
dēlige, *et hīs habeant terrīs* sine *moenia fessī;*

---

**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, wisdom, cunning*
**capessō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** strive to gain
**conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, unite
**cōnsilium, (i)ī** *n.* plan, advice, design
**Dardanius, a, um** Trojan, Dardanian*
**dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, select
**dīvīnus, a, um** divine, heavenly, sacred
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, show, tell*
**illūc** thither, in that direction
**inceptum, ī** *n.* beginning, undertaking
**īnfit** speak, say†
**īnsignis, e** marked, eminent, notable*
**invalidus, a, um** weak, feeble, infirm†
**Ītalus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**longaevus, a, um** aged, old, long-lived
**metuēns, entis** fearful, afraid
**mūtō** (1) (ex)change, alter, transform, shift*
**Nautēs, ae** *m.* a Trojan†
**oblīvīscor, ī, lītus** forget (*gen.*)
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, rank, succession*
**Pallas, adis** *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* danger, peril, risk
**pertaedet, ēre, taesum** it wearies thoroughly
**portendō, ere, ī, ntus** presage, portend
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quodquod)** whoever, whatever, whichever
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** render, return*
**resīdō, ere, sēdī** settle, sit (down)
**respōnsum, ī** *n.* reply, answer, response
**retrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus** drag, draw (back), recall†
**senex, is** *m.* old man, sire*
**senior, ōris** *m.* old (aged) man, sire
**Siculus, a, um** Sicilian, of Sicily
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** allow, permit*
**sōlor, ārī, ātus** console, comfort, solace
**stirps, is** *f.* stock, lineage, race, stem
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, remain*
**trādō, ere, didī, ditus** deliver, transfer
**Trītōnius, a, um** Tritonian, title of Pallas
**versō** (1) keep turning, revolve, ponder

---

**702–703. -ne . . . -ne:** *whether . . . or.* **resīderet, capesseret:** subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349.

**706–707. haec respōnsa dabat vel quae portenderet īra de(ōr)um:** *she (Pallas) always gave him answers either* (as to) *what the anger of the gods portended or;* **portenderet, posceret:** indir. questions; App. 349.

**708. isque hīs vōcibus:** *and he thus.*

**711. tibi:** dat. of possession. **stirpis:** gen. of quality; App. 285.

**713. huic:** to Acestes. **(eōs) quī.**

**716. perīc(u)lī:** obj. gen. with **metuēns.**

**717. sine:** imp. **(in) terrīs. (ut) habeant:** obj. of **sine. fessī:** substantively, *the weary, the wearied.*

*urbem* appellābunt permissō *nōmine* Acestam."
*Tālibus* incēnsus *dictīs* senīōris amīcī
*tum* vērō *in cūrās animō* dīdūcitur *omnīs*.
*Et Nox ātra* polum bīgīs subvecta *tenēbat:*
*vīsa* dehinc *caelō* faciēs dēlāpsa *parentis*
*Anchīsae* subitō *tālīs* effundere *vōcēs:*
"*Nāte, mihī vītā quondam, dum vīta manēbat,*
cāre magis, *nāte,* Īliacīs exercite *fātīs,*
*imperiō Jovis hūc veniō, quī classibus ignem*
dēpulit, *et caelō tandem* miserātus *ab altō est.*
Cōnsiliīs pārē *quae nunc* pulcherrima Nautēs
*dat* senior; lēctōs juvenēs, fortissima corda,
dēfer *in Ītaliam. Gēns* dūra *atque* aspera cultū
dēbellanda *tibī* Latiō *est.* Dītis tamen *ante*
īnfernās accēde *domōs et* Averna *per alta*

---

**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach, come to, go to, reach
**Acesta, ae** *f.* Segesta, a city of Sicily†
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, comrade, lover*
**appellō** (1) call, name, proclaim
**asper, era, erum** harsh, rough, fierce*
**Averna, ōrum** *n.* region around Lake Avernus, Avernian realms, entrance to Hades, the infernal regions, Hades
**bīgae, ārum** *f.* yoke, team, chariot
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**cōnsilium, (i)ī** *n.* plan, advice, design
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**cultus, ūs** *m.* culture, mode of life
**dēbellō** (1) war down, conquer†
**dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear away
**dehinc** thence, then, next
**dēlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide down, descend
**dēpellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive off†
**dīdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** separate, distract
**Dīs, Dītis** *m.* Pluto, god of the lower world
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, utter*
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** drive, harass*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant, stout*
**Īliacus, a, um** Trojan, Ilian*
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, fire*
**īnfernus, a, um** of the lower world, infernal
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district of central Italy*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, gather*
**magis** more, rather, preferably*
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**Nautēs, ae** *m.* a Trojan
**pāreō, ēre, uī, itus** obey, yield (*dat.*)
**permittō, ere, mīsī, missus** allow
**polus, ī** *m.* pole, sky, heaven
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, splendid, good, fine, noble*
**senex, is** old, aged; **senior, ōris** very old, older*
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**subvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey†
**tamen** however, nevertheless, but*
**vērō** truly, verily, indeed, but

---

**718. permissō** (ā tē): ordinarily Aeneas would be expected to name the city for himself. **Acestam:** Vergil thus traces the origin of Segesta to his own day.

**719–745. That night the ghost of Anchises appears to Aeneas in a dream, counsels him to follow the advice of Nautes, and urges him to sail away to Cumae in Italy to consult the Sibyl who will disclose the future to him and conduct him to the lower world, where the future destiny of the Trojan race will be revealed.**

**720. in cūrās omnīs (in) animō dīdūcitur:** Aeneas cannot decide what to do; hence the dream.

**722–723. vīsa (est) effundere.**

**724–725. Nāte cāre:** voc. **vītā:** abl. with comparative; App. 327. **cāre magis** = **cārior.**

**727. miserātus est** (tē).

**730. dēfer:** imp.; App. 202. **Gēns dūra:** the Rutulians.

**731. ante:** adv.

congressūs *pete, nāte, meōs. Nōn mē* impia *namque*
Tartara *habent, trīstēs umbrae, sed* amoena *piōrum*
concilia Ēlysium*que* colō. *Hūc* casta Sibylla
nigrārum *multō* pecudum *tē sanguine dūcet.*
*Tum genus omne tuum et quae dentur moenia* discēs.
*Jamque* valē; torquet *mediōs Nox* ūmida *cursūs*
*et mē* saevus *equīs* Oriēns adflāvit anhēlīs."
*Dīxerat et* tenuīs *fūgit* ceu fūmus *in aurās.*
*Aenēās "Quō* deinde *ruis? Quō* prōripis?" inquit,
*"Quem fugis? Aut quis tē nostrīs* complexibus arcet?"
*Haec* memorāns cinerem *et* sōpītōs suscitat *ignīs,*
Pergameum*que* larem *et* cānae penetrālia Vestae
farre *piō et* plēnā supplex venerātur acerrā.
Extemplō *sociōs prīmumque* accersit *Acestēn*

---

**accersō, ere, sīvī, sītus** summon†
**acerra, ae** *f.* censer (for incense)†
**adflō** (1) breathe upon, blow upon
**amoenus, a, um** pleasant, delightful†
**anhēlus, a, um** panting, heaving†
**arceō, ēre, uī** hinder, restrain, defend
**castus, a, um** chaste, holy, pure, sacred
**cānus, a, um** hoary, gray, venerable
**ceu** as, just as
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**colō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, inhabit, honor, cherish*
**complexus, ūs** *m.* embrace, grasp
**concilium, (i)ī** *n.* assembly, gathering
**congressus, ūs** *m.* meeting, encounter†
**deinde** then, next*
**discō, ere, didicī** learn (how); *perf.* know
**Ēlysium, (i)ī** *n.* abode of the blest in Hades†
**extemplō** immediately, at once
**far, farris** *n.* spelt, a grain
**fūmus, ī** *m.* smoke, vapor, fog
**impius, a, um** wicked, accursed, disloyal
**inquam, is, it** say*
**lar, laris** *m.* household god†
**memorō** (1) (re)call, recount, relate*
**niger, gra, grum** black, dark, dusky*
**Oriēns, entis** *m.* East, dawn
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal of the flock*
**penetrālia, ium** *n.* shrine, chapel
**Pergameus, a, um** Trojan
**plēnus, a, um** full, filled, complete
**prōripiō, ere, uī, reptus** tear away†
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* a Sibyl, famous Italian prophetess
**sōpītus, a, um** slumbering, sleeping
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**suscitō** (1) stir, (a)rouse, rekindle
**Tartara, ōrum** *n.* (abode of sinners in) Hades
**tenuis, e** thin, slight, fine, delicate
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, turn, sway*
**ūmidus, a, um** moist, damp, dewy
**valeō, ēre, uī, itus** be strong, be able, fare well
**veneror, ārī, ātus** worship, honor, venerate
**Vesta, ae** *f.* goddess of the hearth

---

**733. meōs = mēcum.**

**734. trīstēs umbrae:** apposition with **Tartara.**

**735. colō. Hūc:** hiatus; App. 399.

**736. nigrārum:** the appropriate color for victims offered to the gloomy gods of the dark world of the dead. See l. 97, and VI, 243 ff. **multō sanguine:** abl. of means.

**737–738. genus:** your later descendants who shall be distinguished in Italy. Ghosts commonly appear at night and greatly dislike the light of day. Cf. *Hamlet,* I, 5, 58 ff.:

"But, soft! methinks I scent the morning air:
Brief let me be . . . Fare thee well at once:
The glow-worm shows the matin to be near,
And 'gins to pale his uneffectual fire."

**739. saevus:** *cruel,* since he must flee with the coming of dawn.

**741. Quō (tē) prōripis.**

**744. cānae:** a term applied to Vesta as one of the oldest of the divinities.

**746–778. Obeying the commands of**

*et Jovis imperium et* cārī praecepta *parentis*
ēdocet *et quae nunc animō* sententia cōnstet.
*Haud* mora cōnsiliīs, *nec* jussa recūsat *Acestēs*.
Trānscrībunt *urbī mātrēs* populum*que volentem*
dēpōnunt, *animōs* nīl *magnae* laudis egentīs.
*Ipsī* trānstra novant *flammīsque* ambēsa repōnunt
rōbora nāvigiīs, aptant *rēmōsque* rudentīs*que*,
exiguī numerō, *sed bellō* vīvida virtūs.
Intereā *Aenēās urbem* dēsignat arātrō
sortītur*que domōs; hoc* Īlium *et haec loca Trojam*
*esse jubet.* Gaudet *rēgnō* Trojānus *Acestēs*
indīcit*que* forum *et patribus dat* jūra *vocātīs*.
*Tum* vīcīna astrīs Erycīnō *in* vertice *sēdēs*

---

**ambedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus** eat, consume
**aptō** (1) fit, equip, furnish, prepare
**arātrum, ī** *n.* plow†
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**cōnsilium, (i)ī** *n.* plan, advice, design
**cōnstō, āre, stitī, status** stand fast
**dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus** lay down, leave (behind)
**dēsignō** (1) mark off, trace†
**ēdoceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, explain†
**egeō, ēre, uī** lack, require, need, desire, want (*gen.*)
**Erycīnus, a, um** of Eryx, a Sicilian mountain†
**exiguus, a, um** slight, small, scanty
**forum, ī** *n.* market-place, assembly†
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**Īlium, (i)ī** *n.* Troy, Ilium
**indīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus** proclaim, appoint
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**jūs, jūris** *n.* law, decree, justice, right
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
**nāvigium, (i)ī** *n.* ship, galley†
**nihil, nīl** nothing, not (at all)
**novō** (1) renew, change, alter
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude*
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**praeceptum, ī** *n.* instruction, advice
**recūsō** (1) refuse, decline; recoil
**repōnō, ere, posuī, positus** replace*
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak; strength*
**rudēns, entis** *m.* rope, cable, hawser
**sententia, ae** *f.* opinion, purpose, view
**sortior, īrī, ītus** allot, cast lots (for)
**trānscrībō, ere, psī, ptus** copy off, transfer†
**trānstrum, ī** *n.* rowing-bench, thwart
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, head, summit, peak*
**vīcīnus, a, um** near, neighboring
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manhood, excellence, courage*
**vīvidus, a, um** living, vigorous†

---

**his father's ghost, Aeneas founds a city in Sicily which he names Acesta, in honor of his old friend, Acestes. There he leaves the women, the old men, and the weaklings, while he with the braver and stronger part of his followers sets out for Italy.**

**748.** quae sententia cōnstet: indir. quest.; App. 349.

**749.** cōnsiliīs: dat. of possession with mora (est).

**750.** populum volentem: *any of the people who wish to stay.*

**751.** animōs: apposition with mātrēs and populum. laudis: gen. with a verb of lacking; App. 287.

**752.** Ipsī: the real men.

**753.** A hypermetric verse; App. 402.

**754.** numerō: abl. of respect. bellō: dat. of purpose. virtūs (est).

**755.** arātrō: the ancient Roman method of marking out the bounds of a new city or colony, as seen in I, 425.

**756–757.** jubet hoc (esse) Īlium et haec loca esse Trojam: the second half of the sentence repeats the first, as Īlium = Troja. hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.*

**758.** patribus dat jūra vocātīs: as Augustus was doing at Rome in Vergil's time.

**759.** Erycīnō in vertice sēdēs: a famous temple to Venus stood on Mt. Eryx.

fundātur Venerī Īdaliae, tumulōque sacerdōs
ac lūcus lātē sacer additur Anchīsēō.
Jamque diēs epulāta novem gēns omnis, et ārīs
factus honōs: placidī strāvērunt aequora ventī
crēber et aspīrāns rūrsus vocat Auster in altum.
Exoritur prōcurva ingēns per lītora flētus;
complexī inter sē noctemque diemque morantur.
Ipsae jam mātrēs, ipsī, quibus aspera quondam
vīsa maris faciēs et nōn tolerābile nūmen,
īre volunt omnemque fugae perferre labōrem.
Quōs bonus Aenēās dictīs sōlātur amīcīs
et cōnsanguineō lacrimāns commendat Acestae.
Trīs Erycī vitulōs et Tempestātibus agnam
caedere deinde jubet solvīque ex ordine fūnem.
Ipse caput tōnsae foliīs ēvīnctus olīvae
stāns procul in prōrā pateram tenet, extaque salsōs
prōjicit in flūctūs ac vīna liquentia fundit.

---

**addō, ere, ĭdidī, ditus** add*
**agna, ae** *f.* ewe-lamb†
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
**amīcus, a, um** friendly, kind(ly)*
**Anchīsēus, a, um** of Anchises†
**asper, era, erum** rough, harsh, fierce*
**a(d)spīrō** (1) breathe (upon), blow
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**bonus, a, um** good, noble, kind*
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**commendō** (1) intrust, commend
**complector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold
**cōnsanguineus, ī** *m.* kinsman (by blood)†
**crēber, bra, brum** frequent, repeated*
**deinde** then, next, thereupon*
**epulor, ārī, ātus** feast, banquet
**Eryx, ycis** *m.* half-brother of Aeneas
**ēvinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctus** bind, tie
**exorior, īrī, ortus** rise, spring up
**exta, ōrum** *n.* entrails, vitals
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, tears, lament
**folium, (i)ī** *n.* leaf, foliage
**fundō** (1) found, establish, build
**fūnis, is** *m.* rope, cable, cord
**Īdalius, a, um** of Idalium in Cyprus, a mountain and city sacred to Venus
**lacrimō** (1) weep, shed tears, lament
**lātē** widely, far and wide
**liquēns, entis** clear, liquid, fluid
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**novem** nine
**olīva, ae** *f.* olive
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, row, rank, array*
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** endure, bear
**placidus, a, um** gentle, peaceful, calm*
**prōcurvus, a, um** winding, curved†
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl forth
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow*
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**salsus, a, um** briny, salty
**sōlor, ārī, ātus** console, comfort, solace
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), release*
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, becalm, spread, strew*
**Tempestās, ātis** *f.* Storm, Tempest*
**tolerābilis, e** bearable, endurable†
**tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus** shear, clip, trim, cut
**trēs, tria** three*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**vitulus, ī** *m.* (bull) calf, bullock†

---

**760–761.** Anchises is thus officially deified. **Anchīsēō:** a spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

**762–763. diēs novem:** the conventional number of days for funeral ceremonies. **epulāta (erat). factus (erat in) ārīs.**

**766. inter sē:** *each other.*

**773. jubet** (Teucrōs).

**774. caput:** obj. of the middle part., **ēvinctus;** App. 309, *a.*

**775. procul** (ab aliīs). **pateram tenet:** to pour a libation.

Prōsequitur surgēns *ā puppī ventus euntīs;*
certātim *sociī* feriunt *mare et aequora* verrunt.
*At* Venus intereā Neptūnum exercita *cūrīs*
adloquitur *tālīsque* effundit *pectore* questūs:
"*Jūnōnis* gravis *īra neque* exsaturābile *pectus*
cōgunt *mē*, Neptūne, precēs dēscendere *in omnīs;*
*quam nec longa diēs* pietās *nec* mītigat *ūlla,*
*nec Jovis imperiō fātīsque* īnfrācta quiēscit.
*Nōn mediā dē gente* Phrygum exēdisse nefandīs
*urbem* odiīs satis *est nec poenam trāxe per omnem*
relliquiās *Trojae:* cinerēs *atque* ossa perēmptae
īnsequitur. Causās *tantī* sciat *illa* furōris.
*Ipse mihī* nūper Libycīs *tū* testis *in undīs*
*quam* mōlem subitō excierit: *maria omnia caelō*
miscuit Aeoliīs nēquīquam frēta procellīs,
*in rēgnīs hoc* ausa *tuīs.*

---

**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost
**Aeolius, a, um** of Aeolus, god of winds†
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, pretext*
**certātim** in rivalry, emulously
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** force (together)*
**dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** descend, stoop
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, utter*
**exciō, īre, īvī (iī), itus** (a)rouse, stir (up)
**exedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus** devour, destroy†
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** drive, harass*
**exsaturābilis, e** satiable, placable†
**feriō, īre** strike, smite, cut, kill
**frētus, a, um** relying on (*abl.*)
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**īnfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break, shatter†
**īnsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, pursue*
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**Libycus, a, um** Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mītigō** (1) soften, appease, paeify†
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
**nefandus, a, um** unspeakable, unutterable
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**nūper** recently, lately†
**odium, (i)ī** *n.* hate, hatred, enmity
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**perimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** destroy†
**Phryx, Phrygis** Phrygian, Trojan
**pietās, ātis** *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, justice, nobility*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty, vow*
**procella, ae** *f.* blast, gust, storm
**prōsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, attend
**questus, ūs** *m.* complaint, lament
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** rest, desist, repose*
**re(l)liquiae, ārum** *f.* remnant(s), rest, leavings, relics
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**sciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** know (how)
**subitō,** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**surgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** (a)rise
**testis, is** *m.* (*f.*) witness†
**Venus, eris** *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
**verrō, ere, ī, rsus** sweep (over), scour

---

**779–834. Neptune, won over by the entreaties of Venus, calms the sea for Aeneas, giving him a safe voyage to Italy.**

**781. neque = et nōn.**

**783. quam:** referring to **Jūnōnis** of l. 781. **nec longa diēs (mītigat) nec ūlla pietās (Aenēae) mītigat. longa diēs = longum tempus.**

**785. exēdisse:** a Homeric touch.

**786. urbem (Trojam). trāx(iss)e.**

**787. perēmptae (Trojae).**

**788. sciat illa:** *let her know*, since no one else does; a vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

**789–792. tū testis (erās):** the reference is to the storm described in I, 81–156. **excierit:** subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. **hoc:** pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, *c.*

*Per* scelus ecce etiam Trojānīs *mātribus āctīs*
exussit foedē *puppīs et classe* subēgit
āmissā *sociōs* ignōtae linquere *terrae.*
*Quod* superest, ōrō, liceat *dare* tūta *per undās*
*vēla tibī,* liceat Laurentem attingere Thybrim,
*sī* concessa *petō, sī dant ea moenia* Parcae."
*Tum* Sāturnius *haec* domitor *maris* ēdidit *altī:*
"Fās *omne est,* Cytherēa, *meīs tē* fīdere *rēgnīs,*
unde *genus dūcis.* Meruī quoque; saepe furōrēs
compressī *et* rabiem *tantam caelīque marisque.*
*Nec* minor *in terrīs,* Xanthum Simoënta*que* testor,
*Aenēae mihi cūra tuī. Cum* Trōia Achillēs
exanimāta *sequēns* impingeret *agmina* mūrīs,
mīlia *multa daret* lētō, gemerent*que* replētī
amnēs *nec* reperīre *viam atque* ēvolvere *posset*
*in mare sē* Xanthus, Pēlīdae *tunc ego* fortī

---

**Achillēs, is** (eī, ī) *m.* famous Greek leader*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach
**comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus** restrain
**concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, grant
**Cytherēa, ae** *f.* (goddess) of Cythera, Venus
**domitor, ōris** *m.* tamer, subduer, ruler†
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**ēdō, ere, didī, ditus** put forth, utter
**etiam** also, even, besides, too*
**ēvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** roll forth†
**exanimātus, a, um** breathless, lifeless†
**exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn, consume
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
**fīdō, ere, fīsus sum** trust, believe (*dat.*)*
**foedē** shamefully, foully†
**fortis, e** strong, brave, valiant, stout*
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
**gemō, ere, uī, itus** groan, lament
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange
**impingō, ere, pēgī, pāctus** dash against†
**Laurēns, entis** Laurentian, of Laurentum, an Italian city†
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**minor, us** less, smaller, slighter
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, battlement*
**ōrō** (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat*
**Parcae, ārum** *f.* the (three) Fates
**Pēlīdēs, ae** *m.* son of Peleus, Achilles
**quoque** also, too, even, likewise*
**rabiēs, ēī** *f.* rage, frenzy, fury, madness
**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus** find
**repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, cram, jam
**saepe** often, frequently*
**Sāturnius, a, um** Saturnian, of Saturn, early Italian god and father of Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, and several other gods
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, guilt, sin*
**Simoīs, entis** *m.* river near Troy
**subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** force, compel
**supersum, esse, fuī** remain, survive
**testor, ārī, ātus** call to witness, testify
**Thybris, idis** *m.* Tiber, an Italian river
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**unde** whence, from which source*
**Xanthus, ī** *m.* river near Troy

---

**794–795. classe āmissā:** abl. abs. **subēgit (Aenēān). terrae:** loc. or dat. of indir. obj.

**796. Quod superest:** *the remnant;* cf. l. 691. **ōrō:** parenthetical. **liceat:** vol.

**797. tibi = marī:** Neptune being god of the sea. **liceat (Aenēae) attingere Laurentem Thybrim.**

**798. ea moenia:** the city to be founded by Aeneas in Italy.

**801. unde genus dūcis:** according to one account, Venus was born from the foam of the sea near Cythera, hence her name, **Cytherēa,** l. 800. **Meruī (tē fīdere meīs rēgnīs).**

**804–807. mihi cūra (est). cum:** descrip-

congressum *Aenēān nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs*
nūbe cavā rapuī, cuperem *cum* vertere *ab īmō*
strūcta *meīs manibus* perjūrae *moenia Trojae.*
*Nunc* quoque *mēns eadem* perstat *mihi;* pelle timōrēs.
Tūtus, *quōs* optās, *portūs* accēdet Avernī.
*Ūnus erit* tantum āmissum *quem* gurgite *quaerēs;*
*ūnum* prō *multīs dabitur caput.*"
*Hīs ubi laeta deae* permulsit *pectora dictīs,*
jungit *equōs aurō genitor,* spūmantia*que* addit
frēna ferīs *manibusque omnīs* effundit habēnās.
Caeruleō *per summa* levis volat *aequora* currū;
subsīdunt *undae* tumidum*que sub* axe tonantī
sternitur *aequor* aquīs, *fugiunt vastō* aethere nimbī.
*Tum* variae *comitum* faciēs, *immānia* cētē,

---

**accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** approach, reach
**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, waves, flood*
**Avernus, ī** *m.* lake near Cumae in Italy where there was an entrance to Hades*
**axis, is** *m.* axis, axle, wheel, car
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue)*
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**cētus, ī** *m.; pl.* **cētē** *n.* whale, sea-monster†
**congredior, ī, gressus** meet (*dat.*)
**cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** desire, wish
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, let go*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**ferus, ī** *m.* beast, horse*
**frēnum, ī** *n.* rein, bridle, curb, bit
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirlpool, sea, gulf*
**habēna, ae** *f.* rein, curb, check
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, yoke*
**levis, e** light, unsubstantial, slight
**nimbus, ī** *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
**nūbēs, is** *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** drive, dismiss
**perjūrus, a, um** perjured, treacherous
**permulceō, ēre, lsī, lsus** soothe, calm†
**perstō, stāre, stitī, status** stand fast, persist
**prō** for, on behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
**quoque** also, even, too, likewise*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (away), rob*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, becalm, strew, spread*
**struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build, heap up
**subsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** subside
**tantum** only, so much, so great(ly)
**timor, ōris** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety
**tonō, āre, uī, itus** thunder, roar
**tumidus, a, um** swelling, swollen
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**varius, a, um** various, different, diverse*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** (over)turn, change*
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

---

tive with **impingeret, daret, gemerent, posset**; App. 378. **replētī (corporibus virōrum)**.

**809. nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs**: abl. abs.; **aequīs** modifies both nouns. The ancient warriors were often assisted by their gods. In this case the gods helping Achilles were superior to those aiding the Trojans.

**810. cum cuperem**: *although I desired;* concessive subj.; App. 379.

**811. perjūrae**: referring to the famous perjury of Laomedon, who refused to pay Neptune and Apollo the price agreed upon for building the walls of Troy. See note on II, 610.

**813. portūs Avernī**: Cumae near Lake Avernus, where was the fabled entrance to the lower world. From Cumae the rest of Aeneas's voyage to the Tiber was short and uneventful.

**814. Ūnus**: Palinurus, the pilot who fell overboard and was drowned, as is related in lines 833–860.

**816. laeta**: proleptic; App. 440.

**817. aurō**: *with gold* (*harness*).

**818. ferīs = equīs**, as **ferī = equī** in II, 51.

**820. sub axe (currūs)**.

**821. aquīs**: abl. of respect with **tumidum**; App. 325.

**822. faciēs (vīsae sunt, adsunt). cētē**: nom. pl., a Greek form.

*et* senior Glaucī chorus Īnōus*que* Palaemōn
Trītōnes*que* citī Phorcī*que* exercitus *omnis;*
laeva *tenent* Thetis *et* Melitē Panopēa*que* virgō,
Nīsaeē Spīō*que* Thalīa*que* Cymodocē*que*.
*Hīc patris Aenēae* suspēnsam blanda vicissim
gaudia pertemptant *mentem; jubet* ōcius *omnīs*
attollī mālōs, intendī bracchia *vēlīs*.
Ūnā *omnēs fēcēre pedem* pariter*que* sinistrōs,
*nunc dextrōs* solvēre sinūs; ūnā ardua torquent
cornua dētorquent*que; ferunt sua* flāmina *classem*.
Princeps *ante omnīs* dēnsum Palinūrus *agēbat*
*agmen; ad hunc aliī cursum* contendere *jussī*.
*Jamque* ferē *mediam caelī Nox* ūmida mētam
contigerat, placidā laxābant membra quiēte
*sub rēmīs fūsī per* dūra sedīlia nautae:

---

**arduus, a, um** lofty, upraised, steep*
**attollō, ere** lift, raise, rear*
**blandus, a, um** persuasive, flattering
**bracchium,** (i)ī *n.* arm; yardarm*
**chorus, ī** *m.* (dancing) band, troop
**citus, a, um** quick, swift, hurried
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, strain, direct
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn; yardarm; tip
**Cymodocē, ēs** *f.* a sea-nymph†
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense*
**dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist (aside), haul down
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**exercitus, ūs** *m.* army, host, band
**ferē** almost, about, nearly
**flāmen, inis** *n.* breeze, blast, wind
**gaudium,** (i)ī *n.* joy, delight, pleasure
**Glaucus, ī** *m.* minor sea-god†
**Īnō, ūs** *f.* minor sea-goddess†
**intendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, strain
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**laxō** (1) relax, loose(n), relieve, free
**mālus, ī** *m.* mast, staff, pole
**Melitē, ēs** *f.* a sea-nymph†
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**mēta, ae** *f.* turning-point, goal, bound
**nauta, ae** *m.* sailor, seaman, mariner
**Nīsaeē, ēs** *f.* a sea-nymph†
**ōcius** more quickly, very quickly
**Palaemōn, onis** *m.* minor sea-god†
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot*
**Panopēa, ae** *f.* a sea-nymph
**pariter** equally, evenly, concertedly*
**pertemptō** (1) test, seize, pervade
**Phorcus, ī** *m.* minor sea-god
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet*
**princeps, cipis** first, (as) leader
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
**sedīle, ilis** *n.* seat, bench
**senex,** is old, aged; **senior, ōris** older, very old*
**sinister, tra, trum** left (hand), on the left
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold (of sail), bosom, bay*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free, pay*
**Spīō, ūs** *f.* a sea-nymph†
**suspēnsus, a, um** suspended, bewildered, in suspense
**Thalīa, ae** *f.* a sea-nymph†
**Thetis, idis (idos)** *f.* sea-goddess, mother of Achilles†
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, turn, whirl*
**Trītōn, ōnis** *m.* minor sea-god
**ūmidus, a, um** moist, wet, dewy
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**vicissim** in turn, by turns, alternately
**virgō, inis** *f.* girl, daughter, virgin*

---

**823–826.** Vergil is apparently describing a famous sculptured group which in his day stood in the Circus Flaminius at Rome. **laeva (loca).**

**830. fēcēre pedem:** *hauled the sheet.*

**832. sua:** *favorable;* irregularly referring to **classem** instead of to the subject; App. 248. *a.*

**834. agmen(nāvium). hunc:** Palinurus.

**835–861. Seeing that everything is so secure, the pilot, Palinurus, succumbs to sleep during the night voyage. He falls overboard and is drowned.**

**835. mediam mētam:** *the zenith,* making it midnight. See III, 429.

*cum* levis aetheriīs dēlāpsus *Somnus ab* astrīs
āera dīmōvit tenebrōsum *et* dispulit *umbrās*,
*tē*, Palinūre, *petēns*, *tibi* somnia *trīstia* portāns
īnsontī; *puppīque deus* cōnsēdit *in altā*
Phorbantī similis *funditque hās ōre* loquēlās:
"Īasidē Palinūre, *ferunt ipsa aequora classem*,
aequātae spīrant *aurae*, *datur* hōra quiētī.
*Pōne caput fessōsque oculōs* fūrāre *labōrī*.
*Ipse ego* paulisper prō *tē tua mūnera* inībō."
*Cui vix* attollēns Palinūrus *lūmina fātur*:
"*Mēne* salis placidī vultum *flūctūsque* quiētōs
ignōrāre *jubēs? Mēne huic* cōnfīdere mōnstrō?
*Aenēān* crēdam (*quid* enim?) fallācibus *aurīs*
*et caelō*, totiēns dēceptus fraude serēnī?"
*Tālia dicta dabat*, clāvumque adfīxus *et* haerēns
nūsquam āmittēbat *oculōsque sub* astra *tenēbat*.

---

**adfīgō, ere, xī, xus** fasten to, join to†
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), balance, adjust*
**āēr, āeris,** *acc.* **āera,** *m.* air, fog, mist
**aetherius, a, um** of the upper air, heavenly
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, constellation*
**attollō, ere** lift, raise, rear*
**clāvus, ī** *m.* nail, tiller, rudder†
**cōnfīdō, ere, sus sum** trust, believe (*dat.*)
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down), settle*
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** beguile, deceive
**dēlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide down, descend
**dīmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** move apart, sunder
**dispellō, ere, pulī, pulsus** drive apart, dispel
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**fallāx, ācis** deceitful, treacherous†
**fraus, fraudis** *f.* deceit, treachery, fraud
**fūror, ārī, ātus** steal (away), withdraw†
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling (to)*
**hōra, ae** *f.* hour, season, time
**Īasidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Iasius, son of Jupiter and Electra, and brother of Dardanus†
**ignōrō** (1) not know, mistake, ignore†
**ineō, īre, iī (īvī) itus** enter (upon)
**īnsōns, ontis** innocent, guiltless
**levis, e** light, unsubstantial, slight
**loquēla, ae** *f.* voice, speech, conversation†
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* portent, monster, sign*
**nūsquam** nowhere, never
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot*
**paulisper** gradually, (for) a little while†
**Phorbās, antis** *m.* son of Priam, killed in the Trojan war†
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet*
**portō** (1) carry, bear, bring, convey*
**prō** before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
**quiētus, a, um** quiet, undisturbed, calm
**sal, is** *m.* (*n.*) salt, brine; sea
**serēnum, ī** *n.* fair weather, calm
**similis, e** similar, like (*dat.*)*
**somnium, (i)ī** *n.* dream, vision†
**spīrō** (1) breathe, blow, exhale, expire
**tenebrōsus, a, um** dark, dusky, gloomy†
**totiēns** so many times, so often
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

**841. deus** = **Somnus** of l. 838.

**844. aequātae aurae:** see note on IV, 587.

**845. labōrī:** dat. of separation; App. 305.

**847. lūmina** = **oculōs.**

**849. (jubēs)ne mē cōnfīdere huic mōnstrō** ( = **marī**): dat. with special verb; the sea as a thing of treachery and danger is a cruel monster.

**850–851. crēdam:** deliberative subj.; App. 348. **quid enim (id faciam). aurīs et caelō:** datives with **crēdam. fraude:** abl. of means or cause with **dēceptus.**

**853. āmittēbat:** with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent and

Ecce *deus* rāmum Lēthaeō rōre madentem
*vīque* sopōrātum Stygiā *super* utraque quassat
tempora, cūnctantīque natantia *lūmina* solvit.
*Vix prīmōs* inopīna quiēs laxāverat artūs,
*et* superincumbēns *cum puppis parte* revulsā
*cumque* gubernāclō liquidās prōjēcit *in undās*
praecipitem *ac sociōs* nēquīquam saepe *vocantem;*
*ipse* volāns tenuīs *sē sustulit* āles *ad aurās.*
Currit iter tūtum *nōn* sētius *aequore classis*
prōmissīsque *patris* Neptūnī interrita *fertur.*
*Jamque* adeō scopulōs Sīrēnum advecta *subībat,*
difficilīs *quondam multōrumque* ossibus albōs
(*tum* rauca adsiduō longē sale *saxa* sonābant),

---

**adeō** to such an extent, to that point
**adsiduus, a, um** constant, incessant
**advehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** carry to(ward)
**albus, a, um** white*
**āles, itis** winged; bird
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, limb, body*
**cūnctor, ārī, ātus** delay, linger, hesitate
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run, speed
**difficilis, e** difficult, dangerous, painful
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**gubernāc(u)lum, ī** *n.* rudder, helm
**inopīnus, a, um** unexpected, unforeseen†
**interritus, a, um** unafraid, unterrified
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**laxō** (1) relax, loose(n), relieve, free
**Lēthaeus, a, um** Lethean, of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in Hades†
**liquidus, a, um** clear, liquid, fluid
**longē** (from) afar*
**madeō, ēre, uī** drip, be wet
**natō** (1) swim, float, overflow
**Neptūnus, ī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl, fling, cast
**prōmissum, ī** *n.* promise, pledge
**quassō** (1) shake, shatter
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, bough, limb*
**raucus, a, um** hoarse, thunderous
**revellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear off, dislodge
**rōs, rōris** *m.* dew, moisture†
**saepe** often, frequently*
**sal, is** *m.* (*n.*) salt, brine; sea
**scopulus, ī** *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
**secus**; *compar.* **sētius** otherwise, differently
**Sīrēnes, um** *f.* beautiful maidens who by their sweet songs lured sailors to their destruction†
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), relax*
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**sopōrō** (1) make sleepy, drug†
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river in Hades*
**superincumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** lean over, swoop upon†
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**tenuis, e** slight, thin, fine, delicate
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

---

before the pause; App. 394, *a.* **sub astra**: *fixed on the stars.*

**854–855. deus** = **Somnus** of l. 838. **Lēthaeō, Stygiā**: referring to the underworld streams which brought forgetfulness and death.

**856.** (**Palinūrō**) **cūnctantī**: dat. of reference.

**857. prīmōs**: agrees with **artūs** but goes in thought with **laxāverat.**

**859.** (**eum**) **prōjēcit** (**Somnus**).

**861. ipse**: **Somnus.**

**862–871. Awakening and perceiving that the ship is drifting unsteadily, Aeneas seizes the tiller and steers the vessel safe to the harbor of Cumae, the home of the Sibyl.**

**862. iter**: cognate acc.; App. 313.

**863. prōmissīs** = ll. 812–815.

**865. quondam**: from the point of view of Vergil, not of Aeneas.

**866. sale saxa sonābant**: alliteration; App. 411.

*cum pater* āmissō fluitantem *errāre* magistrō
sēnsit, *et ipse* ratem nocturnīs rēxit *in undīs*
*multa* gemēns *cāsūque animum* concussus amīcī:
870 "*Ō* nimium *caelō et pelagō* cōnfīse serēnō,
nūdus *in* ignōtā, Palinūre, jacēbis harēnā."

---

**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, comrade, lover*
**āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** let go, lose*
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake, shatter
**cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum** trust, believe (*dat.*)
**fluitō** (1) waver, drift, float†
**gemō, ere, uī, itus** groan, lament, mourn
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**ignōtus, a, um** unknown, strange
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**magister, trī** *m.* master, pilot, chief
**nimium** too much, too (greatly)
**nocturnus, a, um** nocturnal, of the night
**nūdus, a, um** naked, bare; unburied
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct, guide*
**sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus** feel, perceive
**serēnus, a, um** calm, clear, screne

---

**867.** pater (Aenēās). āmissō magistrō (Palinūrō): abl. abs.; App. 343. fluitantem (nāvem). errāre: *was drifting unsteadily;* indir. disc.; App. 390.

**868.** ipse (Aenēās); *the master;* see the note on ipsōs, I, 40.

**869.** multa: adverbial; App. 93–94. animum: acc. of respect; App. 311.

**870–871.** Ō Palinūre nimium cōnfīse: *O Palinurus (who) trusted too much in,* etc. nūdus: *unburied;* a piteous fate according to ancient ideas.




*Anderson* *Michelangelo*

THE CUMAEAN SIBYL

From the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican



*E. Forti, Rome*

CENTAURS AND DRYAD

# BOOK VI

*SĪC fātur* lacrimāns, *classīque* immittit habēnās
*et tandem* Euboïcīs Cūmārum adlābitur *ōrīs*.
Obvertunt *pelagō* prōrās; *tum* dente tenācī
ancora fundābat *nāvīs et lītora* curvae
praetexunt *puppēs*. Juvenum *manus* ēmicat *ardēns*
*lītus in* Hesperium; *quaerit pars* sēmina *flammae*
abstrūsa *in* vēnīs silicis, *pars* dēnsa ferārum
*tēcta* rapit *silvās* inventa*que* flūmina mōnstrat.
*At pius Aenēās arcēs quibus altus* Apollō
praesidet horrendae*que procul* sēcrēta Sibyllae,
antrum *immāne, petit, magnam cui mentem animumque*

---

**ābstrūdō, ere, sī, sus** hide (away)†
**adlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide to, approach (*dat.*)
**ancora, ae** *f.* anchor
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**Cūmae, ārum** *f.* city on the bay of Naples, founded by settlers from Chalcis, a city of Euboea†
**curvus, a, um** winding, rounded, bent*
**dēns, dentis** *m.* tooth; fluke (of an anchor)
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, crowded, dense*
**ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus** flash forth, dart out
**Euboïcus, a, um** Euboean, of Euboea, a large island off the eastern coast of Greece†
**fera, ae** *f.* wild beast
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**fundō** (1) found, establish, make fast
**habēna, ae** *f.* rein, curb, check
**Hesperius, a, um** western, Italian
**horrendus, a, um** dreadful, dire; revered*
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send in (to), loose(n), give freely
**inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** find, come upon
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**lacrimō** (1) weep, shed tears, lament
**mōnstrō** (1) point out, show, teach, guide*
**obvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn to (*dat.*)
**praesideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** rule, protect (*dat.*)
**praetexō, ere, uī, xtus** fringe, cloak
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch (up), scour*
**sēcrētum, ī** *n.* secret (place, sanctuary)
**sēmen, inis** *n.* seed, germ, element†
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* the Sibyl, an ancient Italian prophetess
**silex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) flint, rock, crag
**tenāx, ācis** gripping, tenacious
**vēna, ae** *f.* vein

---

**1–32. Aeneas lands at Cumae and visits the temple of Apollo founded by Daedalus, near which is the grotto of the Sibyl.**

**1. Sīc fātur (Aenēās):** refers to the lament of Aeneas over Palinurus, who fell overboard and was drowned, as told in the latter part of Book V. **habēnās:** *reins*, as though the ships were so many fiery steeds surging at the bit.

**3. prōrās:** ships were anchored with their prows turned seaward.

**6. sēmina:** *sparks*, which seemed to be hidden in the flint till struck out by the steel.

**8. silvās:** apposition with **tēcta.**

**9. altus:** referring to the lofty situation of the temple, which stood on the top of a high hill and was connected in some way with the cave of the Sibyl.

**10. procul (ā portū).**

Dēlius īnspīrat *vātēs* aperit*que* futūra.
*Jam subeunt* Triviae lūcōs *atque* aurea *tēcta*.
Daedalus, *ut fāma est, fugiēns* Mīnōia *rēgna*
praepetibus pennīs ausus *sē* crēdere *caelō*
īnsuētum *per* iter gelidās ēnāvit *ad* Arctōs,
Chalcidicā*que* levis *tandem super* astitit *arce*.
Redditus *hīs prīmum terrīs tibi*, Phoebe, sacrāvit
rēmigium ālārum *posuitque immānia* templa.
*In* foribus lētum Androgeō; *tum* pendere *poenās*

**āla, ae** *f.* wing*
**Androgeōs (ūs), eō (eī)** *m.* son of Minos, king of Crete, for whose murder the Athenians were compelled annually to choose by lot seven youths and seven maidens, who were sent to Crete and fed to the Minotaur†
**aperiō, īre, uī, ertus** open, disclose, reveal*
**Arctos (us), ī** *f.* the Bear, a northern constellation†
**a(d)stō, āre, stitī** stand (by, near)*
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**Chalcidicus, a, um** Chalcidian, of Chalcis, a city of Euboea, from which Cumae was founded†
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**Daedalus, ī** *m.* famous Greek artisan, father of Icarus and builder of the Labyrinth for King Minos in Crete; inventor of the first wings by means of which he and Icarus escaped from Crete†
**Dēlius, a, um** Delian, of Delos, birthplace of Apollo
**ēnō** (1) swim out, fly forth, float†
**foris, is** *f.* door, gate, entrance
**futūrum, ī** *n.* the future, what is to be
**gelidus, a, um** cold, chilly, icy
**īnspīrō** (1) breathe into, inspire, blow into
**īnsuētus, a, um** unaccustomed, unused†
**iter, itineris,** *n.* way, road, journey*
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**levis, e** light, swift, nimble, unsubstantial
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**Mīnōius, a, um** Minoan, of Minos, king of Crete†
**pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus** weigh out, pay†
**penna, ae** *f.* wing, feather
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**praepes, etis** swift, flying
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** return, restore*
**rēmigium, (i)ī,** *n.* oarage, rowing equipment
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**Trivia, ae** *f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world

**12. Dēlius vātēs:** Apollo, born at Delos, and giver of oracles.

**13. subeunt (Aenēās et sociī). Triviae lūcōs:** the grove was sacred to Hecate (Trivia), since it stood near the entrance to the lower world.

**14. Daedalus:** the most famous artisan of antiquity. With his son, Icarus, he had emigrated to Crete, where Pasiphaë, queen of Minos, had fallen in love with a beautiful bull. He assisted her to gratify her unholy passion, and from this love was born the Minotaur, a savage monster, half-man and half-bull. Daedalus was then compelled by Minos to build the Labyrinth within whose winding passages the Minotaur might be confined. Finally Daedalus contrived wings for himself and his son Icarus and thus escaped from Crete. During their flight, Icarus flew too close to the sun, which melted the waxen fastenings of his wings and allowed him to fall into the sea and drown. After the death of Icarus, Daedalus continued his flight to Cumae, where he erected a temple to Apollo, to whom he dedicated his wings, and where he made some beautiful carved doors for the temple. On these doors he engraved the scenes described in ll. 20–30.

**15. pennīs:** abl. of means.

**16. īnsuētum iter:** the air.

**20–30.** A description of the scenes engraved by Daedalus on the temple doors at Cumae, which are: (1) death of Androgeos; (2) drawing of lots to see who shall be sent as victims of the Minotaur; (3) Pasiphaë and the Minotaur; (4) the Labyrinth with Ariadne and Theseus.

**lētum (est). Androgeō:** gen., a Greek form; App. 67. The Athenians had murdered him and as a punishment had

Cecropidae *jussī* (*miserum!*) septēna quotannīs
*corpora nātōrum; stat ductīs* sortibus urna.
Contrā ēlāta *marī* respondet Gnōsia *tellūs:*
*hīc* crūdēlis *amor* taurī suppostaque fūrtō
Pāsiphaē mixtumque *genus* prōlēsque biformis
Mīnōtaurus inest, Veneris monimenta nefandae;
*hīc labor ille domūs et* inextrīcābilis error;
*magnum rēgīnae sed* enim miserātus *amōrem*
Daedalus *ipse* dolōs *tēctī* ambāgēsque resolvit,
caeca regēns fīlō vestīgia. *Tū* quoque *magnam*

**ambāgēs, is** *f.* winding (passage)
**biformis, e** two-formed, double-shaped†
**caecus, a, um** blind, dark, hidden*
**Cecropidēs, ae** *m.* descendants of Cecrops, Athenians†
**contrā** opposite, facing*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, pitiless, bloody*
**Daedalus, ī** *m.* famous Greek artisan, and the first aviator; builder of the Labyrinth constructed to confine the Minotaur
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, fraud, trick, scheme*
**efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus** lift (up), raise*
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**error, ōris** *m.* wandering, maze, error
**fīlum, ī** *n.* thread, clew, cord†
**fūrtum, ī** *n.* theft, stealth, fraud
**Gnōs(s)ius, a, um** Gnossian, of Gnossus, a city of Crete
**inextrīcābilis, e** inextricable, insoluble†
**īnsum, esse, fuī** be in, be present†
**Mīnōtaurus, ī** *m.* savage Cretan monster, half bull and half man, the memorial of Pasiphaë's love for the bull†
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**monimentum (monumentum), ī** *n.* reminder, memorial
**nefandus, a, um** unspeakable, unutterable
**Pāsiphaē, ēs** *f.* wife of Minos, king of Crete, who fell in love with a beautiful bull and was assisted by Daedalus to gratify her passion†
**prōlēs, is** *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
**quoque** also, even, too, likewise*
**quotannīs** annually, yearly
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct, guide*
**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), unravel
**respondeō, ēre, ī, ōnsus** answer, correspond*
**septēnus, a, um** seven (each), by sevens
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
**suppōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** place under, subject to†
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, ox, bullock*
**urna, ae** *f.* urn, vase (used in drawing lots)†
**Venus, eris** *f.* (goddess of) love*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace*

been compelled by Minos to send annually seven youths and seven maidens as tribute to Crete, where they were thrown into the Labyrinth to be eaten by the Minotaur. The Minotaur was finally killed by Theseus, an Athenian prince, who had been sent as one of the seven annual victims. He was assisted by Ariadne, daughter of Minos, who had fallen in love with him and had given him a clew of thread with which to guide his steps and thus find his way out of the Labyrinth with its countless winding passages.

**21. Cecropidae (sunt). miserum:** acc. of exclamation; App. 318.

**22. ductīs sortibus:** abl. abs. **stat urna:** represents the scene where the lots had just been drawn from the urn at Athens, to see who should be sent as victims of the Minotaur.

**23. Contrā:** *on the opposite door.* **marī:** abl. of separation.

**24. hīc:** on the door just mentioned. **amor taurī:** *the love* (of Pasiphaë) *for the bull;* **taurī** is obj. gen.; App. 284.

**26. Veneris = amōris.**

**27. labor ille domūs:** *that famous house, so laboriously built*, i.e., the Labyrinth; **domūs** is gen. of apposition.

**28. rēgīnae:** *the princess*, Ariadne, who fell in love with Theseus and assisted his escape.

**30. vestīgia:** (Theseus's returning) *steps.*

*partem* opere *in tantō*, sineret dolor, Īcare, *habērēs*.
Bis cōnātus *erat cāsūs* effingere *in aurō*,
bis *patriae* cecidēre *manūs*. Quīn prōtinus *omnia*
perlegerent *oculīs*, nī *jam* praemissus Achātēs
*adforet atque* ūnā Phoebī Triviaeque sacerdōs,
Dēiphobē Glaucī, *fātur quae tālia rēgī:*
"*Nōn hoc* ista *sibī tempus* spectācula poscit;
*nunc* grege *dē* intāctō septem mactāre juvencōs
praestiterit, totidem lēctās *dē* mōre bidentīs."
*Tālibus* adfāta *Aenēān* (*nec sacra* morantur
*jussa virī*) *Teucrōs vocat alta in* templa sacerdōs.

---

**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**adfor, ārī, ātus** address, speak to*
**bidēns, entis** *f.* sheep (with two front teeth)
**bis** twice*
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, fail, sink, die*
**cōnor, ārī, ātus** attempt, try, endeavor
**Dēiphobē, ēs** *f.* prophetess and priestess of Apollo and Hecate†
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**effingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus** fashion, portray†
**Glaucus, ī** *m.* a sea-god gifted with prophetic powers, father of Deiphobe, the Cumaean Sibyl
**grex, gregis** *m.* herd, flock†
**Īcarus, ī** *m.* son of Daedalus, who in his flight with his father from Crete flew too near the sun, melted his wings, fell into the sea, and was drowned†
**intāctus, a, um** untouched, unbroken
**iste, ta, tud** that (of yours)*
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, ox*
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** choose, gather*
**mactō** (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
**nisi, nī** if not, unless*
**opus, eris** *n.* work (of art); toil, labor*
**perlegō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** survey, examine†
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send forward
**praestō, āre, stitī, status (stitus)** excel, be better
**prōtinus** continuously, at once
**quīn** (but) that, nay even, why not*
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**septem** seven
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** permit, allow*
**spectāculum, ī** *n.* sight, spectacle†
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**totidem** as many, so many
**Trivia, ae** *f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world
**ūnā** together, at the same time

---

**31. sineret dolor:** *did grief permit;* equivalent to a condition contrary to fact. **habērēs:** conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382.

**32. (Daedalus) bis cōnātus erat cāsūs (Īcarī) effingere in aurō.**

**33–76. In obedience to the command of the Sibyl, Aeneas performs the customary sacrifices, prays to the gods, imploring their favor, entreats the help of the prophetess, and vows to Apollo and Diana a temple, with sacred games to Apollo and a special sanctuary and college of priests to the Sibyl.**

**33. omnia:** pronounce here as though spelled **omnja**, the i becoming consonantal; App. 401.

**34. (Aenēās et sociī) perlegerent, nī adforet:** conclusion and condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

**35–36. sacerdōs:** the Sibyl who is priestess of Apollo and Hecate. **Glaucī:** (*daughter*) *of Glaucus.* **rēgī (Aenēae).**

**37. hoc:** pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable. **ista spectācula:** *those sights on which you are gazing.*

**38. intāctō:** *untouched* (*by the yoke*).

**39. praestiterit:** *it were better;* potential subj.; App. 252.

**40. sacra:** substantively, *sacrifices*, modified by **jussa**, and object of **morantur** whose subject is **virī (Teucrī).**

**41. templa:** a cave in the rocky hillside, as is seen from the following line.

Excīsum Euboïcae latus *ingēns* rūpis *in* antrum,
*quō* lātī *dūcunt* aditūs centum, ōstia centum,
unde *ruunt* totidem *vōcēs*, respōnsa Sibyllae.
*Ventum erat ad līmen, cum* virgō "Poscere *fāta*
*tempus" ait; "deus* ecce *deus!" Cui tālia fantī*
*ante* forēs subitō *nōn* vultūs, *nōn* color *ūnus*,
*nōn* cōmptae *mānsēre* comae; *sed pectus* anhēlum,
*et* rabiē fera corda tument, *majorque vidērī*
*nec* mortāle sonāns, adflāta *est nūmine* quandō
*jam* propiōre *deī*. "Cessās *in* vōta precēs*que*,
Trōs" *ait "Aenēā?* Cessās? *Neque* enim *ante* dehīscent
attonitae *magna ōra domūs." Et tālia fāta*
conticuit. Gelidus *Teucrīs per* dūra cucurrit
ossa tremor, *funditque* precēs *rēx pectore ab īmō:*

---

**adflō** (1) breathe upon, blow upon, inspire
**aditus, ūs** *m.* approach, entrance
**anhēlus, a, um** panting, gasping
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**attonitus, a, um** thunderstruck, amazed
**centum** hundred*
**cessō,** (1) cease, pause, delay, hesitate
**color, ōris** *m.* color, hue, tint
**cōma, ae** *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
**cōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** arrange (properly)†
**conticēscō, ere, ticuī** become silent, hush
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus** run, course
**dehīscō, ere, hīvī** yawn, gape, open
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**Euboïcus, a, um** Euboean, of Euboea, a large island off the eastern coast of Greece, from which Cumae was settled
**excīdō, ere, ī, sus** cut, hew (out)
**ferus, a, um** wild, fierce, untamed*
**foris, is** *f.* door, gate, entrance
**gelidus, a, um** cold, chilly, icy
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious*
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**mortālis, e** mortal, human, earthly*
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**ōstium,** (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**prex, precis** *f.* prayer, entreaty*
**propior, ius** nearer, closer
**quandō** when, since, because
**rabiēs, ēī** *f.* rage, fury, frenzy
**respōnsum, ī** *n.* answer, reply, response
**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**totidem** as many, so many
**tremor, ōris,** *m.* trembling, shudder
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**tumeō, ēre, uī** swell, be swollen
**unde** whence, from which source*
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
**vōtum, ī** *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

**42. Euboïcae:** see l. 2 and vocabulary.

**45. Ventum erat (ā Teucrīs et Sibyllā):** *they had come.* **līmen (antrī).**

**45–46. Poscere fāta tempus (est):** *it is time to ask for the oracles.* **deus ecce deus:** the Sibyl apparently falls into a trance and sees a vision of the god approaching.

**47. nōn vultūs (mānsēre):** *her countenance changed.* **ūnus** = **īdem,** as often.

**48. comae:** under the influence of the god, her hair streams forth in wild disorder. **pectus (est) anhēlum.**

**49. major (est) vidērī:** *she is larger to look upon* = **major vīsa est.** One of the effects of her inspiration is to make her appear larger.

**50. mortāle:** cognate acc.; App. 313. **nec mortāle sonāns (est):** *her voice does not sound human.*

**51. Cessās (īre).**

**52. Neque ante(quam in vōta eās).**

**53. attonitae domūs:** *of the cave, awestruck* (by the presence of the god). **fāta:** from **for.**

**55. rēx (Aenēās).**

"Phoebe, gravīs *Trojae* semper miserāte *labōrēs*,
Dardana *quī* Paridis dērēxtī *tēla manūsque*
*corpus in* Aeacidae, *magnās* obeuntia *terrās*
tot *maria* intrāvī duce *tē* penitus*que* repostās
Massȳlum *gentīs* praetenta*que* Syrtibus *arva:*
*jam tandem Ītaliae fugientis* prendimus *ōrās*,
hāc Trojāna tenus *fuerit fortūna secūta.*
*Vōs* quoque Pergameae *jam* fās *est* parcere *gentī*,
*dīque deaeque omnēs, quibus* obstitit Īlium *et ingēns*
glōria Dardaniae. *Tūque, Ō* sānctissima *vātēs*,
praescia ventūrī, *dā* (*nōn* indēbita poscō
*rēgna meīs fātīs*) Latiō cōnsīdere *Teucrōs*
*errantīsque deōs* agitāta*que nūmina Trojae.*
*Tum* Phoebō *et* Triviae solidō *dē* marmore templum

---

**Aeacidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Aeacus, Achilles
**agitō** (1) drive, harass, toss, agitate
**cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down); settle*
**Dardania, ae** *f.* Troy, city of Dardanus
**Dardanus, a, um** Trojan, Dardanian
**dērigō (dīrigō), ere, rēxī, rēctus** direct, guide
**dux, ducis,** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
**glōria, ae** *f.* glory, fame, reputation
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**hāc . . . tenus** = **hāctenus** thus far, hitherto
**Īlium, (i)ī** *n.* Troy, Ilium
**indēbitus, a, um** not due, not owed, undue†
**intrō** (1) enter, penetrate
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district of central Italy*
**marmor, oris** *n.* marble
**Massȳlī, (ōr)um** *m.* tribe of North Africa
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**obeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach, traverse, skirt†
**obstō, āre, stitī, status** stand in the way, oppose (*dat.*)
**parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus** spare (*dat.*)
**Paris, idis (os)** *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
**penitus** deep(ly), (from) within*
**Pergameus, a, um** Trojan
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**praescius, a, um** foreknowing, prescient (*gen.*)†
**praetendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch before, extend
**pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** seize, grasp
**quoque** also, furthermore, too, likewise
**repos(i)tus, a, um** secluded, remote
**sānctus, a, um** holy, sacred, sainted*
**semper** always, ever*
**solidus, a, um** solid, whole, firm
**Syrtis, is** *f.* quicksands off the northern coast of Africa
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**tenus** *see* **hāc . . . tenus**
**tot** so many*
**Trivia, ae** *f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**ventūrum, ī** *n.* the future, what is to come

---

**56. Phoebe miserāte:** voc.

**57. dērēx(is)tī:** Apollo as god of archery had directed the fatal arrow of Paris, which struck Achilles in his heel, his only vulnerable spot, and killed him.

**60. Syrtibus:** dat. with compound.

**62. hāctenus Trojāna fortūna fuerit secūta:** *thus far, and thus far only let Trojan misfortune have followed me.* **fuerit:** vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

**66–67. ventūrī:** more picturesque than **futūrī**; gen. with **praescia. dā cōnsīdere:** *grant that the Trojans may settle;* the inf. with a verb of granting; App. 260. **(in) Latiō.**

**68. deōs:** especially the Trojan penates.

**69–70.** Vergil here refers to the magnificent temples on the Palatine, built by Augustus to Apollo and Diana, and to

īnstituam fēstōs*que diēs dē nōmine* Phoebī.
*Tē* quoque *magna manent rēgnīs* penetrālia *nostrīs:*
*hīc ego namque tuās* sortīs arcāna*que fāta*
*dicta meae gentī pōnam,* lēctōs*que* sacrābō,
alma, *virōs.* Foliīs tantum *nē* carmina mandā,
*nē* turbāta volent rapidīs lūdibria *ventīs:*
*ipsa* canās ōrō." *Fīnem dedit ōre* loquendī.
*At* Phoebī nōndum patiēns *immānis in* antrō
bacchātur *vātēs, magnum sī pectore possit*
excussisse *deum; tantō* magis *ille* fatīgat
*ōs* rabidum, fera corda domāns, fingit*que* premendō.
Ōstia *jamque domūs* patuēre *ingentia* centum
sponte *suā vātisque ferunt* respōnsa *per aurās:*
"*Ō tandem magnīs pelagī* dēfūncte perīclīs

---

**almus, a, um** nourishing, kind(ly)
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**arcānus, a, um** secret, hidden
**bacchor, ārī, ātus** rave, storm, rage
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**carmen, inis** *n.* song, verse, oracle
**centum** hundred*
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**dēfungor, ī, fūnctus** perform, finish (*abl.*)†
**domō, āre, uī, itus** tame, subdue
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake off*
**fatīgō** (1) weary, tire (out), harass
**ferus, a, um** wild, fierce, untamed*
**fēstus, a, um** festal, festival, holiday
**fingō, ere, fīnxī, fictus** mold, train
**folium, (i)ī** *n.* leaf, foliage
**īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** set up, ordain†
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** select, gather*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, tell, talk*
**lūdibrium, (i)ī** *n.* sport, mockery†
**magis** more, rather*
**mandō** (1) order, intrust, commend
**nōndum** not yet
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**ōstium, (i)ī** *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend
**patiēns, entis** enduring, tolerating (*gen.*)
**penetrālia, ium** *n.* inner part, sanctuary
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* danger, peril, risk
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, control*
**quoque** also, too, even, furthermore*
**rabidus, a, um** raving, mad, frenzied†
**rapidus, a, um** swift, snatching, whirling*
**respōnsum, ī** *n.* answer, reply, response
**sacrō** (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
**spōns, spontis** *f.* free will, choice
**tantum** only, so much, so far
**turbō** (1) confuse, disarrange, disturb*
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

---

the **Lūdī Apollinārēs**, a great Roman festival in honor of Apollo.

**71. Tē:** addressed to the Sibyl; refers to the keeping of the famous Sibylline books in the Capitol at Rome.

**73. lēctōs virōs:** at first two, then ten, and finally fifteen men (the **quīndecemvirī**) were intrusted with the care of the Sibylline books, which were supposed to contain prophecies dealing with the fate of Rome and which were consulted in times of great crisis.

**74. nē mandā:** cf. III, 444, 456, 457, and notes. **nē** with the imp. is chiefly poetic; App. 256, *a*.

**75. ventīs:** dat. of reference.

**76. (ut tū) ipsa canās:** obj. of **ōrō**.

**77–97. The Sibyl announces to Aeneas his future wars and urges him to be steadfast and endure to the end.**

**77. nōndum Phoebī patiēns:** *not yet submissive to Phoebus*, i.e., she still struggles against the inspiration of the god.

**78. sī possit:** a conditional clause, used virtually as an indir. quest.

**80. fingit (eam):** a picture from breaking a spirited horse, as is the figure of the preceding verse.

**83. Ō (tū) dēfūncte:** voc. **perīc(u)līs:** abl. with **dēfungor**; App. 342.

(*sed terrae* graviōra *manent*), *in rēgna* Lavīnī
Dardanidae *venient* (*mitte hanc dē pectore cūram*),
*sed nōn et vēnisse volent. Bella,* horrida *bella,*
*et* Thybrim *multō* spūmantem *sanguine cernō.*
*Nōn* Simoīs *tibi nec* Xanthus *nec* Dōrica castra
dēfuerint; *alius* Latiō *jam* partus Achillēs,
nātus *et ipse deā; nec Teucrīs* addita *Jūnō*
ūsquam aberit, *cum tū* supplex *in rēbus* egēnīs
*quās gentīs* Italum *aut quās nōn* ōrāveris *urbēs!*
Causa malī *tantī conjūnx* iterum hospita *Teucrīs*
externī*que* iterum thalamī.
*Tū nē* cēde malīs, *sed* contrā audentior *ītō*
quā *tua tē fortūna* sinet. *Via prīma* salūtis,
*quod* minimē rēris, Grajā pandētur *ab urbe.*"
*Tālibus ex* adytō *dictīs* Cūmaea Sibylla

---

**absum, esse, fuī** be absent, be lacking
**Achillēs, is** (eī, ī) *m.* famous Greek chieftain*
**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**adytum, ī** *n.* inner sanctuary, shrine
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**castra, ōrum** *n.* camp, encampment*
**causa, ae** *f.* reason, cause, occasion*
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, go*
**contrā** opposite, facing*
**Cūmaeus, a, um** of Cumae, a city near Naples
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
**dēsum, esse, fuī** be lacking, be absent
**Dōricus, a, um** Doric, Greek
**egēnus, a, um** needy, poor; critical
**externus, a, um** outer, foreign
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**gravis, e** heavy, grievous, serious*
**horridus, a, um** bristling, terrible
**hospitus, a, um** strange, foreign
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**iterum** again, anew, a second time*
**Latium,** (i)ī *n.* district of central Italy*
**Lavīnium,** (i)ī *n.* city near Rome
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, misfortune, disaster*
**minimē** least, not at all†
**nāscor, ī, nātus** be born, rise*
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread, open*
**pariō, ere, peperī, partus** produce, gain
**quā** where(by), wherever, in any (some) way
**reor, rērī, ratus** think, suppose, reckon
**salūs, ūtis** *f.* safety, salvation, health
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**Simoīs, entis** *m.* river near Troy
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** permit, allow*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**thalamus, ī** *m.* bridal chamber, wedlock*
**Thybris,** (id)is, *acc.* **brim,** *m.* the Tiber, a river of Italy
**ūsquam** anywhere, ever
**Xanthus, ī** *m.* river near Troy

---

**84. graviōra** (perīcula).

**86. sed et volent nōn vēnisse.** et = etiam: *even, also.*

**89. dēfuerint:** fut. perf. Translate as a fut. **alius Achillēs:** Turnus who plays a prominent part in the last six books of the *Aeneid.* See the note on IV, 615.

**90. et:** *also, too.*

**91. supplex:** Aeneas is compelled to go as a suppliant to Evander, who lives on the Palatine, the later site of Rome, as is related in the latter part of the *Aeneid.*

**92. Ital(ōr)um.**

**93. Causa (erit). conjūnx hospita:** Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus. She had been betrothed to Turnus, but on the arrival of Aeneas she was pledged by her father to him, and like a second Helen (**iterum**) she was the cause of war.

**95. ītō:** *continue to go.*

**96. quā** (viā).

**97.** (id) **quod. Grajā urbe:** *from a Greek city,* Pallanteum on the Tiber, where Rome afterward stood.

**98–123. Aeneas begs the Sibyl to guide him on his journey to the lower**

horrendās canit ambāgēs antrō*que* remūgit,
obscūrīs vēra involvēns: *ea* frēna *furentī*
concutit *et* stimulōs *sub pectore* vertit Apollō.
*Ut prīmum* cessit furor *et* rabida *ōra* quiērunt,
incipit *Aenēās* hērōs: "*Nōn ūlla labōrum,*
*Ō* virgō, *nova mī* faciēs inopīna*ve surgit;*
*omnia* praecēpī *atque animō mēcum ante* perēgī.
*Ūnum* ōrō: quandō *hīc* īnfernī jānua *rēgis*
*dīcitur et* tenebrōsa palūs Acheronte refūsō,
*īre ad* cōnspectum cārī *genitōris et ōra*
contingat; doceās iter *et sacra* ōstia pandās.
*Illum ego per flammās et* mīlle *sequentia tēla*
*ēripuī hīs umerīs mediōque ex* hoste recēpī;
*ille meum* comitātus iter *maria omnia mēcum*
*atque omnīs pelagīque* minās *caelīque ferēbat,*
invalidus, *vīrīs* ultrā sortem*que* senectae.

---

**Acherōn, ontis** *m.* river of Hades
**ambāgēs, is** *f.* winding; mystery
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, depart*
**comitor, ārī, ātus** accompany, attend, escort, follow*
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake, shatter
**cōnspectus, ūs** *m.* sight, interview
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, befall*
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**frēnum, ī** *n.* rein, curb, check
**furor, ōris** *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, dire*
**hostis, is** *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**īnfernus, a, um** nether, infernal
**inopīnus, a, um** unexpected, sudden
**invalidus, a, um** weak, feeble, infirm
**involvō, ere, ī, volūtus** wrap, infold
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**jānua, ae** *f.* door, entrance
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**minae, ārum** *f.* threat, menace; pinnacle
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, dim, obscure*
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**ōstium,** (i)ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
**palūs, ūdis** *f.* swamp, marsh, mere†
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, disclose*
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** traverse, finish
**praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** anticipate, teach
**quandō** when, since, because
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** rest, calm, cease*
**rabidus, a, um** raving, mad, frenzied
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** recover, rescue*
**refundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour (back, out)
**remūgiō, īre** bellow, roar†
**senecta, ae** *f.* old age, eld
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
**stimulus, ī** *m.* goad, spur, prick†
**tenebrōsus, a, um** dark, gloomy
**ultrā** beyond, more than (*acc.*)†
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vērum, ī** *n.* truth, reality, right
**virgō, inis** *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

---

world, that he may meet the shade of his father Anchises.

**99.** (ex) antrō.

**100.** ea (= tālia) frēna: the figure of horsemanship is continued from ll. 77–80.

**102.** quiē(vē)runt.

**104.** mī = mihi.

**107.** dīcitur (esse). Acheronte refūsō: abl. abs.; the overflow of the Acheron was supposed to form Lake Avernus.

**109.** contingat (mihi): vol. clause in apposition with ūnum in l. 106. doceās, pandās: vol. subjunctives; App. 254.

**112.** iter: obj. of the middle part., comitātus.

Quīn, *ut tē* supplex *peterem et tua līmina* adīrem,
*īdem* ōrāns mandāta *dabat. Nātīque patrisque,*
alma, precor, miserēre (*potes namque omnia, nec tē*
nēquīquam lūcīs Hecatē praefēcit Avernīs),
*sī potuit* mānīs accersere *conjugis* Orpheus
Thrēiciā frētus citharā fidibus*que* canōrīs,
*sī* frātrem Pollūx alternā *morte* redēmit
*itque* redit*que viam* totiēns. *Quid* Thēsea, *magnum*
*quid* memorem Alcīdēn? *Et mī genus ab Jove summō.*"
*Tālibus* ōrābat *dictīs ārāsque tenēbat,*
*cum sīc* orsa loquī *vātēs:* "Sate *sanguine dīvum,*

**accersō, ere, sīvī, sītus** summon, invite
**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach
**Alcīdēs, ae** *m.* Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, who as one of his labors descended to Hades and carried off Cerberus, the watchdog of Pluto
**almus, a, um** nurturing, kind(ly)
**alternus, a, um** alternate, alternating
**Avernus, a, um** of Lake Avernus in Campania, where there was an entrance to Hades*
**canōrus, a, um** tuneful, musical†
**cithara, ae** *f.* lyre, harp, cither
**fidēs, ium** *f.* lyre, strings, cords; chords†*
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**frētus, a, um** relying on (*abl.*)
**Hecatē, ēs** *f.* goddess of the lower world
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk, tell*
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**mandātum, ī** *n.* command, charge, behest
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**memorō** (1) (re)call, recount, relate*
**misereor, ērī, itus** pity, commiserate (*gen.*)
**nēquīquam** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**ordior, īrī, orsus** begin, undertake
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**Orpheus, ī** *m.* famous poet and musician of Thrace who went down to Hades to bring back his wife Eurydice, but failed†
**Pollūx, ūcis** *m.* son of Jupiter and Leda; after the death of Castor, his twin brother, Pollux, shared his immortality with him on alternate days†
**praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** set over (*acc., dat.*)†
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat*
**quīn** (but) that, nay even, why not*
**redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** return
**redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** redeem†
**serō, ere, sēvī, satus** sow, beget*
**supplex, icis** suppliant, humble*
**Thēseus, eī (eos), *acc.* ea,** *m.* early king of Athens, who, among other exploits, descended to Hades with his friend Pirithoüs to carry off Proserpina†
**Thrēicius, a, um** Thracian, of Thrace, a region northeast of Greece
**totiēns** so many times, so often

**115. ut peterem:** subst. clause of vol. origin in apposition with **mandāta.**

**116. Nātī, patris:** genitives with **miserēre** (imp.); App. 289.

**117. potes omnia:** *you can (do) all things.*

**120. citharā, fidibus:** ablatives of means with **frētus.**

**122. viam:** cognate acc.; App. 313. **Thēsea:** acc., a Greek form; App. 69.

**123. Alcīdēn** = Hercules, a word which cannot be used in dactylic hexameter (- ⏑ ⏑ -). As one of Hercules's celebrated twelve labors, he descended to Hades and carried off Cerberus, the three-headed dog of Pluto, which guarded the entrance of the infernal regions. **mī genus (est). mī = mihi:** dat. of possession. **ab Jove:** through Venus, daughter of Jupiter.

**124–155. The Sibyl informs Aeneas of the three conditions which must be fulfilled before he may gain admission to the lower world. The conditions are: (1) the bringing of the golden bough; (2) the purification of the fleet which had been polluted by the death of Misenus; (3) propitiatory sacrifices to the manes and gods of the lower world.**

**124. ārāsque tenēbat:** as a suppliant.

**125. orsa (est). Sate:** voc.

Trōs Anchīsiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō:
*noctēs atque diēs* patet *ātrī* jānua Dītis;
*sed* revocāre gradum *superāsque* ēvādere *ad aurās,*
*hoc* opus, *hic labor est.* Paucī, *quōs* aequus amāvit
*Juppiter aut ardēns* ēvēxit *ad* aethera virtūs,
*dīs* genitī *potuēre. Tenent* media *omnia silvae,*
Cōcȳtus*que* sinū *lābēns* circumvenit *ātrō.*
Quod *sī tantus amor mentī, sī tanta* cupīdō *est*
bis Stygiōs innāre lacūs, bis nigra *vidēre*
Tartara, *et* īnsānō juvat indulgēre *labōrī,*
*accipe quae* peragenda prius. Latet arbore opācā
aureus *et* foliīs *et* lentō vīmine rāmus,
*Jūnōnī* īnfernae *dictus sacer; hunc* tegit *omnis*
lūcus *et* obscūrīs claudunt convallibus *umbrae.*

---

**aequus, a, um** equal, level, impartial
**aethēr, eris,** *acc.* **era,** *m.* upper air, heaven, sky*
**amō** (1) love, cherish, like*
**Anchīsiadēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Anchises, Aeneas
**arbōs** (**or**), **oris** *f.* tree; wood*
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**Avernus, ī** *m.* lake of central Italy, where there was an entrance to Hades; Hades*
**bis** twice*
**circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** encircle†
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** (in)close, shut (in)*
**Cōcȳtus, ī** *m.* river of Hades†
**convallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale†
**cupīdō, inis** *f.* desire, love, passion
**dēscēnsus, ūs** *m.* descent†
**Dīs, Dītis** *m.* Pluto, god of Hades
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** escape, come out
**ēvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear (aloft)†
**facilis, e** easy, favorable, ready
**folium,** (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
**gignō, ere, genuī, genitus** bear, beget
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
**indulgeō, ēre, lsī, ltus** indulge (in) (*dat.*)
**īnfernus, a, um** infernal, nether
**innō** (1) swim, float (in), navigate†
**īnsānus, a, um** mad, insane, frenzied
**jānua, ae** *f.* door, entrance
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**lacus, ūs** *m.* lake, marsh, mere
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk*
**lentus, a, um** pliant, tough, flexible
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**medium,** (i)ī *n.* middle, midst, center
**niger, gra, grum** black, gloomy, dusky*
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, shadowy, gloomy*
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy
**opus, eris** *n.* work, task, toil, deed*
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend
**paucus, a, um** small, few, scanty
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** accomplish
**prius** first, sooner
**quod** because, but
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, bough, limb*
**revocō** (1) recall, call back, retrace
**sinus, ūs** *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
**Tartara, ōrum** *n.* abode of the wicked in Hades
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, protect*
**Trōs, Trōis** *m.* Trojan*
**vīmen, inis** *n.* twig, shoot
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

---

**126. facilis (est) dēscēnsus Avernō** ( = **ad Avernum**): dat. of direction; *the descent is easy*, i.e., by dying.

**129. hoc**: pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable. **hoc, hic**; agree in gender with their predicate nouns, **opus, labor**; App. 240, *a*. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 432–433.

"Long is the way
And hard that out of hell leads up to light."

**131. potuēre (hoc)**: *could do this.*

**134. innāre**: inf. with (**tibi**) **cupīdō est** which is equivalent to **cupīs**, *you wish.* **bis**: now and again at death.

**136. peragenda (sint). (in) arbore.**

**137. foliīs, vīmine**: ablatives of respect.

**138. Jūnōnī īnfernae**: *to Proserpina*, queen of the lower world. **dictus (esse).**

*Sed nōn ante datur tellūris* operta *subīre*
auricomōs quam *quī* dēcerpserit arbore fētūs.
*Hoc sibi* pulchra *suum ferrī* Prōserpina *mūnus*
īnstituit. *Prīmō* āvulsō *nōn* dēficit alter
aureus, *et* similī frondēscit virga metallō.
Ergō altē vestīgā *oculīs et* rīte repertum
carpe *manū; namque ipse volēns* facilis*que sequētur,*
*sī tē fāta vocant;* aliter *nōn vīribus ūllīs*
*vincere nec* dūrō *poteris* convellere *ferrō.*
Praetereā jacet exanimum *tibi corpus* amīcī
(*heu* nescīs) *tōtamque* incestat fūnere *classem,*
*dum* cōnsulta *petis nostrōque in līmine* pendēs.
*Sēdibus hunc refer ante suīs et* conde sepulcrō.
*Dūc* nigrās pecudēs; *ea prīma* piācula *suntō.*
*Sīc* dēmum lūcōs Stygis *et rēgna* invia vīvīs
aspiciēs.'' *Dīxit,* pressō*que* obmūtuit *ōre.*

---

**aliter** otherwise, differently*
**altē** on high, loftily
**alter, era, erum** (an)other (of two), second*
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, lover, comrade*
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree; wood(s)*
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold*
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**auricomus, a, um** golden-haired, golden-leaved†
**āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus** tear (off)
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, pursue
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found, hide, bury*
**cōnsultum, ī** *n.* resolve, decree, oracle†
**convellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear (off)
**dēcerpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck (off)†
**dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** lack, fail
**dēmum** finally, at last
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**exanimus, a, um** breathless, lifeless
**facilis, e** easy, favorable, ready
**fētus, ūs** *m.* young, produce, growth
**frondēscō, ere** leaf, sprout†
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**incestō** (1) defile, pollute†
**īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** establish, ordain
**invius, a, um** pathless, trackless
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**metallum, ī** *n.* metal, ore, mine†
**nesciō, īre, īvī (iī)** not know, be ignorant
**niger, gra, grum** black, dusky, gloomy*
**obmūtēscō, ere, tuī** become silent, hush
**opertum, ī** *n.* mystery, hidden part
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal (of the flock)*
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang, tarry*
**piāculum, ī** *n.* expiation, crime
**praetereā** besides, also, furthermore*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, control*
**Prōserpina, ae** *f.* wife of Pluto and queen of Hades
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid*
**quam** how, than, as*
**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus** find
**rīte** duly, properly, ritually
**sepulcrum, ī** *n.* tomb, grave
**similis, e** similar, like*
**Styx, Stygis** *f.* river of the lower world†
**vestīgō** (1) trace, search (for), track (out)†
**virga, ae** *f.* branch, rod, twig
**vīvus, a, um** alive, living

---

**140–141. ante . . . quam:** *until.* **auricomōs fētūs. quī:** indefinite. **dēcerpserit:** fut. perf.

**145–146. vestīgā et rīte carpe.**

**149. jacet:** *lies* (*unburied*). **tibi:** ethical dat.; best left untranslated.

**150. tōtam classem:** thus including Aeneas and making it impossible for him to sacrifice until he has been properly purified.

**152. Sēdibus = ad sēdēs:** dat. of direction. **refer:** imp.; App. 202. **suīs:** *his proper*, irregularly referring to **hunc** instead of to the subject. (**in**) **sepulcrō.**

**153. Dūc:** imp. **nigrās:** see V, 97, and 736, with notes. **ea:** attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, *a.* **suntō:** imp. of **sum**; App. 120.

*Aenēās* maestō dēfīxus *lūmina* vultū
ingreditur linquēns antrum, caecōs*que* volūtat
ēventūs *animō sēcum. Cui* fīdus Achātēs
*it comes et* paribus *cūrīs* vestīgia fīgit.
*Multa inter sēsē* variō sermōne serēbant,
*quem socium* exanimum *vātēs, quod corpus* humandum
*dīceret. Atque illī* Mīsēnum *in lītore* siccō,
*ut vēnēre, vident* indignā *morte* perēmptum,
Mīsēnum Aeolidēn, *quō nōn* praestantior alter
aere ciēre *virōs* Mārtem*que* accendere cantū.
Hectoris *hic magnī fuerat comes*, Hectora *circum*
*et* lituō pugnās īnsignis obībat *et* hastā.
Postquam *illum vītā victor* spoliāvit Achillēs,
Dardaniō *Aenēae sēsē* fortissimus hērōs
addiderat *socium, nōn īnferiōra secūtus.*
*Sed tum, forte* cavā *dum* personat *aequora* conchā,
dēmēns, *et* cantū *vocat in* certāmina *dīvōs*,

---

**accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** kindle, rouse
**Achātēs, ae** *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
**Achillēs, is (eī, ī)** *m.* Greek chieftain before Troy*
**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**Aeolidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Aeolus, Misenus
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze (implement), trumpet*
**alter, era, erum** (an)other (of two), second*
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**caecus, a, um** blind, dark, hidden*
**cantus, ūs** *m.* song, music, chant, tune
**cavus, a, um** hollow, vaulted*
**certāmen, inis** *n.* contest, rivalry*
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** (a)rouse, stir (up)*
**concha, ae** *f.* (sea) shell, conch†
**Dardanius, a, um** Trojan, Dardanian*
**dēfīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix (down), cast down
**dēmēns, entis** mad, crazy, foolish
**ēventus, ūs** *m.* outcome, result, event†
**exanimus, a, um** breathless, lifeless
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trusty, safe*
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, plant, pierce*
**fortis, e** brave, strong, valiant, stout*
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear, lance, dart
**Hector, oris,** *acc.* **ora,** *m.* Trojan leader*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**humō** (1) bury, inter, cover with earth†
**indignus, a, um** unworthy, undeserved
**ingredior, ī, gressus** advance, enter
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, desert*
**lituus, ī** *m.* (curved) trumpet†
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**Mārs, rtis** *m.* (god of) war
**Mīsēnus, ī** *m.* Trojan trumpeter
**obeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** enter, approach
**pār, paris** equal, like, matched*
**perimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** destroy
**personō, āre, uī, itus** sound through, make (re)sound
**postquam** after (that), when*
**praestāns, antis** excellent, superior
**pugna, ae** *f.* battle, fight, fray, combat*
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, speech
**serō, ere, uī, rtus** join, discuss*
**siccus, a, um** dry, thirsty
**spoliō** (1) despoil, plunder, rob (*abl.*)
**varius, a, um** various, different, diverse*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* track, footprint, step*
**volūtō** (1) revolve, turn (over), roll
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

**156–182. Aeneas finds the corpse of the Trojan trumpeter, Misenus, on the shore and prepares his funeral pyre.**

**156. lūmina** = **oculōs**; obj. of the middle part., **dēfīxus.**

**159. cūrīs:** abl. of manner.

**162. quod corpus dīceret:** indir. quest.

**164. nōn alter (erat) praestantior.**

**165. ciēre:** with **praestantior**; App. 265.

**166. circum Hectora:** acc., a Greek form.

**168. illum:** Hector.

**171. conchā:** Triton's horn; hence his jealousy.

aemulus exceptum Trītōn, *sī* crēdere dignum *est*,
*inter saxa virum* spūmōsā immerserat *undā*.
Ergō *omnēs magnō circum clāmōre* fremēbant,
praecipuē *pius Aenēās*. *Tum* jussa Sibyllae,
*haud* mora, fēstīnant flentēs *āramque* sepulcrō
congerere arboribus *caelōque* ēdūcere certant.
*Ītur in antīquam silvam*, stabula *alta* ferārum,
prōcumbunt piceae, sonat icta secūribus īlex
fraxineae*que* trabēs cuneīs *et* fissile rōbur
scinditur, advolvunt *ingentīs montibus* ornōs.
*Nec nōn Aenēās* opera *inter tālia prīmus*
hortātur *sociōs* paribus*que* accingitur *armīs*.
*Atque haec ipse suō trīstī cum* corde volūtat
aspectāns *silvam* immēnsam, *et sīc forte* precātur:
"*Sī nunc sē nōbīs ille* aureus arbore rāmus
ostendat nemore *in tantō!* Quandō *omnia* vērē

---

**accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird(le)
**advolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** roll†
**aemulus, a, um** emulous, jealous
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree; wood(s)*
**a(d)spectō** (1) look at, behold
**aureus, a, um** gold(en), of gold*
**certō** (1) strive, fight, vie, contend
**congerō, ere, gessī, gestus** heap (up)
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust*
**cuneus, ī** *m.* wedge, block (of seats)
**dignus, a, um** worthy, deserving
**ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead out, raise
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** catch, receive
**fera, ae** *f.* wild beast
**fēstīnō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**fissilis, e** easily split, cleavable†
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep, lament, mourn
**fraxineus, a, um** ashen, of ash-tree†
**fremō, ere, uī, itus** murmur, lament*
**hortor, ārī, ātus** urge, encourage, incite*
**icō, ere, īcī, ictus** strike, smite†
**īlex, icis** *f.* holm-oak
**immēnsus, a, um** boundless, measureless
**immergō, ere, rsī, rsus** plunge, drown
**jussum, ī** *n.* order, command, behest
**mora, ae** *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**opus, eris** *n.* work, task, deed, labor*
**ornus, ī** *f.* ash-tree
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, display*
**pār, paris** equal, like, matched*
**picea, ae** *f.* pitch-pine†
**praecipuē** especially, particularly
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat, invoke*
**prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** fall
**quandō** when, since, because
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, bough, limb*
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak; strength*
**scindō, ere, scidī, scissus** split, cleave
**secūris, is** *f.* ax
**sepulcrum, ī** *n.* tomb, grave
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**spūmōsus, a, um** foamy, frothy†
**stabulum, ī** *n.* stable, stall, lair, den
**trabs (trabēs), trabis** *f.* beam, timber, tree
**Trītōn, ōnis** *m.* sea-god famous for his skill in blowing a conch (sea shell) as a trumpet
**vērē** truly, correctly†
**volūtō** (1) revolve, roll (over)

---

**173. crēdere:** inf. with adj.; App. 265.

**177. haud mora (est).**

**178. arboribus:** abl. of means. **caelō = ad caelum:** dat. of direction.

**179. Ītur:** impersonal; translate *they go.*

**182. scinditur:** agrees with the nearest subject.

**183–211. Guided by the two doves, Aeneas discovers the golden bough, which he brings to the Sibyl.**

**184. accingitur:** *girds himself;* a middle verb.

**187. Sī:** with pres. subj., expressing a wish, "O that," "would that"; App. 253. **(in) arbore.**

*heu* nimium *dē tē vātēs*, Mīsēne, locūta *est.*"
*Vix ea fātus erat geminae cum forte* columbae
*ipsa sub ōra virī caelō vēnēre* volantēs,
*et* viridī sēdēre solō. *Tum maximus* hērōs
māternās agnōscit avīs *laetusque* precātur:
"*Este* ducēs, *Ō, sī qua via est, cursumque per aurās*
dērigite *in* lūcōs *ubi* pinguem dīves opācat
rāmus humum. *Tūque, Ō,* dubiīs *nē* dēfice *rēbus,*
*dīva parēns.*" *Sīc* effātus vestīgia pressit
observāns *quae* signa *ferant, quō tendere* pergant.
Pascentēs *illae tantum* prōdīre volandō
quantum aciē *possent oculī servāre sequentum.*
Inde *ubi vēnēre ad* faucēs grave olentis Avernī,
*tollunt sē* celerēs liquidum*que per* āera *lāpsae*
*sēdibus* optātīs *geminae super* arbore sīdunt,
discolor unde *aurī per* rāmōs *aura* refulsit.

---

**aciēs**, ēī *f.* edge; eye(sight); battle line*
**āēr, āeris**, *acc.* **āera**, *m.* air, mist, fog
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree; wood(s)*
**Avernus**, ī *m.* lake in central Italy where there was an entrance to Hades*
**avis, is** *f.* bird, fowl
**celer, eris, ere** swift, quick, fleet*
**columba, ae** *f.* dove, a bird sacred to Venus
**dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** fail, faint
**dērigō (dīrigō), ere, rēxī, rēctus** direct, guide
**dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis** rich, wealthy
**discolor, ōris** of different color(s)†
**dubius, a, um** doubtful, wavering
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak (out), say
**faucēs, ium** *f.* throat, jaws; pass(age)
**gravis, e** heavy, foul, serious*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**humus**, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
**inde** thence, next, thereupon*
**liquidus, a, um** clear, liquid, fluid
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk, tell*
**lūcus**, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**māternus, a, um** of a mother, maternal
**Mīsēnus**, ī *m.* Trojan trumpeter
**nimium** too (much), excessively
**observō** (1) watch, guard, observe
**oleō, ēre, uī** smell, stink†
**opācō** (1) darken, shade, shadow†
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
**pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus** feed, pasture
**pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus** proceed
**pinguis, e** fat, fertile, rich
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, entreat, invoke*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press*
**prōdeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** advance†
**quantum** (as much) as, as far as
**rāmus**, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**refulgeō, ēre, lsī** gleam, shine, glitter
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit, settle*
**sīdō, ere, (sēd)ī** sit, settle†
**signum**, ī *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
**solum**, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
**unde** whence, from what source*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace*
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

---

**191.** **ōra virī** = **oculōs Aenēae.**
**194.** **cursum** (**vestrum**).
**196.** **dubiīs rēbus**: *wavering fortunes;* dat. with **dēfice.**
**197.** (re)**pressit.**
**199.** **tantum**: *only so far.* **prōdīre**: hist. inf.; App. 257. **volandō**: abl. of the gerund, expressing means.
**200.** **aciē servāre**: *keep them in sight.* **possent**: implied indir. disc.; App. 357. **sequent(i)um**: subst., *of those following (them).*
**201.** **grave**: translate as an adv.; App. 310.
**203.** (in) **sēdibus optātīs. geminae**: *the two* (doves). **super arbore**: *on top of the tree.*
**204.** **discolor**: *of a different color* from the rest of the tree. **aurī aura**: assonance and alliteration.

Quāle solet *silvīs* brūmālī frīgore vīscum
fronde virēre *novā, quod nōn sua* sēminat arbōs,
*et* croceō fētū teretīs circumdare truncōs,
*tālis erat* speciēs *aurī* frondentis opācā
īlice, *sīc* lēnī crepitābat brattea *ventō*.
Corripit *Aenēās* extemplō avidus*que* refringit
cūnctantem, *et vātis* portat *sub tēcta* Sibyllae.
*Nec* minus intereā Mīsēnum *in lītore Teucrī*
flēbant *et* cinerī ingrātō *suprēma ferēbant*.
Principiō pinguem taedīs *et* rōbore sectō
*ingentem* strūxēre pyram, *cui* frondibus *ātrīs*
intexunt latera *et* fērālīs *ante* cupressōs
cōnstituunt, decorant*que super* fulgentibus *armīs*.
*Pars* calidōs laticēs *et* aēna undantia *flammīs*
expediunt, *corpusque* lavant frīgentis *et* unguunt.

---

**aēnum, ī** *n.* bronze (kettle, caldron)
**arbōs (or), oris** *f.* tree, wood(s)*
**avidus, a, um** eager, greedy, ardent
**brattea, ae** *f.* thin sheet, plate, foil†
**brūmālis, e** wintry, of winter†
**calidus, a, um** hot, warm†
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**circumdō, dare, dedī, datus** surround
**cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** place, set up
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**crepitō** (1) rattle, rustle, crash
**croceus, a, um** yellow, saffron
**cūnctor, ārī, ātus** delay, cling, linger
**cupressus, ī** *f.* cypress, an evergreen tree sacred to the dead
**decorō** (1) adorn, ornament, decorate†
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** bring forth
**extemplō** immediately, at once
**fērālis, e** funereal, of the dead, fateful
**fētus, ūs** *m.* offspring, fruit, shoot
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep, lament, mourn
**frīgēns, entis** cold, stiff; lifeless
**frīgus, oris** *n.* cold, frost, chill
**frondēns, entis** leafy, fronded
**frōns, frondis** *f.* leaf, foliage, frond*
**fulg(e)ō, ĕre, lsī** gleam, shine, glitter
**īlex, icis** *f.* holm-oak
**ingrātus, a, um** thankless, unfeeling
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**intexō, ere, uī, xtus** interweave, interlace
**latex, icis** *m.* liquid, water, wine
**latus, eris** *n.* side, flank*
**lavō, āre, (āv)ī, ātus (lautus)** wash, bathe
**lēnis, e** light, gentle, soft, moderate
**minus** less, in a less degree
**Mīsēnus, ī** *m.* Trojan trumpeter
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy
**pinguis, e** fat, rich, fertile
**portō** (1) carry, bear, take, convey*
**principiō** first(ly), in the first place
**pyra, ae** *f.* funeral pyre
**quālis, e** (of) what sort, (such) as*
**refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus** break off†
**rōbur, oris** *n.* oak; strength*
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, slice, cleave*
**sēminō** (1) sow, produce, bear†
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**soleō, ēre, itus sum** be accustomed
**speciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, sight, aspect
**struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** build, heap (up)
**suprēma, ōrum** *n.* last rites, funeral
**taeda, ae** *f.* pine, pine (torch, faggot)
**teres, etis** smooth, rounded, polished
**truncus, ī** *m.* trunk, stem, body
**undō** (1) boil, wave, fluctuate, seethe
**unguō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctus** anoint
**vireō, ēre** be green, grow, flourish†
**vīscum, ī** *n.* mistletoe†

---

**206. novā fronde:** abl. of manner. **quod nōn sua sēminat arbōs:** the mistletoe is a parasite, and its leaves and berries therefore are different from those of the tree on which it grows (**arbōs sua**).

**211. cūnctantem:** as it seemed to Aeneas in his eager haste.

**212–235. Aeneas erects a tomb for Misenus at the foot of a lofty mountain, henceforth known as Mt. Misenum.**

**213. ingrātō:** *thankless*, because unfeeling. **suprēma ferēbant:** *were paying the last rites, honors.*

Fit gemitus. *Tum* membra torō dēflēta repōnunt
purpureāsque *super* vestīs, vēlāmina nōta,
conjiciunt. *Pars ingentī subiēre* feretrō,
*trīste* ministerium, *et* subjectam mōre *parentum*
āversī *tenuēre* facem. Congesta cremantur
tūrea *dōna*, dapēs, *fūsō* crātēres olīvō.
Postquam conlāpsī cinerēs *et flamma* quiēvit,
relliquiās vīnō *et* bibulam lāvēre favīllam,
ossaque lēcta cadō tēxit Corynaeus aēnō.
*Īdem* ter *sociōs* pūrā circumtulit *undā*
spargēns rōre levī *et* rāmō fēlīcis olīvae,
lūstrāvitque *virōs dīxitque novissima* verba.
*At pius Aenēās ingentī* mōle sepulcrum
impōnit *suaque arma virō rēmumque* tubamque
*monte sub* āeriō, *quī nunc* Mīsēnus *ab illō*
*dīcitur* aeternumque *tenet per* saecula *nōmen*.

**aēnus, a, um** (of) bronze, brazen
**āerius, a, um** airy, lofty, towering
**aeternus, a, um** everlasting, eternal*
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**bibulus, a, um** thirsty, absorbent†
**cadus, ī** *m.* cask, urn
**cinis, eris** *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
**circumferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** carry round, go round; purify†
**congerō, ere, gessī, gestus** heap (up)
**conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** heap (up)
**conlābor, ī, lāpsus** fall (in), collapse
**Corynaeus, ī** *m.* Trojan priest†
**crātēr, ēris** *m.* mixing bowl
**cremō** (1) burn, cremate, consume†
**daps, dapis** *f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
**dēfleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** bewail, lament†
**favīlla, ae** *f.* cinder, ashes, embers
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand*
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, fruitful, fortunate*
**feretrum, ī** *n.* bier, death couch†
**fīō, fierī, factus** become, be made
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan(ing), wail(ing)*
**impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** place on*
**lavō, āre, (āv)ī, ātus (lautus)** wash, drench
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** gather, choose*
**levis, e** light, slight, swift, trivial
**lūstrō** (1) survey, traverse; purify*
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**ministerium, (i)ī** *n.* service, duty, office†
**Mīsēnus, ī** *m.* Italian promontory†
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**olīva, ae** *f.* olive (tree)
**olīvum, ī** *n.* (olive) oil†
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**postquam** after (that), when*
**purpureus, a, um** purple, crimson
**pūrus, a, um** pure, clear, clean
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** (become) quiet, rest*
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**re(l)liquiae, ārum** *f.* remains, rest, leavings
**repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** replace, remove*
**rōs, rōris** *m.* dew, moisture
**saeculum, ī** *n.* generation, age, eternity
**sepulcrum, ī** *n.* tomb, grave
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** place under
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, hide*
**ter** three times, thrice*
**torus, ī** *m.* couch, bier*
**tuba, ae** *f.* trumpet
**tūreus, a, um** of incense†
**vēlāmen, inis** *n.* covering, veil, garment
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech, talk
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*

**221. purpureās vestīs:** the customary color at great Roman funerals.

**222. feretrō:** dat. with compound **subeō**, instead of the usual acc.

**223. ministerium:** apposition with **pars subiēre feretrō. mōre parentum:** Introd. 6.

**229. circumtulit = lūstrāvit:** *purified.*

**231. novissima verba:** "Valē," repeated three times. See notes on I, 219; II, 644; III, 68.

**234. Mīsēnus:** the place is still called Punta di Miseno, or Capo Miseno.

**235. dīcitur = vocātur,** as often.

*Hīs āctīs* properē exsequitur praecepta Sibyllae.
Spēlunca *alta fuit vastōque immānis* hiātū,
scrūpea, tūta lacū nigrō nemorum*que* tenebrīs,
*quam super haud ūllae poterant* impūne volantēs
*tendere* iter pennīs: *tālis sēsē* hālitus *ātrīs*
faucibus effundēns *supera ad* convexa *ferēbat:*
[unde *locum* Grajī *dīxērunt nōmine* Aornon.]
Quattuor *hīc prīmum* nigrantīs terga juvencōs
cōnstituit frontī*que* invergit vīna sacerdōs,
*et summās* carpēns *media inter* cornua saetās
*ignibus* impōnit *sacrīs*, lībāmina *prīma*,
*vōce vocāns* Hecatēn *caelōque* Erebō*que* potentem.
Suppōnunt *alii* cultrōs tepidum*que* cruōrem
suscipiunt paterīs. *Ipse ātrī* velleris agnam

**agna, ae** *f.* ewe lamb
**Aornus, ī,** *acc.* **on,** *m.* (*f.*) birdless (lake), Avernus†
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, take, consume
**cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** place, establish, stand
**convexum, ī** *n.* hollow, vault (of the sky)
**cornū, ūs** *n.* horn, tip, end
**cruor, ōris** *m.* blood, gore
**culter, trī** *m.* knife, butcher knife†
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out*
**Erebus, ī** *m.* the lower world, Hades
**exsequor, ī, secūtus** perform, execute
**faucēs, ium** *f.* jaws, throat, pass(age)
**frōns, frontis** *f.* front, forehead, brow*
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**hālitus, ūs** *m.* breath, exhalation
**Hecatē, ēs** *f.* goddess of the lower world
**hiātus, ūs** *m.* yawning (mouth)†
**impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** place on (*dat.*)*
**impūne** safely, with impunity
**invergō, ere** invert, pour on†
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**juvencus, ī** *m.* bullock, ox*
**lacus, ūs** *m.* lake, marsh, mere
**lībāmen, inis** *n.* libation, offering†
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**niger, gra, grum** black, gloomy, dusky*
**nigrāns, antis** black, gloomy, dark
**patera, ae** *f.* (libation) bowl
**penna, ae** *f.* wing, feather
**potēns, entis** powerful, ruling, mighty*
**praeceptum, ī** *n.* bidding, teaching
**properē** quickly, speedily†
**quattuor** four
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**saeta, ae** *f.* hair, bristle†
**scrūpeus, a, um** stony, rugged, rough†
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**spēlunca, ae** *f.* cave, cavern, grotto
**suppōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** place beneath
**suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** catch up
**tenebrae, ārum** *f.* darkness, gloom
**tepidus, a, um** warm, tepid
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**unde** whence, from which source*
**vellus, eris** *n.* fleece, wool, fillet
**vīnum, ī** *n.* wine*
**volāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) bird, fowl, flying creature

**236–263. Before the entrance to the lower world Aeneas and the Sibyl sacrifice by night to the gods of the lower world, and in answer to their prayers Hecate comes and opens the entrance shortly before daybreak.**

**236.** (Aenēās) exsequitur.

**237. Spēlunca:** not the one mentioned in l. 42.

**242. dīxērunt nōmine = vocāvērunt. Aornon:** a Greek word meaning *birdless*. Avernus is thus fancifully derived from Aornos for the reasons given in ll. 239–241. This line is not found in the best manuscripts and may be a later addition to the poem.

**243. nigrantīs:** see the notes on V, 97.

**244. frontī:** dat. with compound.

**247. (in) caelōque Erebōque potentem:** she was Diana in Heaven and Hecate in Hades.

**248. Suppōnunt:** *place beneath* (the throats of the victims).

**249. ātrī velleris:** see the notes on V, 97.

*Aenēās mātrī* Eumenidum *magnaeque* sorōrī
ēnse ferit, sterilem*que tibī*, Prōserpina, vaccam.
*Tum* Stygiō *rēgī* nocturnās incohat *ārās*
*et* solida impōnit taurōrum vīscera *flammīs*,
pingue *super* oleum *fundēns ardentibus* extīs.
Ecce autem *prīmī sub lūmina* sōlis *et* ortūs
*sub pedibus* mūgīre solum *et* juga coepta *movērī*
*silvārum, vīsaeque* canēs ululāre *per umbram*
adventante *deā*. "*Procul Ō, procul este*, profānī"
conclāmat *vātēs*, "*tōtōque* absistite lūcō;
*tūque* invāde *viam* vāgīnā*que ēripe ferrum:*
*nunc animīs* opus, *Aenēā, nunc pectore* firmō."
*Tantum* effāta *furēns* antrō *sē* immīsit apertō;
*ille* ducem *haud* timidīs vādentem passibus aequat.
*Dī, quibus imperium est animārum, umbraeque* silentēs

**absistō, ere, stitī** depart, withdraw
**adventō** (1) keep coming nearer, arrive, approach
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), keep pace with*
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**apertus, a, um** open(ed), revealed, clear
**autem** however, moreover, but*
**canis, is** *m.* (*f.*) dog, hound
**coepī, isse, ptus** begin, commence
**conclāmō** (1) call, shout, exclaim
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak, say, utter
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**Eumenides, um** *f.* Furies
**exta, ōrum** *n.* entrails, vitals
**feriō, īre** strike, smite, cut, kill
**firmus, a, um** stout, firm, resolute
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send in, fling into
**impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** place on (*dat.*)*
**incohō** (1) commence, begin, consecrate, build†
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** enter (on), attack
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**mūgiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** bellow, roar
**nocturnus, a, um** of the night, nocturnal
**oleum, ī** *n.* (olive) oil
**opus, eris** *n.* work, need (*abl.*)*
**ortus, ūs** *m.* rising, source, spring
**passus, ūs** *m.* step, pace, stride, gait
**pinguis, e** fat, rich, fertile
**profānus, a, um** unholy, uninitiated†
**Prōserpina, ae** *f.* wife of Pluto and goddess of Hades
**silēns, entis** silent, still, quiet
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun, day*
**solidus, a, um** solid, whole, firm
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, earth, soil*
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**sterilis, e** barren, sterile, unfruitful
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
**taurus, ī** *m.* bull, ox, bullock*
**timidus, a, um** timid, fearful, anxious†
**ululō** (1) howl, wail, bark, shriek
**vacca, ae** *f.* heifer, young cow
**vādō, ere** go, advance, proceed, go (on)
**vāgīna, ae** *f.* scabbard, sheath
**vīscus, eris** *n.* vitals, flesh

**250. mātrī Eumenidum magnaeque sorōrī:** refer to Nox and Tellus, daughters of Chaos.

**252. Stygiō rēgī:** Pluto (Dis), god of the lower world. **nocturnās:** sacrifices to the deities of the lower world were regularly offered in the night.

**254. super:** with the final syllable irregularly lengthened under the verse accent; App. 394, *a*.

**256–257. coepta (sunt), vīsae (sunt).**

**258. deā:** Hecate coming to open the way and attended by the hounds of Hades. **profānī:** the companions of Aeneas who could not go with him.

**261. animīs:** abl. with **opus (est)**; App. 341.

**262. furēns:** see the notes on II, 345.

**264–267. Vergil here pauses in the narrative to invoke the gods of the lower world and to ask permission to reveal these sacred mysteries.**

*et* Chaos *et* Phlegethōn, *loca nocte* tacentia lātē,
*sit mihi* fās *audīta* loquī, *sit nūmine* vestrō
pandere *rēs altā terrā et* cālīgine mersās.
*Ībant* obscūrī *sōlā sub nocte per umbram*
*perque domōs* Dītis vacuās *et* inānia *rēgna:*
quāle *per* incertam lūnam *sub lūce* malignā
*est* iter *in silvīs, ubi caelum* condidit *umbrā*
*Juppiter, et rēbus nox* abstulit *ātra* colōrem.
Vestibulum *ante ipsum prīmīs in* faucibus Orcī
Lūctus *et* ultrīcēs *posuēre* cubīlia Cūrae;
pallentēs*que* habitant Morbī *trīstisque* Senectūs,
*et* Metus *et* malesuāda Famēs *ac* turpis Egestās,
terribilēs *vīsū* formae, Lētum*que Labōsque;*
*tum* cōnsanguineus Lētī Sopor *et* mala *mentis*

---

**auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus** remove
**cālīgo, inis** *f.* (thick) darkness, fog
**Chaos** *n. indecl.* abyss, empty space
**color, ōris** *m.* color, hue, tint
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found; hide*
**cōnsanguineus, ī** *m.* kinsman, brother
**cubīle, is** *n.* couch, bed
**Cūra, ae** *f.* Care, Anxiety
**Dīs, Dītis** *m.* Pluto, god of Hades
**Egestās, ātis** *f.* Need, Want†
**Famēs, is** *f.* Hunger, Famine, Greed
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
**faucēs, ium** *f.* jaws, throat; pass(age)
**forma, ae** *f.* shape, form, beauty*
**habitō** (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
**inānis, e** empty, ghostly, useless*
**incertus, a, um** doubtful, uncertain
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**lātē** far and wide, widely
**Lētum, ī** *n.* Death, Destruction, Ruin*
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk, tell*
**Lūctus, ūs** *m.* Grief, Sorrow, Agony
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**malesuādus, a, um** ill-counseling†
**malignus, a, um** scanty, spiteful
**malus, a, um** evil, wicked, false, bad*
**mergō, ere, rsī, rsus** sink, plunge†
**Metus, ūs** *m.* Fear, Fright, Anxiety*
**Morbus, ī** *m.* Disease, Sickness†
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, dim, gloomy*
**Orcus, ī** *m.* (god of the) lower world, Hades; tomb
**pallēns, entis** pale, pallid, wan
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread, disclose*
**Phlegethōn, ontis** *m.* fiery river of Hades†
**quālis, e** (of) what sort, (such) as*
**Senectūs, ūtis** *f.* Old Age, Eld
**Sopor, ōris** *m.* Sleep, Slumber
**tacēns, entis** silent, quiet, still
**terribilis, e** frightful, terrible, dire
**turpis, e** shameful, disgraceful
**ultrīx, īcis** avenging
**vacuus, a, um** empty, free, deserted
**vester, tra, trum** your(s), your own*
**vestibulum, ī** *n.* entrance, vestibule

---

**266. sit fās mihi:** vol. or opt. subj.; App. 254, 253. **audīta loquī:** *to tell what I have heard.*

**267.** (in) **altā terrā:** *deep in the earth;* App. 246.

**268–294. Accompanied by the Sibyl Aeneas sets out on his journey. Near the entrance they find the death-bringing powers, and a little farther the horrible monsters of Hades.**

**268. Ībant (Aenēās et Sibylla).**

**272. rēbus:** dat. of separation.

**274–281.** Observe the personification of abstract ideas.

**277–278. Lētum; tum cōnsanguineus Lētī Sopor:** "Sleep and his brother Death." Cf. Shelley, *Queen Mab:*

"Death and his brother Sleep,
One pale as yonder waning moon
With lips of lurid blue,
The other rosy as the morn."

and Tennyson, *In Memoriam*, 67:

"When in the down I sink my head,
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, times my breath;
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, knows not Death,
Nor can I think of thee as dead.'

Gaudia, mortiferum*que* adversō *in līmine Bellum*,
ferreī*que* Eumenidum thalamī *et* Discordia dēmēns
vīpereum crīnem vittīs innexa cruentīs.
*In* mediō rāmōs annōsa*que* bracchia pandit
ulmus opāca, *ingēns*, *quam sēdem* Somnia vulgō
vāna *tenēre ferunt*, foliīs*que sub omnibus* haerent.
*Multaque* praetereā variārum mōnstra ferārum,
Centaurī *in* foribus stabulant Scyllae*que* biformēs
*et* centumgeminus Briareus *ac* bēlua Lernae
horrendum strīdēns, *flammīsque* armāta Chimaera,
Gorgones Harpyiae*que et* forma tricorporis *umbrae*.
Corripit *hīc* subitā trepidus formīdine *ferrum*

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**annōsus, a, um** aged, ancient
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**bēlua, ae** *f.* beast, monster†
**biformis, e** two-formed, double-shaped
**bracchium,** (i)ī *n.* arm, limb*
**Briareus, eī** *m.* a sea-monster with a hundred hands†
**Centaurus, ī** *m.* a monster with the body of a horse and the head of a man†
**centumgeminus, a, um** hundredfold = hundred-armed†
**Chimaera, ae** *f.* fire-breathing monster, having the head of a goat, and a tail ending in a serpent's head†
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**crīnis, is** *m.* lock, hair, tresses*
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, cruel
**dēmēns, entis** insane, mad, distracted
**Discordia, ae** *f.* Strife, Discord†
**Eumenides, um** *f.* the Furies
**fera, ae** *f.* wild beast
**ferreus, a, um** (of) iron
**folium,** (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
**foris, is** *f.* door, gate, entrance
**forma, ae** *f.* shape, form, beauty*
**formīdō, inis** *f.* fear, fright, dread
**Gaudium,** (i)ī *n.* Joy, Delight, Pleasure
**Gorgō, onis** *f.* snaky-locked monster who turned all beholders to stone
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling (to), stick*
**Harpyia, ae** *f.* foul and ravenous monster with the face of a woman and the body of a bird
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, dreadful*
**innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** weave (in)
**Lerna, ae** *f.* marsh near Argos in southern Greece, home of the Hydra, a monster with seven serpent heads, slain by Hercules as the second of his twelve labors†
**medium,** (i)ī *n.* middle, midst, center
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* monster, portent, sign*
**mortifer, era, erum** death-bringing†
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** spread, open*
**praetereā** besides, also, in addition*
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**Scylla, ae** *f.* a monster half maiden and half fish, girt around the waist with howling dogs (wolves)
**Somnium,** (i)ī *n.* Dream†
**stabulō** (1) dwell, be stabled†
**strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī** hiss, creak, whir
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**thalamus, ī** *m.* (bridal) chamber, bedroom*
**trepidus, a, um** agitated, scared, alarmed
**tricorpor, oris** three-bodied†
**ulmus, ī** *f.* elm†
**vānus, a, um** empty, idle, vain
**varius, a, um** various, different, diverse*
**vīpereus, a, um** snaky, of snakes†
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*
**vulgō** commonly, everywhere

**280. ferreī:** two syllables here by synizesis; App. 403.

**281. crīnem:** obj. of the middle part., **innexa**; App. 309, *a*.

**282. In mediō (vestibulō).**

**284. ferunt** = **dīcunt**, as often.

**288. horrendum:** cognate acc.; translate as an adverb. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 625–628:

"All monstrous, all prodigious things,
Abominable, inutterable, and worse
Than fables yet have feigned, or fear conceived,
Gorgons, and Hydras, and Chimaeras dire."

**289. Gorgonĕs:** a Greek form; App. 65, *a*. **Harpyiae:** three syllables, the **yi** making a diphthong pronounced *we*. **forma tricorporis umbrae:** Geryon, a Hispanian giant with three bodies, slain by Hercules.

*Aenēās* strictam*que* aciem *venientibus* offert,
*et* nī docta *comes* tenuīs sine *corpore vītās*
admoneat volitāre cavā *sub* imāgine formae,
inruat *et* frūstrā *ferrō* dīverberet *umbrās*.
*Hinc via* Tartareī *quae fert* Acherontis *ad undās*.
Turbidus *hīc* caenō *vastāque* vorāgine gurges
aestuat *atque omnem* Cōcȳtō ērūctat harēnam.
Portitor *hās* horrendus aquās *et* flūmina *servat*
terribilī squālōre Charōn, *cui plūrima* mentō
cānitiēs inculta jacet, *stant lūmina flammā*,
sordidus *ex umerīs* nōdō dēpendet amictus.
*Ipse* ratem contō subigit *vēlīsque* ministrat
*et* ferrūgineā subvectat *corpora* cumbā,
*jam* senior, *sed* crūda *deō* viridis*que* senectūs.

---

**Acherōn, ontis** *m.* (a gloomy river of) Hades
**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge; eyesight; battle-line*
**admoneō, ēre, uī, itus** warn, admonish
**aestuō** (1) boil, seethe, surge†
**amictus, ūs** *m.* wrap, cloak, mantle
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, waves, flood*
**caenum, ī** *n.* mud, mire, dirt, filth†
**cānitiēs, ēī** *f.* grayness, gray hair†
**cavus, a, um** hollow, empty*
**Charōn, ontis** *m.* ferryman who transported the souls of the dead across the river Styx in Hades†
**Cōcȳtus, ī** *m.* gloomy river of Hades
**contus, ī** *m.* pole, pike
**crūdus, a, um** raw, fresh, bloody
**cumba, ae** *f.* skiff, boat, bark†
**dēpendeō, ēre** hang (down), depend
**dīverberō** (1) strike asunder, beat, cleave
**doctus, a, um** learned, wise, skilled
**ērūctō** (1) vomit, belch (forth)
**ferrūgineus, a, um** rusty, dusky†
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**forma, ae** *f.* form, shape, beauty*
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, idly*
**gurges, itis** *m.* stream, whirlpool, gulf*
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, dread(ful)*
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, likeness, ghost*
**incultus, a, um** unkempt, shaggy
**inruō, ere, uī** rush (on), attack
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**mentum, ī** *n.* chin, beard
**ministrō** (1) serve, tend, provide
**nisi, nī** if not, unless*
**nōdus, ī** *m.* knot, fold
**offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus** present
**portitor, ōris** *m.* ferryman†
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**senectūs, ūtis** *f.* old age, eld
**senex, senis** old, aged; **senior, ōris** older, very old*
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sordidus, a, um** dirty, filthy, squalid†
**squālor, ōris** *m.* filth, squalor†
**stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus** draw, brush
**subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** force, push
**subvectō** (1) bear, convey, transport†
**Tartareus, a, um** of Tartarus, abode of the wicked in Hades†
**tenuis, e** slight, unsubstantial, thin
**terribilis, e** terrible, dire, awful
**turbidus, a, um** wild, turbid, thick
**viridis, e** green, fresh, vigorous*
**volitō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter
**vorāgō, inis** *f.* whirlpool, whirling water†

---

**292.** vītās = animās, umbrās.

**292–294.** nī admoneat: condition contrary to fact. inruat, dīverberet: conclusions contrary to fact. sub cavā imāgine formae: *'neath hollow show of form* (Rhoades). dīverberet: conative, *would have tried to strike asunder;* App. 351, 2, *a.*

**295–336. The river Styx, Charon the boatman, and the souls of the unburied dead, among whom Aeneas recognizes his friends, Leucaspis and Orontes.**

**296.** caenō: abl. of means or cause. vastā vorāgine: abl. of quality.

**297.** Cōcȳtō: dat. of direction.

**299.** squālōre: abl. of quality. cui mentō: *on his chin.*

**300.** stant lūmina flammā: *his eyes are aflame with fire.*

**301.** nōdō: abl. of manner.

**304.** deō: dat. of possession.

*Hūc omnis* turba *ad* rīpās effūsa *ruēbat*,
*mātrēs atque virī* dēfūnctaque *corpora vītā*
magnanimum hērōum, *puerī* innūptaeque puellae,
impositīque rogīs juvenēs *ante ōra parentum:*
quam *multa in silvīs* autumnī frīgore *prīmō*
*lāpsa* cadunt folia, *aut ad terram* gurgite *ab altō*
quam *multae* glomerantur avēs, *ubi* frīgidus annus
trāns pontum fugat *et terrīs* immittit aprīcīs.
*Stābant* ōrantēs *prīmī* trānsmittere *cursum*,
*tendēbantque manūs* rīpae ulteriōris *amōre*.
Nāvita *sed trīstis nunc hōs nunc accipit illōs*,
*ast aliōs* longē summōtōs arcet harēnā.
*Aenēās* mīrātus enim *mōtusque* tumultū
"*Dīc*" *ait*, "*Ō* virgō, *quid vult* concursus *ad* amnem?
*Quidve petunt animae? Vel quō* discrīmine rīpās
*hae* linquunt, *illae rēmīs* vada līvida verrunt?"

---

**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**aprīcus, a, um** sunny, sun-loving
**arceō, ēre, uī** keep off, defend, confine
**autumnus, ī** *m.* autumn, fall†
**avis, is** *f.* bird, fowl
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**concursus, ūs** *m.* gathering, concourse
**dēfungor, ī, fūnctus** finish, perform (*abl.*)
**discrīmen, inis** *n.* distinction, crisis
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, scatter*
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**folium, (i)ī** *n.* leaf, foliage
**frīgidus, a, um** cold, chilly, frosty
**frīgus, oris** *n.* cold, chill, frost
**fugō** (1) put to flight, rout, drive off
**glomerō** (1) assemble, gather, roll together
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirl(wind, pool), gulf*
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**immittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send in(to), let go (*dat.*)
**impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** place on (*dat.*)*
**innūptus, a, um** unmarried, virgin
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, forsake*
**līvidus, a, um** blue, dark, livid†
**longē** (from) afar, far off*
**magnanimus, a, um** great-souled, noble
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire*
**nāvita, ae** *m.* sailor, ferryman†
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**puella, ae** *f.* girl, maiden
**quam** how, than, as*
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**rogus, ī** *m.* funeral pyre
**summoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** remove†
**trāns** across, beyond (*acc.*)
**trānsmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send across, cross
**tumultus, ūs** *m.* tumult, uproar, hubbub
**turba, ae** *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
**ulterior, ius** farther, remoter
**vadum, ī** *n.* shallow, ford; deep
**verrō, ere, ī, rsus** sweep (over), scour
**virgō, inis** *f.* maid(en), virgin, girl*

---

**305. ad rīpās**: enlarging upon **hūc**.

**306. vītā**: abl. with **dēfungor**; App. 342.

**307. magnanim(ōr)um.**

**309. quam multa**: *as many* (*as*). **frīgore**: abl. of time when.

**313. ōrantēs trānsmittere**: poetic for the prose **ōrantēs ut trānsmittant**; App. 360. (**sē**) **trānsmittere. cursum**: obj. of **trāns** in **trānsmittere**; App. 308, *a*.

**314. rīpae**: obj. gen.; App. 284.

**315. Nāvita trīstis**: Charon, called **portitor** in l. 298. Cf. Shakespeare, *Richard* III, I, 4, 46:

"that grim ferryman that poets write of."

**316. submōtōs arcet** = **submovet et arcet.**

**318. Dīc**: imp. **quid vult**: *what means?*

**320. hae** (**animae**): refused passage by Charon.

*Ollī sīc* breviter *fāta est* longaeva sacerdōs:
"*Anchīsā* generāte, *deum* certissima prōlēs,
Cōcȳtī stāgna *alta vidēs* Stygiam*que* palūdem,
*dī cujus* jūrāre timent *et* fallere *nūmen*.
*Haec omnis, quam cernis,* inops inhumāta*que* turba *est;*
portitor *ille* Charōn; *hī, quōs* vehit *unda,* sepultī.
*Nec* rīpās *datur* horrendās *et* rauca fluenta
trānsportāre prius quam *sēdibus* ossa quiērunt.
Centum *errant* annōs volitant*que haec lītora circum;*
*tum* dēmum admissī stāgna exoptāta revīsunt."
Cōnstitit *Anchīsā* satus *et* vestīgia pressit
*multa* putāns sortem*que animō* miserātus inīquam.
*Cernit* ibī maestōs *et mortis honōre* carentīs
Leucaspim *et* Lyciae ductōrem *classis* Orontēn,

---

**admittō, ere, mīsī, missus** admit†
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season*
**breviter** shortly, briefly, concisely
**careō, ēre, uī, itus** lack, be frec (*abl.*)
**centum** hundred*
**certus, a, um** certain, sure, undoubted*
**Charōn, ontis** *m.* ferryman of souls across the Styx in Hades
**Cōcȳtus, ī** *m.* mournful river of Hades
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast)*
**dēmum** at length, finally
**ductor, ōris** *m.* leader, pilot, chief
**exoptō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, prove false (to)*
**fluentum, ī** *n.* stream, river, flood
**generō** (1) generate, beget, bear
**horrendus, a, um** horrifying, dread(ful)*
**ibī** there, then
**inhumātus, a, um** unburied
**inīquus, a, um** unequal, unfair, unjust
**inops, opis** needy, helpless, destitute
**jūrō** (1) swear (by), take oath
**Leucaspis, (id)is** *m.* Trojan leader†
**longaevus, a, um** aged, old, long-lived
**Lycius, a, um** Lycian, Trojan
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**Orontēs, is** *m.* Trojan leader
**os, ossis** *n.* bone*
**palūs, ūdis** *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
**portitor, ōris** *m.* ferryman
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press*
**prius** sooner
**prōlēs, is** *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
**putō** (1) think, suppose, consider
**quam** how, than, as*
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** rest, repose*
**raucus, a, um** hoarse, roaring
**revīsō, ere** revisit, see again
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), sepultus** bury, inter
**serō, ere, sēvī, satus** sow, beget*
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
**stāgnum, ī** *n.* lake, marsh, mere
**Stygius, a, um** of the Styx, a river of Hades*
**timeō, ēre, uī** fear, dread, be anxious*
**trānsportō** (1) carry across, transport†
**turba, ae** *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** convey, bear*
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace*
**volitō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

---

**321. longaeva:** according to the legend, the Sibyl had been granted as many years as the grains of sand she could hold in her hand, but was not allowed to retain her youth.

**324.** *By whose divine power the gods fear to swear and prove false.*

**325. inops:** perhaps without the small coin usually placed in the mouth of the corpse to pay his passage across the Styx. **inhumāta:** no one was allowed to cross the Styx unless duly buried.

**327. Nec datur (Charontī) trānsportāre (animās). rīpās, fluenta:** objects of the preposition **trāns** in composition; App. 308, *a*.

**328. (in) sēdibus:** *tomb*, as in l. 152. **quiē(vē)runt.**

**331. Anchīsā satus:** *son of Anchises.* **(re) pressit.**

**332. (in) animō.**

**333. mortis honōre:** *burial.*

**334. Orontēn:** lost in the storm, I, 113–119.

*quōs simul ā Trojā* ventōsa *per aequora* vectōs
obruit Auster, aquā involvēns *nāvemque virōsque.*
Ecce gubernātor *sēsē* Palinūrus *agēbat,*
*quī* Libycō nūper *cursū, dum sīdera servat,*
exciderat *puppī mediīs* effūsus *in undīs.*
*Hunc ubi vix multā* maestum cognōvit *in umbrā,*
*sīc* prior adloquitur: "*Quis tē,* Palinūre, *deōrum*
*ēripuit nōbīs mediōque sub aequore* mersit?
*Dīc age. Namque mihī,* fallāx *haud ante* repertus,
*hōc ūnō* respōnsō *animum* dēlūsit Apollō,
*quī fore tē* pontō incolumem *fīnīsque* canēbat
*ventūrum* Ausoniōs. Ēn *haec* prōmissa fidēs *est?*"
*Ille* autem: "*Neque tē* Phoebī cortīna fefellit,
dux Anchīsiadē, *nec mē deus aequore* mersit.
*Namque* gubernāclum *multā vī forte* revulsum,
*cui datus* haerēbam custōs *cursūsque* regēbam,

---

**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost
**Anchīsiadēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Anchises, Aeneas
**Apollō, inis** *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, waves, flood*
**Ausonius, a, um** Italian
**Auster, trī** *m.* (south) wind*
**autem** moreover, however, but*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
**cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize
**cortīna, ae** *f.* caldron (resting on a tripod and serving as a seat for the priestess of Delphi when she delivered an oracle), kettle
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* guard(ian), sentinel*
**dēlūdō, ere, sī, sus** deceive, delude†
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chief*
**ecce** see! look! behold!*
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, hurl*
**ēn** see! look! behold!
**excidō, ere, ī** fall (out), perish
**fallāx, ācis** deceitful, treacherous
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, cheat*
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, trust, pledge, fidelity*
**gubernāc(u)lum, ī** *n.* tiller, rudder
**gubernātor, ōris** *m.* pilot, helmsman
**haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus** cling (to)*
**incolumis, e** safe, unharmed, intact
**involvō, ere, ī, volūtus** wrap, engulf
**Libycus, a, um** of Libya, a country of North Africa*
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mergō, ere, rsī, rsus** sink, drown
**nūper** recently, lately
**obruō, ere, uī, utus** overwhelm, bury
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**prior, ius** sooner, former, first, prior*
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, direct, guide*
**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus** find
**respōnsum, ī** *n.* answer, oracle, reply
**revellō, ere, ī, vulsus** tear off, remove
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey*
**ventōsus, a, um** windy, stormy†

---

**337–383. They meet with the soul of Palinurus, who wishes to cross with Aeneas, but is consoled by the Sibyl with a promise of eternal fame.**

**337. sēsē agēbat** : *was passing along.*
**338. Libycō cursū**: V, 827–871.
**339. mediīs effūsus in undīs** = **effūsus in undās manēbat in undīs.**
**343. Dīc**: imp.; App. 202. **mihī**: dat. of agent with **repertus.**
**345. (in) pontō. (in) fīnīs.**
**347. Phoebī cortīna**: from which the oracles were delivered.
**348. deus** (Phoebus).
**349. gubernāc(u)lum**: obj. of **trāxī,** l. 351.
**350. cursūs** (**nāvis tuae**).

praecipitāns *trāxī mēcum. Maria* aspera jūrō
*nōn ūllum* prō *mē tantum cēpisse* timōrem,
quam *tua nē* spoliāta *armīs*, excussa magistrō,
dēficeret *tantīs nāvis surgentibus undīs.*
Trīs Notus hībernās immēnsa *per aequora noctēs*
vēxit *mē* violentus aquā; *vix lūmine* quārtō
prōspexī *Ītaliam summā* sublīmis *ab undā.*
Paulātim adnābam *terrae; jam* tūta *tenēbam,*
nī *gēns* crūdēlis madidā *cum* veste gravātum
prēnsantem*que* uncīs *manibus capita* aspera *montis*
*ferrō* invāsisset praedam*que* ignāra putāsset.
*Nunc mē flūctus habet* versant*que in lītore ventī.*
Quod *tē per caelī* jūcundum *lūmen et aurās,*
*per genitōrem* ōrō, *per* spēs *surgentis* Iūlī,
*ēripe mē hīs*, invicte, malīs: *aut tū mihi terram*
injice, *namque potes, portūsque* requīre Velīnōs;

---

**adnō** (1) swim, float to (*dat.*)
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, waves, flood*
**asper, era, erum** rough, harsh, fierce*
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bloody, fierce*
**dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** fail, sink
**excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake off, free (from)*
**gravō** (1) burden, weigh down, oppress
**hībernus, a, um** wintry, of the winter
**ignārus, a, um** ignorant, unaware*
**immēnsus, a, um** boundless, vast
**injiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast upon
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** enter, attack
**invictus, a, um** unconquered, invincible†
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**jūcundus, a, um** pleasant, delightful†
**jūrō** (1) swear (by), take oath
**madidus, a, um** wet, dripping
**magister, trī** *m.* master, pilot, chief
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
**nisi, nī** if not, unless*
**Notus, ī** *m.* (south) wind
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
**paulātim** gradually, little by little
**praecipitō** (1) throw, fall headlong
**praeda, ae** *f.* booty, spoils, plunder
**pr(eh)ēnsō** (1) catch, grasp, seize
**prō** before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** discern, see in front
**putō** (1) think, suppose, consider
**quam** how, than, as*
**quārtus, a, um** fourth
**quod** because, but, the fact that, wherefore
**requīrō, ere, sīvī, sītus** seek (again)
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**spoliō** (1) rob, strip, despoil (*abl.*)
**sublīmis, e** high, uplifted, aloft, exalted
**timor, ōris** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety
**trēs, tria** three*
**tūtus, a, um** safe, protected, secure*
**uncus, a, um** curved, bent, arched
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** bear, convey*
**Velīnus, a, um** of Velia, an Italian city†
**versō** (1) keep turning, toss, roll
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**violentus, a, um** boisterous, violent†

---

**351.** (per) maria aspera jūrō.

**352.** tantum timōrem (mē) cēpisse: timōrem is subject and mē the object.

**353–354.** armīs, magistrō: ablatives of separation. armīs: here refers to the tiller. nē dēficeret: after the idea of fearing in timōrem mē cēpisse; App. 363.

**356.** aquā: abl. of route or of place. lūmine: *day*, as often.

**358.** tenēbam: mixed condition; App. 382, *d.*

**359–361.** (mē) gravātum. capita montis: *edge of the cliff.* nī invāsisset, putā-(vi)sset: conditions contrary to fact; App. 382. praedam: they thought he might have some object of value on his person.

**365–366.** mihi terram injice: if only three handfuls, the minimum requirement for burial rites and consequent entrance into Hades.

*aut tū, sī qua via est, sī quam tibi dīva* creātrīx
ostendit (*neque* enim, crēdō, sine *nūmine dīvum*
flūmina *tanta parās* Stygiamque innāre palūdem),
*dā dextram miserō et tēcum mē tolle per undās,*
*sēdibus ut* saltem placidīs *in morte* quiēscam."
*Tālia fātus erat* coepit *cum tālia vātēs:*
"Unde *haec, Ō* Palinūre, *tibī* tam dīra cupīdō?
*Tū* Stygiās inhumātus aquās amnemque sevērum
Eumenidum aspiciēs, rīpamve injussus adībis?
Dēsine *fāta deum* flectī spērāre precandō.
*Sed cape dicta* memor, dūrī sōlācia *cāsūs.*
*Nam tua* fīnitimī, longē lātēque *per urbēs*
prōdigiīs *āctī* caelestibus, ossa piābunt
*et* statuent tumulum *et* tumulō sollemnia *mittent,*
aeternumque *locus* Palinūrī *nōmen habēbit.*"
*Hīs dictīs cūrae* ēmōtae pulsusque parumper
corde dolor *trīstī;* gaudet cognōmine *terrā.*

---

**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach
**aeternus, a, um** everlasting, eternal*
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, waves, flood*
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold*
**caelestis, e** heavenly, divine, celestial
**coepī, isse, ptus** begin, undertake
**cognōminis, e** of like name, of the same name†
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**creātrīx, īcis** *f.* mother, creator†
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust*
**cupīdō, inis** *f.* desire, love, passion
**dēsinō, ere, sīvī (iī), situs** cease, desist
**dīrus, a, um** fearful, awful, dire*
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** remove
**enim** for, indeed, truly*
**Eumenides, um** *f.* Furies
**fīnitimus, ī** *m.* neighbor; *pl.* adjoining people
**flectō, ere, flexī, flexus** bend, move
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**inhumātus, a, um** unburied
**injussus, a, um** unbiddcn, uninvited†
**innō** (1) swim, float (on)
**lātē** wide(ly), far and wide
**longē** (from) afar, far*
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering*
**os, ossis** *n.* bonc*
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, display
**Palinūrus, ī** *m.* Trojan pilot*
**palūs, ūdis** *f.* swamp, marsh (water), mere
**parumper** for a little while, momentarily†
**pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus** expel, drive (out)
**piō** (1) expiate, propitiate
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaccful, quiet*
**precor, ārī, ātus** pray, cntreat, beg*
**prōdigium, (i)ī** *n.* omcn, portent, prodigy
**quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus** rcst, repose*
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**saltem** at least, at any rate
**sevērus, a, um** stern, dread, strict†
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sōlācium, (i)ī** *n.* consolation, solace
**sollemne, is** *n.* sacrifice, ritual
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect, reckon*
**statuō, ere, uī, ūtus** establish, build
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
**tam** so (much, greatly), such*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**unde** whencc, from what source*

---

**370. undās (Stygiās).**

**374–375. amnem Eumenidum:** the Cocytus.

**379. prōdigiīs āctī:** according to the legend, the Lucanians, the **fīnitimī** of l. 378, were afflicted with a pestilence, and when they consulted the oracle, they were ordered to make atonement to the shades of Palinurus. This they did by dedicating to him a cenotaph (empty tomb) and a grove near Velia.

**381. aeternum:** called today Punta di Palinuro. Cf. l. 235.

Ergō iter inceptum peragunt fluviō*que* propinquant.
Nāvita *quōs jam* inde *ut* Stygiā prōspexit *ab undā*
*per* tacitum nemus *īre pedemque* advertere rīpae,
*sīc* prior adgreditur *dictīs. atque* increpat ultrō:
"Quisquis *es*, armātus *quī nostra ad* flūmina *tendis*,
*fāre age quid veniās jam* istinc, *et* comprime gressum.
*Umbrārum hic locus est, somnī noctisque* sopōrae:
*corpora* vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carīnā.
*Nec* vērō Alcīdēn *mē sum* laetātus *euntem*
*accēpisse* lacū, *nec* Thēsea Pīrithoüm*que*,
*dīs* quamquam genitī *atque* invictī *vīribus essent.*
Tartareum *ille manū* custōdem *in* vincla *petīvit*
*ipsius ā* soliō *rēgis trāxitque* trementem;

---

**adgredior, ī, gressus** address, attack
**advertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn toward
**Alcīdēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Alceus, Hercules, who descended to Hades and carried off Cerberus; the three-headed dog
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**carīna, ae** *f.* keel; ship, boat*
**comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**fluvius, (i)ī** *m.* river, stream
**gignō, ere, genuī, genitus** bear, beget
**gressus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, walk, stride
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**increpō, āre, uī, itus** reprove, chide†
**inde** thence, from that point*
**invictus, a, um** unconquered, invincible
**istinc** from where you are†
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**lacus, ūs** *m.* lake, marsh, mere
**laetor, ārī, ātus** rejoice, exult, delight
**nāvita, ae** *m.* sailor, ferryman, mariner
**nefās** *n. indecl.* sin, wrong, impiety*
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus** complete, do
**Pīrithoüs, ī** *m.* king of the Lapiths, friend of Theseus†
**prior, ius** sooner, former, first, prior*
**propinquō** (1) approach, draw near (*dat.*)
**prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see (before)
**quamquam** although
**quisquis, quicquid** whoever, whichever, whatever
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**solium, (i)ī** *n.* throne, seat
**sopōrus, a, um** slumberous, sleepy†
**Stygius, a, um** Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
**tacitus, a, um** silent, quiet, still, secret
**Tartareus, a, um** of Tartarus, the lowest region of Hades
**Thēseus, eī (eos)**, *acc.* **ea**, *m.* early king of Athens who descended to Hades with Pirithoüs and attempted to carry off Proserpina, Pluto's queen
**tremō, ere, uī** tremble, shake, quiver*
**ultrō** further, voluntarily*
**vectō** (1) convey, carry, bear†
**vērō** truly, indeed, but
**vinc(u)lum, ī** *n.* bond, chain, cable*
**vīvus, a, um** living, alive, natural

---

**384–416. Charon at first refuses to ferry Aeneas and the Sibyl across the Styx, but after being shown the golden bough he consents.**

**389. istinc:** *from where you are*, without approaching nearer.

**391. nefās (est).**

**392. Alcīdēn:** the form **Herculēn** (-⏑⏑-) could not be used in dactylic hexameter. **nec laetātus:** litotes; App. 431. According to the story, Charon was punished by a year's imprisonment for assisting Hercules to enter Hades by ferrying him across the Styx. On this journey Hercules carried off Cerberus to the upper world.

**394. vīribus:** abl. of respect. **essent:** concession; App. 384. In classical prose **quamquam** usually takes the indicative.

**395. ille:** Hercules. **in vinc(u)la petīvit = petīvit ut caperet vinc(u)līs. custōdem:** Cerberus.

*hī* dominam Dītis thalamō dēdūcere adortī."
*Quae* contrā breviter *fāta est* Amphrȳsia *vātēs:*
"*Nūllae hīc* īnsidiae *tālēs* (absiste *movērī*),
*nec vim tēla ferunt;* licet *ingēns* jānitor antrō
aeternum lātrāns exsanguīs terreat *umbrās,*
casta licet patruī *servet* Prōserpina *līmen.*
Trōius *Aenēās,* pietāte īnsignis *et armīs,*
*ad genitōrem īmās* Erebī dēscendit *ad umbrās.*
*Sī tē nūlla movet tantae* pietātis imāgō,
*at* rāmum *hunc*" (aperit rāmum *quī* veste latēbat)
"agnōscās." Tumida *ex īrā tum* corda resīdunt.
*Nec plūra hīs. Ille* admīrāns venerābile *dōnum*
fātālis virgae *longō* post *tempore vīsum*
caeruleam advertit *puppim* rīpae*que* propinquat.
Inde *aliās animās, quae per* juga *longa* sedēbant,
dēturbat laxat*que* forōs; *simul accipit* alveō

---

**absistō, ere, stitī** depart, cease, desist
**admīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire
**adorior, īrī, ortus** attempt, attack†
**advertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn (to, toward)
**aeternus, a, um** eternal, continual, lasting
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**alveus, ī** *m.* boat; hollow; trough†
**Amphrȳsius, a, um** Amphrysian, of Amphrysus, a river along which Apollo once herded cattle†
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**aperiō, īre, uī, ertus** open, disclose*
**breviter** shortly, briefly, concisely
**caerul(e)us, a, um** dark (blue)*
**castus, a, um** pure, holy, chaste
**contrā** opposite, in reply (to)*
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead off, abduct
**dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** descend
**dēturbō** (1) drive off, dislodge
**Dīs, Dītis** *m.* Pluto, lord of the lower realm
**domina, ae** *f.* mistress, queen
**Erebus, ī** *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
**exsanguis, e** bloodless, pale, lifeless
**fātālis, e** fated, fatal, fateful
**forus, ī** *m.* gangway, deck
**imāgō, inis** *f.* appearance, likeness, phantom*
**inde** thence, next, thereupon*
**īnsidiae, ārum** *f.* ambush, plot, snare
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked*
**jānitor, ōris** *m.* doorkeeper, porter†
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge; bench*
**lateō, ēre, uī** lie hid, hide, lurk*
**lātrō** (1) bark, howl, bay†
**laxō** (1) loose(n), clear, open, free
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted*
**patruus, ī** *m.* paternal uncle†
**pietās, ātis** *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
**post** after, behind (*acc.*); next, later*
**propinquō** (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)
**Prōserpina, ae** *f.* wife of Pluto and queen of Hades
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**resīdō, ere, sēdī** subside, settle
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit*
**terreō, ēre, uī, itus** frighten, terrify
**thalamus, ī** *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**tumidus, a, um** swollen, swelling
**venerābilis, e** venerable, awful†
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**virga, ae** *f.* branch, shoot, twig

---

**397. hī**: Theseus and Pirithoüs. **dominam**: Proserpina.

**398. Amphrȳsia vātēs = Apollinēa vātēs**, and refers to the Sibyl.

**400. licet (per nōs)**: *so far as we are concerned.*

**401–402. aeternum**: cognate acc. Translate adverbially. **(ut) terreat, (ut) servet. patruī = conjugis**: since Proserpina married her paternal uncle.

**407.** agnōscās: vol. subj.; App. 254.

**408. Nec plūra (dicta sunt). hīs**: abl. with comparative. **dōnum**: for Proserpina.

**412.** alveō: dissyllabic here by synizesis, or hypermetric; App. 403, 402.

*ingentem Aenēān.* Gemuit *sub* pondere cumba
sūtilis *et multam accēpit* rīmōsa palūdem.
*Tandem* trāns fluvium incolumīs *vātemque virumque*
īnformī līmō glaucā*que* expōnit *in* ulvā.
Cerberus *haec ingēns* lātrātū *rēgna* trifaucī
personat adversō recubāns *immānis in* antrō.
*Cui vātēs* horrēre *vidēns jam* colla colubrīs
melle sopōrātam *et* medicātīs frūgibus offam
objicit. *Ille* famē rabidā tria guttura pandēns
corripit objectam, *atque immānia* terga resolvit
*fūsus* humī *tōtōque ingēns* extenditur antrō.
Occupat *Aenēās* aditum custōde sepultō
ēvādit*que* celer rīpam inremeābilis *undae.*
Continuō *audītae vōcēs* vāgītus *et ingēns*

---

**aditus, ūs** *m.* approach, entrance
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**antrum, ī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
**celer, eris, ere** quick, swift, fleet*
**Cerberus, ī** *m.* monstrous three-headed dog in Hades†
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**coluber, brī** *m.* snake, serpent
**continuō** immediately, at once
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up)*
**cumba, ae** *f.* boat, skiff
**custōs, ōdis** *m.* (*f.*) guard(ian), sentinel*
**ēvādō, ere, sī, sus** escape; traverse
**expōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place out, disembark†
**extendō, ere, ī, ntus** stretch, extend
**famēs, is** *f.* hunger, famine, greed
**fluvius, (i)ī** *m.* river, stream
**frūx, frūgis** *f.* fruit, produce, meal
**gemō, ere, uī, itus** groan, roar, mourn
**glaucus, a, um** gray, green, gleaming†
**guttur, uris** *n.* throat, gullet†
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder*
**humus, ī** *f.* ground, earth, soil*
**incolumis, e** safe, unharmed, intact
**īnformis, e** shapeless, hideous
**inremeābilis, e** from which there is no return, irretraceable
**lātrātus, ūs** *m.* bark(ing), howl(ing)
**līmus, ī** *m.* slime, mud, mire†
**medicō** (1) drug, medicate†
**mel, mellis** *n.* honey
**objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw (before)
**occupō** (1) seize (beforehand), occupy
**offa, ae** *f.* morsel, cake†
**palūs, ūdis** *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, extend*
**personō, āre, uī, itus** (make) resound
**pondus, eris** *n.* weight, burden, mass
**rabidus, a, um** mad, fierce, raging
**recubō, āre** recline, lie
**resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), relax
**rīmōsus, a, um** full of cracks, leaky†
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**sepeliō, īre, īvī (iī), ultus** bury, inter
**sopōrō** (1) make drowsy, drug
**sūtilis, e** sewed, with seams†
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**trāns** across, beyond (*acc.*)
**trēs, tria** three*
**trifaux, faucis** three-throated†
**ulva, ae** *f.* sedge, marsh grass
**vāgītus, ūs** *m.* crying, wailing†

---

**414. sūtilis:** the boat was apparently of skins, sewed together. **rīmōsa:** made so by the unaccustomed weight placed upon it. **palūdem:** (*water of*) *the marsh.*

**416.** (in) **līmō.**

**417–425. Aeneas and the Sibyl find their way blocked by Cerberus, the huge three-headed dog of Hades, but they give him a medicated cake which puts him to sleep and they pass on.**

**422. objectam (offam).**

**423. humī:** loc.

**424. custōde** ( = Cerberō) **sepultō (somnō):** abl. abs.

**425. inremeābilis:** "from whose bourn no traveler returns."

**426–449. Under Minos as judge the souls of the dead are divided into five classes: (1) infants; (2) those condemned to death under false accusations; (3) suicides; (4) those who have died for love; (5) renowned warriors.**

īnfantumque *animae* flentēs, *in līmine prīmō*
*quōs* dulcis *vītae* exsortīs *et ab* ūbere raptōs
abstulit *ātra diēs et* fūnere mersit acerbō.
*Hōs* juxtā falsō damnātī crīmine *mortis.*
*Nec* vērō *hae* sine sorte *datae,* sine jūdice, *sēdēs:*
quaesītor Mīnōs urnam *movet; ille* silentum
conciliumque *vocat vītāsque et* crīmina discit.
Proxima deinde *tenent* maestī *loca, quī sibi* lētum
īnsontēs peperēre *manū lūcemque* perōsī
prōjēcēre *animās.* Quam *vellent* aethere *in altō*
*nunc et* pauperiem *et* dūrōs perferre *labōrēs!*
Fās obstat, *trīstisque* palūs inamābilis *undae*
alligat *et* noviēs Styx interfūsa coërcet.
*Nec procul hinc partem fūsī* mōnstrantur *in omnem*
lūgentēs *campī; sīc illōs nōmine dīcunt.*

---

**acerbus, a, um** bitter, harsh, sad
**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**alligō** (1) bind, fasten, tie (to)
**auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus** carry off
**coërceō, ēre, uī, itus** restrain, confine†
**concilium, (i)ī** *n.* assembly, council
**crīmen, inis** *n.* crime, accusation
**damnō** (1) condemn, sentence, devote
**deinde** thence, next, thereupon*
**discō, ere, didicī** learn, investigate
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**exsors, rtis** without a part (lot) (*gen.*)
**falsus, a, um** false, unfounded, mock
**fās** *n. indecl.* justice, fate, divine will*
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep, lament, mourn
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**inamābilis, e** unlovely, hateful†
**īnfāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) infant, baby†
**īnsōns, ontis** innocent, guiltless
**interfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour between
**jūdex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) judge, juryman, umpire†
**juxtā** next, nearest to (*acc.*)*
**lētum, ī** *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
**lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctus** mourn, lament
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mergō, ere, rsī, rsus** sink, drown
**Mīnōs, ōis** *m.* king of Crete, and later judge in Hades†
**mōnstrō** (1) point out, show, teach, guide*
**noviēs** nine times†
**obstō, āre, stitī, status** oppose (*dat.*)
**palūs, ūdis** *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
**pariō, ere, peperī, partus** bear, cause
**pauperiēs, ēī** *f.* poverty†
**perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bear (to the end), endure
**perōdī, ōdisse, ōsus** hate, detest†
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw (away)
**proximus, a, um** next, nearest
**quaesītor, ōris** *m.* examiner, judge†
**quam** how, than, as*
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch, rob*
**silēns, entis** silent, dead, still
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
**Styx, ygis** *f.* hateful river in Hades
**ūber, eris** *n.* udder, breast, fertility
**urna, ae** *f.* urn, vase (from which lots were drawn for the selection of judges)
**vērō** truly, indeed, but

---

**428. vītae:** obj. gen. with **exsortīs.**

**429. ātra diēs** = **diēs mortis.**

**430. mortis:** with **damnātī;** App. 291.

**432. urnam movet:** to select the **jūdicēs,** who were chosen by lot. Cf. the modern selection of jurymen. **silent(i)um.**

**435. manū** (**suā**).

**436. Quam vellent:** potential subj.; App. 252. **aethere in altō:** *on earth,* whose air is *high* above Hades.

**439. noviēs:** Cf. *Paradise Lost,* 2, 434–436:

"This huge convex of fire,
Outrageous to devour, immures us round
Ninefold."

**441. nōmine dīcunt** = **vocant.**

*Hīc quōs* dūrus *amor* crūdēlī tābe perēdit
sēcrētī cēlant callēs *et* myrtea *circum*
*silva* tegit; *cūrae nōn ipsā in morte relinquunt.*
*Hīs* Phaedram Procrim*que locīs* maestam*que* Eriphȳlēn
crūdēlis *nātī* mōnstrantem vulnera *cernit,*
Euadnēn*que et* Pāsiphaēn; *hīs* Lāodamīa
*it comes et* juvenis *quondam, nunc* fēmina, Caeneus
rūrsus *et in* veterem *fātō* revolūta figūram.
*Inter quās* Phoenissa recēns *ā* vulnere *Dīdō*
*errābat silvā in magnā; quam* Trōius hērōs
*ut prīmum* juxtā *stetit* agnōvit*que per umbrās*
obscūram, quālem *prīmō quī surgere* mēnse
*aut videt aut vīdisse* putat *per* nūbila lūnam,
dēmīsit *lacrimās* dulcī*que* adfātus *amōre est*

---

**adfor, ārī, ātus** address, accost*
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**Caeneus, eī** (**eos**) *m.* girl changed to a young man by Neptune†
**callis, is** *m.* path, track
**cēlō** (1) conceal, hide, cover
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, bitter, bloody*
**dēmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus** send down, let fall, drop, lower*
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, fond*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**Eriphȳlē, ēs** *f.* wife of Amphiaraüs who induced her husband to go to war in order to get rid of him, for which she was murdered by their son†
**Euadnē, ēs** *f.* wife of Capaneus who threw herself on his funeral pyre†
**fēmina, ae** *f.* woman, female
**figūra, ae** *f.* form, shape, figure†
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man)*
**juxtā** near, next, close to (*acc.*)*
**Lāodamīa, ae** *f.* wife of Protesilaüs who died with her husband†
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**maestus, a, um** sad, mournful, gloomy*
**mēnsis, is** *m.* month
**mōnstrō** (1) show, point out, teach, guide*
**myrteus, a, um** of myrtle, myrtle, a tree sacred to the dead and to Venus, goddess of love†
**nūbilum, ī** *n.* cloud, cloudiness
**obscūrus, a, um** dark, obscure, dim*
**Pāsiphaē, ēs** *f.* wife of Minos who fell in love with a bull
**peredō, ere, ēdī, ēsus** consume, eat (up)†
**Phaedra, ae** *f.* wife of Theseus, who killed herself because her love for her stepson, Hippolytus, was unrequited†
**Phoenissa, ae** *f.* Phoenician (woman), Dido
**Procris, (id)is** *f.* jealous wife of Cephalus who spied on her husband and was accidentally killed by him†
**putō** (1) think, suppose, consider
**quālis, e** (such) as, of what sort*
**recēns, entis** recent, fresh
**revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus** revolve, change again
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**sēcrētus, a, um** secluded, remote
**tābēs, is** *f.* wasting, pining†
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, shelter*
**Trōius, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

**443.** cēlant (eōs).

**446.** nātī: subj. gen.; *the wounds inflicted by her son.*

**447.** Pāsiphaēn: see ll. 24 ff.

**450–476. Among those who have died for love Aeneas sees the shade of Dido and attempts to defend his course in deserting her, but she scornfully sweeps away out of his sight and throws herself into the arms of Sychaeus, her first husband, while Aeneas stands and weeps.**

**451.** quam: with juxtā and understood with agnōvit in l. 452.

**455.** amōre: abl. of manner.

"*Īnfēlīx Dīdō*, vērus *mihi* nuntius ergō
*vēnerat* exstinctam *ferrōque* extrēma *secūtam?*
Fūneris *heu tibi* causa *fuī? Per sīdera* jūrō,
*per superōs et sī qua* fidēs *tellūre sub īmā est*,
invītus, *rēgīna, tuō dē lītore* cessī.
*Sed mē* jussa *deum, quae nunc hās īre per umbrās,*
*per loca* senta sitū cōgunt *noctemque* profundam,
*imperiīs ēgēre suīs; nec* crēdere quīvī
*hunc tantum tibi mē* discessū *ferre* dolōrem.
Siste gradum *tēque* aspectū *nē* subtrahe *nostrō.*
*Quem fugis?* Extrēmum *fātō quod tē* adloquor *hoc est.*"
*Tālibus Aenēās ardentem et* torva tuentem
lēnībat *dictīs animum lacrimāsque* ciēbat.
*Illa* solō fīxōs *oculōs* āversa *tenēbat*
*nec* magis inceptō vultum sermōne *movētur*
quam *sī* dūra silex *aut stet* Marpēsia cautēs.
*Tandem* corripuit *sēsē atque* inimīca refūgit

---

**adloquor, ī, locūtus** address, accost
**a(d)spectus, ūs** *m.* sight, vision, aspect
**āvertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn away, avert*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**cautēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** yield, depart*
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** stir (up), (a)rouse*
**cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus** force (together)*
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up, away)*
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, trust (*dat.*)*
**discessus, ūs** *m.* departure, separation†
**dolor, ōris** *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** quench, destroy, extinguish
**extrēma, ōrum** *n.* end, death, funeral
**extrēmus, a, um** final, last, utmost*
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, honor, pledge*
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fasten, fix, pierce*
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**inimīcus, a, um** hostile, unfriendly
**invītus, a, um** unwilling, reluctant
**jūrō** (1) swear (by), take oath
**jussum, ī** *n.* command, order, behest
**lēniō, īre, īvī, ītus** soften, soothe, calm
**magis** more, rather*
**Marpēs(s)ius, a, um** of Marpe(s)sus, a Parian mountain famous for its white marble†
**nuntius, (i)ī** *m.* messenger, message
**profundus, a, um** deep, profound, vast
**quam** how, than, as*
**queō, quīre, īvī (iī), ītus** be able, can†
**refugiō, ere, fūgī** flee (away), shun
**sentus, a, um** rough, thorny†
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, speech
**silex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) flint, rock crag
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** stay, stop
**situs, ūs** *m.* position; neglect; mould
**solum, ī** *n.* ground, earth, soil*
**subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus** withdraw
**torvus, a, um** fierce, grim, lowering
**tueor, ērī, itus (tūtus)** look (at), watch*
**vērus, a, um** true, real, genuine*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

**456. nuntius:** we need not worry as to how this message reached Aeneas: we are dealing with imaginative poetry, not sober history.

**457. (tē) exstīnctam (esse). extrēma** ( = **mortem**) **secūtam (esse).**

**461. jussa de(ōr)um:** see IV, 237, 270.

**466. Extrēmum:** *this is the last (time) I shall address you.* **quod:** cognate acc. **hoc:** pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable.

**467. torva:** neut. acc. pl., used adverbially.

**468. lēnībat = lēniēbat,** which could not be used in hexameter (– ◡ – ◡). It has a conative meaning here, *he tried to soothe;* App. 351, 2, *a.*

**470. vultum:** acc. of respect.

*in* nemus umbriferum, *conjūnx ubi* prīstinus *illī*
respondet *cūrīs* aequat*que* Sychaeus *amōrem.*
*Nec* minus *Aenēās* cāsū concussus inīquō
prōsequitur *lacrimīs* longē *et* miserātur *euntem.*
Inde *datum* mōlītur iter. *Jamque arva tenēbant*
ultima, *quae bellō* clārī sēcrēta frequentant.
*Hīc illī* occurrit Tȳdeus, *hīc* inclutus *armīs*
Parthenopaeus *et* Adrāstī pallentis imāgō,
*hīc multum* flētī *ad superōs bellōque* cadūcī
Dardanidae, *quōs ille omnīs longō* ordine *cernēns*
ingemuit, Glaucum*que* Medonta*que* Thersilochum*que,*
trīs Antēnoridās Cererī*que sacrum* Polyboetēn,
Īdaeum*que* etiam currūs, etiam *arma tenentem.*
Circumstant *animae dextrā* laevā*que* frequentēs:
*nec vīdisse* semel satis *est;* juvat ūsque morārī
*et* cōnferre gradum *et veniendī* discere causās.

---

**Adrāstus, ī** *m.* Greek warrior†
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), match, level*
**Antēnoridēs, ae** *m.* a Trojan warrior, son of Antenor†
**cadūcus, a, um** fallen, falling, destined to fall, doomed†
**cāsus, ūs** *m.* chance, (mis)fortune
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
**Cerēs, eris** *f.* (goddess of) grain
**circumstō, stāre, stetī** stand around
**clārus, a, um** clear, bright, famous*
**concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus** shake, shatter, agitate
**cōnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** unite, join†
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**Dardanidēs, ae** *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
**discō, ere, didicī** learn (how); *perf.* know
**etiam** also, even, too, likewise*
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep, lament
**frequēns, entis** crowded, thronging
**frequentō** (1) crowd, throng, frequent†
**Glaucus, ī** *m.* Trojan warrior†
**gradus, ūs** *m.* step, walk, pace, stride
**Īdaeus, ī** *m.* charioteer of Priam†
**imāgō, inis** *f.* image, likeness, ghost*
**inclutus, a, um** renowned, famous
**inde** thence, next, thereupon*
**ingemō, ere, uī** groan (over), lament
**inīquus, a, um** unjust, harsh, uneven
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus** help, please*
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**longē** (from) afar, at a distance*
**Medōn, ontis,** *acc.* **onta,** *m.* Trojan warrior†
**minus** less
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**mōlior, īrī, ītus** accomplish, do, make
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** (run to) meet (*dat.*)
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, row, rank, array*
**pallēns, entis** pale, pallid, wan
**Parthenopaeus, ī** *m.* Greek warrior†
**Polyboetēs, ae** *m.* Trojan priest†
**prīstinus, a, um** ancient, former†
**prōsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, attend
**respondeō, ēre, ī, ōnsus** answer; sympathize with*
**sat(is)** enough, sufficient(ly)*
**sēcrētus, a, um** secluded, remote
**semel** once (for all)
**Sychaeus, ī** *m.* deceased husband of Dido
**Thersilochus, ī** *m.* Trojan warrior†
**trēs, tria** three*
**Tȳdeus, eī (eos)** *m.* Greek warrior†
**ultimus, a, um** last, outermost, utmost*
**umbrifer, era, erum** shady†
**ūsque** continuously, ever, still

---

**473.** illī: dat. of reference.

**475.** cāsū (Dīdōnis).

**476.** prōsequitur et miserātur (eam).

**477–534. Among the renowned warriors they find Deïphobus; he has been horribly mutilated by the Greeks through the treachery of Helen, who had betrayed him into their hands on the night of the fall of Troy.**

**481.** ad superōs = apud superōs: *among men of the upper world.*

**483.** Medonta: acc. sing., a Greek form.

**484.** Cererī sacrum = *priest of Ceres.*

*At Danaum* procerēs Agamemnoniae*que* phalanges
*ut vīdēre virum* fulgentia*que arma per umbrās,*
*ingentī* trepidāre metū; *pars* vertere terga,
ceu *quondam petiēre* ratēs, *pars tollere vōcem*
exiguam: inceptus *clāmor* frūstrātur hiantīs.
*Atque hīc* Prīamidēn laniātum *corpore tōtō*
Dēiphobum *vīdit,* lacerum crūdēliter *ōra,*
*ōra manūsque* ambās, populāta*que* tempora raptīs
auribus *et* truncās inhonestō vulnere nārīs.
*Vix* adeō agnōvit pavitantem *ac* dīra tegentem
supplicia, *et* nōtīs compellat *vōcibus* ultrō:
"Dēiphobe armipotēns, *genus altō ā sanguine* Teucrī,
*quis* tam crūdēlīs optāvit sūmere *poenās?*
*Cui tantum dē tē* licuit? *Mihi fāma suprēmā*
*nocte tulit fessum vastā tē* caede Pelasgum
prōcubuisse *super* cōnfūsae strāgis acervum.

---

**acervus, ī** *m.* heap, pile, mass
**adeō** so (far), indeed
**Agamemnonius, a, um** of Agamemnon, Greek king, and leader of the expedition against Troy
**agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus** recognize*
**ambō, ae, ō** both, two, double
**armipotēns, entis** mighty in arms
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**caedēs, is** *f.* slaughter, destruction
**ceu** as, just as
**compellō** (1) address, accost, speak to
**cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** confuse
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, brutal, bloody*
**crūdēliter** cruelly, brutally†
**Dēiphobus, ī** *m.* son of Priam, husband of Helen after the death of Paris
**dīrus, a, um** awful, dire, dreadful*
**exiguus, a, um** slight, weak, thin
**frūstror, ārī, ātus** baffle, mock, fail†
**fulg(e)ō, ĕre, lsī** shine, gleam, glitter
**hiō** (1) yawn, gape, stand open†
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**inhonestus, a, um** shameful†
**lacer, era, erum** torn, mangled, maimed
**laniō** (1) tear, mutilate, mangle†
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted*
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**nāris, is** *f.* nose, nostril†
**nōtus, a, um** (well-) known, familiar*
**optō** (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
**pavitō** (1) cower, tremble, quake
**Pelasgus, a, um** Pelasgian, Greek
**phalānx, angis** *f.* phalanx, troop
**populō** (1) strip, rob, devastate
**Prīamidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Priam
**procer, eris** *m.* leader, chief
**prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus** sink (forward), fall, recline
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** snatch, tear off*
**ratis, is** *f.* raft, ship, boat*
**strāgēs, is** *f.* destruction, carnage†
**sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus** take, inflict
**supplicium, (i)ī** *n.* punishment, suffering
**tam** so (much, greatly), such*
**tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus** cover, hide*
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**tergum, ī** *n.* back, hide*
**Teucrus (cer), ī** *m.* early king of Troy
**trepidō** (1) tremble, scurry, bustle
**truncus, a, um** maimed, mangled
**ultrō** further(more), voluntarily*
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

**491–493. trepidāre, vertere, tollere:** hist. infinitives. **ceu quondam:** referring to an incident in the Trojan war when the defeated Greeks fled to their ships. **vōcem exiguam:** since they were only shades, lacking in bodily strength. Cf. *Hamlet,* I, 1, 115–116:

"The graves stood tenantless and the sheeted dead
Did squeak and gibber in the Roman streets."

**495–497. ōra, manūs, tempora, nārīs:** accusatives of respect with **lacerum.**

**498. tegentem:** the present of attempted action (conative present); App. 351, 1, *c.*

**502–503. tantum dē tē:** *so much (power) over you.* **suprēmā nocte:** the

*Tunc egomet* tumulum Rhoetēō *lītore* inānem
cōnstituī *et magnā* mānīs ter *vōce vocāvī.*
*Nōmen et arma locum servant; tē,* amīce, nequīvī
cōnspicere *et* patriā dēcēdēns *pōnere terrā.*"
*Ad quae* Prīamidēs: "Nihil *Ō tibi,* amīce, *relictum;*
*omnia* Dēiphobō solvistī *et* fūneris *umbrīs.*
*Sed mē fāta mea et* scelus exitiāle Lacaenae
*hīs* mersēre malīs; *illa haec* monimenta *relīquit.*
*Namque ut suprēmam* falsa *inter* gaudia *noctem*
*ēgerimus,* nōstī: *et* nimium meminisse necesse *est.*
*Cum* fātālis *equus* saltū *super* ardua *vēnit*
Pergama *et* armātum peditem gravis attulit alvō,
*illa* chorum simulāns euhantīs orgia *circum*
*dūcēbat* Phrygiās; *flammam media ipsa tenēbat*
*ingentem et summā Danaōs ex arce vocābat.*
*Tum mē* cōnfectum *cūrīs somnōque* gravātum

---

**adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring (to)
**alvus, ī** *f.* belly, womb
**amīcus, ī** *m.* friend, comrade, lover*
**arduus, a, um** high, lofty, steep*
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**chorus, ī** *m.* (dancing) band, troop
**cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** finish, use up, weary
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold
**cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus** set up
**dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart
**Dēiphobus, ī** *m.* son of Priam and third husband of Helen
**euhāns, antis** celebrating with cries of Euhan (Bacchus)†
**exitiālis, e** deadly, mortal, destructive
**falsus, a, um** false, treacherous, mock
**fātālis, e** fatal, fateful, fated
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, destruction*
**gaudium, (i)ī** *n.* joy, delight, pleasure
**gravis, e** heavy, pregnant, serious*
**gravō** (1) burden, weigh down, oppress
**inānis, e** empty, useless, idle, vain*
**Lacaena, ae** *f.* Spartan woman, Helen
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**meminī, isse** remember (*gen.*)
**mergō, ere, rsī, rsus** sink, drown
**monimentum (monumentum), ī** *n.* reminder, memorial
**necesse** necessary, need(ful)
**nequeō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** be unable
**nihil (nīl)** *n.* nothing, not at all
**nimium** too much, too (greatly)
**nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus** learn; *perf.* know*
**orgia, ōrum** *n.* (sacred) rites, revels
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**pedes, itis** *m.* infantry, foot soldier(y)†
**Pergama, ōrum** *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
**Phrygius, a, um** Phrygian, Trojan*
**Prīamidēs, ae** *m.* son of Priam
**Rhoetē(i)us, a, um** of Rhoeteüm, a Trojan promontory
**saltus, ūs** *m.* leap, bound, dancing
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**simulō** (1) imitate, pretend, simulate
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), pay, free*
**ter** three times, thrice*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*

---

night of the fall of Troy; abl. of time when.

**505. tumulum inānem:** a cenotaph.

**505–506.** These ceremonies entitled the shade of the departed to cross the Styx.

**507. tē:** your dead body. **tē, amīce:** semi-hiatus; App. 400.

**509. tibi:** dat. of agent with **relictum (est).**

**511. Lacaenae:** Helen, whom he disdains to name.

**513. ut:** *how,* introducing an indir. quest.

**514.** nō(vi)stī.

**516.** (in) alvō.

**517–518. illa:** *that notorious woman;* Deïphobus does not deign to mention Helen by name. **orgia:** cognate acc. with **euhantīs. circum:** with **dūcēbat = circumdūcēbat;** this separation of the different parts of a compound word is called *tmesis;* App. 445. **flammam:** as

*īnfēlīx habuit* thalamus, pressit*que* jacentem
dulcis *et alta* quiēs placidae*que* simillima *mortī.*
Ēgregia intereā *conjūnx arma omnia tēctīs*
āmovet *et* fīdum *capitī* subdūxerat ēnsem;
intrā *tēcta vocat* Menelāum *et līmina* pandit,
scīlicet *id magnum* spērāns *fore mūnus* amantī,
*et fāmam* exstinguī veterum *sīc posse* malōrum.
*Quid* moror? Inrumpunt thalamō, *comes* additus ūnā
hortātor scelerum Aeolidēs. *Dī, tālia* Grajīs
īnstaurāte, *piō sī poenās ōre* reposcō.
*Sed tē quī* vīvum *cāsūs, age fāre* vicissim,
attulerint. *Pelagīne venīs* errōribus *āctus*
an monitū *dīvum?* An *quae tē fortūna* fatīgat,
*ut trīstīs* sine sōle *domōs, loca* turbida, adīrēs?"
*Hāc* vice sermōnum roseīs Aurōra quadrīgīs

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add, join*
**adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** approach
**adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring (to)
**Aeolidēs, ae** *m.* putative son of Aeolus, Ulysses, a wily Greek†
**amāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*) lover
**āmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus** remove†
**an** *interrog.* or, whether*
**Aurōra, ae** *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
**dulcis, e** sweet, dear, delightful, fond*
**ēgregius, a, um** wonderful, remarkable
**ēnsis, is** *m.* sword, knife*
**error, ōris** *m.* wandering, mistake
**exstinguō, ere, īnxī, īnctus** destroy, blot out
**fatīgō** (1) weary, harass, torment, vex
**fīdus, a, um** faithful, trusty, safe*
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**hortātor, ōris** *m.* instigator, inciter†
**inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break in
**īnstaurō** (1) renew, repeat, refresh
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**intrā** within (*acc.*)
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, wrong, trouble, sin*
**Menelāus, ī** *m.* Greek warrior, first husband of Helen
**monitus, ūs** *m.* advice, warning
**moror, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, hinder*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, spread*
**placidus, a, um** calm, quiet, peaceful*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press*
**quadrīgae, ārum** *f.* four-horse chariot†
**quiēs, ētis** *f.* rest, quiet, peace, repose*
**reposcō, ere** demand, seek, ask (for)
**roseus, a, um** rosy, rose-colored, red
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**scīlicet** doubtless, forsooth, of course
**sermō, ōnis** *m.* conversation, speech
**similis, e** similar, like (*dat., gen.*)*
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**spērō** (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
**subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** withdraw (from under) (*dat.*)
**thalamus, ī** *m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
**turbidus, a, um** confused, disordered
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*
**vicis** *gen. f.* (ex)change, alternation
**vicissim** in turn, by turns, alternately
**vīvus, a, um** living, alive, natural

---

a signal to the Greek fleet to start back to Troy. Cf. II, 254 ff.

**523. Ēgregia:** ironically of Helen. This passage contradicts the account of II, 567–588, but it is useless to expect strict consistency of a great poetic genius. **conjūnx:** after the death of Paris, Helen had married Deïphobus.

**526. amantī:** Menelaüs, her lawful husband.

**529. Aeolidēs:** contemptuously of Ulysses, in accordance with the scandal which claimed that he was not the son of Laërtes at all but of Sisyphus, a notorious robber and trickster, son of Aeolus.

**532. Pelagīne errōribus:** a Homeric conception, according to which Hades lay beyond the western ocean and could be reached only by ship. This idea is at variance with the rest of this book.

**535–547. Aeneas parts with Deïphobus.**

*jam medium* aetheriō *cursū* trājēcerat axem;
*et fors omne datum traherent per tālia tempus,*
*sed comes* admonuit breviter*que* adfāta Sibylla *est:*
"*Nox ruit, Aenēā; nōs* flendō *dūcimus* hōrās.
*Hīc locus est partīs ubi sē via* findit *in* ambās:
*dextera quae* Dītis *magnī sub moenia tendit,*
*hāc* iter Ēlysium *nōbīs; at* laeva malōrum
exercet *poenās et ad* impia Tartara *mittit.*"
Dēiphobus contrā: "*Nē* saevī, *magna* sacerdōs;
discēdam, explēbō numerum reddar*que* tenebrīs.
*Ī* decus, *ī, nostrum;* meliōribus ūtere *fātīs.*"
*Tantum* effātus, *et in* verbō vestīgia torsit.
Respicit *Aenēās* subitō *et sub* rūpe sinistrā
*moenia* lāta *videt* triplicī circumdata mūrō,
*quae* rapidus *flammīs* ambit torrentibus amnis,

**adfor, ārī, ātus** address, speak to*
**admoneō, ēre, uī, itus** warn, advise
**aetherius, a, um** ethercal, heavenly
**ambiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** surround
**ambō, ae, ō** both, two
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**axis, is** *m.* axle, wheel, chariot; heaven
**breviter** shortly, briefly, concisely
**circumdō, dare, dedī, datus** surround
**contrā** against, opposite, in reply*
**decus, oris** *n.* ornament, glory, honor
**Dēiphobus, ī** *m.* son of Priam and third husband of Helen
**Dīs, Dītis** *m.* Pluto, god of the lower world
**discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** depart
**effor, ārī, ātus** speak, utter
**Ēlysium, (i)ī** *n.* abode of the blessed in Hades†
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** exercise, inflict, vex*
**expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill (out)
**findō, ere, fidī, fissus** divide, split†
**fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** weep (for), lament
**hōra, ae** *f.* hour, season, time
**impius, a, um** impious, wicked, disloyal
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**lātus, a, um** broad, wide, spacious*
**malus, a, um** evil, wicked, bad, false*
**melior, ius** better, superior, preferable
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude*
**rapidus, a, um** swift, hurrying, fleet*
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give back, return*
**respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look (back) at, regard*
**rūpēs, is** *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**saeviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** rage, be angry
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian priestess
**sinister, tra, trum** left (hand), on the left
**subitō** suddenly, unexpectedly*
**Tartara, ōrum** *n.* lowest realm of Hades
**tenebrae, ārum** *f.* darkness, gloom
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn, twist, whirl*
**torreō, ēre, uī, tostus** burn, seethe
**trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw across, cross
**triplex, icis** triple
**ūtor, ī, ūsus** use, enjoy, employ (*abl.*)
**verbum, ī** *n.* word, speech, talk
**vestīgium, (i)ī** *n.* step, track, trace*

**537. fors = forsitan (fors sit an):** *perhaps.* **traherent:** conclusion of an implied condition contrary to fact.

**540. sē via findit:** up to this point there had been only one road, but now there is a definite parting of the ways, one leading to the place of bliss (Elysium), the other to the place of torment (Tartarus).

**541. dextera (via est ea) quae.**

**542. hāc (viā) iter (est) nōbīs (ad) Ēlysium:** acc. of place to which with iter (est). **laeva (via):** the road is said to punish because it leads to the place of punishment.

**545. explēbō numerum (umbrārum):** by rejoining them.

**546. decus nostrum = decus nostrōrum.**

**547. in verbō:** *as he spoke.* Cf. **in vōce,** IV, 76.

**548–627. Description of Tartarus and some of its horrible punishments, which Aeneas does not see as he passes on toward the Elysian Fields.**

Tartareus Phlegethōn, torquet*que* sonantia *saxa*.
Porta adversa *ingēns* solidō*que* adamante columnae,
*vīs ut nūlla virum, nōn ipsī* exscindere *bellō*
caelicolae valeant; *stat* ferrea turris *ad aurās*,
Tīsiphonē*que* sedēns pallā succīncta cruentā
vestibulum exsomnis *servat noctēsque diēsque*.
*Hinc* exaudīrī gemitūs *et* saeva sonāre
verbera, *tum* strīdor *ferrī trāctaeque* catēnae.
Cōnstitit *Aenēās* strepitum*que* exterritus hausit.
"*Quae* scelerum faciēs? *Ō* virgō, effāre; *quibusve*
urgentur *poenīs? Quis tantus* clangor *ad* aurīs?"
*Tum vātēs sīc* orsa loquī: "Dux inclute *Teucrum*,
*nūllī* fās castō scelerātum īnsistere *līmen;*
*sed mē cum* lūcīs Hecatē praefēcit Avernīs,
*ipsa deum poenās* docuit *perque omnia dūxit*.
Gnōsius *haec* Rhadamanthus *habet* dūrissima *rēgna*

---

**adamās, antis** *m.* adamant†
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**auris, is** *f.* ear*
**Avernus, a, um** of Avernus, an Italian lake where there was an entrance to Hades*
**caelicola, ae** *m.* (*f.*) god(dess), divinity
**castus, a, um** pure, holy, chaste
**catēna, ae** *f.* chain, shackle, fetter†
**clangor, ōris** *m.* noise, uproar, clang
**columna, ae** *f.* pillar, column, post
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast)*
**cruentus, a, um** bloody, cruel
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**dux, ducis** *m.* (*f.*) leader, chief, guide*
**effor, ārī, ātus** say, tell
**exaudiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** (over)hear
**exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus** cut out, destroy
**exsomnis, e** sleepless, wakeful†
**exterreō, ēre, uī, itus** terrify, frighten
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**fās** *n. indecl.* right, fate, divine will*
**ferreus, a, um** (of) iron
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan(ing), roar*
**Gnō(s)sius, a, um** of Gnossus, a city of Crete
**hauriō, īre, hausī, haustus** drain, drink (in)
**Hecatē, ēs** *f.* goddess of the lower world
**inclutus, a, um** renowned, famous
**īnsistō, ere, stitī** stand (on), pursue
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk, tell*
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
**ordior, īrī, orsus** begin, commence
**palla, ae** *f.* cloak, robe, mantle
**Phlegethōn, ontis** *m.* fiery stream of Hades
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
**praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** set over (*dat.*)
**Rhadamanthus, ī** *m.* early king of Crete and later judge of the dead in Hades†
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**scelerātus, a, um** criminal, unholy
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit*
**solidus, a, um** solid, firm, strong
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**strepitus, ūs** *m.* uproar, noise, bustle
**strīdor, ōris** *m.* creaking, clanking, whir
**succingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird(le)
**Tartareus, a, um** of Tartarus, the lowest region and abode of the wicked in Hades
**Tīsiphonē, ēs** *f.* a Fury†
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** turn, twist, whirl*
**turris, is** *f.* tower, turret
**urgeō, ēre, ursī** (op)press, beset
**valeō, ēre, uī, itus** be strong, be able
**verber, eris** *n.* blow, lash, whip
**vestibulum, ī** *n.* entrance, vestibule
**virgō, inis** *f.* virgin, maid(en), girl*

---

**552.** Porta (est).
**557–558.** strīdor, catēnae: additional subjects of the hist. infinitives, exaudīrī, sonāre.
**560.** Quae (sunt).
**561.** clangor (venit) ad aurīs (nostrās).
**563.** fās (est).
**565.** de(ōr)um: subj. gen., *the punishments inflicted by the gods.*

castīgat*que auditque* dolōs subigit*que* fatērī
*quae quis* apud *superōs* fūrtō laetātus inānī
distulit *in* sēram commissa piācula *mortem.*
Continuō sontīs ultrīx accīncta flagellō
Tīsiphonē quatit īnsultāns, torvōs*que* sinistrā
intentāns anguīs *vocat agmina* saeva sorōrum.
*Tum* dēmum horrisonō strīdentēs cardine *sacrae*
panduntur portae. *Cernis* custōdia quālis
vestibulō sedeat, faciēs *quae līmina servet?*
Quīnquāgintā *ātrīs immānis* hiātibus Hydra
saevior intus *habet sēdem. Tum* Tartarus *ipse*
bis patet *in* praeceps *tantum tenditque sub umbrās*
quantus *ad* aetherium *caelī* suspectus Olympum.
*Hīc genus antīquum Terrae,* Tītānia pūbēs,

**accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** gird(le)
**aetherius, a, um** ethereal, heavenly
**anguis, is** *m.* (*f.*) snake, serpent
**apud** among, at, in (*acc.*)
**bis** twice*
**cardō, inis** *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
**castīgō** (1) punish, avenge, chastise
**committō, ere, mīsī, missus** commit, perform
**continuō** immediately, at once
**custōdia, ae** *f.* guard(ian), care†
**dēmum** at length, finally
**differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus** put off, defer†
**dolus, ī** *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
**faciēs, ēī** *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
**fateor, ērī, fassus** confess, agree
**flagellum, ī** *n.* whip, lash, scourge
**fūrtum, ī** *n.* theft, stealth, concealment
**hiātus, ūs** *m.* gaping (mouth), yawning
**horrisonus, a, um** horrible-sounding†
**Hydra, ae** *f.* monster with seven (fifty) serpent heads, killed by Hercules†
**inānis, e** empty, useless, vain, idle*
**īnsultō** (1) leap on, insult
**intentō** (1) stretch (out), threaten
**intus** within, inside
**laetor, ārī, ātus** rejoice, exult, delight
**Olympus, ī** *m.* high mountain of northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, extend*
**pateō, ēre, uī** lie open, extend
**piāculum, ī** *n.* atonement, expiation, crime
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, precipitous; **in praeceps** straight downward*
**pūbēs, is** *f.* youth, (group of) young men*
**quālis, e** of what sort, (such) as*
**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, as*
**quatiō, ere, quassus** shake, shatter
**quīnquāgintā** fifty
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit*
**sērus, a, um** (too) late, tardy
**sinister, tra, trum** left (hand), on the left
**sōns, sontis** guilty, impious, criminal†
**soror, ōris** *f.* sister*
**strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī** grate, creak, whir
**subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** force, subdue
**suspectus, ūs** *m.* view upward†
**Tartarus, ī** *m.* the lowest part of Hades, abode of the wicked
**Tīsiphonē, ēs** *f.* a Fury
**Tītānius, a, um** of the Titans, an early race of giants who attempted to storm heaven, but who were cast down by the thunderbolts of Jove and confined in the lowest depths of Hades†
**torvus, a, um** savage, grim, scowling
**ultrīx, īcis** avenging, (as) avenger
**vestibulum, ī** *n.* entry, vestibule

**568. quis:** indef. **apud superōs:** see l. 481 and note. **fūrtō inānī:** *vain concealment*, because punishment is inescapable.

**568–569. quae commissa piācula = commissa quōrum piācula.**

**574. custōdia:** Tisiphone.

**579. caelī:** obj. gen. with **suspectus (est),** *the gazing up (from earth) to heaven,* or possibly *from the abyss to heaven,* with **ad aetherium Olympum** added as explanatory.

**580–581. Tītānia pūbēs:** overthrown by Jupiter. **genus, pūbēs, dējectī:** observe the three genders and two numbers, all referring to the same thing, the race of Titans.

fulmine dējectī fundō *volvuntur in īmō.*
*Hīc et* Alōīdās *geminōs immānia vīdī*
*corpora, quī manibus magnum* rescindere *caelum*
adgressī *superīsque Jovem* dētrūdere *rēgnīs.*
*Vīdī et* crūdēlīs *dantem* Salmōnea *poenās,*
*dum flammam Jovis et* sonitūs imitātur Olympī.
Quattuor *hic* invectus *equīs et* lampada quassāns
*per* Grajum *populōs mediaeque per* Ēlidis *urbem*
*ībat* ovāns, *dīvumque sibī* poscēbat *honōrem,*
dēmēns, *quī* nimbōs *et nōn* imitābile fulmen
aere *et* cornipedum pulsū simulāret *equōrum.*
*At pater* omnipotēns dēnsa *inter* nūbila *tēlum*
contorsit, *nōn ille* facēs *nec* fūmea taedīs
*lūmina,* praecipitem*que immānī* turbine adēgit.
*Nec nōn et* Tityon, *Terrae* omniparentis alumnum,
*cernere erat, per tōta* novem *cui* jūgera *corpus*

---

**adgredior, ī, gressus** attack, attempt
**adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** drive, hurl
**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze (utensil)*
**Alōīdae, ārum** *m.* sons of Aloeus, Otus and Ephialtes, giants who attempted to storm heaven by piling up mountains, but were overthrown and confined in the lowest depths of Hades†
**alumnus, ī** *m.* nursling, foster child†
**contorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, whirl
**cornipēs, pedis** horny-hoofed†
**crūdēlis, e** cruel, merciless, harsh*
**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** hurl down
**dēmēns, entis** mad, frenzied, foolish
**dēnsus, a, um** thick, dense, crowded*
**dētrūdō, ere, sī, sus** thrust down†
**Ēlis, idis** *f.* district of southern Greece
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand, faggot*
**fulmen, inis** *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
**fūmeus, a, um** smoky, smoking†
**fundus, ī** *m.* bottom, depths
**Grajus, a, um** Greek*
**imitābilis, e** that may be imitated, imitable†
**imitor, ārī, ātus** imitate, mimic†
**invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** convey
**jugerum, ī** *n.* acre; more accurately about five-eighths of an acre†
**lampas, adis** *f.* torch, lantern
**nimbus, ī** *m.* storm (cloud), rainstorm*
**novem** nine
**nūbila, ōrum** *n.* clouds, cloudiness
**Olympus, ī** *m.* mountain of northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven
**omniparēns, entis** parent of all†
**omnipotēns, entis** almighty, omnipotent
**ovō (1)** exult, rejoice, triumph
**poscō, ere, poposcī** demand, seek, ask*
**praeceps, cipitis** headlong, headforemost*
**pulsus, ūs** *m.* beat, trample, stroke†
**quassō (1)** shake, brandish; shatter
**quattuor** four
**rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus** tear down†
**Salmōneus, eos (eī), *acc.* ea,** *m.* king of Elis, who attempted to imitate the thunder and lightning of Jove by means of his rattling chariot and blazing torches†
**simulō (1)** imitate, counterfeit, simulate
**sonitus, ūs** *m.* sound, thunder, roar*
**taeda, ae** *f.* pine torch
**Tityos, ī** *m.* giant slain by Apollo for attempting to violate Latona†
**turbō, inis** *m.* whirl(wind, pool), gulf

---

**581. fulmine:** *the thunderbolt* of Jupiter.
**583. corpora:** in apposition with **Alōīdās.**
**585. Salmōnea:** acc. sing., a Greek form.
**587. hic:** pronounce hicc, making a long syllable.
**590–591. quī . . . simulāret:** rel. clause of cause; App. 357.
**593. ille:** Jupiter.
**594. turbine (fulminis). (Salmōnea) praecipitem.**
**595. Nec nōn:** *likewise.*
**596. erat:** *it was possible.*

porrigitur, rōstrō*que immānis* vultur obuncō
immortāle jecur tondēns fēcunda*que poenīs*
vīscera rīmātur*que* epulīs habitat*que sub altō*
*pectore, nec* fibrīs requiēs *datur ūlla* renātīs.
*Quid* memorem Lapithās, Ixīona Pīrithoüm*que?*
. . . . . .
*Quō super ātra* silex *jam jam lāpsūra* cadentī*que*
imminet adsimilis; lūcent geniālibus *altīs*
aurea fulcra torīs, epulae*que ante ōra parātae*
rēgificō luxū; furiārum *maxima* juxtā
accubat *et manibus* prohibet contingere mēnsās,
exsurgit*que* facem attollēns *atque* intonat *ōre.*
*Hīc, quibus* invīsī frātrēs, *dum vīta manēbat,*
pulsātus*ve parēns aut* fraus innexa clientī,
*aut quī* dīvitiīs *sōlī* incubuēre repertīs

**accubō, āre, uī, itus** recline (by)†
**adsimilis, e** like, similar (*dat.*)†
**attollō, ere** lift, raise, rear*
**aureus, a, um** golden, (of) gold*
**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus** fall, sink, die*
**cliēns, entis** *m.* client, dependant†
**contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, reach*
**dīvitiae, ārum** *f.* riches, wealth†
**epulae, ārum** *f.* banquet, feast
**exsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus** rise†
**fax, facis** *f.* torch, firebrand*
**fēcundus, a, um** fruitful, productive†
**fibra, ae** *f.* fiber, filament; entrail†
**frāter, tris** *m.* brother*
**fraus, fraudis** *f.* deceit, trick, wile, fraud
**fulcrum, ī** *n.* prop, support, headrest†
**furiae, ārum** *f.* the furies, goddesses of vengeance
**geniālis, e** festal, joyous, pleasant†
**habitō** (1) inhabit, dwell, possess
**immineō, ēre** overhang, threaten
**immortālis, e** immortal, undying†
**incubō, āre, uī, itus** lie on; gloat over
**innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus** fasten, contrive
**intonō, āre, uī** thunder (at)
**invīsus, a, um** hated, hateful, odious
**Ixīōn, onis,** *acc.* **ona,** *m.* giant bound to a revolving wheel in Hades for attempting to violate Juno†
**jecur, (jecin)oris** *n.* liver, the seat of evil passions†
**juxtā** next, nearest, close (to)*
**Lapithae, ārum** *m.* tribe of northern Greece, famous for their battle with the Centaurs†
**lūceō, ēre, lūxī** shine, gleam, beam
**luxus, ūs** *m.* luxury, splendor, excess
**memorō** (1) (re)call, recount, mention*
**mēnsa, ae** *f.* table*
**obuncus, a, um** curved, hooked†
**Pīrithoüs, ī** *m.* king of the Lapiths, who with the help of Theseus attempted to carry off Proserpina, queen of Pluto
**porrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** stretch, extend†
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** prevent, prohibit
**pulsō** (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
**rēgificus, a, um** royal, regal, kingly†
**renāscor, ī, nātus** be reborn, be renewed†
**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus** find
**requiēs, ētis (ēī)** *f.* rest, respite
**rīmor, ārī, ātus** split, tear (open), explore†
**rōstrum, ī** *n.* beak, snout; prow
**silex, icis** *m.* (*f.*) flint, rock, stone
**tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus** shear; eat
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch*
**vīscus, eris** *n.* vitals, flesh
**vultur, uris** *m.* vulture, buzzard†

**598. jecur:** supposed to be the seat of lust and the evil passions.

**599. epulīs:** *for his banquet;* dat. of purpose.

**600. renātīs:** his flesh grows again as fast as it is devoured by the vulture.

**602–603.** One or more verses describing Tantalus seem to have fallen out here.

**cadentīque:** hypermetric; App. 402.

**604. torīs:** dat. of reference.

**605. maxima (nātū):** *the eldest.*

**608–609. Hīc (sunt eī) quibus frātrēs (erant) invīsī (et eī ā quibus) pulsātus (est) parēns aut fraus innexa (est).**

*nec partem posuēre suīs* (*quae maxima* turba *est*),
*quīque* ob adulterium caesī, *quīque arma secūtī*
impia *nec* veritī dominōrum fallere *dextrās*,
inclūsī *poenam* exspectant. *Nē quaere* docērī
*quam poenam, aut quae* forma *virōs fortūnave* mersit.
*Saxum ingēns volvunt alīī*, radiīs*que* rotārum
districtī pendent; sedet aeternum*que* sedēbit
*īnfēlīx* Thēseus, Phlegyās*que miserrimus omnīs*
admonet *et magnā* testātur *vōce per umbrās:*
'Discite jūstitiam monitī *et nōn* temnere *dīvōs.*'
Vendidit *hic aurō* patriam dominum*que* potentem
imposuit; fīxit lēgēs pretiō *atque* refīxit;
*hic* thalamum invāsit nātae vetitōs*que* hymenaeōs:
ausī *omnēs immāne* nefās ausō*que* potītī.

---

**admoneō, ēre, uī, itus** warn, advise
**adulterium,** (i)ī *n.* adultery†
**aeternum** eternally, forever
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum** dare, venture*
**ausum,** ī *n.* daring deed, crime, thing dared
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**discō, ere, didicī** learn; *perf.* know
**distringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus** stretch out†
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, inform*
**dominus,** ī *m.* master, lord, ruler
**exspectō** (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, violate*
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, fasten, set up*
**forma, ae** *f.* shape, beauty, form*
**hymenaeus,** ī *m.* (god of) marriage
**impius, a, um** disloyal, treacherous
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place on*
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus** shut (in), inclose
**invādō, ere, sī, sus** enter, attack
**jūstitia, ae** *f.* justice, righteousness
**lēx, lēgis** *f.* law, decree, statute
**mergō, ere, rsī, rsus** sink, bury, drown
**moneō, ēre, uī, itus** advise, warn
**nāta, ae** *f.* daughter
**nefās** *n. indecl.* impiety, crime, sin*
**ob** on account of (*acc.*)
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**pendeō, ēre, pependī** hang*
**Phlegyās, ae** *m.* father of Ixion, who set fire to Apollo's temple at Delphi†
**potēns, entis** powerful, ruling, mighty*
**potior, īrī, ītus** attain, gain (*abl.*)
**pretium,** (i)ī *n.* price, bribe, reward
**radius,** (i)ī *m.* rod, spoke, ray
**refīgō, ere, xī, xus** unfasten, annul, pull down
**rota, ae** *f.* wheel; chariot, car
**sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus** sit*
**temnō, ere** despise, scorn, disdain
**testor, ārī, ātus** call to witness, testify
**thalamus,** ī *m.* (bridal) chamber, bedroom*
**Thēseus, eī** (**eos**) *m.* early king of Athens; he helped his friend, Pirithoüs, in his attempt to carry off Proserpina and was condemned to sit forever on a stone in Hades
**turba, ae** *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
**vendō, ere, didī, ditus** sell, betray
**vereor, ērī, itus** fear, dread, revere
**vetō, āre, uī, itus** forbid, prohibit

---

**611. quae:** attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, *a*.

**612–613. arma impia:** probably referring to the civil wars at Rome.

**613. dominōrum:** obj. gen., *the faith pledged to their masters*, probably referring to the slave revolts at Rome.

**615. quam poenam (exspectant).**

**616. Saxum volvunt:** Sisyphus, for example, was compelled to roll a huge stone to the top of a hill; but at the summit the stone always escaped and rolled back to the bottom.

**621. hic:** pronounce **hicc**, making a long syllable.

**622. fīxit atque refīxit:** *made and unmade.* At Rome the laws were inscribed on bronze tablets and put in some public place; when the laws were repealed or annulled, the tablets were removed.

**624. ausī (sunt), ausōque potītī (sunt):** *dared and gained what they dared.*

*Nōn, mihi sī* linguae centum *sint ōraque* centum,
ferrea *vōx, omnīs* scelerum comprendere formās,
*omnia poenārum* percurrere *nōmina possim.*"
*Haec ubi dicta dedit* Phoebī longaeva sacerdōs,
"*Sed jam age,* carpe *viam et* susceptum perfice *mūnus;*
accelerēmus" *ait;* "Cyclōpum ēducta camīnīs
*moenia* cōnspiciō *atque* adversō fornice portās,
*haec ubi nōs* praecepta *jubent* dēpōnere *dōna.*"
*Dīxerat et* pariter gressī *per* opāca *viārum*
corripiunt spatium *medium* foribus*que* propinquant.
Occupat *Aenēās* aditum *corpusque* recentī
spargit aquā rāmum*que* adversō *in līmine* fīgit.
*Hīs* demum exāctīs, perfectō *mūnere dīvae,*
dēvēnēre *locōs laetōs et* amoena virecta
fortūnātōrum nemorum *sēdēsque* beātās.

**accelerō** (1) hasten, hurry, speed
**aditus, ūs** *m.* approach, entrance
**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**amoenus, a, um** pleasant, delightful
**aqua, ae** *f.* water, waves, flood*
**beātus, a, um** happy, blessed
**camīnus, ī** *m.* forge, furnace, chimney
**carpō, ere, psī, ptus** pluck, take, consume
**centum** hundred*
**compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** grasp, comprise
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at
**corripiō, ere, uī, reptus** snatch (up), hurry over*
**Cyclōps, ōpis** *m.* one of a race of one-eyed giants, workmen of Vulcan, the smithy god
**dēmum** at length, finally
**dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus** lay down, deposit
**dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** come down (to), reach
**ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead out, raise
**exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** drive out, perform
**ferreus, a, um** (of) iron
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, plant, fasten*
**foris, is** *f.* door, gate, entrance
**forma, ae** *f.* shape, form, beauty*
**fornix, icis** *m.* arch, vault†
**fortūnātus, a, um** blessed, happy
**gradior, ī, gressus** step, go, march
**lingua, ae** *f.* tongue, language
**longaevus, a, um** aged, old, long-lived
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**occupō** (1) seize (beforehand), gain, occupy
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy
**pariter** equally, side by side*
**percurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** run through, enumerate, recount, mention†
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** complete, finish, accomplish
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
**praeceptum, ī** *n.* instruction, order
**propinquō** (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**recēns, entis** recent, fresh, new
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**spatium, (i)ī** *n.* space, distance, place
**suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** undertake
**virectum, ī** *n.* greensward, meadow, turf†

**628–636. Aeneas and the Sibyl approach the palace of Dis, god of the lower world, and place the golden bough at the entrance.**

**629. mūnus:** the presentation of the golden bough to Proserpina.

**631. fornice:** abl. of quality.

**636. spargit:** as a rite of purification. **fīgit:** the golden bough is apparently a votive offering; hence Aeneas fastens it in some way at the entrance, just as he had hung up the shield of Abas at the entrance to the temple of Apollo (III, 286–287), and as Antenor had dedicated his arms in the temple at Patavium (I, 248–249).

**637–665. The region of the blessed with its beautiful meadows, more abundant atmosphere, and purple light. Here**

Largior *hīc campōs* aethēr *et lūmine* vestit
purpureō, sōlem*que suum, sua sīdera* nōrunt.
*Pars in* grāmineīs exercent membra palaestrīs,
contendunt lūdō *et* fulvā luctantur harēnā;
*pars pedibus* plaudunt choreās *et* carmina *dīcunt.*
*Nec nōn* Thrēicius *longā cum* veste sacerdōs
obloquitur numerīs septem discrīmina *vōcum,*
*jamque eadem* digitīs, *jam* pectine pulsat eburnō.
*Hīc genus antīquum* Teucrī, pulcherrima prōlēs,
magnanimī hērōes, nātī meliōribus annīs,
Īlus*que* Assaracus*que et Trojae* Dardanus auctor.
*Arma procul* currūs*que virum* mīrātur inānīs.
*Stant terrā* dēfīxae hastae passim*que* solūtī
*per campum* pascuntur *equī. Quae* grātia currum
*armōrumque fuit* vīvīs, *quae cūra* nitentīs

---

**aethēr, eris** *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season, time*
**Assaracus, ī** *m.* king of Phrygia, and grandfather of Anchises
**auctor, ōris** *m.* author, founder, sponsor
**carmen, inis** *n.* song, poem, chant
**chorea, ae** *f.* (round) dance, choral dance†
**contendō, ere, ī, ntus** strive, struggle
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**Dardanus, ī** *m.* ancestor of the Trojans
**dēfīgō, ere, xī, xus** fix, fasten (down)
**digitus, ī** *m.* finger, toe
**discrīmen, inis** *n.* distinction, interval
**eburnus, a, um** (of) ivory†
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** exercise, drive*
**fulvus, a, um** yellow, tawny, blond
**grāmineus, a, um** grassy, of grass
**grātia, ae** *f.* charm, liking, favor
**harēna, ae** *f.* sand, beach*
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear, lance, dart
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**Īlus, ī** *m.* founder and early king of Troy
**inānis, e** empty, unsubstantial, idle*
**largus, a, um** abundant, spacious
**luctor, ārī, ātus** wrestle, struggle
**lūdus, ī** *m.* sport, game, play, contest
**magnanimus, a, um** great-souled
**melior, ius** better, superior, preferable*
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder at, admire*
**nāscor, ī, nātus** be born, arise*
**nitēns, entis** shining, white, sleek
**nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus** learn; *perf.* know*
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, tune, measure*
**obloquor, ī, locūtus** (make) accompany, sing responsively†
**palaestra, ae** *f.* wrestling (place, bout)
**pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus** feed, graze
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**pecten, inis** *m.* comb, pick (for striking the strings of a lyre)†
**plaudō, ere, sī, sus** clap, strike, beat, dance
**prōlēs, is** *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, handsome, noble, splendid, illustrious*
**pulsō** (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
**purpureus, a, um** purple, crimson
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**septem** seven
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**solvō, ere, ī, solūtus** loose(n), free*
**Teucrus (cer), crī** *m.* early king of Troy
**Thrēicius, a, um** Thracian, of Thrace, a country northeast of Greece
**vestiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** clothe, cover†
**vestis, is** *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
**vīvus, a, um** living, alive, natural

---

**the souls of the righteous follow in complete freedom the pursuits to which they had devoted their lives while on earth.**

**641. suum, sua:** as contrasted with those of our world. **nō(vē)runt.**

**642–647.** Cf. *Paradise Lost,* 2, 528 ff.

**644. choreās:** cognate acc.

**645. Nec nōn:** *likewise.* **Thrēicius sacerdōs:** Orpheus.

**649. meliōribus annīs:** *in the good old days.*

**651.** (Aenēās) **mīrātur.**

**653. curr(u)um:** obj. gen. with **grātia,** *the delight in chariots.*

**654.** (eīs) **vīvīs:** (*while*) *alive;* dat. of possession; App. 299.

pascere *equōs, eadem sequitur tellūre* repostōs.
Cōnspicit, ecce, *aliōs dextrā* laevā*que per* herbam
vēscentīs *laetumque* chorō paeāna canentīs
*inter* odōrātum laurī nemus, unde supernē
*plūrimus* Ēridanī *per silvam volvitur* amnis.
*Hīc manus* ob patriam pugnandō vulnera passī,
*quīque* sacerdōtēs castī, *dum vīta manēbat,*
*quīque piī vātēs et* Phoebō digna locūtī,
inventās *aut quī vītam* excoluēre *per* artīs,
*quīque suī* memorēs *aliōs fēcēre* merendō:
*omnibus hīs* niveā cinguntur tempora vittā.
*Quōs* circumfūsōs *sīc est* adfāta Sibylla,
Mūsaeum *ante omnīs* (*medium nam plūrima* turba
*hunc habet atque umerīs* exstantem suspicit *altīs*):
"*Dīcite,* fēlīcēs *animae, tūque,* optime *vātēs,*

---

**adfor, ārī, ātus** address, speak to*
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, device, craft*
**canō, ere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of), chant*
**castus, a, um** pure, holy, chaste
**chorus, ī** *m.* (dancing) band, chorus
**cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus** encircle, gird(le)*
**circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour (scatter) around
**cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, behold
**dignus, a, um** deserving, worthy of (*abl.*)
**ecce** look! see! behold!*
**Ēridanus, ī** *m.* the river Po in northern Italy†
**excolō, ere, uī, cultus** cultivate, enrich†
**exstō, āre** stand out, tower above†
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, blessed*
**herba, ae** *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
**inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus** find, invent
**laevus, a, um** left (hand), on the left*
**laurus, ī (ūs)** *f.* laurel, a tree sacred to Apollo
**loquor, ī, locūtus** speak, say, talk, tell*
**memor, oris** mindful, remembering*
**mereō, ēre, uī, itus** deserve, earn, merit*
**Mūsaeus, ī** *m.* early Thracian bard†
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**niveus, a, um** snowy, white
**ob** on account of, for (*acc.*)
**odōrātus, a, um** scented, fragrant†
**optimus, a, um** best, finest
**paeān, ānis,** *acc.* **āna,** *m.* song of praise†
**pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus** feed, graze
**patior, ī, passus** suffer, endure, allow*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**Phoebus, ī** *m.* Apollo, god of light, poetry, music, and prophecy*
**pugnō** (1) fight, battle, struggle, oppose
**repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus** lay away, bury*
**sacerdōs, ōtis** *m.* (*f.*) priest(ess)*
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**supernē** (in the world) above†
**suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** look up (at)
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**turba, ae** *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
**unde** whence, from which source*
**vēscor, ī** feed, eat (*abl.*)
**vitta, ae** *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*
**vulnus, eris** *n.* wound, deadly blow*

---

**655.** repos(i)tōs.

**657.** chorō: abl. of manner. paeāna: acc. sing., a Greek form.

**658.** supernē: the Po (Eridanus) in its upper part flows some distance under ground, and was thus thought to have its source in Hades.

**660.** Hīc (est) manus (virōrum quī) passī (sunt): manus being used collectively ( = manus virōrum) is followed by the masc. pl., a construction according to the sense; App. 444.

**661.** et (eī) quī (erant) sacerdōtēs castī.

**662.** vātēs (erant), locūtī (erant).

**663.** vītam: of mankind in general.

**666–702. Aeneas and the Sibyl are guided by Musaeus to Anchises who receives his son with a great show of affection.**

**667.** plūrima turba: indicating his prominence.

*quae* regiō *Anchīsēn, quis habet locus? Illius* ergō
*vēnimus et magnōs* Erebī trānāvimus amnīs."
*Atque huic* respōnsum paucīs ita reddidit hērōs:
"*Nūllī* certa *domus;* lūcīs habitāmus opācīs,
rīpārum*que* torōs *et* prāta recentia rīvīs
incolimus. *Sed vōs, sī fert* ita corde voluntās,
*hoc* superāte jugum, *et* facilī *jam* trāmite sistam."
*Dīxit, et ante tulit* gressum *campōsque* nitentīs
dēsuper ostentat; dehinc *summa* cacūmina linquunt.
*At pater Anchīsēs* penitus convalle virentī
inclūsās *animās superumque ad lūmen itūrās*
lūstrābat studiō recolēns, *omnemque suōrum*
*forte* recēnsēbat numerum, cārōs*que* nepōtēs
*fātaque fortūnāsque virum* mōrēs*que manūsque.*
*Isque ubi tendentem* adversum *per* grāmina *vīdit*
*Aenēān,* alacris palmās utrāsque *tetendit,*

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**alacer (cris), cris, cre** eager, quick
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**cacūmen, inis** *n.* summit, peak, top
**cārus, a, um** dear, beloved, fond*
**certus, a, um** fixed, sure, trusty, certain*
**convallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale
**cor, rdis** *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
**dehinc** thence, from there
**dēsuper** from above
**Erebus, ī** *m.* Hades, (god of) the lower world
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently; on account of, for the sake of (*gen.*)
**facilis, e** easy, favorable, propitious
**grāmen, inis** *n.* grass, sward, meadow
**gressus, ūs** *m.* step, walk, gait, stride
**habitō** (1) inhabit, dwell, possess
**hērōs, ōis** *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
**inclūdō, ere, sī, sus** shut (up), inclose
**incolō, ere, uī** inhabit, dwell (in)†
**ita** thus, so, in this way
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**linquō, ere, līquī, lictus** leave, forsake*
**lūcus, ī** *m.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**lūstrō** (1) survey; traverse; purify*
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, character, manner*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**nitēns, entis** shining, bright
**numerus, ī** *m.* number, multitude*
**opācus, a, um** dark, shady, gloomy
**ostentō** (1) show (off), display, exhibit
**palma, ae** *f.* palm, hand*
**paucus, a, um** little, few, scanty*
**penitus** deep (within), deeply; wholly*
**prātum, ī** *n.* meadow, greensward†
**recēns, entis** recent, fresh, new
**recēnseō, ēre, uī, sus (situs)** review†
**recolō, ere, uī, cultus** survey, reflect (on), contemplate†
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give back, render*
**regiō, ōnis** *f.* district, region, tract
**respōnsum, ī** *n.* reply, answer
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**rīvus, ī** *m.* stream, rivulet
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** set, place
**studium, (i)ī** *n.* desire, zeal, pursuit
**superō** (1) surmount, overcome, pass over*
**torus, ī** *m.* (banqueting) couch*
**trāmes, itis** *m.* path, way
**trānō** (1) swim, voyage across
**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each (of two), both*
**virēns, entis** green, flourishing
**voluntās, ātis** *f.* desire, purpose

**672. paucīs (dictīs).**

**674. rīpārum:** (*the couches*) *formed by the banks;* appositional genitive.

**675. sī fert ita corde voluntās:** *if your heart thus inclines.*

**678. dehinc:** one syllable here by synizesis. **(Aenēās et Sibylla) linquunt summa cacūmina.**

**681. suōrum:** *of his* (*own*) *people.*

**683. manūs:** *deeds* (of valor in war). Observe Vergil's fondness for **-que,** which he employs four times in this line and seven times in this sentence; App. 439.

effūsaeque genīs *lacrimae et vōx* excidit *ōre:*
"*Vēnistī tandem, tuaque* exspectāta *parentī*
*vīcit* iter dūrum pietās? *Datur ōra* tuērī,
*nāte, tua et* nōtās *audīre et* reddere *vōcēs?*
*Sīc* equidem *dūcēbam animō* rēbar*que futūrum*
*tempora* dīnumerāns, *nec mē mea cūra* fefellit.
*Quās ego tē terrās et* quanta *per aequora* vectum
*accipiō!* Quantīs jactātum, *nāte,* perīclīs!
Quam metuī *nē quid* Libyae *tibi rēgna* nocērent!"
*Ille* autem: "*Tua me, genitor, tua trīstis* imāgō
saepius occurrēns *haec līmina tendere* adēgit;
*stant* sale Tyrrhēnō *classēs. Dā* jungere *dextram,*
*dā, genitor, tēque* amplexū *nē* subtrahe *nostrō.*"
*Sīc* memorāns largō flētū *simul ōra* rigābat.
Ter cōnātus ibī collō *dare* bracchia *circum;*
ter frūstrā comprēnsa *manūs* effūgit imāgō,
pār levibus *ventīs* volucrī*que* simillima *somnō.*
Intereā *videt Aenēās in* valle reductā

---

**adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus** drive to, force
**amplexus, ūs** *m.* embrace, fold, grasp
**autem** moreover, however, but*
**bracchium, (i)ī** *n.* arm, forearm*
**collum, ī** *n.* neck*
**compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus** seize, grasp
**cōnor, ārī, ātus** attempt, try, endeavor
**dīnumerō** (1) count, number, compute†
**dūrus, a, um** hard(y), harsh, stern*
**effugiō, ere, fūgī** flee, escape
**effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour out, utter*
**equidem** indeed, surely, truly*
**excidō, ere, ī** fall from, drop
**exspectō** (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus** deceive, disappoint*
**flētus, ūs** *m.* weeping, tears, lament
**frūstrā** in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
**gena, ae** *f.* cheek
**ibī** there, then
**imāgō, inis** *f.* likeness, phantom, shade*
**intereā** meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
**iter, itineris** *n.* way, road, journey*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, hurl, cast, fling*
**jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus** join, unite*
**largus, a, um** abundant, large, copious
**levis, e** light, unsubstantial, swift
**Libya, ae** *f.* country of northern Africa; Carthage*
**memorō** (1) (re)call, recount, say*
**metuō, ere, uī** fear, dread, be anxious
**noceō, ēre, uī, itus** harm, hurt (*dat.*)
**nōtus, a, um** (well) known, familiar*
**occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus** (run to) meet (*dat.*)
**pār, paris** equal, like, similar (*dat.*)*
**perīc(u)lum, ī** *n.* danger, peril, risk
**pietās, ātis** *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
**quam** how, than, as*
**quantus, a, um** how (great, much, many), as*
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give (back), answer*
**redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead back, retire, seclude
**reor, rērī, ratus** think, suppose, reckon
**rigō** (1) wet, water, bedew, moisten†
**saepe** often, frequently*
**sal, salis** *m.* (*n.*) salt, brine; sea
**similis, e** like, similar (*dat.*)*
**subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus** withdraw
**ter** thrice, three times*
**tueor, ērī, itus** (tūtus) look (at), watch*
**Tyrrhēnus, a, um** Etruscan, of Etruria in northern Italy
**vallis, is** *f.* valley, vale, dale
**vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** convey, bear*
**volucer, cris, cre** winged, fleet*

---

**687.** parentī (tuō) = mihi: dat. of agent.
**690.** futūrum (esse).
**692.** (per) terrās.
**696.** (ad) haec līmina.

**700–702.** Repeated from II, 792–794. somnō = somniō: *dream.*

**703–751. Anchises tells Aeneas how individual souls originate as parts of**

sēclūsum nemus *et* virgulta sonantia *silvae,*
Lēthaeum*que domōs* placidās *quī* praenatat amnem.
*Hunc circum* innumerae *gentēs* populī*que* volābant,
*ac* velut *in* prātīs *ubi* apēs aestāte serēnā
flōribus īnsīdunt variīs *et* candida *circum*
līlia *funduntur,* strepit *omnis* murmure *campus.*
Horrēscit vīsū subitō causās*que* requīrit
īnscius *Aenēās, quae sint ea* flūmina porrō,
*quīve virī tantō* complērint *agmine* rīpās.
*Tum pater Anchīsēs: "Animae, quibus* altera *fātō*
*corpora* dēbentur, Lēthaeī *ad* flūminis *undam*
sēcūrōs laticēs *et longa* oblīvia pōtant.
*Hās* equidem memorāre *tibi atque* ostendere cōram,
jamprīdem *hanc* prōlem cupiō ēnumerāre *meōrum,*
*quō* magis *Ītaliā mēcum* laetēre repertā."
"*Ō pater,* anne aliquās *ad caelum hinc īre* putandum *est*
sublīmīs *animās* iterum*que ad* tarda revertī

**aestās, ātis** *f.* summer (time)
**aliquis, qua, quid** some(one), any(one)*
**alter, era, erum** other (of two), second*
**amnis, is** *m.* river, stream*
**an(ne)** *interrog.* whether, or†
**apis, is** *f.* bee
**candidus, a, um** white, shining
**causa, ae** *f.* reason, cause, occasion*
**compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus** fill, complete
**cōram** face to face, before the face
**cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** wish, desire
**dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus** owe, be due, ought
**ēnumerō** (1) enumerate, count (off)
**equidem** indeed, surely, truly*
**flōs, ōris** *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
**flūmen, inis** *n.* river, stream, flood*
**horrēscō, ere, horruī** shudder, tremble
**innumerus, a, um** countless†
**īnscius, a, um** ignorant, unaware
**īnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus** sit (down, on), settle (*dat.*)
**iterum** again, anew, a second time*
**jamprīdem** long since, for a long time
**laetor, ārī, ātus** rejoice, exult, delight
**latex, icis** *m.* liquid, water, wine
**Lēthaeus, a, um** of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in Hades
**līlium, (i)ī** *n.* lily†
**magis** more, rather*
**memorō** (1) recount, recall, mention*
**murmur, uris** *n.* murmur, buzz, roar
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**oblīvium, (i)ī** *n.* forgetfulness, oblivion†
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, display*
**placidus, a, um** calm, peaceful, quiet*
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**porrō** further, yonder, afar (off)
**pōtō** (1) drink (of), quaff†
**praenatō** (1) flow past, glide by†
**prātum, ī** *n.* meadow, greensward
**prōlēs, is** *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
**putō** (1) think, suppose, consider
**reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus** find
**requīrō, ere, sīvī, sītus** seek, inquire
**revertor, ī, rsus** return, revert
**rīpa, ae** *f.* bank, shore*
**sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus** shut off, seclude
**sēcūrus, a, um** free(ing) from care
**serēnus, a, um** clear, calm, serene
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**strepō, ere, uī, itus** hum, sound, rattle†
**subitus, a, um** sudden, unexpected
**sublīmis, e** lofty, aloft, on high
**tardus, a, um** slow, sluggish, late
**varius, a, um** various, variegated*
**velut(ī)** as, just as*
**virgultum, ī** *n.* thicket, bush, copse
**vīsus, ūs** *m.* sight, vision, view
**volō** (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

**the great world-soul, how they unite with earthly bodies, how they are purified after death from the stains of the body, and how they return to the upper world and enter new bodies.**

**712.** complē(ve)rint.

**717.** meōrum: of my descendants.

**718.** quō laetēre ( = laetēris): rel. clause of purpose; App. 204. 4; 388.

**719.** ad caelum: *to the upper air,* i.e., to the world of living men.

*corpora? Quae lūcis miserīs* tam dīra cupīdō?"
"*Dīcam* equidem *nec tē* suspēnsum, *nāte, tenēbō,*"
suscipit *Anchīsēs atque* ordine singula pandit.
"Principiō *caelum ac terram campōsque* liquentīs
lūcentem*que* globum lūnae Tītāni*aque* astra
spīritus intus alit, *tōtamque* īnfūsa *per* artūs
*mēns* agitat mōlem *et magnō sē corpore* miscet.
Inde hominum pecudum*que genus vītaeque* volantum
*et quae* marmoreō *fert* mōnstra *sub aequore* pontus.
Igneus *est ollīs* vigor *et* caelestis orīgō
sēminibus, quantum *nōn corpora* noxia tardant
terrēnī*que* hebetant artūs moribunda*que* membra.
*Hinc* metuunt cupiunt*que*, dolent gaudent*que, neque aurās*

---

**agitō** (1) move, drive, harass, agitate
**alō, ere, uī, (i)tus**, nourish, feed, rear
**artus, ūs** *m.* joint, member, limb, body*
**astrum, ī** *n.* star, sun, constellation*
**caelestis, e** heavenly, celestial, divine
**cupīdō, inis** *f.* desire, love, passion
**cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus** desire, wish
**dīrus, a, um** terrible, dire, wild*
**doleō, ēre, uī, itus** grieve, suffer, resent
**equidem** indeed, truly, surely*
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**globus, ī** *m.* globe, sphere, orb
**hebetō** (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken
**homō, inis** *m.* (*f.*) man, human, mortal*
**igneus, a, um** fiery, flaming
**inde** thence, from that source*
**īnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus** pour (on, in), infuse
**intus** within, inside
**liquēns, entis** clear, bright, liquid
**lūceō, ēre, lūxī** shine, gleam, beam
**lūna, ae** *f.* moon, moonlight*
**marmoreus, a, um** (of) marble, shining
**membrum, ī** *n.* member, limb, body*
**metuō, ere, uī** fear, dread, be anxious
**misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** mix, mingle*
**mōlēs, is** *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
**mōnstrum, ī** *n.* monster, prodigy, omen*
**moribundus, a, um** dying, ready to die
**noxius, a, um** harmful, hurtful†
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, rank, array, row*
**orīgō, inis** *f.* origin, source, beginning
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, disclose*
**pecus, udis** *f.* animal (of the flock)*
**pontus, ī** *m.* sea, waves*
**principiō** first(ly), in the first place
**quantus, a, um** how great, how much, how many, as*
**sēmen, inis** *n.* seed, germ, element
**singulī, ae, a** separate, each, one by one
**spīritus, ūs** *m.* breath, air, spirit, soul
**suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** undertake, resume
**suspēnsus, a, um** uncertain, anxious
**tam** so (much), so great(ly), such*
**tardō** (1) hinder, clog, impede, retard
**terrēnus, a, um** earthy, earthen†
**Tītānius, a, um** of the Titans, great giants who rebelled against the gods; **Tītānia astra** the sun (god), son of the Titan Hyperion
**vigor, ōris** *m.* force, vigor, life, energy†
**volāns, antis** *m.* (*f.*), bird, fowl, flying thing

---

**724. campōs liquentīs** = **mare.**

**724–751.** This whole passage has many difficulties and much of it is far from clear, possibly due at least partially to the unfinished condition of the poem; Introd. 5.

**725–727. Tītānia astra** = *the sun* (god), a descendant of a Titan. **artūs**: the universe is here conceived as an organism, filled with a vital force (**anima mundī**), the source of all life, thought, and motion. **tōtam mōlem, magnō corpore**: refer to the whole universe.

**728. volant(i)um.**

**731. sēminibus**: *germs*, i.e., *souls;* dat. of possession. **quantum**: *so far as harmful mortal bodies do not hinder* (these souls). Cf. Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*, V, 1, 64–65:

"But whilst this muddy vesture of decay
Doth grossly close it in."

**733. Hinc**: from the debasing influence of the body. (**animae**) **metuunt. aurās** = **caelum.**

dispiciunt clausae tenebrīs *et* carcere caecō.
Quīn *et suprēmō cum lūmine vīta relīquit,*
*nōn* tamen *omne* malum *miserīs nec* funditus *omnēs*
corporeae excēdunt pestēs, penitus*que* necesse *est*
*multa* diū concrēta modīs inolēscere mīrīs.
Ergō exercentur *poenīs* veterum*que* malōrum
supplicia expendunt: *aliae* panduntur inānēs
suspēnsae *ad ventōs, aliīs sub* gurgite *vastō*
īnfectum ēluitur scelus *aut* exūritur *ignī* —
quisque *suōs* patimur mānīs; exinde *per* amplum
*mittimur* Ēlysium *et* paucī *laeta arva tenēmus* —
dōnec *longa diēs* perfectō *temporis* orbe
concrētam exēmit lābem, pūrum*que relinquit*
aetherium sēnsum *atque aurāī* simplicis *ignem.*
*Hās omnīs, ubi* mīlle rotam *volvēre per* annōs,

**aetherius, a, um** ethereal, heavenly
**amplus, a, um** wide, spacious, ample
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season, time*
**caecus, a, um** blind, dark, hidden*
**carcer, eris** *m.* prison, inclosure, barrier
**claudō, ere, sī, sus** shut (in), confine*
**concrēscō, ere, crēvī, crētus** grow (with, in), ingrain
**corporeus, a, um** of the body, corporeal†
**dispiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, discern
**diū** (for) a long time
**dōnec** until, while, as long as
**ēluō, ere, uī, ūtus** wash out†
**Ēlysium, (i)ī** *n.* abode of the blessed in Hades
**ergō** therefore, then, consequently*
**excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus** withdraw, depart
**exerceō, ēre, uī, itus** drive, torment*
**eximō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus** remove, destroy
**exinde** thence, next†
**expendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** pay, suffer
**exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus** burn out, consume
**funditus** completely, entirely, utterly†
**gurges, itis** *m.* whirl(pool, wind), water*
**inānis, e** empty, shadowy, spectral, vain*
**inficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** dye, work in
**inolēscō, ere, lēvī, litus** grow in, become ingrained†
**lābēs, is** *f.* spot, stain, blemish; ruin
**malum, ī** *n.* evil, sin, misfortune, trouble*
**mānēs, ium** *m.* spirit, soul, character; (lot in) Hades*
**mīlle**; *pl.* **mīlia, ium** *n.* thousand*
**mīrus, a, um** wonderful, marvelous
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, measure, limit*
**necesse** *indecl.* necessary; necessity
**orbis, is** *m.* circle, cycle, orb(it), earth*
**pandō, ere, ī, passus** open, spread out*
**patior, ī, passus** endure, suffer, allow*
**paucus, a, um** little, few, scanty, slight*
**penitus** deeply, (deep) within; wholly*
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** finish, complete
**pestis, is** *f.* plague, scourge, infection, curse
**pūrus, a, um** clean, pure, clear; unpointed
**quīn** (but) that, nay even, why not*
**quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)** each (one), every (one)
**rota, ae** *f.* wheel, cycle
**scelus, eris** *n.* crime, sin, guilt*
**sēnsus, ūs** *m.* feeling, sense, perception
**simplex, icis** simple, unmixed†
**supplicium, (i)ī** *n.* suffering, punishment
**suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** hang up*
**tamen** nevertheless, however, but*
**tenebrae, ārum** *f.* darkness, gloom
**vetus, eris** old, aged, ancient, former*

**734. tenebrīs et carcere caecō:** i.e., *in the body.*

**735. lūmine suprēmō:** *at the last day.*

**736.** (eīs) **miserīs:** dat. of separation.

**737. corporeae pestēs:** *the plagues caused by the body to the soul.*

**740. inānēs (animae):** *unsubstantial* (*souls*).

**743. quisque suōs patimur mānīs:** *each of us endures his own spirit;* each one suffers according to his character (**mānēs**).

**744. paucī nōs = paucī nostrōrum.**

**745. longa diēs = longum tempus. perfectō temporis orbe:** a thousand years, as we see in l. 748.

**747. aurāī:** trisyllabic; an old form of the gen. sing.; App. 34, *b.*

**748. rotam (temporis). volvēre = volvērunt.**

Lēthaeum *ad* fluvium *deus* ēvocat *agmine magnō*,
scīlicet immemorēs *supera ut* convexa revīsant
rūrsus, *et* incipiant *in corpora velle* revertī."
*Dīxerat Anchīsēs nātumque* ūnā*que* Sibyllam
conventūs *trahit in mediōs* turba*mque* sonantem,
*et* tumulum *capit* unde *omnīs longō* ordine *posset*
adversōs legere *et venientum* discere vultūs.
"*Nunc age*, Dardaniam prōlem *quae* deinde *sequātur*
glōria, *quī maneant* Italā *dē gente* nepōtēs,
inlūstrīs *animās nostrumque in nōmen itūrās*,
expediam *dictīs*, *et tē tua fāta* docēbō.
*Ille, vidēs*, pūrā juvenis *quī* nītitur hastā,
proxima sorte *tenet lūcis loca*, *prīmus ad aurās*
aetheriās Italō commixtus *sanguine surget*,
Silvius, Albānum *nōmen*, *tua* postuma prōlēs,
*quem tibi* longaevō sērum Lāvīnia *conjūnx*

---

**adversus, a, um** opposite, facing*
**aetherius, a, um** ethereal, heavenly
**Albānus, a, um** of Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome
**commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus** (com)mingle, mix
**conventus, ūs** *m.* assembly, gathering†
**convexum, ī** *n.* hollow, vault (of heaven)
**Dardanius, a, um** Dardanian, Trojan*
**deinde** next, thence, thereupon*
**discō, ere, didicī** learn, recognize
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach, tell, show*
**ēvocō** (1) summon, call forth, evoke
**expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus** extricate, unfold, set forth
**fluvius, (i)ī** *m.* river, stream
**glōria, ae** *f.* glory, renown, reputation
**hasta, ae** *f.* spear, lance, dart
**immemor, oris** forgetful, unmindful
**incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** begin, undertake*
**inlūstris, e** famous, glorious†
**Italus, a, um** Italian, of Italy
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**Lāvīnia, ae** *f.* Italian princess, second wife of Aeneas†
**legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus** gather, choose, scan*
**Lēthaeus, a, um** of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness
**longaevus, a, um** aged, old, long-lived
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**nītor, ī, sus (nixus)** lean (on) (*abl.*)
**ordō, inis** *m.* order, row, rank, array*
**postumus, a, um** latest-born, last
**prōlēs, is** *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
**proximus, a, um** nearest, closest, next
**pūrus, a, um** clean, pure, clear; unpointed
**revertor, ī, rsus** return, revert
**revīsō, ere** revisit, see again
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**scīlicet** of course, forsooth, doubtless
**sērus, a, um** (too) late, tardy
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**Silvius, (i)ī** *m.* son of Aeneas and Lavinia, king of Alba Longa†
**sonō, āre, uī, itus** (re)sound, roar*
**sors, rtis** *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**turba, ae** *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**unde** whence, from which source*
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

**750. immemorēs:** *forgetful* of the past, due to drinking of the waters of Lethe.

**752–805. Anchises leads Aeneas to a height whence they pass in review their descendants yet unborn, the Alban and the Roman kings, and especially Augustus Caesar, associated with Romulus as the second founder of the Roman state.**

**754. posset:** rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

**756. deinde:** two syllables here by synizesis.

**760. pūrā hastā:** a spear without the iron head, awarded for distinguished conduct in battle.

**761. proxima loca:** i.e., he will be born next.

**762. Italō commixtus sanguine:** since

ēdūcet *silvīs rēgem rēgumque parentem,*
unde *genus* Longā *nostrum* dominābitur Albā.
Proximus *ille* Procās, Trojānae glōria *gentis,*
*et* Capys *et* Numitor *et quī tē nōmine* reddet
Silvius Aenēās, pariter pietāte *vel armīs*
ēgregius, *sī* umquam rēgnandam *accēperit* Albam.
*Quī* juvenēs! Quantās ostentant, aspice, *vīrīs*
*atque* umbrāta gerunt cīvīlī tempora quercū!
*Hī tibi* Nōmentum *et* Gabiōs *urbemque* Fidēnam,
*hī* Collātīnās impōnent *montibus arcēs,*
Pōmetiōs Castrum*que* Inuī Bōlam*que* Coram*que.*
*Haec tum nōmina erunt, nunc sunt* sine *nōmine terrae.*
Quīn *et* avō *comitem sēsē* Māvortius addet

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add, place beside*
**Aeneās, ae** *see* **Silvius**†
**Alba, ae** *f.* Alba Longa, mother city of Rome
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look upon
**avus, ī** *m.* grandfather; ancestor
**Bōla, ae** *f.* Italian city†
**Capys, yos** *m.* king of Alba Longa†
**Castrum, ī** *n.* Castle, Fort; **Castrum Inuī,** Italian city†*
**cīvīlis, e** civic, civil, of a citizen†
**Collātīnus, a, um** of Collatia, a city near Rome†
**Cora, ae** *f.* Italian city†
**dominor, ārī, ātus** rule, dominate, master
**ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead out, raise, bear
**ēgregius, a, um** remarkable, distinguished
**Fidēna, ae** *f.* Italian city†
**Gabiī, ōrum** *m.* Italian city†
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** carry (on), wear*
**glōria, ae** *f.* fame, glory, reputation
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place on (*dat.*)*
**Inuus, ī** *m.* god of cattle†
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**Longa, ae** *see* **Alba**
**Māvortius, a, um** of Mars, god of war
**Nomentum, ī** *n.* Italian city†
**Numitor, ōris** *m.* king of Alba Longa†
**ostentō** (1) show (off), display, parade, exhibit
**pariter** equally, side by side*
**pietās, ātis** *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
**Pōmetiī, ōrum** *m.* Italian city†
**Procās, ae** *m.* king of Alba Longa†
**proximus, a, um** next, closest, nearest
**quantus, a, um** how (great, much, many), as*
**quercus, ūs** *f.* oak
**quīn** (but) that, nay even, why not*
**reddō, ere, didī, ditus** give back, recall, repeat*
**rēgnō** (1) rule (as king), reign, govern
**Silvius, (i)ī** *m.* Silvius Aeneas, king of Alba Longa
**sine** without (*abl.*)*
**tempus, oris** *n.* temple, brow
**Trojānus, a, um** Trojan, of Troy*
**umbrō** (1) shade, shadow, darken
**umquam** ever, at any time
**unde** whence, from which source*

---

he was to be the son of Aeneas, a Trojan, and of Lavinia, an Italian.

**765.** (in) **silvīs:** Livy says of him **cāsū quōdam** (*some*) **in silvīs nātus.**

**768. Numitor:** with the final syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, *a.*

**770. umquam:** according to tradition his guardian kept him from the royal power for fifty years.

**772. cīvīlī quercū:** usually called **corōna cīvica,** a wreath of oak leaves granted to those who had saved the life of a Roman citizen in battle. The Senate decreed that such a crown should always hang before the doors of Augustus, and the poet may have this in mind here.

**773. Hī** (**condent**).

**777. avō:** Numitor. **addet:** *will join him* (in the world of living men).

Rōmulus, Assaracī *quem sanguinis* Īlia *māter*
ēdūcet. *Viden, ut geminae stant* vertice cristae
780 *et pater ipse suō superum jam* signat *honōre?*
Ēn *hujus, nāte,* auspiciīs *illa* incluta Rōma
*imperium terrīs, animōs* aequābit Olympō,
septem*que ūna sibī* mūrō circumdabit *arcēs,*
fēlīx prōle *virum:* quālis Berecyntia *māter*
785 invehitur currū Phrygiās turrīta *per urbēs*
*laeta deum* partū, centum complexa nepōtēs,
*omnīs* caelicolās, *omnīs supera* alta *tenentīs.*
*Hūc geminās nunc* flecte aciēs, *hanc* aspice *gentem*
Rōmānōs*que tuōs. Hīc* Caesar *et omnis* Iūlī
790 prōgeniēs *magnum caelī ventūra sub* axem.
*Hic vir, hic est, tibi quem* prōmittī saepius *audīs,*

---

**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge; line; vision, eye*
**aequō** (1) equal(ize), make equal, even*
**altum, ī** *n.* the deep; the height, heaven
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at*
**Assaracus, ī** *m.* Phrygian king, grandfather of Anchises
**auspicium,** (i)ī *n.* auspices, authority
**axis, is** *m.* axis, axle, wheel; vault
**Berecyntius, a, um** of Berecyntus, a mountain in Phrygia, center of the worship of Cybele, mother of the gods†
**caelicola, ae** *m.* (*f.*) god(dess), divinity
**Caesar, aris** *m.* great Roman statesman and general
**centum** hundred*
**circumdō, dare, dedī, datus** surround
**complector, ī, plexus** embrace, enfold
**crista, ae** *f.* crest, plume
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus** lead out, raise, bear
**ēn** see! look! behold!
**fēlīx, īcis** happy, blessed, fruitful*
**flectō, ere, xī, xus** bend, turn; guide
**Īlia, ae** *f.* a vestal virgin, mother of Romulus and Remus by the god Mars
**inclutus, a, um** famous, renowned
**invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus** convey, bear
**Iūlus, ī** *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
**mūrus, ī** *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson, descendant*
**Olympus, ī** *m.* high Greek mountain, home of the gods; heaven
**partus, ūs** *m.* birth, offspring
**Phrygius, a, um** of Phrygia, a country of Asia Minor*
**prōgeniēs, ēī** *f.* offspring, race, progeny
**prōlēs, is** *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
**prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** promise*
**quālis, e** of what sort, as*
**Rōma, ae** *f.* Rome, a city and empire
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**Rōmulus, ī** *m.* son of Mars and the vestal virgin Ilia, legendary founder of Rome
**saepe, ius, issimē** often, frequently*
**septem** seven
**signō** (1) mark, distinguish, observe
**turrītus, a, um** crowned with towers, turreted
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, head, summit, peak*

---

**779. Viden** = vidēsne.

**780. pater:** Mars. **suō honōre:** i.e., the double-crested helmet (**geminae cristae**), which was a characteristic of Mars. (**eum**) **superum:** acc. sing., *marks him (as) a god.*

**781. hujus auspiciīs:** *under his auspices,* referring to the famous omen of the twelve vultures which Romulus saw, while Remus saw only six.

**783. sibī:** dat. of reference.

**784. Berecyntia māter:** Cybele, mother of the gods, usually represented as driving a chariot drawn by lions and as wearing on her head a crown with decorations representing the towers of a city wall, thus symbolizing the earth and its cities.

**788. aciēs** = oculōs.

**789. Caesar:** Julius (or possibly Augustus).

**791. hic:** irregularly short; App. 107, 3, *c.*

Augustus Caesar, *dīvī genus,* aurea condet
saecula *quī* rūrsus Latiō rēgnata *per arva*
Sāturnō *quondam, super et* Garamantas *et* Indōs
prōferet *imperium;* jacet extrā *sīdera tellūs,*
extrā annī sōlis*que viās, ubi* caelifer Atlās
axem *umerō* torquet stēllīs *ardentibus* aptum.
*Hujus in* adventum *jam nunc et* Caspia *rēgna*
respōnsīs horrent *dīvum et* Maeōtia *tellūs,*
*et* septemgeminī turbant trepida ōstia Nīlī.
*Nec* vērō Alcīdēs *tantum tellūris* obīvit,
fīxerit aeripedem cervam licet, *aut* Erymanthī
pācārit nemora *et* Lernam tremefēcerit arcū;

---

**adventus, ūs** *m.* approach, arrival
**aeripēs, edis** bronze-hoofed†
**Alcīdēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Alceus, Hercules, god of strength who wandered over the whole world in performing his famous twelve labors, among which was the killing of the bronze-footed Arcadian deer, of the Erymanthian boar, and of the Lernaean hydra
**annus, ī** *m.* year, season, time*
**aptus, a, um** fitted, studded, furnished
**arcus, ūs** *m.* bow, arch, arc*
**Atlās, antis** *m.* god who supported the heavens on his shoulders; mountain of northwestern Africa
**Augustus, ī** *m.* great Roman statesman†
**aureus, a, um** golden, (of) gold*
**axis, is** *m.* axle, axis, wheel; vault
**caelifer, era, erum** heaven-supporting†
**Caesar, aris** *m.* great Roman statesman†
**Caspius, a, um** of the Caspian Sea in Asia†
**cerva, ae** *f.* deer, doe
**condō, ere, didī, ditus** found, establish*
**Erymanthus, ī** *m.* mountain range of Arcadia where Hercules killed the famous wild boar
**extrā** beyond, outside (of) (*acc.*)
**fīgō, ere, xī, xus** (trans)fix, pierce, fasten*
**Garamantes, um** *m.* African tribe†
**horreō, ēre, uī** bristle, shudder, quake*
**Indī, ōrum** *m.* inhabitants of India†
**jaceō, ēre, uī, itus** lie (low, outspread)*
**Latium, (i)ī** *n.* district around Rome*
**Lerna, ae** *f.* marsh near Argos where Hercules killed the famous hydra, a monster with seven (fifty) serpent heads
**licet, ēre, uit, itum** it is permitted*
**Maeōtius, a, um** of Lake Maeotia, the Sea of Azov†
**nemus, oris** *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
**Nīlus, ī** *m.* the great river of Egypt†
**obeō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** pass over, die
**ōstium, (i)ī** *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
**pācō** (1) pacify, tame, quiet, calm†
**prōferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** advance, extend†
**rēgnō** (1) rule (as king), reign, govern
**respōnsum, ī** *n.* answer, oracle, response
**rūrsus, um** again, anew, back(ward)*
**saeculum, ī** *n.* age, generation
**Sāturnus, ī** *m.* early Italian god who ruled during the Golden Age†
**septemgeminus, a, um** sevenfold†
**sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun; day*
**stēlla, ae** *f.* star, constellation
**torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus** twist, turn, whirl*
**tremefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus** make tremble
**trepidus, a, um** agitated, fluttered
**turbō** (1) confuse, perplex, be alarmed*
**vērō** truly, verily, indeed, but

---

**792. dīvī genus:** *son of the deified* (Julius Caesar).

**793. (in) Latiō.**

**794. Sāturnō:** dat. of agent; Saturn was ruler of heaven and earth in the Golden Age; after his dethronement he came to Italy.

**795. sīdera:** the zodiac, which denotes the course of the sun.

**796. annī sōlisque viās:** *the yearly course of the sun.*

**800. septemgeminī:** the Nile divides into a number of streams near its mouth, forming a delta.

**802–803. licet fīxerit, pācā(ve)rit, tremefēcerit:** concessive; App.384. **cervam:** the third labor of Hercules was to capture the bronze-footed deer of Ceryneia in

*nec quī* pampineīs *victor* juga flectit habēnīs
Līber, *agēns* celsō Nȳsae *dē* vertice tigrīs.
*Et* dubitāmus adhūc virtūtem extendere factīs,
*aut* metus Ausoniā prohibet cōnsistere *terrā?*
*Quis procul ille* autem rāmīs īnsignis olīvae
*sacra ferēns?* Nōscō crīnīs incāna*que* menta
*rēgis* Rōmānī *prīmam quī* lēgibus *urbem*
fundābit Curibus parvīs *et* paupere *terrā*,
*missus in imperium magnum. Cui* deinde *subībit*
ōtia *quī* rumpet patriae residēs*que movēbit*
Tullus *in arma virōs et jam* dēsuēta triumphīs
*agmina. Quem* juxtā *sequitur* jactantior Ancus
*nunc* quoque *jam* nimium gaudēns populāribus *aurīs.*
*Vīs et* Tarquiniōs *rēgēs animamque* superbam

---

**adhūc** still, yet, hitherto
**Ancus, ī** *m.* fourth king of Rome, pictured by Vergil as a demagogue†
**Ausonius, a, um** Ausonian, Italian
**autem** however, moreover, but*
**celsus, a, um** high, lofty, towering*
**cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus** stand (fast)*
**crīnis, is** *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
**Curēs, ium** *m.* Italian city, home of Numa, lawgiver and second king of Rome†
**deinde** then, thence, next, thereupon*
**dēsuētus, a, um** unaccustomed, dormant
**dubitō** (1) doubt, hesitate, waver
**extendō, ere, ī, ntus** extend, stretch out
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
**flectō, ere, xī, xus** bend, turn; guide
**fundō** (1) found, establish, base
**gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum** rejoice, exult
**habēna, ae** *f.* rein, curb, check
**incānus, a, um** hoary, gray, white†
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked*
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, boast, vaunt*
**jugum, ī** *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
**juxtā** next, close to (*acc.*)*
**lēx, lēgis** *f.* law, decree, regulation
**Līber, erī** *m.* Bacchus, god of wine, who drove his chariot drawn by tigers (or panthers) all over the world†
**mentum, ī** *n.* chin; beard, whiskers
**metus, ūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
**nimium** too (much, greatly)
**nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus** learn, recognize; *perf.* know*
**Nȳsa, ae** *f.* mountain of India, fabled birthplace of Bacchus†
**olīva, ae** *f.* olive
**ōtium, (i)ī** *n.* repose, peace, leisure
**pampineus, a, um** of vine (leaves, tendrils)†
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**pauper, eris** poor, needy, lowly
**populāris, e** popular, of the people†
**prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus** prevent, prohibit
**quoque** also, in addition, too, likewise*
**rāmus, ī** *m.* branch, limb, bough*
**reses, idis** inactive, sluggish, dormant
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**Tarquinius, (i)ī** *m.* Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth, and Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and last king of Rome†
**tigris, (id)is** *m.* (*f.*) tiger, tigress
**triumphus, ī** *m.* triumph, victory
**Tullus, ī** *m.* a great warrior, third king of Rome†
**vertex, icis** *m.* top, peak, summit, head*
**virtūs, ūtis** *f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

---

Arcadia. He wounded it and then caught it. **pācā(ve)rit:** *gave peace to*, by killing the wild boar.

**806–846. Aeneas is shown others of his descendants, among whom Caesar and Pompey attract special attention.**

**808. rāmīs olīvae:** a priest when sacrificing often wore a wreath of olive. **ille:** Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

**809. menta:** poetic plural; App. 243.

**810. rēgis:** Numa, legendary founder of most of the early Roman laws and religious ceremonies.

**816. populāribus aurīs:** *the breezes of popular favor.*

**817. Vīs:** from volō.

ultōris Brūtī, fascīs*que vidēre* receptōs?
Cōnsulis *imperium hic prīmus* saevās*que* secūrīs
*accipiet, nātōsque pater nova bella moventīs*
*ad poenam* pulchrā prō lībertāte *vocābit.*
*Īnfēlīx!* Utcumque *ferent ea* facta minōrēs:
*vincet amor* patriae laudum*que* immēnsa cupīdō.
Quīn Deciōs Drūsōs*que procul* saevum*que* secūrī
aspice Torquātum *et referentem* signa Camillum.
*Illae* autem paribus *quās* fulgere *cernis in armīs,*
concordēs *animae nunc et dum nocte* premuntur,
*heu* quantum *inter sē bellum, sī lūmina vītae*
attigerint, quantās aciēs strāgem*que* ciēbunt,
aggeribus socer Alpīnīs *atque arce* Monoecī

**aciēs, ēī** *f.* edge; battle(-line); view*
**agger, eris** *m.* mound, barrier, rampart
**Alpīnus, a, um** Alpine, of the Alps
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at*
**attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus** touch, attain
**autem** however, moreover, but*
**Brūtus, ī** *m.* expeller of the Tarquins and first consul at Rome, who executed his own sons for attempted rebellion†
**Camillus, ī** *m.* conqueror of the Gauls who had captured Rome in 390 B.C.†
**cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus** stir (up), arouse*
**concors, rdis** harmonious, concordant
**cōnsul, ulis** *m.* one of the two chief magistrates annually appointed at Rome†
**cupīdō, inis** *f.* desire, love, longing
**Decius, (i)ī** *m.* name of two heroic consuls who devoted themselves in battle in the Latin and Gallic wars†
**Drūsus, ī** *m.* (1) one of the consuls who defeated Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal, at the Metaurus in 207 B.C.; (2) brother of Tiberius and stepson of Augustus†
**factum, ī** *n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
**fascis, is** *m.* bundle of rods with ax, carried by lictors before Roman kings and consuls as a symbol of authority†
**fulg(e)ō, ĕre, lsī** shine, gleam, glitter
**immēnsus, a, um** boundless, vast
**laus, laudis** *f.* praise, glory, merit*
**lībertās, ātis** *f.* liberty, freedom†
**minōrēs, um** *m.* younger people, posterity
**Monoecus, ī** *m.* Monaco, a city in northern Italy†
**pār, paris** equal, similar, like*
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**premō, ere, pressī, pressus** (re)press, weigh down*
**prō** before, on behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
**pulcher, chra, chrum** beautiful, glorious, handsome, splendid, illustrious*
**quantus, a, um** how (great, much, many), as*
**quīn** (but) that, nay even, why not*
**recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** recover, receive*
**saevus, a, um** fierce, cruel, stern*
**secūris, is** *f.* ax, battle-ax
**signum, ī** *n.* sign, standard, mark, token*
**socer, erī** *m.* father-in-law
**strāgēs, is** *f.* slaughter, carnage
**Torquātus, ī** *m.* consul who executed his own son for disobeying orders†
**ultor, ōris** *m.* avenger, punisher
**utcumque** how(so)ever, when(so)ever†

**818. fascīs:** bundles of rods with an ax in the middle, used as symbols of authority by the kings of Rome but taken over (**receptōs**) by Brutus for the republic and henceforth symbols of the consuls.

**820. nova** = *civil.* See the note on **novandīs,** IV, 290. The sons of Brutus plotted for the return of the expelled kings and were executed by their father.

**822. Utcumque ferent minōrēs:** *howsoever posterity may extol the deed.*

**824. Drūsōs:** Vergil is here complimenting Augustus, whose wife Livia belonged to this famous family.

**825. signa:** the standards captured by the Gauls from the Romans at the battle of the Allia, 387 B.C., but recovered by Camillus, who defeated the Gauls shortly thereafter.

**826–827. Illae animae:** Pompey and Caesar. **fulgĕre:** usually of the second conjugation, but of the third conjugation here. **nocte:** a general term for the lower world as distinguished from the world of light and sunshine.

**830. socer:** Caesar, whose daughter Julia had married Pompey. **aggeribus Alpīnīs:** beyond which Caesar had been

dēscendēns, gener adversīs īnstrūctus Eōīs!
*Nē, puerī, nē tanta animīs* adsuēscite *bella*
neu patriae validās *in* vīscera vertite *vīrīs;*
*tūque* prior, *tū* parce, *genus quī dūcis* Olympō,
prōjice *tēla manū, sanguis meus!* —
*Ille* triumphātā Capitōlia *ad alta* Corinthō
*victor aget* currum caesīs īnsignis Achīvīs.
Ēruet *ille* Argōs Agamemnoniās*que* Mycēnās
*ipsumque* Aeacidēn, *genus* armipotentis Achillī,
ultus avōs *Trojae* templa *et* temerāta Minervae.
*Quis tē, magne* Catō, tacitum *aut tē,* Cosse, *relinquat?*
*Quis* Gracchī *genus aut geminōs,* duo fulmina *bellī,*

---

**Achillēs, is** (eī, ī) *m.* famous Greek chieftain before Troy*
**Achīvus, a, um** Achaean, Greek
**adsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus** make accustomed
**adversus, a, um** opposite, opposing, facing*
**Aeacidēs, ae** *m.* descendant of Aeacus; Perseus, king of Macedonia, who claimed to be descended from Aeacus through Achilles
**Agamemnonius, a, um** of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, who led the Greek expedition against Troy
**Argī, ōrum** *m.* famous kingdom and city of southern Greece
**armipotēns, entis** powerful in arms
**avus, ī** *m.* grandfather; ancestor
**caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesus** cut (down), kill
**Capitōlium, (i)ī** *n.* the Capitoline Hill, the Capitol at Rome†
**Catō, ōnis** *m.* famous Roman statesman, noted for his stern simplicity†
**Corinthus, ī** *f.* famous Greek city, captured and destroyed by Lucius Mummius in 146 B.C.†
**Cossus, ī** *m.* Roman general who was the second (Romulus being first and Marcellus third) to win the **spolia opīma** by killing in battle the enemy's leader
**currus, ūs** *m.* chariot, car*
**dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** descend
**duo, ae, o** two*
**Eōus, a, um** eastern, of the East
**ēruō, ere, uī, utus** overthrow, ruin
**fulmen, inis** *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
**gener, erī** *m.* son-in-law
**Gracchus, ī** *m.* (1) Tiberius; (2) Gaius; the Gracchi, famous Roman statesmen and reformers†
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked*
**īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus** draw up
**Minerva, ae** *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts
**Mycēnae, ārum** *f.* famous city in southern Greece
**neve, neu** nor, and not
**Olympus, ī** *m.* high mountain in northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven
**parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus** spare (*dat.*)
**patria, ae** *f.* fatherland, country*
**prior, ius** sooner, former, first, prior*
**prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** throw away
**tacitus, a, um** silent, unmentioned
**temerō** (1) violate, desecrate, pollute, defile†
**templum, ī** *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
**triumphō** (1) triumph (over), conquer†
**ulcīscor, ī, ultus** avenge, punish
**validus, a, um** strong, valiant, stout
**vertō, ere, ī, rsus** turn, change*
**vīscus, eris** *n.* vitals, flesh

---

occupied for nine years, 58–50 B.C., in his Gallic campaigns.

**831. Eōīs (agminibus):** Pompey's troops contained a large number of eastern contingents.

**834. genus Olympō:** referring to Caesar, who traced his ancestry through Iulus and Aeneas to Venus.

**836. Ille:** Lucius Mummius, conqueror and destroyer of Corinth.

**838. ille:** Lucius Aemilius Paulus, conqueror of the Macedonian king, Perseus, who traced his ancestry to Achilles.

**840. templa:** for this incident see **I, 41** and **II, 165–175**, with notes.

Scīpiadās, clādem Libyae, parvōque potentem
Fabricium *vel tē* sulcō, Serrāne, serentem?
*Quō fessum* rapitis, Fabiī? *Tū* Maximus *ille es,*
*ūnus quī nōbīs* cūnctandō restituis *rem.*
Excūdent *aliī* spīrantia mollius aera
(crēdō equidem), vīvōs *dūcent dē* marmore vultūs,
ōrābunt causās melius, *caelīque* meātūs
dēscrībent radiō *et surgentia sīdera dīcent:*
*tū* regere *imperiō* populōs, Rōmāne, mementō
(*hae tibi erunt* artēs), pācis*que* impōnere mōrem,
parcere subjectīs *et* dēbellāre superbōs."

---

**aes, aeris** *n.* bronze*
**ars, artis** *f.* art, skill, handicraft*
**causa, ae** *f.* cause, case (at law)*
**clādēs, is** *f.* slaughter, destruction
**crēdō, ere, didī, ditus** believe, suppose*
**cūnctor, ārī, ātus** delay, tarry, wait
**dēbellō** (1) war down, crush
**dēscrībō, ere, psī, ptus** mark out, map
**equidem** indeed, truly, surely*
**excūdō, ere, ī, sus** hammer out, fashion
**Fabius,** (i)ī *m.* Roman dictator who "worē out" Hannibal by delay and thus restored the Roman fortunes†
**Fabricius,** (i)ī *m.* Roman consul and general, who refused large bribes†
**impōnō, ere, posuī, positus** place on, impose, establish*
**Libya, ae** *f.* country of northern Africa, Carthage*
**marmor, oris** *n.* marble
**Maximus,** ī *m.* surname of Fabius after his successes against Hannibal†
**meātus, ūs** *m.* course, path, motion†
**melior, ius** better, superior, finer
**meminī, isse** remember, recollect (*gen.*)
**molliter** softly, gently, gracefully†
**mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, usage, rule, law*
**ōrō** (1) pray (for), entreat, plead, argue*
**parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus** spare (*dat.*)
**parvus, a, um** small, little*
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace, quiet, repose
**populus,** ī *m.* people, nation, race*
**potēns, entis** powerful, mighty*
**radius,** (i)ī *m.* rod, spoke, compass
**rapiō, ere, uī, ptus** seize, hurry along*
**regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, guide, direct
**restituō, ere, uī, ūtus** restore†
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**Scīpiadēs, ae** *m.* member of the Scipionic family; Scipio, famous in the wars against Carthage†
**serō, ere, sēvī, satus** sow, plant, beget*
**Serrānus,** ī *m.* consul called from the plow to fight the Carthaginians in 257 B.C.†
**spīrō** (1) breathe, blow, live, quiver
**subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** vanquish
**sulcus,** ī *m.* furrow, trench
**superbus, a, um** proud, haughty*
**vīvus, a, um** living, alive, natural
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

**843. Scīpiadās** = **Scīpiōnēs** (–⏑––) which cannot be used in dactylic verse. Their victories over Carthage (**clādem Libyae**) were notable. **parvō potentem:** *rich in poverty.*

**844. Serrāne, serentem:** alliteration; *Serranus sowing*, referring to the tradition that he was sowing grain when news was brought to him of his election as consul.

**845. (mē) fessum:** *wearied* as I am with reciting the great achievements of others. **Maximus:** dubbed **Cūnctātor,** *the Delayer*, by his political enemies.

**847–853. Aeneas is assured that the Romans are called by high destiny to rule the world.**

**847. aliī:** the reference is to the Greeks, the acknowledged masters of the Romans in the arts, sciences, oratory, and literature. **spīrantia aera:** bronze statues so lifelike that they seem to breathe.

**847–848.** sculptors, orators.

**849–850.** astronomers. **dīcent** = **vocābunt.**

**851. Rōmāne:** addressed to the Roman people in general.

**852. hae:** attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, *a.*

*Sīc pater Anchīsēs atque haec* mīrantibus addit:
"Aspice, *ut* īnsignis spoliīs Mārcellus opīmīs
ingreditur *victorque virōs* superēminet *omnīs.*
*Hic rem* Rōmānam *magnō* turbante tumultū
sistet, eques sternet Poenōs Gallum*que* rebellem,
tertia*que arma patrī* suspendet *capta* Quirīnō."
*Atque hīc Aenēās* (ūnā *namque īre vidēbat*
ēgregium formā juvenem *et* fulgentibus *armīs,*
*sed* frōns *laeta* parum *et* dējectō *lūmina* vultū)
"*Quis, pater, ille, virum quī sīc* comitātur *euntem?*
Fīlius, anne aliquis *magnā dē* stirpe nepōtum?
*Quī* strepitus circā *comitum!* Quantum īnstar *in ipsō!*

---

**addō, ere, didī, ditus** add*
**aliquis, quid** some(one), any(one)*
**an(ne)** *interrog.* whether, or
**a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus** see, look at*
**circā** around, about†
**comitor, ārī, ātus** accompany, attend, escort, follow*
**dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus** cast down
**ēgregius, a, um** extraordinary, distinguished
**eques, itis** *m.* cavalryman, knight
**fīlius, (i)ī** *m.* son
**forma, ae** *f.* form, beauty, shape*
**frōns, frontis** *f.* front, forehead, brow*
**fulg(e)ō, ĕre, lsī** shine, gleam, glitter
**Gallus, a, um** Gallic, Gaul†
**ingredior, ī, gressus** step, stride, enter
**īnsignis, e** distinguished, marked*
**īnstar** *n. indecl.* likeness, weight, dignity
**juvenis, is** *m.* (*f.*) youth, young (man, woman)*
**Mārcellus, ī** *m.* famous Roman consul, slew in battle Viridomarus, king of the Insubrian Gauls, and thus won the third **spolia opīma**†
**mīror, ārī, ātus** wonder (at), admire*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**opīmus, a, um** rich, splendid, sumptuous; **spolia opīma** spoils of honor, taken when the general with his own hand slew the general of the enemy
**parum** slightly, too little, not†
**Poenus, a, um** Phoenician, Carthaginian
**quantus, a, um** how (much, great, many), as*
**Quirīnus, ī** *m.* the deified Romulus as god of war
**rebellis, e** rebellious, insurgent†
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**sistō, ere, stetī, status** stop, stand
**spolium, (i)ī** *n.* spoil, booty, plunder
**sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus** lay low, strew*
**stirps, pis** *f.* stock, lineage, race
**strepitus, ūs** *m.* uproar, noise
**superēmineō, ēre** overtop, tower above
**suspendō, ère, ī, ēnsus** hang up*
**tertius, a, um** third*
**tumultus, ūs** *m.* tumult, uprising, clamor
**turbō** (1) confuse, shake, disturb*
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**vultus, ūs** *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

---

**854–887. Anchises especially praises the younger Marcellus and sings a dirge for his untimely death.**

**854.** (Aenēae et Sibyllae) **mīrantibus.**

**855. spoliīs opīmīs:** arms and other booty taken on the field of battle by the victorious from the vanquished general, whom he has slain with his own hand. These were won before by Romulus and Cossus, l. 841, and never afterward. **Mārcellus:** a hero of the second Punic War and an ancestor of the younger Marcellus.

**857. tumultū:** the war with the Gauls in Italy, in which the elder Marcellus had killed Viridomarus, leader of the Gauls, and stripping him of his armor had obtained the third and last **spolia opīma,** the **tertia arma capta** of l. 859.

**858. eques:** (*though but*) *a knight.*

**860. Aenēās (dīcit). ūnā (cum Mārcellō).**

**862. frōns (erat). et lūmina (erant) dējectō vultū = et lūmina (erant) dējecta. lūmina = oculī,** as often.

**863. virum:** the elder Marcellus. **ille:** the younger Marcellus, son of Augustus's sister Octavia. Augustus had chosen him to be his successor, but he died in 23 B.C.

**864. nepōtum (nostrōrum).**

**865. strepitūs:** indicating the future fame and popularity of the younger Marcellus.

*Sed nox ātra caput trīstī* circumvolat *umbrā.*"
*Tum pater Anchīsēs lacrimīs* ingressus obortīs:
"*Ō nāte, ingentem* lūctum *nē quaere tuōrum;*
ostendent *terrīs hunc* tantum *fāta neque* ultrā
*esse* sinent. Nimium *vōbīs* Rōmāna propāgō
*vīsa* potēns, *superī*, propria *haec sī dōna fuissent.*
Quantōs *ille virum magnam* Māvortis *urbem*
*campus aget* gemitūs! *Vel quae*, Tiberīne, *vidēbis*
fūnera, *cum* tumulum praeterlābēre recentem!
*Nec puer* Īliacā quisquam *dē gente* Latīnōs
*in tantum* spē *tollet* avōs, *nec* Rōmula *quondam*
*ūllō sē tantum tellūs* jactābit alumnō.
*Heu* pietās, *heu* prīsca fidēs invicta*que bellō*
*dextera! Nōn illī sē* quisquam impūne *tulisset*
obvius armātō, seu *cum* pedes *īret in* hostem

**alumnus, ī** *m.* nursling, (foster) child
**armō** (1) arm, equip, furnish*
**avus, ī** *m.* grandfather; ancestor
**circumvolō** (1) flit around, fly about
**fidēs, eī** *f.* faith, trust, fidelity, pledge*
**fūnus, eris** *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
**gemitus, ūs** *m.* groan(ing), wail(ing)*
**hostis, is** *m.* enemy, foe, stranger*
**Īliacus, a, um** Ilian, Trojan*
**impūne** unpunished, with impunity
**ingredior, ī, gressus** stride, begin, enter
**invictus, a, um** unconquered, invincible
**jactō** (1) toss, buffet, vaunt, boast*
**Latīnus, a, um** Latin, of Latium
**lūctus, ūs** *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow
**Māvors, rtis** *m.* Mars, god of war†
**nimium** too (much), too great(ly)
**oborior, īrī, ortus** arise, spring up
**obvius, a, um** before, meeting (*dat.*)
**ostendō, ere, ī, ntus** show, display*
**pedes, itis** *m.* footsoldier, infantry
**pietās, ātis** *f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, rightcousness, nobility*
**potēns, entis** powerful, mighty*
**praeterlābor, ī, lāpsus** glide by
**prīscus, a, um** ancient, primitive
**propāgō, inis** *f.* offshoot, offspring, race†
**proprius, a, um** one's own, special, secure
**quantus, a, um** how (great, much, many), as*
**quisquam, quaequam, quidquam** any(one, thing)
**recēns, entis** recent, fresh, new
**Rōmānus, a, um** Roman, of Rome*
**Rōmulus, a, um** of Romulus, Roman†
**sinō, ere, sīvī, situs** permit, allow*
**sīve, seu** or if, whether, or
**spēs, eī** *f.* hope, expectation*
**tantum** so much, so great(ly), only
**Tiberīnus, ī** *m.* (god of) the Tiber, river on which Rome is situated
**tumulus, ī** *m.* mound, tomb*
**ultrā** beyond, farther

**867. ingressus (est).**

**868–886.** These lines were recited by Vergil to Augustus and Octavia, the mother of Marcellus. Octavia is said to have swooned and later to have royally rewarded the poet for his glowing tribute to the memory of her son.

**869. neque ultrā:** Marcellus was only nineteen at the time of his death.

**871. vīsa (esset):** conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382. **sī fuissent:** condition contrary to fact. **haec dōna:** Marcellus.

**872. vir(ōr)um. Māvortis urbem** = Rome, founded by Romulus, a son of Mars.

**873. campus:** the Campus Martius, on the banks of the Tiber near Rome, where the whole populace assembled to celebrate the funeral of the young Marcellus.

**874. tumulum:** the magnificent mausoleum of Augustus, erected by the emperor four years before the death of Marcellus. **praeterlābēre = praeterlābēris.**

**876. spē:** *by the hope* (of his future greatness).

**879. illī = Mārcellō:** dat. with **obvius** in l. 880. **tulisset:** conclusion of a clause contrary to fact, with the condition implied.

seu spūmantis *equī* foderet calcāribus armōs.
*Heu*, miserande *puer*, *sī* quā *fāta* aspera rumpās,
*tū* Mārcellus *eris*. *Manibus date* līlia plēnīs,
purpureōs spargam flōrēs *animamque* nepōtis
*hīs* saltem accumulem *dōnīs*, *et* fungar inānī
*mūnere*." *Sīc tōtā* passim regiōne vagantur
āeris *in campīs* lātīs *atque omnia* lūstrant.
*Quae* postquam *Anchīsēs nātum per* singula *dūxit*
incendit*que animum fāmae venientis amōre*,
exim *bella virō* memorat *quae* deinde gerenda,
Laurentīs*que* docet populōs *urbemque* Latīnī,
*et quō* quemque modō *fugiatque feratque labōrem*.
*Sunt geminae* Somnī portae, *quārum* altera *fertur*

---

**accumulō** (1) heap up; pile up; honor†
**āēr, āeris** *m.* air, mist, fog
**alter, era, erum** one (of two), other (of two), second*
**armus, ī** *m.* shoulder, flank, side†
**asper, era, erum** rough, harsh, fierce*
**calcar, āris** *n.* spur, goad, prick†
**deinde** thence, next, thereupon*
**doceō, ēre, uī, ctus** teach (about), tell*
**exim, exin(de)** thence, next, thereupon†
**flōs, ōris** *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
**fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus** dig, pierce, spur†
**fungor, ī, fūnctus** perform, fulfil (*abl.*)†
**gerō, ere, gessī, gestus** bear, wage*
**inānis, e** empty, useless, unavailing*
**incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus** inflame, kindle*
**Latīnus, ī** *m.* early king of Italy, whose daughter, Lavinia, married Aeneas†
**lātus, a, um** wide, broad, spacious*
**Laurēns, entis** of Laurentum, a city near Rome
**līlium, (i)ī** *n.* lily
**lūstrō** (1) purify; survey; traverse
**Mārcellus, ī** *m.* nephew and adopted son of Augustus, died in 23 B.C., to the great grief of his mother and of the emperor
**memorō** (1) recount, (re)call, relate*
**miseror, ārī, ātus** pity, commiserate*
**modus, ī** *m.* manner, measure, limit*
**nepōs, ōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant*
**passim** everywhere, all about*
**plēnus, a, um** full, filled, complete
**populus, ī** *m.* people, nation, race*
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
**postquam** after (that), when*
**purpureus, a, um** purple, crimson, bright
**quā** where(by), wherever, in any (some) way
**quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)** each, every(one)
**regiō, ōnis** *f.* district, region, quarter
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus** break, burst (forth)*
**saltem** at least, at any rate
**singulī, ae, a** each, one by one
**sīve, seu** or if, whether, or
**Somnus, ī** *m.* Sleep, Slumber
**spargō, ere, rsī, rsus** scatter, sprinkle*
**spūmō** (1) foam, froth, spray*
**vagor, ārī, ātus** wander, roam, rove

---

**882. rumpās**: fut. less vivid condition; App. 381. **quā** (viā).

**883. Mārcellus**: (*a true*) *Marcellus*, worthy of the name.

**884–885. purpureōs**: a color much used in the funerals of the great, as indicated in the note to l. 221. **spargam, accumulem, fungar**: volitives; App. 254.

**886. vagantur (Anchīsēs et Aenēās et Sibylla).**

**888–892. A prophecy of the impending wars and difficulties of Aeneas in Italy.**

**890. gerenda (sint).**

**892. fugiat, ferat**: subjunctives in indirect questions.

**893–901. Aeneas and the Sibyl depart through the ivory exit of Hades to the upper world. Aeneas hastens to his fleet, sets sail once more and soon lands at Cajeta in Latium, the final goal of his journey and the destined end of his wanderings.**

**893. fertur (esse) = dīcitur (esse).**

cornea, *quā* vērīs facilis *datur* exitus *umbrīs*,
altera candentī perfecta nitēns elephantō,
*sed* falsa *ad caelum mittunt* īnsomnia mānēs.
*Hīs* ibi *tum nātum Anchīsēs* ūnā*que* Sibyllam
prōsequitur *dictīs* portā*que* ēmittit eburnā;
*ille viam* secat *ad nāvīs sociōsque* revīsit.
*Tum sē ad* Cajētae rēctō *fert lītore portum.*
Ancora *dē* prōrā jacitur; *stant lītore puppēs.*

---

**alter, era, erum** one (of two), other (of two), second*
**ancora, ae** *f.* anchor
**Cajēta, ae** *f.* Italian coast city near Rome†
**candēns, entis** shining, white, gleaming
**corneus, a, um** of horn, horny†
**eburnus, a, um** (of) ivory
**elephantus, ī** *m.* elephant, ivory
**ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus** send forth
**exitus, ūs** *m.* exit, outlet, egress
**facilis, e** easy, favorable, ready
**falsus, a, um** false, deceitful, mock
**ibi** there, then
**īnsomnium, (i)ī** *n.* dream, vision
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus** throw, cast, hurl
**mānēs, ium** *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
**nitēns, entis** gleaming, bright, shining
**perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus** finish, make
**porta, ae** *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
**prōra, ae** *f.* prow (of a ship)*
**prōsequor, ī, secūtus** follow, escort
**rēctus, a, um** right, straight, direct
**revīsō, ere** revisit, see again
**secō, āre, uī, ctus** cut, cleave; speed*
**Sibylla, ae** *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
**ūnā** together, at the same time
**vērus, a, um** true, real, genuine, honest*

---

**895. candentī elephantō:** abl. of material; App. 324.

**896. sed (per hanc portam).**

**900. rēctō lītore:** (sailing) *straight along the shore;* abl. of route.

**901.** This line repeats III, 277.

# GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

# GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

## ALPHABET; PRONUNCIATION; QUANTITY; ACCENT

**1.** With the exception that it has no **w** the Latin alphabet is the same as the English, which has been borrowed from it.

**2.** The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u,** and sometimes **y.** The other letters are consonants.

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

**3. Vowels.** All Latin vowels are either long or short. All long vowels are indicated in this text by having the mark (–) placed over them, as **nōn,** *not.* All unmarked vowels in this book are to be considered short.

**4. Latin vowels** have the following sounds:

| Long | Short |
|---|---|
| **ā** as in f*a*ther: **āra,** *altar* | **a** as in *a*sk: **anima,** *soul* |
| **ē** as in th*ey*: **mēns,** *mind* | **e** as in r*e*d: **bellum,** *war* |
| **ī** as in mach*ine*: **dīvus,** *divine* | **i** as in h*i*t: **mittō,** *send* |
| **ō** as in b*o*ne: **mōns,** *mountain* | **o** as in *o*bey: **aequor,** *sea* |
| **ū** as in pr*u*ne: **lūx,** *light* | **u** as in f*u*ll: **fuga,** *flight* |

**5. Diphthongs.** A diphthong is the union of two vowels in a single syllable. The sounds of the Latin diphthongs are:

**ae** as *ai* in *ai*sle: **caelum,** *heaven*
**au** as *ou* in h*ou*se: **aurum,** *gold*
**ei** as *ei* in fr*ei*ght: **ei,** *alas!*
**oe** as *oi* in b*oi*l: **poena,** *punishment*
**eu** as *eh-oo* (*oo* as in sp*oo*n, but fused with the *eh* sound into a single syllable): **heu,** *alas!*
**ui** somewhat as *we,* but with a more vocalic sound of the **u**: **cui,** *to whom*

**6. Consonants.** In general the consonants have the same sounds as in English, but there are the following exceptions:

**c** as *k,* always hard, as in *c*ome: **faciō,** *do, make*
**g** always hard, as in *g*et: **fugiō,** *flee*
**j** (consonantal **i**) as *y* in *y*et: **jubeō,** *order*
**s** as in *s*it, never as in ri*s*e: **cāsus,** *chance*
**t** as in *t*ie, never as in na*t*ion: **tālis,** *such*
**v** (consonantal **u**) as *w* in *w*ill: **videō,** *see*
**x** as in e*x*tra, always hard: **rēx,** *king*
**bs, bt,** as *ps, pt:* **urbs,** *city;* **obtineō,** *gain, obtain*
**ch** as *k* in *k*ite: **pulcher,** *beautiful*
**gu** (usually), **qu,** and sometimes **su** before a vowel, as *gw, kw,* and *sw,* respectively: **sanguis,** *blood;* **quī,** *who;* **suādeō,** *persuade*
**ph** as **p-h** (as *p-h* in sa*p*head, but without the break): **philosophia,** *philosophy*
**th** as *t-h* (as *t-h* in fa*t*head, but without the break): **Corinthus,** *Corinth*

*a.* Modern printed texts often use the same character (i) for both vocalic and consonantal **i** (**i, j**), as well as only one character for vocalic and consonantal **u** (**u, v**). The Romans did not employ separate characters to distinguish between the vocalic and consonantal uses of these letters.

*b.* When coming between vowels within a word, **j** is regularly doubled in pronunciation, although written but once, as **major,** *greater;* **pejor,** *worse;* **ejus,** *of him;* **hujus,** *of this;* **cujus,** *of whom;* **ajō,** *say.* These are to be pronounced as though spelled **majjor, pejjor, ejjus, hujjus, cujjus, ajjō.** This rule does not apply to **j,** which was originally initial, but which comes between vowels as a result of composition, as **praejūdicō,** *prejudge;* **bijugī,** *chariot.*

*c.* When followed by the letter **i,** as in compounds of **jaciō,** *throw,* **j,** although pronounced, is not ordinarily written in the classical period, as **coniciō,** *throw together;* **dēiciō,** *cast down;* **ēiciō,** *throw out;* **reiciō,** *throw back.* These are to be pronounced as though spelled **conjiciō, dējiciō, ējiciō, rejiciō,** and in this text they are so written.

**7. Doubled Consonants.** All doubled consonants are to be sounded separately, not as one consonant as is customary in English. Thus **puella,** *girl,* must be pronounced **pu-el-la,** and not **pu-ell-a** as in English; so also **er-rō,** *wander, stray;* **oc-cu-pō,** *occupy.*

**8. Double Consonants.** The double consonants are **x** and **z**; **x** is equivalent to **ks** or **cs**; **z** a Greek letter, originally **zd,** may be pronounced as **z** in *lazy.*

## SYLLABLES

**9.** A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; as **so-ci-us,** *comrade;* **vo-cā-re,** *to call;* **moe-ni-a,** *walls;* **ac-ci-pi-ō,** *receive.*

**10.** In dividing a Latin word into syllables, a single consonant is pronounced with the following vowel, as **ca-put,** *head.*

**11.** A consonant followed by **l** or **r** (except **ll** or **rr**) is usually pronounced with the **l** or **r,** as **pa-trēs,** *fathers;* **pū-bli-cus,** *public.*

**12.** In all other combinations of two or more consonants between vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the preceding vowel, and the others with the vowel following, as **her-ba,** *herb;* **mōn-strō,** *show;* **ar-ma,** *arms.*

**13. Exceptions.** Compound words are divided in accordance with their original elements, as **ab-est,** *he is absent;* **trāns-eō,** *I pass across.*

## QUANTITY

**14.** The quantity of a syllable is the term used to denote the relative amount of time employed in pronouncing it. About twice as much time should be used in pronouncing a long syllable as a short one.

**15.** A syllable is said to be long by *nature*, when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is said to be long by *position* when its vowel is followed by two or more consonants which are separated in pronunciation (10–12), or by either of the double consonants **x** or **z** (8), or by **j**, which was regularly doubled in pronunciation (6 *b*). **H** never helps to make a syllable long, and **qu** counts as a single consonant. Thus the first syllable of **adhūc**, *thus far*, and of **aqua**, *water*, is short.

**16.** Except under the metrical accent (394), a final syllable ending in a short vowel regularly remains short before a word beginning with two consonants or a double consonant.

**17.** If a consonant followed by **l** or **r** comes after a short vowel, the syllable containing the short vowel is said to be *common*, i.e., it may be either long or short, according to the pleasure of the one using it.

**18.** Note: This is due to the fact that the **l** and **r** blend so easily with the preceding consonant that the combination takes scarcely more time than a single consonant. When the **l** or **r** is separated in pronunciation from the preceding consonant, as may be done in all cases, more time is required in pronunciation and the preceding syllable is treated as long.

**19.** Observe that the *vowel* in a long syllable may be either long or short, and is to be pronounced accordingly. Thus in **errō**, *wander;* **captō**, *seize;* **vertō**, *turn;* **nox**, *night;* the first *vowel* in each case is short, and must be so pronounced, according to 4, but the syllable is long, and must occupy more time in pronunciation, according to 14, 15.

**20.** A vowel is regularly short before another vowel, or **h**, as **aes-tu-ō**, *boil;* **de-us**, *god;* **tra-hō**, *draw.*

*a.* This rule does not apply to Greek words in Latin, such as **ā-ēr**, *air;* **I-xī-ōn**, *Ixion* (a proper name).

**21.** A vowel is regularly short before **nt** or **nd.** Observe that the *syllable* in this case is long.

**22.** A vowel is regularly short before any final consonant except **s.**

*a.* Some monosyllables ending in **l**, **r**, **n**, and **c**, have a long vowel as **sōl**, *sun;* **pār**, *equal;* **nōn**, *not;* **sīc**, *so.*

**23.** A vowel is regularly long before **ns**, **nf**, **nx**, and **nct.**

**24.** Diphthongs and vowels derived from diphthongs or contracted from other vowels are regularly long.

## ACCENT

**25.** Words of two syllables have the accent or stress on the first (penult), as **a′-mō,** *love.*

*a.* The last syllable of a word is called the ultima (**ultimus,** *last*); the next to the last syllable is called the penult (**paene,** *almost;* **ultimus,** *last*); and the syllable before the penult is called the antepenult (**ante,** *before;* **paene,** *almost;* **ultimus,** *last*).

**26.** Words of more than two syllables (polysyllabic words) have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, on the antepenult when the penult is short or common (17), as **aes-tu-ā′-re,** *boil;* **a′-ni-mus,** *mind.*

**27. Enclitics.** Certain words are not ordinarily written separately but are regularly appended to the word they introduce. The most common of these are **-que,** *and;* **-ve,** *or;* and **-ne** (sign of a question). They are called enclitics and, when appended to words accented on the antepenult, add an accent to the ultima, as **fo′ribus′que,** *and from the doorway.* When an enclitic is appended to a word of two syllables having a long ultima, the accent is shifted to the ultima; as **amō′que,** *and I love;* but **be′llaque,** *and wars;* **i′taque,** *and so.*

## PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

**28.** Latin words and phrases commonly used in English are to be pronounced according to the ordinary English system of pronunciation; for example, in **alumnī,** the final **ī** is to be pronounced as *i* in *five,* and the **u** as *u* in *bum;* and in the phrase **via** Chicago, **v** is to be pronounced as in *vine,* and **i** as in *vine;* in the phrase **vōx populī,** *the voice of the people,* **v** as in *voice,* **ō** as in *ox,* **u** as in *due,* **ī** as in *die.*

## NUMBER

**29.** In Latin there are two numbers: the singular, denoting one; the plural, denoting more than one. For the poetic plural see 243.

## CASES

**30.** In Latin there are seven cases:

1. **The nominative** is the case of the subject.
2. **The genitive** is usually equivalent to the English possessive or to the objective with the preposition *of.*
3. **The dative** is the case of the indirect object or of personal interest.
4. **The accusative** is usually the case of the direct object.
5. **The vocative** is the case of direct address.
6. **The ablative** is the case of adverbial relation.
7. **The locative** is the case of the place where.

## DECLENSIONS

**31.** There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem characteristic*). For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular.

| Declension | Stem Characteristic | Genitive Singular |
|---|---|---|
| I. | ā (a) | ae |
| II. | o | ī |
| III. | a consonant or i | is |
| IV. | u | ūs |
| V. | ē | eī |

*a.* The first, second, and fifth declensions are called vowel declensions; the third and fourth, which really form but one, the consonant declension, **i** and **u** being considered semiconsonants.

**32.** The case endings in combination with the stem characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations for the five declensions:

SINGULAR

| | I. | II. | III. | IV. | V. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | a | us; wanting; um | s; wanting | us; ū | ēs |
| Gen. | ae | ī | is | ūs | eī, ē |
| Dat. | ae | ō | ī | uī; ū | eī, ē |
| Acc. | am | um | em, im | um, ū | em |
| Voc. | a | e; wanting; um | s; wanting | us, ū | ēs |
| Abl. | ā | ō | e, ī | ū | ē |

PLURAL

| | I. | II. | III. | IV. | V. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. Voc. | ae | ī, a | ēs; a, ia | ūs, ua | ēs |
| Gen. | ārum | ōrum | um, ium | uum | ērum |
| Dat. Abl. | īs | īs | ibus | ubus, ibus | ēbus |
| Acc. | ās | ōs, a | ēs, īs; a, ia | ūs, ua | ēs |

**33. General Rules of Declension.** *a.* The vocative is like the nominative, except in the singular of the second declension, when the nominative ends in **us.**

*b.* In the third, fourth, and fifth declensions the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike in the plural.

*c.* Neuter substantives have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike; in the plural these cases always end in **a.**

*d.* The dative and ablative plural are alike in all declensions.

### First Declension

**34.** The stem ends in **ā.** The nominative-vocative singular is the simple stem with shortened stem vowel and no case ending.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | **terra**, f., *(a, the) land* | Pl. | **terrae**, | *(the) lands* |
| | Gen. | **terrae**, *of (a, the) land, (a, the) land's* | | **terrārum**, | *of (the) lands, (the) lands'* |
| | Dat. | **terrae**, *to, for (a, the) land* | | **terrīs**, | *to, for (the) lands* |
| | Acc. | **terram**, *(a, the) land* | | **terrās**, | *(the) lands* |
| | Voc. | **terra**, *O land! land!* | | **terrae**, | *O lands! lands!* |
| | Abl. | **terrā**, *from, with, by, in, on, at (a, the) land* | | **terrīs**, | *from, with, by, in, on, at (the) lands* |

*a.* The locative singular of the first declension is like the genitive: **Rōmae**, *at Rome;* **mīlitiae**, *abroad* (i. e., engaged *in warfare*).

*b.* The genitive singular sometimes ends in **āī** in poetry; the genitive plural sometimes takes the form **um** instead of **ārum.**

*c.* The ending **ābus** is found (along with the regular ending) in the dative and ablative plural of **dea**, *goddess*, and **fīlia**, *daughter.*

**35. Rule of Gender.** Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except when they refer to males.

## Second Declension

**36.** The stem ends in **o**, which in the classical period usually becomes **u.** In combination with the case endings it frequently disappears altogether. In the vocative singular (except in neuters) it becomes **e.**

*a.* The nominative ends in **s** (m., f.) and **m** (n.). But many masculine stems in which the original final vowel, **o**, was preceded by **r** have dropped the **us** of the nominative and the **e** of the vocative, and inserted **e** before the **r**, if it was preceded by a consonant; thus original **pueros** became **puer**, *boy*, and **libros** became **liber**, *book.*

*b.* The final **o** was often retained after **u** or **v** until the first century A.D.; as **servos**, *slave.*

**37. Animus**, *spirit;* **puer**, *boy;* **vir**, *man;* **bellum**, *war*, are declined as follows:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | **animus**, m. | **puer**, m. | **vir**, m. | **bellum**, n. |
| | Gen. | **animī** | **puerī** | **virī** | **bellī** |
| | Dat. | **animō** | **puerō** | **virō** | **bellō** |
| | Acc. | **animum** | **puerum** | **virum** | **bellum** |
| | Voc. | **anime** | **puer** | **vir** | **bellum** |
| | Abl. | **animō** | **puerō** | **virō** | **bellō** |
| Pl. | Nom. | **animī** | **puerī** | **virī** | **bella** |
| | Gen. | **animōrum** | **puerōrum** | **virōrum** | **bellōrum** |
| | Dat. | **animīs** | **puerīs** | **virīs** | **bellīs** |
| | Acc. | **animōs** | **puerōs** | **virōs** | **bella** |
| | Voc. | **animī** | **puerī** | **virī** | **bella** |
| | Abl. | **animīs** | **puerīs** | **virīs** | **bellīs** |

*a.* Words in **ius** (**ium**) have the genitive singular for the most part in **ī** until the first century A.D., without change of accent: **inge′nī** (nom., **ingenium**), *of genius;* **Vergi′lī,** *of Vergil.*

*b.* Proper names in **ius** have the vocative in **ī,** without change of accent: **Antō′nī, Tu′llī, Gā′ī, Vergi′lī. Fīlius,** *son,* and **genius,** *genius,* form their vocative in like manner: **fīlī, ′genī.** In solemn discourse **us** of the nominative is employed also for the vocative. So regularly **deus,** *O god!*

*c.* The locative singular ends in **ī** like the genitive, as **Rhodī,** *at Rhodes;* **Tarentī,** *at Tarentum.*

*d.* In the genitive plural **um** instead of **ōrum** is often found.

*e.* The locative plural is identical with the ablative: **Delphīs,** *at Delphi.*

*f.* The declension of **deus,** m., *god,* is irregular:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | **deus** | Pl. **dī, deī, diī** |
| | Gen. | **deī** | **deōrum, deum** |
| | Dat. | **deō** | **dīs, deīs, diīs** |
| | Acc. | **deum** | **deōs** |
| | Voc. | **deus** | **dī, deī, diī** |
| | Abl. | **deō** | **dīs, deīs, diīs** |

**38. Rule of Gender.** Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** or **r** are masculine; in **um** neuter.

*a.* **Exceptions.** Feminine are: (1) cities and islands, as **Corinthus, Samus;** (2) most trees, as **fāgus,** *beech;* **pirus,** *pear tree;* (3) **alvus,** *belly;* **colus,** *distaff;* **humus,** *ground;* **vannus,** *wheat fan;* (4) many Greek nouns, as **atomus,** *atom.*

Neuters are: **pelagus,** *sea;* **vīrus,** *venom;* **vulgus,** the *rabble.*

## Third Declension

**39.** The stem ends in a consonant or in the close vowels (or semivowels) **i** and **ū.** The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem characteristic:

### I. Consonant Stems

1. *Liquid stems,* ending in **l, m, n, r.**
2. *Sibilant stems,* ending in **s.**
3. *Mute stems* { *a.* Ending in **b, p.** *b.* Ending in **g, c.** *c.* Ending in **d, t.**

### II. *i*-Stems

**40.** 1. The nominative singular, masculine and feminine, case ending is **s,** which, however, is dropped after **l, n, r, s,** and combines with **c** or **g** to form **x.** In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem. The vocative of the third declension is always like the nominative.

2. Neuters always form the nominative without the addition of a case ending and the accusative and vocative cases in both numbers are like the nominative. The nominative plural ends in **a**.

## I. Consonant Stems

### 41. 1. Liquid Stems in *l*

Form the nominative without the case ending **s**. These comprise:

*a*. Those in which the stem characteristic is preceded by a vowel; thus:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | Nom. | **cōnsul**, m., *consul* | **Pl. cōnsulēs**, *consuls* |
| | Gen. | **cōnsulis** | **cōnsulum** |
| | Dat. | **cōnsulī** | **cōnsulibus** |
| | Acc. | **cōnsulem** | **cōnsulēs** |
| | Voc. | **cōnsul** | **cōnsulēs** |
| | Abl. | **cōnsule** | **cōnsulibus** |

*b*. Two neuter substantives with stems in **ll**, one of which is lost in the nominative: **mel, mellis,** *honey;* **fel, fellis,** *gall.*

**42. Rules of Gender.** Third declension nouns having their stems in **l** are regularly masculine; those having stems in **ll** are neuter.

### 43. 2. Liquid Stems in *n*

Most masculine and feminine stems form the nominative singular by dropping the stem characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**. Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stem characteristic in the nominative and change a preceding **i** to **e**.

| | | Masculine | | Neuter |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | Nom. | **sermō**, m., *conversation* | **homō**, m., *man* | **nōmen**, n., *name* |
| | Gen. | **sermōnis** | **hominis** | **nōminis** |
| | Dat. | **sermōnī** | **hominī** | **nōminī** |
| | Acc. | **sermōnem** | **hominem** | **nōmen** |
| | Voc. | **sermō** | **homō** | **nōmen** |
| | Abl. | **sermōne** | **homine** | **nōmine** |
| **Pl.** | Nom. | **sermōnēs** | **hominēs** | **nōmina** |
| | Gen. | **sermōnum** | **hominum** | **nōminum** |
| | Dat. | **sermōnibus** | **hominibus** | **nōminibus** |
| | Acc. | **sermōnēs** | **hominēs** | **nōmina** |
| | Voc. | **sermōnēs** | **hominēs** | **nōmina** |
| | Abl. | **sermōnibus** | **hominibus** | **nōminibus** |

**44. Rules of Gender.** 1. Third declension nouns ending in **ō** are masculine, except those ending in **dō, gō,** and **iō,** which are mostly feminine.

2. Third declension nouns in **en** (**men**) are regularly neuter.

**45.** 3. Liquid Stems in *r*

Form nominative without **s**.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | Nom. | soror, f., *sister* | pater, m., *father* |
| | Gen. | sorōris | patris |
| | Dat. | sorōrī | patrī |
| | Acc. | sorōrem | patrem |
| | Voc. | soror | pater |
| | Abl. | sorōre | patre |
| **Pl.** | Nom. | sorōrēs | patrēs |
| | Gen. | sorōrum | patrum |
| | Dat. | sorōribus | patribus |
| | Acc. | sorōrēs | patrēs |
| | Voc. | sorōrēs | patrēs |
| | Abl. | sorōribus | patribus |

*a.* **Imber,** *shower;* **linter,** *skiff;* **ūter,** *bag;* **venter,** *belly,* have the genitive plural in **ium.** **Imber** has also sometimes the ablative singular in **ī.**

**46. Rules of Gender.** 1. Third declension nouns in **er** and **or** are usually masculine. 2. Third declension nouns in **ar** and **ur** are neuter.

**47.** 4. Sibilant Stems

The nominative has no additional **s,** and in masculines changes **e** to **i,** and in neuters **e** or **o** to **u** before **s.**

In the oblique cases, the **s** of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into **r.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | Nom. Acc. Voc. | genus, n., *kind* | corpus, n., *body* |
| | Gen. | generis | corporis |
| | Dat. | generī | corporī |
| | Abl. | genere | corpore |
| **Pl.** | Nom. Acc. Voc. | genera | corpora |
| | Gen. | generum | corporum |
| | Dat. Abl. | generibus | corporibus |

**48. Rules of Gender.** 1. Masculine are third declension nouns in **is** (**eris**), and **ōs** (**ōris**).

2. Neuter are third declension nouns in **us** (**eris, oris**) and in **ūs** (**ūris**).

**49.** 5. Mute Stems

All masculines and feminines of mute stems have **s** in the nominative. Before **s** a **p** or **b** is retained, a **c** or **g** combines with it to form **x,** a **t** or **d** is dropped.

*a.* Most polysyllabic mute stems change their stem vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative.

**50.** Stems in *p* or *b*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | princeps, m., *leader* | Pl. principēs |
| | Gen. | principis | principum |
| | Dat. | principī | principibus |
| | Acc. | principem | principēs |
| | Voc. | princeps | principēs |
| | Abl. | principe | principibus |

**51.** Stems in *c* or *g*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | dux, m., *leader* | Pl. ducēs |
| | Gen. | ducis | ducum |
| | Dat. | ducī | ducibus |
| | Acc. | ducem | ducēs |
| | Voc. | dux | ducēs |
| | Abl. | duce | ducibus |

**52.** Stems in *t* or *d*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | comes, m., f., *companion* | Pl. comitēs |
| | Gen. | comitis | comitum |
| | Dat. | comitī | comitibus |
| | Acc. | comitem | comitēs |
| | Voc. | comes | comitēs |
| | Abl. | comite | comitibus |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | pēs, m., *foot* | Pl. pedēs |
| | Gen. | pedis | pedum |
| | Dat. | pedī | pedibus |
| | Acc. | pedem | pedēs |
| | Voc. | pēs | pedēs |
| | Abl. | pede | pedibus |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | caput, n., *head* | Pl. capita |
| | Gen. | capitis | capitum |
| | Dat. | capitī | capitibus |
| | Acc. | caput | capita |
| | Voc. | caput | capita |
| | Abl. | capite | capitibus |

*a.* The following mute stems have certain irregular forms: **cor** (gen. **cordis**), *heart;* **nox** (gen. **noctis**), *night;* **lac** (gen. **lactis**), *milk.*

**53.** Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the genitive plural in **ium**: **urbium,** *of cities;* **arcium,** *of citadels;* **montium,** *of mountains;* **noctium,** *of nights.*

*a.* Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary: **dōtium,** *of dowries;* **lītium,** *of lawsuits;* **faucium,** *of throats;* **fraudum** (**ium**), *of frauds;* **laudum** (**ium**), *of praises;* but **vōcum,** *of voices.*

*b.* Most monosyllabic stems, with characteristic preceded by a short

vowel, have **um**: **opum**, *of resources;* but **fac-ium**, *of torches;* **nuc-um** (**ium**), *of nuts;* **niv-ium** (**um**), *of snows.*

*c.* Polysyllabic stems in **nt** and **rt** have more frequently **ium**, as **clientium** (**um**), *of clients;* **cohortium** (**um**), *of companies.*

*d.* Polysyllabic feminine stems in **āt** have either **um** or **ium**, as **aetātum** or **aetātium**, *of ages;* **cīvitātum** or **cīvitātium**, *of states;* the rest have usually **um**. **Palūs**, *marsh*, has usually **palūdium**.

**54. Rule of Gender.** Mute stems, with nominative in **s**, are usually feminine.

## II. *i*-Stems

**55.** Masculines and feminines form their nominative in **s**.

*a.* Some feminines change the stem vowel **i** to **ē** in the nominative.

*b.* Neuters change the stem vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative. This **e** is generally dropped after **l** and **r** in polysyllabic neuters.

*c.* Stems in **i** have genitive plural in **ium**.

*d.* Neuter stems in **i** have the ablative singular in **ī** and nominative plural in **ia**.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **56.** Sg. | Nom. | **hostis**, m., f., *enemy* | **mare**, n., *sea* | **animal**, n., *living being* |
| | Gen. | **hostis** | **maris** | **animālis** |
| | Dat. | **hostī** | **marī** | **animālī** |
| | Acc. | **hostem** | **mare** | **animal** |
| | Voc. | **hostis** | **mare** | **animal** |
| | Abl. | **hoste** | **marī** | **animālī** |
| Pl. | Nom. | **hostēs** | **maria** | **animālia** |
| | Gen. | **hostium** | **marium** | **animālium** |
| | Dat. | **hostibus** | **maribus** | **animālibus** |
| | Acc. | **hostēs** (**īs**) | **maria** | **animālia** |
| | Voc. | **hostēs** | **maria** | **animālia** |
| | Abl. | **hostibus** | **maribus** | **animālibus** |

*a.* The accusative singular ending **im** is found always in **sitis**, *thirst;* **tussis**, *cough;* **vīs**, *strength;* and in names of towns and rivers in **is**, as **Neāpolis**, *Naples;* **Tiberis**, *Tiber;* usually in **febris**, *fever;* **puppis**, *stern of ship;* **restis**, *cable;* **secūris**, *ax;* **turris**, *tower;* occasionally in **clāvis**, *key;* **crātis**, *hurdle;* **cutis**, *skin;* **messis**, *harvest;* **nāvis**, *ship.*

*b.* The ablative in **ī** is found in **i**-stem nouns that regularly have **im** in the accusative (except perhaps **restis**, *rope, cable*); also not infrequently in **amnis**, *river;* **avis**, *bird;* **canālis**, *canal;* **cīvis**, *citizen;* **classis**, *fleet;* **fīnis**, *end;* **fūstis**, *club;* **ignis**, *fire;* **orbis**, *circle;* **unguis**, *claw;* occasionally in **anguis**, *snake;* **bīlis**, *bile;* **clāvis**, *key;* **collis**, *hill;* **corbis**, *basket;* **messis**, *harvest;* regularly in neuters in **e**, **al**, and **ar**, except in **rēte**, *net;* and in the proper nouns **Caere**, **Praeneste**.

*c.* In the genitive plural instead of the ending **ium, um** is found always in **canis,** *dog;* **juvenis,** *young man;* **pānis,** *bread;* **senex,** *old man;* **struēs,** *heap;* **volucris,** *bird;* usually in **apis,** *bee;* **sēdēs,** *seat;* **vātēs,** *bard;* frequently in **mēnsis,** *month.*

*d.* The accusative plural ending **īs** is found frequently in the classical period along with **ēs.**

**57. Rule of Gender.** *a.* **i**-stems, with nominative in **ēs,** are feminine, unless they refer to males; those with nominative in **is** are partly masculine, partly feminine.

*b.* **i**-stems, with nominative in **e, al, ar,** are neuter.

*c.* The rest are feminine.

## Fourth Declension

**58.** The fourth declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in **u.**

*a.* The endings are the same as those of **i**-stems of the third declension.

*b.* In the genitive and ablative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural (sometimes, too, in the dative singular), the **u** of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long.

*c.* In the dative and ablative plural **u** generally becomes **i** before the ending **bus.**

**59.**

| | | Masculine | Neuter |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | **cāsus,** m., *chance* | **cornū,** n., *horn* |
| | Gen. | **cāsūs** | **cornūs** |
| | Dat. | **cāsuī (cāsū)** | **cornū** |
| | Acc. | **cāsum** | **cornū** |
| | Voc. | **cāsus** | **cornū** |
| | Abl. | **cāsū** | **cornū** |
| Pl. | Nom. | **cāsūs** | **cornua** |
| | Gen. | **cāsuum** | **cornuum** |
| | Dat. | **cāsibus** | **cornibus** |
| | Acc. | **cāsūs** | **cornua** |
| | Voc. | **cāsūs** | **cornua** |
| | Abl. | **cāsibus** | **cornibus** |

**60. Domus,** f., *house,* is declined: **sg.** gen. **domūs;** dat. **domuī;** acc. **domum;** voc. **domus;** abl. **domō;** loc. **domī (domuī);** **pl.** nom. **domūs;** gen. **domōrum;** dat.–abl. **domibus;** acc. **domōs, domūs.**

**61. Rule of Gender.** Fourth declension nouns in **us** are generally masculine; those in **ū** are neuter.

*a.* But feminine are **acus,** *needle;* **domus,** *house;* **īdūs** (pl.), *the ides;* **manus,** *hand;* **penus,** *victuals;* **porticus,** *piazza;* **tribus,** *tribe.*

## Fifth Declension

**62.** The stem ends in **ē**; the nominative in **ēs.**

*a.* In the genitive and dative singular the stem vowel **e** is shortened after a consonant.

*b.* The accusative singular always ends in **em**; 22.

*c.* The ending in the genitive singular is that of the second declension, **ī**; the other endings are those of the third declension.

**63.**

| | | Masculine | Feminine |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | diēs, m., f., *day* | rēs, f., *thing* |
| | Gen. | diēī (diē) | reī |
| | Dat. | diēī (diē) | reī |
| | Acc. | diem | rem |
| | Voc. | diēs | rēs |
| | Abl. | diē | rē |
| Pl. | Nom. | diēs | rēs |
| | Gen. | diērum | rērum |
| | Dat. | diēbus | rēbus |
| | Acc. | diēs | rēs |
| | Voc. | diēs | rēs |
| | Abl. | diēbus | rēbus |

*a.* The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are rarely found except in **diēs** and **rēs.**

*b.* Many words of the fifth declension have a parallel form, which follows the first declension, as **mollitiēs** or **mollitia,** *softness.* Where this is the case, forms of the fifth declension are usually found only in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular.

**64. Rule of Gender.** Fifth declension nouns are feminine except **diēs** which in the singular is either masculine or feminine, and in the plural masculine, and **merīdiēs,** *midday,* which is always masculine.

## Declension of Greek Nouns

**65.** Greek nouns, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized and declined regularly according to their stem characteristic. Some Greek nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the singular.

*a.* In the plural the declension is usually regular, but the third declension often shows **ĕs** in the nominative and **ăs** in the accusative. In the genitive plural the endings **ōn** and **eōn** are found in the titles of books, as **Georgicōn,** *of the Georgics;* **Metamorphōseōn,** *of the Metamorphoses.*

## 66. First Declension

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. Nom. | Pēnelopē | Aenēās | Anchīsēs |
| Gen. | Pēnelopēs | Aenēae | Anchīsae |
| Dat. | Pēnelopae | Aenēae | Anchīsae |
| Acc. | Pēnelopēn | Aenēam (ān) | Anchīsēn (am) |
| Voc. | Pēnelopē | Aenēā | Anchīsē (ā, a) |
| Abl. | Pēnelopā | Aenēā | Anchīsā |

## 67. Second Declension

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. Nom. | Dēlos (us) | Īlion (um) | Panthūs | Androgeōs (us) |
| Gen. | Dēlī | Īliī | Panthī | Androgeī (eō) |
| Dat. | Dēlō | Īliō | Panthō | Androgeō |
| Acc. | Dēlon (um) | Īlion (um) | Panthūn | Androgeōn (ō, ōna) |
| Voc. | Dēle | Īlion (um) | Panthū | Androgeōs |
| Abl. | Dēlō | Īliō | Panthō | Androgeō |

## 68. Third Declension

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. Nom. | Solōn (Solō) | āēr, *air* | Xenophōn | Atlās |
| Gen. | Solōnis | āeris | Xenophōntis | Atlantis |
| Dat. | Solōnī | āerī | Xenophōntī | Atlantī |
| Acc. | Solōna (em) | āera (em) | Xenophōnta (em) | Atlanta |
| Voc. | Solōn | āēr | Xenophōn | Atlā |
| Abl. | Solōne | āere | Xenophōnte | Atlante |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. Nom. | Thalēs | Paris | hērōs |
| Gen. | Thal-ētis (is) | Paridis (os) | hērōis |
| Dat. | Thal-ētī (ī) | Paridī (ī) | hērōī |
| Acc. | Thal-ēta (ēn, em) | Par-ida (im, in) | hērōa (em) |
| Voc. | Thalē | Pari (Paris) | hērōs |
| Abl. | Thalē | Paride | hērōe |

## 69. Mixed Declensions

| | II and III | II and III | II and III |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. Nom. | Orpheus | Athōs | Oedipūs |
| Gen. | Orpheī (ēī) | Athō (ōnis) | Oedip-odis (ī) |
| Dat. | Orpheō (eī) | Athō | Oedipidī |
| Acc. | Orpheum (ea) | Athō (ōn, ōnem) | Oedip-um (oda) |
| Voc. | Orpheu | Athōs | Oedipe |
| Abl. | Orpheō | Athōne | Oedip-ide (ō) |

| | II and III | II and III | II and III |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. Nom. | Achillēs (eus) | Sōcratēs | Dīdō |
| Gen. | Achillis (e)ī, eos | Sōcratis (ī) | Dīdūs (ōnis) |
| Dat. | Achillī | Sōcratī | Dīdō (ōnī) |
| Acc. | Achillem (ea, ēn) | Sōcratēn (em) | Dīdō (ōnem) |
| Voc. | Achillēs (ē, eu, e) | Sōcratē (es) | Dīdō |
| Abl. | Achille, (ī) | Sōcrate | Dīdō (ōne) |

## ADJECTIVES

**70. The Adjective** adds a quality to its noun or pronoun. Adjectives have the same declension as nouns, and according to the stem characteristic are of the first and second or third declension.

### Adjectives of the First and Second Declension

**71.** Stems end in **o** for masculine and neuter, **ā** for feminine; nominative in **us** (**er**), **a**, **um**. The same variations in termination occur as in nouns, except that adjectives in **ius** form the genitive and vocative singular regularly. See 37, *a*.

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | bonus, *good* | bona | bonum |
| | Gen. | bonī | bonae | bonī |
| | Dat. | bonō | bonae | bonō |
| | Acc. | bonum | bonam | bonum |
| | Voc. | bone | bona | bonum |
| | Abl. | bonō | bonā | bonō |
| Pl. | Nom. | bonī | bonae | bona |
| | Gen. | bonōrum | bonārum | bonōrum |
| | Dat. | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |
| | Acc. | bonōs | bonās | bona |
| | Voc. | bonī | bonae | bona |
| | Abl. | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |
| Sg. | Nom. | miser, *wretched* | misera | miserum |
| | Gen. | miserī | miserae | miserī |
| | Dat. | miserō | miserae | miserō |
| | Acc. | miserum | miseram | miserum |
| | Voc. | miser | misera | miserum |
| | Abl. | miserō | miserā | miserō |
| Pl. | Nom. | miserī | miserae | misera |
| | Gen. | miserōrum | miserārum | miserōrum |
| | Dat. | miserīs | miserīs | miserīs |
| | Acc. | miserōs | miserās | misera |
| | Voc. | miserī | miserae | misera |
| | Abl. | miserīs | miserīs | miserīs |
| Sg. | Nom. | pulcher, *beautiful* | pulchra | pulchrum |
| | Gen. | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchrī |
| | Dat. | pulchrō | pulchrae | pulchrō |
| | Acc. | pulchrum | pulchram | pulchrum |
| | Voc. | pulcher | pulchra | pulchrum |
| | Abl. | pulchrō | pulchrā | pulchrō |
| Pl. | Nom. | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchra |
| | Gen. | pulchrōrum | pulchrārum | pulchrōrum |
| | Dat. | pulchrīs | pulchrīs | pulchrīs |
| | Acc. | pulchrōs | pulchrās | pulchra |
| | Voc. | pulchrī | pulchrae | pulchra |
| | Abl. | pulchrīs | pulchrīs | pulchrīs |

*a*. All participles ending in **us**, **a**, **um**, are inflected like **bonus**.

**72.** In poetry we find **um** alongside of **ōrum** and **ārum** in the genitive plural.

*a.* In the dative and ablative plural **iīs** from adjectives in **ius** is often contracted to **īs** especially in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names.

**73. The so-called Pronominal Adjectives** show certain peculiarities in the genitive and dative singular. These adjectives are: **alter,** *one of the two;* **alteruter** (a combination of **alter** and **uter**), *either of the two;* **alius,** *other;* **neuter,** *neither;* **nūllus,** *none;* **sōlus,** *sole;* **tōtus,** *whole;* **ūllus,** *any;* **ūnus,** *one;* **uter,** *which of the two.*

**74.**

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | alter, *one of two* | altera | alterum |
| | Gen. | alterīus | alterīus | alterīus |
| | Dat. | alterī | alterī | alterī |
| | Acc. | alterum | alteram | alterum |
| | Abl. | alterō | alterā | alterō |
| Sg. | Nom. | alius | alia | aliud |
| | Gen. | alīus | alīus | alīus |
| | Dat. | aliī | aliī | aliī |
| | Acc. | alium | aliam | aliud |
| | Abl. | aliō | aliā | aliō |
| Sg. | Nom. | ūllus, *any* | ūlla | ūllum |
| | Gen. | ūllīus | ūllīus | ūllīus |
| | Dat. | ūllī | ūllī | ūllī |
| | Acc. | ūllum | ūllam | ūllum |
| | Abl. | ūllō | ūllā | ūllō |
| Sg. | Nom. | uter | utra | utrum |
| | Gen. | utrīus | utrīus | utrīus |
| | Dat. | utrī | utrī | utrī |
| | Acc. | utrum | utram | utrum |
| | Abl. | utrō | utrā | utrō |

Like **uter** is declined **neuter;** like **ūllus** are declined **nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus.** The plural is regular.

*a.* The genitive **alīus** is very rare, and its place is usually taken by **alterīus** or **aliēnus.**

*b.* The **i** of the ending **īus** (except in **alīus**) is often shortened in poetry. This is usually the case with **alter,** and regularly in the compounds of **uter;** as **utriusque.**

*c.* In the compound **alteruter** we usually find both parts declined; sometimes the second only.

*d.* **Alius** has its nominative and accusative singular neuter irregularly **aliud.**

## Adjectives of the Third Declension

**75.** The declension of the adjectives of the third declension follows the rules given for nouns. Most adjectives of the third declension are vowel stems in **i**, with two (rarely three) endings in the nominative. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the nominative.

## Adjectives of Two or Three Endings

**76.** These have (except stems in **ri**) one ending in the nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter. Most stems in **i** form the masculine and feminine alike, with nominative in **s**; but the nominative neuter weakens the characteristic **i** into **e**. Compare **mare**, *sea*.

*a.* Several stems in **i**, preceded by **r** (**cr, tr, br**), form the nominative masculine, not by affixing **s**, but by dropping the **i** and inserting short **e** before the **r**, as, stem, **ācri**, *sharp;* nom., **ācer** (m.), **ācris** (f.), **ācre** (n.).

**77.**

| | | M., F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | Nom. | **omnis**, *all* | **omne** |
| | Gen. | **omnis** | **omnis** |
| | Dat. | **omnī** | **omnī** |
| | Acc. | **omnem** | **omne** |
| | Voc. | **omnis** | **omne** |
| | Abl. | **omnī** | **omnī** |
| **Pl.** | Nom. | **omnēs** | **omnia** |
| | Gen. | **omnium** | **omnium** |
| | Dat. | **omnibus** | **omnibus** |
| | Acc. | **omnēs** (**īs**) | **omnia** |
| | Voc. | **omnēs** | **omnia** |
| | Abl. | **omnibus** | **omnibus** |

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | Nom. | **ācer**, *sharp* | **ācris** | **ācre** |
| | Gen. | **ācris** | **ācris** | **ācris** |
| | Dat. | **ācrī** | **ācrī** | **ācrī** |
| | Acc. | **ācrem** | **ācrem** | **ācre** |
| | Voc. | **ācer** | **ācris** | **ācre** |
| | Abl. | **ācrī** | **ācrī** | **ācrī** |
| **Pl.** | Nom. | **ācrēs** | **ācrēs** | **ācria** |
| | Gen. | **ācrium** | **ācrium** | **ācrium** |
| | Dat. | **ācribus** | **ācribus** | **ācribus** |
| | Acc. | **ācrēs** (**īs**) | **ācrēs** (**īs**) | **ācria** |
| | Voc. | **ācrēs** | **ācrēs** | **ācria** |
| | Abl. | **ācribus** | **ācribus** | **ācribus** |

## Adjectives of One Ending

**78.** Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) end with **l, r, s; p, b; t, d; c, g.**

**79.** Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

**80.** The consonant stem adjectives have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the accusative singular and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

**81.** Consonant stem adjectives follow in part the declension of **i**-stem nouns; thus:

1. In the ablative singular they have **ī** or **e**; when used as nouns, commonly **e**.

*a*. The participles, as such, have **e**; but used as nouns or adjectives, either **e** or **ī**, with a tendency to **ī**.

2. In the neuter plural they have **ia**; except all comparatives (91), **vetus**, *old*, and **ūber**, *fertile*, which have **vetera** and **ūbera**. Many have no neuter.

3. In the genitive plural they have **ium**, when the stem characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; **um**, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles regularly have **ium**.

**82.**

| | | M., F. | N. | | M., F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | fēlīx, *lucky* | fēlīx | Sg. | recēns, *recent* | recēns |
| | Gen. | fēlīcis | fēlīcis | | recentis | recentis |
| | Dat. | fēlīcī | fēlīcī | | recentī | recentī |
| | Acc. | fēlīcem | fēlīx | | recentem | recēns |
| | Voc. | fēlīx | fēlīx | | recēns | recēns |
| | Abl. | fēlīcī (e) | fēlīcī (e) | | recentī (e) | recentī (e) |
| Pl. | Nom. | fēlīcēs | fēlīcia | Pl. | recentēs | recentia |
| | Gen. | fēlīcium | fēlīcium | | recentium | recentium |
| | Dat. | fēlīcibus | fēlīcibus | | recentibus | recentibus |
| | Acc. | fēlīcēs (īs) | fēlīcia | | recentēs (īs) | recentia |
| | Voc. | fēlīcēs | fēlīcia | | recentēs | recentia |
| | Abl. | fēlīcibus | fēlīcibus | | recentibus | recentibus |
| Sg. | Nom. | vetus, *old* | vetus | Sg. | amāns, *loving* | amāns |
| | Gen. | veteris | veteris | | amantis | amantis |
| | Dat. | veterī | veterī | | amantī | amantī |
| | Acc. | veterem | vetus | | amantem | amāns |
| | Voc. | vetus | vetus | | amāns | amāns |
| | Abl. | vetere (ī) | vetere (ī) | | amante (ī) | amante (ī) |
| Pl. | Nom. | veterēs | vetera | Pl. | amantēs | amantia |
| | Gen. | veterum | veterum | | amantium | amantium |
| | Dat. | veteribus | veteribus | | amantibus | amantibus |
| | Acc. | veterēs | vetera | | amantēs (īs) | amantia |
| | Voc. | veterēs | vetera | | amantēs | amantia |
| | Abl. | veteribus | veteribus | | amantibus | amantibus |

*a.* In the poets, **e** is often found for **ī** in the ablative singular. Also in classical prose we find regularly **paupere,** *poor;* **vetere,** *old;* and frequently **dīvite,** *rich;* **sapiente,** *wise.*

*b.* In the nominative and accusative plural **īs** for **ēs** belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of this accusative are found in Cicero. In the case of participles **īs** is very common, and is the rule in Vergil and Horace.

*c.* In the genitive plural **cicur,** *tame;* **vetus,** *old;* **dīves,** *rich,* have **um** instead of **ium;** so also many compound adjectives.

*d.* In the poets and in later writers, **um** is not infrequently found where classical prose uses **ium.**

## Comparison of Adjectives

**83. The Degrees of Comparison** are: positive, comparative, and superlative.

**84. The Comparative** is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **ius** for the neuter.

**85. The Superlative** is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **issimus, a, um** (earlier **issumus**).

**86.** Vowel stems, before forming the comparative and superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

| **87.** Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| **altus, a, um,** *high* | **altior, ius,** *higher* | **altissimus, a, um,** *highest* |
| **fortis, e,** *brave* | **fortior, ius,** *braver* | **fortissimus,** *bravest* |
| **fēlīx,** *happy* | **fēlīcior, ius,** *happier* | **fēlīcissimus,** *happiest* |
| **recēns,** *recent* | **recentior, ius,** *more recent* | **recentissimus,** *most recent* |

**88. Peculiarities of Comparison.** Adjectives in **er** add the superlative ending **rimus** directly to the nominative masculine. The comparative has the regular formation. See 84.

| **89.** Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| **miser, era, erum,** *wretched* | **miserior, miserius** | **miserrimus** |
| **celer, eris, ere,** *swift* | **celerior, celerius** | **celerrimus** |
| **ācer, ācris, ācre,** *sharp* | **ācrior, ācrius** | **ācerrimus** |

*a.* Six adjectives in **ilis** add **limus** (earlier **lumus**) to the stem, after dropping **i,** to form the superlative: **facilis,** *easy;* **difficilis,** *hard;* **similis,** *like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike;* **gracilis,** *slender;* and **humilis,** *low.*

Pos. **facilis** Comp. **facilior, ius** Sup. **facillimus, a, um**

**90.** Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison: as **amāns,** *loving;* **amantior,** *more loving;* **amantissimus,** *most loving;* **apertus,** *open;* **apertior, apertissimus.**

**91.** The superlative follows the declension of adjectives of three endings of the first and second declensions; 71. The comparative is declined according to the third declension, thus:

| | | M., F. | N. | | M., F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | altior, *higher* | altius | Pl. | altiōrēs | altiōra |
| | Gen. | altiōris | altiōris | | altiōrum | altiōrum |
| | Dat. | altiōrī | altiōrī | | altiōribus | altiōribus |
| | Acc. | altiōrem | altius | | altiōrēs (īs) | altiōra |
| | Voc. | altior | altius | | altiōrēs | altiōra |
| | Abl. | altiōre (ī) | altiōre (ī) | | altiōribus | altiōribus |

**92. Irregular Comparison.** Certain adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| **bonus**, *good* | **melior, melius** | **optimus** |
| **malus**, *bad* | **pejor, pejus** | **pessimus** |
| **magnus**, *great* | **major, majus** | **maximus** |
| **parvus**, *small* | **minor, minus** | **minimus** |
| **multus**, *much* | Sg. **plūs** (no dat. nor abl.) | **plūrimus** |
| | Pl. **plūrēs, plūra** | |
| | **complūrēs, complūra** (ia) | |
| **nequam**, *worthless* | **nequior, nequius** | **nequissimus** |
| **frūgī** (indecl.), *frugal* | **frūgālior** | **frūgālissimus** |

*a.* For the pronunciation of **major** and **pejor** = **majjor, pejjor,** see 6, *b*.

*b.* The older form of the superlative ended in **umus.**

## ADVERBS

**93.** Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of adjectival, nominal or pronominal stems.

**94.** The cases from which they are derived are principally the accusative and the ablative.

### Adverbs Formed from Adjectives

**95.** Many adverbs are formed from the ablative case of adjectives in **us: tūtō**, *safely;* **prīmō**, *at first.*

*a.* Many adverbs are formed from an old ablative form (**ē**) of adjectives in **us** and **er: altē**, *loftily;* **pulchrē**, *beautifully.*

*b.* Many adverbs are formed from accusative singular neuter adjectival and pronominal stems: **multum**, *much;* **facile**, *easily.* This is true of all comparatives: **facilius**, *more easily.* To the comparatives belong also **magis**, *more;* **nimis**, *too.*

*c.* Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives and participles of the third declension by the addition of **ter** (**iter**) to the stem; stems in **nt** dropping the **t**, and stems in **c** or **g** inserting the connecting vowel **i** before the ending: **fortiter**, *bravely;* **ferōciter**, *wildly;* **prūdenter**, *prudently.*

### Comparison of Adverbs

**96.** The comparative of the adverb is the accusative neuter of the comparative of the adjective. See 95, *b*. The superlative ends in **issimē, errimē, illimē** (earlier **issumē, errumē, illumē**), or irregularly, according to the superlative of the adjective. See 87, 88, 89, 92.

**97.**

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| altē, *loftily* | altius | altissimē |
| pulchrē, *beautifully* | pulchrius | pulcherrimē |
| miserē, *poorly* | miserius | miserrimē |
| fortiter, *bravely* | fortius | fortissimē |
| audācter, *boldly* | audācius | audācissimē |
| tūtō, *safely* | tūtius | tūtissimē |
| facile, *easily* | facilius | facillimē |
| bene, *well* | melius | optimē |
| male, *ill* | pejus | pessimē |
| [parvus], *small* | minus, *less* | minimē, *least* |
| [magnus], *great* | magis, *more* | maximē, *most* |
| multum, *much* | plūs, *more* | plūrimum |
| citō, *quickly* | citius | citissimē |
| diū, *long* | diūtius | diūtissimē |
| saepe, *often* | saepius | saepissimē |
| nūper, *recently* | —— | nūperrimē |
| satis, *enough* | satius, *better* | |

## NUMERALS

### Numeral Adjectives

**98. The Cardinal Numerals,** as **ūnus,** *one;* **duo,** *two;* **decem,** *ten,* answer the question **quot,** *how many?* and are the numbers used in counting.

*a.* **The Ordinal Numerals,** as **prīmus,** *first;* **secundus (alter),** *second;* **decimus,** *tenth,* answer the question **quotus,** *which one in the series?*

**99.** The cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: **ūnus,** *one;* **duo,** *two;* **trēs,** *three;* the hundreds beginning with **ducentī,** *two hundred;* and the plural **mīlia,** *thousands,* which forms **mīlium** and **mīlibus.**

| | M. | F. | N. | M., F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | duo, *two* | duae | duo | trēs, *three* | tria |
| Gen. | duōrum | duārum | duōrum | trium | trium |
| Dat. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus |
| Acc. | duōs, duo | duās | duo | trēs (trīs) | tria |
| Abl. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus |

*a.* For the declension of **ūnus** see 73–74.

**100. The Distributive Numerals,** as **singulī,** *one each;* **bīnī,** *two each;* **dēnī,** *ten each,* answer the question **quotēnī,** *how many each?*

**101. Numeral Adverbs,** as **semel,** *once;* **bis,** *twice;* **ter,** *thrice,* answer the question **quotiēns,** *how often?*

## PRONOUNS

**102. A Pronoun** is a word that may be substituted for a noun. Latin pronouns may be divided into six classes: personal (including reflexive), demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

*a.* All but the personal pronouns may be used as pronominal adjectives.

*b.* The possessive adjectives are often classified as possessive pronouns.

### *A.* Personal Pronouns

**103. The Personal Pronoun of the First Person.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | **ego,** *I* | Pl. **nōs,** *we* |
| | Gen. | **meī,** *of me* | **nostrī, nostrum,** *of us* |
| | Dat. | **mihĭ (mī),** *to, for me* | **nōbīs,** *to, for us* |
| | Acc. | **mē,** *me* | **nōs,** *us* |
| | Abl. | **mē,** *from, with, by me* | **nōbīs,** *from, with, by us* |

*a.* Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. **meus, a, um,** (voc. m., **mī**), *mine, my own* — Pl. **noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our(s), our own*

*b.* The oblique cases of **ego** may also be used with reflexive force: **meī,** *of myself,* etc.

**104. The Personal Pronoun of the Second Person.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. Voc. | **tū,** *you* | Pl. **vōs,** *you* |
| | Gen. | **tuī,** *of you* | **vestrī, vestrum,** *of you* |
| | Dat. | **tibĭ,** *to, for you* | **vōbīs,** *to, for you* |
| | Acc. | **tē,** *you* | **vōs,** *you* |
| | Abl. | **tē,** *from, with, by you* | **vōbīs,** *from, with, by you* |

*a.* Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. **tuus, a, um,** *your(s), your own* — Pl. **vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your(s), your own*

*b.* The oblique cases of **tū** may also be used with reflexive force: **tuī,** *of yourself,* etc.

**105. The Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.**

*a.* **Is, ea, id,** *he, she, it,* 107, used also as a demonstrative, *this, that,* is the ordinary form of the third personal pronoun. It lacks the possessive adjective.

*b.* The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a nominative. See 106.

**106. The Personal (Reflexive) Pronoun of the Third Person.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | —— | Pl. —— |
| | Gen. | **suī**, *of him(self), her(self), it(self)* | **suī**, *of them(selves)* |
| | Dat. | **sibĭ**, *to, for, him(self), her(self), it(self)* | **sibĭ**, *to, for them(selves)* |
| | Acc. | **sē, sēsē**, *him(self), her(self), it(self)* | **sē, sēsē**, *them(selves)* |
| | Abl. | **sē, sēsē**, *from, with, by him(self), her(self), it(self)* | **sē, sēsē**, *from, with, by them(selves)* |

*a.* Compare the corresponding possessive adjective, **suus, a, um,** *his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own), theirs.*

*b.* The enclitic **-met** is sometimes added to certain forms of the personal pronouns; as **egomet,** *I myself.*

*c.* The enclitic **-pte** is sometimes added to the ablative singular of the possessive adjective; as **suōpte ingeniō,** *by his own genius.*

**107.** *B.* Demonstrative Pronouns

1. **is,** *this, that; he, she, it*

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | is | ea | id |
| | Gen. | ejus | ejus | ejus |
| | Dat. | eī | eī | eī |
| | Acc. | eum | eam | id |
| | Abl. | eō | eā | eō |
| Pl. | Nom. | iī, eī, ī | eae | ea |
| | Gen. | eōrum | eārum | eōrum |
| | Dat. | iīs, eīs, īs | iīs, eīs, īs | iīs, eīs, īs |
| | Acc. | eōs | eās | ea |
| | Abl. | iīs, eīs, īs | iīs, eīs, īs | iīs, eīs, īs |

*a.* For the pronunciation of **ejus** ( = **ejjus**) see 6, *b.*

*b.* This pronoun is often used as a third personal pronoun, *he, she, it;* 105, *a.*

2. **īdem,** (**is** + **dem**), *the same*

| Sg. | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nom. | īdem | eadem | idem |
| Gen. | ejusdem | ejusdem | ejusdem |
| Dat. | eīdem | eīdem | eīdem |
| Acc. | eundem | eandem | idem |
| Abl. | eōdem | eādem | eōdem |
| Pl. | | | |
| Nom. | īdem, eīdem, iīdem | eaedem | eadem |
| Gen. | eōrundem | eārundem | eōrundem |
| Dat. | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem |
| Acc. | eōsdem | eāsdem | eadem |
| Abl. | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem | īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem |

*a.* For the pronunciation of **ejusdem** = **ejjusdem,** see 6, *b.*

3. **hic**, *this*

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | NOM. | **hic** | **haec** | **hoc** |
| | GEN. | **hujus** | **hujus** | **hujus** |
| | DAT. | **huic** | **huic** | **huic** |
| | ACC. | **hunc** | **hanc** | **hoc** |
| | ABL. | **hōc** | **hāc** | **hōc** |
| **Pl.** | NOM. | **hī** | **hae** | **haec** |
| | GEN. | **hōrum** | **hārum** | **hōrum** |
| | DAT. | **hīs** | **hīs** | **hīs** |
| | ACC. | **hōs** | **hās** | **haec** |
| | ABL. | **hīs** | **hīs** | **hīs** |

*a.* For the pronunciation of **hujus** = **hujjus**, see 6, *b*.

*b.* The full forms with **-ce** are rare in classical Latin, except in the phrase **hujusce modī**, *of this kind*.

*c.* When followed by a word which begins with a vowel or **h**, the nominative singular of the masculine, **hic**, and the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter, **hoc**, are usually pronounced as though spelled **hicc**, **hocc**, making these syllables long by position; 15.

4. **iste**, *that (of yours)*

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | NOM. | **iste** | **ista** | **istud** |
| | GEN. | **istĭus** | **istĭus** | **istĭus** |
| | DAT. | **istī** | **istī** | **istī** |
| | ACC. | **istum** | **istam** | **istud** |
| | ABL. | **istō** | **istā** | **istō** |
| **Pl.** | NOM. | **istī** | **istae** | **ista** |
| | GEN. | **istōrum** | **istārum** | **istōrum** |
| | DAT. | **istīs** | **istīs** | **istīs** |
| | ACC. | **istōs** | **istās** | **ista** |
| | ABL. | **istīs** | **istīs** | **istīs** |

*a.* **Iste** combines with **-ce**, but in classical Latin the only common forms are **istuc** (for **istud**) and **istaec** (for **ista**).

5. **ille**, *that*

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Sg.** | NOM. | **ille** | **illa** | **illud** |
| | GEN. | **illĭus** | **illĭus** | **illĭus** |
| | DAT. | **illī** | **illī** | **illī** |
| | ACC. | **illum** | **illam** | **illud** |
| | ABL. | **illō** | **illā** | **illō** |
| **Pl.** | NOM. | **illī** | **illae** | **illa** |
| | GEN. | **illōrum** | **illārum** | **illōrum** |
| | DAT. | **illīs** | **illīs** | **illīs** |
| | ACC. | **illōs** | **illās** | **illa** |
| | ABL. | **illīs** | **illīs** | **illīs** |

### 108. *C.* The Intensive Pronoun

**ipse**, *self*

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | ipse | ipsa | ipsum |
| | Gen. | ipsĭus | ipsĭus | ipsĭus |
| | Dat. | ipsī | ipsī | ipsī |
| | Acc. | ipsum | ipsam | ipsum |
| | Abl. | ipsō | ipsā | ipsō |
| Pl. | Nom. | ipsī | ipsae | ipsa |
| | Gen. | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| | Dat. | ipsīs | ipsīs | ipsīs |
| | Acc. | ipsōs | ipsās | ipsa |
| | Abl. | ipsīs | ipsīs | ipsīs |

### 109. *D.* The Relative Pronoun

**quī**, *who*

| | | M. | F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | quī | quae | quod |
| | Gen. | cujus | cujus | cujus |
| | Dat. | cui | cui | cui |
| | Acc. | quem | quam | quod |
| | Abl. | quō | quā | quō |
| Pl. | Nom. | quī | quae | quae |
| | Gen. | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| | Dat. | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| | Acc. | quōs | quās | quae |
| | Abl. | quibus | quibus | quibus |

*a*. For the pronunciation of **cujus** = **cujjus**, see 6, *b*.

*b*. **Quī** may also be used as a relative adjective.

*c*. The dative-ablative plural **quīs** is common in the poets at all periods and occurs also occasionally in prose writers.

*d*. The ablative singular **quī** for all genders is the prevalent form in early times; and in combination with **cum**, as **quīcum**, *with whom*, is preferred to **quō**, **quā**, by Cicero.

**110. General Relatives** are:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pronoun | **quisquis**, *whoever* | **quidquid, quicquid**, *whatever* |
| Adjective | **quīquī, quaequae, quodquod**, *whatsoever* | |
| | **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, *whichever* | |

### 111. *E.* The Interrogative Pronoun

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pronoun | **quis?** *who?* | | **quid?** *what?* |
| Adjective | **quī?** | **quae?** | **quod?** *which?* |
| Pron. and Adj. | **uter?** | **utra?** | **utrum?** *who? which of two?* |

| | | M., F. | N. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | Nom. | **quis?** | **quid?** |
| | Gen. | **cujus?** | **cujus?** |
| | Dat. | **cui?** | **cui?** |
| | Acc. | **quem?** | **quid?** |
| | Abl. | **quō?** | **quō?** |

*a.* The plural of the interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the interrogative adjective coincide with the forms of the relative **quī, quae, quod.**

### 112. *F.* Strengthened Interrogatives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pronoun | **quisnam?** *who, pray?* | | **quidnam?** *what, pray?* |
| | **ecquis?** (*is there*) *any one?* | | **ecquid?** (*is there*) *anything?* |
| Adjective | **quīnam?** | **quaenam?** | **quodnam?** *which, pray?* |
| | **ecquī?** | **ecqua?** (**ecquae?**) | **ecquod?** *is there any?* |

### 113. *G.* The Indefinite Pronoun

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **aliquis** | **aliqua** (rare) | **aliquid,** *somebody, someone or other, anybody* |
| **quis** | **qua** | **quid,** *someone, anyone* |

*a.* The adjective forms are **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** *some, any;* **quī, quae** (**qua**), **quod,** *some, any.*

**114.** The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given, 73–74. They are: **ūllus, a, um,** *any;* **nūllus, a, um,** *no one, not one;* **alius, a, ud,** *another;* **alter, era, erum,** *the other, one (of two);* **neuter, tra, trum,** *neither of two;* **ambō, ae, ō,** *both.* The corresponding substantives for **nūllus** and **nūllum** are **nēmō** and **nihil,** the latter of which forms only **nihilī** (gen.) and **nihilō** (abl.) and those only in certain combinations.

*a.* Some of the more important compounds of these adjectives are:

**nōnnūllus, a, um,** *some, many a,* declined like **nūllus.**
**alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum,** *the one or the other of the two*
**uterque, utraque, utrumque,** *each of two, either*
**utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs** *whichever you please of the two*
**uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,** *whichever you please of the two*

## THE VERB

**115.** The inflection given to the verbal stem is called conjugation and expresses:

1. **Person: First, Second, Third.**
2. **Voice: Active, Passive, Middle.**

*a.* The active voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: **parō,** *I prepare.* The passive voice denotes that the subject receives the

action of the verb: **paror,** *I am prepared.* The middle voice has passive form and denotes the subject as acting either for itself or upon itself (reflexive) as: **paror,** *I prepare (for) myself.* This is chiefly a poetic usage.

3. **Tense: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.**

4. **Mood: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.**

*a.* The indicative is the mood of the fact: **parō,** *I prepare.* The subjunctive is the mood of the wish, command, or qualified statement: **parem,** *may I prepare, I may prepare;* **paret,** *may he prepare, let him prepare;* **sī paret,** *if he should prepare.* The imperative is the mood of command: **parā,** *prepare!*

## CONJUGATION

**116.** The stem of a verb is variously modified, either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms:

1. **The Present Stem:** being the stem of the present, imperfect, and future tenses. These forms are called the present system.

2. **The Perfect Stem:** being the stem of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the active. These forms are called the perfect system.

3. **The Perfect Passive Participial Stem:** which is used to form the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses of the passive and also the future active and perfect passive participles, infinitives, and the supine. These forms are called the participial system.

**117.** 1. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice are formed by the combination of the perfect passive participle with forms of the verb **sum,** *be, exist.*

2. The future passive infinitive is formed by the combination of the supine with the present passive infinitive of **eō,** *go.*

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the present, perfect, or participial stem:

| | | *ACTIVE* | *PASSIVE* |
|---|---|---|---|
| INFINITIVE | *Pres.* | **re** | **rī, ī** |
| | *Perf.* | **isse** | **us (a, um) esse** |
| | *Fut.* | **ūrus (a, um) esse** | **um īrī** |
| PARTICIPLES | *Pres.* | **ns** (*Gen.* **ntis**) | ——— |
| | *Perf.* | ——— | **us (a, um)** |
| | *Fut.* | **ūrus (a, um)** | ——— |

| GERUND | GERUNDIVE | SUPINE |
|---|---|---|
| **ndī, (dō, dum, dō)** | **ndus (a, um)** | **um, ū** |

## The Verb sum, *be, exist*

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī**

| | 118. INDICATIVE | 119. SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|
| | PRESENT | |
| Sg. 1. | sum, *I am* | sim [1] |
| 2. | es, *you are* | sīs |
| 3. | est, *he, she, it, is* | sit |
| Pl. 1. | sumus, *we are* | sīmus |
| 2. | estis, *you are* | sītis |
| 3. | sunt, *they are* | sint |
| | IMPERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | eram, *I was* | essem (forem) |
| 2. | erās, *you were* | essēs (forēs) |
| 3. | erat, *he was* | esset (foret) |
| Pl. 1. | erāmus, *we were* | essēmus (forēmus) |
| 2. | erātis, *you were* | essētis (forētis) |
| 3. | erant, *they were* | essent (forent) |
| | FUTURE | |
| Sg. 1. | erō, *I shall be* | |
| 2. | eris, *you will be* | |
| 3. | erit, *he will be* | (lacking) |
| Pl. 1. | erimus, *we shall be* | |
| 2. | eritis, *you will be* | |
| 3. | erunt, *they will be* | |
| | PERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | fuī, *I have been, I was* | fuerim |
| 2. | fuistī, *you have been, you were* | fuerīs |
| 3. | fuit, *he has been, he was* | fuerit |
| Pl. 1. | fuimus, *we have been, we were* | fuerīmus |
| 2. | fuistis, *you have been, you were* | fuerītis |
| 3. | fuērunt, fuēre, *they have been, they were* | fuerint |
| | PLUPERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | fueram, *I had been* | fuissem |
| 2. | fuerās, *you had been* | fuissēs |
| 3. | fuerat, *he had been* | fuisset |
| Pl. 1. | fuerāmus, *we had been* | fuissēmus |
| 2. | fuerātis, *you had been* | fuissētis |
| 3. | fuerant, *they had been* | fuissent |

[1] The meaning of the subjunctive varies greatly, according to its use, and is best learned from the sections on syntax.

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | **fuerō**, *I shall have been* | |
| 2. | **fueris**, *you will have been* | |
| 3. | **fuerit**, *he will have been* | |
| | | (lacking) |
| Pl. 1. | **fuerimus**, *we shall have been* | |
| 2. | **fueritis**, *you will have been* | |
| 3. | **fuerint**, *they will have been* | |

**120.** IMPERATIVE

| | PRESENT | | FUTURE | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Sg. | Pl. | Sg. | Pl. |
| 1. | ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | es, *be* | este, *be* | estō, *you shall be* | estōte, *you shall be* |
| 3. | ——— | ——— | estō, *he shall be* | suntō, *they shall be* |

**121.** INFINITIVE

PRES. **esse**, *to be*
PERF. **fuisse**, *to have been*
FUT. **futūrus** (**a**, **um**) **esse**, **fore**, *to be about to be*

**122.** PARTICIPLES

PRES. only in the compounds **absēns**, *absent*, **praesēns**, *present* (79)
FUT. **futūrus**, **a**, **um**, *about to be* (71, *a*)

**123.** COMPOUNDS OF **sum**

**absum**, *be away, absent.* PERF. (**abfuī**) **āfuī**, PRES. PART. **absēns**, *absent.*
**adsum**, *be present.* PERF. **affuī** (**adfuī**)
**dēsum**, *be wanting*
**īnsum**, *be in*
**intersum**, *be between*
**obsum**, *be against, hurt.* PERF. **obfuī** (**offuī**)
**possum**, *be able*
**praesum**, *be over, superintend.* PRES. PART. **praesēns**, *present*
**prōsum**, *be for, profit*
**subsum**, *be under.* No PERF.
**supersum**, *be or remain, over.*

These are all inflected like **sum**, but **prōsum** and **possum** require special treatment by reason of their composition.

**124.** **Prōsum**, *profit*

In the forms of **prōsum**, **prōd-** is used before vowels, thus:

| | INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | **prōsum**, **prōdes**, **prōdest**; **prōsumus**, **prōdestis**, **prōsunt** | **prōsim** |
| IMPERF. | **prōderam** | **prōdessem** |
| FUT. | **prōderō** | ——— |
| PERF. | **prōfuī** | **prōfuerim** |
| PLUPERF. | **prōfueram** | **prōfuissem** |
| FUT. PERF. | **prōfuerō** | ——— |

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse; FUT. prōfutūrum esse (prōfore); PERF. prōfuisse.

125. **Possum**, *be able, can*

**Possum** is compounded of **pot** (**potis, pote**) and **sum**; t becomes s before s. The perfect forms and the present participle are from an old form **poteō, potēre.**

| | INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|
| | PRESENT | |
| Sg. 1. | possum, *I am able, can* | possim |
| 2. | potes | possīs |
| 3. | potest | possit |
| Pl. 1. | possumus | possīmus |
| 2. | potestis | possītis |
| 3. | possunt | possint |
| | IMPERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | poteram, *I was able, could* | possem |
| 2. | poterās | possēs |
| 3. | poterat | posset |
| Pl. 1. | poterāmus | possēmus |
| 2. | poterātis | possētis |
| 3. | poterant | possent |
| | FUTURE | |
| Sg. 1. | poterō, *I shall be able* | |
| 2. | poteris | |
| 3. | poterit | |
| | | (lacking) |
| Pl. 1. | poterimus | |
| 2. | poteritis | |
| 3. | poterunt | |
| | PERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | potuī, *I have been able* | potuerim |
| 2. | potuistī | potuerīs |
| 3. | potuit | potuerit |
| Pl. 1. | potuimus | potuerīmus |
| 2. | potuistis | potuerītis |
| 3. | potuērunt, ēre | potuerint |
| | PLUPERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | potueram, *I had been able* | potuissem |
| 2. | potuerās | potuissēs |
| 3. | potuerat | potuisset |
| Pl. 1. | potuerāmus | potuissēmus |
| 2. | potuerātis | potuissētis |
| 3. | potuerant | potuissent |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. potuerō, *I shall have been able* | |
| | 2. potueris | |
| | 3. potuerit | |
| Pl. | 1. potuerimus | (lacking) |
| | 2. potueritis | |
| | 3. potuerint | |

| INFINITIVE | PARTICIPLE |
|---|---|
| Pres. posse | Pres. potēns (79) |
| Perf. potuisse | |

## REGULAR VERBS

### Systems of Conjugation

**126.** 1. There are two systems of conjugation, the vowel and the consonant. The consonant system is confined to a small class. The vowel system comprises four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, **ā, ē, e, ī,** which may be found by dropping **re** from the present infinitive active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem characteristic is called the consonant stem characteristic.

2. From the present stem, as seen in the present indicative and present infinitive active; from the perfect stem, as seen in the perfect indicative active; and from the perfect passive participial stem, can be derived all forms of the verb. These forms are accordingly called the principal parts; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

| | Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind. | Perf. Part. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I. | parō | parāre | parāvī | parātus, *prepare* |
| II. | habeō | habēre | habuī | habitus, *have* |
| III. | dīcō | dīcere | dīxī | dictus, *say* |
| | capiō | capere | cēpī | captus, *take* |
| IV. | audiō | audīre | audīvī | audītus, *hear* |

### Formation of the Tenses

**127.** The tenses are formed by the addition of the personal endings to the various stems, either directly or by means of certain tense signs, as shown in the paradigms.

**128.** While no practical rules for the formation of the tenses can be given, it is well to observe that:

1. The second person singular imperative active is the same as the present stem.

2. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed from the present infinitive active by adding **m,** etc. for active and **r,** etc. for passive.

3. The second person singular imperative passive and second person singular present passive in **re** are the same as the present infinitive active. Hence **ris** is preferred in the present indicative passive in order to avoid confusion.

4. The present subjunctive active and future indicative active in the third and fourth conjugations are alike in the first person singular.

5. The future perfect indicative active and the perfect subjunctive active differ only in the first person singular, except for the quantity of the **i**.

6. **Euphonic changes** sometimes occur in the consonant stem characteristic in the perfect and participial stem. Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**; **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**; **c, g, qu,** with **s,** become **x**; **t** and **d** before **s** are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped; thus: **scrībō, scrīpsī (scrībsī), scrīptus; legō, lēctus (lēgtus); coquō, coctus (coqtus); dīcō, dīxī (dīcsī); jungō, jūnxī (jūngsī); coquō, coxī (coqsī); edō, ēsus (edsus); cēdō, cessī (cedsī); mittō, mīsī (mitsī), missus (mitsus).**

## First Conjugation

### Conjugation of *parō, prepare*

Principal Parts: **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus**

*ACTIVE*

| **129.** INDICATIVE | **130.** SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|
| PRESENT | |
| *I prepare, am preparing, do prepare* | |
| Sg. 1. **parō** | **parem** |
| 2. **parās** | **parēs** |
| 3. **parat** | **paret** |
| Pl. 1. **parāmus** | **parēmus** |
| 2. **parātis** | **parētis** |
| 3. **parant** | **parent** |
| IMPERFECT | |
| *I prepared, was preparing, did prepare* | |
| Sg. 1. **parābam** | **parārem** |
| 2. **parābās** | **parārēs** |
| 3. **parābat** | **parāret** |
| Pl. 1. **parābāmus** | **parārēmus** |
| 2. **parābātis** | **parārētis** |
| 3. **parābant** | **parārent** |

FUTURE

*I shall prepare, shall be preparing*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | parābō | |
| 2. | parābis | |
| 3. | parābit | |
| | | (lacking) |
| Pl. 1. | parābimus | |
| 2. | parābitis | |
| 3. | parābunt | |

PERFECT

*I prepared, have prepared, did prepare*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | parāvī | parāverim |
| 2. | parāvistī | parāverīs |
| 3. | parāvit | parāverit |
| Pl. 1. | parāvimus | parāverīmus |
| 2. | parāvistis | parāverītis |
| 3. | parāvērunt, ēre | parāverint |

PLUPERFECT

*I had prepared*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | parāveram | parāvissem |
| 2. | parāverās | parāvissēs |
| 3. | parāverat | parāvisset |
| Pl. 1. | parāverāmus | parāvissēmus |
| 2. | parāverātis | parāvissētis |
| 3. | parāverant | parāvissent |

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have prepared*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | parāverō | |
| 2. | parāveris | |
| 3. | parāverit | |
| | | (lacking) |
| Pl. 1. | parāverimus | |
| 2. | parāveritis | |
| 3. | parāverint | |

## 131. IMPERATIVE

| | PRESENT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | parā, *prepare* | parātō, *you shall prepare* |
| 3. | ——— | parātō, *he shall prepare* |
| Pl. 1. | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | parāte, *prepare* | parātōte, *you shall prepare* |
| 3. | ——— | parantō, *they shall prepare* |

### 132. INFINITIVE

PRES. **parāre,** *to prepare*
PERF. **parāvisse,** *to have prepared*
FUT. **parātūrus, a, um esse,** *to be about to prepare*

### 133. GERUND

GEN. **parandī,** *of preparing*
DAT. **parandō,** *to, for preparing*
ACC. **parandum,** *preparing, to prepare*
ABL. **parandō,** *with, from, by preparing*

### 134. SUPINE

**parātum,** *to prepare*
**parātū,** *to prepare, in the preparing*

### 135. PARTICIPLES

PRES. *Nom.* **parāns** (*Gen.* **parantis**), *preparing* (79)
FUT. **parātūrus, a, um,** (*being*) *about to prepare* (71, *a*)

## FIRST CONJUGATION

### *PASSIVE*

| 136. INDICATIVE | 137. SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|
| **PRESENT** | |
| *I am (being) prepared* | |
| Sg. 1. paror | parer |
| 2. parāris, re | parēris, re |
| 3. parātur | parētur |
| Pl. 1. parāmur | parēmur |
| 2. parāminī | parēminī |
| 3. parantur | parentur |
| **IMPERFECT** | |
| *I was (being) prepared* | |
| Sg. 1. parābar | parārer |
| 2. parābāris, re | parārēris, re |
| 3. parābātur | parārētur |
| Pl. 1. parābāmur | parārēmur |
| 2. parābāminī | parārēminī |
| 3. parābantur | parārentur |
| **FUTURE** | |
| *I shall be prepared* | |
| Sg. 1. parābor | |
| 2. parāberis, re | |
| 3. parābitur | (lacking) |
| Pl. 1. parābimur | |
| 2. parābiminī | |
| 3. parābuntur | |

PERFECT

| | | *I have been prepared, was prepared* | | parātus, a, um sim |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. | parātus, a, um sum | | |
| | 2. | | es | sīs |
| | 3. | | est | sit |
| Pl. | 1. | parātī, ae, a sumus | | parātī, ae, a sīmus |
| | 2. | | estis | sītis |
| | 3. | | sunt | sint |

PLUPERFECT

| | | *I had been prepared* | | parātus, a, um essem |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. | parātus, a, um eram | | |
| | 2. | | erās | essēs |
| | 3. | | erat | esset |
| Pl. | 1. | parātī, ae, a erāmus | | parātī, ae, a essēmus |
| | 2. | | erātis | essētis |
| | 3. | | erant | essent |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | *I shall have been prepared* |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. | parātus, a, um erō |
| | 2. | eris |
| | 3. | erit |
| Pl. | 1. | parātī, ae, a erimus |
| | 2. | eritis |
| | 3. | erunt |

## 138. IMPERATIVE

| | | PRESENT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | parāre, *be prepared* | parātor, *you shall be prepared* |
| | 3. | ——— | parātor, *he shall be prepared* |
| Pl. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | parāminī, *be prepared* | ——— |
| | 3. | ——— | parantor, *they shall be prepared* |

## 139. INFINITIVE

| | |
|---|---|
| PRES. | parārī, *to be prepared* |
| PERF. | parātus, a, um esse, *to have been prepared* |
| FUT. | parātum īrī, *to be about to be prepared* |

## 140. PARTICIPLE

PERF. parātus, a, um, *having been prepared* (71, *a*)

## 141. GERUNDIVE

parandus, a, um, (*about*) *to be prepared; must be, ought to be prepared* (71, *a*)

## Second Conjugation

### Conjugation of *habeō, have*

Principal Parts: habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

| | *ACTIVE* | | *PASSIVE* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **142.** Indicative | **143.** Subjunctive | **144.** Indicative | **145.** Subjunctive |
| | | PRESENT | | |
| Sg. 1. | habeō | habeam | habeor | habear |
| 2. | habēs | habeās | habēris, re | habeāris, re |
| 3. | habet | habeat | habētur | habeātur |
| Pl. 1. | habēmus | habeāmus | habēmur | habeāmur |
| 2. | habētis | habeātis | habēminī | habeāminī |
| 3. | habent | habeant | habentur | habeantur |
| | | IMPERFECT | | |
| Sg. 1. | habēbam | habērem | habēbar | habērer |
| 2. | habēbās | habērēs | habēbāris, re | habērēris, re |
| 3. | habēbat | habēret | habēbātur | habērētur |
| Pl. 1. | habēbāmus | habērēmus | habēbāmur | habērēmur |
| 2. | habēbātis | habērētis | habēbāminī | habērēminī |
| 3. | habēbant | habērent | habēbantur | habērentur |
| | | FUTURE | | |
| Sg. 1. | habēbō | | habēbor | |
| 2. | habēbis | | habēberis, re | |
| 3. | habēbit | | habēbitur | |
| Pl. 1. | habēbimus | | habēbimur | |
| 2. | habēbitis | | habēbiminī | |
| 3. | habēbunt | | habēbuntur | |
| | | PERFECT | | |
| Sg. 1. | habuī | habuerim | habitus, a, um { sum | habitus, a, um { sim |
| 2. | habuistī | habuerīs | es | sīs |
| 3. | habuit | habuerit | est | sit |
| Pl. 1. | habuimus | habuerīmus | habitī, ae, a { sumus | habitī, ae, a { sīmus |
| 2. | habuistis | habuerītis | estis | sītis |
| 3. | habuērunt, ēre | habuerint | sunt | sint |
| | | PLUPERFECT | | |
| Sg. 1. | habueram | habuissem | habitus, a, um { eram | habitus, a, um { essem |
| 2. | habuerās | habuissēs | erās | essēs |
| 3. | habuerat | habuisset | erat | esset |
| Pl. 1. | habuerāmus | habuissēmus | habitī, ae, a { erāmus | habitī, ae, a { essēmus |
| 2. | habuerātis | habuissētis | erātis | essētis |
| 3. | habuerant | habuissent | erant | essent |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | habuerō | habitus, a, um | erō |
| 2. | habueris | | eris |
| 3. | habuerit | | erit |
| Pl. 1. | habuerimus | habitī, ae, a | erimus |
| 2. | habueritis | | eritis |
| 3. | habuerint | | erint |

**146.** IMPERATIVE

| | PRESENT | FUTURE | PRESENT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | habē | habētō | habēre | habētor |
| 3. | ——— | habētō | ——— | habētor |
| Pl. 1. | ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | habēte | habētōte | habēminī | ——— |
| 3. | ——— | habentō | ——— | habentor |

**147.** INFINITIVE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | habēre | habērī |
| PERF. | habuisse | habitus, a, um esse |
| FUT. | habitūrus, a, um esse | habitum īrī |

**148.** GERUND **149.** SUPINE **150.** PARTICIPLES

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| GEN. | habendī | | PRES. *Nom.* | habēns; *Gen.* habentis (79) |
| DAT. | habendō | | FUT. | habitūrus, a, um (71, *a*) |
| ACC. | habendum | ACC. habitum | PERF. | habitus, a, um (71, *a*) |
| ABL. | habendō | ABL. habitū | | |

GERUNDIVE

habendus, a, um (71, *a*)

## THIRD CONJUGATION

### Conjugation of *dīcō, say*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus

| | *ACTIVE* | | *PASSIVE* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **151.** INDICATIVE | **152.** SUBJUNCTIVE | **153.** INDICATIVE | **154.** SUBJUNCTIVE |
| | PRESENT | | | |
| Sg. 1. | dīcō | dīcam | dīcor | dīcar |
| 2. | dīcis | dīcās | dīceris, re | dīcāris, re |
| 3. | dīcit | dīcat | dīcitur | dīcātur |
| Pl. 1. | dīcimus | dīcāmus | dīcimur | dīcāmur |
| 2. | dīcitis | dīcātis | dīciminī | dīcāminī |
| 3. | dīcunt | dīcant | dīcuntur | dīcantur |

| | INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE | INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | IMPERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | dīcēbam | dīcerem | dīcēbar | dīcerer |
| 2. | dīcēbās | dīcerēs | dīcēbāris, re | dīcerēris, re |
| 3. | dīcēbat | dīceret | dīcēbātur | dīcerētur |
| Pl. 1. | dīcēbāmus | dīcerēmus | dīcēbāmur | dīcerēmur |
| 2. | dīcēbātis | dīcerētis | dīcēbāminī | dīcerēminī |
| 3. | dīcēbant | dīcerent | dīcēbantur | dīcerentur |
| | | | FUTURE | |
| Sg. 1. | dīcam | | dīcar | |
| 2. | dīcēs | | dīcēris, re | |
| 3. | dīcet | | dīcētur | |
| Pl. 1. | dīcēmus | | dīcēmur | |
| 2. | dīcētis | | dīcēminī | |
| 3. | dīcent | | dīcentur | |
| | | | PERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | dīxī | dīxerim | dictus, a, um { sum | dictus, a, um { sim |
| 2. | dīxistī | dīxerīs | es | sīs |
| 3. | dīxit | dīxerit | est | sit |
| Pl. 1. | dīximus | dīxerīmus | dictī, ae, a { sumus | dictī, ae, a { sīmus |
| 2. | dīxistis | dīxerītis | estis | sītis |
| 3. | dīxērunt, ēre | dīxerint | sunt | sint |
| | | | PLUPERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | dīxeram | dīxissem | dictus, a, um { eram | dictus, a, um { essem |
| 2. | dīxerās | dīxissēs | erās | essēs |
| 3. | dīxerat | dīxisset | erat | esset |
| Pl. 1. | dīxerāmus | dīxissēmus | dictī, ae, a { erāmus | dictī, ae, a { essēmus |
| 2. | dīxerātis | dīxissētis | erātis | essētis |
| 3. | dīxerant | dīxissent | erant | essent |
| | | | FUTURE PERFECT | |
| Sg. 1. | dīxerō | | dictus, a, um { erō | |
| 2. | dīxeris | | eris | |
| 3. | dīxerit | | erit | |
| Pl. 1. | dīxerimus | | dictī, ae, a { erimus | |
| 2. | dīxeritis | | eritis | |
| 3. | dīxerint | | erunt | |

## 155. IMPERATIVE

| | PRESENT | FUTURE | PRESENT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | dīc [1] | dīcitō | dīcere | dīcitor |
| 3. | ——— | dīcitō | ——— | dīcitor |
| Pl. 1. | ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | dīcite | dīcitōte | dīciminī | ——— |
| 3. | ——— | dīcuntō | ——— | dīcuntor |

[1] See 202.

**156.** INFINITIVE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | dīcere | dīcī |
| PERF. | dīxisse | dictus, a, um esse |
| FUT. | dictūrus, a, um esse | dictum īrī |

**157.** GERUND

| | |
|---|---|
| GEN. | dīcendī |
| DAT. | dīcendō |
| ACC. | dīcendum |
| ABL. | dīcendō |

**158.** SUPINE

| | |
|---|---|
| ACC. | dictum |
| ABL. | dictū |

**159.** PARTICIPLES

| | |
|---|---|
| PRES. | *Nom.* dīcēns; *Gen.* dīcentis (79) |
| FUT. | dictūrus, a, um (71, *a*) |
| PERF. | dictus, a, um (71, *a*) |

**160.** GERUNDIVE

dīcendus, a, um

## VERBS IN iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

**161.** Many verbs of the third conjugation with present indicative in **iō**, change **i** to **e** before **r** and drop it when it would come before **e** or **i** in all tenses of the present system except the future, participle, and gerund. Otherwise they follow the inflection of **dīcere.**

**162.** These verbs are **capiō,** *take;* **cupiō,** *desire;* **faciō,** *do, make;* **fodiō,** *dig;* **fugiō,** *flee;* **jaciō,** *throw;* **pariō,** *produce, bear;* **quatiō,** *shake;* **rapiō,** *snatch;* **sapiō,** *be wise,* and their compounds; also compounds of **–liciō, –spiciō;** and the deponents **gradior,** *go,* and its compounds; **morior,** *die,* and its compounds; **patior,** *endure, suffer,* and its compounds.

### Synopsis of Present System of *capiō, take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

| | *ACTIVE* | | *PASSIVE* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **163.** INDICATIVE | **164.** SUBJUNCTIVE | **165.** INDICATIVE | **166.** SUBJUNCTIVE |
| | | PRESENT | | |
| Sg. 1. | capiō | capiam | capior | capiar |
| 2. | capis | capiās | caperis, re | capiāris, re |
| 3. | capit | capiat | capitur | capiātur |
| Pl. 1. | capimus | capiāmus | capimur | capiāmur |
| 2. | capitis | capiātis | capiminī | capiāminī |
| 3. | capiunt | capiant | capiuntur | capiantur |
| | | IMPERFECT | | |
| Sg. 1. | capiēbam | caperem | capiēbar | caperer |
| | etc. | etc. | etc. | etc. |
| | | FUTURE | | |
| Sg. 1. | capiam | | capiar | |
| 2. | capiēs | | capiēris, re | |
| | etc. | | etc. | |

**167.** IMPERATIVE

| | PRESENT | FUTURE | PRESENT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | cape | capitō | capere | capitor |
| 3. | ——— | capitō | ——— | capitor |
| Pl. 1. | ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | capite | capitōte | capiminī | ——— |
| 3. | ——— | capiuntō | ——— | capiuntor |

**168.** INFINITIVE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | capere | capī |

| 169. PARTICIPLE | 170. GERUND | 171. GERUNDIVE |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. capiēns (79) | *Gen.* capiendī | capiendus, a, um (71, *a*) |

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

### Conjugation of *audiō, hear*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

| | *ACTIVE* | | *PASSIVE* | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **172.** INDICATIVE | **173.** SUBJUNCTIVE | **174.** INDICATIVE | **175.** SUBJUNCTIVE |
| | PRESENT | | | |
| Sg. 1. | audiō | audiam | audior | audiar |
| 2. | audīs | audiās | audīris, re | audiāris, re |
| 3. | audit | audiat | audītur | audiātur |
| Pl. 1. | audīmus | audiāmus | audīmur | audiāmur |
| 2. | audītis | audiātis | audīminī | audiāminī |
| 3. | audiunt | audiant | audiuntur | audiantur |
| | IMPERFECT | | | |
| Sg. 1. | audiēbam | audīrem | audiēbar | audīrer |
| 2. | audiēbās | audīrēs | audiēbāris, re | audīrēris, re |
| 3. | audiēbat | audīret | audiēbātur | audīrētur |
| Pl. 1. | audiēbāmus | audīrēmus | audiēbāmur | audīrēmur |
| 2. | audiēbātis | audīrētis | audiēbāminī | audīrēminī |
| 3. | audiēbant | audīrent | audiēbantur | audīrentur |
| | FUTURE | | | |
| Sg. 1. | audiam | | audiar | |
| 2. | audiēs | | audiēris, re | |
| 3. | audiet | | audiētur | |
| Pl. 1. | audiēmus | | audiēmur | |
| 2. | audiētis | | audiēminī | |
| 3. | audient | | audientur | |

PERFECT

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. audīvī | audīverim | audītus, a, um | sum | audītus, a, um | sim |
| 2. audīvistī | audīverīs | | es | | sīs |
| 3. audīvit | audīverit | | est | | sit |
| Pl. 1. audīvimus | audīverīmus | audītī, ae, a | sumus | audītī, ae, a | sīmus |
| 2. audīvistis | audīverītis | | estis | | sītis |
| 3. audīvērunt, ēre | audīverint | | sunt | | sint |

PLUPERFECT

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. audīveram | audīvissem | audītus, a, um | eram | audītus, a, um | essem |
| 2. audīverās | audīvissēs | | erās | | essēs |
| 3. audīverat | audīvisset | | erat | | esset |
| Pl. 1. audīverāmus | audīvissēmus | audītī, ae, a | erāmus | audītī, ae, a | essēmus |
| 2. audīverātis | audīvissētis | | erātis | | essētis |
| 3. audīverant | audīvissent | | erant | | essent |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. audīverō | audītus, a, um | erō |
| 2. audīveris | | eris |
| 3. audīverit | | erit |
| Pl. 1. audīverimus | audītī, ae, a | erimus |
| 2. audīveritis | | eritis |
| 3. audīverint | | erunt |

## 176. IMPERATIVE

| | PRESENT | FUTURE | PRESENT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. audī | audītō | audīre | audītor |
| | 3. ——— | audītō | ——— | audītor |
| Pl. | 1. ——— | ——— | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. audīte | audītōte | audīminī | ——— |
| | 3. ——— | audiuntō | ——— | audiuntor |

## 177. INFINITIVE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | audīre | audīrī |
| PERF. | audīvisse | audītus, a, um esse |
| FUT. | audītūrus, a, um esse | audītum īrī |

## 178. GERUND

| | |
|---|---|
| GEN. | audiendī |
| DAT. | audiendō |
| ACC. | audiendum |
| ABL. | audiendō |

## 179. SUPINE

audītum
audītū

## 180. PARTICIPLES

PRES. *Nom.* audiēns; *Gen.* audientis (79)
FUT. audītūrus, a, um (71, *a*)
PERF. audītus, a, um (71, *a*)

## 181. GERUNDIVE

audiendus, a, um

## DEPONENT VERBS

**182.** Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the present and future active participles, and the future active infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a present, future, and perfect participle, all with active meaning. The gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

### I. First Conjugation

### Conjugation of *moror, delay*

Principal Parts: **moror, morārī, morātus**

| **183.** INDICATIVE | **184.** SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|
| PRESENT | |
| *I delay, am delaying, do delay* | |
| Sg. 1. moror | morer |
| 2. morāris, re | morēris, re |
| 3. morātur | morētur |
| Pl. 1. morāmur | morēmur |
| 2. morāminī | morēminī |
| 3. morantur | morentur |
| IMPERFECT | |
| *I was delaying, delayed, did delay* | |
| Sg. 1. morābar | morārer |
| 2. morābāris, re | morārēris, re |
| 3. morābātur | morārētur |
| Pl. 1. morābāmur | morārēmur |
| 2. morābāminī | morārēminī |
| 3. morābantur | morārentur |
| FUTURE | |
| *I shall delay, will delay* | |
| Sg. 1. morābor | |
| 2. morāberis, re | |
| 3. morābitur | |
| Pl. 1. morābimur | |
| 2. morābiminī | |
| 3. morābuntur | |
| PERFECT | |
| *I have delayed, delayed, did delay* | |
| Sg. 1. morātus, a, um sum | morātus, a, um sim |
| 2. es | sīs |
| 3. est | sit |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pl. | 1. morātī, ae, a | sumus | | morātī, ae, a | sīmus |
| | 2. | estis | | | sītis |
| | 3. | sunt | | | sint |

PLUPERFECT

*I had delayed*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. morātus, a, um | eram | | morātus, a, um | essem |
| | 2. | erās | | | essēs |
| | 3. | erat | | | esset |
| Pl. | 1. morātī, ae, a | erāmus | | morātī, ae, a | essēmus |
| | 2. | erātis | | | essētis |
| | 3. | erant | | | essent |

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall (will) have delayed*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. morātus, a, um | erō |
| | 2. | eris |
| | 3. | erit |
| Pl. | 1. morātī, ae, a | erimus |
| | 2. | eritis |
| | 3. | erunt |

## 185. IMPERATIVE

| | PRESENT | FUTURE |
|---|---|---|
| Sg. 1. | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | morāre, *delay* | morātor, *you shall delay* |
| 3. | ——— | morātor, *he shall delay* |
| Pl. 1. | ——— | ——— |
| 2. | morāminī, *delay* | ——— |
| 3. | ——— | morantur, *they shall delay* |

## 186. INFINITIVE

PRES. morārī, *to delay*
FUT. morātūrus, a, um esse, *to be about to delay*
PERF. morātus, a, um esse, *to have delayed*

## 187. SUPINE

ACC. morātum, *to delay, for delaying*
ABL. morātū, *to delay, in the delaying*

## 188. PARTICIPLES

PRES. morāns, antis, *delaying* (79)
FUT. morātūrus, a, um, *about to delay* (71, *a*)
PERF. morātus, a, um, *having delayed* (71, *a*)

## 189. GERUNDIVE

morandus, a, um, (*one*) *to be delayed, about to be delayed* (71, *a*)

## 190. GERUND

GEN. morandī, *of delaying*

## II. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations

**Synopsis of *fateor, confess; sequor, follow; patior, endure; experior, try***

### 191. INDICATIVE

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | fateor | sequor | patior | experior |
| | fatēris, etc. | sequeris | pateris | experīris |
| Imperf. | fatēbar | sequēbar | patiēbar | experiēbar |
| Fut. | fatēbor | sequar | patiar | experiar |
| Perf. | fassus sum | secūtus sum | passus sum | expertus sum |
| Pluperf. | fassus eram | secūtus eram | passus eram | expertus eram |
| Fut. Perf. | fassus erō | secūtus erō | passus erō | expertus erō |

### 192. SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | fatear | sequar | patiar | experiar |
| | fateāris, etc. | sequāris | patiāris | experiāris |
| Imperf. | fatērer | sequerer | paterer | experīrer |
| Perf. | fassus sim | secūtus sim | passus sim | expertus sim |
| Pluperf. | fassus essem | secūtus essem | passus essem | expertus essem |

### 193. IMPERATIVE

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | fatēre | sequere | patere | experīre |
| Fut. | fatētor | sequitor | patitor | experītor |

### 194. INFINITIVE

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | fatērī | sequī | patī | experīrī |
| Fut. | fassūrus esse | secūtūrus esse | passūrus esse | expertūrus esse |
| Perf. | fassus esse | secūtus esse | passus esse | expertus esse |

### 195. PARTICIPLES

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | fatēns | sequēns | patiēns | experiēns |
| Fut. | fassūrus | secūtūrus | passūrus | expertūrus |
| Perf. | fassus | secūtus | passus | expertus |

### 196. GERUND

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | fatendī | sequendī | patiendī | experiendī |

### 197. GERUNDIVE

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | fatendus | sequendus | patiendus | experiendus |

### 198. SUPINE

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | fassum | secūtum | passum | expertum |
| | fassū | secūtū | passū | expertū |

## Periphrastic Conjugation

**199.** The periphrastic conjugation arises from the combination of the future participle active and passive (the gerundive) with forms of the verb **sum.**

*a.* The active periphrastic denotes something about to take place.

*b.* The passive periphrastic denotes necessity or duty.

**200.** *ACTIVE*

| | INDICATIVE | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | **parātūrus (a, um) sum,** *am about to prepare* | **parātūrus (a, um) sim** |
| Imperf. | **parātūrus eram,** *was about to prepare* | **parātūrus essem** |
| Fut. | **parātūrus erō,** *shall be about to prepare* | |
| Perf. | **parātūrus fuī,** *have been, was, about to prepare* | **parātūrus fuerim** |
| Pluperf. | **parātūrus fueram,** *had been about to prepare* | **parātūrus fuissem** |
| Fut. Perf. | **parātūrus fuerō,** *shall have been about to prepare* | |

INFINITIVE

Pres. **parātūrus (a, um) esse,** *to be about to prepare*
Perf. **parātūrus (a, um) fuisse,** *to have been about to prepare*

**201.** *PASSIVE*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Pres. | **parandus (a, um) sum,** *have to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared* | **parandus (a, um) sim** |
| Imperf. | **parandus eram,** *had to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared* | **parandus essem, forem** |
| Fut. | **parandus erō,** *shall have to be prepared* | |
| Perf. | **parandus fuī,** *have had to be prepared* | **parandus fuerim** |
| Pluperf. | **parandus fueram,** *had had to be prepared* | **parandus fuissem** |
| Fut. Perf. | **parandus fuerō,** *shall have had to be prepared* | |

INFINITIVE

Pres. **parandus (a, um) esse,** *to have to be prepared*
Perf. **parandus fuisse,** *to have had to be prepared*

**202. Irregular Imperatives:** Four verbs, **dīcō,** *say,* **dūcō,** *lead,* **faciō,** *do, make,* **ferō,** *bear,* form the present imperative active **dīc, dūc, fac, fer.** But in early Latin **dīce, dūce, face** are common. The compounds follow the usage of the simple verbs, except prepositional compounds of **faciō.** **Sciō,** *know,* lacks the present imperative **scī.**

**203. Gerunds and Gerundives.** The older ending of the gerund and gerundive in the third and fourth conjugations was **undus;** and **endus** was found only after **u.** In classical times **undus** is frequent, especially in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations; later, **endus** is the regular form.

**204.** 1. **Syncopated and Shorter Forms.** The perfects in **āvī, ēvī, īvī** often drop the **v** before **s** or **r** and contract the vowels throughout, except those in **īvī**, which admit the contraction only before **s.** These forms are called syncopated. They are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the meter.

PERFECT

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | Sg. 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | **parāvistī, parāstī** | **audīvistī, audīstī** |
| | 3. | ——— | ——— |
| | Pl. 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | **parāvistis, parāstis** | **audīvistis, audīstis** |
| | 3. | **parāvērunt, parārunt** | **audīvērunt, audiērunt** |
| SUBJ. | | **parāverim, parārim** etc. | **audīverim, audierim** etc. |

PLUPERFECT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | **parāveram, parāram** etc. | **audīveram, audieram** etc. |
| SUBJ. | **parāvissem, parāssem** etc. | **audīvissem, audīssem** etc. |

FUTURE PERFECT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| INDIC. | **parāverō, parārō** etc. | **audīverō, audierō** etc. |

INFINITIVE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| PERF. | **parāvisse, parāsse** | **audīvisse, audīsse** |

2. In the first and third persons singular and in the first person plural of the perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in perfects in **īvī**, and there is no contraction. It is most common in the perfects of **eō**, *go*, and **petō**, *seek*. The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of **eō**, which are very rare in good prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

3. **nōvī**, *I know*, and **mōvī**, *I have moved*, are also contracted, especially in their compounds.

**Sg.** 2. **nōstī.** **Pl.** 2. **nōstis.** 3. **nōrunt.** *Subj.* **nōrim**, etc. *Pluperf.* **nōram**, etc. *Subj.* **nōssem**, etc. *Inf.* **nōsse.**

But the future perfect **nōrō** is found only in compounds.

*a.* Similar contractions are seen in **mōvī**, but not so often.

4. The shorter form of the ending of the perfect active indicative third plural, **ēre** instead of **ērunt**, and of the second singular, **re** instead of **ris**, is often found. Thus **amāvēre** = **amāvērunt**, *they have loved*, and **amābāre** = **amābāris**, *you were loved.*

### Semideponents

**205.** 1. A few verbs form the perfect forms only as deponents:

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum,** *dare*
**fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum,** *trust*
**gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum,** *rejoice*
**soleō, solēre, solitus sum,** *be accustomed*

## IRREGULAR VERBS

**206.** Irregular in the conjugation of the present stem are:

1. **orior, orīrī, ortus,** *arise*

The present indicative is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the imperfect subjunctive is always **orerer**; but the future participle is **oritūrus.** The compounds follow the same usage except **adorīrī,** *rise up at, attack,* which follows the fourth conjugation.

2. **eō,** *go.*

The stem is **ī,** which, before **a, o, u,** becomes **e.**

Principal Parts: **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus**

| | | **207.** INDICATIVE | **208.** SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|---|
| Pres. | Sg. 1. | eō, *I go* | eam |
| | 2. | īs | eās |
| | 3. | it | eat |
| | Pl. 1. | īmus | eāmus |
| | 2. | ītis | eātis |
| | 3. | eunt | eant |
| Imperf. | | **ībam,** *I went* | **īrem** |
| Fut. | | **ībō,** *I shall go* | ——— |
| Perf. | | **īvī (iī),** *I have gone* | **īverim (ierim)** |
| Pluperf. | | **īveram (ieram),** *I had gone* | **īvissem (īssem)** |

| **209.** | | IMPERATIVE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | ī, *go* | **ītō,** *you shall go* |
| | 3. | ——— | **ītō,** *he shall go* |
| Pl. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | īte, *go* | **ītōte,** *you shall go* |
| | 3. | ——— | **euntō,** *they shall go* |

| **210.** INFINITIVE | **211.** PARTICIPLES |
|---|---|
| Pres. **īre** | Pres. **iēns** (*Gen.* **euntis**) |
| Fut. **itūrus esse** | Fut. **itūrus** |
| Perf. **īvisse (īsse)** | |

**212.** GERUND

**eundī,** etc.

**213.** SUPINE

**itum,** *to go*

*a.* Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the perfect system, where **iī** is the regular form. **Vēneō**, *be for sale*, and **pereō**, *perish*, serve as passives to **vendō**, *sell*, and **perdō**, *destroy*. **Ambiō**, *solicit*, follows the fourth conjugation throughout.

*b.* The passive of the simple verb **eō** is found only in the impersonal forms **ītur, ībātur, itum est, īrī** (in combination with the supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly: so, **praetereō** forms **praetereor, īris, ītur, īmur, īminī, euntur, ībar**, etc.; **itus sum, eram, erō, euntor, ītor, īrī, eundus.**

3. **ferō**, *bear*.

The endings beginning with **t, s,** and **r** are added directly to the root, **fer.**

*a.* Some forms of **ferō** are lacking and are supplied by **tul** and **(t)lā.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

*ACTIVE*

| | | 214. INDICATIVE | 215. SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | Sg. 1. | **ferō**, *I bear* | **feram** |
| | 2. | **fers** | **ferās** |
| | 3. | **fert** | **ferat** |
| | Pl. 1. | **ferimus** | **ferāmus** |
| | 2. | **fertis** | **ferātis** |
| | 3. | **ferunt** | **ferant** |
| IMPERF. | | **ferēbam**, *I was bearing* | **ferem** |
| FUT. | | **feram**, *I shall bear* | ——— |
| PERF. | | **tulī**, *I have borne* | **tulerim** |
| PLUPERF. | | **tuleram**, *I had borne* | **tulissem** |
| FUT. PERF. | | **tulerō**, *I shall have borne* | ——— |

| | | 216. IMPERATIVE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | **fer**, *bear* | **fertō**, *you shall bear* |
| | 3. | ——— | **fertō**, *he shall bear* |
| Pl. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | **ferte**, *bear* | **fertōte**, *you shall bear* |
| | 3. | ——— | **feruntō**, *they shall bear* |

| 217. INFINITIVE | | 218. PARTICIPLES |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | **ferre** | **ferēns, ferentis**, *bearing* |
| FUT. | **lātūrus esse** | |
| PERF. | **tulisse** | **lātūrus** |

| 219. GERUND | 220. SUPINE |
|---|---|
| **ferendī**, etc. | **lātum, lātū** |

*PASSIVE*

| | | 221. INDICATIVE | 222. SUBJUNCTIVE |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | Sg. 1. | feror, *I am borne* | ferar |
| | 2. | ferris | ferāris |
| | 3. | fertur | ferātur |
| | Pl. 1. | ferimur | ferāmur |
| | 2. | feriminī | ferāminī |
| | 3. | feruntur | ferantur |
| IMPERF. | | ferēbar | ferer |
| FUT. | | ferar | ——— |
| PERF. | | lātus sum | lātus sim |
| PLUPERF. | | lātus eram | lātus essem |
| FUT. PERF. | | lātus erō | ——— |

| 223. | | IMPERATIVE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Sg. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | ferre, *be borne* | fertor, *you shall be borne* |
| | 3. | ——— | fertor, *he shall be borne* |
| Pl. | 1. | ——— | ——— |
| | 2. | feriminī, *be borne* | ——— |
| | 3. | ——— | feruntor, *they shall be borne* |

| 224. INFINITIVE | | 225. PARTICIPLES |
|---|---|---|
| PRES. | ferrī, *to be borne* | PERF. lātus, a, um, *borne* |
| FUT. | lātum īrī, *to be about to be borne* | |
| PERF. | lātus esse, *to have been borne* | |

**226.** GERUNDIVE **ferendus, a, um,** *ought to be borne*

4. **fīō,** *become*

**227.** **Fīō** is conjugated in the present, imperfect, and future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the subjunctive imperfect and in the infinitive the stem is increased by **e**; thus, **fierem, fierī,** *to become.* In these forms the **i** is short, but elsewhere it is long except before final **t.**

The infinitive ends in **rī,** and the whole verb in the present system is treated as the passive of **faciō,** *do, make* (161–171). The rest of the verb is formed as a regular passive of **faciō.**

**228.** PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. INDIC. | fīō, *I am made, I become* | SUBJ. | fīam, fīās, fīat, etc. |
| | fīs, fit, fīmus, fītis, fīunt | | |
| IMPERF. | fīēbam, *I was made, I became* | | fierem, fierēs, etc. |
| FUT. | fīam, *I shall be made (become)* | | |
| PERF. | factus sum | | factus sim, etc. |
| PLUPERF. | factus eram | | factus essem, etc. |
| FUT. PERF. | factus erō | | |

| IMPERATIVE | | INFINITIVE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (fī) | (fītō) | PRES. | fierī, *to become* |
| (fītō) | | PERF. | factus esse, *to have become* |
| | | FUT. | factum īrī, *to be about to become* |

**229.** When compounded with prepositions, **faciō** changes the **a** of the stem into **i**, and forms the passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: **perficiō**, *achieve;* passive, **perficior**; **interficiō**, *destroy;* passive, **interficior.** When compounded with words other than prepositions, **faciō** retains its **a**, and uses **fīō** as its passive: **patefaciō**, *lay open;* passive, **patefīō**; **calefaciō**, *warm;* passive, **calefīō.**

**230.** **volō**, *wish;* **nōlō**, *be unwilling;* **mālō**, *prefer.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volō, velle, voluī**
**nōlō, nōlle, noluī**
**mālō, mālle, māluī**

**231.** INDICATIVE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | volō | nōlō | mālō |
| | vīs | nōn vīs | māvīs |
| | vult | nōn vult | māvult |
| | volumus | nōlumus | mālumus |
| | vultis | nōn vultis | māvultis |
| | volunt | nōlunt | mālunt |
| IMPERF. | volēbam | nōlēbam | mālēbam |
| FUT. | volam | nōlam | mālam |
| | volēs, etc. | nōlēs, etc. | mālēs, etc. |
| PERF. | voluī | nōluī | māluī, etc. |
| PLUPERF. | volueram | nōlueram | mālueram, etc. |
| FUT. PERF. | voluerō | nōluerō | māluerō, etc. |

**232.** SUBJUNCTIVE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | velim | nōlim | mālim |
| | velīs | nōlīs | mālīs |
| | velit | nōlit | mālit |
| | velīmus | nōlīmus | mālīmus |
| | velītis | nōlītis | mālītis |
| | velint | nōlint | mālint |
| IMPERF. | vellem | nōllem | māllem |
| PERF. | voluerim | nōluerim | māluerim, etc. |
| PLUPERF. | voluissem | nōluissem | māluissem, etc. |

**233.** IMPERATIVE

Sg. **nōlī, nōlītō**
Pl. **nōlīte, nōlītōte, nōluntō**

**234.** INFINITIVE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | velle | nōlle | mālle |
| PERF. | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

**235.** PARTICIPLES

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| PRES. | volēns | nōlēns | ——— |

# PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX

## AGREEMENT

**236**: A verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as **ego vocō,** *I call;* **tū vocās,** *you call.*

*a.* A collective noun may take its predicate in the plural, as **pars veniunt,** *part come.*

*b.* The nearer subject is preferred to the more remote, as **mīlitēs et dux vēnit,** *the leader and his troops came.*

*c.* The copula may agree in number with the predicate noun, as **amantium īrae amōris integrātiō est,** *lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.* Compare "the wages of sin *is* death."

**237.** The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, as **tālis vir,** *such a man;* **tālēs virī,** *such men;* **tālia dōna,** *such gifts.*

**238.** The common attribute of two or more substantives generally agrees with the nearest, rather than with the most important, as **cūncta maria terraeque patēbant,** *all seas and lands lay open.*

**239.** The common predicate attribute of two or more subjects is usually in the plural, as **pater et māter mortuī sunt,** *father and mother are dead;* but may agree with the nearest or most important, as **Caesar mortuus est et Jūlia,** *Caesar is dead, and Julia also.*

*a.* When the persons of the subjects are different, the predicate takes the first in preference to the second; the second in preference to the third.

*b.* When the genders of the subjects are different, the predicate attribute takes the nearest gender or the strongest (the masculine being the strongest of things with life, the neuter of those without), as **pater et māter mortuī sunt,** *father and mother are dead;* **mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant,** *wall and gate had been struck by lightning.*

**240.** The predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case, as **ille vir erat dux,** *that man was leader.*

*a.* The pronoun used as subject is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate as **negat Epicūrus; hoc enim vestrum lūmen est,** *Epicurus says No; for he is your great light!*

**241.** The appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person, as **Aēneās, pius dux,** *Aeneas, the devoted leader;* **Aēnēās et Dīdō, superbī ducēs,** *Aeneas and Dido, proud leaders.*

**242.** The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, as **vir quī adest,** *the man who is present;* **dōna quae adsunt,** *the gifts which are here;* **ego quī hoc dīcō,** *I who say this.*

*a.* Occasionally the antecedent is attracted into the case of the relative, as **urbem quam statuō vestra est,** *the city which I am founding is yours.*

**243. Poetic Plural.** The plural is often used instead of the singular, especially in poetry, to generalize a statement, for metrical reasons, or for rhetorical effect, as **īrae,** *wrath, wrathful passions;* **fortitūdinēs,** *gallant actions;* **ōra,** *face, features;* **scēptra,** *scepter;* **silentia,** *silence.*

*a.* **Plural of Modesty.** The plural of the first person is sometimes used instead of the singular, as **dīximus multa,** *we (I) have spoken much.* Similarly **nōs** in all its cases for **ego,** etc., and **noster** in all its forms for **meus,** etc. This usage in English is sometimes called the "editorial we."

**244. Disproportion** is indicated by the comparative with **quam prō,** *than for;* **quam ut,** *than that;* **quam quī,** *than who;* as **minor caedēs quam prō tantā victōriā fuit,** *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory;* **major sum quam cui fortūna nocēre possit,** *I am too great for fortune possibly to hurt me.*

**245. In comparing two qualities,** use either **magis quam** with the positive, as **dīsertus magis est quam sapiēns,** *he is eloquent rather than wise (more eloquent than wise);* or a double comparative, **acūtiōrem sē quam ornātiōrem vult,** *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate.*

**246. Superlatives** denoting order and sequence are often used partitively and then usually precede their substantives, as **summa aqua,** *the surface* (of the) *water;* **summus mōns,** *the top* (of the) *mountain;* **prīmō vēre,** *in the beginning* (of) *spring.* Similarly **in mediā urbe,** *in the midst of the city;* **reliqua, cētera Graecia,** *the rest of Greece,* and the like.

## PRONOUNS

**247.** Since the form of the verb indicates its person, the nominative of the personal pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast, as **ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūxistī,** I *drove out kings;* you *bring in tyrants.*

*a.* The forms **meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī** are used as objective genitives; **nostrum** and **vestrum** as partitive genitives (284, 286).

**248.** The reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject, as **ipse sē quisque dīligit, quod sibi quisque cārus est,** *every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself.*

*a.* The reflexive is sometimes used when reference is made to the logical subject, as **ferunt sua flāmina classem,** *their own (favorable) breezes waft the fleet.*

*b.* The reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject, especially in indirect discourse or in substantive volitive clauses (clauses of desire), as **sentit animus sē vī suā movērī,** *the mind feels that it moves by its own force;* **ā mē petīvit ut sēcum essem,** *he asked me to be with him;* **librōs quōs frāter suus relīquisset mihi dōnāvit,** *he gave me the books* (as he said) *that his brother had left.*

**249.** The possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the first and second person pronouns, as **socius meus,** *a comrade of mine;* **tēlum tuum,** *a weapon of yours;* **amor meus,** *my love* (*which I feel*); **spēs tua,** *your hope* (*which you have*).

*a.* The appositive to a possessive adjective is in the genitive, as **urbs meā ūnīus operā fuit salva,** *the city was saved by my exertions alone.*

## ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

**250.** With words of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and ignorance, order and position, time and season, the adjective is commonly employed for the adverb, as **id faciō volēns,** *I do this willing*(*ly*).

## SPECIAL USE OF MOODS

**251. The Indicative,** not the subjunctive, is commonly used to express possibility, power, obligation, and necessity, as **possum persequī permulta oblēctāmenta rērum rūsticārum,** *I might rehearse very many delights of country life;* **ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat,** *you ought to have been led to execution.*

**252. The Potential Subjunctive.** The present or perfect subjunctive may be used to express possibility in the present or future, as **tē superesse velim,** *I should like for you to survive;* **Platōnem nōn nimis valdē laudāverīs,** *you can't praise Plato too much;* the imperfect subjunctive to express possibility in the past, **crēderēs victōs,** *you would* (*might*) *have thought them beaten.*

**253. The Optative Subjunctive.** The subjunctive, sometimes with **utinam,** *would that,* is often used in expressions of wishing. The negative is **nē.** **Valeās,** *farewell!* **nē veniant,** *may they not come!* **utinam nē nātus essem,** *would that I had not been born!* **utinam vīveret frāter,** *would that my brother were alive!*

**254. The Volitive Subjunctive.** The subjunctive may be used in expressions of will, asseveration, command, or concession, as **stet haec urbs,** *may this city continue to stand;* **moriar sī magis gaudērem,** *may I die if I could be more glad;* **amēmus patriam,** *let us love our country;* **sit deus,** *granted that he is a god.* This subjunctive is often called jussive, hortatory,

or concessive, according as it expresses a command, an exhortation, or a concession, respectively.

**255.** The present imperative looks forward to immediate, the future imperative to contingent, fulfilment, as **haec dīcite vestrō rēgī,** *tell this to your king;* **cōnsulēs nēminī pārentō,** *the consuls shall obey no one.*

**256.** The negative of the imperative is regularly **nōlī** with the infinitive; as **nōlī fugere,** *don't flee!* sometimes **nē** or **cavē** (**nē**) with the present or perfect subjunctive is also used, as **cavē** (**nē**) **faciās,** *don't do it!* **nē mortem timeās** (or **timuerītis**), *don't fear death!*

*a.* In poetry **nē** is often found with the imperative, as **nē timē,** *fear not!* **nē fuge,** *don't run!*

## INFINITIVES

**257. The Historical Infinitive.** The present infinitive, with the subject in the nominative, is sometimes used to give a rapid sequence of events, as **hinc Ulixēs terrēre,** *henceforth Ulysses began to frighten* (*me*). This is called the historical infinitive.

**258. The Infinitive as Neuter Subject.** The infinitive with or without a subject may be treated as a neuter subject, object, or predicate, as **dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī,** *it is sweet and glorious to die for one's fatherland;* **turpe est vincī,** *it is shameful to be conquered;* **scit vincere,** *he knows* (*how*) *to conquer;* **vīvere est cōgitāre,** *to live is to think, living is thinking.*

**259. The Complementary Infinitive.** The infinitive is used with verbs of will, desire, power, duty, habit, inclination, resolve, continuance, purpose, etc., as **cupit morī,** *he wishes to die;* **dēbet haec vulnera patī,** *he ought to suffer these wounds.* This is called the complementary infinitive.

**260. The Infinitive as Object.** The accusative with infinitive is used as the object of verbs of emotion, will, and desire; as **tē vēnisse gaudeō,** *I rejoice that you have come;* **mē dīcere vult,** *he wishes me to speak.*

**261. The Infinitive of Purpose.** In poetry the infinitive is often used to express purpose, as **nōn populāre vēnimus,** *we have not come to pillage.*

**262. The Infinitive of Exclamation.** The infinitive with accusative subject is used in exclamation or exclamatory questions, as **mē dēsistere,** *what! I desist?*

**263. The Infinitive of Indirect Statement** (Indirect Discourse). The infinitive is used after verbs of saying, showing, believing, and perceiving, to express an indirect statement; the present infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the perfect infinitive action

prior to it, the future infinitive action future to it, as **dīcit tē errāre,** *he says that you are wrong;* **dīcēbat tē errāre,** *he was saying that you were wrong;* **dīcēbat tē errāsse,** *he was saying that you had been wrong.*

*a.* The future infinitive of **sum** followed by **ut** and the subjunctive is used in indirect statement of future action when the verb has no future participle, as **dīcit fore (futūrum esse) ut metuās,** *he says that you will fear.*

**264. The Infinitive with Nouns.** The poets and later prose writers use the infinitive with nouns denoting attention or opportunity, as **amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs,** *desire to know our misfortunes;* **adfectāre potestās,** *opportunity to seize.*

**265. The Infinitive with Adjectives.** The infinitive is used with many adjectives and with participles of adjectival force, as **nescia vincī pectora,** *hearts not knowing (how) to yield;* **certa morī,** *determined to die.*

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

**266.** The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement, as **sapientia ars vīvendī putanda est,** *philosophy is to be considered the art of living;* **nūlla spēs plācandī deī,** *no hope of appeasing god;* **cupidus maledīcendī,** *eager to abuse.*

**267.** The dative of the gerund or gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of fitness and function; also after words of capacity and adaptation, and to express purpose, as **tēla apta mittendō,** *weapons suitable for hurling;* **comitia cōnsulibus creandīs,** *elections for nominating consuls.*

**268.** The accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used with **ad** to express purpose, as **ad bellandum venimus,** *we come to make war.*

*a.* The accusative of the gerundive is used in agreement with the direct object of verbs of giving, sending, and leaving, etc., to indicate purpose, as **id mihi servandum dedit,** *he gave it to me to keep;* **Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat,** *Conon has the walls rebuilt;* **patriam dīripiendam relīquimus,** *we have left our country to be plundered.*

**269.** The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used to denote means and cause, rarely manner, as **ūnus homō nōbīs cūnctandō restituit rem,** *one man by delaying raised our cause again.*

## SUPINES

**270.** The supine in **um** (accusative) is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose, as **veniunt spectātum,** *they come to see.*

**271.** The supine in **ū** (ablative) is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate respect, as **mīrābile dictū,** *wonderful to relate (in the relating);* **mīrābile vīsū,** *wonderful to see (in the seeing).*

## PARTICIPLES

**272. The Present Participle** denotes continuance; the perfect participle denotes completion at the time of the principal verb.

**273.** The participle is used after verbs of perception and representation to express the actual condition of the object at the time, as **Catōnem vīdī in bibliothēcā sedentem multīs circumfūsum librīs,** *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of books about him;* **illam audīvī fūrtīvā vōce loquentem,** *I heard her talking in a stealthy tone.*

**274. The Future Participle** is used in poetry and occasionally in prose to express desire or purpose, as **fabricāta est māchina īnspectūra domōs ventūraque dēsuper urbī,** *it has been built as an engine of war, to spy into our homes and come down upon the city from above.*

**275. The Perfect Participle** passive is used after verbs of causation and desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired, as **sī quī voluptātibus dūcuntur, missōs faciant honōrēs,** *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them give up honors* (at once and forever).

## CASES

### Nominative

**276.** The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, as **urbs stat,** *the city is standing.*

**277.** The subject of a historical infinitive is in the nominative, as **Ulixēs terrēre,** *Ulysses began to terrorize* (*me*).

**278.** The predicate of a finite form of the verb *to be,* **sum,** or of a verb of seeming or becoming, or of the passive of a verb of making, choosing, showing, thinking, or calling, is in the nominative, as **pater est rēx,** *his father is king;* **pater fit rēx,** *his father becomes king;* **pater vocātur rēx,** *his father is called king.*

**279.** When an active verb of saying, showing, believing, or perceiving, is changed to the passive, the accusative subject of the infinitive may become the nominative subject of the leading verb, as **urbs dīcitur magna fuisse,** *the city is said to have been great.* Compare **dīcunt urbem fuisse magnam,** *they say that the city was great.*

### Genitive

**280. Genitive of Material.** The genitive may be used to denote the material or substance of which a thing consists, as **flūmina lactis,** *rivers of milk.* See 324 for the ablative of material.

**281. The Appositional Genitive** is used with **vōx, nōmen, verbum, rēs, urbs,** etc., as **nōmen amīcitiae,** *the name of friendship;* **urbem Patavī,** *the city of Patavium.*

**282. The Epexegetical Genitive** (or genitive of explanation) is used after **genus, vitium, culpa,** etc., as **virtūtēs continentiae, gravitātis, jūstitiae, fideī,** *the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor.*

**283. The Possessive Genitive** is used to denote possession, as **domus rēgis,** *the palace of the king, the king's palace.*

**284. The Subjective Genitive** is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive; **the Objective Genitive,** of the object of that action, as **metus hostium,** *the fear of the enemy,* which may mean: (1) the fear which the enemy feel (subjective genitive) or (2) the fear felt toward the enemy (objective genitive). The objective genitive is used with nouns, adjectives, and participles used as adjectives, as **cupīdō glōriae,** *desire for glory;* **tempestātum potentem,** *ruling the storms;* **memorem vestrī, oblītum suī,** *mindful of you, forgetful of himself.*

**285. Genitive of Quality.** The genitive with an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing, as **homō maximī corporis,** *a man of gigantic size.* This is called the genitive of quality (characteristic, description). Compare the ablative of quality or characteristic (330).

*a.* The genitive of quality (or description) or the possessive genitive may be used as a predicate, as **id virtūtis est,** *that is a mark of virtue;* **hujus erō vīvus, mortuus hujus erō,** *hers I shall be living; dead, hers shall I be;* **haec domus est patris meī,** *this house is my father's.*

**286. The Partitive Genitive** stands for the whole to which a part belongs, as **pars hominum,** *part of the men;* **maximus omnium,** *greatest of all.* This is sometimes called the genitive of the whole.

**287. Genitive with Special Adjectives and Verbs.** Adjectives and verbs of fullness and want, of knowledge and ignorance, of desire and disgust, of participation and power, may take the genitive. Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in **āx,** as **plēnus labōris,** *full of toil;* **egēnus omnium,** *in need of everything;* **cōnscius rēctī,** *conscious of right;* **ignārus malī,** *ignorant of misfortune;* **cupidus aurī,** *desirous of gold;* **dīligēns vērī,** *careful (a lover of) the truth;* **capāx imperī,** *capable of empire;* **implentur veteris Bacchī,** *they fill themselves with old wine.*

**288. Genitive with Verbs.** Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting usually take the genitive, as **meminit malōrum, oblītus est bonōrum,** *he remembers the evil, forgets the good.*

*a.* Sometimes these verbs take the accusative, especially of things, as **haec ōlim meminisse juvābit,** *to remember these things will one day be a pleasure.*

**289. Verbs of Emotion** take the genitive, as **miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis,** *pity a soul enduring what it does not deserve.*

**290.** Impersonal verbs of emotion take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of the exciting cause, as **tuī mē miseret, meī piget,** *I pity you, I loathe myself.*

**291.** Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting take the genitive of the charge, as **accūsātus est prōditiōnis,** *he was accused of treason;* **damnātus est caedis,** *he was convicted of murder;* **absolūtus est crīminis,** *he was acquitted of the charge.*

**292. Genitive of Value.** Verbs of rating and buying take the genitive of the general value, as **parvī exīstimāre,** *to consider of small account;* **ēmit equōs tantī quantī Caesar voluit,** *he bought the horses at the price Caesar wanted.*

**293. Interest** and **rēfert** take the genitive of the person, rarely of the thing concerned, as **interest omnium rēctē facere,** *it is to the interest of all to do right;* **rēfert omnium,** *it concerns everybody.*

*a.* Sometimes the ablative singular feminine of the possessive adjective is used, as **meā interest, meā rēfert,** *I am concerned.*

**294. Genitive of Respect.** The genitive is used with various adjectives to denote the respect to which a thing is true, as **aeger animī,** *sick at heart.* This is sometimes called the genitive of specification.

## Dative

**295. The Indirect Object** is put in the dative, as **aurum hominī dat,** *he gives gold to the man.*

**296.** Some verbs of giving take either the dative and the accusative, or the accusative and the ablative, as **hominī aurum dōnat,** *he presents the gold to the man;* **hominem aurō dōnat,** *he presents the man with gold.*

**297. Dative with Special Verbs.** Many verbs meaning favor, help, trust, bid and forbid, believe, persuade, obey, serve, threaten, pardon, spare, join, and contend, take the dative, as **invideō nēminī,** *I envy no one;* **cēdit fortūnae,** *he yields to fortune;* **id mihi placet,** *that pleases me;* **pārēmus ducī,** *we obey our leader;* **crēdit hominī,** *he trusts the man.*

**298. Dative with Compounds.** Many intransitive verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super,** may take a

dative, as **accēdō equō,** *I approach the horse;* **antecellit omnibus,** *he excels all;* **nox incubat marī,** *night broods over the sea;* **piger ipse sibi obstat,** *the lazy man stands in his own way.*

*a.* Transitive verbs so compounded also take an accusative, as **mē vestrīs ōrīs deus appulit,** *god drove me to your shores.*

**299. Dative of Possession.** The dative is used with **esse** to denote possession, as **est ager nōbīs,** *we have a field.*

**300. The Ethical Dative** is used of the personal pronouns only, as **ecce tibi homō,** *here's your man!* **tibi bellum geret,** *he shall wage war* (*for you, let me tell you*).

**301. The Dative of Reference** is used of the person interested or concerned in the action or of the person to whom a statement is referred, as **deō altāria fūmant,** *the altars smoke in honor of the god;* **pulchra est multīs,** *she is beautiful to many* (in the eyes of many); **est urbe ēgressīs tumulus,** *as you go out of town* (*to those who have gone out of town*) *there is a mound.* This is also called the dative of interest, and at times is called the dative of advantage and of disadvantage.

**302. The Dative of Agent** is used with a passive verb, especially with the gerundive, as **id faciendum mihi,** *this must be done by me, I must do this;* **vetor fātīs,** *I am forbidden by the fates;* **urbs capta est mihi,** *the city was captured by me.*

**303. Dative of Purpose.** The dative may denote the object for which (purpose), as **pars optāre locum tēctō,** *part were choosing a site for a home.*

*a.* The Dative of Purpose is often used in combination with the dative of reference (301), as **auxiliō iīs fuit,** *he was a help to them;* **id erit cūrae mihi,** *that shall be my care.*

**304. Dative with Adjectives.** Adjectives of friendliness, fullness, likeness, nearness, with their opposites, take the dative, as **similis est hominī,** *he is like a man;* **homō amīcus est mihi,** *the man is friendly to me;* **id erit ūtile omnibus,** *this will be useful to all;* **proximus sum egomet mihi,** *myself am nearest to me.*

**305. Dative of Separation.** Many verbs of warding off, robbing, and ridding, depriving, and separation take a dative, especially in poetry, as **ēripiēs mihi hunc errōrem,** *you will rid me of this mistake;* **silicī scintillam excūdit,** *he strikes a spark from the flint.* This is called the dative of separation.

**306. Dative of Direction.** In poetry the place to which, or limit of motion, is often expressed by the dative, as **it clāmor caelō,** *a shout goes to heaven;* **multōs dēmittimus Orcō,** *we send many to Hades.*

## Accusative

**307. The Direct Object** of active transitive verbs is in the accusative case and may denote either the object effected or the object affected, as **bellum gerunt,** *they wage war* (object *effected* or result produced); **condidit urbem,** *he founds the city* (object *effected*); **capit urbem,** *he captures the city* (object *affected*); **rēx dūcit hominēs,** *the king leads the men* (object *affected*).

**308. Accusative with Compounds.** Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of motion, compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trāns,** take the accusative, as **adit urbem,** *he approaches the city;* **poenam subit,** *he submits to punishment.*

*a.* Transitive verbs thus compounded may have two accusatives, as **exercitum flūmen trājēcit,** *he threw his army across the river.*

**309.** In poetry the passive is often used in a reflexive or middle sense, as **fertur in hostīs,** *he charges upon the enemy.*

*a.* When thus used the verb may take an accusative as a direct object, as **ferrum cingitur,** *he girds on (girds himself with) the steel;* **sinūs collēcta,** *having gathered her robes;* **tūnsae pectora,** *beating their breasts;* **īnsternor umerōs,** *I spread over my shoulders.*

**310.** The accusative and ablative of certain adjectives are used adverbially, as **multum jactātus,** *much tossed;* **prīmō,** *at first.* See 93–94.

**311. Accusative of Respect.** In poetry the accusative is often used with an adjective or verb to denote the part concerned, as **nūda genū,** *with knee bare (bare as to her knee);* **ōs umerōsque deō similis,** *like a god in (as to) face and shoulders.* This is called the accusative of respect or specification.

**312. Accusative with Prepositions.** The accusative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

**ante, apud, ad, adversum**
**circum, cis, ob, trāns, secundum**
**penes, pōne, prope, per,**
**post,** and all in **–ā,** and **–ter.**[1]

**313. Cognate Accusative.** Intransitive verbs may take an accusative of similar form or meaning, as **dum vītam vīvās,** *as long as you live;* **somnium somniāvī,** *I dreamed a dream.* This is called a cognate accusative.

**314. Accusative of Extent.** The accusative may express extent in space, time, or degree, as **tumulum centum pedēs altum,** *a mound one hundred feet high;* **fuit rēx decem annōs,** *he was king ten years;* **sī mē amās tantum quantum tē amō,** *if you love me as I love you.* This is called

[1] Observe the metrical form of these four lines.

the accusative of extent. With expressions of time this is often called the accusative of duration of time.

**315. Place Whither** (place to which) is regularly denoted by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in**, as **vēnit ad Italiam,** *he came to Italy.* This is sometimes called the accusative of limit of motion.

*a.* The names of towns, small islands, **domus,** and **rūs,** do not ordinarily take the preposition, as **vēnit Rōmam,** *he came to Rome;* **pater, venī domum,** *father, come home!* **fugiunt rūs,** *they flee to the country.*

*b.* In poetry also the preposition is often omitted, as **Ītaliam Lāvīnaque vēnit lītora,** *he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.*

**316. Two Accusatives.** Verbs meaning to inquire, require, teach, and conceal take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing, as **quis tē illud docuit,** *who taught you that?* **Mīlēsiōs nāvem poposcit,** *he demanded a ship of the Milesians;* **quid mē istud rogās,** *why do you ask me that?*

*a.* Verbs of naming, making, taking, choosing, and showing, take two accusatives of the same person or thing, as **vocant urbem Rōmam,** *they call the city Rome;* **illum rēgem faciunt,** *they make him king.*

**317. The Subject of the Infinitive** is regularly in the accusative, as **vult mē dīcere,** *he wishes me to speak.*

*a.* A predicate noun in such an infinitive phrase agrees with the subject, as **volunt eum rēgem esse,** *they wish him to be king.*

**318. Accusative of Exclamation.** The accusative may be used in exclamations, as **mē miserum,** *poor me!* **prō deum fidem,** *for heaven's sake!*

## Ablative

**319. Place Where** is denoted by the ablative, usually with **in,** as **in altō et in terrīs,** *on sea and on land.*

*a.* With names of towns and small islands the locative is used to express place where, as **Rōmae,** *at Rome.* See 345.

*b.* In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **terrā marīque,** *on land and sea;* **Ītaliā,** *in Italy;* **lītore,** *on the shore;* **pectore,** *in his heart.*

**320. Place Whence** is denoted by the ablative, usually with **ex, dē,** or **ab,** as **ex marī,** *out of the sea.*

*a.* With names of towns, small islands, **domō,** *from home,* and with **rūre,** *from the country,* the preposition is regularly omitted, as **Karthāgine,** *from Carthage.*

*b.* In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **venit (ex) Ītaliā,** *he comes from Italy.*

**321. Ablative of Accompaniment.** Accompaniment (attendance) is denoted by the ablative with **cum,** as **venit cum sociīs,** *he comes with his comrades.*

*a.* With **mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quā, quibus,** the preposition **cum** is regularly appended, as **mēcum,** *with me;* **tēcum,** *with you;* **sēcum,** *with him(self), with them(selves).*

**322. Time When or Within Which** is denoted by the ablative, as **urbem cēpit nocte,** *he captured the city at night;* **nocte pluit tōtā,** *it rains all night.*

**323. Origin** (source or descent) is denoted by the ablative with or without **ex** or **dē,** as **nātus deā,** *born of a goddess (goddess-born);* **ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es,** *you are his son and mine.*

**324. Ablative of Material.** Material is denoted by the ablative, usually with **ex,** as **domus facta ex saxō, ex ferrō,** *a house made of stone, of iron;* **aere clipeus,** *a shield of bronze.* See 280 for the genitive of material.

**325. Ablative of Respect.** The respect in which a verb, adjective, or noun is to be taken is denoted by the ablative, as **sunt quīdam hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine,** *some people are human beings not in fact (reality), but in name (only).* This is sometimes called the ablative of specification.

**326. Ablative of Accordance.** The ablative, usually with **dē** or **ex,** is used to express that in accordance with which a thing is done or judged, as **ex senātūs cōnsultō,** *in accordance with the decree of the senate.*

*a.* With certain words accordance is usually expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as **cōnsuētūdine suā,** *according to his custom;* **tuō cōnsiliō,** *in accordance with your plan;* **meā sententiā,** *in my opinion.*

**327. Ablative with Comparatives.** Comparatives without **quam** are followed by the ablative, as **exēgī monumentum aere perennius,** *I have erected a monument more enduring than bronze;* **Ō mātre pulchrā fīlia pulchrior,** *O daughter fairer than a mother fair!*

**328. Ablative of Manner.** Manner is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective or with **cum,** as **cum virtūte vīvere,** *to live virtuously;* **id fēcit magnā cum cūrā,** *he did it very carefully.*

*a.* The simple ablative of certain nouns may be used to denote manner, as **cāsū,** *by chance;* **vī,** *by force.*

**329. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.** Attendant circumstance, situation, or result may be expressed by the ablative, usually with a modifier, and without a preposition, but sometimes with **cum,** as **magnō intervallō,** *at a great distance;* **frequentissimō senātū,** *at a crowded meeting of the senate;* **imperiō suō,** *under his full power;* **clāmōre,** *with shouting;* **cum tuā perniciē,** *with (to) your destruction;* **magnō (cum) dolōre omnium,** *to the great grief of all.*

**330. Ablative of Quality.** Quality or description is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective, as **statūrā fuit humilī,** *he was of low stature.* This is sometimes called the ablative of characteristic or description. See 285 for the genitive of quality.

**331. Ablative of Means.** Means or instrument is denoted by the ablative, without a preposition, as **clārē videō oculīs,** *I see clearly with my eyes;* **pugnābant armīs,** *they fought with arms.*

**332. Ablative of Cause.** Cause may also be expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as **ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre,** *the good hate to sin from love of virtue.*

**333. Ablative of Agent.** The agent is denoted by the ablative with **ā (ab),** as **urbs capta est ab illō duce,** *the city was captured by that leader.*

**334. The Standard of Measurement** is denoted by the ablative, as **magnōs hominēs virtūte mētimur, nōn fortūnā,** *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

**335. Measure of Difference** is put in the ablative, as **sōl multīs partibus est major quam terra ūniversa,** *the sun is many parts (a great deal) larger than the whole earth.* This is also sometimes called the degree of difference.

**336. Ablative of Price.** Definite price is put in the ablative, as **ēmit morte immortālitātem,** *he purchased deathlessness with death.*

*a.* General value is expressed by the genitive. See 292.

**337. Ablative with Adjectives.** The ablative is used with **dignus, indignus, frētus, contentus,** and **laetus,** and with adjectives of fullness and abundance, as **contentus hōc equō,** *content with this horse;* **dignus poenā,** *worthy of punishment;* **indignus poenā,** *unworthy of punishment.*

*a.* Also the verb **dignor,** *deem worthy,* takes the ablative in poetry and later prose, as **haud tālī mē dignor honōre,** *I do not deem myself worthy of such honor.*

**338. The Ablative of Route** is used to denote the way by which, as **prōvehimur pelagō,** *we sail forth over the sea.*

**339. Ablative with Prepositions.** The ablative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

**abs (ab, ā), cum, cōram, dē**
**prae, prō, sine, ex (or ē).**

**340. Ablative of Separation.** Separation is expressed by the ablative case, with or without a preposition. This ablative is used especially with verbs of depriving, of freedom, and of want, as **sē prīvāvit oculīs,** *he deprived himself of his eyes;* **omnibus egēre rēbus,** *to be in need of everything;* **tē ab eō līberō,** *I free you from him.* This is called the ablative of separation.

*a.* The ablative of separation is also used with **aliēnus** and with adjectives of freedom and want, as **aliēnum mājestāte deōrum,** *inconsistent with the dignity of the gods;* **līber cūrā,** *free from care.*

**341.** The ablative is used with **opus** and **ūsus,** as **opus est mihi aurō,** *I need gold;* **ūsus est dictīs bonīs,** *there is need of kind words.*

**342. Ablative with Special Verbs.** **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,** and their compounds take the ablative, as **hīs vōcibus ūsa est,** *she spoke (used) these words;* **abūsus est nostrā patientiā,** *he used up our patience;* **fruimur lūce vītae,** *we enjoy the light of life;* **fungor officiō,** *I am performing my duty;* **potītur victōriā,** *he gains the victory;* **lacte vēscuntur,** *they live on milk.*

**343. Ablative Absolute.** The ablative, combined with a participle, adjective, or noun, may serve to express the circumstances in which an act takes place, as **duce victō, abeunt,** *the leader having been conquered, they depart;* **urbe captā, hominēs redeunt,** *the city having been captured, the men return.* This phrase is called the ablative absolute.

*a.* The ablative absolute phrase may have an accessory idea of time, cause, or condition, as **Caesare cōnsule haec lēx lāta est,** *this law was passed in Caesar's consulship.*

**344. Vocative.** The vocative, with or without **Ō,** *O,* is used in addressing a person or thing, as **Mūsa,** *O Muse!* **Aeole,** *O Aeolus!* **Ō rēgīna,** *O queen!*

### Locative

**345.** Names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, **humus, domus,** and **rūs,** are put in the locative of the place where, as **Rōmae,** *at Rome;* **Crētae,** *in Crete;* **humī,** *on the ground;* **domī,** *at home.*

*a.* In poetry the names of countries and large islands also are sometimes found in the locative, as **Libyae,** *in Libya.*

## ADVERBS

**346.** Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, as **male vīvit,** *he lives badly;* **bene labōrat,** *he works well;* **ferē omnēs,** *almost all;* **nimis saepe,** *too often.*

## QUESTIONS

**347.** *a.* A question for information merely is generally introduced by **-ne,** as **videtne patrem,** *does he see his father?*

*b.* A question that expects the answer *yes* is generally introduced by **nōnne,** as **nōnne vidēs,** *don't you see?*

*c.* A question that expects the answer *no* is generally introduced by **num,** as **num vidēs patrem,** *you don't see your father (do you)?*

## MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

**348. The Deliberative Question** has its verb in the subjunctive, as **dīcam an taceam,** *shall I speak or hold my tongue?* **quid facerem,** *what was I to do?*

*a.* Occasionally the present indicative is used in deliberative questions, as **quem sequimur,** *whom are we to follow?*

**349. The Indirect Question** has its verb in the subjunctive, as **quaerēmus** (1) **quid fēcerit,** (2) **quid faciat,** (3) **quid factūrus sit,** *we shall ask what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do* (*will do*).

**350.** The direct form of these three questions would be: (1) **quid fēcit?** (2) **quid facit?** (3) **quid faciet** (or **factūrus est**)**?**

## TENSES

**351.** There are six tenses in Latin: the present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

1. **The Present** denotes continuance in the present; it is used: (1) of that which is going on now (specific present), as **auribus teneō lupum,** *I am holding a wolf by the ears;* (2) of statements that apply to all time (universal present), as **probitās laudātur et alget,** *honesty is praised and freezes.*

*a.* **The Historical Present.** The present is used far more frequently than in English as a lively representation of the past, as **cohortīs incēdere jubet,** *he orders the cohorts to advance.* This is called the historical present.

*b.* The present is used in Latin of actions that continue into the present, especially with **jam,** *now,* **jam diū,** *now for a long time,* **jam prīdem,** *now long since,* as **Mithridātēs annum jam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat,** *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

*c.* The present is sometimes used for the future, or to denote attempted action (conative present), as **quam prendimus arcem,** *what citadel are we to seize?* **uxōrem dūcis,** *are you to be married?* **quid mē terrēs,** *why do you try to frighten me?*

2. **The Imperfect Tense** denotes continued or repeated action in the past, as **pugnābam,** *I was fighting, I kept fighting, I used to fight.* The imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize.

*a.* **The Imperfect of Endeavor.** The imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (imperfect of endeavor, conative imperfect), as **urbem relinquēbat,** *he was trying to leave the city;* **lēx abrogābātur,** *the law was to be abrogated.*

*b.* The imperfect and the historical perfect serve to supplement each other. The imperfect dwells on the process; the historical perfect states

the result. The imperfect counts out the items; the historical perfect gives the sum. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the historical perfect, the particulars of the action by the imperfect, as **Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculī; tōtō ex ōre crūdēlitās ēminēbat,** *Verres came into the forum; his eyes were blazing; cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

3. **The Future Tense** denotes continuance in the future, as **scrībam,** *I shall be writing.* It is also used to express indefinite action in the future, as **scrībam,** *I shall write.*

*a.* The future is sometimes used in an imperative sense, as in English, as **cum volet, accēdēs; cum tē vītābit, abībis,** *when she wants you, approach; when she avoids you, begone sir.* Compare such English expressions as "Thou shalt not kill."

*b.* A similar use is that of the future in asseverations, as **ita mē amābit Juppiter,** *so help me, Jove!*

4. **The Perfect Tense** has two distinct uses: the pure perfect and the historical perfect.

*a.* **The Pure Perfect** expresses completion in the present and hence is sometimes called the present perfect. It is used of an action that is now over and gone, as **vīximus,** *we have lived* (life for us has been); **Troja fuit,** *Troy has been* (but is no longer). It is more frequently used to denote the present result of a more remote action (resulting condition), as **āctum est, perīstī,** *it is all over, you are ruined;* **equum et mūlum Brundisiī tibi relīquī,** *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium* (they are still there).

*b.* **The Historical or Indefinite Perfect** states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained, an occurrence, as **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī,** *I came, I saw, I conquered;* **Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestīmenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est,** *Milo came home, changed shoes and clothes, tarried a little while.*

5. **The Pluperfect** denotes completion in the past and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun, as **fuerat inimīcus,** *he had been my enemy.*

6. **The Future Perfect** denotes both completion and attainment, as **fēcerō,** *I shall have done it,* or *I shall do it* (once and for all).

**352.** The Latin tenses are divided into primary (principal) and secondary (historical).

*a.* **The Primary Tenses** have to do with the present and future; they are the present, pure perfect, future, and future perfect.

*b.* **The Secondary Tenses** have to do with the past; they are the historical present, imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect.

## MOODS IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES

### Sequence of Tenses

**353.** Primary (principal) tenses are ordinarily followed by primary tenses, secondary (historical) by secondary tenses, as follows:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) All forms that relate to the present and future (primary tenses) | are regularly followed by | the present subjunctive (for continued action); the perfect subjunctive (for completed action). |
| (2) All forms that relate to the past (secondary tenses) | are regularly followed by | the imperfect subjunctive (for continued action); the pluperfect subjunctive (for completed action). |

*a*. The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and so the imperfect indicative (*he was doing*) is represented in the dependent form by the perfect or pluperfect, thus: **nesciō quid fēcerit, nescīvī quid fēcisset.**

*b*. The above rule is subject to several modifications:

1. Tense refers to time, not merely to tense form, so that

(*a*). The historical present may be felt according to its sense as *past* or according to its tense as *present.*

(*b*). The pure perfect may be felt according to its starting-point as *past,* or according to its completion as *present.*

2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future.

3. The dependent clause may depend on two or more clauses with their verbs in different tenses, and so follow a varying sequence.

4. An original imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive does not change its tense even when made to depend on a primary leading verb, for example, in unreal conditions (382, *a*).

**354.** The future relation of a verb in a dependent subjunctive clause may be made clearer by the use of an active periphrastic, as **cognōscam, quid factūrus sīs,** *I shall (try to) find out what you are going to do;* **cognōvī quid factūrus essēs,** *I have found out (know) what you were going to do.*

**355. In Indirect Discourse** (indirect statement) all verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive and follow the general rule of sequence of tenses. See 390.

### *QUOD* CLAUSES

**356. Quod,** *the fact that, in that,* is used with the indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after verbs of adding and dropping, doing and

happening, and after demonstrative expressions, as **adde quod vīcimus,** *add the fact that we have won;* **praetereō quod nōn mānsit,** *I pass over the fact that he did not remain;* **bene facis quod tacēs,** *you do well in that you keep silent;* **hāc rē est īnfēlīx, quod victus est,** *in this he is unfortunate, in that he was conquered.*

## CAUSAL CLAUSES

**357.** **Quod, quia, quoniam** and **quandō** take the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to express cause, as **fūgit quod timēbat,** *he fled because he was afraid;* **fūgit quod timēret,** *he fled because (as he said) he was afraid.*

**358.** **Quod** is used after verbs of emotion with the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to give the reason (ground), as **gaudet quod vēnērunt,** *he rejoices that they have come;* **gaudet quod vēnerint,** *he rejoices that (as he says) they have come.*

## PURPOSE CLAUSES

**359.** **Purpose** is expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē,** as **vēnit ut dūceret hominēs,** *he came to lead (that he might lead) the men;* **fugit nē capiātur,** *he flees lest he be (that he may not be) captured.* For the relative clauses of purpose see 388.

**360.** **Substantive Volitive Clauses.** The present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used in a substantive clause after verbs of will and desire, as **ōrō ut veniās,** *I beg that you come;* **volō ut veniat,** *I wish him to come;* **voluī nē venīret,** *I wished him not to come.* Such a clause is called a substantive volitive clause.

*a.* The infinitive may also be used with such verbs, especially in poetry.

*b.* **Jubeō** regularly takes the accusative and infinitive.

## VERBS OF HINDERING

**361.** A verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **nē** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **obstat nē veniat,** *he hinders him from coming.*

**362.** A negatived verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **quīn** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **nihil obstat quīn** (or **quōminus**) **sīs beātus,** *nothing hinders you from being happy.*

## VERBS OF FEARING

**363.** A verb of fear may be followed by **nē** or **ut** (= **nē** + **nōn**) with any tense of the subjunctive, as **timeō nē hostis veniat,** *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come;* **timeō nē hostis vēnerit,** *I fear*

*lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come;* **timeō ut amīcus veniat,** *I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.*

## RESULT CLAUSES

**364.** The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used to denote result, as **tanta vīs deōrum est ut eīs nōn possīmus obstāre,** *so great is the power of the gods that we cannot oppose them;* **nēmō est tam fortis ut nōn possit cadere,** *no one is so strong but he can (that he cannot) fall.*

*a.* A relative pronoun is sometimes used instead of **ut,** as **nēmō est tam fortis quī nōn possit cadere.**

**365.** A verb of effecting has the subjunctive with **ut, nē,** or **ut nōn,** as **faciam ut veniat,** *I shall make (have) him come;* **faciam nē veniat,** *I shall bring it about that he does not come.*

**366.** Negatived or questioned verbs of doubt and uncertainty may be followed by the subjunctive with **quīn,** as **nōn dubium est quīn urbs capiātur,** *there is no doubt (but) that the city is being captured.*

**367. Substantive Clauses of Result.** The subjunctive with **ut** is often used in a substantive clause to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun, as **tōtum in eō est, ut tibi imperēs,** *all depends on this, your self-command (that you rule yourself);* **id est proprium cīvitātis, ut sit lībera,** *this is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free (that it be free).* This is called the substantive clause of result.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

**368. Ut, ut prīmum, cum, cum prīmum, ubi, ubi prīmum, simul ac, simul atque,** in the sense of *as soon as,* and **postquam** take the perfect indicative, as **postquam vēnit dux, urbs capta est,** *after the leader came, the city was captured;* **ut vīdit urbem captam, fūgit,** *as (soon as) he saw the city captured, he fled.*

*a.* The imperfect indicative is used of overlapping action, and the pluperfect indicative when a definite interval is given, as **ut vidēbat hostēs vincentēs, rediit domum,** *as he saw the enemy were conquering, he returned home;* **postquam cēperat urbem, mīlitēs dūcit domum,** *after he had captured the city, he led his soldiers home.*

**369.** When two repeated actions are contemporaneous, both are put in the indicative in tenses of continuance, as **rēx bellum gerēbat cum volēbat,** *the king waged war whenever he wished.*

**370.** When one repeated action comes before another, the antecedent action is put in the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect indicative, the

subsequent in the present, imperfect, or future indicative, according to the relation, as **quotiēns cecidit, surgit,** *as often as he falls (has fallen), he rises;* **quotiēns ceciderat, surgēbat,** *as often as he fell (had fallen), he rose;* **quotiēns ceciderit, surget,** *as often as he falls (shall have fallen), he will rise.*

**371. Dum, dōnec, quoad,** and **quamdiū,** *so long as, while,* take the indicative of all tenses, as **vīta dum superest, bene est,** *while (as long as) there is life, it is well;* **dōnec grātus eram tibī, fēlīx fuī,** *while I was pleasing to you, I was fortunate;* **quoad potuit restitit,** *he resisted as long as he could.*

**372. Dum,** *while, while yet,* usually takes the present indicative when the verb of the main clause is in the past tense, as **dum haec rēs aguntur, urbs ardēbat;** *while these things were going on, the city was burning.*

**373. Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** *until,* take the present, historical present, historical perfect, or future perfect indicative, when suspense or anticipation are not involved, as **manēbō dum venit,** *I shall remain until he comes;* **mānsī dum (quoad, dōnec) vēnit,** *I remained until he came.* See 374.

**374. Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** *until,* take the subjunctive when suspense, anticipation, or design is involved, as **mānsī dum venīret,** *I remained until he could come;* **exspectō dum veniat,** *I am waiting for him to come.* See 373.

**375. Dum, modo,** and **dummodo,** *if only, provided only,* take the present or imperfect subjunctive in a proviso clause, as **ōderint dum metuant,** *let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear);* **veniat, dum maneat,** *let him come, provided that he remains.*

**376. Antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative present, perfect, or future perfect when the time limit is stated as a fact, as **antequam abeō, dīcam pauca,** *before I go, I shall say a few words;* **antequam abiit, dīxerat pauca,** *before he went, he had said a few words.*

*a.* **Antequam** and **priusquam** take the subjunctive when the action is anticipated, contingent, or designed, as **urbem capit priusquam rēx veniat,** *he captures the city before the king may arrive (too soon for the king to arrive);* **ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus,** *we see the flash of lightning before we hear the sound (of thunder).*

## *CUM* CLAUSES

**377. Temporal *cum*,** *when,* is used with all tenses of the indicative to designate merely temporal relations, as **animus nec cum adest nec cum discēdit appāret,** *the soul is not visible, either when it is present or when it departs;* **pāruit cum necesse erat,** *he obeyed when it was necessary.*

**378. Descriptive *cum*,** *when*, is used with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to give the circumstances under which an action took place, as **cum dīmicāret, occīsus est,** *when he engaged in battle, he was slain;* **Caesar cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī,** *when this was (had been) announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city.* This **cum** is sometimes called **cum** circumstantial.

**379. Causal** or **Concessive *cum*,** *when, whereas, although,* is used with any tense of the subjunctive, as **quae cum ita sint, dēbet fugere,** *since these things are so, we must flee;* **cum pār esset armīs, tamen dēbuerat fugere,** *although he was equal in arms, nevertheless he had to flee.*

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**380. The Logical (More Vivid** or **Simple) Conditional Sentence** regularly has the same tense of the indicative in both the subordinate clause (the condition or protasis) and the principal clause (the conclusion or apodosis) as follows:

| CONDITION | CONCLUSION |
|---|---|
| **Sī id crēdis,**<br>*If you believe that,* | **errās,**<br>*you are wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdēbās,**<br>*If you believed that,* | **errābās.**<br>*you were wrong* |
| **Sī id crēdidistī,**<br>*If you (have) believed that,* | **errāvistī,**<br>*you were (have been) wrong* |
| **Sī id crēdēs,**<br>*If you (shall) believe that,* | **errābis.**<br>*you will be wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdiderīs,**<br>*If you shall have believed that,* | **errāverīs,**<br>*you will have been wrong.* |

**381. The Ideal (Less Vivid) Conditional Sentence** regularly has the present or perfect subjunctive, in both clauses, as follows:

| CONDITION | CONCLUSION |
|---|---|
| **Sī id crēdās,**<br>*If you should (were to) believe that,* | **errēs.**<br>*you would be wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdiderīs,**<br>*If you should (prove to) have believed that,* | **errāverīs** (rare)<br>*you would have been wrong.* |

*a.* In indirect discourse, or indirect statement, the verb of the conditional clause of a logical or less vivid conditional sentence is in the subjunctive and follows the general rule of sequence of tenses, as **dīcō tē, sī id crēdās, errāre; dīxī tē, sī id crēderēs, errāre.**

**382. The Unreal (Contrary to Fact) Conditional Sentence** regularly has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to present fact,

and the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to past fact, as follows:

| CONDITION | CONCLUSION |
|---|---|
| **Sī id crēderēs,**<br>*If you believed that* (but you do not), | **errārēs.**<br>*you would be wrong.* |
| **Sī id crēdidissēs,**<br>*If you had believed that* (but you did not), | **errāvissēs,**<br>*you would have been wrong* |

*a.* In indirect discourse the verb of an unreal condition is in the same mood and tense as it would be in direct discourse, and the verb of an unreal conclusion takes one of four special periphrastic forms, as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse.** | (active, contrary to present fact) |
| **Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēdidissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.** | (active, contrary to past fact) |
| **Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperērīs.** | (passive, contrary to present fact) |
| **Dīcō (dīxī) sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperērīs** | (passive, contrary to past fact) |

*b.* Similarly in substantive clauses, as follows:

**Nōn dubitum est quīn, sī id crēderēs, errārēs.**
**Nōn dubitum erat quīn, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fuerīs.**

*c.* In poetry the present subjunctive is often used in both clauses of an unreal conditional sentence.

*d.* All conceivable combinations of types of mixed conditions and conclusions may be used; as the conclusion may have the form of a wish, command, statement of obligation, necessity, etc. These mixed forms are especially common with verbs which convey a future idea, as **dēbeō,** *ought;* **possum,** *be able, can;* **studeō,** *desire;* **volō,** *will, wish,* as **sī Pompēius prīvātus esset, tamen is mittendus erat,** *if Pompey were a private citizen, nevertheless he ought to be sent;* **vincite sī vultis,** *have your way if you will.*

**383. Ut sī, ac sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut,** or **velut sī,** and the subjunctive are used in a clause of comparison, as **tantus metus patrēs cēpit, velut sī jam ad portās hostis esset,** *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at the gates.*

*a.* The subjunctive verb in such a clause follows the rule of sequence of tenses.

## CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

**384.** A Concessive Clause may be introduced by **etsī, etiamsī,** or **tametsī,** with the indicative or subjunctive; by **quamquam,** with the indicative only; by **quamvīs,** with the subjunctive only.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES

**385.** The Relative Clause as such, that is, a clause used as an adjective to modify a noun, regularly has its verb in the indicative, as **amō virum quī fortis est,** *I like a man who is brave, I like a brave man.*

**386.** An indefinite or general relative clause usually has its verb in the indicative; so explanatory **quī,** when equivalent to **quod,** as **errāverim fortasse, quī mē aliquid putāvī,** *I may have erred in thinking myself to be something.*

**387.** A relative clause that depends on an infinitive or a subjunctive, and forms an integral part of the thought, has its verb in the subjunctive by attraction, as **pigrī est ingeniī contentum esse iīs quae sint ab aliīs inventa,** *it is the mark of a lazy mind to be content with what has been found out by others.*

**388.** A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when **quī** is equivalent to **ut is** in an expression of purpose, as **ēripiunt aliīs quod aliīs dent,** *they snatch from some to give to others.* This is called the relative clause of purpose.

**389.** A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when **quī** is equivalent to **ut is** in a clause of description or characteristic; so after an indefinite antecedent, after **dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus,** etc., as **multī sunt quī ēripiant,** *there are many to snatch away;* **sunt (eī) quī dīcant,** *there are those who say (some say);* **dignus est quī cōnsul fīat,** *he is worthy of being made consul.* This is called the subjunctive of characteristic.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**390.** Indirect discourse (indirect statement), as opposed to direct discourse, gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words.

*a.* Indirect discourse depends on some verb of saying, showing, believing, perceiving, or thinking, expressed or implied.

*b.* In indirect discourse a principal statement has its verb in the infinitive, as **dīcit eōs vēnisse,** *he says that they have come;* **dīcit eōs venīre,** *he says that they are coming;* a question or a command has its verb in the subjunctive, as **quaerit quid velint,** *he asks what they want;* **quaesīvit quid vellent,** *he asked what they wanted;* **dīcit hominibus ut veniant,** *he tells the men to come;* **dīxit hominibus ut fugerent,** *he told the men to flee.*

*c.* A subordinate clause in indirect discourse has its verb in the subjunctive. See 355.

## VERSIFICATION

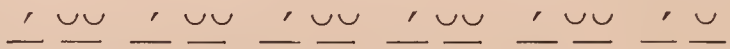
### The Dactylic Hexameter

**391.** One of the most common meters of Latin poetry is the **dactylic hexameter.** It was commonly employed by the Greeks and Romans in epic (narrative) poetry, such as the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, the *Aeneid* of Vergil, and the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid. It is occasionally used in English, as in Longfellow's *Evangeline.* Some of the most beautiful Latin hexameters ever written are those of Vergil and Ovid.

**392.** There are six feet in a hexameter (Gr. **hex,** *six;* **metron,** *measure*) verse or line. The first five feet are either dactyls (Gr. **dactylos,** *finger*), i.e., one long syllable followed by two shorts (– ◡◡), or spondees, i.e., two longs (–́ –). The sixth foot is always treated as a spondee (–́ –).

**393.** The final syllable of a hexameter verse may be either long or short (**syllaba anceps**); but for practical purposes in scansion it may be considered long and thus marked.

**394. The Metrical Scheme** of a verse is thus:



i.e., the first syllable of each foot must be long. It is also given slightly more stress than the other half of the foot. This stress is called the metrical accent.

*a.* A short syllable is often lengthened under the metrical accent or before a pause.

**395.** The fifth foot of the hexameter is almost always a dactyl. When a spondee is used in this place, it gives the verse a slower movement than usual. Such a verse is then called spondaic.

**396.** For metrical purposes each syllable of a Latin verse is considered either long or short, a long syllable occupying approximately twice as much time as a short (14). For this reason a spondaic foot (– –) is considered the metrical equivalent of a dactylic foot. (– ◡◡).

**397.** Observe that only long vowels are marked in the Latin words in this book. For the general rules on the length of syllables, see 14–24.

**398. Elision.** Whenever a word ends with a vowel, diphthong, or **m,** and the following words begin with a vowel or **h,** the first vowel or diphthong is regularly elided. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a light and hurried half-pronunciation, somewhat similar to grace notes in music.

**399. Hiatus.** Occasionally a word ending in a vowel, diphthong, or **m** is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or **h** and elision does not take place. This is called hiatus.

**400. Semi-hiatus.** Sometimes when a word ends in a long vowel or a diphthong and the next word begins with a vowel or **h**, the long final vowel or diphthong is shortened. This is called semi-hiatus.

**401.** The vowels **i** and **u** are sometimes used as consonants (**j**, **v**), as **abiete** (pronounce **abjete**), **genua** (pronounce **genva**).

**402. Hypermeter.** Sometimes the final syllable at the end of a verse is elided before a vowel at the beginning of the following verse. This is called synapheia, and the verse whose final syllable is elided is called a hypermeter or a hypermetric verse.

**403. Synizesis.** Two successive vowels which do not ordinarily form a diphthong are sometimes pronounced as one syllable for the sake of the meter. This sort of contraction of two syllables into one within a word is called synizesis.

## Scansion

**404.** Observe the scansion of the following passage:

**Arma virumque canō, Trojae quī prīmus ab ōrīs**
´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

**Ītaliam fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit**
´ ⏑ ⏑ ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

**lītora, multum ille et terrīs jactātus et altō**
´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ——— | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

**vī superum saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob īram,**
´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ — | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

**multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem**
´ ⏑ ⏑ | — ´ – | ´ – | ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

**īnferretque deōs Latiō; genus unde Latīnum**
´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

**Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.**
´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ – | — ´ – | ´ ⏑ ⏑ | ´ –

In marking the scansion the sign (¯) is used below the line to indicate a long *syllable* and the sign (⏑) for a short *syllable*. The feet are separated from each other by the perpendicular line ( | ), the metrical accent is indicated by a ( ´ ) over the first syllable of each foot, and elision is indicated by a (‿) connecting the elided vowel with the vowel following.

## Hints on the Metrical Reading of Latin Poetry

**405.** In reading Latin poetry orally, the words should be kept distinct and no break made between the separate feet, unless there is a pause in sense.

**406.** Careful attention should be paid to the meaning of the passage, and the various pauses in sense should be indicated by the voice. Of course the voice should not be allowed to drop at the end of a verse unless there is a distinct pause in sense.

**407.** Remember that the rhythm of Latin verse is based primarily upon the regular succession of long and short syllables, that of English primarily on the succession of accented and unaccented syllables.

**408.** To obtain facility in reading Latin verse, a considerable amount of it should be memorized, special attention being paid to the quantity, i.e., approximately twice as much time should be given to each long syllable as to a short one.

**409. Caesúra.**[1] Whenever a word ends within a foot the break is called caesura. If this coincides with a pause in the verse, it is called the principal caesura, or sometimes simply the caesura of the verse.

**410.** A single verse may have more than one caesura, each marked by a pause in sense. The principal caesuras are: (1) After the first long syllable of the third foot; (2) After the first long syllable of the fourth foot.

## FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC

**411. Alliterátion** is the repetition of the same letter or sound, as the sound of **v** in **tum vīctū revocant vīrīs,** *then they recall their strength with food.*

**412. Anacolóuthon** or want of sequence occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

**413. Anáphora** is the repetition of a word or words at the beginning of successive clauses, as **mīrantur dōna Aenēae, mīrantur Iūlum,** *they marvel at the gifts of Aeneas, they marvel at Iulus.*

**414. Anástrophe** is an inversion of the usual order of words, as **tē propter,** *on account of you.*

**415. Antíthesis** is an opposition or contrast of words or ideas, as **speciē blanda, reāpse repudianda,** *charming in appearance, in reality to be rejected.*

**416. Aposiopésis** is a breaking off before the close of the sentence, as **quōs ego — sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs,** *whom I — but it is better to calm the angry waves.*

[1] In the teaching of scansion to beginners, it is preferable to omit all reference to caesura for at least the first two or three years of reading Latin poetry. These paragraphs on caesura are given for the benefit of teachers who may wish their pupils to know something about it.

**417. Apóstrophe** is a sudden break from the previous method of discourse and an addressing, in the second person, of some person or object, absent or present, as **Ō patria, Ō dīvum domus,** *O fatherland, O home of the gods!* (In this case the speaker is in Carthage, many miles from his native land, and is making an apostrophe to Troy which had been destroyed by the Greeks.)

**418. Asýndeton** is the omission of conjunctions, as **ancora dē prōrā jacitur; stant lītore puppēs,** *the anchor is cast from the prow; the sterns rest on the beach.*

**419. Brachýlogy** (**breviloquéntia**) is the failure to repeat an element which is to be supplied in a more or less modified form, as **tam fēlīx essēs quam formōsissima** (**es**) **vellem,** *would that you were as fortunate as* (*you are*) *fair.*

**420. Chiásmus** is the arrangement of corresponding pairs of words in opposite order, as **Īlionēa petit dextrā laevāque Serestum,** *he sought Ilioneus with his right* (*hand*) *and with his left Serestus,* where **Īlionēa** and **Serestum** form one pair and **dextrā laevāque** form the other pair.

**421. Ellípsis** is the omission of one or more words which are obviously understood but must be supplied to make the expression grammatically complete, as **Aeolus haec contrā,** *Aeolus thus* (*spoke*) *in reply.* The words most commonly omitted are **agō, dīcō, faciō, loquor,** and **sum.**

**422. Enállage** is a shift from one form to another, as **vōs** (pl.), **Ō Calliopē** (sg.), **precor,** *I entreat you, O Calliope.*

**423. Eúphemism** is the substitution of an agreeable or nonoffensive word or expression for one that is harsh, indelicate, or otherwise unpleasant, as **sī quid eī acciderit,** *if anything should happen to him* (i.e., if he should die).

**424. Eúphony** is the effect produced by words or sounds so combined and uttered as to please the ear.

**425. Hendiádys** is the expression of an idea by means of two nouns connected by a conjunction instead of by a noun and a limiting adjective, or by one noun limited by another, as **vī et armīs,** *by force of arms;* **vulgus et multitūdō,** *the common herd.*

**426. Hypállage** is an interchange in the relations of words, as **dare classibus Austrōs,** *to give the winds to the fleet* (instead of *to give the fleet to the winds*).

**427. Hyperbaton** or **Traject́ion** is the violent displacement of words, as **per omnīs tē deōs ōrō,** *by all the gods I beg you.*

**428. Hyperbole** is rhetorical exaggeration, as **praeruptus aquae mōns,** *a sheer mountain of water,* referring to a great wave of the sea.

**429. Hysteron Proteron** is a reversal of the natural order, as **moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus,** *let us die and rush into the midst of arms.*

**430. Irony** is a sort of humor, ridicule, or light sarcasm which states an apparent fact with the manifest intention of expressing its opposite, as **scīlicet is superīs labor est, ea cūra quiētōs sollicitat,** *of course this is work for the gods, this care vexes them in their serenity!*

**431. Litotes** or **Understatement** is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the negative. **Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī,** *soiled with not unbecoming* (i.e., *glorious*) *dust.*

**432. Metaphor** is an implied comparison, as **illa, Trojae et patriae commūnis Erīnys,** *she* (*Helen*), *the common curse of Troy and of her native land.*

**433. Metonymy** is the substitution of one word for another which it suggests, as **Cerēs,** *goddess of grain,* for *grain.*

**434. Onomatopoeia** is the use of words of which the sound suggests the sense, as **magnō cum murmure montis,** *with a mighty rumbling of the mountain.*

**435. Oxymoron** is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other, as **cum tacent clāmant,** *when they are silent they cry out.*

**436. Paraleipsis** or **Preterition** is an apparent omission by which a speaker artfully pretends to pass by what he really emphasizes, as **nōn dīcō tē pecūniās accēpisse; rapīnās tuās omnīs omittō,** *I do not say that you accepted sums of money; I omit all your acts of rapine;* **praetereō quod nōn mānsit,** *I pass over the fact that he did not remain.*

**437. Personification** is an attribution of the element of personality to an impersonal thing, as **aspīrat fortūna labōrī,** *fortune favors our struggle;* **fuge crūdēlīs terrās, fuge lītus avārum,** *flee the cruel lands, flee the greedy shore.*

**438. Pleonasm** is the use of superfluous words, as **sīc ōre locūta est,** *thus she spoke with her mouth.*

**439. Polysyndeton** is the use of unnecessary conjunctions, as **ūnā Eurusque Notusque ruunt crēberque procellīs Āfricus,** *both the East wind and the South wind and the Southwester rush forth together.*

**440. Prolépsis** or **Anticipation** is the use of a word, usually a modifier, before it is logically appropriate, as **summersās obrue puppīs,** *overwhelm the sunken ships,* i.e., *sink and overwhelm the ships.*

**441. Símile** is a figure of speech which likens or asserts an explicit comparison between two different things in one or more of their aspects, as **pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō,** *like unto the light winds and most resembling winged sleep;* **velutī cum coörta est sēditiō,** *just as when a riot has arisen.*

**442. Sýnchysis** is an interlocked order of words, as **saevae memorem Jūnōnis īram,** *fell Juno's unforgetting hate.*

**443. Synécdoche** is the use of a part for the whole, or the reverse, as **tēctum,** *roof,* for **domus,** *house;* **puppis,** *stern,* for **nāvis,** *ship;* **mūcrō,** *point,* for **gladius,** *sword.*

**444. Sýnesis** is a construction according to sense and not according to grammatical form, as **pars veniunt,** *part come.*

**445. Tmésis** is the separation of the parts of a compound word by one or more intervening words, as **quae mē cumque vocant terrae** (for **quaecumque terrae mē vocant**), *whatever the lands that call me.*

**446. A Transferred Epithet** is an epithet which has been transferred from the word to which it strictly belongs to another word connected with it in thought, as **vēlivolum mare,** *the sail-flying sea,* where *sail-flying* is properly applied to ships which sail the sea rather than to the sea itself.

**447. Zeugma** is the junction of two words with a modifying or governing word which strictly applies to only one of them, as **Danaōs et laxat claustra,** *he looses the barriers and (sets free) the Greeks.*

# INDEX TO THE GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

(The references are to sections.)


ă, ending of acc. sing. of Greek nouns, 68; nom., acc. and voc. pl. ending of neuters, 33, *c*

ā, prepositions ending in, 312

**ā** or **ab** with abl., 320, 339, 333

Ability, verbs of with inf., 259

Ablative, defined, 30; in **ābus**, 34, *c;* in **ī**, 55, *d*, 56, *b*, 77, 81, 82, *a;* prepositions with, 339; adv. forms of, 310; of supine, 271; pl. like the dat., 33, *d;* **quīs** and **quī** as abl. and dat., 109, *c*, *d*

Ablative, Syntax: abs., 343; accompaniment, 321; accordance, 326; as adv., 95, 310, 328, *a;* agent, 333; with adjectives (**dignus, aliēnus,** etc.), 337, 340, *a;* cause, 332, gerund(ive), 269; with comparatives, 327; degree of difference, 335; with dep. verbs (**ūtor,** etc.), 342; with **dignor,** 337, *a;* with **dōnō,** 296; manner, 328; material, 324; means, 331; with gerund(ive), 269; measurement, 334; with **opus est** and **ūsus est,** 341; origin, 323; place where, 319; place whence, 320; with prepositions, 339; price, 336; respect, 325; route, 338; separation, 340; time, 322

Abounding, words of with gen., 287

Absolute, abl. abs., 343

**absum,** conj., 123

**ābus,** dat. and abl. ending, 34, *c*

Accent, 25–27; metrical, 394; of nouns in **ius, ium,** 37, *a*, *b*

Accompaniment, abl. of with **cum,** 321

Accomplishing, verbs of, 365

Accordance, abl. of, 326

Accusative, defined, 30; in neuters like nom., 33, *c;* sing. in **a,** 68; sing. in **im,** 56, *a;* pl. in **īs,** 56, *d;* 83, *b;* of supine, 270; names of towns, **domus** and **rūs,** 315, *a*

Accusative, Syntax: adv., 309–311, 95, *b;* cognate, 313; direct obj., 307; exclamation, 318; extent, 314; Greek, 309–311; subj. of inf., 317; with middle voice, 309; with prepositions, 312; respect, 311; of gerund(ive) with **ad,** 268; two accusatives: verbs of asking, making, etc., 316; remembering and forgetting, 288, *a;* compound verbs, 308

Accusing and acquitting, gen. with verbs of, 291

**ācer,** decl., 77; compar., 89

**ac sī,** in clauses of compar., 383

Action, see tenses, moods, etc.

Active voice, 115, *a;* changed to pass., 279; act. periphrastic, 199, *a*

**ad,** with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308; with gerund(ive), 268

**adde quod,** with indic., 356

Adjectives, definition, 70; **a** and **o** stems, 71; **i** stems, 76; consonant stems, 80–82; three terminations, 77; compar., 83–92; decl. of compar., 91; num. adjectives, 98–100; pronom. adjectives, 73, 102, *a*, 113, *a*, 114; poss. adjectives, 103, *a*, 104, *a*, 106, *a*

Adjectives, Syntax: agreement, 237–239; as adverbs, 95, 250, 310; with inf., 265; with gen., 287; with dat., 304; with abl., 337; pred., 239; double compar., 245

Advantage, dat. of, 301

Adverbial accusative, 310; adv. abl., 328

Adverbs, 93–97; formation, 95; compar., 96–97; adjectives used adverbially, 250, 310, 328, *a;* use, 346; double compar., 245; num. adverbs, 101

Adversative clauses, 379, 384

**adversum**, with acc., 312
**ae**, diphthong, 5
**aeger**, decl. like **pulcher**, 71
**Aenēās**, decl., 66
**āēr**, decl., 68
**aethēr**, decl. like **āēr**, 68
Affecting, acc. of, 307
Affirmative, expressed by two negatives, 431; **nōnne** for affirmative answer, 347, *b*
Agent, dat. of, 302; abl. of, 333
**ager**, decl. like masc. of **pulcher**, 71
Agreement, nouns: appos., 241; pred., 240, 278, 317, *a;* adjectives: 237–238; pred., 239; poss., 249; pronouns: rel., 242; dem., 240, *a;* verbs: 236; according to sense, 236, *a*, 444
**āī**, ending of gen. sing., 34, *b*
**ajō**, pronounced **aj-jō**, 6, *b*
**al**, decl. of nouns in, 56
**aliēnus**, for gen. of **alius**, 74, *a;* abl. with 340, *a*
**aliquis (aliquī)**, decl., 113
**alius**, decl., 74
Alliteration, 411
Alphabet, 1–6
**alter**, decl., 74; **alterīus** in gen. for **alīus**, 74, *a;* ordinal num., 98
**alterīus** for **alīus**, 73, *a*
Although, how expressed, 379, 384
**an**, in double questions, 348
Anacolouthon, 412
Anaphora, 413
Anastrophe, 414
**anceps, syllaba**, 393
**Anchīsēs**, decl., 66
**Androgeōs**, decl., 67
**Andromachē**, decl. like **Pēnelopē**, 66
**animal**, decl., 56
Answer to questions, 347
**ante**, prep. with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308
Antecedent, agreement of rel. pron. with, 242; attracted to case of rel., 242, *a;* undefined in char. clauses, 389
Antepenult, 25, *a*
**antequam**, with indic., 376; with subj., 376, *a*
Anticipation, clauses of, 440; attraction of antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a*
Antithesis, 415
**apis**, gen. pl. in **ium**, 56, *c*
Apodosis, defined, 380
Aposiopesis, 416
Apostrophe, 417
Appointing, verbs of with two accusatives, 316, *a*
Apposition, 241; pronouns and poss. adjectives, 249; expressed by gen., 281; **quod** and **ut** clauses with nouns and pronouns, 356, 367; inf. with nouns, 264
**aptus**, with dat. of gerund(ive), 267; with rel. clause of char., 389
**apud**, prep. with acc., 312
**āre**, inf. ending, 132
**ăs**, acc. pl. of Greek nouns in, 65, *a*
Asking, verbs of with two accusatives, 316; questions, 347–349
Asseverations, with fut. indic., 351, 3, *b;* subj., 254
Asyndeton, 418
At, translated by prep. with abl., 319; by loc., 345
**āter**, decl. like **pulcher**, 71
**Athōs**, decl. like **Androgeōs**, 67
**Atlās**, decl., 68
**atque, simul atque**, 368; **ac sī**, 383
Attendant circumstance, abl. of, 329
Attraction, antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a;* dem. to gender of pred., 240, *a;* of verb in rel. clauses to subjunctive, 387
**au**, diphthong, 5
**audeō**, semi-deponent, 205
**audiō**, conj., 172; with dat., 297
**avis**, decl., 65, *b*
**āx**, gen. with verbal adjectives in, 287

**b**, stems in, 50; becomes **p** before **s** and **t**, 128, 6
Becoming, verbs of, constr. with, 278
Believing, verbs of, with dat., 297; pers. constr. with pass., 279
**bene**, compar., 97
Beseeching, verbs of, with **ut (ne)**, 360
**bis**, num. adv., 101
**bonus**, compar., 92; decl., 71
Brachylogy, 419
Buying, abl. with verbs of, 336

**c**, stems ending in, 51; represents changed **g** before **t**, 128, 6
**Caere**, decl., 56, *b*

Caesura, 409–410
**canālis,** decl., 56, *b*
**canis,** decl., 56, *c*
**capiō,** conj., 163–171
**caput,** decl., 52
Cardinal numerals, 98–99
**careō,** abl. with, 340
Cases, 30; endings, 32; of pred. substantive, 240, 278; for uses see nom., gen., etc.
**cāsus,** decl., 59
Cause, abl. of, 332; gerund(ive), 269; expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a;* clauses with **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō,** 357–358; **cum** with subj., 379; rel. clause, 386
Causing, verbs of, with perf. part., 275; with gerundive, 268, *a*
Caution, constr. with verbs of, 363
**cavē,** in prohibitions, 256
**-ce,** enclitic, 107, 3, *b,* 4, *a*
Ceasing, complementary inf. with verbs of, 259
**cētera,** partitive use, 246
Characteristic, rel. clause of, 389; abl. of, 330; gen. of, 285
Chiasmus, 420
Choosing, two accusatives with verbs of, 316, *a*
**circum,** prep. with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308
Circumstances, part., 273; abl. abs., 343; **cum** descriptive, 378; abl., 329
**cis,** prep. with acc., 312
Cities and islands, names of, fem., 38, *a;* in acc., 315, *a;* abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345
Clauses, see substantive, temporal, conditional, etc.
Cognate accusative, 313
Collective nouns, with pl. verbs, 236, *a*
**comes,** decl., 52
Command, imp., 255; subj., 254; fut. indic., 351, 3, *a;* in ind. disc., 390, *b*
Commanding, verbs of, with dat., 297; with inf., 360, *a, b;* with subj., 360
Common syllables, 17
Comparative, 84; decl., 91; of adverbs, 96; double compar., 245; conjunctions, 383
Comparison, of adjectives, 83; of adverbs, 96; disproportion, 244; abl. of, 327; degree of difference, 335; clauses of with **ut sī, quasi,** etc., 383; metaphor, 432; simile, 441
Complement, subj., 278–279; obj., 316, *a,* 317, *a;* agreement with subj., 238–240
Complementary infinitive, 259
Complex sentences, see clauses
Compounds, of **sum,** 123; of **faciō** and **fīō,** 229; dat. with, 298
Compound verbs, with dat., 298; with dat. and acc., 298, *a;* with acc., 308; with two accusatives, 308, *a*
**con-,** in composition with dat., 298; in composition with acc., 308
Conative, pres., 351, 1, *c;* impf., 351, 2, *a*
Concessive clauses, with **cum,** 379; with **etsī, quamquam, quamvīs,** etc., 384; concessive subj., 254; see participles and abl. abs.
Conclusion, see conditions
Condemning and convicting, gen. with verbs of, 291
Condition, of an object, expressed by part., 273
Conditions, simple, 380; more vivid, 380; ideal (less vivid), 381; contrary to fact (unreal), 382, *c;* mixed, 382, *d;* in ind. disc., 381, *a,* 382, *a;* in substantive clauses, 382, *c;* abl. abs., 343, *a*
Conjugation, 116, 126–128; see verbs and first, second, etc.
Conjunctions, see **ut, cum,** etc.; omission of, 418; asyndeton, 418; polysyndeton, 349; compar. conjunctions, 383
**cōnor,** conj., 183; inf. with, 259
**cōnscius,** with gen., 287
Consecutive clauses, 364–367
Consonantal, **i** and **u,** 6, *a, b, c;* 401
Consonants, 6–8; quantity, 15, 17
**cōnstrūctiō ad sēnsum,** 236, *a,* 444; reflex. refers to logical subj., 248, *a*
Construction, see cases, moods, etc.
**cōnsul,** decl., 41, *a*
**contentus,** abl. with, 337
Continued action, pres., 351, 1; impf., 351, 2; hist. inf., 257; sequence of tenses, 353

Continuing, verbs of, with complementary inf., 259
Contracted perfects, 204
Contracted verb forms, 204; contracted vowels long, 24
Contracting, undertaking, verbs of, with gerund(ive), 268, *a*
Contradiction, oxymoron, 435
Contrary to fact conditions, 382
**cōram**, with abl., 339
**cornū**, decl., 59
**corpus**, decl., 47
Crasis, 204, vowels resulting from long, 24
**cujus**, see **quī**; pronunciation, 6, *b*
**cum** (preposition), 339; enclitic, 321, *a;* abl. of accompaniment, 321
**cum** clauses, temporal, 377; descriptive, 378; causal, 379; concessive, 379; **cum** (*whenever*), 370, 377
**cum prīmum**, 368
**cupidus**, with gen., 287

**d**, stems ending in, 52; before **s**, 128, 6, 124
Dactyl, 392; fifth foot usually a dactyl, 395
Date, **cum** with indic., 377
Dative, defined, 30; sing. in **āī** (first decl.), 34, *b;* sing. in **ī** (second decl.), 74; pl. in **īs** for **iīs** (**deus**), 37, *f;* pl. in **ubus** (fourth decl.), 58, *c*
Dative, Syntax: with adjectives, 304, 267; agent, 302; compounds, 298; direction, 306; double dat., 303, *a;* ethical, 300; ind. obj., 295; poss., 299; purpose, 303; reference, 301, 303, *a;* separation, 305; with special verbs, 297
**dē**, with abl., 329; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326
**dea**, decl., 34, *c*
**dēbeō**, with complementary inf., 259; indic. for obligation, 251; in conditions, 382, *d*
Declensions, 31–33; first, 34–35; second, 36–38; third, 39–57; fourth, 58–61; fifth, 62–64; of Greek nouns, 65–69; of adjectives, 71–82, 91; of numerals, 99; of pronouns, 103–114
Defective verbs, 205
Degree of difference, abl. of, 335
Deliberative questions (subjunctive), 348
**Dēlos**, decl., 67
Demonstrative pronouns, decl., 107; as subj. attracted to gender of pred., 240, *a;* as adjectives, 102, *a*
Deponent verbs, 182; first conj., 163–190; second, third, fourth conj., 191–198; participles of, 182; abl. with, 342; semi-deponents, 205
Depriving, verbs of, with abl., 340; with dat., 305
Descriptive genitive, 285; abl., 330; impf., 351, *a, b;* **cum** descriptive, 378
Desire, expressions of with gen., 287; clauses of, 360; in ind. disc., 248, *b;* verbs of with inf., 260; expressed by fut. part., 274; volitive subj., 253
**dēsum**, conj., 123; dat. with, 301
**deum** = **deōrum**, 37, *d, f*
**deus**, decl., 37, *f*
**dexter**, decl. like **miser**, 71
**dīcō**, ind. disc., 263, 390; imp. **dīc**, 202
**diēs**, decl., 63; gender, 64
**dignor**, with abl., 337, *a*
**dignus**, with abl., 337; with rel. clause, 389
Diphthongs, 5; always long, 24
Direct, obj., 307; question, 347; reflex., 106, 248
Direction, dat. of, 306
Disproportion, **quam** (**prō, ut**), **quī**, 244
Distance, acc., 314
Distributive, numerals, 100; pronouns, see **quisque** and **uterque**
**diū**, compar., 97
**domus**, abl. of, 320, *a;* loc., 345; acc., 315, *a;* decl., 60; gender, 61, *a*
**dōnec**, with indic., 371; with subj., 374
**dōnō**, with dat. or abl., 269
Double consonants, 7; **s** and **z**, 8; double questions, 348; double accusatives, 308, 316; double datives, 303, *a;* double comparatives, 245
Doubting, verbs of; potential subj., 252; deliberative question, 348; subst. clause with **quīn**, 366; *cf.* 382, *b*
**dūc**, imperative, 202

**dum**, 371; with indic., 371–373; with subj., 374; in proviso clauses, 375
**duo**, decl., 99
Duration, acc., 314; abl., 322
Duty, expressed by indic., 251; by periphrastic, 199, *b*, 382, *d*
**dux**, decl., 51

**ē**, prep.; see **ex**; adv. ending, 95, *a*
**ecquis**, 112
Editorial "we," 243, *a*
Effecting, acc. of, 307; verbs of: with perf. part., 275; with result clause, 365
**egeō**, abl. with, 340
**ego**, decl., 103; omission, 247; for emphasis and contrast, 247
**ei**, diphthong, 5
Elision, 398, 402
Ellipsis, 421
Emotion, verbs of with gen., 289; with inf., 260; with **quod** and indic. or subj., 358; see exclamation
Emphasis, see figures of speech, 106, *b*, *c*, and 247
Enallage, 422
Enclitics, 27; **–que**, 27; **–met**, 106, *b*; **–pte**, 106, *c*; **–ce**, 107, 3, *b*, 4, *a*; **–nam**, 112; **–cum**, 321, *a*; **–ve**, 27; **–ne**, 27, 347, *a*
Endings (regular), of nouns, 32; of infinitives and participles, 117, 3; see declensions and conjugations
Endings (irregular), gen. sing. in **āī**, 34, *b*; gen., dat. sing. **ē** for **eī** in fifth decl., 63; gen. pl. **um**, 34, *b*, 37, *d*; acc. pl. **īs**, 56, *d*, 83, *b*; gen. sing. **īus**, 74; gen. pl. **ium**, 77, 81, 3, 55, *c*; abl. sing. **ī**, 55, *d*, 77, 81, 1; nom. and acc. pl. **ia**, 55, *d*, 81, 2; dat., abl. pl. **ābus**, 34, *c*; acc. **im**, 56, *a*; gen. pl. **ōn**, 65, *a*; acc. sing. **in**, 68; **āstī**, **ārunt**, **ēre**, etc., 204
English pronunciation of Latin words, 28
Envy, verbs of with dat., 297
**eō**, see **is**, **ea**, **id**
**eō**, conj., 207–213; compounds of, 213, *a*; **īrī** in fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*
**er**, nom. ending, 37, 74, 77
**ēre** for **ērunt**, 204, 4; **ere** for **eris**, 204, 4
**esse**, see **sum**
Esteeming, verbs of, double acc., 316; abl. with **dignor**, 337, *a*
Ethical dative, 300
**etsī**, **etiamsī**, in concessive clauses, 384
**eu**, diphthong, 5
Euphemism, 423
Euphony, 424; in verb stems, 128, 6
**ex** (**ē**), prep. with abl., 339; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326; material, 324
Exchanging, verbs of with abl., 336
Exclamations, subj., 253; imp., 255–256; inf., 262; acc., 318; voc., 344; fut. ind. in asseverations, 351, 3, *b*; apostrophe, 417
Exhortations, subj., 254; imp., 255; **ut** clause, 360
Extent of space and time, acc., 314

**fac**, imp. of **faciō**, 202
**facilis**, decl. like **omnis**, 77; compar., 89, *e*
**faciō**, conj. like **capiō**, 163; imp. **fac**, 202; two accusatives, 316, *a*; **faciō ut** (**nē**), 365; pass. of, 227; compounds of, 229
**fāgus**, gender, 38, *a*
**fateor**, conj., 191–198
Favor, verbs of with dat., 297
Fearing, clauses with **nē** or **ut**, 363
Feeling, verbs of with gen., 289–290; with **quod** and indic. or subj., 358
Feet, in verse, 392; fifth foot, 395
**fel**, decl., 41, *b*
**fēlīx**, decl., 82; compar., 87
Feminine, first decl. (mostly), 35; second decl.: cities, islands, trees, and a few others, 38, *a*; third decl., nouns in **dō**, **gō**, **iō**, 44; **i** stems in **ēs**, 57; some **i** stems in **is**, 57; all other **i** stems, 57; mutes in **s**, 54; fourth decl., a few in **us**, 61, *a*; fifth decl., all but **diēs** and **meridiēs**, 64
**fer**, imp. of **ferō**, 202
**ferō**, conj., 214–225; imp., 202
**fīdō**, semi-deponent, 205; with dat., 297
Fifth declension, 62–64
Figures of Speech, 411–447
**fīlia**, decl., 34, *c*
**fīlius**, decl., 37, *a*, *b*

Final clauses, 359–360
**fīō**, conj., 228; compounds, 229; pass. of **faciō**, 227
First conjugation, 129–141; deponents, 183–190
First declension, 34–35
Fitness, adjectives of, with dat., 304; of gerund(ive), 267
**fore** (**futūrus esse**), 121; **fore ut** in ind. disc., 263, *a*; *cf.* 382, *a*
Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*; complementary inf., 259
Forms, 29–275; see nouns, verbs, etc.
Fourth conjugation, 172–181; deponents, 191–198
Fourth declension, 58–61
Freedom, adjectives and verbs with abl., 340; adjectives and verbs with gen., 287
**frētus**, with abl., 337
**frūgī**, compar., 92
**fruor**, with abl., 342
**fuī**, see **sum**
Fullness, expressions of, with gen., 287; with abl., 337
**fungor**, with abl., 342
Future perfect tense, 351, 6; in conditions, 380; in temporal clauses, 370; like perf. subj., 128, 5
Future tense, 251, 3; specific and universal, 351, 3; as imperative, 351, 3, *a*; asseverative, 351, 3, *b*; part. expressing purpose, 274; conditions, 380–381; formation of pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*; expressed by **fore ut**, 263, *a*; use of periphrastic, 199, *a*; in subj., 354

**g**, stems in, 51; changes to **c** before **t**, 128, 6
Gender, rules of, 35, 38, 42, 48, 54, 57, 61, 64; attraction of pronouns, 240, *a*; and see masculine, feminine and neuter; of pred. complement, 239, *b*
Genitive, defined, 30; **āī** for **ae**, 34, *b*; **um** for **ōrum**, 37, *d*; **um** and **ium**, 53, 55, *c*, 56, *c*, 77, 81, 3; **ē** for **eī**, 63; **īus**, 73–74; poss. adj. as gen., 249; two forms for pers. pronouns, 247, *a*
Genitive, Syntax: material, 280; appos., 261; explanatory, 282; poss., 283; subj., 284; obj., 284; quality, 285; part., 286; pred., 285, *a*; with adjectives, 287; with verbs, 287–291; value, 292; with **interest** and **rēfert**, 293; respect, 294; genitive of gerund(ive), 266
**genius**, decl., 37, *b*
**genū**, decl., 59
**genus**, decl., 47
Gerund(ive), 117, 3, 203; for formation see verbs, conj. of, uses of, 266–269; with dat. of agent, 302; in **undus**, 203; see periphrastic; of dep. verbs, 182
Giving, verbs of, with gerundive, 268, *a*
**gracilis**, decl., 77; compar., 89, *a*
Greek accusative, 309, 311
Greek nouns, decl., 65–69
Guilt, expressions of, with gen., 287–291

**h**, never makes position, 15; vowels short before, 20; elision before, 398; hiatus before, 399
**habeō**, conjug., 142–150
Having, verbs of with gerundive, 268, *a*; verbs of with perf. part., 275
Helping, verbs of with dat., 297
Hendiadys, 425
**hērōs**, decl., 68
Hesitation, clauses of, 363, 366
Hexameter, 391–397
Hiatus, 399; semi-hiatus, 400
**hic**, decl., 107; pronounced **hicc**, 107, 3, *c*
Himself, **ipse**, 108; **sē**, 106, 248
Hindering, clauses with **nē**, **quīn** or **quōminus**, 361–362
Historical inf., 257; with subj. nom., 277; pres., 351, 1, *a*; with secondary sequence, 353, *b*, 1 (*a*)
**homō**, decl., 43
Hortatory subjunctive, 254
**humus**, loc. of, 345; gender, 38, *a*
Hypallage, 426
Hyperbaton, 427
Hyperbole, 428
Hypermeter, 402
Hysteron Proteron, 429

**i**, vowel, 4; semi-vowel (consonantal), 6, *a*, 401; after **j**, 6, *b*, *c*; **i** stems, 55, 76; changed to **e** in **iō** verbs,

161, 206, 1; i and u in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
**ī**, imperative of eō, 209; voc. ending, 37, *b;* abl. ending, 55, *d*, 77, 81, 1; loc. ending, 37, *c;* pres. pass. inf. ending, 117, 3; nom. pl. of **is, ea, id**, 107
**ia**, nom. and acc. pl. ending, 55, *d*, 81, 2
Ictus, in verse, 392, 394, 404
Ideal conditions, 361
**īdem**, decl., 107
**idōneus**, with dat. of purpose, 303; gerund, 267; with rel. clause, 389
**īdūs**, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*
**ignis**, decl., 56, *b*
**iī**, or **ī** in gen., 37, *a;* **iī** for **eī**, 107; **iī** perfect of eō, 207; in compounds, 213, *a*
**iīs**, for **eīs**, 107
**ille**, decl., 107
**im**, acc. ending, 56, *a*
Imperative, 115, 4; for formation see under verbs, conjugation of; irregular imperatives, 202; pres. and fut. 255; neg. 256; fut. ind. as imp., 351, 3, *a;* in ind. disc., 390, *b*
Imperfect tense, 351, *a;* of **possum**, etc., for pluperf., 251, 382, *d;* conative, 351, 2, *a;* descriptive, 351, 2, *b;* in temp. clauses, 368, *a*, 371; in conditions, 380, 382, *d;* sequence of tenses, 353; formation of impf. subj., 128, 2
**imperō**, with dat., 297; with subst. vol. clause, 360
Impersonal verbs, forms of eō, 213, *b;* with gen., 290; impers. constructions, 258, 366
Implied indirect discourse, 357–358; *cf.* 248, *b*
**in**, acc. ending, 68
**in**, prep. with acc., 315; prep. with abl., 319; verbs compounded with, 298
Inclination, adjectives of, with dat., 304; expressions of, 251–254; adjectives of, for adverbs, 250
Indefinite antecedent, 389; pronouns, 113
Indicative, 115, 4; to denote possibility, 251, 382, *d;* in deliberative questions, 348, *a;* with **quod** in explanatory clauses, 356; in causal clauses, 357–358; in temporal clauses, 368–373, 377; present with **dum**, 372; simple (more vivid) conditions, 380; in unreal conditions, 382, *d;* in concessive clauses, 384
Indirect command, 390
Indirect discourse, 263, 390; subordinate clauses in, 355; conditions in, 382, *a;* implied, 357–358; *cf.* 248, *b;* commands in, 390, *b;* tense of inf. in, 263
Indirect object, 295
Indirect questions, 349; *cf.* 353, *a;* use of periphrastic in, 354
Infinitive, formation, 117, 2–3; of deponents, 182; contraction of perf., 204; see also conjugations
Infinitive, Syntax: with adjectives, 265; *cf.* 258; pred. nom. with, 317, *a;* complementary, 259; purpose, 261; exclamatory, 262; as subject, 258; hist., 257, 277; subj. acc., 317; in ind. disc., 263, 390, *b;* for **ut**-clause, 360, *a;* with **jubeō**, 360, *b;* with nouns, 264; as obj., 260
Inflection, 29–235; see declension, conjugation, etc.
Informal indirect discourse, 367, 358; *cf.* 248, *b*
Instrumental ablative, 531; of gerund(ive), 269
Intensive suffixes, 106, *b, c;* pronoun, 108; *cf.* 248
**inter**, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298
**interest** with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*
Interjections, 318, 344
Interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 111–112; sentences, 347
Intransitive verbs with dat., 297; with cognate acc., 313
**iō**, gender of nouns in, 44; verbs in, 162
**ipse**, decl., 108; for use *cf.* 248
**īrī**, in fut. pass. inf., 213, *b*
Irony, 430
Irregular verbs, conj., 206–235
**īs**, acc. pl. ending, 56, *d*
**is, ea, id**, decl., 107; as pers. pron. of third person, 105, *b*

Islands, names of, gender, 38, *a;* acc., 315, *a;* abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345
**īsse**, syncopated form, 204
**iste**, decl., 107, 4
Iterative imperfect, 351, 2
**ium**, gen. pl. ending, 55, *c*, 77, 81, 3; decl. of words in, 37, *b*
**ius** ending, declension of words in, 37, *b;* gen. sing. ending, 74; see also declension of pronouns

**j**, the letter, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*
**jaciō**, conj., 161, 227–229; compounds, 6, *c*, 229; pass. of, 227–229
**jam**, with pres. indic., 351, *b*
**jubeō**, with inf., 360, *b*
Jussive subjunctive, 254

Knowing, verbs of, see indirect discourse
Knowledge, adjectives of with gen., 287; adjectives of as adverbs, 250

**l**, nouns in, 56; stems in, 41, *b;* in common syllables, 17–18
**lac**, decl., 52, *a*
**laetus**, with abl., 337
Leaving, verbs of with gerundive, 268, *a*
Length, of vowels, 20–23; of syllables, 14–19, 396, 407
Less vivid, conditions, 381
Letters, of alphabet, 1–8
**liber**, noun, 36, *a*
**līber**, adjective, decl. like **miser**, 71; with abl. of separation, 340, *a*
Likeness, adjectives of with dat., 304
Liquids, in common syllables, 17; stems in, 41–46
Litotes, 431
Locative, defined, 30; first decl., 34, *a;* second decl., 37, *c;* of **domus**, 60; use, 345; loc. gen., 294
Logical, constructions, sing. coll. subj. with pl. verb, 236, *a*, 444; copula agrees with pred. noun, 236, *c;* pron. attracted to gender of pred., 240, *a;* reflex. referring to logical subj., 248, *a;* logical conditions, 280

**m**, final syllable in, 398
**magis**, compar., 97; in double comparisons, 245
**magnus**, compar. of, 92
Making, verbs of, two accusatives, 316, *a;* gerundive, 268, *a;* perfect part., 275
**male**, compar., 97
**mālō**, conj., 230; see comparison
**malus**, compar., 92
Manner, abl. of, 328; gerund(ive), 269; implied in part., 273
**manus**, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*
**mare**, decl., 56
Masculine, first decl., referring to males, 35; second decl. in **us** or **r** (mostly), 38; third decl. stems in **l**, 42; nouns in **ō**, except **dō**, **gō**, and **iō**, 44; nouns in **is** (**eris**) and **ōs** (**ōris**), 48; some i stems in **is**, 57; nouns in **er** and **or**, 46; fourth decl. in **us** (mostly), 61; fifth decl. only **diēs** and **meridiēs**, 64
Material, expressed by gen., 280; by abl., 324
Means, abl. of, 331; with gerund(ive), 269
Measure, abl. of, 334
**medius**, used partitively, 246
**mel**, decl., 41
**melior**, see **bonus**
**meminī**, with gen., 288; with acc., 288, *a*
**memor**, with gen., 287
**-men**, suffix, 44, 2
**-met**, enclitic, 106, *b*
Metaphor, 432
Meter, 391–410
Metonymy, 433
Metrical scheme, of the hexameter, 394
**meus**, form, 103, *a;* as gen. of **ego**, 249
**mī**, voc. of **meus**, 103, *a;* short for **mihi**
Middle voice, 115, *a;* with obj. acc., 309, *a*
**mihi**, see **ego**
**mīles**, decl. like **comes**, 52
**mīlle**, numeral, 99
**minus**, compar., 97; in double comparisons, 245
**miser**, decl., 71
**misereor**, with gen., 289
**miseret**, with gen. and acc., 290
Modesty, pl. of, 243, *a;* subjunctive of, 252
**modo**, in proviso clauses, 375

Monosyllabic, nouns of third decl., 53
Mood, 115, 4; for forms see verbs; for uses see indic., subj., etc.
More vivid conditions, 380
**moror**, conj., 183–190
Motion, end of, with dat., 306; with acc., 315
**mōvī**, contracted forms of, 204, 3
**multus**, compar., 92
**mūnus**, decl. like **genus**, 47
Mute stems, decl., 49–54

**n**, stems in, 43
**–nam**, enclitic, 27, 112
Names of towns and islands, abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345; acc., 315, *a*
Naming, verbs of, with two accusatives, 316, *a*
**nātus**, with abl. of origin, 323
**nāvis**, decl., 56, *a*
**–ne**, enclitic, 27; in questions, 347, *a*
**nē**, in prohibitions, 253, 256, *a;* in purpose clauses, 359; with verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361; with verbs of fearing, 363; result, 365; omitted after **cavē**, 256
Nearness, adjectives of with dat., 304
Necessity, indic., 251, 382, *d;* pass. periphrastic, 199, *b;* 382, *d;* see command
Negative, answer expected, 347, *c;* double neg., 431; purpose clause, 359; clause of fearing, 363; result clause, 364; see prohibitions
**nēmō**, missing forms supplied by **nūllus**, 114; **nēmō est quī**, 364, *a*
**nēquam**, comparison of, 92
Neuter, adjectives with inf., 258; complement with subjects of different genders, 239, *b*
Neuter, pronom. adj., 114; decl., 74
Neuter, second decl. in **um** and a few in **us**, 38; third decl. stems in **l**, 42; nouns in **en**, 44, 2; nouns in **ar, ur**, 46, 2; **i** stems in **e, al, ar**, 57, *b;* nouns in **us** (**eris**), **ūs** (**ūris**), 48, 2; fourth decl. in **ū**, 61
**nf**, vowels long before, 23
**nihil**, forms of, 114
**nimis**, compar., 95, *b*
No, questions expecting answer, 347, *c*
**nōlī**(**te**), in prohibitions, 256
**nōlō**, conj., 230
Nominative, defined, 30; like acc. and voc. pl. in third, fourth, and fifth declensions, 33, *b;* like acc. and voc. in all neuters; in **a**, 34; in **us** (**os**), **um, er** and **ir**, 36; in **l**, 41; in **ō** and **en**, 43; in **or** and **er**, 45; in **us**, 47; in **s**, 50–51; in **ēs**, 52; in **is, e, al**, 56; in **us, ū**, 59; in **ēs**, 62
Nominative case, 30; as subj., 276; with hist. inf., 277; as subjective complement, 278, 279; of gerund supplied by inf., 258; agreement of verb with, 236; double nom., 239, 241
**nōnne**, for affirmative answer, 347, *b*
**nōs**, see **ego**; pl. for sing., 243; nom. emphatic, 247
**nostrī, nostrum**, 247, *a*
Nouns: decl., 31–69; appos., 241; pred., 240, 278–279, 317, *a;* with infinitives, 264; and see gender
**nōvī**, contracted forms of, 204, 3; perf. with pres. meaning, 204, 3, 354
**nox**, decl., 53; quantity of vowel, 19
**ns**, vowels long before, 23
**nt**, vowels short before, 21
**nūllus** and **nēmō**, 114; decl., 74
**num**, for negative answer, 347, *c;* in questions, 347, *c*
Number, 29; pl. for sing., 243, 236, *a*, 444; and see agreement of pred. attribute, 239
Numerals, 98–101

**ō**, nouns in, 43; gender of nouns in, 44
**Ō**, interj. with voc., 344
**ob**, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298
Obeying, verbs of, with dat., 297
Object, direct, 307; ind., 295; clauses, 360–363, 365; inf. as obj., 260
Objective genitive, 284; of pers. pronouns, 247, *a;* objective complement, 317, *a*
Obligation, indic., 251, 382, *d;* periphrastic, 199, *b*, 382, *d;* subj., 253; see command
**oblīvīscor**, gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*
**obsum**, 123; dat. with, 298
Occasion, expressed by part., 273
**ōdisse**, see 204, 3
**oe**, diphthong, 5
**Oedipūs**, decl., 69

Omission, of pers. pron., 247
**omnis**, decl., 77
**on, ōn**, Greek endings, 65, *a*, 67, 68, 69
Onomatopoeia, 434
**oportet**, 251, 382, *d*
Optative, subjunctive, 253
**opus est**, with abl., 341
**ōrātiō oblīqua**, see indirect discourse
Ordinal numerals, 98, *a*
Origin, abl. of, 323
**orior**, conj., 206
**ōrō**, constr. of verbs depending on, 360
**Orpheus**, decl., 69
**os**, nom. sing. of second decl., 36, *a*, *b*; Greek nominatives in 67, 69
Oxymoron, 435

**p**, represents changed b before s and t, 128, 6; stems in, 50
**paenitet**, with gen. and acc., 290
**Panthūs**, decl., 67
**pār**, with gen., 287; with dat., 304; with dat. of gerund(ive), 267
Paraleipsis, 436
Participles, formation, 117, 3; compar., 90; of deponents, 182, 205; tenses of, 272–275; gerundive, 266–269; periphrastic, 199; decl. of pres., 82
Partitive genitive, 286; of pers. pronouns, 247, *a*
**parvī**, gen. of value, 292
**parvus**, compar., 92
Passive voice, 115, *a*; formation of perf. system, 116, 3; constr. with verbs of saying, 279; pass. periphrastic, 199, *b*, *cf.* 382, *d*; gerundive constructions, 267, 268; middle and reflex. use, 309; perf. pass. system, 116, 3; fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*; with dat. of agent, 302
Past perfect, see pluperfect
**patior**, conj., 191–198
**pelagus**, gender of, 38, *a*
Penalty, gender of, 38, *a*
**penes**, prep. with acc., 312
Penult, 25, *a*
**per**, prep. with acc., 312
Perception, verbs of, with part., 273; see indirect discourse
Perfect tense, 351, 4; pres. state, 351, 4, *a*; past act, 351, 4, *b*; temp. clauses, 368, 370, 376; perf. subj. both primary and secondary inf. in ind. disc., 263; participle, 275; in conditions, 381, 353, *b*, 1, *b*; in ind. disc., 382, *a*, *b*; contracted perfects, 204
Periphrastic conjugation, 199–201; as fut. subj., 354; conditions in ind. disc., 382, *a*; in contrary to fact apodosis, 382, *d*; in ind. questions, 354; with dat. of agent, 302
Person, agreement of verb, 236; agreement of rel. pron., 242; for forms see conjugations
Personal construction, of pass. with inf., 279
Personal pronouns, forms, 103; omission, 247; as part. gen., 247, *a*; in appos. to poss. adjectives, 249
Personification, 437
Persuading, verbs of with dat., 297
**pēs**, decl., 52
**piget**, with acc. and gen., 290
Pity, verbs of, with gen. and acc., 290
Place whither, 315, 306; where, 319; whence, 320; extent, 314
Pleasing, verbs of, with dat., 297
Plenty, expressions of, with gen., 287
**plēnus**, gen. with, 287; abl. with, 337
Pleonasm, 438
Pluperfect, 351, 5; indic. in time clauses, 370; subj. in unreal conditions, 362; secondary sequence in ind. disc. 353, 382, *a*, *b*; in **cum** descriptive clauses, 378
Plural, see number, agreement, etc.; poetic, 243, 444; editorial, 243, *a*
**plūs**, compar., 92, 97
Polysyndeton, 439
Possession, gen., 283; dat., 299
Possessive adjectives (pronouns), forms, 103–106; used as gen. of pron., 249
Possibility, indic., 251, 382, *d*; subj., 252, *cf.* 386; periphrastic, 382, *d*; in causal clauses, 357–358; with **antequam** and **priusquam**, 376, *a*; in conditions, 381; in relative clauses, 389
**possum**, conj., 125; to express possibility, 251, 382, *d*; in apodosis, 382, *d*
**post**, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298, 308
**postquam**, with indic., 368

Potential, indic., 251; subj., 252; see possibility
**potior,** with abl., 342
Power, adjectives of, with gen., 287; nouns of, with inf., 264
**prae,** prep. with abl., 339
Predicate adjective, 239, 279; pred. noun, 236, *c*, 240, 317, *a*, 278; pred. acc., 317, *a*, 279; pred. acc. becomes pred. noun in pass., 279; pred. noun with inf., 317, *a;* pred. use of participles, 273, 275; pred. gen., 285, *a;* of gerund(ive), 266; pred. adj. with inf., 258; pred. with pass. verbs of saying, etc., 279; pred. dat., 303, *a;* see agreement
Prepositions, with acc., 312; with abl., 339; omitted, 315, *a, b;* 319, *b*, 320, *a, b*, 340; **cum** appended to certain words, 321, *a;* assimilation, *cf.* 123; compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Present tense, 351; specific and universal, 351, 1; hist., 351, 1, *a;* with **jam** as perf., 351, 1, *b;* conative (as fut.), 351, 1, *c;* part., 272; decl., 82; indic. with **dum,** 372; inf. in ind. disc., 263
Preterition, 436
Preventing, verbs of, with **nē, quōminus, quīn,** 361–362; with abl. of separation, 340
Price, abl. of, 336; gen. of, 292
Primary tenses, 352, *a;* sequence of tenses, 353
**prīmus,** *beginning of,* 246
**princeps,** decl., 50
Principal parts, 126
**priusquam,** with indic., 376; with subj., 376, *a*
**prō,** prep. with abl., 329; **prō ut, quam prō,** 244, *cf.* 383; interj., 318
Prohibitions, subj., 253; imp., 256; obj. clauses (volitive), 360; hindering, 361–362; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
Prolepsis, 440
Pronouns, 102–114; pers., 103–106; omitted, 247; reflex., 106; use of, 248; dem., 107; attraction of, 240, *a;* intensive, 108; rel., 109–110; general relatives, 110; agreement of relatives, 242; relative clauses, 385–389; interrog., 111–112; adj., 111, *a;* pronom. adjectives, 73–74, 114; see poss.; indef., 113; distributive, see **quisque** and **uterque** as part. gen., 247, *a;* in appos. to poss. adj., 249
Pronunciation, Latin, 4–8; of Latin words in English, 28; of **i** and **u** as consonants, 401
Prosody, 391–410
**prōsum,** conj., 124
Protasis, 380; see conditions
Proviso clauses, vol. subj., 254; with **dum (modo),** 375
**proximus,** with dat., 304
**–pte,** enclitic, 106, *c*
**pudet,** with gen. and acc., 290
**puer,** decl., 37
**pulcher,** decl., 71; compar., 88
**pulchrē,** compar., 97
Purpose, inf., 261; gerund(ive), 268; fut. part., 274; **ut** and **nē** with subj., 359; rel. clause of, 388; supine in **um,** 270; dat. of, 303

**qu,** pronunciation, 6; counts as single consonant, 15; becomes **x** with **s,** 128, 6
Quality, gen., 285; abl., 330; two qualities compared, 245
**quam,** omission of in compar., 327; **quam prō, quam ut, quam quī,** 244; **quam sī,** 383; with two positives, 245; with two comparatives, 245; **antequam** and **priusquam** separated, 376, *a*
**quamquam,** with indic. in concessive clauses, 384
**quamvīs,** with subj. in concessive clauses, 384
**quandō,** in causal clauses, 357
**quantī,** gen. of value, 292
Quantity, of vowels, 20–24; of syllables, 14–19; in verse, 392–397, 404, 407; numerals, 99–101
**quasi,** in clauses of comparison, 383
**–que,** enclitic, 27
Questions, 347; deliberative, 348; ind., 349, 354; exclamatory, 262
**quī,** decl., 109; abl. form **quī,** 109, *d;* = **ut is,** 389; see relative
**quia,** in causal clauses, 357
**quīcumque,** general relative, 110
**quīn,** after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 362; after neg. expressions of doubt, 366

**quis**, interrog., decl., 111; indef., 113
**quīs**, dat., abl. pl. of **quī**, 109, *c*
**quisque**, use with reflex., 248
**quisquis**, general rel., 110
**quoad**, with indic., 371; with subj., 374
**quod**, rel. pron., 109; with indic. in explanatory clauses, 356; with indic. and subj. in causal clauses, 357–358; in ind. disc. 355
**quōminus**, after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361–362
**quoniam**, in causal clauses, 357
**quot**, numeral adv., 98
**quotiēns**, numeral adv., 101; in temp. clauses, 320
**quum** = **cum**

**r**, for **s** between two vowels, 47; stems in **r**, 45; nouns in **r**, 36, *a*, 37; adjectives in **r**, 71, 74, 76, 77, 91; see liquids
**re**, for **ris**, 204, 4
Reading of verse, 405–408
Reference, dat. of, 301, 303, *a;* gen., 294; acc., 311; abl., 325
**rēfert**, with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*
Reflexive pronouns, forms, 103–106; use, 248
Refusing, verbs of, 361–362
Regarding, two accusatives with verbs of, 316, *a;* constr. with pass. verbs of, 279
Relative clauses, 385; explanatory, 386; dependent, 387; purpose, 388; result, 364, *a;* char., 389
Relative pronouns, decl., 109; agreement, 242; in comparison, 244
**reliquus**, partitive use = *rest of*, 246
Remembering, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*
Removing, verbs of, with abl., 340
Repeated action, impf., indic., 351, 2; in temp. clauses, 369–370; sequence of tenses, 353
**rēs**, decl., 63
Resisting, verbs of, with dat., 297; with **nē, quīn, quōminus**, 361, 362
Resolving, verbs of, complementary inf., 259; subst. vol. clause with, 360
Respect, abl. of, 325; acc. of, 311
Restricted, rel. clause, 387
Result clauses, 364; rel. clause of, 364, *a;* sequence of tenses, 353; explanatory clause of, 367
**rēte**, decl., 56, *b*
Rhotacism, 47
Rhythm of Latin verse, 407
**ri**, adjective stems in, 76, *a*
**rogō**, two accusatives, 316; inf. with, 360; **ut** (volitive) clause, 360
Route, abl. of, 338
**rūs**, decl. and gender, 48, 2; acc., 315, *a;* abl., 320, *a;* loc., 345

**s**, changed to **r** between vowels, 47; change of mutes before **s** in verb stems, 128, 6; stems in **s**, 47; nom. ending, 32
**saepe**, compar., 97
**satis**, with gen., 286; compar., 97
Saying, verbs of, ind. disc., 390, 263; constr. with pass., 279
Scansion, 404
**scītō**, fut. used as pres. imperative, 202
**sē**, reflex. pron., 106, 248
Second conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms, 142–150; deponents, 191–198
Second declension, 36–38
Secondary object, 308, 316; tenses, 352, *b*, 353
**secundum**, prep. with acc., 312
Selling, verbs of with gen., 292; with abl., 336
Semi-hiatus, 400; semi-deponents, 205; semi-vowels, 6, *a, b, c;* 401
**senex**, decl., 56, *c*
Separation, dat. of, 305; abl. of, 340
Sequence of Tenses, 353; conditions in ind. disc., 381, *a;* suppositions in ind. disc., 383, *a;* for examples see 358, 360, 363, 374, 390, *b*
**sequor**, conj., 191–198
Service, dat. of, 303; dat. with adjectives of, 304
Serving, dat. with verbs of, 297
Sharing, adjectives of with gen., 287
**sī**, conditions, 380–382; suppositions, 383; **ut sī, ac sī, quam sī**, 383
Simile, 441
**similis**, with gen., 287; with dat., 304
**simul ac** (**atque**), with indic., 368
Singular, with pl. verb, 236, 444; see number, agreement, etc.

**singulus**, distributive num., 100
Situation, participle, 273; **cum** descriptive, 378; **dum** with pres. ind., 372; rel. clause, 385; abl., 329
**soleō**, semi-deponent, 305; complementary inf. with, 259
**sōlus**, with rel. clause, 389
Source, abl. of., 323
Space, extent of with acc., 314
Specification, with gen., 294; abl., 325; abl. of supine, 271; acc., 311
Spelling, j and v, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*
Spondee, 392; spondaic verse, 395
Stem of nouns, 31, 34, 36, 39–40, 58, 62; of adjectives, 71, 75–76, 78–81; stems in i, 55, 76; of verbs, 116, 126–128
**sub**, prep. with acc., 312; compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Subject, 276; agreement of verb with, 236; coll., 236, *a*, 444; two subjects, 236, *b;* subject of different persons, 239, *a;* omitted pers. pronouns, 247; impers. verbs, *cf.* 240; indef. second person, *cf.* 252; imp., 255; of hist. inf., 257; subj. acc., 260, 317; exclamatory inf., 262; ind. disc., 263, 390; inf. as subj., 258
Subjective genitive, 284; poss. adj. as, 249
Subjunctive, 115, 4; potential, 252; opt., 253; vol., 254, 360; in causal clauses, 357–358, 379; in purpose clauses, 359; with verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361–362; in ideal and unreal conditions, 381–382; comparisons with **ut sī, quasi,** etc., 383; double comparisons with **quam sī, quam ut,** 244; **cum** descriptive, 378; concessive clauses with **cum,** 379; with **etsī** and **quamvīs,** 384; rel. clauses of attraction, 387; purpose, 388; char., 389; result, 364, *a;* deliberative questions, 348; ind. questions, 349, 354; temp. clauses of anticipation, 374, 376, *a;* result clauses, 364–367; with verbs of fearing, 363; prohibitions, 256; of modesty, *cf.* 252; proviso, 375; subordinate clauses in ind. disc., 357, 358, *cf.* 248, *b;* tenses of, 353
Subordinate clauses, sequence of tenses, 353; in ind. disc., 390 *b*, *c;* see temporal, result, conditional, etc.
Substantive (volitive) clauses of desire, 360; hindering, 361–362; fearing, 363; result, 365–367; conditions in, 382, *b;* **quod** with indic., 356
Suffixes, see enclitics, endings
**suī**, decl., 106; use, 248
**sum**, conj., 118; compounds of, 123; fut. inf. with **ut** in ind. disc., 263, *a;* agreement with pred. noun, 236, *c;* with dat. of poss., 299; **sunt quī,** 389; simple sentence with, 278
**summus**, *top of*, partitive, 246
**super**, prep. with acc., 312; in composition with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Superlative, 85, 88, 89, *a;* used partitively as noun, 246
Supine, for forms see conjugations; uses, 270–271
Suppositions with **ut sī, quasi, velut,** etc., 383
**suus**, forms, 106, *a;* uses, 248
**syllaba anceps**, 393
Syllables, division of, 9–13, 18; named, 25, *a;* final syllable of hexameter line, 393; long syllable shortened, 400; short syllable lengthened, 394, *a;* first syllable of each foot long, 394; long and short syllables, 14–19, 396; two syllables united, 403
Synapheia, 402
Synchysis, 442
Synecdoche, 443
Synesis, 444
Synizesis, 403
Syntax, 236–390

**t**, assimilated before s, 128, 6, 125; stems ending in, 52
**taedet**, with gen. and acc., 290
**tametsī**, in concessive clauses, 384
**tamquam** (sī), in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
**tantī**, gen. of value, 292
Teaching, verbs of, two accusatives, 316
Temporal clauses, 368–377; of action prior to the main verb, 368, 370; of action contemporaneous with the main verb, 369, 371–373, 377;

of action later than the main verb, 374–376; abl. abs., 343, *a*
Tenses, 115, 3; formation of, 127; pres., impf., etc. and verbs of imp., 255; of inf., 263, 390; of part., 272; uses of, 351; primary and secondary, 352; sequence of, 353
**–ter**, adv. suffix, 95, *c*
**ter**, num. adv., 101
Terminations, of nouns, 32; of verbs, 127–128; of infinitives and participles, 117; see endings, enclitics, declension, conjugation, etc.
Than, compar. of adjectives, 83–92; compar. of adverbs, 93–97; omission of **quam**, 327; *than if*, 383; *than that*, 244
Thinking, see indirect discourse, constr. with pass., 279; with acc. and inf., *cf.* 317, *a*
Third conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms **dīcō**, 151–160; **capiō**, 163–171; deponents: **sequor, patior**, 191–198
Third declension, stems in **l**, 41–42; **n**, 43–44; **r**, 45–46; **s**, 47–48; **p** or **b**, 50; **c** or **g**, 51; **t** or **d**, 52; **i**, 55–57
Time, from which, 320; when, within which, 322; till which, 315; extent, 314; expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a;* see temp. clauses; time in pronouncing syllables, 14, 408
**timeō**, with subj., 363
Tmesis, 445
too . . . to, two clauses compared, 244
**tōtus**, decl., 73; *all of*, partitive use, 246
Towns, names of; see cities
Trajection, 427
**trāns**, prep. with acc., 312; acc. with compounds of, 308
Transferred epithet, 446
Trees, names of, gender, 38, *a*
**trēs**, decl., 99
**tū**, decl., 104; omission, emphatic, 247
**tuī**, obj. gen., 247, *a*
Two accusatives, 308, *a*, 316; two datives, 303, *a*

**u**, sometimes pronounced like **v**, 6, *a;* after **g, q**, 6, 15; for **i** in superlatives, 85, 89, *a;* for **e** in gerund (ive), 203; noun stems in **u**, 58; **i** and **u** in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
**ubi**, with indic., 368
**ubus**, for **ibus** in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
**ui**, diphthong, 5
**ūllus**, decl., 74
Ultima, 25, *a*
**um**, gen. pl. ending, first decl., 34, *b;* second decl., 37, *d;* third decl., 53, *a, b, c, d*, 56, *c*, 81, 3, 82, *c, d*
Understatement, 431, see potential subj., 252
Undertaking, verbs of, with acc. of gerund(ive), 268, *a*
Unreal conditions, 382
**ūnus**, decl., 74; **ūnus est quī**, 389
**urbs**, decl., 53
**ūsus est**, with abl., 341
**ut** clauses: fearing, 363; **fore ut**, 263; indic., 368; indirect commands, 390, *b;* omitted, 256; purpose, 359; result, 364; sequence of tenses, 353; **ut sī**, 383; substantive, 360, 367; temporal, 368
**uter** and **uterque**, decl., 74–74, *b;* compounds of **uter**, 114, *a*
**utinam**, in unfulfilled wishes, 253
**ūtor**, with abl., 342

**v**, omitted in perf. forms, 204; use of, 6, *a;* as a consonant in poetry, 401
Value, gen. of, 292
**vannus**, gender, 38, *a*
**–ve**, enclitic, 27
**velim, vellem**, subj. of modesty, 252; opt., 253
**velut (sī)**, in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
**vēneō**, compound of **eō**, 213, *a;* see selling
Verbal adjectives, in **āx** with gen., 287
Verbs, inflection of, 115; stems, 116, 128, 6; conj., 116; principal parts, 126; first conj., 129–141; second conj., 142–150; third conj., 151–160, **dīcō**; 161–171, **capiō**; fourth conj., 172–181; dep., 182–198; semi-dep., 205; periphrastic, 199–203, 263, *a;* syncopated forms, 204; irregular, 206–235; **sum**, 118–122; principal parts, 126; general rules, 128
Verbs, uses of, agreement, 236; with gen., 287–291; **interest** and **rēfert**, 293; with dat., 297–298; with abl.,

342; see names of moods and tenses, ind. disc., etc.
Versification, 391–404
**vēscor,** with abl., 342
**vester,** 104
**vestrī, vestrum,** 247, *a*
**vetō,** acc. and inf. with, 360, *a*, 260
**vetus,** decl., 82; rhotacism, 47
**videor,** dat. of reference, 301; pred. nom., 279; complementary inf., 259; ind. disc., 263–390
**vir,** decl., 37
**vīs,** decl., 56, *a*
Vocative, defined, 30; second decl., sing., 36; of words in **ius, ium,** 37, *b;* **deus,** 37, *f:* **meus,** 103, *a;* Greek nouns, 66–69; use, 344
Voices, 115, 2, *a;* middle with obj. acc., 309, *a;* see active, middle, passive
Volitive, subj., 254; substantive with **ut** (**nē**) after verbs of will, desire, etc., 360; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
**volō,** conj., 230; with inf., 260, 317; with subj., 360; with part., 275
**vōs,** see **tū**
**voster,** see **vester**
Vowels, long and short, 3–4, 20–24; long vowels marked, 3, 397; elision of final vowels in verse, 398; syncopation, 204; synizesis, 403; long vowel shortened, 400
**vulgus,** gender, 38, *a*

Want, words of with gen., 287; with abl., 340
Way, by which, abl., 338, 328, 331
Whole, gen. of, 286
Wishes, inf., 260, 317; subj., 253, 254; ind. disc., 390, *b;* **ut** (volitive) clause, 360

**x,** nom. ending, 51, 82; in verb stems (**c, g, qu** and **s**), 128, 6; double consonant, 8; makes position, 15

Yes, questions expecting, 347, *b*

**z,** double consonant, 8; makes position, 15
Zeugma, 447

H 52' 88.

THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS